

Praise for *Reverse Engineering for Beginners*

- “It’s very well done .. and for free .. amazing.”¹ Daniel Bilar, Siege Technologies, LLC.
- “...excellent and free”² Pete Finnigan, Oracle RDBMS security guru.
- “... book is interesting, great job!” Michael Sikorski, author of *Practical Malware Analysis: The Hands-On Guide to Dissecting Malicious Software*.
- “... my compliments for the very nice tutorial!” Herbert Bos, full professor at the Vrije Universiteit Amsterdam.
- “... It is amazing and unbelievable.” Luis Rocha, CISSP / ISSAP, Technical Manager, Network & Information Security at Verizon Business.
- “Thanks for the great work and your book.” Joris van de Vis, SAP Netweaver & Security specialist.
- “... reasonable intro to some of the techniques.”³ (Mike Stay, teacher at the Federal Law Enforcement Training Center, Georgia, US.)
- “I love this book! I have several students reading it at the moment, plan to use it in graduate course.”⁴ (Sergey Bratus, Research Assistant Professor at the Computer Science Department at Dartmouth College)

¹https://twitter.com/daniel_bilar/status/436578617221742593

²<https://twitter.com/petefinnigan/status/400551705797869568>

³http://www.reddit.com/r/IAMa/comments/24nb6f/i_was_a_professional_password_cracker_who_taught/

⁴<https://twitter.com/sergeybratus/status/505590326560833536>

Reverse Engineering for Beginners



Dennis Yurichev

Reverse Engineering for Beginners

Dennis Yurichev
<dennis(a)yurichev.com>



©2013-2014, Dennis Yurichev.

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivs 3.0 Unported License. To view a copy of this license, visit

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/3.0/>.

Text version (October 20, 2014).

There is probably a newer version of this text, and Russian language version also accessible at

<http://beginners.re>. E-book reader version is also available on the page.

You may also subscribe to my twitter, to get information about updates of this text, etc: @yurichev⁵,

or facebook⁶ or to subscribe to mailing list⁷.

The cover was made by Andy Nechaevsky: <https://www.facebook.com/andydinka>.

⁵<https://twitter.com/yurichev>

⁶<https://www.facebook.com/Dennis.Yurichev>

⁷http://yurichev.com/mailing_lists.html

Please donate!

I worked more than one year on this book, here are more than 750 pages, and it's free. Same level books has price tag from \$20 to \$50.

More about it: [0.0.1](#).

I also look for a publisher who may want to translate and publish my “Reverse Engineering for Beginners” book to a language other than English/Russian, under condition that English/Russian version will remain freely available in open-source form. Interesting? [dennis\(a\)yurichev.com](mailto:dennis(a)yurichev.com)

Short contents

I	Code patterns	1
II	Important fundamentals	520
III	Finding important/interesting stuff in the code	526
IV	OS-specific	547
V	Tools	597
VI	More examples	603
VII	Examples of reversing proprietary file formats	715
VIII	Other things	737
IX	Books/blogs worth reading	755
X	Exercises	759
	Afterword	788
	Appendix	790
	Acronyms used	825

Contents

0.0.1	Donate	v
I	Code patterns	1
1	Short introduction to the CPU	3
1.1	Couple words about difference between ISA ⁸	3
2	Simplest possible function	4
3	Hello, world!	5
3.1	x86	5
3.1.1	MSVC	5
3.1.2	GCC	6
3.1.3	GCC: AT&T syntax	7
3.2	x86-64	8
3.2.1	MSVC—x86-64	8
3.2.2	GCC—x86-64	9
3.3	GCC—one more thing	9
3.4	ARM	10
3.4.1	Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	10
3.4.2	Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	12
3.4.3	Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)	12
3.4.4	Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)	13
3.4.5	ARM64	13
3.5	Conclusion	15
3.6	Exercises	15
3.6.1	Exercise #1	15
4	Function prologue and epilogue	16
4.1	Recursion	16
5	Stack	17
5.1	Why does the stack grow backward?	17
5.2	What is the stack used for?	18
5.2.1	Save the return address where a function must return control after execution	18
5.2.2	Passing function arguments	19
5.2.3	Local variable storage	19
5.2.4	x86: <code>alloca()</code> function	19
5.2.5	(Windows) SEH	21
5.2.6	Buffer overflow protection	21
5.3	Typical stack layout	21
5.4	Noise in stack	22
5.5	Exercises	25
5.5.1	Exercise #1	25
5.5.2	Exercise #2	25
6	<code>printf()</code> with several arguments	27
6.1	x86: 3 arguments	27
6.1.1	MSVC	27
6.1.2	MSVC and OllyDbg	28
6.1.3	GCC	31
6.1.4	GCC and GDB	32

⁸Instruction Set Architecture

6.2	x64: 8 arguments	34
6.2.1	MSVC	34
6.2.2	GCC	34
6.2.3	GCC + GDB	35
6.3	ARM: 3 arguments	37
6.3.1	32-bit ARM	37
6.3.2	ARM64	38
6.4	ARM: 8 arguments	38
6.4.1	Optimizing Keil 6/2013: ARM mode	38
6.4.2	Optimizing Keil 6/2013: thumb mode	39
6.4.3	Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM): ARM mode	40
6.4.4	Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM): thumb-2 mode	40
6.4.5	ARM64	41
6.5	Conclusion	41
6.6	By the way	42
7	scanf()	43
7.1	Simple example	43
7.1.1	About pointers	43
7.1.2	x86	43
7.1.3	MSVC + OllyDbg	45
7.1.4	x64	47
7.1.5	ARM	48
7.2	Global variables	49
7.2.1	MSVC: x86	50
7.2.2	MSVC: x86 + OllyDbg	52
7.2.3	GCC: x86	53
7.2.4	MSVC: x64	53
7.2.5	ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	54
7.2.6	ARM64	55
7.3	scanf() result checking	55
7.3.1	MSVC: x86	56
7.3.2	MSVC: x86: IDA	56
7.3.3	MSVC: x86 + OllyDbg	61
7.3.4	MSVC: x86 + Hiew	64
7.3.5	MSVC: x64	65
7.3.6	ARM	66
7.3.7	Exercise	67
8	Accessing passed arguments	68
8.1	x86	68
8.1.1	MSVC	68
8.1.2	MSVC + OllyDbg	69
8.1.3	GCC	69
8.2	x64	70
8.2.1	MSVC	70
8.2.2	GCC	71
8.2.3	GCC: uint64_t instead of int	72
8.3	ARM	73
8.3.1	Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	73
8.3.2	Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	73
8.3.3	Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	74
8.3.4	ARM64	74
9	More about results returning	76
9.1	Attempt to use result of function returning <i>void</i>	76
9.2	What if not to use function result?	77
9.3	Returning a structure	77
10	Pointers	79
10.1	Global variables example	79
10.2	Local variables example	85
10.3	Conclusion	88

11 GOTO	89
11.1 Dead code	91
11.2 Exercise	91
12 Conditional jumps	92
12.1 Simple example	92
12.1.1 x86	92
12.1.2 ARM	103
12.2 Calculating absolute value	106
12.2.1 Optimizing MSVC	106
12.2.2 Optimizing Keil 6/2013: thumb mode	106
12.2.3 Optimizing Keil 6/2013: ARM mode	107
12.2.4 Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)	107
12.2.5 Branchless version?	107
12.3 Conditional operator	107
12.3.1 x86	107
12.3.2 ARM	108
12.3.3 ARM64	109
12.3.4 Let's rewrite it in if/else way	109
12.3.5 Conclusion	110
12.3.6 Exercise	110
12.4 Getting minimal and maximal values	110
12.4.1 32-bit	110
12.4.2 64-bit	112
12.5 Conclusion	114
12.5.1 x86	114
12.5.2 Branchless	114
13 switch()/case/default	116
13.1 Few number of cases	116
13.1.1 x86	116
13.1.2 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	126
13.1.3 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	126
13.1.4 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	127
13.1.5 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	128
13.1.6 Conclusion	128
13.2 A lot of cases	128
13.2.1 x86	128
13.2.2 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	134
13.2.3 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	135
13.2.4 Conclusion	136
13.3 When there are several case in one block	137
13.3.1 MSVC	138
13.3.2 GCC	139
13.3.3 ARM64: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1	139
13.4 Fallthrough	141
13.4.1 MSVC x86	141
13.4.2 ARM64	142
13.5 Exercises	143
13.5.1 Exercise #1	143
14 Loops	144
14.1 Simple example	144
14.1.1 x86	144
14.1.2 x86: OllyDbg	147
14.1.3 x86: tracer	147
14.1.4 ARM	149
14.1.5 One more thing	152
14.2 Memory copying routine	152
14.2.1 Straight-forward implementation	152
14.2.2 ARM in ARM mode	153
14.2.3 Vectorization	154
14.3 Several iterators	154
14.3.1 Three iterators	154
14.3.2 Two iterators	155

14.3.3 Intel C++ 2011 case	156
14.4 Conclusion	157
14.5 Exercises	159
14.5.1 Exercise #1	159
14.5.2 Exercise #2	159
14.5.3 Exercise #3	159
14.5.4 Exercise #4	160
15 Simple C-strings processings	163
15.1 strlen()	163
15.1.1 x86	163
15.1.2 ARM	170
15.2 Strings trimming	172
15.2.1 x64: Optimizing MSVC 2013	173
15.2.2 x64: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1	174
15.2.3 x64: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1	175
15.2.4 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	176
15.2.5 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	177
15.2.6 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	178
15.2.7 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	179
15.3 Exercises	179
15.3.1 Exercise #1	179
16 Replacing arithmetic instructions to other ones	182
16.1 Multiplication	182
16.1.1 Multiplication using addition	182
16.1.2 Multiplication using shifting	182
16.1.3 Multiplication using shifting/subtracting/adding	183
16.2 Division	186
16.2.1 Division using shifts	186
16.3 Division by 9	186
16.3.1 x86	187
16.3.2 ARM	188
16.3.3 How it works	189
16.3.4 Getting divisor	189
16.4 Exercises	191
16.4.1 Exercise #1	191
16.4.2 Exercise #2	191
17 Floating-point unit	193
17.1 Simple example	193
17.1.1 x86	194
17.1.2 ARM: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)	200
17.1.3 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	200
17.1.4 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	201
17.1.5 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	201
17.2 Passing floating point number via arguments	202
17.2.1 x86	202
17.2.2 ARM + Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)	203
17.2.3 ARM + Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	204
17.2.4 ARM64 + Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	204
17.3 Comparison example	204
17.3.1 x86	205
17.3.2 ARM	232
17.3.3 ARM64	235
17.4 x64	236
17.5 Exercises	236
17.5.1 Exercise #1	236
17.5.2 Exercise #2	236

18 Arrays	238
18.1 Simple example	238
18.1.1 x86	238
18.1.2 ARM	241
18.2 Buffer overflow	243
18.2.1 Reading behind array bounds	243
18.2.2 Writing behind array bounds	246
18.3 Buffer overflow protection methods	250
18.3.1 Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)	252
18.4 One more word about arrays	254
18.5 Array of pointers to strings	254
18.5.1 x64	254
18.5.2 32-bit ARM	256
18.5.3 ARM64	256
18.5.4 Array overflow	257
18.6 Multidimensional arrays	259
18.6.1 Two-dimensional array example	260
18.6.2 Access two-dimensional array as one-dimensional	261
18.6.3 Three-dimensional array example	263
18.6.4 More examples	265
18.7 Pack of strings as two-dimensional array	265
18.7.1 32-bit ARM	267
18.7.2 ARM64	267
18.7.3 Conclusion	268
18.8 Negative array indices	268
18.9 Conclusion	270
18.10 Exercises	270
18.10.1 Exercise #1	270
18.10.2 Exercise #2	272
18.10.3 Exercise #3	276
18.10.4 Exercise #4	277
18.10.5 Exercise #5	278
19 Working with specific bits	281
19.1 Specific bit checking	281
19.1.1 x86	281
19.1.2 ARM	283
19.2 Specific bit setting/clearing	284
19.2.1 x86	285
19.2.2 ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	290
19.2.3 ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	291
19.2.4 ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)	291
19.2.5 ARM: more about BIC instruction	291
19.2.6 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	291
19.2.7 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	292
19.3 Shifts	292
19.4 Counting bits set to 1	292
19.4.1 x86	293
19.4.2 x64	301
19.4.3 ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)	303
19.4.4 ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)	304
19.4.5 ARM64 + Optimizing GCC 4.9	304
19.4.6 ARM64 + Non-optimizing GCC 4.9	304
19.5 CRC32 calculation example	305
19.6 Network address calculation example	308
19.6.1 calc_network_address()	309
19.6.2 form_IP()	309
19.6.3 print_as_IP()	311
19.6.4 form_netmask() and set_bit()	312
19.6.5 Summary	313
19.7 Conclusion	313
19.7.1 Check for specific bit (known at compiling stage)	313
19.7.2 Check for specific bit (specified at runtime)	314
19.7.3 Set specific bit (known at compiling stage)	314

19.7.4	Set specific bit (specified at runtime)	314
19.7.5	Clear specific bit (known at compiling stage)	315
19.7.6	Clear specific bit (specified at runtime)	315
19.8	Exercises	315
19.8.1	Exercise #1	315
19.8.2	Exercise #2	316
19.8.3	Exercise #3	318
19.8.4	Exercise #4	318
20	Linear congruential generator as random number generator	320
20.1	x86	320
20.2	x64	321
20.3	32-bit ARM	322
21	Structures	323
21.1	MSVC: SYSTEMTIME example	323
21.1.1	OllyDbg	325
21.1.2	Replacing the structure by array	325
21.2	Let's allocate space for structure using malloc()	326
21.3	UNIX: struct tm	328
21.3.1	Linux	328
21.3.2	ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	335
21.3.3	ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)	335
21.4	Fields packing in structure	336
21.4.1	x86	337
21.4.2	x86 + OllyDbg + fields are packed by default	340
21.4.3	x86 + OllyDbg + fields aligning by 1 byte boundary	341
21.4.4	ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	341
21.4.5	ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)	342
21.5	Nested structures	342
21.5.1	OllyDbg	344
21.6	Bit fields in structure	344
21.6.1	CPUID example	344
21.6.2	Working with the float type as with a structure	348
21.7	Exercises	351
21.7.1	Exercise #1	351
21.7.2	Exercise #2	351
22	Unions	355
22.1	Pseudo-random number generator example	355
22.2	Calculating machine epsilon	357
22.2.1	x86	357
22.2.2	ARM64	357
22.2.3	Conclusion	358
23	Pointers to functions	359
23.1	MSVC	360
23.1.1	MSVC + OllyDbg	362
23.1.2	MSVC + tracer	364
23.1.3	MSVC + tracer (code coverage)	366
23.2	GCC	366
23.2.1	GCC + GDB (with source code)	367
23.2.2	GCC + GDB (no source code)	368
24	64-bit values in 32-bit environment	371
24.1	Arguments passing, addition, subtraction	371
24.2	Multiplication, division	372
24.3	Shifting right	374
24.4	Converting 32-bit value into 64-bit one	374
25	SIMD	377
25.1	Vectorization	377
25.1.1	Addition example	378
25.1.2	Memory copy example	383
25.2	SIMD strlen() implementation	386

26 64 bits	390
26.1 x86-64	390
26.2 ARM	396
26.3 Float point numbers	397
27 Working with float point numbers using SIMD	398
27.1 Simple example	398
27.1.1 x64	398
27.1.2 x86	399
27.2 Passing floating point number via arguments	405
27.3 Comparison example	405
27.3.1 x64	406
27.3.2 x86	407
27.4 Calculating machine epsilon: x64 and SIMD	407
27.5 Summary	408
28 Temperature converting	409
28.1 Integer values	409
28.1.1 Optimizing MSVC 2012 x86	409
28.1.2 Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64	410
28.2 Float point values	411
29 Fibonacci numbers	414
29.1 Example #1	414
29.2 Example #2	417
29.3 Summary	420
30 C99 restrict	421
31 Inline functions	424
31.1 Strings and memory functions	425
31.1.1 strcmp()	425
31.1.2 strlen()	427
31.1.3 strcpy()	427
31.1.4 memset()	427
31.1.5 memcpy()	428
31.1.6 memcmp()	431
31.1.7 IDA script	432
32 Incorrectly disassembled code	433
32.1 Disassembling started incorrectly (x86)	433
32.2 How random noise looks disassembled?	434
33 Duff's device	438
34 Variadic functions	441
34.1 Computing arithmetic mean	441
34.1.1 cdecl calling conventions	441
34.1.2 Register-based calling conventions	442
34.2 vprintf() function case	444
35 String to number conversion (atoi())	446
35.1 Simple example	446
35.1.1 Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64	446
35.1.2 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64	447
35.1.3 Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	447
35.1.4 Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)	448
35.1.5 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64	448
35.2 Slightly advanced example	449
35.2.1 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64	449
35.2.2 Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	451
36 Branchless abs() function	452
36.1 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64	452
36.2 Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64	452

37 C++	454
37.1 Classes	454
37.1.1 Simple example	454
37.1.2 Class inheritance	460
37.1.3 Encapsulation	462
37.1.4 Multiple inheritance	464
37.1.5 Virtual methods	467
37.2 ostream	469
37.3 References	470
37.4 STL	470
37.4.1 std::string	471
37.4.2 std::list	477
37.4.3 std::vector	485
37.4.4 std::map and std::set	492
38 Obfuscation	502
38.1 Text strings	502
38.2 Executable code	502
38.2.1 Inserting garbage	502
38.2.2 Replacing instructions to bloated equivalents	503
38.2.3 Always executed/never executed code	503
38.2.4 Making a lot of mess	503
38.2.5 Using indirect pointers	504
38.3 Virtual machine / pseudo-code	504
38.4 Other thing to mention	504
38.5 Exercises	504
38.5.1 Exercise #1	504
39 More about ARM	505
39.1 Number sign (#) before number	505
39.2 Addressing modes	505
39.3 Loading constants into register	505
39.3.1 32-bit ARM	505
39.3.2 ARM64	506
39.4 Relocs in ARM64	507
40 Windows 16-bit	509
40.1 Example#1	509
40.2 Example #2	509
40.3 Example #3	510
40.4 Example #4	511
40.5 Example #5	513
40.6 Example #6	517
40.6.1 Global variables	518
II Important fundamentals	520
41 Signed number representations	521
42 Endianness	522
42.1 Big-endian	522
42.2 Little-endian	522
42.3 Example	522
42.4 Bi-endian	523
42.5 Converting data	523
43 Memory	524
44 CPU	525
44.1 Branch predictors	525
44.2 Data dependencies	525

III Finding important/interesting stuff in the code	526
45 Identification of executable files	528
45.1 Microsoft Visual C++	528
45.1.1 Name mangling	528
45.2 GCC	528
45.2.1 Name mangling	528
45.2.2 Cygwin	528
45.2.3 MinGW	528
45.3 Intel FORTRAN	528
45.4 Watcom, OpenWatcom	529
45.4.1 Name mangling	529
45.5 Borland	529
45.5.1 Delphi	529
45.6 Other known DLLs	530
46 Communication with the outer world (win32)	531
46.1 Often used functions in Windows API	531
46.2 tracer: Intercepting all functions in specific module	532
47 Strings	533
47.1 Text strings	533
47.1.1 C/C++	533
47.1.2 Borland Delphi	533
47.1.3 Unicode	534
47.1.4 Base64	536
47.2 Error/debug messages	536
48 Calls to assert()	537
49 Constants	538
49.1 Magic numbers	538
49.1.1 DHCP	539
49.2 Constant searching	539
50 Finding the right instructions	540
51 Suspicious code patterns	542
51.1 XOR instructions	542
51.2 Hand-written assembly code	542
52 Using magic numbers while tracing	544
53 Other things	545
53.1 General idea	545
53.2 C++	545
54 Old-school techniques, nevertheless, interesting to know	546
54.1 Memory “snapshots” comparing	546
54.1.1 Windows registry	546
IV OS-specific	547
55 Arguments passing methods (calling conventions)	548
55.1 cdecl	548
55.2 stdcall	548
55.2.1 Variable arguments number functions	549
55.3 fastcall	549
55.3.1 GCC regparm	550
55.3.2 Watcom/OpenWatcom	550
55.4 thiscall	550
55.5 x86-64	550
55.5.1 Windows x64	550
55.5.2 Linux x64	552
55.6 Returning values of <i>float</i> and <i>double</i> type	553

55.7	Modifying arguments	553
55.8	Taking a pointer to function argument	553
56	Thread Local Storage	556
57	System calls (syscall-s)	557
57.1	Linux	557
57.2	Windows	558
58	Linux	559
58.1	Position-independent code	559
58.1.1	Windows	561
58.2	LD_PRELOAD hack in Linux	561
59	Windows NT	564
59.1	CRT (win32)	564
59.2	Win32 PE	567
59.2.1	Terminology	567
59.2.2	Base address	568
59.2.3	Subsystem	568
59.2.4	OS version	568
59.2.5	Sections	568
59.2.6	Relocations (relocs)	569
59.2.7	Exports and imports	570
59.2.8	Resources	572
59.2.9	.NET	572
59.2.10	TLS	572
59.2.11	Tools	573
59.2.12	Further reading	573
59.3	Windows SEH	573
59.3.1	Let's forget about MSVC	573
59.3.2	Now let's get back to MSVC	578
59.3.3	Windows x64	591
59.3.4	Read more about SEH	595
59.4	Windows NT: Critical section	595
V	Tools	597
60	Disassembler	598
60.1	IDA	598
61	Debugger	599
61.1	tracer	599
61.2	OllyDbg	599
61.3	GDB	599
62	System calls tracing	600
62.0.1	strace / dtruss	600
63	Decompilers	601
64	Other tools	602
VI	More examples	603
65	Task manager practical joke (Windows Vista)	604
65.1	Using LEA to load values	606
66	Color Lines game practical joke	608
67	Minesweeper (Windows XP)	612
67.1	Exercises	616

68 Hand decompiling + Z3 SMT solver	617
68.1 Hand decompiling	617
68.2 Now let's use Z3 SMT solver	620
69 Dongles	625
69.1 Example #1: MacOS Classic and PowerPC	625
69.2 Example #2: SCO OpenServer	631
69.2.1 Decrypting error messages	638
69.3 Example #3: MS-DOS	640
70 "QR9": Rubik's cube inspired amateur crypto-algorithm	646
71 SAP	673
71.1 About SAP client network traffic compression	673
71.2 SAP 6.0 password checking functions	683
72 Oracle RDBMS	687
72.1 V\$VERSION table in the Oracle RDBMS	687
72.2 X\$KSMRLU table in Oracle RDBMS	694
72.3 V\$TIMER table in Oracle RDBMS	695
73 Handwritten assembly code	700
73.1 EICAR test file	700
74 Demos	702
74.1 10 PRINT CHR\$(205.5+RND(1)); : GOTO 10	702
74.1.1 Trixter's 42 byte version	702
74.1.2 My attempt to reduce Trixter's version: 27 bytes	703
74.1.3 Take a random memory garbage as a source of randomness	703
74.1.4 Conclusion	704
74.2 Mandelbrot set	705
74.2.1 Theory	706
74.2.2 Let's back to the demo	711
74.2.3 My "fixed" version	713
VII Examples of reversing proprietary file formats	715
75 Millenium game save file	716
76 Oracle RDBMS: .SYM-files	723
77 Oracle RDBMS: .MSB-files	732
77.1 Summary	736
VIII Other things	737
78 npad	738
79 Executable files patching	740
79.1 Text strings	740
79.2 x86 code	740
80 Compiler intrinsic	741
81 Compiler's anomalies	742
82 OpenMP	743
82.1 MSVC	744
82.2 GCC	746
83 Itanium	749
84 8086 memory model	752

85 Basic blocks reordering	753
85.1 Profile-guided optimization	753
IX Books/blogs worth reading	755
86 Books	756
86.1 Windows	756
86.2 C/C++	756
86.3 x86 / x86-64	756
86.4 ARM	756
87 Blogs	757
87.1 Windows	757
88 Other	758
X Exercises	759
89 Level 1	761
89.1 Exercise 1.4	761
90 Level 2	762
90.1 Exercise 2.4	762
90.1.1 Optimizing MSVC 2010	762
90.1.2 GCC 4.4.1	763
90.1.3 Optimizing Keil (ARM mode)	764
90.1.4 Optimizing Keil (thumb mode)	764
90.1.5 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)	765
90.2 Exercise 2.6	766
90.2.1 Optimizing MSVC 2010	766
90.2.2 Optimizing Keil (ARM mode)	766
90.2.3 Optimizing Keil (thumb mode)	767
90.2.4 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)	768
90.3 Exercise 2.13	768
90.3.1 Optimizing MSVC 2012	768
90.3.2 Keil (ARM mode)	769
90.3.3 Keil (thumb mode)	769
90.3.4 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)	769
90.4 Exercise 2.14	769
90.4.1 MSVC 2012	769
90.4.2 Keil (ARM mode)	770
90.4.3 GCC 4.6.3 for Raspberry Pi (ARM mode)	771
90.4.4 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)	772
90.5 Exercise 2.15	772
90.5.1 Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64	772
90.5.2 Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64	775
90.5.3 Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 x86	776
90.5.4 Keil (ARM mode): Cortex-R4F CPU as target	776
90.5.5 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)	777
90.6 Exercise 2.16	778
90.6.1 Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64	778
90.6.2 Optimizing Keil (ARM mode)	779
90.6.3 Optimizing Keil (thumb mode)	779
90.6.4 Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)	780
90.6.5 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)	780
90.7 Exercise 2.17	783
90.8 Exercise 2.18	783
90.9 Exercise 2.19	783

91 Level 3	784
91.1 Exercise 3.2	784
91.2 Exercise 3.3	784
91.3 Exercise 3.4	784
91.4 Exercise 3.5	784
91.5 Exercise 3.6	785
91.6 Exercise 3.8	785
92 crackme / keygenme	786
Afterword	788
93 Questions?	788
Appendix	790
A x86	790
A.1 Terminology	790
A.2 General purpose registers	790
A.2.1 RAX/EAX/AX/AL	790
A.2.2 RBX/EBX/BX/BL	790
A.2.3 RCX/ECX/CX/CL	791
A.2.4 RDX/EDX/DX/DI	791
A.2.5 RSI/ESI/SI/SIL	791
A.2.6 RDI/EDI/DI/DIL	791
A.2.7 R8/R8D/R8W/R8L	791
A.2.8 R9/R9D/R9W/R9L	791
A.2.9 R10/R10D/R10W/R10L	791
A.2.10 R11/R11D/R11W/R11L	792
A.2.11 R12/R12D/R12W/R12L	792
A.2.12 R13/R13D/R13W/R13L	792
A.2.13 R14/R14D/R14W/R14L	792
A.2.14 R15/R15D/R15W/R15L	792
A.2.15 RSP/ESP/SP/SPL	792
A.2.16 RBP/EBP/BP/BPL	792
A.2.17 RIP/EIP/IP	793
A.2.18 CS/DS/ES/SS/FS/GS	793
A.2.19 Flags register	793
A.3 FPU-registers	794
A.3.1 Control Word	794
A.3.2 Status Word	794
A.3.3 Tag Word	795
A.4 SIMD-registers	795
A.4.1 MMX-registers	795
A.4.2 SSE and AVX-registers	795
A.5 Debugging registers	795
A.5.1 DR6	795
A.5.2 DR7	796
A.6 Instructions	796
A.6.1 Prefixes	796
A.6.2 Most frequently used instructions	797
A.6.3 Less frequently used instructions	801
A.6.4 FPU instructions	805
A.6.5 Instructions having printable ASCII opcode	806
B ARM	808
B.1 Terminology	808
B.2 Versions	808
B.3 32-bit ARM (AArch32)	808
B.3.1 General purpose registers	808
B.3.2 Current Program Status Register (CPSR)	809
B.3.3 VFP (floating point) and NEON registers	809
B.4 64-bit ARM (AArch64)	809

B.4.1	General purpose registers	809
B.5	Instructions	810
C	Some GCC library functions	811
D	Some MSVC library functions	812
E	Cheatsheets	813
E.1	IDA	813
E.2	OllyDbg	813
E.3	MSVC	814
E.4	GCC	814
E.5	GDB	814
F	Exercise solutions	816
F.1	Per chapter	816
F.1.1	“Stack” chapter	816
F.1.2	“switch()/case/default” chapter	816
F.1.3	Exercise #1	816
F.1.4	“Loops” chapter	816
F.1.5	Exercise #3	816
F.1.6	Exercise #4	817
F.1.7	“Simple C-strings processings” chapter	817
F.1.8	“Replacing arithmetic instructions to other ones” chapter	817
F.1.9	“Floating-point unit” chapter	817
F.1.10	“Arrays” chapter	818
F.1.11	“Working with specific bits” chapter	819
F.1.12	“Structures” chapter	820
F.1.13	“Obfuscation” chapter	821
F.2	Level 1	821
F.2.1	Exercise 1.1	821
F.2.2	Exercise 1.4	821
F.3	Level 2	821
F.3.1	Exercise 2.4	821
F.3.2	Exercise 2.6	822
F.3.3	Exercise 2.13	822
F.3.4	Exercise 2.14	822
F.3.5	Exercise 2.15	822
F.3.6	Exercise 2.16	822
F.3.7	Exercise 2.17	823
F.3.8	Exercise 2.18	823
F.3.9	Exercise 2.19	823
F.4	Level 3	823
F.4.1	Exercise 3.2	823
F.4.2	Exercise 3.3	823
F.4.3	Exercise 3.4	823
F.4.4	Exercise 3.5	823
F.4.5	Exercise 3.6	823
F.4.6	Exercise 3.8	823
F.5	Other	823
F.5.1	“Minesweeper (Windows XP)” example	823
	Acronyms used	825
	Glossary	829
	Index	831

Preface

Here are some of my notes in English for beginners about [reverse engineering](#) who would like to learn to understand x86 (which accounts for almost all executable software in the world) and ARM code created by C/C++ compilers.

There are several popular meanings of the term “[reverse engineering](#)”: 1) reverse engineering of software: researching compiled programs; 2) 3D model scanning and reworking in order to make a copy of it; 3) recreating [DBMS](#)⁹ structure. This book is related to the first meaning.

Topics discussed

x86/x64, ARM/ARM64.

Topics touched

Oracle RDBMS ([72](#)), Itanium ([83](#)), copy-protection dongles ([69](#)), LD_PRELOAD ([58.2](#)), stack overflow, [ELF](#)¹⁰, win32 PE file format ([59.2](#)), x86-64 ([26.1](#)), critical sections ([59.4](#)), syscalls ([57](#)), [TLS](#)¹¹, position-independent code ([PIC](#)¹²) ([58.1](#)), profile-guided optimization ([85.1](#)), C++ STL ([37.4](#)), OpenMP ([82](#)), SEH ([59.3](#)).

Notes

Why one should learn assembly language these days? Unless you are OS developer, you probably don't need write in assembly: modern compilers perform optimizations much better than humans do. ¹³. Also, modern [CPU](#)¹⁴s are very complex devices and assembly knowledge would not help you understand its internals. That said, there are at least two areas where a good understanding of assembly may help: first, security/malware research. Second, gaining a better understanding of your compiled code while debugging.

Therefore this book is intended for those who want to understand assembly language rather than to write in it, which is why there are many examples of compiler output.

How would one find a reverse engineering job?

There are hiring threads that appear from time to time on reddit devoted to RE¹⁵ ([2013 Q3](#), [2014](#)). Try looking there. A somewhat related hiring thread can be found in the “netsec” subreddit: [2014 Q2](#).

About the author



Dennis Yurichev is an experienced reverse engineer and programmer. His CV is available on his website¹⁶.

Thanks

For patiently answering all my questions: Andrey “herm1t” Baranovich, Slava “Avid” Kazakov.

For sending me notes about mistakes and inaccuracies: Stanislav “Beaver” Bobrytsky, Alexander Lysenko, Shell Rocket, Zhu Ruijin.

For helping me in other ways: Andrew Zubinski, Arnaud Patard (rtp on #debian-arm IRC).

⁹Database management systems

¹⁰Executable file format widely used in *NIX system including Linux

¹¹Thread Local Storage

¹²Position Independent Code: [58.1](#)

¹³A very good text about this topic: [\[Fog13b\]](#)

¹⁴Central processing unit

¹⁵<http://www.reddit.com/r/ReverseEngineering/>

¹⁶http://yurichev.com/Dennis_Yurichev.pdf

For translating to Chinese simplified: Xian Chi.

For proofreading: Alexander "Lstar" Chernenkiy, Vladimir Botov, Andrei Brazhuk, Mark "Logxen" Cooper, Yuan Jochen Kang.

Thanks also to all the folks on github.com who have contributed notes and corrections.

A lot of \LaTeX packages were used: I would like to thank the authors as well.

0.0.1 Donate

As it turns out, (technical) writing takes a lot of effort and work.

This book is free, available freely and available in source code form ¹⁷ (LaTeX), and it will be so forever.

It's also ad-free.

My current plan for this book is to add lots of information about: PLANS¹⁸.

If you want me to continue writing on all these topics you may consider donating.

I worked more than year on this book ¹⁹, there are more than 800 pages. There are at least ≈ 400 TeX-files, ≈ 150 C/C++ source codes, ≈ 470 various listings, ≈ 160 screenshots.

Price of other books on the same subject varies between \$20 and \$50 on amazon.com.

Ways to donate are available on the page: <http://beginners.re/donate.html>

Every donor's name will be included in the book! Donors also have a right to ask me to rearrange items in my writing plan.

Donors

17 * anonymous, 2 * Oleg Vygovsky (50+100 UAH), Daniel Bilar (\$50), James Truscott (\$4.5), Luis Rocha (\$63), Joris van de Vis (\$127), Richard S Shultz (\$20), Jang Minchang (\$20), Shade Atlas (5 AUD), Yao Xiao (\$10), Pawel Szczur (40 CHF), Justin Simms (\$20), Shawn the R0ck (\$27), Ki Chan Ahn (\$50), Triop AB (100 SEK), Ange Albertini (10 EUR), Sergey Lukianov (300 RUR), Ludvig Gislason (200 SEK), Gérard Labadie (40 EUR), Sergey Volchkov (10 AUD), Vankayala Vigneswararao (\$50), Philippe Teuwen (\$4), Martin Haeberli (\$10), Victor Cazacov (5 EUR), Tobias Sturzenegger (10 CHF), Sonny Thai (\$15), Bayna ALZaabi (\$75), Redfive B.V. (25 EUR), Joona Oskari Heikkilä (5 EUR), Marshall Bishop (\$50), Nicolas Werner (12 EUR), Jeremy Brown (\$100), Alexandre Borges (\$25), Vladimir Dikovski (50 EUR), Jiarui Hong (100.00 SEK), Jim_Di (500 RUR).

About Korean translation

You can free to download and read my book online. However DO NOT distribute any translation WITHOUT MY PERMISSION. Please contact me at dennis(a)yurichev.com or the Korean translation copyright holder at acornpub(a)acornpub.co.kr if you are interested in the Korean translation.

¹⁷<https://github.com/dennis714/RE-for-beginners>

¹⁸<https://github.com/dennis714/RE-for-beginners/blob/master/PLANS>

¹⁹Initial git commit from March 2013:

<https://github.com/dennis714/RE-for-beginners/tree/1e57ef540d827c7f7a92fcb3a4626af3e13c7ee4>

Part I

Code patterns

When I first learned C and then C++, I wrote small pieces of code, compiled them, and saw what was produced in the assembly language. This was easy for me. I did it many times and the relation between the C/C++ code and what the compiler produced was imprinted in my mind so deep that I can quickly understand what was in the original C code when I look at produced x86 code. Perhaps this technique may be helpful for someone else so I will try to describe some examples here.

Sometimes, I use really ancient compilers, in order to get shortest (or simplest) possible code snippet.

Exercises

When I learned assembly language, I also often compile small C-functions and then rewrite them gradually to assembly, trying to make as short as possible code. This probably not worth doing today in real-world scenarios (because it's hard to compete with modern compilers on efficiency), but it's a very good method to learn assembly better. So you can try to take any assembly code from this book and try to make it shorter. But please also do not forget about testing your results!

Difference between non-optimized (debug) and optimized (release) versions

Non-optimizing compiler works faster and produce more understandable (verbose, though) code.

Optimizing (release) compiler works slower and trying to produce faster (but not necessarily smaller) code.

One important feature of debugging code is that there are might be debugging information showing connections between each line in source code and address in code. Optimizing compilers tend to produce such code where the whole source code lines may be optimized away.

Practicing reverse engineer usually encounter both versions, because some developers turn on optimization switches, some others are not.

That's why I try to give examples of both code.

Chapter 1

Short introduction to the CPU

The **CPU** is the unit which executes all of the programs.

Short glossary:

Instruction : a primitive command to the **CPU**. Simplest examples: moving data between registers, working with memory, arithmetic primitives. As a rule, each **CPU** has its own instruction set architecture (**ISA**).

Machine code : code for the **CPU**. Each instruction is usually encoded by several bytes.

Assembly language : mnemonic code and some extensions like macros which are intended to make a programmer's life easier.

CPU register : Each **CPU** has a fixed set of general purpose registers (**GPR**¹). ≈ 8 in x86, ≈ 16 in x86-64, ≈ 16 in ARM. The easiest way to understand a register is to think of it as an untyped temporary variable. Imagine you are working with a high-level **PL**² and you have only 8 32-bit (or 64-bit) variables. A lot of things can be done using only these!

What is the difference between machine code and a **PL**? It is much easier for humans to use a high-level **PL** like C/C++, Java, Python, etc., but it is easier for a **CPU** to use a much lower level of abstraction. Perhaps, it would be possible to invent a **CPU** which can execute high-level **PL** code, but it would be much more complex. On the contrary, it is very inconvenient for humans to use assembly language due to its low-levelness. Besides, it is very hard to do it without making a huge amount of annoying mistakes. The program which converts high-level **PL** code into assembly is called a *compiler*.

1.1 Couple words about difference between **ISA**

x86 was always an **ISA** with variable-length opcodes, so when 64-bit era came, x64 extensions was not affect **ISA** very much. x86 have a lot of instructions appeared in 16-bit 8086 CPU and still present in latest CPUs.

ARM is a **RISC**³ **CPU** designed with constant opcode length in mind, which had some advantages in past. So at very start, ARM has all instructions encoded in 4 bytes⁴. This is now called "ARM mode".

Then they thought it's not very frugal. In fact, most used **CPU** instructions⁵ in real world applications can be encoded using lesser amount of information. So they added another **ISA** called Thumb, where each instruction encoded in just 2 bytes. Now this is called "Thumb mode". But not all ARM instructions could be encoded in just 2 bytes, so Thumb instruction set is somewhat limited. Code compiled for ARM mode and Thumb mode may coexist in one program, of course.

Then ARM creators thought Thumb can be extended: Thumb-2 was appeared (in ARMv7). Thumb-2 is still 2-byte instructions, but some new instructions has size of 4 bytes. There is a common misconception that thumb-2 is a mix of ARM and thumb. This is not correct. Rather, thumb-2 was extended to fully support processor features so it could compete with ARM mode. On instruction richness, Thumb-2 can compete with original ARM mode. The majority of iPod/iPhone/iPad applications are compiled for the thumb-2 instruction set because Xcode does this by default.

Then 64-bit ARM came, this **ISA** has 4-byte opcodes again, without any additional Thumb mode. But 64-bit requirements affected **ISA**, so, summarizing, we now have 3 ARM instruction sets: ARM mode, Thumb mode (including Thumb-2) and ARM64. These **ISA**'s intersects partially, but I would say, they are much more different **ISA**'s than variations of one. Therefore, I try to add fragments of code in all 3 ARM **ISA**'s in this book.

There are more **RISC ISA**s with fixed length 32-bit opcodes, these are at least MIPS, PowerPC and Alpha AXP.

¹General Purpose Registers

²Programming language

³Reduced instruction set computing

⁴By the way, fixed-length instructions are handy in a way that one can calculate the next (or previous) instruction's address without effort. This feature will be discussed in switch() (13.2.2) section.

⁵These are MOV/PUSH/CALL/jcc

Chapter 2

Simplest possible function

Probably, the simplest possible function is that one which just returns some constant value.

Here it is:

```
int f()
{
    return 123;
};
```

And that's what optimizing GCC compiler does:

Listing 2.1: Optimizing GCC

```
f:
    mov    eax, 123
    ret
```

MSVC's result is very same.

There are just two instructions: first is placing 123 value into EAX register which is used for return value passing and the second one is RET, which returns execution to [caller](#). Caller will take the result from EAX register.

What about ARM?

Listing 2.2: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
f PROC
    MOV    r0,#0x7b ; 123
    BX    lr
ENDP
```

ARM uses R0 register for results returning, so 123 is placed into R0 here.

Return address ([RA](#)¹) is not saved in the local stack in ARM, but rather in [LR](#)² register. So BX LR instruction is jumping to that address, effectively, returning execution to [caller](#).

It should be noted that MOV is confusing name for instruction in both x86 and ARM ISAs. In fact, data is not *moved*, it's rather *copied*.

¹Return Address

²Link Register

Chapter 3

Hello, world!

Let's continue with the famous example from the "The C programming Language"[\[Ker88\]](#) book:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf("hello, world");
    return 0;
};
```

3.1 x86

3.1.1 MSVC

Let's compile it in MSVC 2010:

```
cl 1.cpp /Fa1.asm
```

(/Fa option means generate assembly listing file)

Listing 3.1: MSVC 2010

```
CONST SEGMENT
$SG3830 DB 'hello, world', 00H
CONST ENDS
PUBLIC _main
EXTRN _printf:PROC
; Function compile flags: /Odtp
_TEXT SEGMENT
_main PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    OFFSET $SG3830
    call   _printf
    add     esp, 4
    xor     eax, eax
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_main ENDP
_TEXT ENDS
```

MSVC produces assembly listings in Intel-syntax. The difference between Intel-syntax and AT&T-syntax will be discussed hereafter: [3.1.3](#).

The compiler generated `1.obj` file will be linked into `1.exe`.

In our case, the file contain two segments: `CONST` (for data constants) and `_TEXT` (for code).

The string `hello, world` in C/C++ has type `const char []` [\[Str13, p176, 7.3.2\]](#), however it does not have its own name.

The compiler needs to deal with the string somehow so it defines the internal name `$SG3830` for it.

So the example may be rewritten as:

```
#include <stdio.h>

const char $SG3830[]="hello, world";
```

```
int main()
{
    printf($SG3830);
    return 0;
};
```

Let's back to the assembly listing. As we can see, the string is terminated by a zero byte which is standard for C/C++ strings. More about C strings: [47.1.1](#).

In the code segment, `_TEXT`, there is only one function so far: `main()`.

The function `main()` starts with prologue code and ends with epilogue code (like almost any function) ¹.

After the function prologue we see the call to the `printf()` function: `CALL _printf`.

Before the call the string address (or a pointer to it) containing our greeting is placed on the stack with the help of the `PUSH` instruction.

When the `printf()` function returns flow control to the `main()` function, string address (or pointer to it) is still in stack.

Since we do not need it anymore the [stack pointer](#) (the `ESP` register) needs to be corrected.

`ADD ESP, 4` means add 4 to the value in the `ESP` register.

Why 4? Since it is 32-bit code we need exactly 4 bytes for address passing through the stack. It is 8 bytes in x64-code.

`ADD ESP, 4` is effectively equivalent to `POP register` but without using any register ².

Some compilers (like Intel C++ Compiler) in the same situation may emit `POP ECX` instead of `ADD` (e.g. such a pattern can be observed in the Oracle RDBMS code as it is compiled by Intel C++ compiler). This instruction has almost the same effect but the `ECX` register contents will be rewritten. The Intel C++ compiler probably uses `POP ECX` since this instruction's opcode is shorter than `ADD ESP, x` (1 byte against 3).

Here is an example from it:

Listing 3.2: Oracle RDBMS 10.2 Linux (app.o file)

```
.text:0800029A      push    ebx
.text:0800029B      call   qksfroChild
.text:080002A0      pop     ecx
```

Read more about the stack in section (5).

After the call to `printf()`, in the original C/C++ code was `return 0` –return 0 as the result of the `main()` function.

In the generated code this is implemented by instruction `XOR EAX, EAX`

`XOR` is in fact, just "eXclusive OR" ³ but compilers often use it instead of `MOV EAX, 0` –again because it is a slightly shorter opcode (2 bytes against 5).

Some compilers emit `SUB EAX, EAX`, which means *SUBtract the value in the EAX from the value in EAX*, which in any case will result zero.

The last instruction `RET` returns control flow to the [caller](#). Usually, it is C/C++ [CRT](#) ⁴ code which in turn returns control to the [OS](#) ⁵.

3.1.2 GCC

Now let's try to compile the same C/C++ code in the GCC 4.4.1 compiler in Linux: `gcc 1.c -o 1`

Next, with the assistance of the [IDA](#) ⁶ disassembler, let's see how the `main()` function was created.

([IDA](#), like [MSVC](#), shows code in Intel-syntax).

N.B. We could also have GCC produce assembly listings in Intel-syntax by applying the options `-S -masm=intel`

Listing 3.3: GCC

```
main          proc near
var_10        = dword ptr -10h

                push    ebp
                mov     ebp, esp
                and     esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
                sub     esp, 10h
                mov     eax, offset aHelloWorld ; "hello, world"
                mov     [esp+10h+var_10], eax
                call    _printf
```

¹Read more about it in section about function prolog and epilog (4).

²CPU flags, however, are modified

³http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Exclusive_or

⁴C runtime library: `sec:CRT`

⁵Operating System

⁶Interactive Disassembler

```

    mov     eax, 0
    leave
    retn
main:     endp

```

The result is almost the same. The address of the “hello, world” string (stored in the data segment) is saved in the EAX register first and then it is stored on the stack. Also in the function prologue we see `AND ESP, 0FFFFFFF0h` –this instruction aligns the value in the ESP register on a 16-byte boundary. This results in all values in the stack being aligned. (The CPU performs better if the values it is dealing with are located in memory at addresses aligned on a 4- or 16-byte boundary)⁷.

`SUB ESP, 10h` allocates 16 bytes on the stack. Although, as we can see hereafter, only 4 are necessary here.

This is because the size of the allocated stack is also aligned on a 16-byte boundary.

The string address (or a pointer to the string) is then written directly onto the stack space without using the `PUSH` instruction. `var_10` –is a local variable and is also an argument for `printf()`. Read about it below.

Then the `printf()` function is called.

Unlike MSVC, when GCC is compiling without optimization turned on, it emits `MOV EAX, 0` instead of a shorter opcode.

The last instruction, `LEAVE` –is the equivalent of the `MOV ESP, EBP` and `POP EBP` instruction pair –in other words, this instruction sets the [stack pointer](#) (ESP) back and restores the EBP register to its initial state.

This is necessary since we modified these register values (ESP and EBP) at the beginning of the function (executing `MOV EBP, ESP / AND ESP, ...`).

3.1.3 GCC: AT&T syntax

Let’s see how this can be represented in the AT&T syntax of assembly language. This syntax is much more popular in the UNIX-world.

Listing 3.4: let’s compile in GCC 4.7.3

```
gcc -S 1_1.c
```

We get this:

Listing 3.5: GCC 4.7.3

```

.file    "1_1.c"
.section .rodata
.LC0:
.string "hello, world"
.text
.globl  main
.type   main, @function
main:
.LFB0:
.cfi_startproc
pushl  %ebp
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 8
.cfi_offset 5, -8
movl   %esp, %ebp
.cfi_def_cfa_register 5
andl   $-16, %esp
subl   $16, %esp
movl   $.LC0, (%esp)
call   printf
movl   $0, %eax
leave
.cfi_restore 5
.cfi_def_cfa 4, 4
ret
.cfi_endproc
.LFE0:
.size   main, .-main
.ident "GCC: (Ubuntu/Linaro 4.7.3-1ubuntu1) 4.7.3"
.section .note.GNU-stack,"",@progbits

```

There are a lot of macros (beginning with dot). These are not very interesting to us so far. For now, for the sake of simplification, we can ignore them (except the `.string` macro which encodes a null-terminated character sequence just like a C-string). Then we’ll see this ⁸:

⁷[Wikipedia: Data structure alignment](#)

⁸This GCC option can be used to eliminate “unnecessary” macros: `-fno-asynchronous-unwind-tables`

Listing 3.6: GCC 4.7.3

```
.LC0:
    .string "hello, world"
main:
    pushl   %ebp
    movl   %esp, %ebp
    andl   $-16, %esp
    subl   $16, %esp
    movl   $.LC0, (%esp)
    call   printf
    movl   $0, %eax
    leave
    ret
```

Some of the major differences between Intel and AT&T syntax are:

- Operands are written backwards.
 - In Intel-syntax: <instruction> <destination operand> <source operand>.
 - In AT&T syntax: <instruction> <source operand> <destination operand>.
- Here is a way to think about them: when you deal with Intel-syntax, you can put in equality sign (=) in your mind between operands and when you deal with AT&T-syntax put in a right arrow (→)⁹.
- AT&T: Before register names a percent sign must be written (%) and before numbers a dollar sign (\$). Parentheses are used instead of brackets.
- AT&T: A special symbol is to be added to each instruction defining the type of data:
 - q – quad (64 bits)
 - l – long (32 bits)
 - w – word (16 bits)
 - b – byte (8 bits)

Let's go back to the compiled result: it is identical to what we saw in [IDA](#). With one subtle difference: 0FFFFFFF0h is written as \$-16. It is the same: 16 in the decimal system is 0x10 in hexadecimal. -0x10 is equal to 0xFFFFFFF0 (for a 32-bit data type).

One more thing: the return value is to be set to 0 by using usual MOV, not XOR. MOV just loads value to a register. Its name is not intuitive (data is not moved). In other architectures, this instruction has the name "LOAD" or something like that.

3.2 x86-64

3.2.1 MSVC-x86-64

Let's also try 64-bit MSVC:

Listing 3.7: MSVC 2012 x64

```
$SG2989 DB    'hello, world', 00H
main PROC
    sub     rsp, 40
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2923
    call   printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 40
    ret    0
main ENDP
```

As of x86-64, all registers were extended to 64-bit and now have a R- prefix. In order to use the stack less often (in other words, to access external memory/cache less often), there exists a popular way to pass function arguments via registers (fastcall: [55.3](#)). I.e., one part of function arguments are passed in registers, other part—via stack. In Win64, 4 function arguments are passed in RCX, RDX, R8, R9 registers. That is what we see here: a pointer to the string for `printf()` is now passed not in stack, but in the RCX register.

Pointers are 64-bit now, so they are passed in the 64-bit part of registers (which have the R- prefix). But for backward compatibility, it is still possible to access 32-bit parts, using the E- prefix.

This is how RAX/EAX/AX/AL looks like in 64-bit x86-compatible CPUs:

⁹ By the way, in some C standard functions (e.g., `memcpy()`, `strcpy()`) arguments are listed in the same way as in Intel-syntax: pointer to destination memory block at the beginning and then pointer to source memory block.

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RAX ^{x64}							
				EAX			
						AX	
						AH	AL

The `main()` function returns an *int*-typed value, which is, in the C/C++, for better backward compatibility and portability, still 32-bit, so that is why the EAX register is cleared at the function end (i.e., 32-bit part of register) instead of RAX.

3.2.2 GCC—x86-64

Let's also try GCC in 64-bit Linux:

Listing 3.8: GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
.string "hello, world"
main:
    sub    rsp, 8
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "hello, world"
    xor    eax, eax ; number of vector registers passed
    call  printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 8
    ret
```

A method to pass function arguments in registers is also used in Linux, *BSD and Mac OS X [Mit13]. The first 6 arguments are passed in the RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8, R9 registers, and others—via stack.

So the pointer to the string is passed in EDI (32-bit part of register). But why not use the 64-bit part, RDI?

It is important to keep in mind that all MOV instructions in 64-bit mode writing something into the lower 32-bit register part, also clear the higher 32-bits [Int13]. I.e., the MOV EAX, 011223344h will write a value correctly into RAX, since the higher bits will be cleared.

If we open the compiled object file (.o), we will also see all instruction's opcodes ¹⁰:

Listing 3.9: GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
.text:0000000004004D0      main  proc near
.text:0000000004004D0 48 83 EC 08      sub    rsp, 8
.text:0000000004004D4 BF E8 05 40 00   mov    edi, offset format ; "hello, world"
.text:0000000004004D9 31 C0           xor    eax, eax
.text:0000000004004DB E8 D8 FE FF FF   call  _printf
.text:0000000004004E0 31 C0           xor    eax, eax
.text:0000000004004E2 48 83 C4 08     add    rsp, 8
.text:0000000004004E6      retn
.text:0000000004004E6      main  endp
```

As we can see, the instruction writing into EDI at 0x4004D4 occupies 5 bytes. The same instruction writing a 64-bit value into RDI will occupy 7 bytes. Apparently, GCC is trying to save some space. Besides, it can be sure that the data segment containing the string will not be allocated at the addresses higher than 4GiB.

We also see EAX register clearance before `printf()` function call. This is done because a number of used vector registers is passed in EAX by standard: “with variable arguments passes information about the number of vector registers used” [Mit13].

3.3 GCC—one more thing

The fact *anonymous* C-string has *const* type (3.1.1), and the fact C-strings allocated in constants segment are guaranteed to be immutable, has interesting consequence: compiler may use specific part of string.

Let's try this example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int f1()
{
    printf ("world\n");
};

int f2()
{
```

¹⁰This must be enabled in Options → Disassembly → Number of opcode bytes

```

    printf ("hello world\n");
};

int main()
{
    f1();
    f2();
};

```

Common C/C++-compiler (including MSVC) will allocate two strings, but let's see what GCC 4.8.1 is doing:

Listing 3.10: GCC 4.8.1 + IDA listing

```

f1      proc near
s       = dword ptr -1Ch

        sub     esp, 1Ch
        mov     [esp+1Ch+s], offset s ; "world"
        call   _puts
        add     esp, 1Ch
        retn
f1      endp

f2      proc near
s       = dword ptr -1Ch

        sub     esp, 1Ch
        mov     [esp+1Ch+s], offset aHello ; "hello "
        call   _puts
        add     esp, 1Ch
        retn
f2      endp

aHello  db 'hello '
s       db 'world',0

```

Indeed: when we print “hello world” string, these two words are laying in memory adjacently and `puts()` called from `f2()` function is not aware this string is divided. It's not divided in fact, it's divided only “virtually”, in this listing.

When `puts()` is called from `f1()`, it uses “world” string plus zero byte. `puts()` is not aware there is something before this string!

This clever trick is often used by at least GCC and can save some memory bytes.

3.4 ARM

For my experiments with ARM processors I used several compilers:

- Popular in the embedded area Keil Release 6/2013.
- Apple Xcode 4.6.3 IDE (with LLVM-GCC 4.2 compiler ¹¹).
- GCC 4.9 (Linaro) (for ARM64), available as win32-executables at <http://www.linaro.org/projects/armv8/>.

32-bit ARM code is used in all cases in this book, if not mentioned otherwise. If we talk about 64-bit ARM here, it will be called ARM64.

3.4.1 Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Let's start by compiling our example in Keil:

```
armcc.exe --arm --c90 -O0 1.c
```

The `armcc` compiler produces assembly listings in Intel-syntax but it has high-level ARM-processor related macros¹², but it is more important for us to see the instructions “as is” so let's see the compiled result in [IDA](#).

¹¹It is indeed so: Apple Xcode 4.6.3 uses open-source GCC as front-end compiler and LLVM code generator

¹²e.g. ARM mode lacks PUSH/POP instructions

Listing 3.11: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode) IDA

```
.text:00000000          main
.text:00000000 10 40 2D E9   STMFD   SP!, {R4,LR}
.text:00000004 1E 0E 8F E2   ADR    R0, aHelloWorld ; "hello, world"
.text:00000008 15 19 00 EB   BL     __2printf
.text:0000000C 00 00 A0 E3   MOV    R0, #0
.text:00000010 10 80 BD E8   LDMFD  SP!, {R4,PC}

.text:000001EC 68 65 6C 6C+aHelloWorld DCB "hello, world",0 ; DATA XREF: main+4
```

In the example we can easily see each instruction has a size of 4 bytes. Indeed, we compiled our code for ARM mode, not for thumb.

The very first instruction, ``STMFD SP!, {R4,LR}``¹³, works as an x86 PUSH instruction, writing the values of two registers (R4 and LR) into the stack. Indeed, in the output listing from the *armcc* compiler, for the sake of simplification, actually shows the ``PUSH {r4,lr}`` instruction. But it is not quite precise. The PUSH instruction is only available in thumb mode. So, to make things less messy, that is why I suggested working in IDA.

This instruction first *decrements* SP¹⁵ so it will point to the place in the stack that is free for new entries, then it writes the values of the R4 and LR registers at the address in changed SP.

This instruction (like the PUSH instruction in thumb mode) is able to save several register values at once and this may be useful. By the way, there is no such thing in x86. It can also be noted that the STMFD instruction is a generalization of the PUSH instruction (extending its features), since it can work with any register, not just with SP. In other words, STMFD may be used for storing pack of registers at the specified memory place.

The ``ADR R0, aHelloWorld`` instruction adds the value in the PC¹⁶ register to the offset where the “*hello, world*” string is located. How is the PC register used here, one might ask? This is so-called “position-independent code”.¹⁷ It is intended to be executed at a non-fixed address in memory. In the opcode of the ADR instruction, the difference between the address of this instruction and the place where the string is located is encoded. The difference will always be the same, independent of the address where the code is loaded by the OS. That’s why all we need is to add the address of the current instruction (from PC) in order to get the absolute address of our C-string in memory.

``BL __2printf``¹⁸ instruction calls the `printf()` function. Here’s how this instruction works:

- write the address following the BL instruction (0xC) into the LR;
- then pass control flow into `printf()` by writing its address into the PC register.

When `printf()` finishes its work it must have information about where it must return control. That’s why each function passes control to the address stored in the LR register.

That is the difference between “pure” RISC-processors like ARM and CISC¹⁹-processors like x86, where the return address is usually stored on the stack²⁰.

By the way, an absolute 32-bit address or offset cannot be encoded in the 32-bit BL instruction because it only has space for 24 bits. As we may remember, all ARM-mode instructions have a size of 4 bytes (32 bits). Hence they can only be located on 4-byte boundary addresses. This means the the last 2 bits of the instruction address (which are always zero bits) may be omitted. In summary, we have 26 bits for offset encoding. This is enough to encode $current_PC \pm \approx 32M$.

Next, the ``MOV R0, #0``²¹ instruction just writes 0 into the R0 register. That’s because our C-function returns 0 and the return value is to be placed in the R0 register.

The last instruction ``LDMFD SP!, R4,PC``²² is an inverse instruction of STMFD. It loads values from the stack (or any other memory place) in order to save them into R4 and PC, and *increments* the *stack pointer* SP. It works like POP here. N.B. The very first instruction STMFD saves the R4 and LR registers pair on the stack, but R4 and PC are *restored* during execution of LDMFD.

As I wrote before, the address of the place to where each function must return control is usually saved in the LR register. The very first function saves its value in the stack because our `main()` function will use the register in order to call `printf()`. In the function end this value can be written directly to the PC register, thus passing control to where our function was called. Since our `main()` function is usually the primary function in C/C++, control will be returned to the OS loader or to a point in CRT, or something like that.

DCB is an assembly language directive defining an array of bytes or ASCII strings, akin to the DB directive in x86-assembly language.

¹³STMFD¹⁴

¹⁵stack pointer. SP/ESP/RSP in x86/x64. SP in ARM.

¹⁶Program Counter. IP/EIP/RIP in x86/64. PC in ARM.

¹⁷Read more about it in relevant section (58.1)

¹⁸Branch with Link

¹⁹Complex instruction set computing

²⁰Read more about this in next section (5)

²¹MOVE

²²LDMFD²³

3.4.2 Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

Let's compile the same example using Keil in thumb mode:

```
armcc.exe --thumb --c90 -OO 1.c
```

We will get (in IDA):

Listing 3.12: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode) + IDA

```
.text:00000000      main
.text:00000000 10 B5      PUSH    {R4,LR}
.text:00000002 C0 A0      ADR     R0, aHelloWorld ; "hello, world"
.text:00000004 06 F0 2E F9    BL      __2printf
.text:00000008 00 20      MOVS   R0, #0
.text:0000000A 10 BD      POP    {R4,PC}

.text:00000304 68 65 6C 6C+aHelloWorld DCB "hello, world",0 ; DATA XREF: main+2
```

We can easily spot the 2-byte (16-bit) opcodes. This is, as I mentioned, thumb. The BL instruction however consists of two 16-bit instructions. This is because it is impossible to load an offset for the `printf()` function into PC while using the small space in one 16-bit opcode. So the first 16-bit instruction loads the higher 10 bits of the offset and the second instruction loads the lower 11 bits of the offset. As I mentioned, all instructions in thumb mode have a size of 2 bytes (or 16 bits). This means it is impossible for a thumb-instruction to be at an odd address whatsoever. Given the above, the last address bit may be omitted while encoding instructions. In summary, BL thumb-instruction can encode the address $current_PC \pm \approx 2M$.

As for the other instructions in the function: PUSH and POP work here just like the described STMFD/LDMFD but the SP register is not mentioned explicitly here. ADR works just like in previous example. MOVS writes 0 into the R0 register in order to return zero.

3.4.3 Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Xcode 4.6.3 without optimization turned on produces a lot of redundant code so we'll study optimized output, where the instruction count is as small as possible, setting compiler switch `-O3`.

Listing 3.13: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```
__text:000028C4      _hello_world
__text:000028C4 80 40 2D E9    STMFD   SP!, {R7,LR}
__text:000028C8 86 06 01 E3    MOV     R0, #0x1686
__text:000028CC 0D 70 A0 E1    MOV     R7, SP
__text:000028D0 00 00 40 E3    MOVT   R0, #0
__text:000028D4 00 00 8F E0    ADD    R0, PC, R0
__text:000028D8 C3 05 00 EB    BL     _puts
__text:000028DC 00 00 A0 E3    MOV    R0, #0
__text:000028E0 80 80 BD E8    LDMFD  SP!, {R7,PC}

__cstring:00003F62 48 65 6C 6C+aHelloWorld_0 DCB "Hello world!",0
```

The instructions STMFD and LDMFD are already familiar to us.

The MOV instruction just writes the number 0x1686 into the R0 register. This is the offset pointing to the "Hello world!" string.

The R7 register (as it is standardized in [App10]) is a frame pointer. More on it below.

The MOVT R0, #0 (MOVE Top) instruction writes 0 into higher 16 bits of the register. The issue here is that the generic MOV instruction in ARM mode may write only the lower 16 bits of the register. Remember, all instruction opcodes in ARM mode are limited in size to 32 bits. Of course, this limitation is not related to moving data between registers. That's why an additional instruction MOVT exists for writing into the higher bits (from 16 to 31 inclusive). However, its usage here is redundant because the `MOV R0, #0x1686` instruction above cleared the higher part of the register. This is probably a shortcoming of the compiler.

The `ADD R0, PC, R0` instruction adds the value in the PC to the value in the R0, to calculate absolute address of the "Hello world!" string. As we already know, it is "position-independent code" so this correction is essential here.

The BL instruction calls the `puts()` function instead of `printf()`.

GCC replaced the first `printf()` call with `puts()`. Indeed: `printf()` with a sole argument is almost analogous to `puts()`.

Almost because we need to be sure the string will not contain printf-control statements starting with %: then the effect of these two functions would be different ²⁴.

Why did the compiler replace the `printf()` with `puts()`? Probably because `puts()` is faster ²⁵.

²⁴It should also be noted the `puts()` does not require a `\n` new line symbol at the end of a string, so we do not see it here.

²⁵http://www.cisellant.de/projects/gcc_printf/gcc_printf.html

`puts()` works faster because it just passes characters to `stdout` without comparing each to the `%` symbol. Next, we see the familiar `MOV R0, #0` instruction intended to set the R0 register to 0.

3.4.4 Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

By default Xcode 4.6.3 generates code for thumb-2 in this manner:

Listing 3.14: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

```

__text:00002B6C          _hello_world
__text:00002B6C 80 B5          PUSH          {R7,LR}
__text:00002B6E 41 F2 D8 30    MOVW         R0, #0x13D8
__text:00002B72 6F 46          MOV          R7, SP
__text:00002B74 C0 F2 00 00    MOVT.W      R0, #0
__text:00002B78 78 44          ADD         R0, PC
__text:00002B7A 01 F0 38 EA    BLX         _puts
__text:00002B7E 00 20          MOVS        R0, #0
__text:00002B80 80 BD          POP         {R7,PC}

...

__cstring:00003E70 48 65 6C 6C 6F 20+aHelloWorld DCB "Hello world!",0xA,0

```

The BL and BLX instructions in thumb mode, as we recall, are encoded as a pair of 16-bit instructions. In thumb-2 these *surrogate* opcodes are extended in such a way so that new instructions may be encoded here as 32-bit instructions. That's easily observable — opcodes of thumb-2 instructions also begin with `0xFx` or `0xEx`. But in the IDA listings two opcode bytes are swapped (for thumb and thumb-2 modes). For instructions in ARM mode, the order is the fourth byte, then the third, then the second and finally the first (due to different *endianness*). So as we can see, the MOVW, MOVT.W and BLX instructions begin with `0xFx`.

One of the thumb-2 instructions is `MOVW R0, #0x13D8` — it writes a 16-bit value into the lower part of the R0 register, clearing higher bits.

Also, `MOVT.W R0, #0` works just like MOVT from the previous example but it works in thumb-2.

Among other differences, here the BLX instruction is used instead of BL. The difference is that, besides saving the RA in the LR register and passing control to the `puts()` function, the processor is also switching from thumb mode to ARM (or back). This instruction is placed here since the instruction to which control is passed looks like (it is encoded in ARM mode):

```

__symbolstub1:00003FEC _puts          ; CODE XREF: _hello_world+E
__symbolstub1:00003FEC 44 F0 9F E5    LDR PC, =__imp_puts

```

So, the observant reader may ask: why not call `puts()` right at the point in the code where it is needed? Because it is not very space-efficient.

Almost any program uses external dynamic libraries (like DLL in Windows, `.so` in *NIX or `.dylib` in Mac OS X). Often-used library functions are stored in dynamic libraries, including the standard C-function `puts()`.

In an executable binary file (Windows PE `.exe`, ELF or Mach-O) an import section is present. This is a list of symbols (functions or global variables) being imported from external modules along with the names of these modules.

The OS loader loads all modules it needs and, while enumerating import symbols in the primary module, determines the correct addresses of each symbol.

In our case, `__imp_puts` is a 32-bit variable where the OS loader will write the correct address of the function in an external library. Then the LDR instruction just takes the 32-bit value from this variable and writes it into the PC register, passing control to it.

So, in order to reduce the time that an OS loader needs for doing this procedure, it is good idea for it to write the address of each symbol only once to a specially-allocated place just for it.

Besides, as we have already figured out, it is impossible to load a 32-bit value into a register while using only one instruction without a memory access. So, it is optimal to allocate a separate function working in ARM mode with only one goal — to pass control to the dynamic library and then to jump to this short one-instruction function (the so-called *thunk function*) from thumb-code.

By the way, in the previous example (compiled for ARM mode) control passed by the BL instruction goes to the same *thunk function*. However the processor mode is not switched (hence the absence of an "X" in the instruction mnemonic).

3.4.5 ARM64

GCC

Let's compile the example using GCC 4.8.1 in ARM64:

Listing 3.15: Non-optimizing GCC 4.8.1 + objdump

```

1 0000000000400590 <main>:

```

```

2  400590:    a9bf7bfd    stp     x29, x30, [sp,#-16]!
3  400594:    910003fd    mov     x29, sp
4  400598:    90000000    adrp   x0, 400000 <_init-0x3b8>
5  40059c:    91192000    add     x0, x0, #0x648
6  4005a0:    97ffffa0    bl     400420 <puts@plt>
7  4005a4:    52800000    mov     w0, #0x0 // #0
8  4005a8:    a8c17bfd    ldp    x29, x30, [sp],#16
9  4005ac:    d65f03c0    ret
10
11 ...
12
13 Contents of section .rodata:
14 400640 01000200 00000000 48656c6c 6f210000 .....Hello!..

```

There are no thumb and thumb-2 modes in ARM64, only ARM, so there are 32-bit instructions only. Registers count is doubled: [B.4.1](#). 64-bit registers has X- prefixes, while its 32-bit parts—W-.

STP instruction (*Store Pair*) saves two registers in stack simultaneously: X29 in X30. Of course, this instruction is able to save this pair at random place of memory, but SP register is specified here, so the pair is saved in stack. ARM64 registers are 64-bit ones, each has size of 8 bytes, so one need 16 bytes for saving two registers.

Exclamation mark after operand mean that 16 will be subtracted from SP first, and only then values from registers pair will be written into the stack. This is also called *pre-index*. About difference between *post-index* and *pre-index*, read here: [39.2](#).

Hence, in terms of more familiar x86, the first instruction is just analogous to pair of PUSH X29 and PUSH X30. X29 is used as FP²⁶ in ARM64, and X30 as LR, so that's why they are saved in function prologue and restored in function epilogue.

The second instruction copies SP in X29 (or FP). This is needed for function stack frame setup.

ADRP and ADD instructions are needed for forming address of the string "Hello!" in the X0 register, because first function argument is passed in this register. But there are no instructions in ARM allowing to write large number into register (because instruction length is limited by 4 bytes, read more about it here: [39.3.1](#)). So several instructions must be used. The first instruction (ADRP) writes address of 4Kb page where string is located into X0, and the second one (ADD) just adds reminder to the address. Read more about: [39.4](#).

$0x400000 + 0x648 = 0x400648$, and we see our "Hello!" C-string in the .rodata data segment at this address.

puts() is called then using BL instruction, this was already discussed before: [3.4.3](#).

MOV instruction writes 0 into W0. W0 is low 32 bits of 64-bit X0 register:

High 32-bit part	low 32-bit part
X0	
	W0

Function result is returning via X0 and main() returning 0, so that's how returning result is prepared. But why 32-bit part? Because *int* data type in ARM64, just like in x86-64, is still 32-bit, for better compatibility. So if function returning 32-bit *int*, only 32 lowest bits of X0 register should be filled.

In order to get sure about it, I changed by example slightly and recompiled it. Now main() returns 64-bit value:

Listing 3.16: main() returning a value of uint64_t type

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t main()
{
    printf ("Hello!\n");
    return 0;
};

```

Result is very same, but that's how MOV at that line is now looks like:

Listing 3.17: Non-optimizing GCC 4.8.1 + objdump

```

4005a4:    d2800000    mov     x0, #0x0 // #0

```

LDP (*Load Pair*) then restores X29 and X30 registers. There are no exclamation mark after instruction: this mean, the value is first loaded from the stack, only then SP value is increased by 16. This is called *post-index*.

New instruction appeared in ARM64: RET. It works just as BX LR, but a special *hint* bit is added, telling to the CPU that this is return from the function, not just another jump instruction, so it can execute it more optimally.

Due to simplicity of the function, optimizing GCC generates the very same code.

²⁶Frame Pointer

3.5 Conclusion

The main difference between x86/ARM and x64/ARM64 code is that pointer to the string is now 64-bit. Indeed, modern CPUs are 64-bit now because memory is cheaper nowadays, we can add much more of it to computers, so 32-bit pointers are not enough to address it. So all pointers are 64-bit now.

3.6 Exercises

3.6.1 Exercise #1

```
main:
  push 0xFFFFFFFF
  call MessageBeep
  xor  eax, eax
  retn
```

What this win32-function does?

Chapter 4

Function prologue and epilogue

A function prologue is a sequence of instructions at the start of a function. It often looks something like the following code fragment:

```
push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
sub     esp, X
```

What these instructions do: saves the value in the EBP register, sets the value of the EBP register to the value of the ESP and then allocates space on the stack for local variables.

The value in the EBP is fixed over a period of function execution and it is to be used for local variables and arguments access. One can use ESP, but it is changing over time and it is not convenient.

The function epilogue frees allocated space in the stack, returns the value in the EBP register back to initial state and returns the control flow to [callee](#):

```
mov     esp, ebp
pop     ebp
ret     0
```

Function prologues and epilogues are usually detected in disassemblers for function delimitation from each other.

4.1 Recursion

Epilogues and prologues can make recursion performance worse.

For example, once upon a time I wrote a function to seek the correct node in a binary tree. As a recursive function it would look stylish but since additional time is to be spent at each function call for the prologue/epilogue, it was working a couple of times slower than an iterative (recursion-free) implementation.

By the way, that is the reason compilers use [tail call](#).

Chapter 5

Stack

A stack is one of the most fundamental data structures in computer science ¹.

Technically, it is just a block of memory in process memory along with the ESP or RSP register in x86 or x64, or the SP register in ARM, as a pointer within the block.

The most frequently used stack access instructions are PUSH and POP (in both x86 and ARM thumb-mode). PUSH subtracts 4 in 32-bit mode (or 8 in 64-bit mode) from ESP/RSP/SP and then writes the contents of its sole operand to the memory address pointed to by ESP/RSP/SP.

POP is the reverse operation: get the data from memory pointed to by SP, put it in the operand (often a register) and then add 4 (or 8) to the stack pointer.

After stack allocation the stack pointer points to the end of stack. PUSH decreases the stack pointer and POP increases it. The end of the stack is actually at the beginning of the memory allocated for the stack block. It seems strange, but that's the way it is.

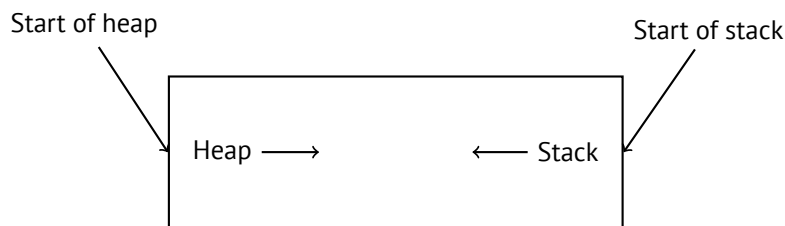
Besides support of descending stacks, ARM has also support of ascending stacks.

For example the STMFD/LDMFD, STMED²/LDMED³ instructions are intended to deal with a descending stack. The STMFA⁴/LDMFA⁵, STMEA⁶/LDMEA⁷ instructions are intended to deal with an ascending stack.

5.1 Why does the stack grow backward?

Intuitively, we might think that, like any other data structure, the stack may grow upward, i.e., towards higher addresses.

The reason the stack grows backward is probably historical. When computers were big and occupied a whole room, it was easy to divide memory into two parts, one for the heap and one for the stack. Of course, it was unknown how big the heap and the stack would be during program execution, so this solution was the simplest possible.



In [RT74] we can read:

The user-core part of an image is divided into three logical segments. The program text segment begins at location 0 in the virtual address space. During execution, this segment is write-protected and a single copy of it is shared among all processes executing the same program. At the first 8K byte boundary above the program text segment in the virtual address space begins a nonshared, writable data segment, the size of which may be extended by a system call. Starting at the highest address in the virtual address space is a stack segment, which automatically grows downward as the hardware's stack pointer fluctuates.

¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Call_stack

²Store Multiple Empty Descending (ARM instruction)

³Load Multiple Empty Descending (ARM instruction)

⁴Store Multiple Full Ascending (ARM instruction)

⁵Load Multiple Full Ascending (ARM instruction)

⁶Store Multiple Empty Ascending (ARM instruction)

⁷Load Multiple Empty Ascending (ARM instruction)

5.2 What is the stack used for?

5.2.1 Save the return address where a function must return control after execution

x86

While calling another function with a CALL instruction the address of the point exactly after the CALL instruction is saved to the stack and then an unconditional jump to the address in the CALL operand is executed.

The CALL instruction is equivalent to a PUSH `address_after_call` / JMP operand instruction pair.

RET fetches a value from the stack and jumps to it –it is equivalent to a POP `tmp` / JMP `tmp` instruction pair.

Overflowing the stack is straightforward. Just run eternal recursion:

```
void f()
{
    f();
};
```

MSVC 2008 reports the problem:

```
c:\tmp6>cl ss.cpp /Fass.asm
Microsoft (R) 32-bit C/C++ Optimizing Compiler Version 15.00.21022.08 for 80x86
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

ss.cpp
c:\tmp6\ss.cpp(4) : warning C4717: 'f' : recursive on all control paths, function will cause ↵
    ↵ runtime stack overflow
```

...but generates the right code anyway:

```
?f@YAXXZ PROC ; f
; File c:\tmp6\ss.cpp
; Line 2
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
; Line 3
    call   ?f@YAXXZ ; f
; Line 4
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
?f@YAXXZ ENDP ; f
```

... Also if we turn on optimization (/Ox option) the optimized code will not overflow the stack but instead will work *correctly*⁸:

```
?f@YAXXZ PROC ; f
; File c:\tmp6\ss.cpp
; Line 2
$LL3@f:
; Line 3
    jmp     SHORT $LL3@f
?f@YAXXZ ENDP ; f
```

GCC 4.4.1 generates similar code in both cases, although without issuing any warning about the problem.

ARM

ARM programs also use the stack for saving return addresses, but differently. As mentioned in “Hello, world!” (3.4), the RA is saved to the LR (link register). However, if one needs to call another function and use the LR register one more time its value should be saved. Usually it is saved in the function prologue. Often, we see instructions like ``PUSH R4-R7, LR`` along with this instruction in epilogue ``POP R4-R7, PC`` –thus register values to be used in the function are saved in the stack, including LR.

Nevertheless, if a function never calls any other function, in ARM terminology it is called a *leaf function*⁹. As a consequence, leaf functions do not save the LR register (because doesn't modify it). If this function is small and uses a small number of registers, it may not use the stack at all. Thus, it is possible to call leaf functions without using the stack. This can be faster than on older x86 because external RAM is not used for the stack¹⁰. It can be useful for such situations when memory for the stack is not yet allocated or not available.

Some examples of leaf functions here are: listing. 8.3.2, 8.3.3, 19.17, 19.26, 19.4.4, 15.4, 15.2, 17.1.2.

⁸irony here

⁹<http://infocenter.arm.com/help/index.jsp?topic=/com.arm.doc.faqs/ka13785.html>

¹⁰Some time ago, on PDP-11 and VAX, the CALL instruction (calling other functions) was expensive; up to 50% of execution time might be spent on it, so it was common sense that big number of small function is *anti-pattern*[Ray03, Chapter 4, Part II].

5.2.2 Passing function arguments

The most popular way to pass parameters in x86 is called “cdecl”:

```
push arg3
push arg2
push arg1
call f
add esp, 4*3
```

Callee functions get their arguments via the stack pointer.

Consequently, this is how values will be located in the stack before execution of the very first instruction of the `f()` function:

ESP	return address
ESP+4	argument#1, marked in IDA as <code>arg_0</code>
ESP+8	argument#2, marked in IDA as <code>arg_4</code>
ESP+0xC	argument#3, marked in IDA as <code>arg_8</code>
...	...

See also the section about other calling conventions (55). It is worth noting that nothing obliges programmers to pass arguments through the stack. It is not a requirement. One could implement any other method without using the stack at all.

For example, it is possible to allocate a space for arguments in the **heap**, fill it and pass it to a function via a pointer to this block in the EAX register. This will work.¹¹ However, it is a convenient custom in x86 and ARM to use the stack for this.

By the way, the **callee** function does not have any information about how many arguments were passed. Functions with a variable number of arguments (like `printf()`) determine the number by specifiers (which begin with a % sign) in the format string. If we write something like

```
printf("%d %d %d", 1234);
```

`printf()` will print 1234, and then also two random numbers, which were laying near it in the stack, by chance.

That’s why it is not very important how we declare the `main()` function: as `main()`, `main(int argc, char *argv[])` or `main(int argc, char *argv[], char *envp[])`.

In fact, the **CRT**-code is calling `main()` roughly as:

```
push envp
push argv
push argc
call main
...
```

If you declare `main()` as `main()` without arguments, they are, nevertheless, still present in the stack, but not used. If you declare `main()` as `main(int argc, char *argv[])`, you will use two arguments, and third will remain “invisible” for your function. Even more than that, it is possible to declare `main(int argc)`, and it will work.

5.2.3 Local variable storage

A function could allocate space in the stack for its local variables just by shifting the **stack pointer** towards the stack bottom. Hence, it’s very fast, no matter how many local variables defined.

It is also not a requirement to store local variables in the stack. You could store local variables wherever you like, but traditionally this is how it’s done.

5.2.4 x86: `alloca()` function

It is worth noting the `alloca()` function.¹²

This function works like `malloc()` but allocates memory just on the stack.

The allocated memory chunk does not need to be freed via a `free()` function call, since the function epilogue (4) will return ESP back to its initial state and the allocated memory will be just annulled.

It is worth noting how `alloca()` is implemented.

In simple terms, this function just shifts ESP downwards toward the stack bottom by the number of bytes you need and sets ESP as a pointer to the *allocated* block. Let’s try:

¹¹For example, in the “The Art of Computer Programming” book by Donald Knuth, in section 1.4.1 dedicated to subroutines [Knu98, section 1.4.1], we can read about one way to supply arguments to a subroutine is simply to list them after the `JMP` instruction passing control to subroutine. Knuth writes this method was particularly convenient on System/360.

¹²In MSVC, the function implementation can be found in `alloca16.asm` and `chkstk.asm` in `C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\VC\src\intel`


```

#ifdef __GNUC__
#include <alloca.h> // GCC
#else
#include <malloc.h> // MSVC
#endif
#include <stdio.h>

void f()
{
    char *buf=(char*)alloca (600);
#ifdef __GNUC__
    snprintf (buf, 600, "hi! %d, %d, %d\n", 1, 2, 3); // GCC
#else
    _snprintf (buf, 600, "hi! %d, %d, %d\n", 1, 2, 3); // MSVC
#endif

    puts (buf);
};

```

(`_snprintf()` function works just like `printf()`, but instead of dumping the result into `stdout` (e.g., to terminal or console), it writes to the `buf` buffer. `puts()` copies `buf` contents to `stdout`. Of course, these two function calls might be replaced by one `printf()` call, but I would like to illustrate small buffer usage.)

MSVC

Let's compile (MSVC 2010):

Listing 5.1: MSVC 2010

```

...

mov     eax, 600           ; 00000258H
call    __alloca_probe_16
mov     esi, esp

push   3
push   2
push   1
push   OFFSET $SG2672
push   600               ; 00000258H
push   esi
call   __snprintf

push   esi
call   _puts
add    esp, 28           ; 0000001cH

...

```

The sole `alloca()` argument is passed via `EAX` (instead of pushing into stack)¹³. After the `alloca()` call, `ESP` points to the block of 600 bytes and we can use it as memory for the `buf` array.

GCC + Intel syntax

GCC 4.4.1 can do the same without calling external functions:

Listing 5.2: GCC 4.7.3

```

.LC0:
.string "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
f:
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ebx
    sub     esp, 660
    lea    ebx, [esp+39]
    and     ebx, -16           ; align pointer by 16-bit border

```

¹³It is because `alloca()` is rather compiler intrinsic (80) than usual function.

One of the reason there is a separate function instead of couple instructions just in the code, because `MSVC`¹⁴ implementation of the `alloca()` function also has a code which reads from the memory just allocated, in order to let `OS` to map physical memory to this `VM`¹⁵ region.

```

mov     DWORD PTR [esp], ebx           ; s
mov     DWORD PTR [esp+20], 3
mov     DWORD PTR [esp+16], 2
mov     DWORD PTR [esp+12], 1
mov     DWORD PTR [esp+8], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
mov     DWORD PTR [esp+4], 600        ; maxlen
call    _sprintf
mov     DWORD PTR [esp], ebx         ; s
call    puts
mov     ebx, DWORD PTR [ebp-4]
leave
ret

```

GCC + AT&T syntax

Let's see the same code, but in AT&T syntax:

Listing 5.3: GCC 4.7.3

```

.LC0:
.string "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
f:
    pushl   %ebp
    movl   %esp, %ebp
    pushl   %ebx
    subl   $660, %esp
    leal   39(%esp), %ebx
    andl   $-16, %ebx
    movl   %ebx, (%esp)
    movl   $3, 20(%esp)
    movl   $2, 16(%esp)
    movl   $1, 12(%esp)
    movl   $.LC0, 8(%esp)
    movl   $600, 4(%esp)
    call   _sprintf
    movl   %ebx, (%esp)
    call   puts
    movl   -4(%ebp), %ebx
    leave
    ret

```

The code is the same as in the previous listing.

By the way, `movl $3, 20(%esp)` is analogous to `mov DWORD PTR [esp+20], 3` in Intel-syntax –when addressing memory in form *register+offset*, it is written as `offset(%register)` in AT&T syntax.

5.2.5 (Windows) SEH

[SEH¹⁶](#) records are also stored on the stack (if they present)..

Read more about it: [\(59.3\)](#).

5.2.6 Buffer overflow protection

More about it here [\(18.2\)](#).

5.3 Typical stack layout

A very typical stack layout in a 32-bit environment at the start of a function, before first instruction executed:

¹⁶Structured Exception Handling: [59.3](#)

...	...
ESP-0xC	local variable #2, marked in IDA as var_8
ESP-8	local variable #1, marked in IDA as var_4
ESP-4	saved value of EBP
ESP	return address
ESP+4	argument#1, marked in IDA as arg_0
ESP+8	argument#2, marked in IDA as arg_4
ESP+0xC	argument#3, marked in IDA as arg_8
...	...

5.4 Noise in stack

Often in this book, I write about “noise” or “garbage” values in stack or memory. Where are they came from? These are what was left in there after other function’s executions. Short example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f1()
{
    int a=1, b=2, c=3;
};

void f2()
{
    int a, b, c;
    printf ("%d, %d, %d\n", a, b, c);
};

int main()
{
    f1();
    f2();
};
```

Compiling...

Listing 5.4: MSVC 2010

```
$SG2752 DB    '%d, %d, %d', 0aH, 00H

_c$ = -12    ; size = 4
_b$ = -8     ; size = 4
_a$ = -4     ; size = 4
_f1    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 12
    mov     DWORD PTR _a$[ebp], 1
    mov     DWORD PTR _b$[ebp], 2
    mov     DWORD PTR _c$[ebp], 3
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_f1    ENDP

_c$ = -12    ; size = 4
_b$ = -8     ; size = 4
_a$ = -4     ; size = 4
_f2    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 12
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push    eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    push    edx
    push    OFFSET $SG2752 ; '%d, %d, %d'
```

```

    call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add     esp, 16
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_f2      ENDP

_main    PROC
    push   ebp
    mov    ebp, esp
    call  _f1
    call  _f2
    xor   eax, eax
    pop   ebp
    ret   0
_main    ENDP

```

The compiler will grumble for a little...

```

c:\Polygon\c>cl st.c /Fast.asm /MD
Microsoft (R) 32-bit C/C++ Optimizing Compiler Version 16.00.40219.01 for 80x86
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

st.c
c:\polygon\c\st.c(11) : warning C4700: uninitialized local variable 'c' used
c:\polygon\c\st.c(11) : warning C4700: uninitialized local variable 'b' used
c:\polygon\c\st.c(11) : warning C4700: uninitialized local variable 'a' used
Microsoft (R) Incremental Linker Version 10.00.40219.01
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

/out:st.exe
st.obj

```

But when I run...

```

c:\Polygon\c>st
1, 2, 3

```

Oh. What a weird thing. We did not set any variables in `f2()`. These are values are “ghosts”, which are still in the stack.

Let's load the example into OllyDbg:

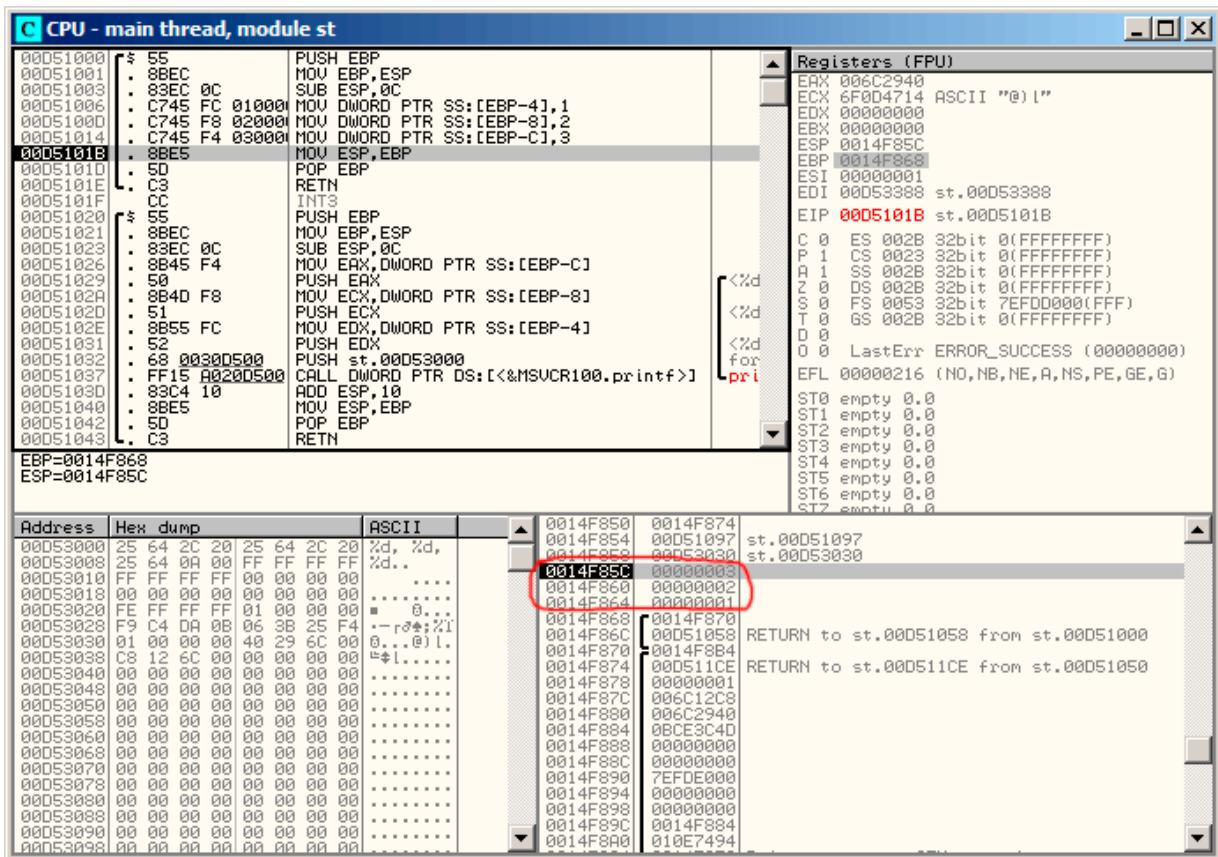


Figure 5.1: OllyDbg: f1()

When f1() writes to a, b and c variables, they are stored at the address 0x14F85C and so on.

And when f2() executed:

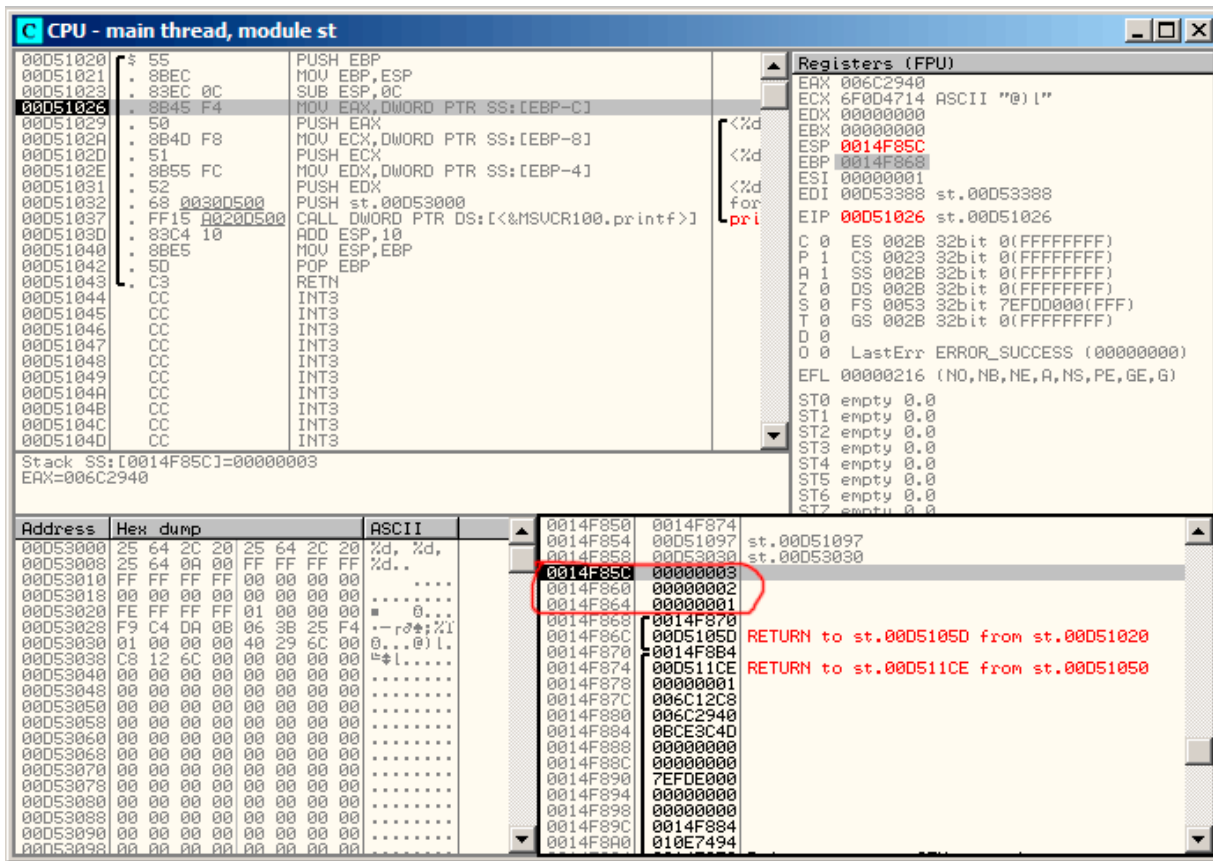


Figure 5.2: OllyDbg: f2()

... a, b and c of f2() are located at the same address! No one overwritten values yet, so they are still untouched here.

So, for this weird situation, several functions should be called one after another and SP should be the same at each function entry (i.e., they should have same number of arguments). Then, local variables will be located at the same point of stack.

Summarizing, all values in stack (and memory cells at all) has values left there from previous function executions. They are not random in strict sense, but rather has unpredictable values.

How else? Probably, it would be possible to clear stack portions before each function execution, but that's too much extra (and needless) work.

5.5 Exercises

5.5.1 Exercise #1

If to compile this piece of code in MSVC and run, a three number will be printed. Where they are came from? Where they are came from if to compile it in MSVC with optimization (/Ox)? Why the situation is completely different in GCC?

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf ("%d, %d, %d\n");

    return 0;
};
```

Answer: F.1.1.

5.5.2 Exercise #2

What this code does?

Listing 5.5: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
$SG3103 DB    '%d', 0aH, 00H
```

```

_main PROC
  push 0
  call DWORD PTR __imp__time64
  push edx
  push eax
  push OFFSET $SG3103 ; '%d'
  call DWORD PTR __imp__printf
  add esp, 16
  xor eax, eax
  ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Listing 5.6: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

main PROC
  PUSH {r4,lr}
  MOV r0,#0
  BL time
  MOV r1,r0
  ADR r0,|L0.32|
  BL __2printf
  MOV r0,#0
  POP {r4,pc}
ENDP

|L0.32|
  DCB "%d\n",0

```

Listing 5.7: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

main PROC
  PUSH {r4,lr}
  MOVS r0,#0
  BL time
  MOVS r1,r0
  ADR r0,|L0.20|
  BL __2printf
  MOVS r0,#0
  POP {r4,pc}
ENDP

|L0.20|
  DCB "%d\n",0

```

Listing 5.8: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

main:
  stp x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
  mov x0, 0
  add x29, sp, 0
  bl time
  mov x1, x0
  ldp x29, x30, [sp], 16
  adrp x0, .LC0
  add x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
  b printf
.LC0:
  .string "%d\n"

```

Answer: [F.1.1](#).

Chapter 6

printf() with several arguments

Now let's extend the *Hello, world!* (3) example, replacing `printf()` in the `main()` function body by this:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d", 1, 2, 3);
    return 0;
};
```

6.1 x86: 3 arguments

6.1.1 MSVC

Let's compile it by MSVC 2010 Express and we got:

```
$SG3830 DB      'a=%d; b=%d; c=%d', 00H
...
    push     3
    push     2
    push     1
    push     OFFSET $SG3830
    call     _printf
    add     esp, 16                ; 00000010H
```

Almost the same, but now we can see the `printf()` arguments are pushed onto the stack in reverse order. The first argument is pushed last.

By the way, variables of *int* type in 32-bit environment have 32-bit width, that is 4 bytes.

So, we have here 4 arguments. $4 * 4 = 16$ – they occupy exactly 16 bytes in the stack: a 32-bit pointer to a string and 3 numbers of type *int*.

When the [stack pointer](#) (ESP register) is changed back by the `ADD ESP, X` instruction after a function call, often, the number of function arguments can be deduced here: just divide X by 4.

Of course, this is specific to the *cdecl* calling convention.

See also the section about calling conventions (55).

It is also possible for the compiler to merge several `ADD ESP, X` instructions into one, after the last call:

```
push a1
push a2
call ...
...
push a1
call ...
...
push a1
push a2
push a3
call ...
add esp, 24
```


6.1.2 MSVC and OllyDbg

Now let's try to load this example in OllyDbg. It is one of the most popular user-land win32 debugger. We can try to compile our example in MSVC 2012 with /MD option, meaning, to link against MSVCRT*.DLL, so we will be able to see imported functions clearly in the debugger.

Then load executable in OllyDbg. The very first breakpoint is in ntdll.dll, press F9 (run). The second breakpoint is in CRT-code. Now we should find the main() function.

Find this code by scrolling the code to the very top (MSVC allocates main() function at the very beginning of the code section):

The screenshot shows the OllyDbg interface for '1.exe'. The CPU window displays the following assembly code:

```

01281000 CC INT3
0128100E CC INT3
0128100F CC INT3
01281010 > 55 PUSH EBP
01281011 . 8BEC MOV EBP,ESP
01281013 . 6A 03 PUSH 3
01281015 . 6A 02 PUSH 2
01281017 . 6A 01 PUSH 1
01281019 . 68 00502801 PUSH 1.01285000
0128101E . FF15 F8612801 CALL DWORD PTR DS:[<&MSUCR110.printf>]
01281024 . 83C4 10 ADD ESP,10
01281027 . 33C0 XOR EAX,EAX
01281029 . 5D POP EBP
0128102A . C3 RETN
0128102B CC INT3
0128102C CC INT3
0128102D CC INT3
0128102E CC INT3
0128102F CC INT3
01281030 CC INT3
01281031 CC INT3
01281032 . FF25 F8612801 JMP DWORD PTR DS:[<&MSUCR110.printf>]
01281038 . B8 4D5A0000 MOV EAX,5A4D
0128103D . 66:3905 00002 CMP WORD PTR DS:[1280000],AX
01281044 > 74 04 JE SHORT 1.0128104A
01281046 > 33C0 XOR EAX,EAX
01281048 > EB 34 JMP SHORT 1.0128107E
0128104A > 8B00 3C002801 MOV ECX,DWORD PTR DS:[128003C]
01281050 . 81B9 00002801 CMP DWORD PTR DS:[ECX+1280000],4550
0128105A . 75 EA JNZ SHORT 1.01281046
0128105C . B8 0B010000 MOV EAX,10B
01281061 . 66:3905 128002 CMP WORD PTR DS:[ECX+1280018],0x

```

The registers window shows the following state:

```

Registers (FPU)
EAX 6D8E8634 OFFSET MSUCR110._
ECX 006AD1E8
EDX 00000000
EBX 00000000
ESP 0031FE68
EBP 0031FEA4
ESI 00000001
EDI 00000000
EIP 01281010 1.main
C 0 ES 002B 32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
P 1 CS 0023 32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
A 0 SS 002B 32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
Z 1 DS 002B 32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
S 0 FS 0053 32bit 7EFD0000(FF)
T 0 GS 002B 32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
D 0
I 0
O 0 LastErr ERROR_SUCCESS (00)
EFL 00000246 (NO,NB,E,BE,NS,PE)
ST0 empty 0.0
ST1 empty 0.0
ST2 empty 0.0
ST3 empty 0.0
ST4 empty 0.0
ST5 empty 0.0
ST6 empty 0.0
ST7 empty 0.0
FST 0000 Cond 0 0 0 0 Err 0
FCW 027F Prec NEAR,53 Mask

```

The hex dump window shows the memory contents starting at address 01285000:

```

Address Hex dump ASCII
01285000 61 30 25 64 38 20 62 30 a=%d; b=
01285008 25 64 38 20 63 30 25 64 %d; c=%d
01285010 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 .....0...
01285018 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 .....
01285020 FE FF FF FF FF FF FF FF
01285028 80 61 37 DB 7F 9E C8 24 Aa7m@s
01285030 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 .....
01285038 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 .....
01285040 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 .....
01285048 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 .....

```

Figure 6.1: OllyDbg: the very start of the main() function

Click on the PUSH EBP instruction, press F2 (set breakpoint) and press F9 (run). We need to do these manipulations in order to skip CRT-code, because, we aren't really interested in it, yet.

Press F8 (step over) 6 times, i.e., skip 6 instructions:

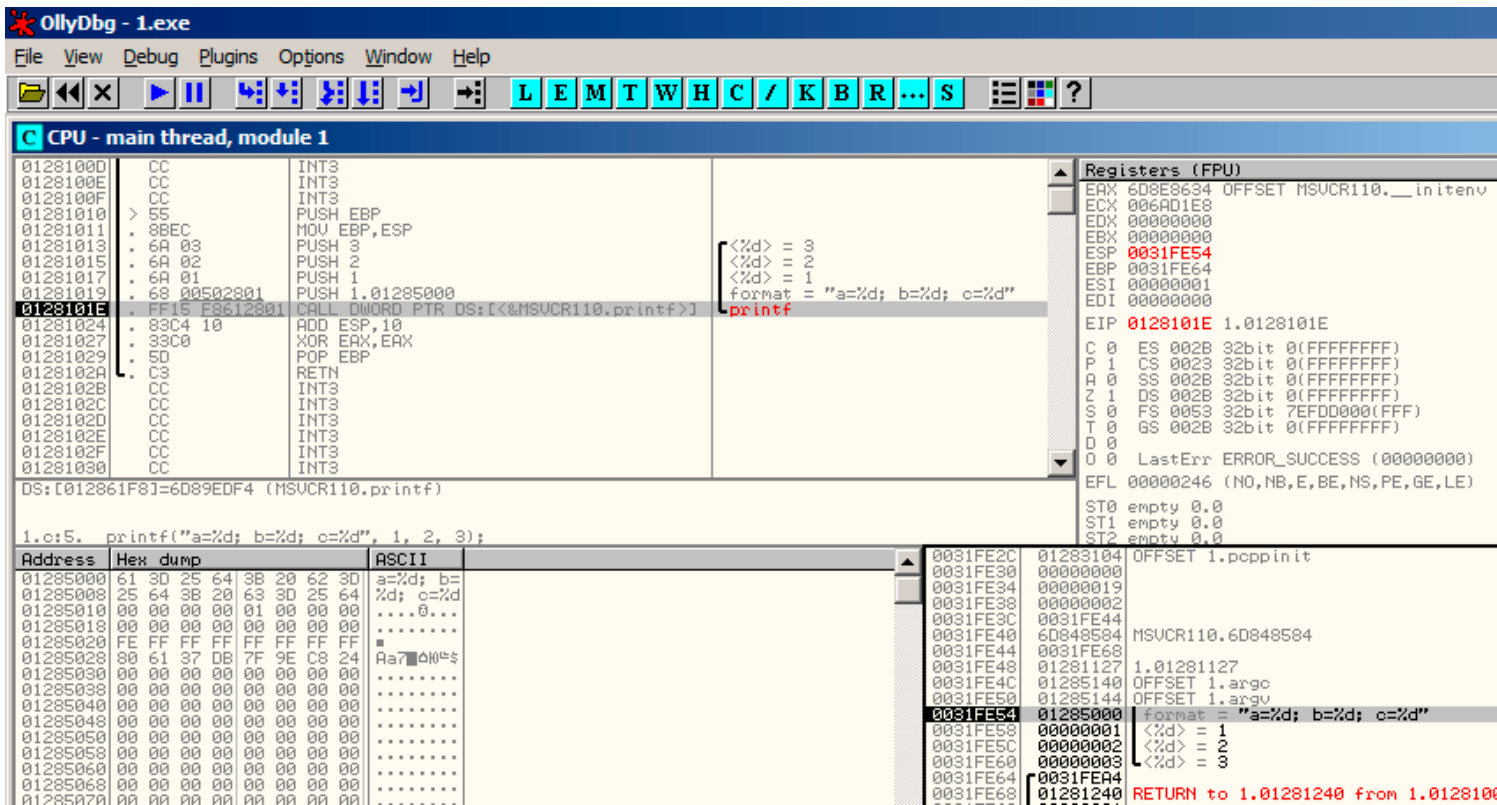


Figure 6.2: OllyDbg: before printf() execution

Now the PC points to the CALL printf instruction. OllyDbg, like other debuggers, highlights value of registers which were changed. So each time you press F8, EIP changes and its value looks red. ESP changes as well, because values are pushed into the stack.

Where are the values in the stack? Take a look at the right/bottom window of debugger:

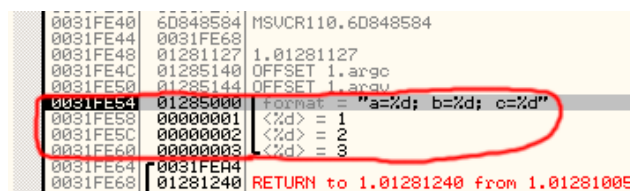


Figure 6.3: OllyDbg: stack after values pushed (I made the round red mark here in a graphics editor)

So we can see 3 columns there: address in the stack, value in the stack and some additional OllyDbg comments. OllyDbg understands printf()-like strings, so it reports the string here and 3 values attached to it.

It is possible to right-click on the format string, click on "Follow in dump", and the format string will appear in the window at the left-bottom part, where some memory part is always seen. These memory values can be edited. It is possible to change the format string, and then the result of our example will be different. It is probably not very useful now, but it's a very good idea for doing it as an exercise, to get a feeling of how everything works here.

Press F8 (step over).

In the console we'll see the output:

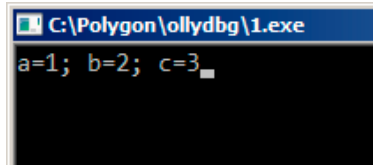


Figure 6.4: printf() function executed

Let's see how registers and stack state are changed:

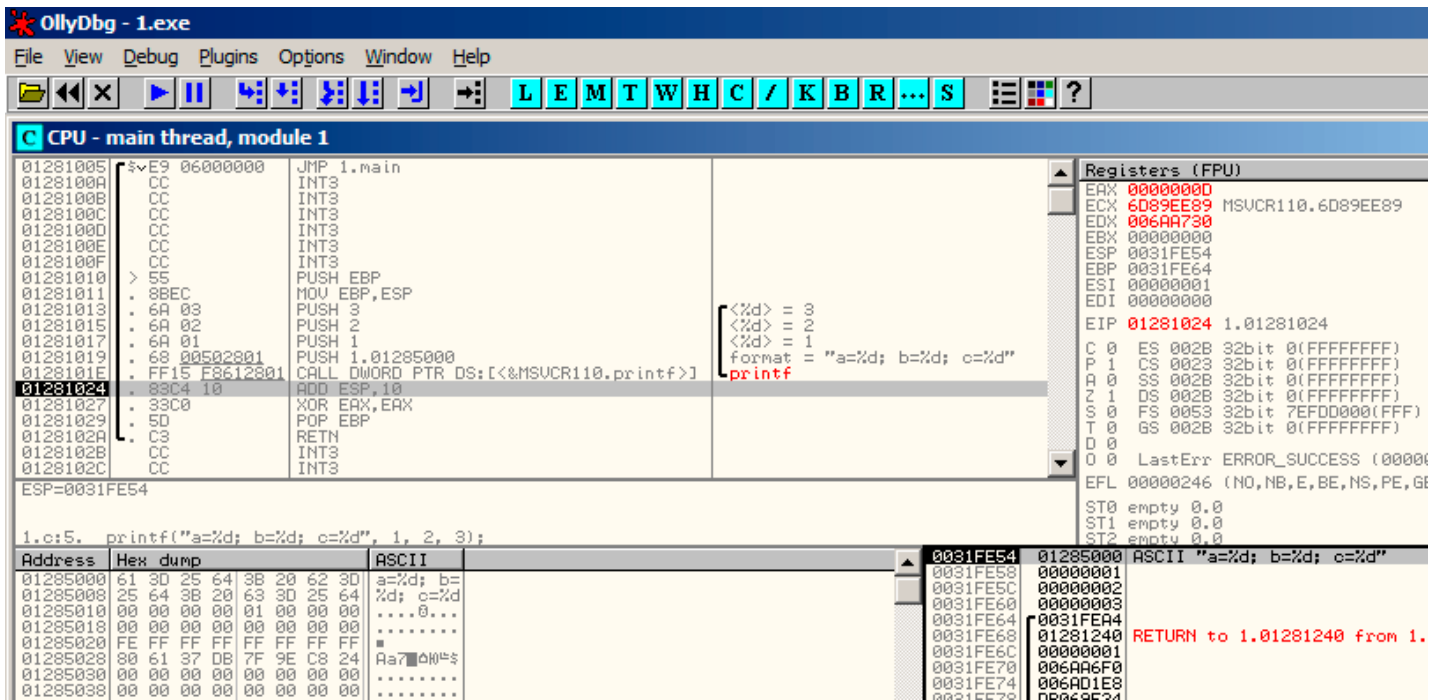


Figure 6.5: OllyDbg: after printf() execution

EAX register now contains 0xD (13). That's correct, since `printf()` returns the number of characters printed. The EIP value is changed: indeed, now there is the address of the instruction after `CALL printf`. ECX and EDX values are changed as well. Apparently, `printf()` function's hidden machinery used them for its own needs.

A very important fact is that neither the ESP value, nor the stack state is changed! We clearly see that the format string and corresponding 3 values are still there. Indeed, that's the *cdecl* calling convention: *callee* doesn't return ESP back to its previous value. It's the *caller's* duty to do so.

Press F8 again to execute ADD ESP, 10 instruction:

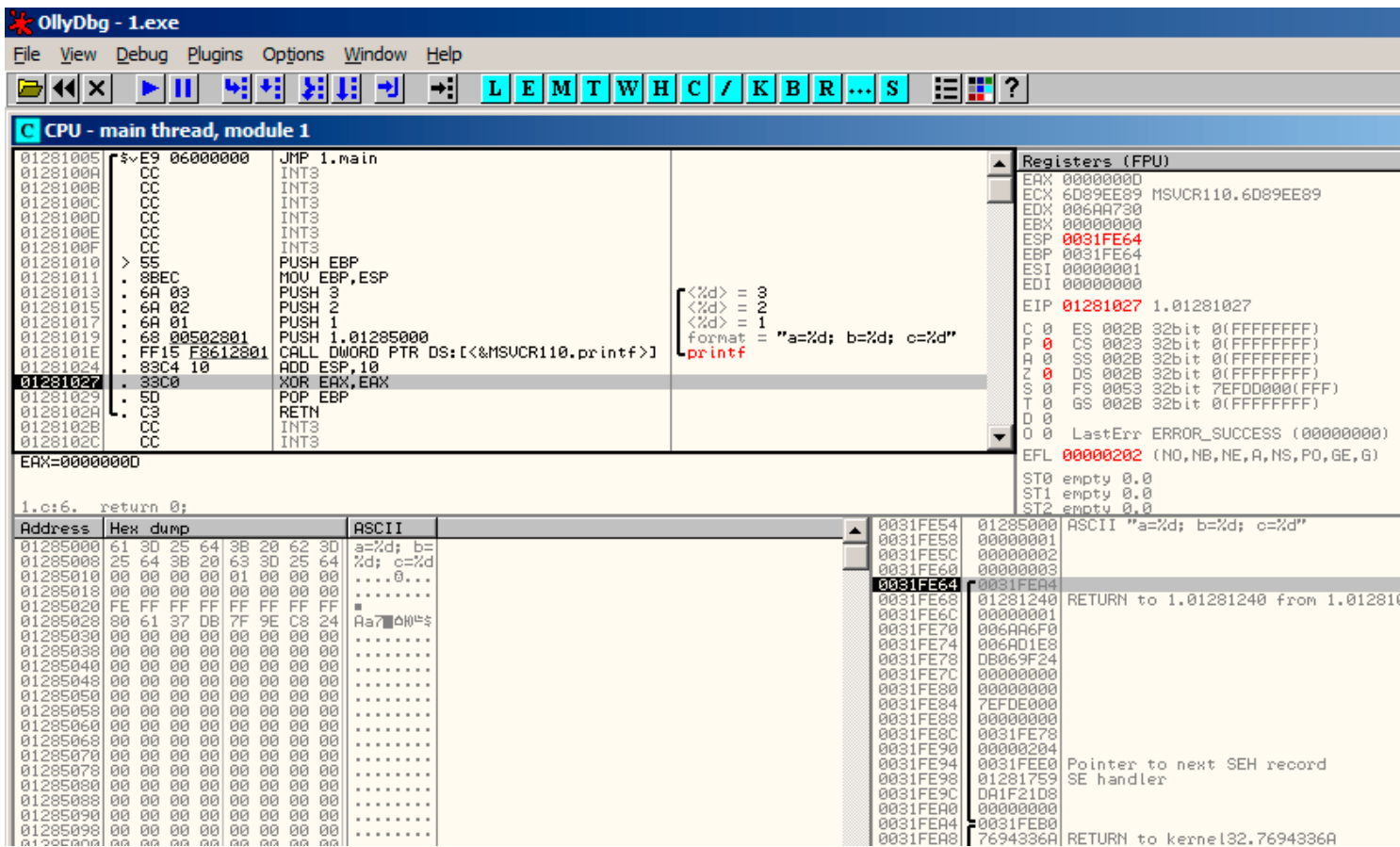


Figure 6.6: OllyDbg: after ADD ESP, 10 instruction execution

ESP is changed, but the values are still in the stack! Yes, of course; no one needs to fill these values by zero or something like that. Because everything above stack pointer (SP) is *noise* or *garbage*, and has no meaning at all. It would be time consuming to clear unused stack entries anyways, and no one really needs to.

6.1.3 GCC

Now let's compile the same program in Linux using GCC 4.4.1 and take a look in IDA what we got:

```

main          proc near

var_10        = dword ptr -10h
var_C         = dword ptr -0Ch
var_8         = dword ptr -8
var_4         = dword ptr -4

                push    ebp
                mov     ebp, esp
                and     esp, 0FFFFFF0h
                sub     esp, 10h
                mov     eax, offset aADBDCD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
                mov     [esp+10h+var_4], 3
                mov     [esp+10h+var_8], 2
                mov     [esp+10h+var_C], 1
                mov     [esp+10h+var_10], eax
                call   _printf
                mov     eax, 0
                leave
                retn

main          endp
    
```

It can be said that the difference between code from MSVC and code from GCC is only in the method of placing arguments on the stack. Here GCC is working directly with the stack without PUSH/POP.

6.1.4 GCC and GDB

Let's try this example also in [GDB](#)¹ in Linux.

-g mean produce debug information into executable file.

```
$ gcc 1.c -g -o 1
```

```
$ gdb 1
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
Copyright (C) 2013 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law. Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "i686-linux-gnu".
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/1...done.
```

Listing 6.1: let's set breakpoint on printf()

```
(gdb) b printf
Breakpoint 1 at 0x80482f0
```

Run. There are no printf() function source code here, so [GDB](#) can't show its source, but may do so.

```
(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/1

Breakpoint 1, __printf (format=0x80484f0 "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d") at printf.c:29
29 printf.c: No such file or directory.
```

Print 10 stack elements. The left column is an address in stack.

```
(gdb) x/10w $esp
0xbffff11c: 0x0804844a 0x080484f0 0x00000001 0x00000002
0xbffff12c: 0x00000003 0x08048460 0x00000000 0x00000000
0xbffff13c: 0xb7e29905 0x00000001
```

The very first element is the [RA](#) (0x0804844a). We can make sure by disassembling the memory at this address:

```
(gdb) x/5i 0x0804844a
0x804844a <main+45>: mov    $0x0,%eax
0x804844f <main+50>: leave
0x8048450 <main+51>: ret
0x8048451: xchg  %ax,%ax
0x8048453: xchg  %ax,%ax
```

Two XCHG instructions, apparently, is some random garbage, which we can ignore so far.

The second element (0x080484f0) is an address of format string:

```
(gdb) x/s 0x080484f0
0x80484f0: "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
```

Other 3 elements (1, 2, 3) are printf() arguments. Other elements may be just “garbage” present in stack, but also may be values from other functions, their local variables, etc. We can ignore it for now.

Execute “finish”. This mean, execute all instructions till the function end. Here it means: execute till the finish of printf().

```
(gdb) finish
Run till exit from #0 __printf (format=0x80484f0 "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d") at printf.c:29
main () at 1.c:6
6 return 0;
Value returned is $2 = 13
```

[GDB](#) shows what printf() returned in EAX (13). This is number of characters printed, just like in the example with OllyDbg.

We also see “return 0;” and the information that this expression is in the 1.c file at the line 6. Indeed, the 1.c file is located in the current directory, and [GDB](#) finds the string there. How does [GDB](#) know which C-code line is being executed now? This is due to the fact that the compiler, while generating debugging information, also saves a table of relations between source code line numbers and instruction addresses. [GDB](#) is a source-level debugger, after all.

Let's examine registers. 13 in EAX:

¹GNU debugger

```
(gdb) info registers
eax          0xd      13
ecx          0x0      0
edx          0x0      0
ebx          0xb7fc0000 -1208221696
esp          0xbffff120 0xbffff120
ebp          0xbffff138 0xbffff138
esi          0x0      0
edi          0x0      0
eip          0x804844a   0x804844a <main+45>
...
```

Let's disassemble the current instructions. The arrow points to the instruction to be executed next.

```
(gdb) disas
Dump of assembler code for function main:
0x0804841d <+0>:   push   %ebp
0x0804841e <+1>:   mov    %esp,%ebp
0x08048420 <+3>:   and   $0xffffffff0,%esp
0x08048423 <+6>:   sub   $0x10,%esp
0x08048426 <+9>:   movl  $0x3,0xc(%esp)
0x0804842e <+17>:  movl  $0x2,0x8(%esp)
0x08048436 <+25>:  movl  $0x1,0x4(%esp)
0x0804843e <+33>:  movl  $0x80484f0,(%esp)
0x08048445 <+40>:  call  0x80482f0 <printf@plt>
=> 0x0804844a <+45>:  mov   $0x0,%eax
0x0804844f <+50>:  leave
0x08048450 <+51>:  ret
End of assembler dump.
```

GDB shows disassembly in AT&T syntax by default. It's possible to switch to Intel syntax:

```
(gdb) set disassembly-flavor intel
(gdb) disas
Dump of assembler code for function main:
0x0804841d <+0>:   push   ebp
0x0804841e <+1>:   mov   ebp,esp
0x08048420 <+3>:   and   esp,0xffffffff0
0x08048423 <+6>:   sub   esp,0x10
0x08048426 <+9>:   mov   DWORD PTR [esp+0xc],0x3
0x0804842e <+17>:  mov   DWORD PTR [esp+0x8],0x2
0x08048436 <+25>:  mov   DWORD PTR [esp+0x4],0x1
0x0804843e <+33>:  mov   DWORD PTR [esp],0x80484f0
0x08048445 <+40>:  call  0x80482f0 <printf@plt>
=> 0x0804844a <+45>:  mov   eax,0x0
0x0804844f <+50>:  leave
0x08048450 <+51>:  ret
End of assembler dump.
```

Execute next instruction. GDB shows ending bracket, meaning, this ends the block of the function.

```
(gdb) step
7      };
```

Let's see the registers after the MOV EAX, 0 instruction execution. EAX here is zero indeed.

```
(gdb) info registers
eax          0x0      0
ecx          0x0      0
edx          0x0      0
ebx          0xb7fc0000 -1208221696
esp          0xbffff120 0xbffff120
ebp          0xbffff138 0xbffff138
esi          0x0      0
edi          0x0      0
eip          0x804844f   0x804844f <main+50>
...
```


6.2 x64: 8 arguments

To see how other arguments will be passed via the stack, let's change our example again by increasing the number of arguments to be passed to 9 (`printf()` format string + 8 *int* variables):

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n", 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8);
    return 0;
};
```

6.2.1 MSVC

As we saw before, the first 4 arguments are passed in the RCX, RDX, R8, R9 registers in Win64, while all the rest—via the stack. That is what we see here. However, the MOV instruction, instead of PUSH, is used for preparing the stack, so the values are written to the stack in a straightforward manner.

Listing 6.2: MSVC 2012 x64

```
$SG2923 DB      'a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d', 0aH, 00H

main     PROC
        sub     rsp, 88

        mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+64], 8
        mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+56], 7
        mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+48], 6
        mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+40], 5
        mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+32], 4
        mov     r9d, 3
        mov     r8d, 2
        mov     edx, 1
        lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2923
        call   printf

        ; return 0
        xor     eax, eax

        add     rsp, 88
        ret     0
main     ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS
END
```

Observant reader may ask, what 8 bytes are allocated for *int* values, while 4 is enough? Yes, this should be memorized: 8 bytes are allocated for any data type shorter than 64 bits. It's done for convenience: it's always easy to calculate address of this or that argument. Besides, all they are located at aligned memory addresses. The same story in 32-bit environments: 4 bytes are reserved for all data types.

6.2.2 GCC

In *NIX OS-es, it's the same story for x86-64, except that the first 6 arguments are passed in the RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8, R9 registers. All the rest—via the stack. GCC generates the code writing string pointer into EDI instead of RDI—we saw this thing before: [3.2.2](#).

We also saw before the EAX register being cleared before a `printf()` call: [3.2.2](#).

Listing 6.3: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
.LC0:
        .string "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n"

main:
        sub     rsp, 40

        mov     r9d, 5
        mov     r8d, 4
        mov     ecx, 3
```

```

mov     edx, 2
mov     esi, 1
mov     edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
xor     eax, eax ; number of vector registers passed
mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+16], 8
mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+8], 7
mov     DWORD PTR [rsp], 6
call   printf

; return 0

xor     eax, eax
add     rsp, 40
ret

```

6.2.3 GCC + GDB

Let's try this example in [GDB](#).

```
$ gcc -g 2.c -o 2
```

```

$ gdb 2
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
Copyright (C) 2013 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law.  Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "x86_64-linux-gnu".
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/2...done.

```

Listing 6.4: let's set the breakpoint to printf(), and run

```

(gdb) b printf
Breakpoint 1 at 0x400410
(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/2

Breakpoint 1, __printf (format=0x400628 "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n") at ↵
↳ printf.c:29
29     printf.c: No such file or directory.

```

Registers RSI/RDX/RCX/R8/R9 has the values which are should be there. RIP has an address of the very first instruction of the printf() function.

```

(gdb) info registers
rax             0x0             0
rbx             0x0             0
rcx             0x3             3
rdx             0x2             2
rsi             0x1             1
rdi             0x400628 4195880
rbp             0x7fffffffdf60 0x7fffffffdf60
rsp             0x7fffffffdf38 0x7fffffffdf38
r8              0x4             4
r9              0x5             5
r10             0x7fffffffdfce0 140737488346336
r11             0x7ffff7a65f60 140737348263776
r12             0x400440 4195392
r13             0x7ffffffffffe040 140737488347200
r14             0x0             0
r15             0x0             0
rip             0x7ffff7a65f60 0x7ffff7a65f60 <__printf>
...

```


Listing 6.5: let's inspect the format string

```
(gdb) x/s $rdi
0x400628:      "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n"
```

Let's dump the stack with the `x/g` command this time—`g` means *giant words*, i.e., 64-bit words.

```
(gdb) x/10g $rsp
0x7fffffffdf38: 0x000000000400576      0x0000000000000006
0x7fffffffdf48: 0x0000000000000007      0x00007fff00000008
0x7fffffffdf58: 0x0000000000000000      0x0000000000000000
0x7fffffffdf68: 0x00007ffff7a33de5      0x0000000000000000
0x7fffffffdf78: 0x00007fffffe048      0x0000000100000000
```

The very first stack element, just like in the previous case, is the `RA`. 3 values are also passed in stack: 6, 7, 8. We also see that 8 is passed with high 32-bits not cleared: `0x00007fff00000008`. That's OK, because the values have `int` type, which is 32-bit type. So, the high register or stack element part may contain "random garbage".

If you take a look at where control flow will return after `printf()` execution, `GDB` will show the whole `main()` function:

```
(gdb) set disassembly-flavor intel
(gdb) disas 0x000000000400576
Dump of assembler code for function main:
0x00000000040052d <+0>:      push   rbp
0x00000000040052e <+1>:      mov    rbp, rsp
0x000000000400531 <+4>:      sub   rsp, 0x20
0x000000000400535 <+8>:      mov   DWORD PTR [rsp+0x10], 0x8
0x00000000040053d <+16>:     mov   DWORD PTR [rsp+0x8], 0x7
0x000000000400545 <+24>:     mov   DWORD PTR [rsp], 0x6
0x00000000040054c <+31>:     mov   r9d, 0x5
0x000000000400552 <+37>:     mov   r8d, 0x4
0x000000000400558 <+43>:     mov   ecx, 0x3
0x00000000040055d <+48>:     mov   edx, 0x2
0x000000000400562 <+53>:     mov   esi, 0x1
0x000000000400567 <+58>:     mov   edi, 0x400628
0x00000000040056c <+63>:     mov   eax, 0x0
0x000000000400571 <+68>:     call  0x400410 <printf@plt>
0x000000000400576 <+73>:     mov   eax, 0x0
0x00000000040057b <+78>:     leave
0x00000000040057c <+79>:     ret
End of assembler dump.
```

Let's finish executing `printf()`, execute the instruction zeroing `EAX`, and note that the `EAX` register has a value of exactly zero. `RIP` now points to the `LEAVE` instruction, i.e., the penultimate one in the `main()` function.

```
(gdb) finish
Run till exit from #0 __printf (format=0x400628 "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n") at printf.c:29
↳ d\n")
a=1; b=2; c=3; d=4; e=5; f=6; g=7; h=8
main () at 2.c:6
6      return 0;
Value returned is $1 = 39
(gdb) next
7      };
(gdb) info registers
rax          0x0          0
rbx          0x0          0
rcx          0x26         38
rdx          0x7ffff7dd59f0 140737351866864
rsi          0x7fffffd9     2147483609
rdi          0x0          0
rbp          0x7fffffffdf60 0x7fffffffdf60
rsp          0x7fffffffdf40 0x7fffffffdf40
r8           0x7ffff7dd26a0 140737351853728
r9           0x7ffff7a60134 140737348239668
r10          0x7fffffd5b0   140737488344496
r11          0x7ffff7a95900 140737348458752
r12          0x400440 4195392
r13          0x7ffffffe040 140737488347200
r14          0x0          0
r15          0x0          0
rip          0x40057b 0x40057b <main+78>
...
```

6.3 ARM: 3 arguments

Traditionally, ARM's scheme for passing arguments (calling convention) is as follows: the first 4 arguments are passed in the R0-R3 registers; the remaining arguments via the stack. This resembles the arguments passing scheme in fastcall (55.3) or win64 (55.5.1).

6.3.1 32-bit ARM

Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 6.6: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
.text:00000000 main
.text:00000000 10 40 2D E9   STMFDP   SP!, {R4,LR}
.text:00000004 03 30 A0 E3   MOV      R3, #3
.text:00000008 02 20 A0 E3   MOV      R2, #2
.text:0000000C 01 10 A0 E3   MOV      R1, #1
.text:00000010 08 00 8F E2   ADR      R0, aADBDCD      ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
.text:00000014 06 00 00 EB   BL       __2printf
.text:00000018 00 00 A0 E3   MOV      R0, #0           ; return 0
.text:0000001C 10 80 BD E8   LDMFDP   SP!, {R4,PC}
```

So, the first 4 arguments are passed via the R0-R3 registers in this order: a pointer to the `printf()` format string in R0, then 1 in R1, 2 in R2 and 3 in R3.

The instruction at 0x18 writes 0 to R0 –this is `return 0` C-statement.

There is nothing unusual so far.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 generate same code.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

Listing 6.7: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```
.text:00000000 main
.text:00000000 10 B5           PUSH     {R4,LR}
.text:00000002 03 23           MOVS    R3, #3
.text:00000004 02 22           MOVS    R2, #2
.text:00000006 01 21           MOVS    R1, #1
.text:00000008 02 A0           ADR     R0, aADBDCD      ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
.text:0000000A 00 F0 0D F8   BL      __2printf
.text:0000000E 00 20           MOVS    R0, #0
.text:00000010 10 BD           POP     {R4,PC}
```

There is no significant difference from the non-optimized code for ARM mode.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode) + let's remove return

Let's rework example slightly by removing `return 0`:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    printf("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d", 1, 2, 3);
};
```

The result is somewhat unusual:

Listing 6.8: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
.text:00000014 main
.text:00000014 03 30 A0 E3   MOV      R3, #3
.text:00000018 02 20 A0 E3   MOV      R2, #2
.text:0000001C 01 10 A0 E3   MOV      R1, #1
.text:00000020 1E 0E 8F E2   ADR      R0, aADBDCD      ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d\n"
.text:00000024 CB 18 00 EA   B        __2printf
```

This is the optimized (-O3) version for ARM mode and here we see B as the last instruction instead of the familiar BL. Another difference between this optimized version and the previous one (compiled without optimization) is also in the fact that there is no function prologue and epilogue (instructions that save R0 and LR registers values). The B instruction just

jumps to another address, without any manipulation of the `LR` register, that is, it is analogous to `JMP` in x86. Why does it work? Because this code is, in fact, effectively equivalent to the previous. There are two main reasons: 1) neither the stack nor `SP` (the `stack pointer`) is modified; 2) the call to `printf()` is the last instruction, so there is nothing going on after it. After finishing, the `printf()` function will just return control to the address stored in `LR`. But the address of the point from where our function was called is now in `LR`! Consequently, control from `printf()` will be returned to that point. As a consequence, we do not need to save `LR` since we do not need to modify `LR`. We do not need to modify `LR` since there are no other function calls except `printf()`. Furthermore, after this call we do not to do anything! That's why this optimization is possible.

This optimization is often used in functions where the last statement is a call to another function.

Another similar example will be described in “`switch()/case/default`” section, in (13.1.1).

6.3.2 ARM64

Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
.LC1:
    .string "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
f2:
; save FP and LR to stack frame:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
; set stack frame (FP=SP):
    add    x29, sp, 0
    adrp   x0, .LC1
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC1
    mov    w1, 1
    mov    w2, 2
    mov    w3, 3
    bl     printf
    mov    w0, 0
; restore FP and LR
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 16
    ret
```

So the first instruction `STP` (Store Pair) saves `FP` (X29) and `LR` (X30) in stack. The second `ADD X29, SP, 0` instruction forming stack frame. It is just writing `SP` value into X29.

`%d` in `printf()` string format is 32-bit `int`, so the 1, 2 and 3 are loaded into 32-bit register parts.

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 makes the same code.

6.4 ARM: 8 arguments

Let's use again the example with 9 arguments from the previous section: 6.2.

```
void printf_main2()
{
    printf("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n",
        1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8);
};
```

6.4.1 Optimizing Keil 6/2013: ARM mode

```
.text:00000028      main
.text:00000028
.text:00000028      var_18 = -0x18
.text:00000028      var_14 = -0x14
.text:00000028      var_4  = -4
.text:00000028
.text:00000028 04 E0 2D E5  STR    LR, [SP,#var_4]!
.text:0000002C 14 D0 4D E2  SUB    SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000030 08 30 A0 E3  MOV    R3, #8
.text:00000034 07 20 A0 E3  MOV    R2, #7
.text:00000038 06 10 A0 E3  MOV    R1, #6
.text:0000003C 05 00 A0 E3  MOV    R0, #5
.text:00000040 04 C0 8D E2  ADD    R12, SP, #0x18+var_14
.text:00000044 0F 00 8C E8  STMIA R12, {R0-R3}
.text:00000048 04 00 A0 E3  MOV    R0, #4
```

```
.text:0000004C 00 00 8D E5  STR    R0, [SP,#0x18+var_18]
.text:00000050 03 30 A0 E3  MOV    R3, #3
.text:00000054 02 20 A0 E3  MOV    R2, #2
.text:00000058 01 10 A0 E3  MOV    R1, #1
.text:0000005C 6E 0F 8F E2  ADR    R0, aADBDCDDDEDFDGD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g↵
↵ =%"...
.text:00000060 BC 18 00 EB  BL    __2printf
.text:00000064 14 D0 8D E2  ADD    SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000068 04 F0 9D E4  LDR    PC, [SP+4+var_4],#4
```

This code can be divided into several parts:

- Function prologue:

The very first `STR LR, [SP,#var_4]!` instruction saves `LR` on the stack, because we will use this register for the `printf()` call. Exclamation mark at the end mean *pre-index*. This mean, `SP` will be decreased by 4 at the beginning, then `LR` will be written by the address stored in `SP`. This is analogous to `PUSH` in x86. Read more about it: [39.2](#).

The second `SUB SP, SP, #0x14` instruction decreases `SP` (the [stack pointer](#)) in order to allocate 0x14 (20) bytes on the stack. Indeed, we need to pass 5 32-bit values via the stack to the `printf()` function, and each one occupies 4 bytes, that is $5 * 4 = 20$ –exactly. The other 4 32-bit values will be passed in registers.

- Passing 5, 6, 7 and 8 via stack: they are written to the R0, R1, R2 and R3 registers respectively. Then, the `ADD R12, SP, #0x18+var_14` instruction writes an address of the point in the stack, where these 4 variables will be written, into the R12 register. `var_14` is an assembly macro, equal to `-0x14`, which is created by `IDA` to succinctly denote code accessing the stack. `var_?` macros created by `IDA` reflect local variables in the stack. So, `SP + 4` will be written into the R12 register. The next `STMIA R12, R0-R3` instruction writes the contents of registers R0-R3 to the point in memory to which R12 is pointing. `STMIA` means *Store Multiple Increment After*. *Increment After* means that R12 will be increased by 4 after each register value is written.
- Passing 4 via stack: 4 is stored in R0 and then, this value, with the help of `STR R0, [SP,#0x18+var_18]` instruction, is saved on the stack. `var_18` is `-0x18`, so the offset will be 0, so, the value from the R0 register (4) will be written to the point where `SP` is pointing to.
- Passing 1, 2 and 3 via registers:

The values of the first 3 numbers (a, b, c) (1, 2, 3 respectively) are passed in the R1, R2 and R3 registers right before the `printf()` call, and the other 5 values are passed via the stack:

- `printf()` call.

- Function epilogue:

The `ADD SP, SP, #0x14` instruction returns the `SP` pointer back to its former point, thus cleaning the stack. Of course, what was written on the stack will stay there, but it all will be rewritten during the execution of subsequent functions.

The `LDR PC, [SP+4+var_4],#4` instruction loads the saved `LR` value from the stack into the `PC` register, thus causing the function to exit. There are no exclamation mark—indeed, first `PC` is loaded from the point `SP` pointing to ($4 + var_4 = 4 + (-4) = 0$), so this instruction is analogous to `LDR PC, [SP], #4`, then `SP` increased by 4. This is called *post-index*². Why `IDA` shows the instruction like that? Because it wants to show stack layout and the fact `var_4` is allocated for saved value of `LR` in the local stack. This instruction is somewhat analogous to `POP PC` in x86³.

6.4.2 Optimizing Keil 6/2013: thumb mode

```
.text:0000001C          printf_main2
.text:0000001C
.text:0000001C          var_18 = -0x18
.text:0000001C          var_14 = -0x14
.text:0000001C          var_8  = -8
.text:0000001C
.text:0000001C 00 B5          PUSH    {LR}
.text:0000001E 08 23          MOVS   R3, #8
.text:00000020 85 B0          SUB    SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000022 04 93          STR    R3, [SP,#0x18+var_8]
.text:00000024 07 22          MOVS   R2, #7
.text:00000026 06 21          MOVS   R1, #6
```

²Read more about it: [39.2](#).

³It's impossible to set value of `IP/EIP/RIP` using `POP` in x86, but anyway, you got the idea, I hope.

```
.text:00000028 05 20      MOVS    R0, #5
.text:0000002A 01 AB      ADD     R3, SP, #0x18+var_14
.text:0000002C 07 C3      STMIA  R3!, {R0-R2}
.text:0000002E 04 20      MOVS    R0, #4
.text:00000030 00 90      STR     R0, [SP,#0x18+var_18]
.text:00000032 03 23      MOVS    R3, #3
.text:00000034 02 22      MOVS    R2, #2
.text:00000036 01 21      MOVS    R1, #1
.text:00000038 A0 A0      ADR     R0, aADBDCDDDEDFDGD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; ↵
    ↵ g=%" ...
.text:0000003A 06 F0 D9 F8 BL      __2printf
.text:0000003E
.text:0000003E          loc_3E  ; CODE XREF: example13_f+16
.text:0000003E 05 B0      ADD     SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000040 00 BD      POP     {PC}
```

Almost like the previous example. However, this is thumb code and values are packed into stack differently: 8 for the first time, then 5, 6, 7 for the second, and 4 for the third.

6.4.3 Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM): ARM mode

```
__text:0000290C          _printf_main2
__text:0000290C
__text:0000290C          var_1C = -0x1C
__text:0000290C          var_C  = -0xC
__text:0000290C
__text:0000290C 80 40 2D E9  STMFDP SP!, {R7,LR}
__text:00002910 0D 70 A0 E1  MOV     R7, SP
__text:00002914 14 D0 4D E2  SUB     SP, SP, #0x14
__text:00002918 70 05 01 E3  MOV     R0, #0x1570
__text:0000291C 07 C0 A0 E3  MOV     R12, #7
__text:00002920 00 00 40 E3  MOVT   R0, #0
__text:00002924 04 20 A0 E3  MOV     R2, #4
__text:00002928 00 00 8F E0  ADD     R0, PC, R0
__text:0000292C 06 30 A0 E3  MOV     R3, #6
__text:00002930 05 10 A0 E3  MOV     R1, #5
__text:00002934 00 20 8D E5  STR     R2, [SP,#0x1C+var_1C]
__text:00002938 0A 10 8D E9  STMFA  SP, {R1,R3,R12}
__text:0000293C 08 90 A0 E3  MOV     R9, #8
__text:00002940 01 10 A0 E3  MOV     R1, #1
__text:00002944 02 20 A0 E3  MOV     R2, #2
__text:00002948 03 30 A0 E3  MOV     R3, #3
__text:0000294C 10 90 8D E5  STR     R9, [SP,#0x1C+var_C]
__text:00002950 A4 05 00 EB  BL      _printf
__text:00002954 07 D0 A0 E1  MOV     SP, R7
__text:00002958 80 80 BD E8  LDMFD  SP!, {R7,PC}
```

Almost the same as what we have already seen, with the exception of STMFA (Store Multiple Full Ascending) instruction, which is a synonym of STMIB (Store Multiple Increment Before) instruction. This instruction increases the value in the SP register and only then writes the next register value into memory, rather than the opposite order.

Another thing we easily spot is that the instructions are ostensibly located randomly. For instance, the value in the R0 register is prepared in three places, at addresses 0x2918, 0x2920 and 0x2928, when it would be possible to do it in one single point. However, the optimizing compiler has its own reasons for how to place instructions better. Usually, the processor attempts to simultaneously execute instructions located side-by-side. For example, instructions like ``MOVT R0, #0'' and ``ADD R0, PC, R0'' cannot be executed simultaneously since they both modifying the R0 register. On the other hand, ``MOVT R0, #0'' and ``MOV R2, #4'' instructions can be executed simultaneously since effects of their execution are not conflicting with each other. Presumably, compiler tries to generate code in such a way, where it is possible, of course.

6.4.4 Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM): thumb-2 mode

```
__text:00002BA0          _printf_main2
__text:00002BA0
__text:00002BA0          var_1C = -0x1C
__text:00002BA0          var_18 = -0x18
__text:00002BA0          var_C  = -0xC
__text:00002BA0
```

```

__text:00002BA0 80 B5      PUSH    {R7,LR}
__text:00002BA2 6F 46      MOV     R7, SP
__text:00002BA4 85 B0      SUB     SP, SP, #0x14
__text:00002BA6 41 F2 D8 20 MOVW    R0, #0x12D8
__text:00002BAA 4F F0 07 0C MOV.W   R12, #7
__text:00002BAE C0 F2 00 00 MOVT.W  R0, #0
__text:00002BB2 04 22      MOVS   R2, #4
__text:00002BB4 78 44      ADD    R0, PC ; char *
__text:00002BB6 06 23      MOVS   R3, #6
__text:00002BB8 05 21      MOVS   R1, #5
__text:00002BBA 0D F1 04 0E ADD.W   LR, SP, #0x1C+var_18
__text:00002BBE 00 92      STR    R2, [SP,#0x1C+var_1C]
__text:00002BC0 4F F0 08 09 MOV.W   R9, #8
__text:00002BC4 8E E8 0A 10 STMIA.W LR, {R1,R3,R12}
__text:00002BC8 01 21      MOVS   R1, #1
__text:00002BCA 02 22      MOVS   R2, #2
__text:00002BCC 03 23      MOVS   R3, #3
__text:00002BCE CD F8 10 90 STR.W   R9, [SP,#0x1C+var_C]
__text:00002BD2 01 F0 0A EA BLX    _printf
__text:00002BD6 05 B0      ADD    SP, SP, #0x14
__text:00002BD8 80 BD      POP    {R7,PC}

```

Almost the same as in the previous example, with the exception that thumb-instructions are used here instead.

6.4.5 ARM64

Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

.LC2:
.string "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n"
f3:
; grab more space in stack:
sub    sp, sp, #32
; save FP and LR to stack frame:
stp    x29, x30, [sp,16]
; set stack frame (FP=SP):
add    x29, sp, 16
adrp   x0, .LC2 ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n"
add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC2
mov    w1, 8 ; 9th argument
str    w1, [sp] ; store 9th argument in the stack
mov    w1, 1
mov    w2, 2
mov    w3, 3
mov    w4, 4
mov    w5, 5
mov    w6, 6
mov    w7, 7
bl     printf
sub    sp, x29, #16
; restore FP and LR
ldp    x29, x30, [sp,16]
add    sp, sp, 32
ret

```

First 8 arguments are passed in X- or W-registers: [ARM13c]. Pointer to the string require 64-bit register, so it's passed in X0. All other values has *int* 32-bit type, so these are written in 32-bit part of registers (W-). 9th argument (8) is passed via the stack. Indeed: it's not possible to pass large number of arguments in registers, its count is limited.

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 makes the same code.

6.5 Conclusion

So here is rough skeleton of function call:

Listing 6.9: x86

```

...
PUSH argument 3
PUSH argument 2

```

```
PUSH argument 1
CALL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)
```

Listing 6.10: x64 (MSVC)

```
MOV RCX, argument 1
MOV RDX, argument 2
MOV R8, argument 3
MOV R9, argument 4
...
PUSH argument 5, 6, etc (if needed)
CALL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)
```

Listing 6.11: x64 (GCC)

```
MOV RDI, argument 1
MOV RSI, argument 2
MOV RDX, argument 3
MOV RCX, argument 4
MOV R8, argument 5
MOV R9, argument 6
...
PUSH argument 7, 8, etc (if needed)
CALL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)
```

Listing 6.12: ARM

```
MOV R0, argument 1
MOV R1, argument 2
MOV R2, argument 3
MOV R3, argument 4
; add arguments 5, 6, etc into stack (if needed)
BL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)
```

Listing 6.13: ARM64

```
MOV X0, argument 1
MOV X1, argument 2
MOV X2, argument 3
MOV X3, argument 4
MOV X4, argument 5
MOV X5, argument 6
MOV X6, argument 7
MOV X7, argument 8
; add arguments 9, 10, etc into stack (if needed)
BL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)
```

6.6 By the way

By the way, this difference between passing arguments in x86, x64, fastcall and ARM is a good illustration of the fact that the CPU is not aware of how arguments are passed to functions. It is also possible to create a hypothetical compiler that is able to pass arguments via a special structure not using stack at all.

Chapter 7

scanf()

Now let's use `scanf()`.

7.1 Simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int x;
    printf ("Enter X:\n");

    scanf ("%d", &x);

    printf ("You entered %d...\n", x);

    return 0;
};
```

OK, I agree, it is not clever to use `scanf()` for user interactions today. But I wanted to illustrate passing pointer to `int` type variable.

7.1.1 About pointers

It is one of the most fundamental things in computer science. Often, large array, structure or object, it is too costly to pass to other function, while passing its address is much easier. More than that: if calling function must modify something in the large array or structure, to return it as a whole is absurd as well. So the simplest thing to do is to pass an address of array or structure to `callee` function, and let `callee` change what must be changed.

In C/C++ it is just an address of some point in memory.

In x86, address is represented as 32-bit number (i.e., occupying 4 bytes), while in x86-64 it is 64-bit number (occupying 8 bytes). By the way, that is the reason of some people's indignation related to switching to x86-64 –all pointers on x64-architecture require twice as more space.

With some effort, it is possible to work with untyped pointers only; e.g. standard C function `memcpy()`, copying a block from one place in memory to another, takes 2 pointers of `void*` type on input, since it is impossible to predict block data type you would like to copy. Data types is not even important to know, only block size matters.

Also pointers are widely used when function needs to return more than one value (we will back to this further (10)). `scanf()` is just that case. In addition to the function's need to show how many values were read successfully, it also should return all these values.

In C/C++ pointer type is needed only for type checking on compiling stage. Internally, in compiled code, there is no information about pointer types at all.

7.1.2 x86

MSVC

What we got after compiling in MSVC 2010:

CONST	SEGMENT	
\$SG3831	DB	'Enter X:', 0aH, 00H
\$SG3832	DB	'%d', 00H
\$SG3833	DB	'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H


```

CONST    ENDS
PUBLIC  _main
EXTRN   _scanf:PROC
EXTRN   _printf:PROC
; Function compile flags: /Odtp
_TEXT   SEGMENT
_x$ = -4                ; size = 4
_main   PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    push    OFFSET $SG3831 ; 'Enter X:'
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 4
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET $SG3832 ; '%d'
    call    _scanf
    add     esp, 8
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    push    OFFSET $SG3833 ; 'You entered %d...'
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 8

    ; return 0
    xor     eax, eax
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_main    ENDP
_TEXT    ENDS

```

Variable `x` is local.

C/C++ standard tell us it must be visible only in this function and not from any other point. Traditionally, local variables are placed in the local stack. Probably, there could be other ways, but in x86 it is so.

Next instruction after function prologue, `PUSH ECX`, has not a goal to save `ECX` state (notice absence of corresponding `POP ECX` at the function end).

In fact, this instruction just allocates 4 bytes on the stack for `x` variable storage.

`x` will be accessed with the assistance of the `_x$` macro (it equals to `-4`) and the `EBP` register pointing to current frame.

Over a span of function execution, `EBP` is pointing to current [stack frame](#) and it is possible to have an access to local variables and function arguments via `EBP+offset`.

It is also possible to use `ESP`, but since it's changing too often, it's not very convenient. So it can be said, the value of the `EBP` is *frozen state* of the value of the `ESP` at the moment of function execution start.

A very typical [stack frame](#) layout in 32-bit environment is:

...	...
EBP-8	local variable #2, marked in IDA as <code>var_8</code>
EBP-4	local variable #1, marked in IDA as <code>var_4</code>
EBP	saved value of <code>EBP</code>
EBP+4	return address
EBP+8	argument#1, marked in IDA as <code>arg_0</code>
EBP+0xC	argument#2, marked in IDA as <code>arg_4</code>
EBP+0x10	argument#3, marked in IDA as <code>arg_8</code>
...	...

Function `scanf()` in our example has two arguments.

First is pointer to the string containing ```%d'`` and second – address of `x` variable.

First of all, address of the `x` variable is placed into the `EAX` register by `lea eax, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]` instruction `LEA` meaning *load effective address*, and is often used for forming address of something ([A.6.2](#)).

It can be said, `LEA` here just stores sum of the value in the `EBP` register and `_x$` macro to the `EAX` register.

It is the same as `lea eax, [ebp-4]`.

So, 4 subtracting from value in the `EBP` register and result is placed to the `EAX` register. And then value in the `EAX` register is pushing into stack and `scanf()` is called.

`printf()` is called after that. First argument is pointer to string: ```You entered %d...\n'``.

Second argument is prepared as: `mov ecx, [ebp-4]`, this instruction places to the `ECX` not address of the `x` variable, but its contents.

After, value in the `ECX` is placed on the stack and the last `printf()` called.

7.1.3 MSVC + OllyDbg

Let's try this example in OllyDbg. Let's load, press F8 (step over) until we get into our executable file instead of ntdll.dll. Scroll up until main() appears. Let's click on the first instruction (PUSH EBP), press F2, then F9 (Run) and breakpoint triggers on the main() begin.

Let's trace to the place where the address of x variable is prepared:

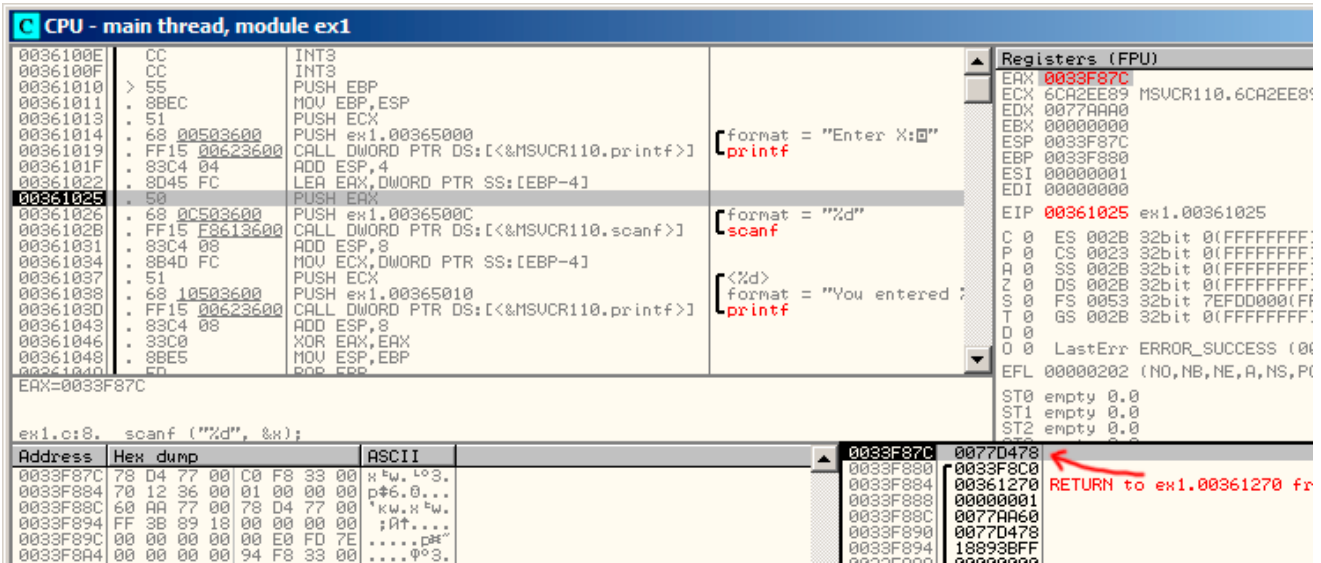


Figure 7.1: OllyDbg: address of the local variable is computed

It is possible to right-click on EAX in registers window and then “Follow in stack”. This address will appear in stack window. Look, this is a variable in the local stack. I drew a red arrow there. And there are some garbage (0x77D478). Now address of the stack element, with the help of PUSH, will be written to the same stack, nearby. Let's trace by F8 until scanf() execution finished. During the moment of scanf() execution, we enter, for example, 123, in the console window:

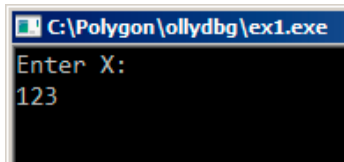


Figure 7.2: Console output

scanf() executed here:

The screenshot displays the OllyDbg interface for the main thread of module ex1. The CPU window shows assembly instructions for the scanf function, with the EAX register highlighted at 00000001. The registers window shows EAX = 00000001. The stack window shows the return value 0x7B (123) at address 0033F874.

Address	Hex dump	ASCII
0033F87C	7B 00 00 00 C0 F8 33 00	... 123.
0033F884	70 12 36 00 01 00 00 00	0123600000
0033F88C	60 AA 77 00 78 D4 77 00	0AA770078D47700
0033F894	FF 3B 89 18 00 00 00 00	FF3B891800000000
0033F89C	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	0000000000000000

Figure 7.3: OllyDbg: scanf() executed

scanf() returns 1 in EAX, which means, it have read one value successfully. The element of stack of our attention now contain 0x7B (123).

Further, this value is copied from the stack to the ECX register and passed into `printf()`:

Figure 7.4: OllyDbg: preparing the value for passing into `printf()`

GCC

Let's try to compile this code in GCC 4.4.1 under Linux:

```
main      proc near
var_20    = dword ptr -20h
var_1C    = dword ptr -1Ch
var_4     = dword ptr -4

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        and     esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
        sub     esp, 20h
        mov     [esp+20h+var_20], offset aEnterX ; "Enter X:"
        call    _puts
        mov     eax, offset aD ; "%d"
        lea    edx, [esp+20h+var_4]
        mov     [esp+20h+var_1C], edx
        mov     [esp+20h+var_20], eax
        call    ___isoc99_scanf
        mov     edx, [esp+20h+var_4]
        mov     eax, offset aYouEnteredD___ ; "You entered %d...\n"
        mov     [esp+20h+var_1C], edx
        mov     [esp+20h+var_20], eax
        call    _printf
        mov     eax, 0
        leave
        retn
main      endp
```

GCC replaced first the `printf()` call to the `puts()`, it was already described (3.4.3) why it was done. As before – arguments are placed on the stack by `MOV` instruction.

7.1.4 x64

All the same, but registers are used instead of stack for arguments passing.

MSVC

Listing 7.1: MSVC 2012 x64

```
_DATA    SEGMENT
$SG1289  DB    'Enter X:', 0aH, 00H
$SG1291  DB    '%d', 00H
```

```

$SG1292 DB      'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
_DATA   ENDS

_TEXT   SEGMENT
x$ = 32
main    PROC
$LN3:
        sub     rsp, 56
        lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1289 ; 'Enter X:'
        call   printf
        lea    rdx, QWORD PTR x$[rsp]
        lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1291 ; '%d'
        call   scanf
        mov    edx, DWORD PTR x$[rsp]
        lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1292 ; 'You entered %d...'
        call   printf

        ; return 0
        xor    eax, eax
        add    rsp, 56
        ret    0
main    ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS

```

GCC

Listing 7.2: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```

.LC0:
.string "Enter X:"
.LC1:
.string "%d"
.LC2:
.string "You entered %d...\n"

main:
        sub     rsp, 24
        mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "Enter X:"
        call   puts
        lea    rsi, [rsp+12]
        mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1 ; "%d"
        xor    eax, eax
        call   __isoc99_scanf
        mov    esi, DWORD PTR [rsp+12]
        mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC2 ; "You entered %d...\n"
        xor    eax, eax
        call   printf

        ; return 0
        xor    eax, eax
        add    rsp, 24
        ret

```

7.1.5 ARM**Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)**

```

.text:00000042          scanf_main
.text:00000042
.text:00000042          var_8          = -8
.text:00000042
.text:00000042 08 B5          PUSH    {R3,LR}
.text:00000044 A9 A0          ADR     R0, aEnterX      ; "Enter X:\n"
.text:00000046 06 F0 D3 F8     BL     __2printf
.text:0000004A 69 46          MOV     R1, SP
.text:0000004C AA A0          ADR     R0, aD           ; "%d"
.text:0000004E 06 F0 CD F8     BL     __0scanf

```

```
.text:00000052 00 99          LDR    R1, [SP,#8+var_8]
.text:00000054 A9 A0          ADR    R0, aYouEnteredD___ ; "You entered %d...\n"
.text:00000056 06 F0 CB F8          BL     __2printf
.text:0000005A 00 20          MOVS   R0, #0
.text:0000005C 08 BD          POP    {R3,PC}
```

A pointer to a *int*-typed variable must be passed to a `scanf()` so it can return value via it. *int* is 32-bit value, so we need 4 bytes for storing it somewhere in memory, and it fits exactly in 32-bit register. A place for the local variable `x` is allocated in the stack and `IDA` named it `var_8`, however, it is not necessary to allocate it since `SP stack pointer` is already pointing to the space may be used instantly. So, `SP stack pointer` value is copied to the `R1` register and, together with format-string, passed into `scanf()`. Later, with the help of the `LDR` instruction, this value is moved from stack into the `R1` register in order to be passed into `printf()`.

ARM64

Listing 7.3: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```
1  .LC0:
2      .string "Enter X:"
3  .LC1:
4      .string "%d"
5  .LC2:
6      .string "You entered %d...\n"
7  f4:
8  ; save FP and LR in stack frame:
9      stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
10 ; set stack frame (FP=SP)
11     add    x29, sp, 0
12 ; load pointer to the "Enter X:" string:
13     adrp   x0, .LC0
14     add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC0
15 ; X0=pointer to the "Enter X:" string
16 ; print it:
17     bl     puts
18 ; load pointer to the "%d" string:
19     adrp   x0, .LC1
20     add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC1
21 ; find a space in stack frame for x variable (X1=FP+28):
22     add    x1, x29, 28
23 ; X1=address of x variable
24 ; pass the address to scanf() and call it:
25     bl     __isoc99_scanf
26 ; load 32-bit value from the variable in stack frame:
27     ldr    w1, [x29,28]
28 ; W1=x
29 ; load pointer to the "You entered %d...\n" string
30 ; printf() will take text string from X0 and x variable from X1 (or W1)
31     adrp   x0, .LC2
32     add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC2
33     bl     printf
34 ; return 0
35     mov    w0, 0
36 ; restore FP and LR:
37     ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
38     ret
```

Most interesting part is finding space for `x` variable in the stack frame (line 22). The address is passed to `scanf()` then, which just stores value user entered to the memory at this address. This is 32-bit value of *int* type. Value is fetched at line 27 and then passed to `printf()`.

7.2 Global variables

What if `x` variable from previous example will not be local but global variable? Then it will be accessible from any point, not only from function body. Global variables are considered as [anti-pattern](#), but for the sake of experiment we could do this.

```
#include <stdio.h>
// make x as global variable
```

```

int x;

int main()
{
    printf ("Enter X:\n");

    scanf ("%d", &x);

    printf ("You entered %d...\n", x);

    return 0;
};

```

7.2.1 MSVC: x86

```

_DATA    SEGMENT
COMM    _x:DWORD
$SG2456    DB    'Enter X:', 0aH, 00H
$SG2457    DB    '%d', 00H
$SG2458    DB    'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
_DATA    ENDS
PUBLIC    _main
EXTRN    _scanf:PROC
EXTRN    _printf:PROC
; Function compile flags: /Odtp
_TEXT    SEGMENT
_main    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    OFFSET $SG2456
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 4
    push    OFFSET _x
    push    OFFSET $SG2457
    call    _scanf
    add     esp, 8
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _x
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET $SG2458
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 8
    xor     eax, eax
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_main    ENDP
_TEXT    ENDS

```

Now `x` variable is defined in the `_DATA` segment. Memory in local stack is not allocated anymore. All accesses to it are not via stack but directly to process memory. Not initialized global variables takes no place in the executable file (indeed, why we should allocate a place in the executable file for initially zeroed variables?), but when someone will access this place in memory, `OS` will allocate a block of zeroes there¹.

Now let's assign value to variable explicitly:

```
int x=10; // default value
```

We got:

```

_DATA    SEGMENT
_x       DD      0aH
...

```

Here we see value `0xA` of `DWORD` type (`DD` meaning `DWORD` = 32 bit).

If you will open compiled `.exe` in `IDA`, you will see the `x` variable placed at the beginning of the `_DATA` segment, and after you'll see text strings.

If you will open compiled `.exe` in `IDA` from previous example where `x` value is not defined, you'll see something like this:

¹That is how `VM` behaves

```

.data:0040FA80 _x          dd ?          ; DATA XREF: _main+10
.data:0040FA80          ; _main+22
.data:0040FA84 dword_40FA84 dd ?          ; DATA XREF: _memset+1E
.data:0040FA84          ; unknown_libname_1+28
.data:0040FA88 dword_40FA88 dd ?          ; DATA XREF: ___sbh_find_block+5
.data:0040FA88          ; ___sbh_free_block+2BC
.data:0040FA8C ; LPVOID lpMem
.data:0040FA8C lpMem      dd ?          ; DATA XREF: ___sbh_find_block+B
.data:0040FA8C          ; ___sbh_free_block+2CA
.data:0040FA90 dword_40FA90 dd ?          ; DATA XREF: _V6_HeapAlloc+13
.data:0040FA90          ; __calloc_impl+72
.data:0040FA94 dword_40FA94 dd ?          ; DATA XREF: ___sbh_free_block+2FE

```

`_x` marked as ? among other variables not required to be initialized. This means that after loading `.exe` to memory, a space for all these variables will be allocated and filled by zeroes [ISO07, 6.7.8p10]. But in an `.exe` file these not initialized variables are not occupy anything. E.g. it is suitable for large arrays.

7.2.2 MSVC: x86 + OllyDbg

Things are even simpler here:

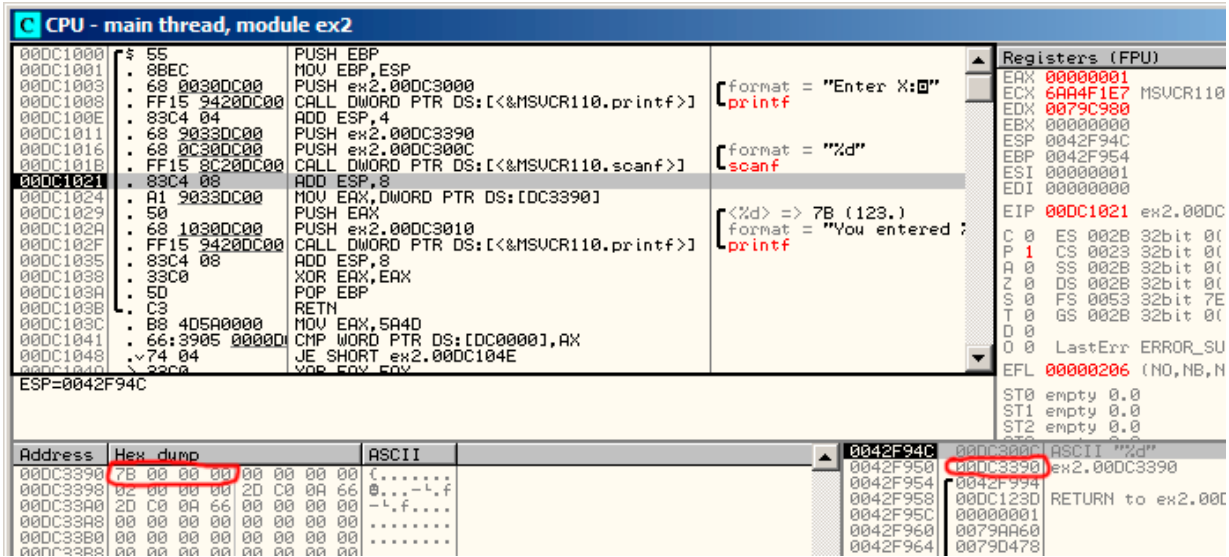


Figure 7.5: OllyDbg: after scanf() execution

Variable is located in the data segment. By the way, after PUSH instruction (pushing *x* address) is executed, the address will appear in stack, and it is possible to right-click on that element and select “Follow in dump”. And the variable will appear in the memory window at left.

After we enter 123 in the console, 0x7B will appear here.

But why the very first byte is 7B? Thinking logically, a 00 00 00 7B should be there. This is what called *endianness*, and *little-endian* is used in x86. This mean that lowest byte is written first, and highest written last. More about it: [42](#).

Some time after, 32-bit value from this place of memory is loaded into EAX and passed into printf().

x variable address in the memory is 0xDC3390.

In OllyDbg we can see process memory map (Alt-M) and we will see that this address is inside of .data PE-segment of our program:

Address	Size	Owner	Section	Contains	Type	Access	Initial	Mapped as
00010000	00010000				Map	RW	RW	
00020000	00010000				Map	RW	RW	
00040000	00001000				Imag	R	RWE	
00050000	00004000				Map	R	R	
00060000	00001000				Priv	RW	RW	
00070000	00067000				Map	R	R	\Device\HarddiskVolume1\Win...
00149000	00007000				Priv	RW	Guar	RW
0042C000	00001000				Priv	RW	Guar	RW
0042D000	00003000			stack of ma	Priv	RW	Guar	RW
005A0000	00009000				Priv	RW	RW	
00790000	0000E000				Priv	RW	RW	
00DC0000	00001000	ex2		PE header	Imag	R	RWE	
00DC1000	00001000	ex2	.text	code	Imag	R	RWE	
00DC2000	00001000	ex2	.rdata	imports	Imag	R	RWE	
00DC3000	00001000	ex2	.data	data	Imag	R	RWE	
00DC4000	00001000	ex2	.reloc	relocations	Imag	R	RWE	
6A9D0000	00001000	MSUCR110		PE header	Imag	R	RWE	
6A9D1000	000C6000	MSUCR110	.text	code,export	Imag	R	RWE	
6AA97000	00006000	MSUCR110	.data	data	Imag	R	RWE	
6AA9D000	00002000	MSUCR110	.idata	imports	Imag	R	RWE	
6AA9F000	00001000	MSUCR110	.rsrc	resources	Imag	R	RWE	
6AAA0000	00006000	MSUCR110	.reloc	relocations	Imag	R	RWE	
74FE0000	00003000				Imag	R	RWE	
74FF0000	0005C000				Imag	R	RWE	
75050000	0003F000				Imag	R	RWE	
76930000	00010000	kernel32		PE header	Imag	R	RWE	
76940000	000C1000	kernel32	.text	code,import	Imag	R	RWE	
76A10000	00002000	kernel32	.data	data	Imag	RW	RWE	
76A20000	00001000	kernel32	.rsrc	resources	Imag	R	RWE	
76A30000	0000B000	kernel32	.reloc	relocations	Imag	R	RWE	
77060000	00001000	KERNELBA		PE header	Imag	R	RWE	
77061000	00040000	KERNELBA	.text	code,import	Imag	R	RWE	
770A1000	00002000	KERNELBA	.data	data	Imag	R	RWE	
770A3000	00001000	KERNELBA	.rsrc	resources	Imag	R	RWE	
770A4000	00003000	KERNELBA	.reloc	relocations	Imag	R	RWE	
774B0000	001A9000				Imag	R	RWE	
77690000	00001000	ntdll		PE header	Imag	R	RWE	
776A0000	000D6000	ntdll	.text	code,export	Imag	R	RWE	
77780000	00001000	ntdll	RT		Imag	R	RWE	
77790000	00009000	ntdll	.data	data	Imag	RW	RWE	
777D0000	00057000	ntdll	.rsrc	resources	Imag	R	RWE	

Figure 7.6: OllyDbg: process memory map

7.2.3 GCC: x86

It is almost the same in Linux, except segment names and properties: not initialized variables are located in the `_bss` segment. In `ELF` file format this segment has such attributes:

```
; Segment type: Uninitialized
; Segment permissions: Read/Write
```

If to statically assign a value to variable, e.g. `10`, it will be placed in the `_data` segment, this is segment with the following attributes:

```
; Segment type: Pure data
; Segment permissions: Read/Write
```

7.2.4 MSVC: x64

Listing 7.4: MSVC 2012 x64

```
_DATA SEGMENT
COMM x:DWORD
$SG2924 DB 'Enter X:', 0aH, 00H
$SG2925 DB '%d', 00H
$SG2926 DB 'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
_DATA ENDS

_TEXT SEGMENT
main PROC
$LN3:
sub rsp, 40

lea rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2924 ; 'Enter X:'
call printf
lea rdx, OFFSET FLAT:x
lea rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2925 ; '%d'
call scanf
mov edx, DWORD PTR x
lea rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2926 ; 'You entered %d...'
call printf
```

```

        ; return 0
        xor     eax, eax

        add     rsp, 40
        ret     0
main     ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS

```

Almost the same code as in x86. Take a notice that *x* variable address is passed to `scanf()` using `LEA` instruction, while the value of variable is passed to the second `printf()` using `MOV` instruction. ``DWORD PTR``—is a part of assembly language (no related to machine codes), showing that the variable data type is 32-bit and the `MOV` instruction should be encoded accordingly.

7.2.5 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

.text:00000000 ; Segment type: Pure code
.text:00000000 AREA .text, CODE
...
.text:00000000 main
.text:00000000 PUSH {R4,LR}
.text:00000002 ADR R0, aEnterX ; "Enter X:\n"
.text:00000004 BL __2printf
.text:00000008 LDR R1, =x
.text:0000000A ADR R0, aD ; "%d"
.text:0000000C BL __0scanf
.text:00000010 LDR R0, =x
.text:00000012 LDR R1, [R0]
.text:00000014 ADR R0, aYouEnteredD___ ; "You entered %d...\n"
.text:00000016 BL __2printf
.text:0000001A MOVS R0, #0
.text:0000001C POP {R4,PC}
...
.text:00000020 aEnterX DCB "Enter X:",0xA,0 ; DATA XREF: main+2
.text:0000002A DCB 0
.text:0000002B DCB 0
.text:0000002C off_2C DCD x ; DATA XREF: main+8
.text:0000002C ; main+10
.text:00000030 aD DCB "%d",0 ; DATA XREF: main+A
.text:00000033 DCB 0
.text:00000034 aYouEnteredD___ DCB "You entered %d...",0xA,0 ; DATA XREF: main+14
.text:00000047 DCB 0
.text:00000047 ; .text ends
.text:00000047
...
.data:00000048 ; Segment type: Pure data
.data:00000048 AREA .data, DATA
.data:00000048 ; ORG 0x48
.data:00000048 EXPORT x
.data:00000048 x DCD 0xA ; DATA XREF: main+8
.data:00000048 ; main+10
.data:00000048 ; .data ends

```

So, *x* variable is now global and somehow, it is now located in another segment, namely data segment (*.data*). One could ask, why text strings are located in code segment (*.text*) and *x* can be located right here? Since this is variable, and by its definition, it can be changed. And probably, can be changed very often. Segment of code can sometimes be located in microcontroller ROM (remember, we now deal with embedded microelectronics, and memory scarcity is common here), and changeable variables—in [RAM²](#). It is not very economically to store constant variables in RAM when one have ROM. Furthermore, constant variables in RAM must be initialized before, since after RAM turning on, it, obviously, contain random information.

Onwards, we see a pointer to the *x* (`off_2C`) variable in code segment, and all operations with variable occurred via this pointer. This is because *x* variable can be located somewhere far from this code fragment, so its address must be saved somewhere in close proximity to the code. `LDR` instruction in thumb mode can address only variable in range of 1020 bytes from the point it is located. Same instruction in ARM-mode—variables in range of ± 4095 bytes. This, address of the *x* variable must be located somewhere in close proximity, because, there is no guarantee the linker will able to place this variable near the code, it could be even in external memory chip!

²Random-access memory

One more thing: if variable will be declared as *const*, Keil compiler shall allocate it in the `.constdata` segment. Perhaps, thereafter, linker will be able to place this segment in ROM too, along with code segment.

7.2.6 ARM64

Listing 7.5: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

1  .comm    x,4,4
2  .LC0:
3  .string "Enter X:"
4  .LC1:
5  .string "%d"
6  .LC2:
7  .string "You entered %d...\n"
8  f5:
9  ; save FP and LR in stack frame:
10     stp    x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
11 ; set stack frame (FP=SP)
12     add    x29, sp, 0
13 ; load pointer to the "Enter X:" string:
14     adrp   x0, .LC0
15     add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC0
16     bl     puts
17 ; load pointer to the "%d" string:
18     adrp   x0, .LC1
19     add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC1
20 ; construct address of x global variable:
21     adrp   x1, x
22     add    x1, x1, :lo12:x
23     bl     __isoc99_scanf
24 ; construct address of x global variable again:
25     adrp   x0, x
26     add    x0, x0, :lo12:x
27 ; load value from memory at this address:
28     ldr    w1, [x0]
29 ; load pointer to the "You entered %d...\n" string:
30     adrp   x0, .LC2
31     add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC2
32     bl     printf
33 ; return 0
34     mov    w0, 0
35 ; restore FP and LR:
36     ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 16
37     ret

```

Now the *x* variable is declared as global variable and its address calculated using ADRP/ADD instructions pair (lines 21 and 25).

7.3 scanf() result checking

As I noticed before, it is slightly old-fashioned to use `scanf()` today. But if we have to, we need at least check if `scanf()` finished correctly without error.

```

#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int x;
    printf ("Enter X:\n");

    if (scanf ("%d", &x)==1)
        printf ("You entered %d...\n", x);
    else
        printf ("What you entered? Huh?\n");

    return 0;
};

```

By standard, `scanf()`³ function returns number of fields it successfully read.

In our case, if everything went fine and user entered a number, `scanf()` will return 1 or 0 (or EOF) in case of error.

I added C code for `scanf()` result checking and printing error message in case of error.

This works predictably:

```
C:\...\>ex3.exe
Enter X:
123
You entered 123...

C:\...\>ex3.exe
Enter X:
ouch
What you entered? Huh?
```

7.3.1 MSVC: x86

What we got in assembly language (MSVC 2010):

```
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
    push  eax
    push  OFFSET $SG3833 ; '%d', 00H
    call  _scanf
    add   esp, 8
    cmp   eax, 1
    jne   SHORT $LN2@main
    mov   ecx, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
    push  ecx
    push  OFFSET $SG3834 ; 'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 8
    jmp   SHORT $LN1@main
$LN2@main:
    push  OFFSET $SG3836 ; 'What you entered? Huh?', 0aH, 00H
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 4
$LN1@main:
    xor   eax, eax
```

Caller function (`main()`) must have access to the result of callee function (`scanf()`), so callee leaves this value in the EAX register.

After, we check it with the help of instruction `CMP EAX, 1` (*CoMPare*), in other words, we compare value in the EAX register with 1.

JNE conditional jump follows `CMP` instruction. JNE means *Jump if Not Equal*.

So, if value in the EAX register not equals to 1, then the processor will pass execution to the address mentioned in operand of JNE, in our case it is `$LN2@main`. Passing control to this address, CPU will execute function `printf()` with argument `'What you entered? Huh?'`. But if everything is fine, conditional jump will not be taken, and another `printf()` call will be executed, with two arguments: `'You entered %d...'` and value of variable `x`.

Since second subsequent `printf()` not needed to be executed, there is `JMP` after (unconditional jump), it will pass control to the point after second `printf()` and before `XOR EAX, EAX` instruction, which implement `return 0`.

So, it can be said that comparing a value with another is *usually* implemented by `CMP/JCC` instructions pair, where `cc` is *condition code*. `CMP` comparing two values and set processor flags⁴. `JCC` check flags needed to be checked and pass control to mentioned address (or not pass).

But in fact, this could be perceived paradoxical, but `CMP` instruction is in fact `SUB` (subtract). All arithmetic instructions set processor flags too, not just `CMP`. If we compare 1 and 1, `1 - 1` will be 0 in result, `ZF` flag will be set (meaning the last result was 0). There is no any other circumstances when it is possible except when operands are equal. JNE checks only `ZF` flag and jumping only if it is not set. JNE is in fact a synonym of `JNZ` (*Jump if Not Zero*) instruction. Assembler translating both JNE and JNZ instructions into same opcode. So, `CMP` instruction can be replaced to `SUB` instruction and almost everything will be fine, but the difference is in the `SUB` alter the value of the first operand. `CMP` is *SUB without saving result*.

7.3.2 MSVC: x86: IDA

It's time to run `IDA` and try to do something in it. By the way, it is good idea to use `/MD` option in MSVC for beginners: this mean that all these standard functions will not be linked with executable file, but will be imported from the `MSVCR*.DLL`

³MSDN: `scanf`, `wscanf`: [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/9y6s16x1\(VS.71\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/9y6s16x1(VS.71).aspx)

⁴About x86 flags, see also: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/FLAGS_register_\(computing\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/FLAGS_register_(computing)).

file instead. Thus it will be easier to see which standard function used and where.

While analysing code in *IDA*, it is very advisable to do notes for oneself (and others). For example, analysing this example, we see that `JNZ` will be triggered in case of error. So it's possible to move cursor to the label, press "n" and rename it to "error". Another label—into "exit". What I've got:

```
.text:00401000 _main proc near
.text:00401000
.text:00401000 var_4 = dword ptr -4
.text:00401000 argc = dword ptr 8
.text:00401000 argv = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:00401000 envp = dword ptr 10h
.text:00401000
.text:00401000     push    ebp
.text:00401001     mov     ebp, esp
.text:00401003     push    ecx
.text:00401004     push    offset Format ; "Enter X:\n"
.text:00401009     call   ds:printf
.text:0040100F     add     esp, 4
.text:00401012     lea    eax, [ebp+var_4]
.text:00401015     push    eax
.text:00401016     push    offset aD ; "%d"
.text:0040101B     call   ds:scanf
.text:00401021     add     esp, 8
.text:00401024     cmp    eax, 1
.text:00401027     jnz    short error
.text:00401029     mov    ecx, [ebp+var_4]
.text:0040102C     push    ecx
.text:0040102D     push    offset aYou ; "You entered %d...\n"
.text:00401032     call   ds:printf
.text:00401038     add     esp, 8
.text:0040103B     jmp    short exit
.text:0040103D error: ; CODE XREF: _main+27
.text:0040103D     push    offset aWhat ; "What you entered? Huh?\n"
.text:00401042     call   ds:printf
.text:00401048     add     esp, 4
.text:0040104B exit: ; CODE XREF: _main+3B
.text:0040104B     xor    eax, eax
.text:0040104D     mov    esp, ebp
.text:0040104F     pop    ebp
.text:00401050     retn
.text:00401050 _main endp
```

Now it's slightly easier to understand the code. However, it's not good idea to comment every instruction excessively.

A part of function can also be hidden in *IDA*: a block should be marked, then "-" on numerical pad is pressed and text to be entered.

I've hide two parts and gave names to them:

```
.text:00401000 _text segment para public 'CODE' use32
.text:00401000     assume cs:_text
.text:00401000     ;org 401000h
.text:00401000 ; ask for X
.text:00401012 ; get X
.text:00401024     cmp    eax, 1
.text:00401027     jnz    short error
.text:00401029 ; print result
.text:0040103B     jmp    short exit
.text:0040103D error: ; CODE XREF: _main+27
.text:0040103D     push    offset aWhat ; "What you entered? Huh?\n"
.text:00401042     call   ds:printf
.text:00401048     add     esp, 4
.text:0040104B exit: ; CODE XREF: _main+3B
.text:0040104B     xor    eax, eax
.text:0040104D     mov    esp, ebp
.text:0040104F     pop    ebp
.text:00401050     retn
.text:00401050 _main endp
```

To unhide these parts, “+” on numerical pad can be used.

By pressing “space”, we can see how IDA can represent a function as a graph:

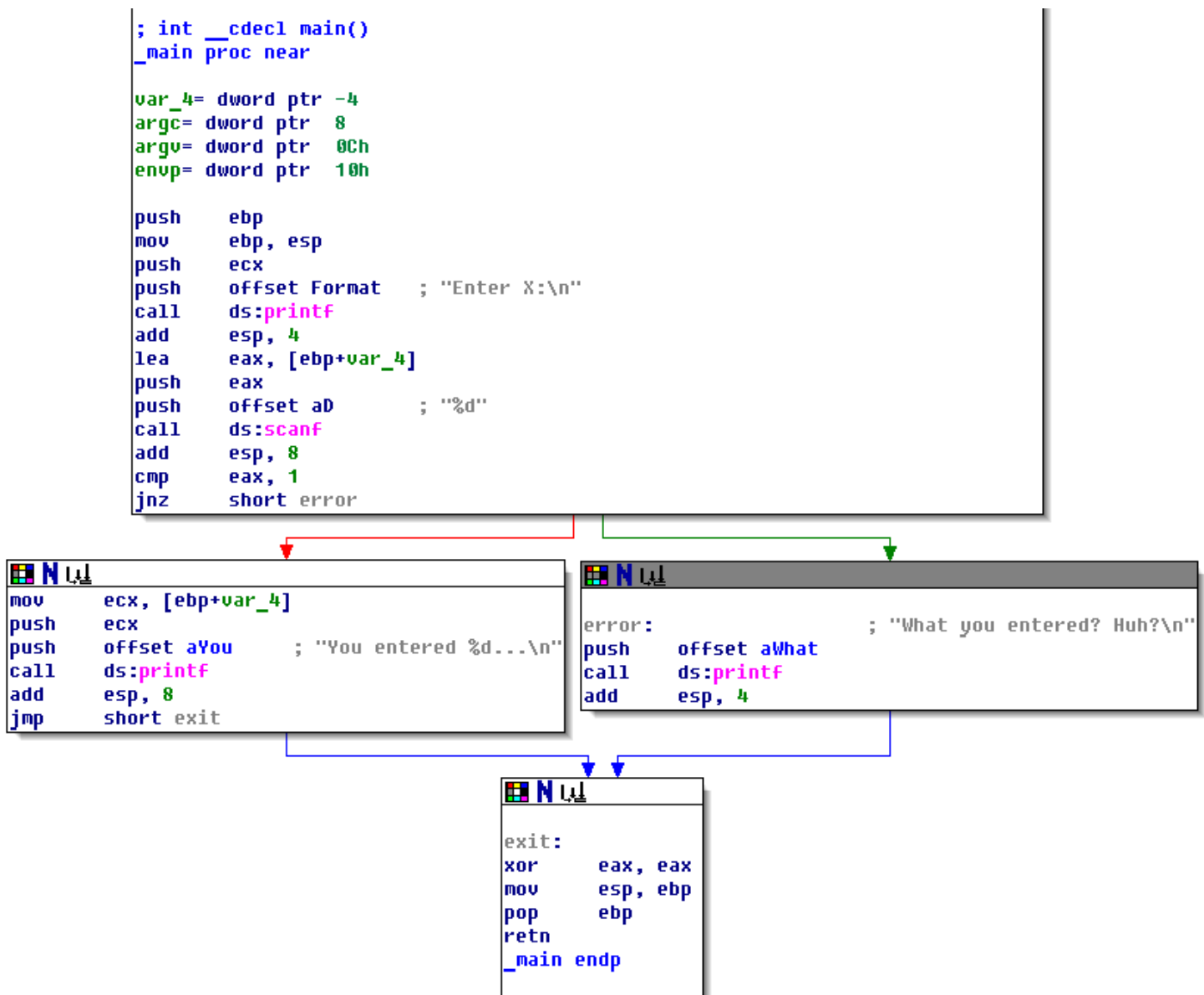


Figure 7.7: Graph mode in IDA

There are two arrows after each conditional jump: green and red. Green arrow pointing to the block which will be executed if jump is triggered, and red if otherwise.

It is possible to fold nodes in this mode and give them names as well ("group nodes"). I did it for 3 blocks:

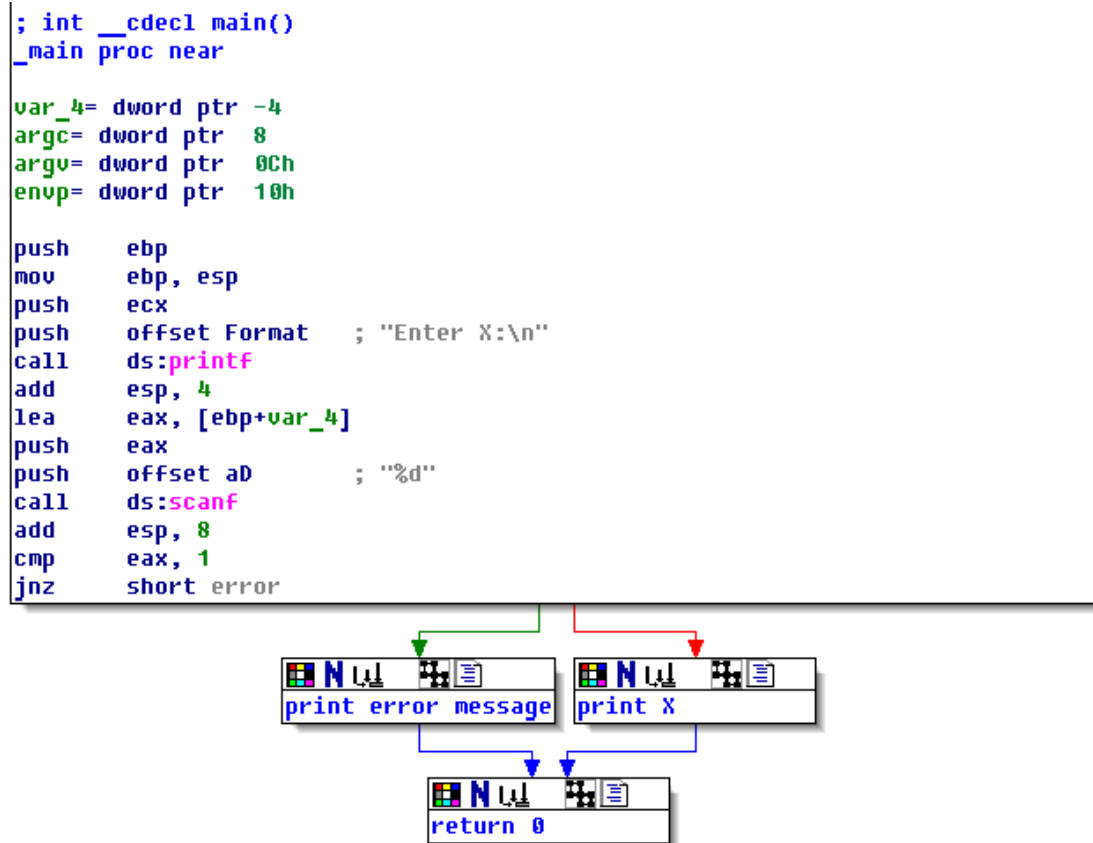


Figure 7.8: Graph mode in IDA with 3 nodes folded

It's very useful. It can be said, a very important part of reverse engineer's job is to reduce information he/she have.

7.3.3 MSVC: x86 + OllyDbg

Let's try to hack our program in OllyDbg, forcing it to think scanf() working always without error.

When address of local variable is passed into scanf(), initially this variable contain some random garbage, that is 0x4CD478 in case:

The screenshot displays the CPU window for the main thread in module ex3. The assembly code is as follows:

```

00081000 55      PUSH EBP
00081001 8BEC   MOV EBP,ESP
00081003 51     PUSH ECX
00081004 68 00300800  PUSH ex3.00083000
00081009 FF15 94200800  CALL DWORD PTR DS:[&&MSUCR110.printf]
0008100F 83C4 04     ADD ESP,4
00081012 8D45 FC   LEA EAX,DWORD PTR SS:[EBP-4]
00081015 50     PUSH EAX
00081016 68 0C300800  PUSH ex3.0008300C
0008101B FF15 8C200800  CALL DWORD PTR DS:[&&MSUCR110.scanf]
00081021 83C4 08     ADD ESP,8
00081024 83F8 01     CMP EAX,1
00081027 75 14     JNZ SHORT ex3.0008103D
00081029 8B4D FC   MOV ECX,DWORD PTR SS:[EBP-4]
0008102C 51     PUSH ECX
0008102D 68 10300800  PUSH ex3.00083010
00081032 FF15 94200800  CALL DWORD PTR DS:[&&MSUCR110.printf]
00081038 83C4 08     ADD ESP,8
0008103B EB 0E     JMP SHORT ex3.0008104B
0008103D 68 24300800  PUSH ex3.00083024
00081042 FF15 94200800  CALL DWORD PTR DS:[&&MSUCR110.printf]
    
```

The Registers (FPU) window shows:

```

EAX 0022F860
ECX 6A68EE89 MSUCR110.6A68EE89
EDX 004C9AA0
EBX 00000000
ESP 0022F860
EBP 0022F864
ESI 00000001
EDI 00000000
EIP 00081015 ex3.00081015
    
```

The memory dump window shows the contents of the local variable at address 0022F860:

```

Address Hex dump ASCII
00083000 45 6E 74 65 72 20 58 3A Enter X:
00083008 0A 00 00 00 25 64 00 00 ....%d..
00083010 59 6F 75 20 65 6E 74 65 You ente
00083018 72 65 64 20 25 64 2E 2E red %d..
00083020 2E 0A 00 00 57 68 61 74 ....What
00083028 20 79 6F 75 20 65 6E 74 you ent
00083030 65 72 65 64 3F 20 48 75 ered? Hu
    
```

The memory dump also shows the value 004CD478 at address 0022F860, which is the address of the local variable. A red arrow points to this value.

Figure 7.9: OllyDbg: passing variable address into scanf()

When scanf() is executing, I entered something definitely not a number in the console, like "asdasd". scanf() finishing with 0 in EAX, which mean, an error occurred:

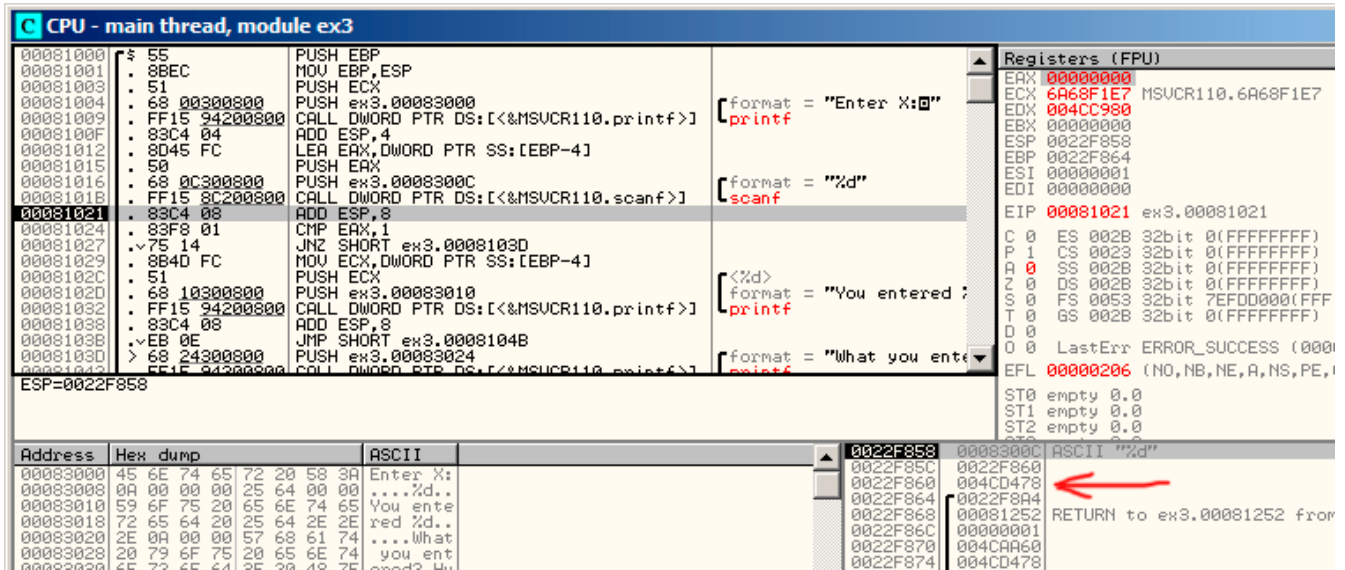
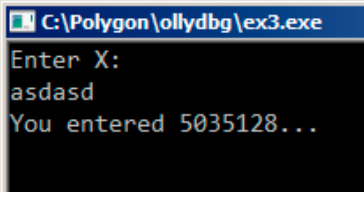


Figure 7.10: OllyDbg: scanf() returning error

We can also see to the local variable in the stack and notice that it's not changed. Indeed, what scanf() would write there? It just did nothing except returning zero.

Now let's try to "hack" our program. Let's right-click on EAX, there will also be "Set to 1" among other options. This is what we need.

1 now in EAX, so the following check will be executed as we need, and `printf()` will print the value of the variable in the stack. Let's run (F9) and we will see this in the console window:



```
C:\Polygon\ollydbg\ex3.exe
Enter X:
asdasd
You entered 5035128...
```

Figure 7.11: console window

Indeed, 5035128 is a decimal representation of the number in the stack (0x4CD478)!

7.3.4 MSVC: x86 + Hiew

This can be also a simple example of executable file patching. We may try to patch executable, so the program will always print numbers, no matter what we entered.

Assuming the executable compiled against external MSVCR* .DLL (i.e., with /MD option)⁵, we may find `main()` function at the very beginning of `.text` section. Let's open executable in Hiew, find the very beginning of `.text` section (Enter, F8, F6, Enter, Enter).

We will see this:

```

Hiew: ex3.exe
C:\Polygon\ollydbg\ex3.exe  FRO -----  a32 PE .00401000 Hiew 8.02 (c)SEN
.00401000: 55          push     ebp
.00401001: 8BEC       mov     ebp,esp
.00401003: 51        push     ecx
.00401004: 6800304000 push     000403000 ;'Enter X:' --E1
.00401009: FF1594204000 call    printf
.0040100F: 83C404    add     esp,4
.00401012: 8D45FC    lea    eax,[ebp][-4]
.00401015: 50        push     eax
.00401016: 680C304000 push     00040300C --E2
.0040101B: FF158C204000 call    scanf
.00401021: 83C408    add     esp,8
.00401024: 83F801    cmp     eax,1
.00401027: 7514     jnz     .00040103D --E3
.00401029: 8B4DFC    mov     ecx,[ebp][-4]
.0040102C: 51        push     ecx
.0040102D: 6810304000 push     000403010 ;'You entered %d...' --E4
.00401032: FF1594204000 call    printf
.00401038: 83C408    add     esp,8
.0040103B: EB0E     jmps    .00040104B --E5
.0040103D: 6824304000 3push   000403024 ;'What you entered? Huh?' --E6
.00401042: FF1594204000 call    printf
.00401048: 83C404    add     esp,4
.0040104B: 33C0     5xor    eax,eax
.0040104D: 8BE5     mov     esp,ebp
.0040104F: 5D        pop     ebp
.00401050: C3      retn ; ^^^^
.00401051: B84D5A0000 mov     eax,00005A4D ; ' ZM'
1Global 2FillBlk 3CryBlk 4ReLoad 5OrdLdr 6String 7Direct 8Table 91byte 10Leave 11Naked 12AddNam

```

Figure 7.12: Hiew: `main()` function

Hiew finds ASCII⁶ strings and displays them, as well as imported function names.

⁵that's what also called "dynamic linking"

⁶ASCII Zero (null-terminated ASCII string)


```

    lea    rdx, QWORD PTR x$[rsp]
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2926 ; '%d'
    call   scanf
    cmp    eax, 1
    jne    SHORT $LN2@main
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR x$[rsp]
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2927 ; 'You entered %d...'
    call   printf
    jmp    SHORT $LN1@main
$LN2@main:
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2929 ; 'What you entered? Huh?'
    call   printf
$LN1@main:
    ; return 0
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 56
    ret    0
main     ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS
END

```

7.3.6 ARM

ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

Listing 7.7: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

var_8    = -8

        PUSH    {R3,LR}
        ADR     R0, aEnterX      ; "Enter X:\n"
        BL     __2printf
        MOV     R1, SP
        ADR     R0, aD           ; "%d"
        BL     __0scanf
        CMP     R0, #1
        BEQ     loc_1E
        ADR     R0, aWhatYouEntered ; "What you entered? Huh?\n"
        BL     __2printf

loc_1A   ; CODE XREF: main+26
        MOVS    R0, #0
        POP     {R3,PC}

loc_1E   ; CODE XREF: main+12
        LDR     R1, [SP,#8+var_8]
        ADR     R0, aYouEnteredD___ ; "You entered %d...\n"
        BL     __2printf
        B      loc_1A

```

New instructions here are `CMP` and `BEQ`⁸.

`CMP` is akin to the x86 instruction bearing the same name, it subtracts one argument from another and saves flags.

`BEQ` is jumping to another address if operands while comparing were equal to each other, or, if result of last computation was 0, or if Z flag is 1. Same thing as `JZ` in x86.

Everything else is simple: execution flow is forking into two branches, then the branches are converging at the point where 0 is written into the `R0`, as a value returned from the function, and then function finishing.

ARM64

Listing 7.8: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

1  .LC0:
2      .string "Enter X:"
3  .LC1:
4      .string "%d"
5  .LC2:

```

⁸(PowerPC, ARM) Branch if Equal

```

6      .string "You entered %d...\n"
7      .LC3:
8      .string "What you entered? Huh?"
9      f6:
10     ; save FP and LR in stack frame:
11         stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
12     ; set stack frame (FP=SP)
13         add    x29, sp, 0
14     ; load pointer to the "Enter X:" string:
15         adrp   x0, .LC0
16         add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC0
17         bl     puts
18     ; load pointer to the "%d" string:
19         adrp   x0, .LC1
20         add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC1
21     ; calculate address of x variable in the local stack
22         add    x1, x29, 28
23         bl     __isoc99_scanf
24     ; scanf() returned its result in W0.
25     ; check it:
26         cmp    w0, 1
27     ; BNE is Branch if Not Equal
28     ; so if W0<>0, jump to L2 will be occurred
29         bne   .L2
30     ; W0=1, meaning no error
31     ; load x value from the local stack
32         ldr    w1, [x29,28]
33     ; load pointer to the "You entered %d...\n" string:
34         adrp   x0, .LC2
35         add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC2
36         bl     printf
37     ; skip the code which print the "What you entered? Huh?" string:
38         b     .L3
39     .L2:
40     ; load pointer to the "What you entered? Huh?" string:
41         adrp   x0, .LC3
42         add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC3
43         bl     puts
44     .L3:
45     ; return 0
46         mov    w0, 0
47     ; restore FP and LR:
48         ldp   x29, x30, [sp], 32
49         ret

```

Code flow is divided here using CMP/BNE (Branch if Not Equal) instructions pair.

7.3.7 Exercise

As we can see, JNE/JNZ instruction can be easily replaced by JE/JZ and otherwise (or BNE by BEQ and otherwise). But basic blocks also should be swapped. Try to do it on some of examples.

Chapter 8

Accessing passed arguments

Now we figured out the [caller](#) function passing arguments to the [callee](#) via stack. But how [callee](#) access them?

Listing 8.1: simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

int f (int a, int b, int c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", f(1, 2, 3));
    return 0;
};
```

8.1 x86

8.1.1 MSVC

What we have after compilation (MSVC 2010 Express):

Listing 8.2: MSVC 2010 Express

```
_TEXT SEGMENT
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_b$ = 12 ; size = 4
_c$ = 16 ; size = 4
_f PROC
    push ebp
    mov ebp, esp
    mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    imul eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    add eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    pop ebp
    ret 0
_f ENDP

_main PROC
    push ebp
    mov ebp, esp
    push 3 ; 3rd argument
    push 2 ; 2nd argument
    push 1 ; 1st argument
    call _f
    add esp, 12
    push eax
    push OFFSET $SG2463 ; '%d', 0aH, 00H
    call _printf
    add esp, 8
    ; return 0
    xor eax, eax
```

```

    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main  ENDP
    
```

What we see is the 3 numbers are pushing to stack in function `main()` and `f(int, int, int)` is called then. Argument access inside `f()` is organized with the help of macros like: `_a$ = 8`, in the same way as local variables accessed, but the difference in that these offsets are positive (addressed with *plus* sign). So, adding `_a$` macro to the value in the EBP register, *outer* side of `stack frame` is addressed.

Then `a` value is stored into EAX. After `IMUL` instruction execution, value in the EAX is a `product` of value in EAX and what is stored in `_b`. After `IMUL` execution, `ADD` is summing value in EAX and what is stored in `_c`. Value in the EAX is not needed to be moved: it is already in place it must be. Now return to `caller` –it will take value from the EAX and used it as `printf()` argument.

8.1.2 MSVC + OllyDbg

Let's illustrate this in OllyDbg. When we trace until the very first instruction in `f()` that uses one of the arguments (first one), we see that EBP is pointing to the `stack frame`, I marked its begin with red arrow. The first element of `stack frame` is saved EBP value, second is `RA`, third is first function argument, then second argument and third one. To access the first function argument, one need to add exactly 8 (2 32-bit words) to EBP.

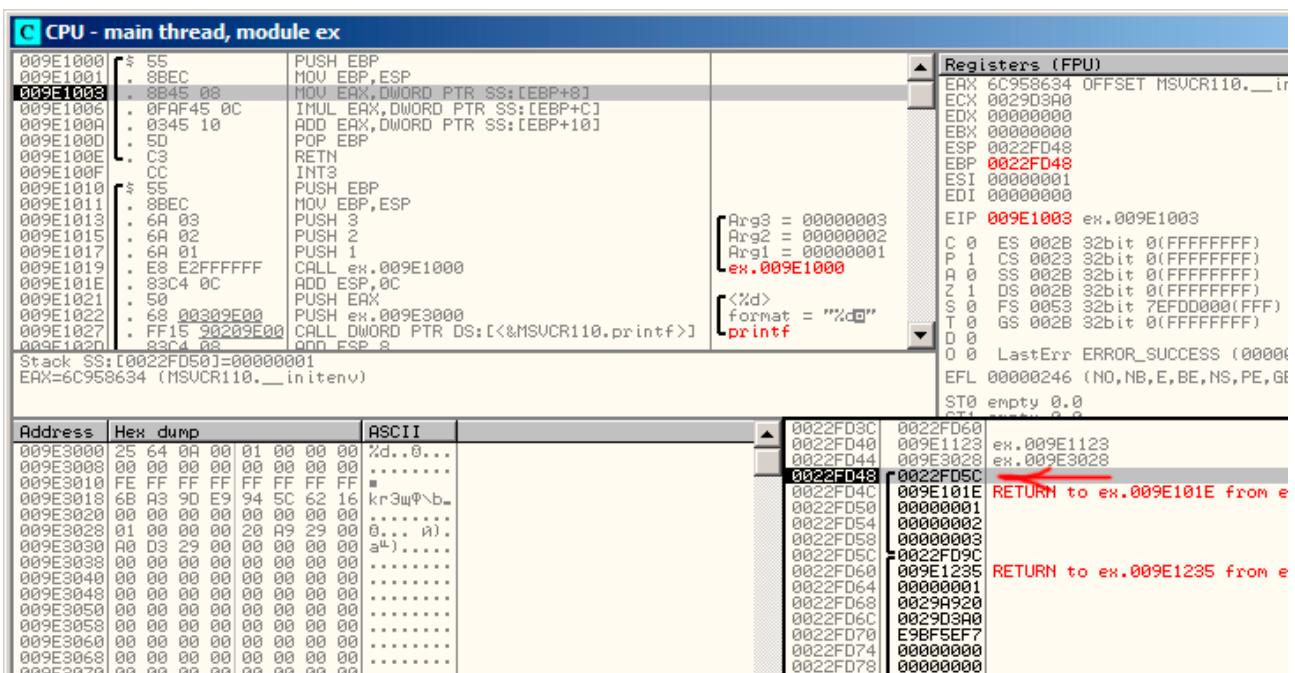


Figure 8.1: OllyDbg: inside of `f()` function

8.1.3 GCC

Let's compile the same in GCC 4.4.1 and let's see results in `IDA`:

Listing 8.3: GCC 4.4.1

```

f      public f
      proc near

arg_0  = dword ptr 8
arg_4  = dword ptr 0Ch
arg_8  = dword ptr 10h

      push    ebp
      mov     ebp, esp
      mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0] ; 1st argument
      imul   eax, [ebp+arg_4] ; 2nd argument
      add    eax, [ebp+arg_8] ; 3rd argument
      pop    ebp
      retn

f      endp

      public main
    
```

```

main                proc near

var_10             = dword ptr -10h
var_C              = dword ptr -0Ch
var_8              = dword ptr -8

                push    ebp
                mov     ebp, esp
                and     esp, 0FFFFFF0h
                sub     esp, 10h
                mov     [esp+10h+var_8], 3 ; 3rd argument
                mov     [esp+10h+var_C], 2 ; 2nd argument
                mov     [esp+10h+var_10], 1 ; 1st argument
                call    f
                mov     edx, offset aD ; "%d\n"
                mov     [esp+10h+var_C], eax
                mov     [esp+10h+var_10], edx
                call    _printf
                mov     eax, 0
                leave
                retn
main                endp

```

Almost the same result.

The [stack pointer](#) is not returning back after both function execution, because penultimate LEAVE ([A.6.2](#)) instruction will do this, at the end.

8.2 x64

The story is a bit different in x86-64, function arguments (4 or 6) are passed in registers, and a [callee](#) reading them from there instead of stack.

8.2.1 MSVC

Optimizing MSVC:

Listing 8.4: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

$SG2997 DB        '%d', 0aH, 00H

main PROC
    sub     rsp, 40
    mov     edx, 2
    lea     r8d, QWORD PTR [rdx+1] ; R8D=3
    lea     ecx, QWORD PTR [rdx-1] ; ECX=1
    call    f
    lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2997 ; '%d'
    mov     edx, eax
    call    printf
    xor     eax, eax
    add     rsp, 40
    ret     0
main ENDP

f PROC
    ; ECX - 1st argument
    ; EDX - 2nd argument
    ; R8D - 3rd argument
    imul   ecx, edx
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR [r8+rcx]
    ret     0
f ENDP

```

As we can see, very compact `f()` function takes arguments right from the registers. LEA instruction is used here for addition, apparently, compiler considered this instruction here faster than ADD. LEA is also used in `main()` for the first and third arguments preparing, apparently, compiler thinks that it will work faster than usual value loading to the register using MOV instruction.

Let's try to take a look on output of non-optimizing MSVC:

Listing 8.5: MSVC 2012 x64

```

f                proc near
; shadow space:
arg_0           = dword ptr  8
arg_8           = dword ptr 10h
arg_10          = dword ptr 18h

                ; ECX - 1st argument
                ; EDX - 2nd argument
                ; R8D - 3rd argument
                mov     [rsp+arg_10], r8d
                mov     [rsp+arg_8],  edx
                mov     [rsp+arg_0],  ecx
                mov     eax, [rsp+arg_0]
                imul   eax, [rsp+arg_8]
                add     eax, [rsp+arg_10]
                retn

f                endp

main            proc near
                sub     rsp, 28h
                mov     r8d, 3 ; 3rd argument
                mov     edx, 2 ; 2nd argument
                mov     ecx, 1 ; 1st argument
                call    f
                mov     edx, eax
                lea     rcx, $SG2931 ; "%d\n"
                call    printf

                ; return 0
                xor     eax, eax
                add     rsp, 28h
                retn

main            endp

```

Somewhat puzzling: all 3 arguments from registers are saved to the stack for some reason. This is called “shadow space”¹: every Win64 may (but not required to) save all 4 register values there. This is done by two reasons: 1) it is too lavish to allocate the whole register (or even 4 registers) for the input argument, so it will be accessed via stack; 2) debugger is always aware where to find function arguments at a break².

So, some large functions can save input arguments in “shadows space” if they need to use it while execution, but some small functions, like ours, may not do this.

It is duty of **caller** to allocate “shadow space” in stack.

8.2.2 GCC

Optimizing GCC does more or less understandable code:

Listing 8.6: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```

f:
                ; EDI - 1st argument
                ; ESI - 2nd argument
                ; EDX - 3rd argument
                imul   esi, edi
                lea    eax, [rdx+rsi]
                ret

main:
                sub     rsp, 8
                mov     edx, 3
                mov     esi, 2
                mov     edi, 1
                call    f
                mov     edi, OFFSET FLAT:..LC0 ; "%d\n"
                mov     esi, eax
                xor     eax, eax ; number of vector registers passed

```

¹[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/zthk2dkh\(v=vs.80\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/zthk2dkh(v=vs.80).aspx)

²[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ew5tede7\(v=VS.90\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ew5tede7(v=VS.90).aspx)

```

call    printf
xor     eax, eax
add     rsp, 8
ret

```

Non-optimizing GCC:

Listing 8.7: GCC 4.4.6 x64

```

f:
; EDI - 1st argument
; ESI - 2nd argument
; EDX - 3rd argument
push   rbp
mov    rbp, rsp
mov    DWORD PTR [rbp-4], edi
mov    DWORD PTR [rbp-8], esi
mov    DWORD PTR [rbp-12], edx
mov    eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-4]
imul  eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-8]
add    eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-12]
leave
ret

main:
push   rbp
mov    rbp, rsp
mov    edx, 3
mov    esi, 2
mov    edi, 1
call   f
mov    edx, eax
mov    eax, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "%d\n"
mov    esi, edx
mov    rdi, rax
mov    eax, 0 ; number of vector registers passed
call   printf
mov    eax, 0
leave
ret

```

There are no “shadow space” requirement in System V *NIX[Mit13], but [callee](#) may need to save arguments somewhere, in case of registers shortage.

8.2.3 GCC: uint64_t instead of int

Our example worked with 32-bit *int*, that is why 32-bit register parts were used (prefixed by E-).

It can be altered slightly in order to use 64-bit values:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f (uint64_t a, uint64_t b, uint64_t c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%lld\n", f(0x1122334455667788,
                       0x1111111122222222,
                       0x3333333344444444));
    return 0;
};

```

Listing 8.8: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```

f                proc near
imul            rsi, rdi
lea            rax, [rdx+rsi]
retn
f                endp

```

```

main      proc near
          sub     rsp, 8
          mov     rdx, 3333333344444444h ; 3rd argument
          mov     rsi, 1111111122222222h ; 2nd argument
          mov     rdi, 1122334455667788h ; 1st argument
          call    f
          mov     edi, offset format ; "%lld\n"
          mov     rsi, rax
          xor     eax, eax ; number of vector registers passed
          call    _printf
          xor     eax, eax
          add     rsp, 8
          retn
main      endp

```

The code is very same, but registers (prefixed by R-) are *used as a whole*.

8.3 ARM

8.3.1 Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

.text:000000A4 00 30 A0 E1      MOV     R3, R0
.text:000000A8 93 21 20 E0      MLA    R0, R3, R1, R2
.text:000000AC 1E FF 2F E1      BX     LR
...
.text:000000B0                main
.text:000000B0 10 40 2D E9      STMFD  SP!, {R4,LR}
.text:000000B4 03 20 A0 E3      MOV     R2, #3
.text:000000B8 02 10 A0 E3      MOV     R1, #2
.text:000000BC 01 00 A0 E3      MOV     R0, #1
.text:000000C0 F7 FF FF EB      BL     f
.text:000000C4 00 40 A0 E1      MOV     R4, R0
.text:000000C8 04 10 A0 E1      MOV     R1, R4
.text:000000CC 5A 0F 8F E2      ADR     R0, aD_0 ; "%d\n"
.text:000000D0 E3 18 00 EB      BL     __2printf
.text:000000D4 00 00 A0 E3      MOV     R0, #0
.text:000000D8 10 80 BD E8      LDMFD  SP!, {R4,PC}

```

In `main()` function, two other functions are simply called, and three values are passed to the first one (`f`).

As I mentioned before, first 4 values are usually passed in first 4 registers (R0-R3) in ARM.

`f` function, as it seems, use first 3 registers (R0-R2) as arguments.

`MLA` (*Multiply Accumulate*) instruction multiplies two first operands (R3 and R1), adds third operand (R2) to product and places result into zeroth register (R0), via which, by standard, values are returned from functions.

Multiplication and addition at once³ (*Fused multiply-add*) is very useful operation, by the way, there was no such instruction in x86 before FMA-instructions appearance in SIMD⁴.

The very first `MOV R3, R0` instruction, apparently, redundant (single `MLA` instruction could be used here instead), compiler was not optimized it, since this is non-optimizing compilation.

`BX` instruction returns control to the address stored in the `LR` register and, if it is necessary, switches processor mode from thumb to ARM or vice versa. This can be necessary since, as we can see, `f` function is not aware, from which code it may be called, from ARM or thumb. This, if it will be called from thumb code, `BX` will not only return control to the calling function, but also will switch processor mode to thumb mode. Or not switch, if the function was called from ARM code [ARM12, A2.3.2].

8.3.2 Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

.text:00000098                f
.text:00000098 91 20 20 E0      MLA    R0, R1, R0, R2
.text:0000009C 1E FF 2F E1      BX     LR

```

And here is `f` function compiled by Keil compiler in full optimization mode (`-O3`). `MOV` instruction was optimized (or reduced) and now `MLA` uses all input registers and also places result right into R0, exactly where calling function will read it and use.

³[wikipedia: Multiply-accumulate operation](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Multiply-accumulate_operation)

⁴https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/FMA_instruction_set

8.3.3 Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```
.text:0000005E 48 43          MULS    R0, R1
.text:00000060 80 18          ADDS    R0, R0, R2
.text:00000062 70 47          BX     LR
```

MLA instruction is not available in thumb mode, so, compiler generates the code doing these two operations separately. First MULS instruction multiply R0 by R1 leaving result in the R1 register. Second (ADDS) instruction adds result and R2 leaving result in the R0 register.

8.3.4 ARM64

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

That's easy. MADD is just an instruction doing fused multiply/add (similar to MLA we already saw). All 3 arguments are passed in 32-bit part of X-registers. Indeed, argument types are 32-bit *int*'s. The result is returned in W0.

```
f:
    madd    w0, w0, w1, w2
    ret

main:
; save FP and LR to stack frame:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
    mov    w2, 3
    mov    w1, 2
    add    x29, sp, 0
    mov    w0, 1
    bl     f
    mov    w1, w0
    adrp   x0, .LC7
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC7
    bl     printf
; return 0
    mov    w0, 0
; restore FP and LR
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 16
    ret

.LC7:
    .string "%d\n"
```

I also extended all data types to 64-bit `uint64_t` and tried it:

```
uint64_t f (uint64_t a, uint64_t b, uint64_t c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%lld\n", f9(0x1122334455667788,
                        0x111111111122222222,
                        0x3333333344444444));
    return 0;
};
```

```
f:
    madd    x0, x0, x1, x2
    ret

main:
    mov    x1, 13396
    adrp   x0, .LC8
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
    movk   x1, 0x27d0, lsl 16
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC8
    movk   x1, 0x122, lsl 32
    add    x29, sp, 0
    movk   x1, 0x58be, lsl 48
    bl     printf
```

```

    mov    w0, 0
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 16
    ret

.LC8:
    .string "%lld\n"

```

Function `f()` is just the same, but whole 64-bit X-registers are now used. Long 64-bit values are loaded into registers by parts, I described it also here: [39.3.1](#).

Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Non-optimizing compiler more redundant:

```

f:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str    w0, [sp,12]
    str    w1, [sp,8]
    str    w2, [sp,4]
    ldr    w1, [sp,12]
    ldr    w0, [sp,8]
    mul    w1, w1, w0
    ldr    w0, [sp,4]
    add    w0, w1, w0
    add    sp, sp, 16
    ret

```

The code saves input arguments in the local stack, for a case if someone (or something) in this function will need to use `W0 . . . W2` registers by overwriting original function arguments, but they may be needed again in future. So this is *Register Save Area* [\[ARM13c\]](#) however, callee is not obliged to save them. This is somewhat similar to “Shadow Space”: [8.2.1](#).

Why optimizing GCC 4.9 dropped this arguments saving code? Because it did some additional optimizing work and concluded that function arguments will not be needed in future and `W0 . . . W2` registers will also not be used.

We also see `MUL/ADD` instruction pair instead of single `MADD`.

Chapter 9

More about results returning

As of x86, function execution result is usually returned ¹ in the EAX register. If it is byte type or character (*char*) –then in the lowest register EAX part –AL. If a function returns *float* number, the FPU register ST(0) is to be used instead. In ARM, result is usually returned in the R0 register.

9.1 Attempt to use result of function returning *void*

By the way, what if returning value of the `main()` function will be declared not as *int* but as *void*? so-called startup-code is calling `main()` roughly as:

```
push envp
push argv
push argc
call main
push eax
call exit
```

In other words:

```
exit(main(argc,argv,envp));
```

If you declare `main()` as *void* and nothing will be returned explicitly (by *return* statement), then something random, that was stored in the EAX register at the moment of the `main()` finish, will come into the sole `exit()` function argument. Most likely, there will be a random value, left from your function execution. So, exit code of program will be pseudorandom.

I can illustrate this fact. Please notice, the `main()` function has *void* type:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    printf ("Hello, world!\n");
};
```

Let's compile it in Linux.

GCC 4.8.1 replaced `printf()` to `puts()` (we saw this before: 3.4.3), but that's OK, since `puts()` returns number of characters printed, just like `printf()`. Please notice that EAX is not zeroed before `main()` finish. This means, EAX value at the `main()` finish will contain what `puts()` left there.

Listing 9.1: GCC 4.8.1

```
.LC0:
    .string "Hello, world!"
main:
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and     esp, -16
    sub     esp, 16
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    call    puts
    leave
    ret
```

¹See also: MSDN: Return Values (C++): <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/7572ztz4.aspx>

Let's write bash script, showing exit status:

Listing 9.2: tst.sh

```
#!/bin/sh
./hello_world
echo $?
```

And run it:

```
$ tst.sh
Hello, world!
14
```

14 is a number of characters printed.

9.2 What if not to use function result?

`printf()` returns count of characters successfully sent to output, but result of this function is rarely used in practice. It's possible to call functions which essence in returning values, but not to use them explicitly:

```
int f()
{
    // skip first 3 random values
    rand();
    rand();
    rand();
    // and use 4th
    return rand();
};
```

Result of `rand()` function will always be leaved in EAX, in all four cases. But in first 3 cases, a value in EAX will be just thrown away.

9.3 Returning a structure

Let's back to the fact the returning value is left in the EAX register. That is why old C compilers cannot create functions capable of returning something not fitting in one register (usually type `int`) but if one needs it, one should return information via pointers passed in function arguments. So, usually, if a function should return several values, it returns only one, and all the rest—via pointers. Now it is possible, to return, let's say, whole structure, but still it is not very popular. If function must return a large structure, [caller](#) must allocate it and pass pointer to it via first argument, transparently for programmer. That is almost the same as to pass pointer in first argument manually, but compiler hide this.

Small example:

```
struct s
{
    int a;
    int b;
    int c;
};

struct s get_some_values (int a)
{
    struct s rt;

    rt.a=a+1;
    rt.b=a+2;
    rt.c=a+3;

    return rt;
};
```

...what we got (MSVC 2010 /Ox):

```
$T3853 = 8 ; size = 4
_a$ = 12 ; size = 4
?get_some_values@@YA?AU$@H@Z PROC ; get_some_values
mov ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
mov eax, DWORD PTR $T3853[esp-4]
```

```

lea    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+1]
mov    DWORD PTR [eax], edx
lea    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+2]
add    ecx, 3
mov    DWORD PTR [eax+4], edx
mov    DWORD PTR [eax+8], ecx
ret    0
?get_some_values@@YA?AUs@@H@Z ENDP          ; get_some_values

```

Macro name for internal variable passing pointer to structure is \$T3853 here.
This example can be rewritten using C99 language extensions:

```

struct s
{
    int a;
    int b;
    int c;
};

struct s get_some_values (int a)
{
    return (struct s){.a=a+1, .b=a+2, .c=a+3};
};

```

Listing 9.3: GCC 4.8.1

```

_get_some_values proc near
ptr_to_struct  = dword ptr  4
a              = dword ptr  8

        mov     edx, [esp+a]
        mov     eax, [esp+ptr_to_struct]
        lea    ecx, [edx+1]
        mov     [eax], ecx
        lea    ecx, [edx+2]
        add    edx, 3
        mov     [eax+4], ecx
        mov     [eax+8], edx
        retn
_get_some_values endp

```

As we may see, the function is just filling fields in the structure, allocated by caller function. As if a pointer to the structure was passed. So there are no performance drawbacks.

Chapter 10

Pointers

Pointers are often used to return values from function (recall `scanf()` case (7)). For example, when function should return two values.

10.1 Global variables example

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f1 (int x, int y, int *sum, int *product)
{
    *sum=x+y;
    *product=x*y;
};

int sum, product;

void main()
{
    f1(123, 456, &sum, &product);
    printf ("sum=%d, product=%d\n", sum, product);
};
```

This compiling into:

Listing 10.1: Optimizing MSVC 2010 (/Ob0)

```
COMM    _product:DWORD
COMM    _sum:DWORD
$SG2803 DB      'sum=%d, product=%d', 0aH, 00H

_x$ = 8                                ; size = 4
_y$ = 12                                ; size = 4
_sum$ = 16                              ; size = 4
_product$ = 20                          ; size = 4
_f1     PROC
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _y$[esp-4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _x$[esp-4]
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [eax+ecx]
    imul   eax, ecx
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _product$[esp-4]
    push   esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _sum$[esp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [esi], edx
    mov     DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
    pop    esi
    ret    0
_f1     ENDP

_main   PROC
    push   OFFSET _product
    push   OFFSET _sum
    push   456                ; 000001c8H
    push   123                ; 0000007bH
    call  _f1
```

```
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _product
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _sum
    push   eax
    push   ecx
    push   OFFSET $SG2803
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add     esp, 28                ; 0000001cH
    xor     eax, eax
    ret     0
_main    ENDP
```

Let's see this in OllyDbg:

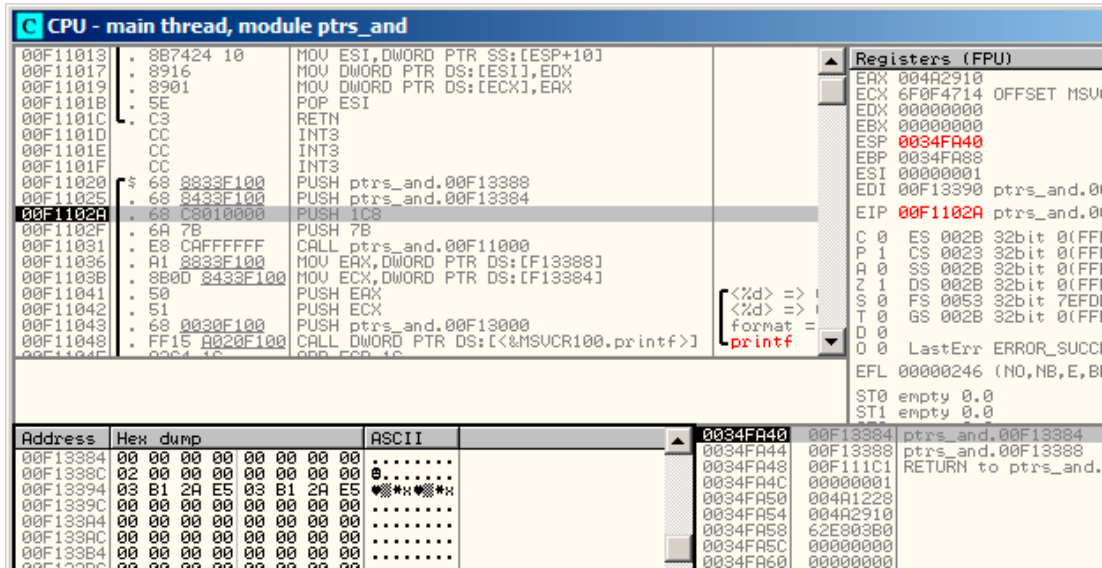


Figure 10.1: OllyDbg: global variables addresses are passing into f1 ()

At first, global variables addresses are passed into f1 (). We can click “Follow in dump” on the stack element, and we will see a place in data segment allocated for two variables.

These variables are cleared, because non-initialized data (BSS¹) are cleared before execution begin: [ISO07, 6.7.8p10]. They are residing in data segment, we can be sure it is so, by pressing Alt-M and seeing memory map:

Address	Size	Owner	Section	Contains	Type	Access	Initial	Mapped as
00010000	00010000				Map	RW	RW	
00020000	00010000				Map	RW	RW	
00040000	00001000				Imag	R	RWE	
00050000	00004000				Map	R	R	
00060000	00001000				Priv	RW	RW	
000A9000	00007000				Priv	RW	Gua: RW	
000B0000	00009000				Priv	RW	RW	
00130000	0000C000				Priv	RW	RW	
0034D000	00001000				Priv	RW	Gua: RW	
0034E000	00002000			stack of ma	Priv	RW	Gua: RW	
00350000	00067000				Map	R	R	\Device\HarddiskVolume1\Windows\System32\user32.dll
004A0000	00005000				Priv	RW	RW	
00F10000	00001000	ptrs_and		PE header	Imag	R	RWE	
00F11000	00001000	ptrs_and	.text	code	Imag	R	RWE	
00F12000	00001000	ptrs_and	.rdata	imports	Imag	R	RWE	
00F13000	00001000	ptrs_and	.data	data	Imag	R	RWE	
00F14000	00001000	ptrs_and	.reloc	relocations	Imag	R	RWE	
6F040000	00001000	MSUCR100		PE header	Imag	R	RWE	
6F041000	000B2000	MSUCR100	.text	code, import	Imag	R	RWE	
6F0F3000	00006000	MSUCR100	.data	data	Imag	R	RWE	
6F0F9000	00001000	MSUCR100	.rsrc	resources	Imag	R	RWE	
6F0FA000	00005000	MSUCR100	.reloc	relocations	Imag	R	RWE	
74FE0000	00008000				Imag	R	RWE	

Figure 10.2: OllyDbg: memory map

¹Block Started by Symbol

Let's trace (F7) until execution of f1():

CPU - main thread, module ptrs_and

Address	Hex dump	ASCII
00F13384	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....
00F1338C	02 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....
00F13394	03 B1 2A E5 03 B1 2A E5	***H***H
00F1339C	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....
00F133A4	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....
00F133AC	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....
00F133B4	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....

Figure 10.3: OllyDbg: f1() is started

Two values are seen in the stack 456 (0x1C8) and 123 (0x7B), and two global variables addresses as well.

Let's trace until the end of f1(). At the window at left we see how calculation results are appeared in the global variables:

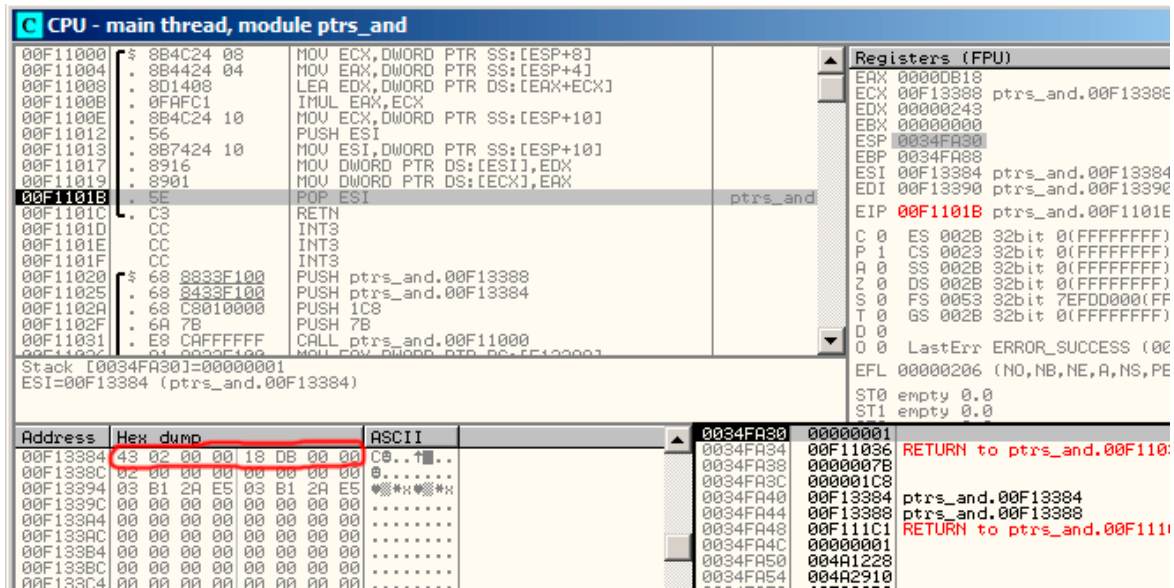


Figure 10.4: OllyDbg: f1() finishes

Now values of global variables are loaded into registers for passing into printf():

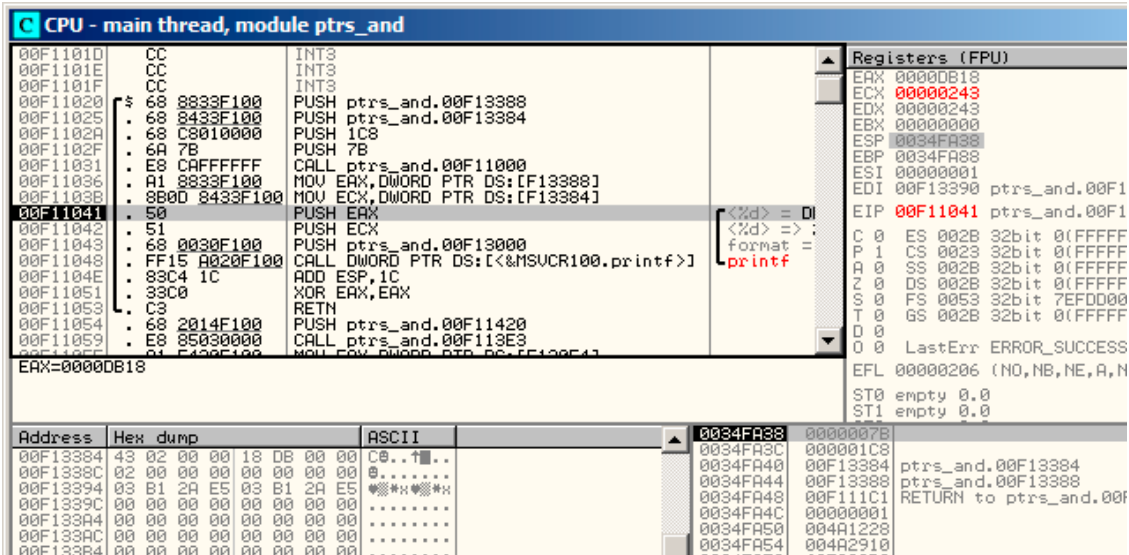


Figure 10.5: OllyDbg: global variables addresses are passed into printf()

10.2 Local variables example

Let's rework our example slightly:

Listing 10.2: now variables are local

```
void main()
{
    int sum, product; // now variables are local in this function

    f1(123, 456, &sum, &product);
    printf ("sum=%d, product=%d\n", sum, product);
};
```

f1() function code will not be changed. Only main() code will:

Listing 10.3: Optimizing MSVC 2010 (/Ob0)

```
_product$ = -8 ; size = 4
_sum$ = -4 ; size = 4
_main PROC
; Line 10
sub esp, 8
; Line 13
lea eax, DWORD PTR _product$[esp+8]
push eax
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _sum$[esp+12]
push ecx
push 456 ; 000001c8H
push 123 ; 0000007bH
call _f1
; Line 14
mov edx, DWORD PTR _product$[esp+24]
mov eax, DWORD PTR _sum$[esp+24]
push edx
push eax
push OFFSET $SG2803
call DWORD PTR __imp__printf
; Line 15
xor eax, eax
add esp, 36 ; 00000024H
ret 0
```

Let's again take a look into OllyDbg. Local variable addresses in the stack are 0x35FCF4 and 0x35FCF8. We see how these are pushed into the stack:

The screenshot displays the CPU window for the main thread in the module ptrs_and. The assembly list shows the following instructions:

```

00F81019 . 8901 MOV DWORD PTR DS:[ECX],EAX
00F8101B . 5E POP ESI
00F8101C . C3 RETN
00F8101D . CC INT3
00F8101E . CC INT3
00F8101F . CC INT3
00F81020 . 83EC 08 SUB ESP,8
00F81023 . 8D0424 LEA EAX,DWORD PTR SS:[ESP]
00F81026 . 50 PUSH EAX
00F81027 . 8D4C24 08 LEA ECX,DWORD PTR SS:[ESP+8]
00F8102B . 51 PUSH ECX
00F8102C . 68 C8010000 PUSH 1C8
00F81031 . 6A 7B PUSH 7B
00F81033 . E8 C8FFFFFF CALL ptrs_and.00F81000
00F81038 . 8B5424 10 MOV EDI,DWORD PTR SS:[ESP+10]
00F8103C . 8B4424 14 MOV ECX,DWORD PTR SS:[ESP+14]
00F81040 . 52 PUSH EDI
00F81041 . 50 PUSH ECX
00F81042 . 68 0030F800 PUSH ptrs_and.00F83000
    
```

The registers window shows the following state:

```

Registers (FPU)
EAX 0035FCF4
ECX 0035FCF8
EDX 00000000
EBX 00000000
ESP 0035FCF0
EBP 0035FD3C
ESI 00000001
EDI 00F83388 ptrs_and.00F83388
EIP 00F8102B ptrs_and.00F8102B
    
```

The stack dump window shows the following memory addresses and values:

```

Address Hex dump ASCII
0035FCF8 01 00 00 00 C0 11 F8 00 0...L40.
0035FD00 01 00 00 00 28 12 15 00 0...(!$.
0035FD08 10 29 15 00 13 DE E5 19 |)$.!!|N↓
0035FD10 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 .....
0035FD18 00 E0 FD 7E 00 00 00 00 .p#"...
0035FD20 00 00 00 00 0C FD 35 00 .....#5.
0035FD28 48 C2 05 FD 78 FD 35 00 Ht p#x#5.
0035FD30 09 16 F8 00 17 02 28 19 ..°.#0(↓
0035FD38 00 00 00 00 48 FD 35 00 .....H#5.
0035FD40 6A 33 94 76 00 E0 FD 7E j3pU.p#"...
0035FD48 88 FD 35 00 72 9F 6C 77 |#5.rAlw
    
```

Figure 10.6: OllyDbg: addresses of local variables are pushed into the stack

f1() is started. Random garbage are at 0x35FCF4 and 0x35FCF8 so far:

The screenshot shows the OllyDbg interface for the CPU window of the main thread in the module ptrs_and. The assembly window shows instructions starting at 00F81000, including MOV ECX, DWORD PTR SS:[ESP+8], MOV EAX, DWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4], LEA EDX, DWORD PTR DS:[EAX+ECX], IMUL EAX, ECX, MOV ECX, DWORD PTR SS:[ESP+10], PUSH ESI, MOV ESI, DWORD PTR SS:[ESP+10], MOV DWORD PTR DS:[ESI], EDX, MOV DWORD PTR DS:[ECX], EAX, POP ESI, RETN, INT3, INT3, INT3, SUB ESP, 8, LEA EAX, DWORD PTR SS:[ESP], PUSH EAX, LEA ECX, DWORD PTR SS:[ESP+8], and PUSH ECX. The registers window shows EAX at 0035FCF4, ECX at 0035FCF8, EDX at 00000000, EBX at 00000000, ESP at 0035FCE0, EBP at 0035FD3C, ESI at 00000001, EDI at 00F83388, and EIP at 00F81000. The stack window shows SS:[0035FCE0]=000001C8, ECX=0035FCF8, and a local call from 00F81033. The memory dump window shows hex dump and ASCII for addresses 0035FCF8 to 0035FD30.

Address	Hex dump	ASCII
0035FCF8	01 00 00 00 C0 11 F8 00	0...L4°
0035FD00	01 00 00 00 28 12 15 00	0...(#\$.
0035FD08	10 29 15 00 13 DE E5 19	!)\$!!k+
0035FD10	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....
0035FD18	00 E0 FD 7E 00 00 00 00	.p#"
0035FD20	00 00 00 00 0C FD 35 00	.....#5.
0035FD28	48 C2 D5 FD 78 FD 35 00	HtP#H#5.
0035FD30	09 16 F8 00 17 02 28 19	..°.#0(↓

Figure 10.7: OllyDbg: f1() starting

f1() finished:

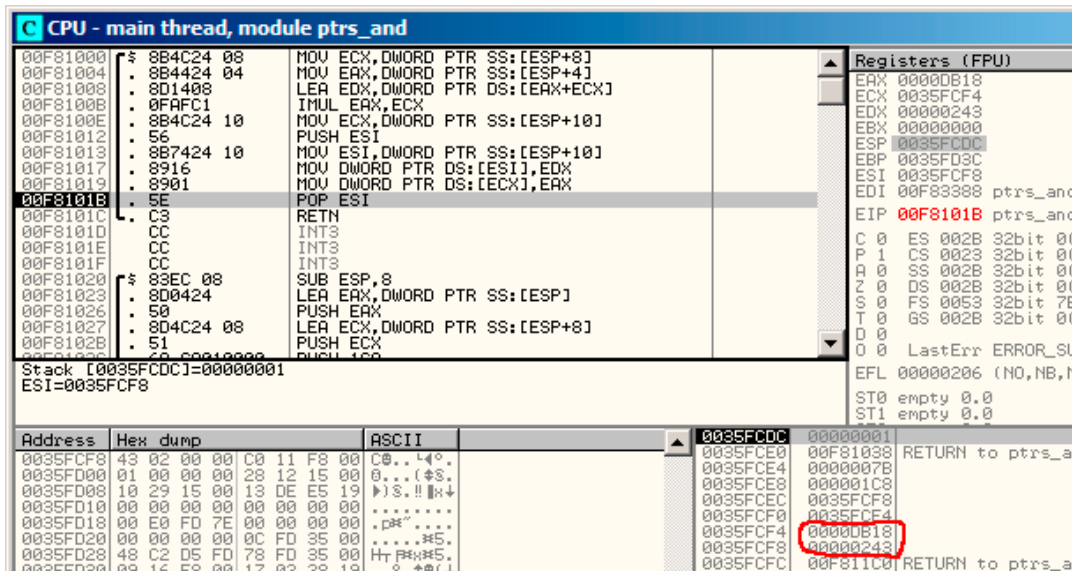


Figure 10.8: OllyDbg: f1() finished

There are 0xDB18 and 0x243 now at 0x35FCF4 and 0x35FCF8 addresses, these values are f1() function result.

10.3 Conclusion

f1() can return results to any place in memory, located anywhere. This is essence and usefulness of pointers. By the way, C++ references works just in the same way. Read more about them: (37.3).

Chapter 11

GOTO

GOTO operator considered harmful [Dij68], but nevertheless, can be used resonably [Knu74], [Yur13, p. 1.3.2].

Here is a simplest possible example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf ("begin\n");
    goto exit;
    printf ("skip me!\n");
exit:
    printf ("end\n");
};
```

Here is what we've got is MSVC 2012:

Listing 11.1: MSVC 2012

```
$SG2934 DB      'begin', 0aH, 00H
$SG2936 DB      'skip me!', 0aH, 00H
$SG2937 DB      'end', 0aH, 00H

_main  PROC
        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        push    OFFSET $SG2934 ; 'begin'
        call   _printf
        add     esp, 4
        jmp     SHORT $exit$3
        push    OFFSET $SG2936 ; 'skip me!'
        call   _printf
        add     esp, 4
$exit$3:
        push    OFFSET $SG2937 ; 'end'
        call   _printf
        add     esp, 4
        xor     eax, eax
        pop     ebp
        ret     0
_main  ENDP
```

So the *goto* statement is just replaced by **JMP** instruction, which has the very same effect: unconditional jump to another place.

The second `printf()` call can be executed only with the help of human intervention, using debugger or patching.

Place cursor to the address of JMP (0x410), press F3 (edit), press two zeroes, so the opcode will be EB 00:

```

Hiew: goto.exe
C:\Polygon\goto.exe  FWO EDITMODE  a32 PE  00000413
00000400: 55      push   ebp
00000401: 8BEC   mov    ebp,esp
00000403: 6800304000  push  000403000 ;' @0 '
00000408: FF1590204000  call  d,[000402090]
0000040E: 83C404  add    esp,4
00000411: EB00   jmps  00000413
00000413: 6800304000  push  000403008 ;' @00 '
00000418: FF1590204000  call  d,[000402090]
0000041E: 83C404  add    esp,4
00000421: 6814304000  push  000403014 ;' @00 '
00000426: FF1590204000  call  d,[000402090]
0000042C: 83C404  add    esp,4
0000042F: 33C0   xor    eax,eax
00000431: 5D     pop    ebp
00000432: C3     retn  ; _^_ _^_ _^_ _^_ _^_ _^_ _^_ _^_ _^_

```

Figure 11.2: Hiew

The second byte of JMP opcode mean relative offset of jump, 0 means the point right after current instruction. So now JMP will not skip second printf() call.

Now press F9 (save) and exit. Now we run executable and we see this:

```

C:\Polygon>goto.exe
begin
skip me!
end

```

Figure 11.3: Result

The same effect can be achieved if to replace JMP instruction by 2 NOP instructions. NOP has 0x90 opcode and length of 1 byte, so we need 2 instructions as replacement.

11.1 Dead code

The second printf() call is also called “dead code” in compiler’s term. This mean, the code will never be executed. So when you compile this example with optimization, compiler removing “dead code” leaving no trace of it:

Listing 11.2: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```

$SG2981 DB      'begin', 0aH, 00H
$SG2983 DB      'skip me!', 0aH, 00H
$SG2984 DB      'end', 0aH, 00H

_main  PROC
    push   OFFSET $SG2981 ; 'begin'
    call   _printf
    push   OFFSET $SG2984 ; 'end'
$exit$4:
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 8
    xor    eax, eax
    ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

However, compiler forgot to remove the “skip me!” string.

11.2 Exercise

Try to achieve the same result using your favorite compiler and debugger.

Chapter 12

Conditional jumps

12.1 Simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f_signed (int a, int b)
{
    if (a>b)
        printf ("a>b\n");
    if (a==b)
        printf ("a==b\n");
    if (a<b)
        printf ("a<b\n");
};

void f_unsigned (unsigned int a, unsigned int b)
{
    if (a>b)
        printf ("a>b\n");
    if (a==b)
        printf ("a==b\n");
    if (a<b)
        printf ("a<b\n");
};

int main()
{
    f_signed(1, 2);
    f_unsigned(1, 2);
    return 0;
};
```

12.1.1 x86

x86 + MSVC

What we have in the `f_signed()` function:

Listing 12.1: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8
_b$ = 12
_f_signed PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jle     SHORT $LN3@f_signed
    push    OFFSET $SG737      ; 'a>b'
    call   _printf
    add     esp, 4
$LN3@f_signed:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
```

```

    cmp    ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jne    SHORT $LN2@f_signed
    push  OFFSET $SG739          ; 'a==b'
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 4
$LN2@f_signed:
    mov   edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp   edx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jge   SHORT $LN4@f_signed
    push  OFFSET $SG741          ; 'a<b'
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 4
$LN4@f_signed:
    pop   ebp
    ret   0
_f_signed ENDP

```

First instruction JLE means *Jump if Less or Equal*. In other words, if second operand is larger than first or equal, control flow will be passed to address or label mentioned in instruction. But if this condition will not trigger (second operand less than first), control flow will not be altered and first `printf()` will be called. The second check is JNE: *Jump if Not Equal*. Control flow will not be altered if operands are equals to each other. The third check is JGE: *Jump if Greater or Equal*—jump if the first operand is larger than the second or if they are equals to each other. By the way, if all three conditional jumps are triggered, no `printf()` will be called whatsoever. But, without special intervention, it is impossible.

`f_unsigned()` function is likewise, with the exception the JBE and JAE instructions are used here instead of JLE and JGE, see below about it:

Now let's take a look to the `f_unsigned()` function

Listing 12.2: GCC

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_b$ = 12 ; size = 4
_f_unsigned PROC
    push  ebp
    mov   ebp, esp
    mov   eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp   eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jbe   SHORT $LN3@f_unsigned
    push  OFFSET $SG2761        ; 'a>b'
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 4
$LN3@f_unsigned:
    mov   ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp   ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jne   SHORT $LN2@f_unsigned
    push  OFFSET $SG2763        ; 'a==b'
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 4
$LN2@f_unsigned:
    mov   edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp   edx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jae   SHORT $LN4@f_unsigned
    push  OFFSET $SG2765        ; 'a<b'
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 4
$LN4@f_unsigned:
    pop   ebp
    ret   0
_f_unsigned ENDP

```

Almost the same, with exception of instructions: JBE—*Jump if Below or Equal* and JAE—*Jump if Above or Equal*. These instructions (JA/JAE/JBE/JBE) are distinct from JG/JGE/JL/JLE in that way, they works with unsigned numbers.

See also section about signed number representations (41). So, where we see usage of JG/JL instead of JA/JBE or otherwise, we can almost be sure about signed or unsigned type of variable.

Here is also `main()` function, where nothing much new to us:

Listing 12.3: `main()`

```

_main PROC
    push  ebp
    mov   ebp, esp
    push  2

```

```
    push    1
    call   _f_signed
    add    esp, 8
    push    2
    push    1
    call   _f_unsigned
    add    esp, 8
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main  ENDP
```

x86 + MSVC + OllyDbg

We can see how flags are set by running this example in OllyDbg. Let's begin with `f_unsigned()` function, which works with unsigned number. `CMP` executed thrice here, but for the same arguments, so flags will be the same each time.

First comparison results:

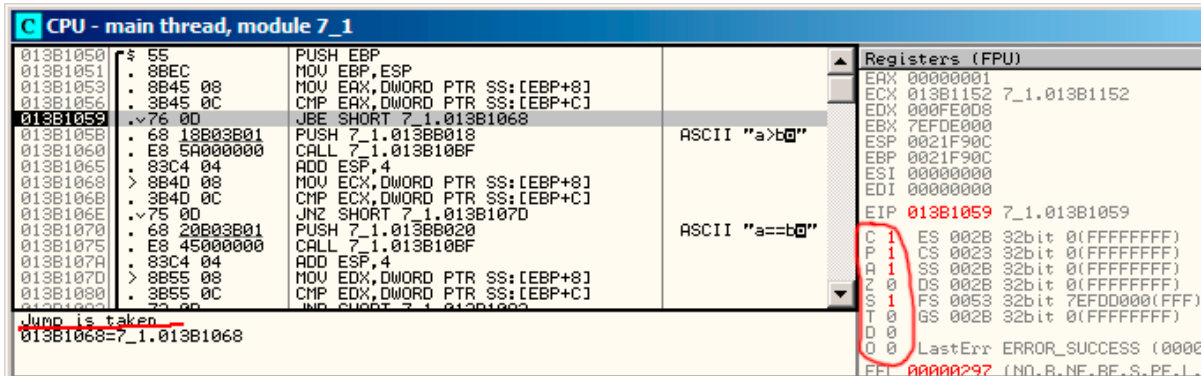


Figure 12.1: OllyDbg: `f_unsigned()`: first conditional jump

So, the flags are: C=1, P=1, A=1, Z=0, S=1, T=0, D=0, O=0. Flags are named by one character for brevity in OllyDbg.

OllyDbg gives a hint that (JBE) jump will be triggered. Indeed, if to take a look into [Int13], we will read there that JBE will trigger if CF=1 or ZF=1. Condition is true here, so jump is triggered.

The next conditional jump:

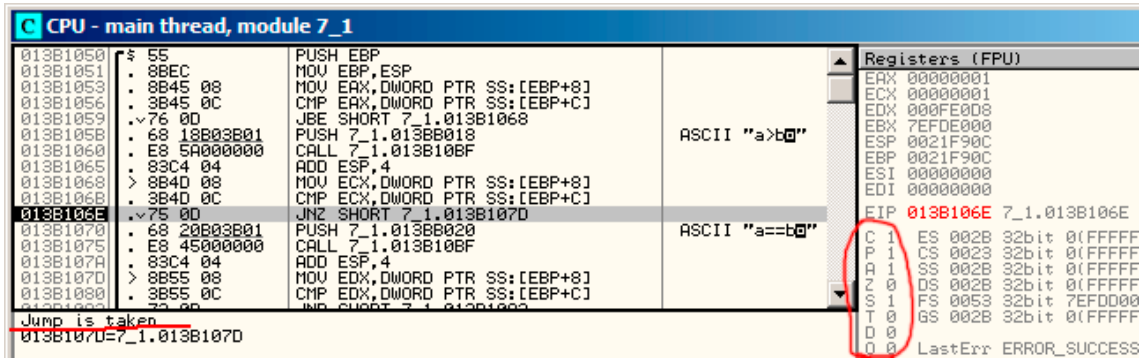


Figure 12.2: OllyDbg: f_unsigned(): second conditional jump

OllyDbg gives a hint that JNZ will trigger. Indeed, JNZ will trigger if ZF=0 (zero flag).

The third conditional jump JNB:

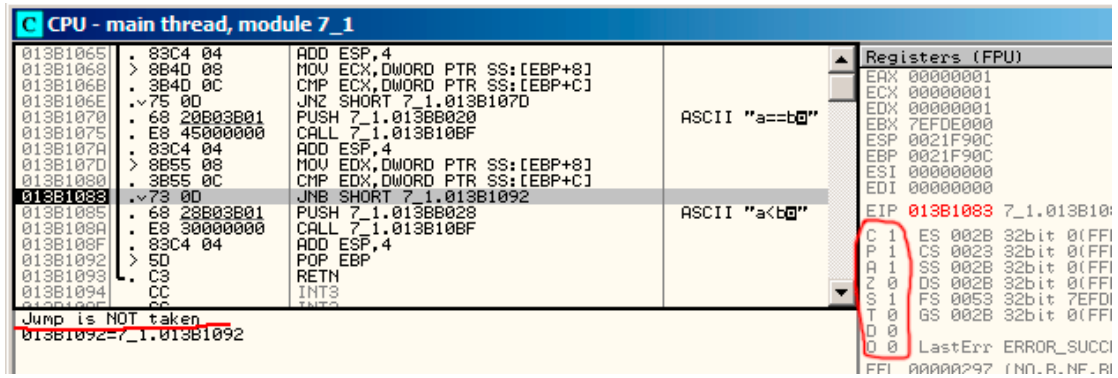


Figure 12.3: OllyDbg: f_unsigned(): third conditional jump

In [Int13] we may find that JNB will trigger if CF=0 (carry flag). It's not true in our case, so the third printf() will execute.

Now we can try in OllyDbg the `f_signed()` function which works with signed values. Flags are set in the same way: C=1, P=1, A=1, Z=0, S=1, T=0, D=0, O=0. The first conditional jump `JLE` will trigger:

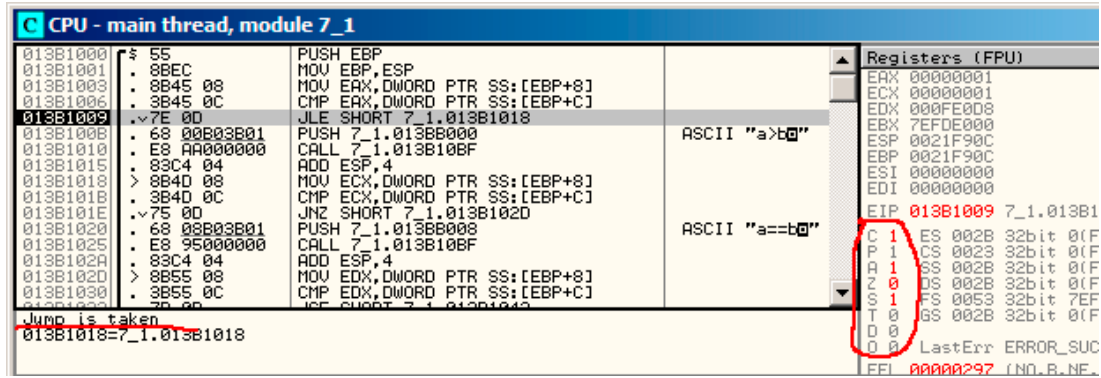


Figure 12.4: OllyDbg: `f_unsigned()`: first conditional jump

In [Int13] we may find that this instruction is triggering if `ZF=1` or `SF≠OF`. `SF≠OF` in our case, so jump is triggering.

The next JNZ conditional jump will trigger: it does if ZF=0 (zero flag):

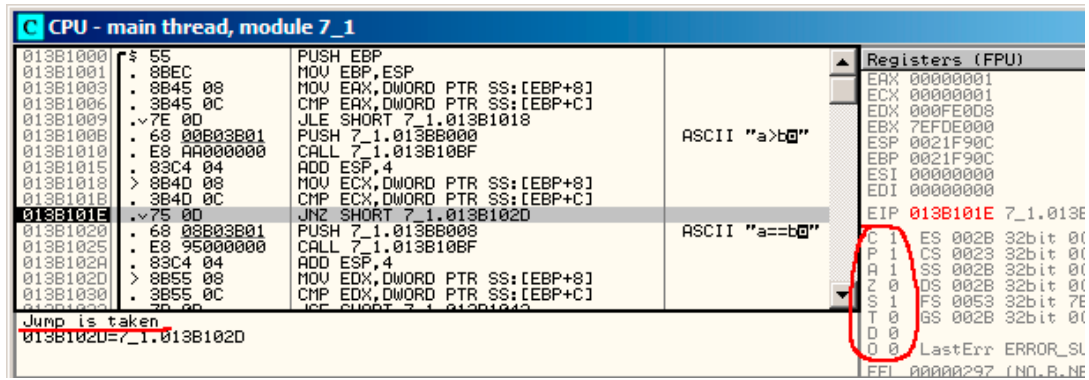


Figure 12.5: OllyDbg: f_unsigned(): second conditional jump

The third conditional jump JGE will not trigger because it will only if SF=OF, and that is not true in our case:

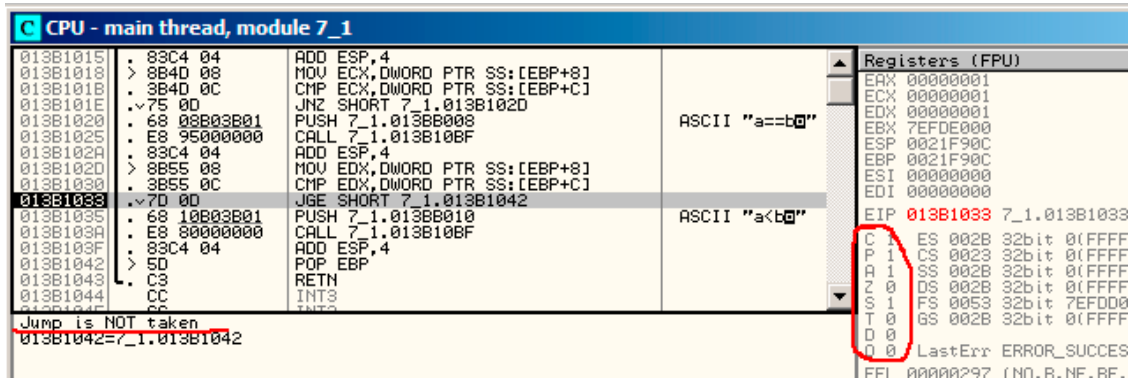


Figure 12.6: OllyDbg: f_unsigned(): third conditional jump

x86 + MSVC + Hiew

We can try patch executable file in that way, that `f_unsigned()` function will always print “a==b”, for any input values. Here is how it looks in Hiew:

```

C:\Polygon\ollydbg\7_1.exe  FRO -----  a32 PE .00401000 Hiew 8.02 (c)SEN
.00401000: 55          push     ebp
.00401001: 8BEC       mov     ebp,esp
.00401003: 8B4508     mov     eax,[ebp][8]
.00401006: 3B450C     cmp     eax,[ebp][00C]
.00401009: 7E0D     jle     .000401018 --E1
.0040100B: 6800B04000 push    00040B000 --E2
.00401010: E8AA000000 call    .0004010BF --E3
.00401015: 83C404     add     esp,4
.00401018: 8B4D08     1mov    ecx,[ebp][8]
.0040101B: 3B4D0C     cmp     ecx,[ebp][00C]
.0040101E: 750D     jnz     .00040102D --E4
.00401020: 6808B04000 push    00040B008 ; 'a==b' --E5
.00401025: E895000000 call    .0004010BF --E3
.0040102A: 83C404     add     esp,4
.0040102D: 8B5508     4mov    edx,[ebp][8]
.00401030: 3B550C     cmp     edx,[ebp][00C]
.00401033: 7D0D     jge     .000401042 --E6
.00401035: 6810B04000 push    00040B010 --E7
.0040103A: E880000000 call    .0004010BF --E3
.0040103F: 83C404     add     esp,4
.00401042: 5D         6pop    ebp
.00401043: C3         retn ; ^^^^
.00401044: CC         int     3
.00401045: CC         int     3
.00401046: CC         int     3
.00401047: CC         int     3
.00401048: CC         int     3
1Global 2FillBlk 3CryBlk 4ReLoad 5OrdLdr 6String 7Direct 8Table 91byte 10Leave 11Naked 12AddNam

```

Figure 12.7: Hiew: `f_unsigned()` function

Essentially, we’ve got three tasks:

- force first jump to be always triggered;
- force second jump to be never triggered;
- force third jump to be always triggered.

Thus we can point code flow into the second `printf()`, and it always print “a==b”. Three instructions (or bytes) should be patched:

- The first jump will now be JMP, but `jump offset` will be same.
- The second jump may be triggered sometimes, but in any case it will jump to the next instruction, because, we set `jump offset` to 0. `Jump offset` is just to be added to the address of the next instruction in these instructions. So if offset is 0, jump will be done to the next instruction.
- The third jump we convert into JMP just as the first one, so it will be triggered always.

We also see `JMP puts` here instead of `CALL puts / RETN`. This kind of trick will be described later: [13.1.1](#).

Needless to say, that this type of x86 code is somewhat rare. MSVC 2012, as it seems, can't generate such code. On the other hand, assembly language programmers are fully aware of the fact that `JCC` instructions can be stacked. So if you see it somewhere, it may be a good probability that the code is hand-written.

`f_unsigned()` function is not that aesthetically short:

Listing 12.5: GCC 4.8.1 `f_unsigned()`

```
f_unsigned:
    push    esi
    push    ebx
    sub     esp, 20
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR [esp+36]
    cmp     esi, ebx
    ja     .L13
    cmp     esi, ebx      ; instruction may be removed
    je     .L14
.L10:
    jb     .L15
    add     esp, 20
    pop     ebx
    pop     esi
    ret
.L15:
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+32], OFFSET FLAT:.LC2 ; "a<b"
    add     esp, 20
    pop     ebx
    pop     esi
    jmp     puts
.L13:
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "a>b"
    call   puts
    cmp     esi, ebx
    jne    .L10
.L14:
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+32], OFFSET FLAT:.LC1 ; "a==b"
    add     esp, 20
    pop     ebx
    pop     esi
    jmp     puts
```

But nevertheless, there are two `CMP` instructions instead of three. So, optimization algorithms of GCC 4.8.1 are probably not always perfect yet.

12.1.2 ARM

32-bit ARM

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 12.6: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
.text:000000B8          EXPORT f_signed
.text:000000B8          f_signed                ; CODE XREF: main+C
.text:000000B8 70 40 2D E9          STMFDP   SP!, {R4-R6,LR}
.text:000000BC 01 40 A0 E1          MOV      R4, R1
.text:000000C0 04 00 50 E1          CMP      R0, R4
.text:000000C4 00 50 A0 E1          MOV      R5, R0
.text:000000C8 1A 0E 8F C2          ADRGT   R0, aAB          ; "a>b\n"
.text:000000CC A1 18 00 CB          BLGT    __2printf
.text:000000D0 04 00 55 E1          CMP      R5, R4
.text:000000D4 67 0F 8F 02          ADREQ   R0, aAB_0       ; "a==b\n"
.text:000000D8 9E 18 00 0B          BLEQ    __2printf
.text:000000DC 04 00 55 E1          CMP      R5, R4
.text:000000E0 70 80 BD A8          LDMGEFD SP!, {R4-R6,PC}
.text:000000E4 70 40 BD E8          LDMFDP   SP!, {R4-R6,LR}
.text:000000E8 19 0E 8F E2          ADR     R0, aAB_1       ; "a<b\n"
.text:000000EC 99 18 00 EA          B       __2printf
.text:000000EC          ; End of function f_signed
```

A lot of instructions in ARM mode can be executed only when specific flags are set. E.g. this is often used while numbers comparing.

For instance, ADD instruction is ADDAL internally in fact, where AL meaning *Always*, i.e., execute always. Predicates are encoded in 4 high bits of 32-bit ARM instructions (*condition field*). B instruction of unconditional jump is in fact conditional and encoded just like any other conditional jumps, but has AL in the *condition field*, and what it means, executing always, ignoring flags.

ADRGT instructions works just like ADR but will execute only in the case when previous CMP instruction, while comparing two numbers, found one number greater than another (*Greater Than*).

The next BLGT instruction behaves exactly as BL and will be triggered only if result of comparison was the same (*Greater Than*). ADRGT writes a pointer to the string `a>b\n`, into R0 and BLGT calls printf(). Consequently, these instructions with -GT suffix, will be executed only in the case when value in the R0 (*a* is there) was bigger than value in the R4 (*b* is there).

Then we see ADREQ and BLEQ instructions. They behave just like ADR and BL but is to be executed only in the case when operands were equal to each other during last comparison. Another CMP is located before them (because printf() call may tamper state of flags).

Then we see LDMGEFD, this instruction works just like LDMFD¹, but will be triggered only in the case when one value was greater or equal to another while comparison (*Greater or Equal*).

The sense of `LDMGEFD SP!, {R4-R6,PC}` instruction is that is like function epilogue, but it will be triggered only if $a \geq b$, only then function execution will be finished. But if it is not true, i.e., $a < b$, then control flow come to next `LDMFD SP!, {R4-R6,LR}` instruction, this is one more function epilogue, this instruction restores R4-R6 registers state, but also LR instead of PC, thus, it does not returns from function. Last two instructions calls printf() with the string «a<b\n» as sole argument. Unconditional jump to the printf() function instead of function return, is what we already examined in «printf() with several arguments» section, here (6.3.1).

f_unsigned is likewise, but ADRHI, BLHI, and LDMCSFD instructions are used there, these predicates (*HI = Unsigned higher, CS = Carry Set (greater than or equal)*) are analogical to those examined before, but serving for unsigned values.

There is not much new in the main() function for us:

Listing 12.7: main()

```
.text:00000128          EXPORT main
.text:00000128          main
.text:00000128 10 40 2D E9      STMFD   SP!, {R4,LR}
.text:0000012C 02 10 A0 E3      MOV     R1, #2
.text:00000130 01 00 A0 E3      MOV     R0, #1
.text:00000134 DF FF FF EB      BL     f_signed
.text:00000138 02 10 A0 E3      MOV     R1, #2
.text:0000013C 01 00 A0 E3      MOV     R0, #1
.text:00000140 EA FF FF EB      BL     f_unsigned
.text:00000144 00 00 A0 E3      MOV     R0, #0
.text:00000148 10 80 BD E8      LDMFD   SP!, {R4,PC}
.text:00000148          ; End of function main
```

That's how to get rid of conditional jumps in ARM mode.

Why it is so good? Read here: 44.1.

There is no such feature in x86, if not to consider CMOVcc instruction, it is the same as MOV, but triggered only when specific flags are set, usually set while value comparison by CMP.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

Listing 12.8: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```
.text:00000072          f_signed ; CODE XREF: main+6
.text:00000072 70 B5          PUSH   {R4-R6,LR}
.text:00000074 0C 00          MOVS   R4, R1
.text:00000076 05 00          MOVS   R5, R0
.text:00000078 A0 42          CMP    R0, R4
.text:0000007A 02 DD          BLE    loc_82
.text:0000007C A4 A0          ADR    R0, aAB          ; "a>b\n"
.text:0000007E 06 F0 B7 F8    BL     __2printf
.text:00000082
.text:00000082          loc_82 ; CODE XREF: f_signed+8
.text:00000082 A5 42          CMP    R5, R4
.text:00000084 02 D1          BNE    loc_8C
.text:00000086 A4 A0          ADR    R0, aAB_0        ; "a==b\n"
.text:00000088 06 F0 B2 F8    BL     __2printf
.text:0000008C
```

¹LDMFD

```
.text:0000008C          loc_8C ; CODE XREF: f_signed+12
.text:0000008C A5 42      CMP     R5, R4
.text:0000008E 02 DA      BGE     locret_96
.text:00000090 A3 A0      ADR     R0, aAB_1      ; "a<b\n"
.text:00000092 06 F0 AD F8 BL      __2printf
.text:00000096
.text:00000096          locret_96 ; CODE XREF: f_signed+1C
.text:00000096 70 BD      POP     {R4-R6,PC}
.text:00000096          ; End of function f_signed
```

Only B instructions in thumb mode may be supplemented by *condition codes*, so the thumb code looks more ordinary. BLE is usual conditional jump *Less than or Equal*, BNE—*Not Equal*, BGE—*Greater than or Equal*.

f_unsigned function is just likewise, but other instructions are used while dealing with unsigned values: BLS (*Unsigned lower or same*) and BCS (*Carry Set (Greater than or equal)*).

ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Listing 12.9: f_signed()

```
f_signed:
; W0=a, W1=b
    cmp     w0, w1
    bgt     .L19      ; Branch if Greater than (a>b)
    beq     .L20      ; Branch if Equal (a==b)
    bge     .L15      ; Branch if Greater than or Equal (a>=b) (impossible here)
; a<b
    adrp   x0, .LC11      ; "a<b"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC11
    b      puts
.L19:
    adrp   x0, .LC9       ; "a>b"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC9
    b      puts
.L15:
; impossible here
    ret
.L20:
    adrp   x0, .LC10      ; "a==b"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC10
    b      puts
```

Listing 12.10: f_unsigned()

```
f_unsigned:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -48]!
; W0=a, W1=b
    cmp    w0, w1
    add    x29, sp, 0
    str    x19, [sp,16]
    mov    w19, w0
    bhi    .L25      ; Branch if Higher (a>b)
    cmp    w19, w1
    beq    .L26      ; Branch if Equal (a==b)
.L23:
    bcc    .L27      ; Branch if Carry Clear (if less than) (a<b)
; function epilogue, impossible to be here
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 48
    ret
.L27:
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]
    adrp   x0, .LC11      ; "a<b"
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 48
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC11
    b      puts
.L25:
    adrp   x0, .LC9       ; "a>b"
    str    x1, [x29,40]
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC9
    bl     puts
```

```

ldr    x1, [x29,40]
cmp    w19, w1
bne    .L23    ; Branch if Not Equal
.L26:
ldr    x19, [sp,16]
adrp   x0, .LC10    ; "a==b"
ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 48
add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC10
b      puts

```

I added comments. What is also striking is that compiler is not aware that some conditions are not possible at all, so there are dead code at some places, which never will be executed.

Exercise

Try to optimize these functions manually, by size, removing redundant instructions, while not adding new ones.

12.2 Calculating absolute value

That's a simple function:

```

int my_abs (int i)
{
    if (i<0)
        return -i;
    else
        return i;
};

```

12.2.1 Optimizing MSVC

This is very usual way to generate it:

Listing 12.11: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

i$ = 8
my_abs PROC
; ECX = input
    test    ecx, ecx
; check for sign of input value
; skip NEG instruction if sign is positive
    jns    SHORT $LN2@my_abs
; negate value
    neg    ecx
$LN2@my_abs:
; prepare result in EAX:
    mov    eax, ecx
    ret    0
my_abs ENDP

```

GCC 4.9 does mostly the same.

12.2.2 Optimizing Keil 6/2013: thumb mode

Listing 12.12: Optimizing Keil 6/2013: thumb mode

```

my_abs PROC
    CMP    r0,#0
; is input value equal to zero or greater than zero?
; skip RSBS instruction then
    BGE    |L0.6|
; subtract input value from 0:
    RSBS   r0,r0,#0
|L0.6|
    BX    lr
ENDP

```

ARM lacks negate instruction, so Keil compiler uses “Reverse Subtract” instruction, which just subtracts, but with operands reversed.

12.2.3 Optimizing Keil 6/2013: ARM mode

It's possible to add condition codes to some instructions in ARM mode, so that's what Keil compiler did:

Listing 12.13: Optimizing Keil 6/2013: ARM mode

```
my_abs PROC
    CMP     r0,#0
; execute "Reverse Subtract" instruction only if input value is less than 0:
    RSBLT  r0,r0,#0
    BX     lr
ENDP
```

Now there are no conditional jumps and this is good: [44.1](#).

12.2.4 Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

ARM64 has NEG instruction for negating:

Listing 12.14: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```
my_abs:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str    w0, [sp,12]
    ldr    w0, [sp,12]
; compare input value with contents of WZR register
; (which always holds zero)
    cmp    w0, wzr
    bge    .L2
    ldr    w0, [sp,12]
    neg    w0, w0
    b      .L3
.L2:
    ldr    w0, [sp,12]
.L3:
    add    sp, sp, 16
    ret
```

12.2.5 Branchless version?

There are also could be branchless version, which we will consider later: [36](#).

12.3 Conditional operator

Conditional operator in C/C++ is:

```
expression ? expression : expression
```

Now here is an example:

```
const char* f (int a)
{
    return a==10 ? "it is ten" : "it is not ten";
};
```

12.3.1 x86

Listing 12.15: Non-optimizing MSVC 2008

```
$SG746 DB    'it is ten', 00H
$SG747 DB    'it is not ten', 00H

tv65 = -4 ; this will be used as a temporary variable
_a$ = 8
_f    PROC
    push  ebp
    mov  ebp, esp
    push  ecx
```



```

; compare input value with 10
    cmp     DWORD PTR _a$[ebp], 10
; jump to $LN3@f if not equal
    jne     SHORT $LN3@f
; store pointer to the string into temporary variable
    mov     DWORD PTR tv65[ebp], OFFSET $SG746 ; 'it is ten'
; jump to exit
    jmp     SHORT $LN4@f
$LN3@f:
; store pointer to the string into temporary variable
    mov     DWORD PTR tv65[ebp], OFFSET $SG747 ; 'it is not ten'
$LN4@f:
; this is exit. copy pointer to the string from temporary variable to EAX.
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR tv65[ebp]
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_f      ENDP

```

Listing 12.16: Optimizing MSVC 2008

```

$SG792 DB     'it is ten', 00H
$SG793 DB     'it is not ten', 00H

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f     PROC
; compare input value with 10
    cmp     DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], 10
    mov     eax, OFFSET $SG792 ; 'it is ten'
; jump to $LN4@f if equal
    je     SHORT $LN4@f
    mov     eax, OFFSET $SG793 ; 'it is not ten'
$LN4@f:
    ret     0
_f     ENDP

```

Latest compilers may be more concise:

Listing 12.17: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

$SG1355 DB     'it is ten', 00H
$SG1356 DB     'it is not ten', 00H

a$ = 8
f     PROC
; load pointers to the both strings
    lea     rdx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1355 ; 'it is ten'
    lea     rax, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1356 ; 'it is not ten'
; compare input value with 10
    cmp     ecx, 10
; if equal, copy RDX value ('it is ten')
; if not, do nothing. pointer to the string 'it is not ten' is still in RDX as for now.
    cmov     rax, rdx
    ret     0
f     ENDP

```

Optimizing GCC 4.8 for x86 also use CMOVcc instruction, while non-optimizing GCC 4.8 use conditional jumps.

12.3.2 ARM

Optimizing Keil for ARM mode also use conditional instructions ADRcc:

Listing 12.18: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
; compare input value with 10
    CMP     r0,#0xa
; if comparison result is Equal, copy pointer to the "it is ten" string into R0
    ADREQ   r0,|L0.16| ; "it is ten"
; if comparison result is Not Equal, copy pointer to the "it is not ten" string into R0
    ADRNE   r0,|L0.28| ; "it is not ten"

```

```

    BX    lr
    ENDP

|L0.16|
    DCB   "it is ten",0
|L0.28|
    DCB   "it is not ten",0

```

Without manual intervention, both ADREQ and ADRENE instructions cannot be executed.

Optimizing Keil for Thumb mode ought to use conditional jump instructions, since there are no load instruction supporting conditional flags:

Listing 12.19: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

f PROC
; compare input value with 10
    CMP    r0,#0xa
; jump to |L0.8| if Equal
    BEQ    |L0.8|
    ADR    r0,|L0.12| ; "it is not ten"
    BX     lr
|L0.8|
    ADR    r0,|L0.28| ; "it is ten"
    BX     lr
    ENDP

|L0.12|
    DCB   "it is not ten",0
|L0.28|
    DCB   "it is ten",0

```

12.3.3 ARM64

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 for ARM64 also use conditional jumps:

Listing 12.20: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

f:
    cmp    x0, 10
    beq    .L3          ; branch if equal
    adrp   x0, .LC1     ; "it is ten"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC1
    ret

.L3:
    adrp   x0, .LC0     ; "it is not ten"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC0
    ret

.LC0:
    .string "it is ten"

.LC1:
    .string "it is not ten"

```

That's because ARM64 hasn't simple load instruction with conditional flags, like `ADRcc` in 32-bit ARM mode or `CMOVcc` in x86 [ARM13a, p390, C5.5]. It has, however, "Conditional SElect" instruction (`CSEL`), but GCC 4.9 is probably not that good to generate it in such piece of code.

12.3.4 Let's rewrite it in if/else way

```

const char* f (int a)
{
    if (a==10)
        return "it is ten";
    else
        return "it is not ten";
};

```

Interestingly, optimizing GCC 4.8 for x86 also was able to generate `CMOVcc` in this case:

Listing 12.21: Optimizing GCC 4.8

```
.LC0:
    .string "it is ten"
.LC1:
    .string "it is not ten"
f:
.LFB0:
; compare input value with 10
    cmp     DWORD PTR [esp+4], 10
    mov     edx, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1 ; "it is not ten"
    mov     eax, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "it is ten"
; if comparison result is Not Equal, copy EDX value to EAX
; if not, do nothing
    cmovne eax, edx
    ret
```

Optimizing Keil in ARM mode generates a code identical to listing.12.18.
But optimizing MSVC 2012 is not that good (yet).

12.3.5 Conclusion

Why optimizing compilers try to get rid of conditional jumps? Read here about it: [44.1](#).

12.3.6 Exercise

Try to rewrite the code in listing.12.20 by removing all conditional jump instructions, and use CSEL instruction.

12.4 Getting minimal and maximal values

12.4.1 32-bit

```
int my_max(int a, int b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return a;
    else
        return b;
};

int my_min(int a, int b)
{
    if (a<b)
        return a;
    else
        return b;
};
```

Listing 12.22: Non-optimizing MSVC 2013

```
_a$ = 8
_b$ = 12
_my_min PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; compare A and B:
    cmp     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
; jump if A is greater or equal to B:
    jge     SHORT $LN2@my_min
; reload A to EAX if otherwise and jump to exit
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    jmp     SHORT $LN3@my_min
    jmp     SHORT $LN3@my_min ; this is idle JMP
$LN2@my_min:
; return B
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
$LN3@my_min:
```

```

        pop     ebp
        ret     0
_my_min ENDP

_a$ = 8
_b$ = 12
_my_max PROC
        push   ebp
        mov    ebp, esp
        mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; compare A and B:
        cmp    eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
; jump if A is less or equal to B:
        jle   SHORT $LN2@my_max
; reload A to EAX if otherwise and jump to exit
        mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
        jmp   SHORT $LN3@my_max
        jmp   SHORT $LN3@my_max ; this is idle JMP
$LN2@my_max:
; return B
        mov    eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
$LN3@my_max:
        pop    ebp
        ret    0
_my_max ENDP

```

These two functions differ only in conditional jump instruction: JGE (Jump if Greater or Equal) is used in first and JLE (Jump if Less or Equal) in second.

There are unneeded JMP instruction in each function which MSVC left by mistake, probably.

Branchless

ARM for thumb mode reminds us x86 code:

Listing 12.23: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

my_max PROC
; R0=A
; R1=B
; compare A and B:
        CMP     r0,r1
; branch if A is greater then B:
        BGT     |L0.6|
; otherwise (A<=B) return R1 (B):
        MOVS    r0,r1
|L0.6|
; return
        BX     lr
        ENDP

my_min PROC
; R0=A
; R1=B
; compare A and B:
        CMP     r0,r1
; branch if A is less then B:
        BLT     |L0.14|
; otherwise (A>=B) return R1 (B):
        MOVS    r0,r1
|L0.14|
; return
        BX     lr
        ENDP

```

The functions differ in branching instruction: BGT and BLT.

It's possible to use conditional suffixes in ARM mode, so the code is more terse. MOVcc will be executed only if condition is met:

Listing 12.24: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

my_max PROC

```

```

; R0=A
; R1=B
; compare A and B:
    CMP    r0,r1
; return B instead of A by placing B in R0
; this instruction will trigger only if A<=B (hence, LE - Less or Equal)
; if instruction is not triggered (in case of A>B), A is still in R0 register
    MOVLE  r0,r1
    BX     lr
    ENDP

my_min PROC
; R0=A
; R1=B
; compare A and B:
    CMP    r0,r1
; return B instead of A by placing B in R0
; this instruction will trigger only if A>=B (hence, GE - Greater or Equal)
; if instruction is not triggered (in case of A<B), A value is still in R0 register
    MOVGE  r0,r1
    BX     lr
    ENDP

```

Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 and optimizing MSVC 2013 can use CMOVcc instruction, which is analogous to MOVcc in ARM:

Listing 12.25: Optimizing MSVC 2013

```

my_max:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
; EAX=A
; EDX=B
; compare B and A:
    cmp     edx, eax
; if B>=A, load B value in EAX
; the instruction idle if otherwise (if B<A)
    cmovge eax, edx
    ret

my_min:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
; EAX=A
; EDX=B
; compare B and A:
    cmp     edx, eax
; EAX=A
; EDX=B
; if B<=A, load B value in EAX
; the instruction idle if otherwise (if B>A)
    cmovle eax, edx
    ret

```

12.4.2 64-bit

```

#include <stdint.h>

int64_t my_max(int64_t a, int64_t b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return a;
    else
        return b;
};

int64_t my_min(int64_t a, int64_t b)
{
    if (a<b)
        return a;
}

```

```

    else
        return b;
};

```

There are redundant value shufflings, but the code is comprehensible:

Listing 12.26: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

my_max:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str    x0, [sp,8]
    str    x1, [sp]
    ldr    x1, [sp,8]
    ldr    x0, [sp]
    cmp    x1, x0
    ble    .L2
    ldr    x0, [sp,8]
    b      .L3
.L2:
    ldr    x0, [sp]
.L3:
    add    sp, sp, 16
    ret

my_min:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str    x0, [sp,8]
    str    x1, [sp]
    ldr    x1, [sp,8]
    ldr    x0, [sp]
    cmp    x1, x0
    bge    .L5
    ldr    x0, [sp,8]
    b      .L6
.L5:
    ldr    x0, [sp]
.L6:
    add    sp, sp, 16
    ret

```

Branchless

No need to load function arguments from stack, they are already in registers:

Listing 12.27: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```

my_max:
; RDI=A
; RSI=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp    rdi, rsi
; prepare B in RAX for return:
    mov    rax, rsi
; if A>=B, put A (RDI) in RAX for return.
; this instruction is idle if otherwise (if A<B)
    cmovge rax, rdi
    ret

my_min:
; RDI=A
; RSI=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp    rdi, rsi
; prepare B in RAX for return:
    mov    rax, rsi
; if A<=B, put A (RDI) in RAX for return.
; this instruction is idle if otherwise (if A>B)
    cmovle rax, rdi
    ret

```

Msvc 2013 does almost the same.

ARM64 has CSEL instruction, which works just as MOVcc in ARM or CMOVcc in x86, but name is changed: “Conditional SElect”:

Listing 12.28: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```
my_max:
; X0=A
; X1=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp    x0, x1
; select X0 (A) to X0 if X0>=X1 or A>=B (Greater or Equal)
; select X1 (B) to X0 if A<B
    csel   x0, x0, x1, ge
    ret

my_min:
; X0=A
; X1=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp    x0, x1
; select X0 (A) to X0 if X0<=X1 or A<=B (Less or Equal)
; select X1 (B) to X0 if A>B
    csel   x0, x0, x1, le
    ret
```

12.5 Conclusion

12.5.1 x86

Rough skeleton of conditional jump:

Listing 12.29: x86

```
CMP register, register/value
Jcc true ; cc=condition code
false:
... some code to be executed if comparison result is false ...
JMP exit
true:
... some code to be executed if comparison result is true ...
exit:
```

Listing 12.30: ARM

```
CMP register, register/value
Bcc true ; cc=condition code
false:
... some code to be executed if comparison result is false ...
JMP exit
true:
... some code to be executed if comparison result is true ...
exit:
```

12.5.2 Branchless

If condition statement body is very short, conditional move instruction can be used: MOVcc in ARM (in ARM mode), CSEL in ARM64, CMOVcc in x86.

ARM

It's possible to use conditional suffixes in ARM mode for some instructions:

Listing 12.31: ARM (ARM mode)

```
CMP register, register/value
instr1_cc ; some instruction will be executed if condition code is true
instr2_cc ; some other instruction will be executed if other condition code is true
... etc ...
```

Of course, there are no limit of number of instructions with conditional code suffixes, as long as CPU flags are not modified by any of them.

Thumb mode has IT instruction, allowing to add conditional suffixes to the next four instructions. Read more about it: [17.3.2](#).

Listing 12.32: ARM (thumb mode)

```
CMP register, register/value
ITEEE EQ ; set these suffixes: if-then-else-else-else
instr1   ; instruction will be executed if condition is true
instr2   ; instruction will be executed if condition is false
instr3   ; instruction will be executed if condition is false
instr4   ; instruction will be executed if condition is false
```


Chapter 13

switch()/case/default

13.1 Few number of cases

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f (int a)
{
    switch (a)
    {
        case 0: printf ("zero\n"); break;
        case 1: printf ("one\n"); break;
        case 2: printf ("two\n"); break;
        default: printf ("something unknown\n"); break;
    };
};

int main()
{
    f (2); // test
};
```

13.1.1 x86

Non-optimizing MSVC

Result (MSVC 2010):

Listing 13.1: MSVC 2010

```
tv64 = -4 ; size = 4
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], eax
    cmp     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 0
    je     SHORT $LN4@f
    cmp     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 1
    je     SHORT $LN3@f
    cmp     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 2
    je     SHORT $LN2@f
    jmp     SHORT $LN1@f
$LN4@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG739 ; 'zero', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 4
    jmp     SHORT $LN7@f
$LN3@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG741 ; 'one', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 4
```

```

    jmp     SHORT $LN7@f
$LN2@f:
    push   OFFSET $SG743 ; 'two', 0aH, 00H
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    jmp    SHORT $LN7@f
$LN1@f:
    push   OFFSET $SG745 ; 'something unknown', 0aH, 00H
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
$LN7@f:
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f       ENDP

```

Our function with a few cases in `switch()`, in fact, is analogous to this construction:

```

void f (int a)
{
    if (a==0)
        printf ("zero\n");
    else if (a==1)
        printf ("one\n");
    else if (a==2)
        printf ("two\n");
    else
        printf ("something unknown\n");
};

```

If we work with `switch()` with a few cases, it is impossible to be sure, was it real `switch()` in source code, or just pack of `if()` statements. This means, `switch()` is like syntactic sugar for large number of nested checks constructed using `if()`.

Nothing especially new to us in generated code, with the exception the compiler moving input variable `a` to temporary local variable `tv64`¹.

If to compile the same in GCC 4.4.1, we'll get almost the same, even with maximal optimization turned on (`-O3` option).

Optimizing MSVC

Now let's turn on optimization in MSVC (`/Ox`): `cl 1.c /Fa1.asm /Ox`

Listing 13.2: MSVC

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f   PROC
    mov   eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    sub   eax, 0
    je    SHORT $LN4@f
    sub   eax, 1
    je    SHORT $LN3@f
    sub   eax, 1
    je    SHORT $LN2@f
    mov   DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG791 ; 'something unknown', 0aH, 00H
    jmp   _printf
$LN2@f:
    mov   DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG789 ; 'two', 0aH, 00H
    jmp   _printf
$LN3@f:
    mov   DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG787 ; 'one', 0aH, 00H
    jmp   _printf
$LN4@f:
    mov   DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG785 ; 'zero', 0aH, 00H
    jmp   _printf
_f     ENDP

```

Here we can see some dirty hacks.

First: the value of the `a` variable is placed into `EAX` and 0 subtracted from it. Sounds absurd, but it may needs to check if 0 was in the `EAX` register before? If yes, flag `ZF` will be set (this also means that subtracting from 0 is 0) and first conditional jump `JE` (*Jump if Equal* or synonym `JZ` – *Jump if Zero*) will be triggered and control flow passed to the `$LN4@f` label, where

¹Local variables in stack prefixed with `tv` – that's how MSVC names internal variables for its needs

'zero' message is being printed. If first jump was not triggered, 1 subtracted from the input value and if at some stage 0 will be resulted, corresponding jump will be triggered.

And if no jump triggered at all, control flow passed to the `printf()` with argument 'something unknown' string.

Second: we see unusual thing for us: string pointer is placed into the `a` variable, and then `printf()` is called not via `CALL`, but via `JMP`. This could be explained simply. Caller pushing to stack a value and calling our function via `CALL`. `CALL` itself pushing returning address (`RA`) to stack and do unconditional jump to our function address. Our function at any point of execution (since it do not contain any instruction moving stack pointer) has the following stack layout:

- `ESP`—pointing to `RA`
- `ESP+4`—pointing to the `a` variable

On the other side, when we need to call `printf()` here, we need exactly the same stack layout, except of first `printf()` argument pointing to string. And that is what our code does.

It replaces function's first argument to address of the string and jumping to the `printf()`, as if not our function `f()` was called firstly, but immediately `printf()`. `printf()` printing a string to `stdout` and then execute `RET` instruction, which `POP`ping `RA` from stack and control flow is returned not to `f()` but rather to the `f()`'s callee, bypassing end of `f()` function.

All this is possible since `printf()` is called right at the end of the `f()` function in any case. In some way, it is all similar to the `longjmp()`² function. And of course, it is all done for the sake of speed.

Similar case with ARM compiler described in “`printf()` with several arguments”, section, here (6.3.1).

²<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Setjmp.h>

OllyDbg

Since this example is tricky, let's trace it in OllyDbg.

OllyDbg can detect such switch() constructs, so its add some useful comments. EAX is 2 at start, that's function's input value:

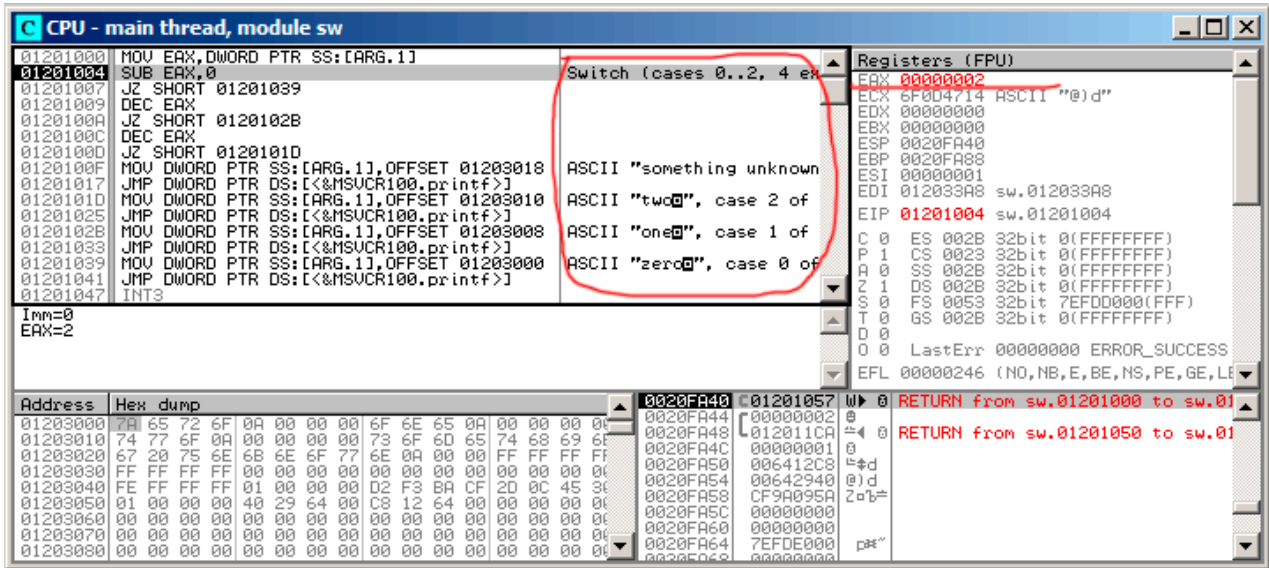


Figure 13.1: OllyDbg: EAX now contain first (and sole) function argument

DEC is executed and EAX now contain 1. But 1 is non-zero, so the ZF flag is still 0:

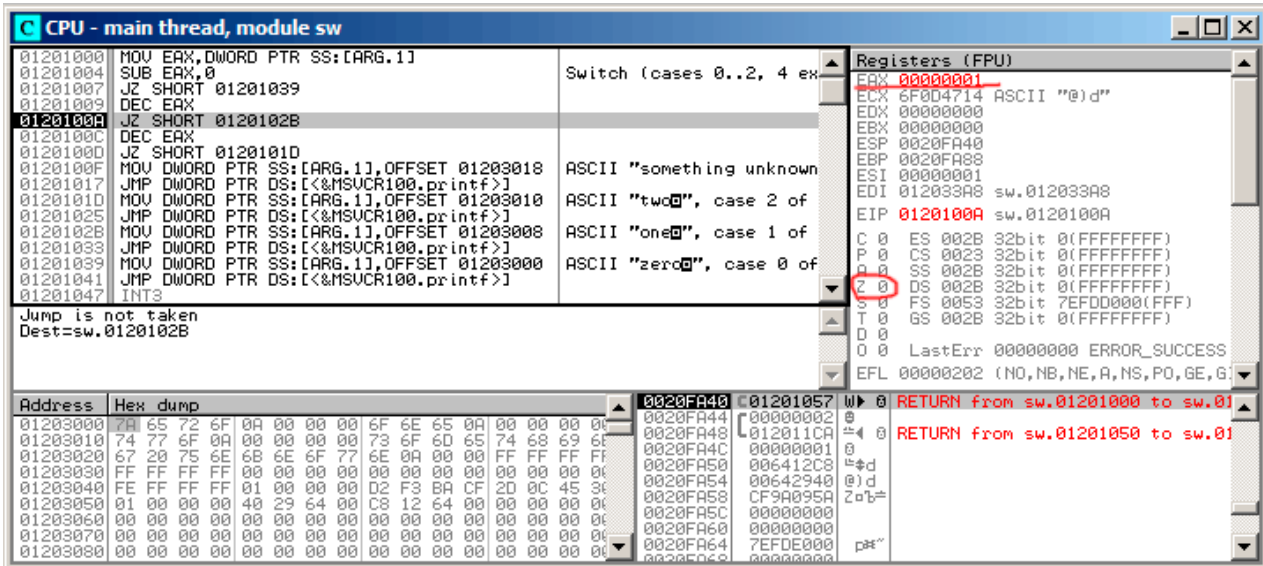


Figure 13.3: OllyDbg: first DEC executed

Next DEC is executed. EAX is finally 0 and ZF flag is set, because the result is zero:

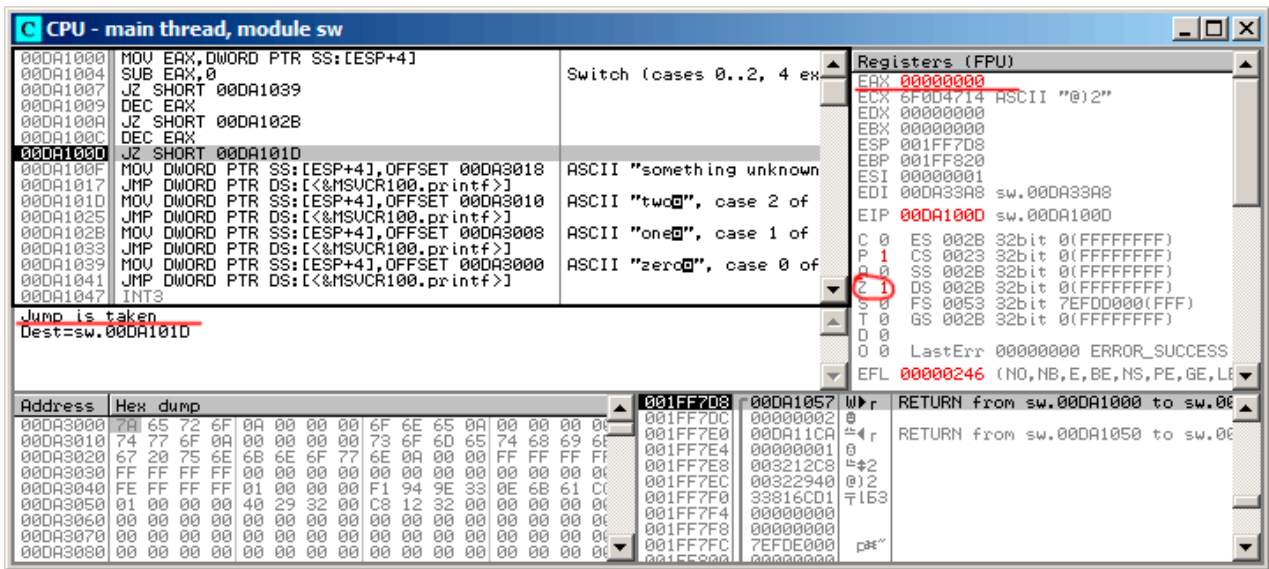


Figure 13.4: OllyDbg: second DEC executed

OllyDbg shows that this jump will be taken now.

A pointer to the string "two" will now be written into the stack:

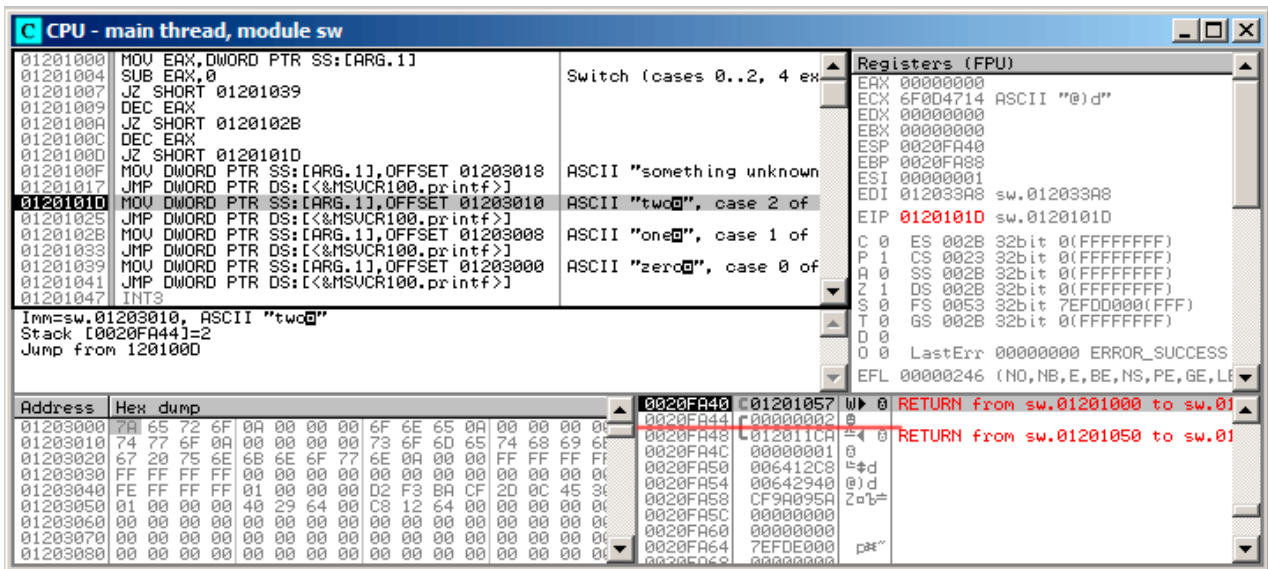


Figure 13.5: OllyDbg: pointer to the string is to be written at the place of first argument

Please note: current argument of the function is 2 and 2 is now in the stack at the address 0x0020FA44.

MOV wrote pointer to the string at the address 0x0020FA44 (see stack window). Jump is happen. This is the first instruction of printf() function in MSVCR100.DLL (I compiled the example with /MD switch):

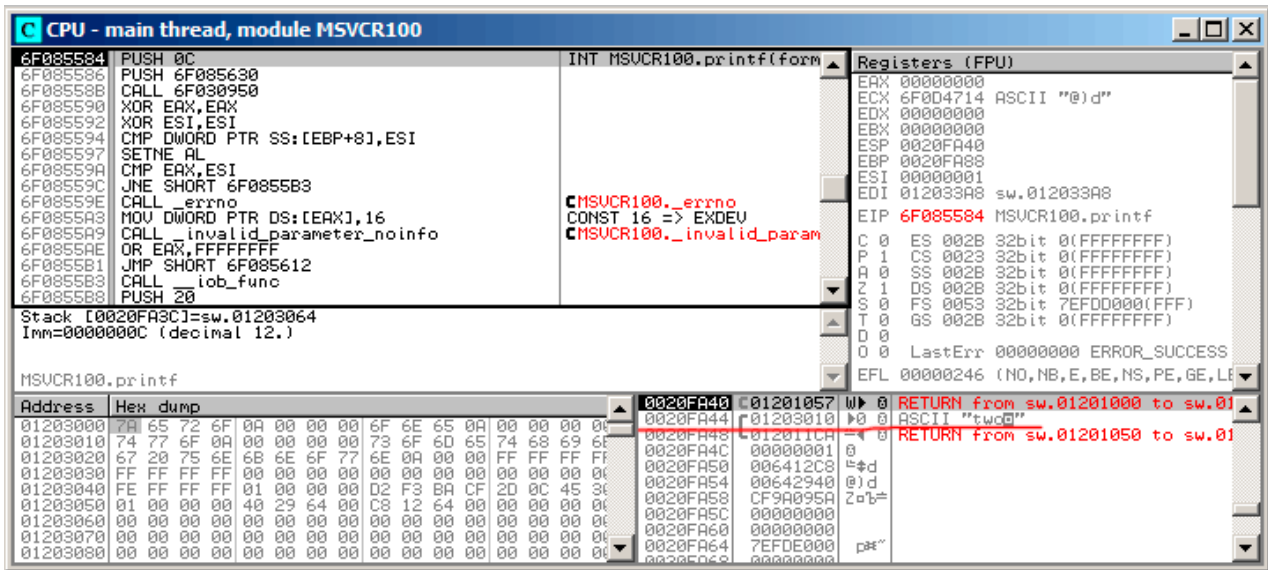


Figure 13.6: OllyDbg: first instruction of printf() in MSVCR100.DLL

Now the printf() will treat the string at 0x0020FA44 as its sole argument and will print the string.

This is the very last instruction of printf():

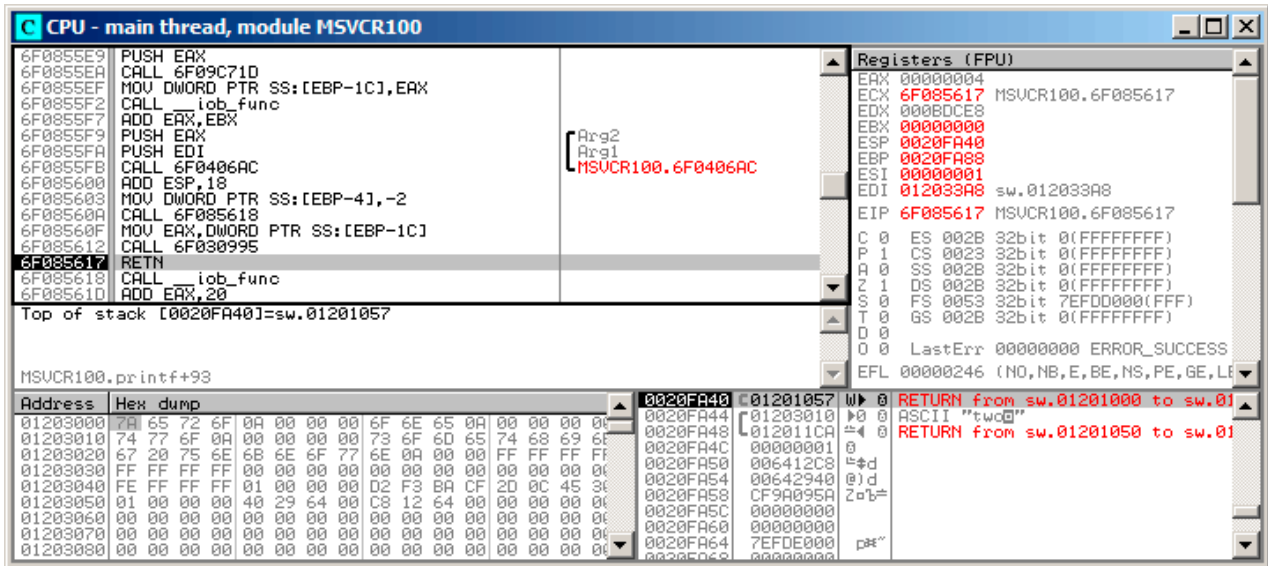


Figure 13.7: OllyDbg: last instruction of printf() in MSVCRT100.DLL

“two” string was just printed to the console window.

Let's press F7 or F8 (step over) and we will return...not to `f()` function, but rather to the `main()`:

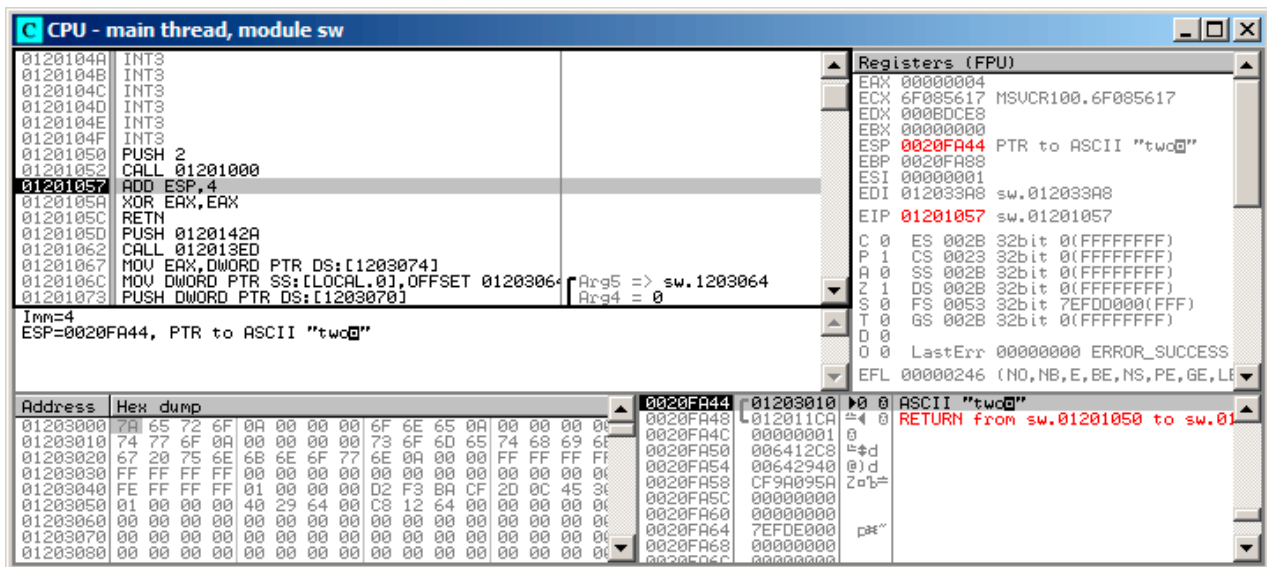


Figure 13.8: OllyDbg: return to `main()`

Yes, the jump was direct, from the guts of `printf()` to `main()`. Because `RA` in the stack pointed not to some place in `f()` function, but rather to `main()`. And `CALL 0x01201000` was the actual instruction which called `f()` function.

13.1.2 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
.text:0000014C          f1:
.text:0000014C 00 00 50 E3      CMP     R0, #0
.text:00000150 13 0E 8F 02      ADREQ  R0, aZero ; "zero\n"
.text:00000154 05 00 00 0A      BEQ    loc_170
.text:00000158 01 00 50 E3      CMP     R0, #1
.text:0000015C 4B 0F 8F 02      ADREQ  R0, aOne ; "one\n"
.text:00000160 02 00 00 0A      BEQ    loc_170
.text:00000164 02 00 50 E3      CMP     R0, #2
.text:00000168 4A 0F 8F 12      ADRNE  R0, aSomethingUnkno ; "something unknown\n"
.text:0000016C 4E 0F 8F 02      ADREQ  R0, aTwo ; "two\n"
.text:00000170
.text:00000170          loc_170: ; CODE XREF: f1+8
.text:00000170          ; f1+14
.text:00000170 78 18 00 EA      B      __2printf
```

Again, by investigating this code, we cannot say, was it `switch()` in the original source code, or pack of `if()` statements.

Anyway, we see here predicated instructions again (like `ADREQ` (*Equal*)) which will be triggered only in `R0 = 0` case, and the, address of the «`zero\n`» string will be loaded into the `R0`. The next instruction `BEQ` will redirect control flow to `loc_170`, if `R0 = 0`. By the way, astute reader may ask, will `BEQ` triggered right since `ADREQ` before it is already filled the `R0` register with another value. Yes, it will since `BEQ` checking flags set by `CMP` instruction, and `ADREQ` not modifying flags at all.

Other instructions are already familiar to us. There is only one call to `printf()`, at the end, and we already examined this trick here (6.3.1). There are three paths to `printf()` at the end.

The last `CMP R0, #2` instruction is needed here to figure out, if `a = 2` or not. If it is not true, then `ADRNE` will load pointer to the string «`something unknown\n`» into `R0` since `a` was already checked to be equal to 0 or 1 before, so we can be assured the `a` variable is not equal to these numbers at this point. And if `R0 = 2`, a pointer to string «`two\n`» will be loaded by `ADREQ` into `R0`.

13.1.3 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```
.text:000000D4          f1:
.text:000000D4 10 B5          PUSH  {R4,LR}
.text:000000D6 00 28          CMP   R0, #0
.text:000000D8 05 D0          BEQ  zero_case
.text:000000DA 01 28          CMP  R0, #1
.text:000000DC 05 D0          BEQ  one_case
.text:000000DE 02 28          CMP  R0, #2
.text:000000E0 05 D0          BEQ  two_case
```

```
.text:000000E2 91 A0      ADR    R0, aSomethingUnkno ; "something unknown\n"
.text:000000E4 04 E0      B      default_case

.text:000000E6          zero_case: ; CODE XREF: f1+4
.text:000000E6 95 A0      ADR    R0, aZero ; "zero\n"
.text:000000E8 02 E0      B      default_case

.text:000000EA          one_case: ; CODE XREF: f1+8
.text:000000EA 96 A0      ADR    R0, aOne ; "one\n"
.text:000000EC 00 E0      B      default_case

.text:000000EE          two_case: ; CODE XREF: f1+C
.text:000000EE 97 A0      ADR    R0, aTwo ; "two\n"
.text:000000F0          default_case ; CODE XREF: f1+10
.text:000000F0          ; f1+14
.text:000000F0 06 F0 7E F8 BL      __2printf
.text:000000F4 10 BD      POP    {R4,PC}
.text:000000F4          ; End of function f1
```

As I already mentioned, there is no feature of adding conditional predicates to majority of instructions in thumb mode, so the thumb-code here is somewhat similar to the easily understandable x86 [CISC](#)-style code.

13.1.4 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
.LC12:
.string "zero"
.LC13:
.string "one"
.LC14:
.string "two"
.LC15:
.string "something unknown"
f12:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
    add    x29, sp, 0
    str    w0, [x29,28]
    ldr    w0, [x29,28]
    cmp    w0, 1
    beq    .L34
    cmp    w0, 2
    beq    .L35
    cmp    w0, wzr
    bne    .L38          ; jump to default label
    adrp   x0, .LC12      ; "zero"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC12
    bl     puts
    b      .L32
.L34:
    adrp   x0, .LC13      ; "one"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC13
    bl     puts
    b      .L32
.L35:
    adrp   x0, .LC14      ; "two"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC14
    bl     puts
    b      .L32
.L38:
    adrp   x0, .LC15      ; "something unknown"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC15
    bl     puts
    nop
.L32:
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
    ret
```

Input value has *int* type, hence W0 register is used as input value instead of the whole X0 register. String pointers are passed to puts() using ADRP/ADD instructions pair just like I showed in “Hello, world!” example: [3.4.5](#).

13.1.5 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
f12:
    cmp     w0, 1
    beq     .L31
    cmp     w0, 2
    beq     .L32
    cbz     w0, .L35
; default case
    adrp   x0, .LC15      ; "something unknown"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC15
    b      puts
.L35:
    adrp   x0, .LC12      ; "zero"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC12
    b      puts
.L32:
    adrp   x0, .LC14      ; "two"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC14
    b      puts
.L31:
    adrp   x0, .LC13      ; "one"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC13
    b      puts
```

Better optimized piece of code. CBZ (*Compare and Branch on Zero*) instruction do jump if W0 is zero. There is also direct jump to puts() instead of calling it, like I described before: [13.1.1](#).

13.1.6 Conclusion

switch() with few number of cases is indistinguishable from if/else construction, for example: [listing.13.1.1](#).

13.2 A lot of cases

If switch() statement contain a lot of case's, it is not very convenient for compiler to emit too large code with a lot JE/JNE instructions.

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f (int a)
{
    switch (a)
    {
        case 0: printf ("zero\n"); break;
        case 1: printf ("one\n"); break;
        case 2: printf ("two\n"); break;
        case 3: printf ("three\n"); break;
        case 4: printf ("four\n"); break;
        default: printf ("something unknown\n"); break;
    };
};

int main()
{
    f (2); // test
};
```

13.2.1 x86

Non-optimizing MSVC

We got (MSVC 2010):

Listing 13.3: MSVC 2010

```
tv64 = -4 ; size = 4
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
```

```

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
push    ecx
mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
mov     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], eax
cmp     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 4
ja     SHORT $LN1@f
mov     ecx, DWORD PTR tv64[ebp]
jmp     DWORD PTR $LN11@f[ecx*4]
$LN6@f:
push    OFFSET $SG739 ; 'zero', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf
add     esp, 4
jmp     SHORT $LN9@f
$LN5@f:
push    OFFSET $SG741 ; 'one', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf
add     esp, 4
jmp     SHORT $LN9@f
$LN4@f:
push    OFFSET $SG743 ; 'two', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf
add     esp, 4
jmp     SHORT $LN9@f
$LN3@f:
push    OFFSET $SG745 ; 'three', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf
add     esp, 4
jmp     SHORT $LN9@f
$LN2@f:
push    OFFSET $SG747 ; 'four', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf
add     esp, 4
jmp     SHORT $LN9@f
$LN1@f:
push    OFFSET $SG749 ; 'something unknown', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf
add     esp, 4
$LN9@f:
mov     esp, ebp
pop     ebp
ret     0
npad    2 ; align next label
$LN11@f:
DD     $LN6@f ; 0
DD     $LN5@f ; 1
DD     $LN4@f ; 2
DD     $LN3@f ; 3
DD     $LN2@f ; 4
_f     ENDP

```

OK, what we see here is: there is a set of the `printf()` calls with various arguments. All they has not only addresses in process memory, but also internal symbolic labels assigned by compiler. All these labels are also mentioned in `$LN11@f` internal table.

At the function beginning, if `a` is greater than 4, control flow is passed to label `$LN1@f`, where `printf()` with argument 'something unknown' is called.

But if `a` value is less or equals to 4, let's multiply it by 4 and add `$LN11@f` table address. That is how address inside of table is constructed, pointing exactly to the element we need. For example, let's say `a` is equal to 2. $2 * 4 = 8$ (all table elements are addresses within 32-bit process that is why all elements contain 4 bytes). Address of the `$LN11@f` table + 8 – it will be table element where `$LN4@f` label is stored. `JMP` fetches `$LN4@f` address from the table and jump to it.

This table sometimes called *jump table* or *branch table*³.

Then corresponding `printf()` is called with argument 'two'. Literally, `jmp DWORD PTR $LN11@f[ecx*4]` instruction means *jump to DWORD, which is stored at address `$LN11@f + ecx * 4`*.

`npad (78)` is assembly language macro, aligning next label so that it will be stored at address aligned on a 4 byte (or 16 byte) border. This is very suitable for processor since it is able to fetch 32-bit values from memory through memory bus, cache memory, etc, in much effective way if it is aligned.

³The whole method once called *computed GOTO* in early FORTRAN versions: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Branch_table. Not quite relevant these days, but what a term!

OllyDbg

Let's try this example in OllyDbg. Function's input value (2) is loaded into EAX:

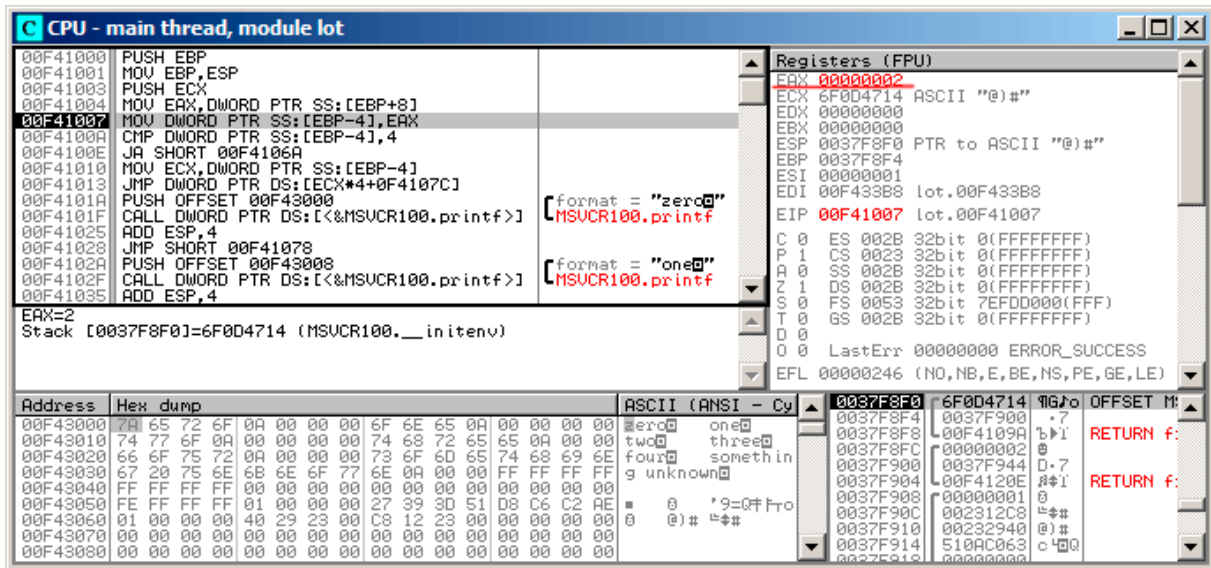


Figure 13.9: OllyDbg: function's input value is loaded in EAX

Input value is checked, if it's bigger than 4? No, "default" jump is not taken:

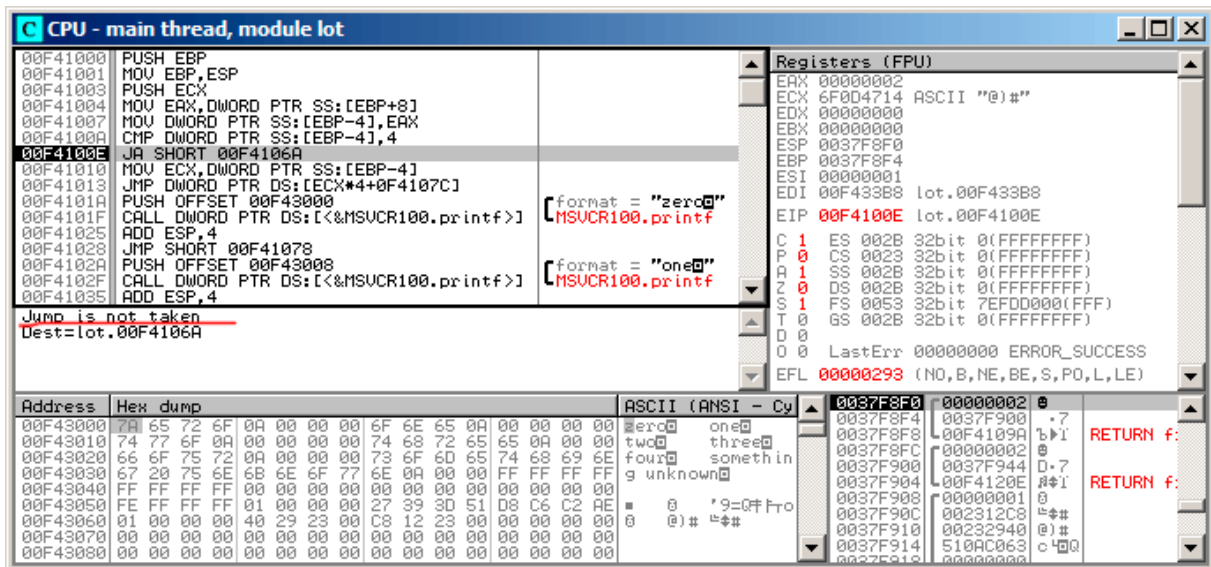


Figure 13.10: OllyDbg: 2 is no bigger than 4: no jump is taken

Here we see a jumtable:

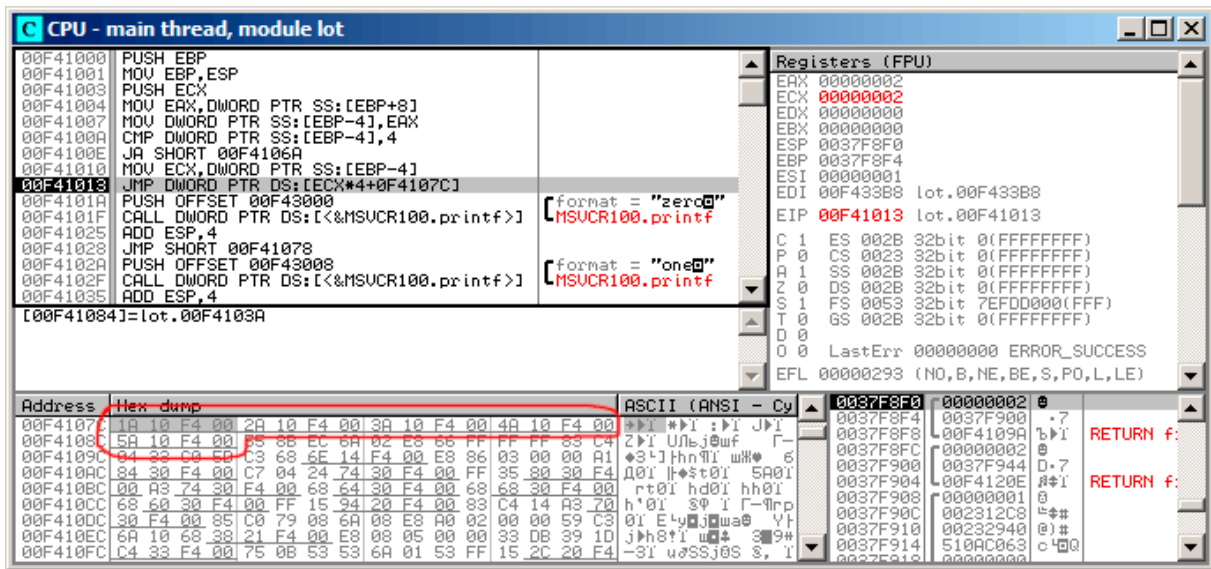


Figure 13.11: OllyDbg: calculating destination address using jumtable

By the way, I clicked “Follow in Dump” → “Address constant”, so now we see a jumtable in data window. These are 4 32-bit values⁴. ECX is 2 now, so the second element (counting from zeroth) of table will be used. By the way, it’s also possible to click “Follow in Dump” → “Memory address” and OllyDbg will show the element JMP instruction being address now. That’s 0x0116103A.

⁴They are underlined by OllyDbg because these are also FIXUPs: 59.2.6, we will back to them later

Jump occurred and we now at 0x0116103A: the code printing “two” string will now be executed:

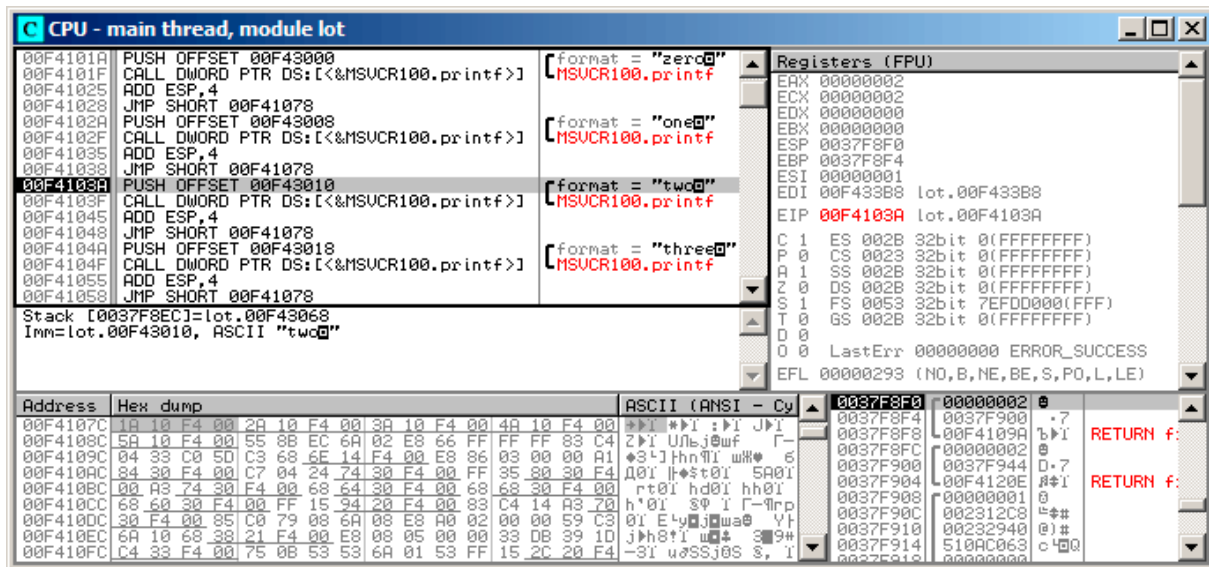


Figure 13.12: OllyDbg: now we at corresponding case: label

Non-optimizing GCC

Let's see what GCC 4.4.1 generates:

Listing 13.4: GCC 4.4.1

```

public f
f
proc near ; CODE XREF: main+10

var_18 = dword ptr -18h
arg_0 = dword ptr 8

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
sub     esp, 18h
cmp     [ebp+arg_0], 4
ja     short loc_8048444
mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
shl    eax, 2
mov     eax, ds:off_804855C[eax]
jmp     eax

loc_80483FE: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:off_804855C
mov     [esp+18h+var_18], offset aZero ; "zero"
call   _puts
jmp     short locret_8048450

loc_804840C: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:08048560
mov     [esp+18h+var_18], offset aOne ; "one"
call   _puts
jmp     short locret_8048450

loc_804841A: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:08048564
mov     [esp+18h+var_18], offset aTwo ; "two"
call   _puts
jmp     short locret_8048450

loc_8048428: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:08048568
mov     [esp+18h+var_18], offset aThree ; "three"
call   _puts
jmp     short locret_8048450

loc_8048436: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:0804856C
mov     [esp+18h+var_18], offset aFour ; "four"
call   _puts
jmp     short locret_8048450

```

```

loc_8048444: ; CODE XREF: f+A
            mov     [esp+18h+var_18], offset aSomethingUnkno ; "something unknown"
            call   _puts

locret_8048450: ; CODE XREF: f+26
             ; f+34...
            leave
            retn
f           endp

off_804855C dd offset loc_80483FE ; DATA XREF: f+12
            dd offset loc_804840C
            dd offset loc_804841A
            dd offset loc_8048428
            dd offset loc_8048436

```

It is almost the same, except little nuance: argument `arg_0` is multiplied by 4 by shifting it to left by 2 bits (it is almost the same as multiplication by 4) (16.2.1). Then label address is taken from `off_804855C` array, address is calculated and stored into `EAX`, then `JMP EAX` do actual jump.

13.2.2 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

00000174          f2
00000174 05 00 50 E3      CMP     R0, #5           ; switch 5 cases
00000178 00 F1 8F 30      ADDCC  PC, PC, R0,LSL#2 ; switch jump
0000017C 0E 00 00 EA      B      default_case    ; jumptable 00000178 default case

00000180
00000180          loc_180 ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000180 03 00 00 EA      B      zero_case       ; jumptable 00000178 case 0

00000184
00000184          loc_184 ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000184 04 00 00 EA      B      one_case        ; jumptable 00000178 case 1

00000188
00000188          loc_188 ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000188 05 00 00 EA      B      two_case        ; jumptable 00000178 case 2

0000018C
0000018C          loc_18C ; CODE XREF: f2+4
0000018C 06 00 00 EA      B      three_case      ; jumptable 00000178 case 3

00000190
00000190          loc_190 ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000190 07 00 00 EA      B      four_case       ; jumptable 00000178 case 4

00000194
00000194          zero_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000194          ; f2:loc_180
00000194 EC 00 8F E2      ADR    R0, aZero        ; jumptable 00000178 case 0
00000198 06 00 00 EA      B      loc_1B8

0000019C
0000019C          one_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
0000019C          ; f2:loc_184
0000019C EC 00 8F E2      ADR    R0, aOne         ; jumptable 00000178 case 1
000001A0 04 00 00 EA      B      loc_1B8

000001A4
000001A4          two_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
000001A4          ; f2:loc_188
000001A4 01 0C 8F E2      ADR    R0, aTwo         ; jumptable 00000178 case 2
000001A8 02 00 00 EA      B      loc_1B8

000001AC
000001AC          three_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
000001AC          ; f2:loc_18C

```

```

000001AC 01 0C 8F E2      ADR    R0, aThree      ; jumptable 00000178 case 3
000001B0 00 00 00 EA          B      loc_1B8

000001B4
000001B4          four_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
000001B4          ; f2:loc_190
000001B4 01 0C 8F E2      ADR    R0, aFour      ; jumptable 00000178 case 4
000001B8
000001B8          loc_1B8 ; CODE XREF: f2+24
000001B8          ; f2+2C
000001B8 66 18 00 EA      B      __2printf

000001BC
000001BC          default_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
000001BC          ; f2+8
000001BC D4 00 8F E2      ADR    R0, aSomethingUnkno ; jumptable 00000178 default case
000001C0 FC FF FF EA      B      loc_1B8
000001C0          ; End of function f2

```

This code makes use of the ARM mode feature in which all instructions has fixed size of 4 bytes.

Let's keep in mind the maximum value for a is 4 and any greater value must cause «something unknown» string printing. The very first ``CMP R0, #5`` instruction compares a input value with 5.

The next ``ADDCC PC, PC, R0, LSL#2``⁵ instruction will execute only if $R0 < 5$ ($CC=Carry\ clear / Less\ than$). Consequently, if ADDCC will not trigger (it is a $R0 \geq 5$ case), a jump to *default_case* label will be occurred.

But if $R0 < 5$ and ADDCC will trigger, following events will happen:

Value in the R0 is multiplied by 4. In fact, LSL#2 at the instruction's suffix means "shift left by 2 bits". But as we will see later (16.2.1) in "Shifts" section, shift left by 2 bits is just equivalently to multiplying by 4.

Then, $R0 * 4$ value we got, is added to current value in the PC, thus jumping to one of B (Branch) instructions located below.

At the moment of ADDCC execution, value in the PC is 8 bytes ahead (0x180) than address at which ADDCC instruction is located (0x178), or, in other words, 2 instructions ahead.

This is how ARM processor pipeline works: when ADDCC instruction is executed, the processor at the moment is beginning to process instruction after the next one, so that is why PC pointing there. This fact should be memorized.

If $a = 0$, then nothing will be added to the value in the PC, and actual value in the PC is to be written into the PC (which is 8 bytes ahead) and jump to the label *loc_180* will happen, this is 8 bytes ahead of the point where ADDCC instruction is.

In case of $a = 1$, then $PC + 8 + a * 4 = PC + 8 + 1 * 4 = PC + 12 = 0x184$ will be written to the PC, this is the address of the *loc_184* label.

With every 1 added to a , resulting PC increasing by 4. 4 is also instruction length in ARM mode and also, length of each B instruction length, there are 5 of them in row.

Each of these five B instructions passing control further, where something is going on, what was programmed in *switch()*. Pointer loading to corresponding string occurring there, etc.

13.2.3 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

000000F6          EXPORT f2
000000F6          f2
000000F6 10 B5          PUSH    {R4,LR}
000000F8 03 00          MOVS   R3, R0
000000FA 06 F0 69 F8    BL     __ARM_common_switch8_thumb ; switch 6 cases

000000FE 05          DCB   5
000000FF 04 06 08 0A 0C 10  DCB   4, 6, 8, 0xA, 0xC, 0x10 ; jump table for switch statement
00000105 00          ALIGN 2
00000106
00000106          zero_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000106 8D A0          ADR    R0, aZero ; jumptable 000000FA case 0
00000108 06 E0          B      loc_118

0000010A
0000010A          one_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
0000010A 8E A0          ADR    R0, aOne ; jumptable 000000FA case 1
0000010C 04 E0          B      loc_118

0000010E
0000010E          two_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4

```

⁵ADD—addition

```

0000010E 8F A0          ADR    R0, aTwo ; jumtable 000000FA case 2
00000110 02 E0          B      loc_118

00000112
00000112          three_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000112 90 A0          ADR    R0, aThree ; jumtable 000000FA case 3
00000114 00 E0          B      loc_118

00000116
00000116          four_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000116 91 A0          ADR    R0, aFour ; jumtable 000000FA case 4
00000118
00000118          loc_118 ; CODE XREF: f2+12
00000118          ; f2+16
00000118 06 F0 6A F8     BL     __2printf
0000011C 10 BD          POP    {R4,PC}

0000011E
0000011E          default_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
0000011E 82 A0          ADR    R0, aSomethingUnkno ; jumtable 000000FA default case
00000120 FA E7          B      loc_118

000061D0          EXPORT __ARM_common_switch8_thumb
000061D0          __ARM_common_switch8_thumb ; CODE XREF: example6_f2+4
000061D0 78 47          BX     PC

000061D2 00 00          ALIGN 4
000061D2          ; End of function __ARM_common_switch8_thumb
000061D2
000061D4          __32__ARM_common_switch8_thumb ; CODE XREF: ↗
↘ __ARM_common_switch8_thumb
000061D4 01 C0 5E E5     LDRB   R12, [LR,#-1]
000061D8 0C 00 53 E1     CMP    R3, R12
000061DC 0C 30 DE 27     LDRCSB R3, [LR,R12]
000061E0 03 30 DE 37     LDRCCB R3, [LR,R3]
000061E4 83 C0 8E E0     ADD    R12, LR, R3,LSL#1
000061E8 1C FF 2F E1     BX     R12
000061E8          ; End of function __32__ARM_common_switch8_thumb

```

One cannot be sure all instructions in thumb and thumb-2 modes will have same size. It is even can be said that in these modes instructions has variable length, just like in x86.

So there is a special table added, containing information about how much cases are there, not including default-case, and offset, for each, each encoding a label, to which control must be passed in corresponding case.

A special function here present in order to deal with the table and pass control, named `__ARM_common_switch8_thumb`. It is beginning with ```BX PC``` instruction, which function is to switch processor to ARM-mode. Then you may see the function for table processing. It is too complex for describing it here now, so I will omit all elaborations.

But it is interesting to note the function uses `LR` register as a pointer to the table. Indeed, after this function calling, `LR` will contain address after

```BL __ARM_common_switch8_thumb``` instruction, and the table is beginning right there.

It is also worth noting the code is generated as a separate function in order to reuse it, so compiler will not generate the very same code for each `switch()` statement.

IDA successfully perceived it as a service function and table automatically, and added commentaries to labels like `jumtable 000000FA case 0`.

## 13.2.4 Conclusion

Rough skeleton of `switch()`:

Listing 13.5: x86

```

MOV REG, input
CMP REG, 4 ; maximal number of cases
JA default
SHL REG, 2 ; find element in table. shift for 3 bits in x64.
MOV REG, jump_table[REG]
JMP REG

```

```

case1:
 ; do something
 JMP exit
case2:
 ; do something
 JMP exit
case3:
 ; do something
 JMP exit
case4:
 ; do something
 JMP exit
case5:
 ; do something
 JMP exit

default:
 ...

exit:

jump_table dd case1
 dd case2
 dd case3
 dd case4
 dd case5

```

Jump to the address in jump table may also be implemented using this instruction: `JMP jump_table[REG*4]`. Or `JMP jump_table[REG*8]` in x64.

A jump table is just array of pointers, like it was described here: [18.5](#).

### 13.3 When there are several *case* in one block

Here is also a very often used construction: several *case* statements may be used in single block:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f(int a)
{
 switch (a)
 {
 case 1:
 case 2:
 case 7:
 case 10:
 printf ("1, 2, 7, 10\n");
 break;

 case 3:
 case 4:
 case 5:
 case 6:
 printf ("3, 4, 5\n");
 break;

 case 8:
 case 9:
 case 20:
 case 21:
 printf ("8, 9, 21\n");
 break;

 case 22:
 printf ("22\n");
 break;

 default:
 printf ("default\n");
 break;
 };
}

```

```
};

int main()
{
 f(4);
};
```

It's too wasteful to generate each block for each possible case, so what is usually done, is each block generated plus some kind of dispatcher.

### 13.3.1 MSVC

Listing 13.6: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
1 $SG2798 DB '1, 2, 7, 10', 0aH, 00H
2 $SG2800 DB '3, 4, 5', 0aH, 00H
3 $SG2802 DB '8, 9, 21', 0aH, 00H
4 $SG2804 DB '22', 0aH, 00H
5 $SG2806 DB 'default', 0aH, 00H
6
7 _a$ = 8
8 _f PROC
9 mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
10 dec eax
11 cmp eax, 21
12 ja SHORT $LN1@f
13 movzx eax, BYTE PTR $LN10@f[eax]
14 jmp DWORD PTR $LN11@f[eax*4]
15 $LN5@f:
16 mov DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2798 ; '1, 2, 7, 10'
17 jmp DWORD PTR __imp__printf
18 $LN4@f:
19 mov DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2800 ; '3, 4, 5'
20 jmp DWORD PTR __imp__printf
21 $LN3@f:
22 mov DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2802 ; '8, 9, 21'
23 jmp DWORD PTR __imp__printf
24 $LN2@f:
25 mov DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2804 ; '22'
26 jmp DWORD PTR __imp__printf
27 $LN1@f:
28 mov DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2806 ; 'default'
29 jmp DWORD PTR __imp__printf
30 npad 2 ; align $LN11@f table on 16-byte boundary
31 $LN11@f:
32 DD $LN5@f ; print '1, 2, 7, 10'
33 DD $LN4@f ; print '3, 4, 5'
34 DD $LN3@f ; print '8, 9, 21'
35 DD $LN2@f ; print '22'
36 DD $LN1@f ; print 'default'
37 $LN10@f:
38 DB 0 ; a=1
39 DB 0 ; a=2
40 DB 1 ; a=3
41 DB 1 ; a=4
42 DB 1 ; a=5
43 DB 1 ; a=6
44 DB 0 ; a=7
45 DB 2 ; a=8
46 DB 2 ; a=9
47 DB 0 ; a=10
48 DB 4 ; a=11
49 DB 4 ; a=12
50 DB 4 ; a=13
51 DB 4 ; a=14
52 DB 4 ; a=15
53 DB 4 ; a=16
54 DB 4 ; a=17
55 DB 4 ; a=18
```

```

56 DB 4 ; a=19
57 DB 2 ; a=20
58 DB 2 ; a=21
59 DB 3 ; a=22
60 _f ENDP

```

We see two tables here: the first table (\$LN10@f) is index table, and the second table (\$LN11@f) is an array of pointers to blocks.

First, input value is used as index in index table (line 13).

Here is short legend for values in the table: 0 is first *case* block (for values 1, 2, 7, 10), 1 is second (for values 3, 4, 5), 2 is third (for values 8, 9, 21), 3 is fourth (for value 22), 4 is for default block.

We get there index for the second table of block pointers and we we jump there (line 14).

What is also worth to note that there are no case for input value 0. Hence, we see DEC instruction at line 10, and the table is beginning at  $a = 1$ . Because there are no need to allocate table element for  $a = 0$ .

This is very often used pattern.

So where economy is? Why it's not possible to make it as it was already discussed (13.2.1), just with one table, consisting of block pointers? The reason is because elements in index table has 8-bit byte type, hence it's all more compact.

### 13.3.2 GCC

GCC do the job like it was already discussed (13.2.1), using just one table of pointers.

### 13.3.3 ARM64: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1

First of all, there are no code triggering if input value is 0, so GCC tries to make jumptable more compact and so it's started at the case of 1 as input value.

GCC 4.9.1 for ARM64 uses even more clever trick. It's able to encode all offsets as 8-bit bytes. Let's remind us, all ARM64 instructions has size of 4 bytes. GCC is also use the fact that all offsets in my tiny example are in close proximity to each other. So the jumptable consisting of bytes of corresponding jumps.

Listing 13.7: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

f14:
; input value in W0
 sub w0, w0, #1
 cmp w0, 21
; branch if less or equal (unsigned):
 bls .L9
.L2:
; print "default":
 adrp x0, .LC4
 add x0, x0, :lo12:LC4
 b puts
.L9:
; load jumptable address to X1:
 adrp x1, .L4
 add x1, x1, :lo12:L4
; W0=input_value-1
; load byte from the table:
 ldrb w0, [x1,w0,uxtw]
; load pointer to the Lrtx:
 adr x1, .Lrtx4
; multiply table element by 4 (by shifting 2 bits left) and add/subtract to the address of Lrtx
 ↪ :
 add x0, x1, w0, sxtb #2
; jump to the calculated address:
 br x0
; this label is pointing in code (text) segment:
.Lrtx4:
 .section .rodata
; everything after "section" statement is allocated in the read-only data (rodata) segment:
.L4:
 .byte (.L3 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 1
 .byte (.L3 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 2
 .byte (.L5 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 3
 .byte (.L5 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 4
 .byte (.L5 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 5
 .byte (.L5 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 6
 .byte (.L3 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 7

```



```

.byte (.L6 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 8
.byte (.L6 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 9
.byte (.L3 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 10
.byte (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 11
.byte (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 12
.byte (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 13
.byte (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 14
.byte (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 15
.byte (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 16
.byte (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 17
.byte (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 18
.byte (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 19
.byte (.L6 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 20
.byte (.L6 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 21
.byte (.L7 - .Lrtx4) / 4 ; case 22
.text
; everything after ".text" statement is allocated in the code (text) segment:
.L7:
; print "22"
 adrp x0, .LC3
 add x0, x0, :lo12:LC3
 b puts
.L6:
; print "8, 9, 21"
 adrp x0, .LC2
 add x0, x0, :lo12:LC2
 b puts
.L5:
; print "3, 4, 5"
 adrp x0, .LC1
 add x0, x0, :lo12:LC1
 b puts
.L3:
; print "1, 2, 7, 10"
 adrp x0, .LC0
 add x0, x0, :lo12:LC0
 b puts
.LC0:
 .string "1, 2, 7, 10"
.LC1:
 .string "3, 4, 5"
.LC2:
 .string "8, 9, 21"
.LC3:
 .string "22"
.LC4:
 .string "default"

```

I just compiled my example to object file and opened it in IDA. Here is a jump table:

Listing 13.8: jumtable in IDA

```

.rodata:0000000000000064 AREA .rodata, DATA, READONLY
.rodata:0000000000000064 ; ORG 0x64
.rodata:0000000000000064 $d DCB 9 ; case 1
.rodata:0000000000000065 DCB 9 ; case 2
.rodata:0000000000000066 DCB 6 ; case 3
.rodata:0000000000000067 DCB 6 ; case 4
.rodata:0000000000000068 DCB 6 ; case 5
.rodata:0000000000000069 DCB 6 ; case 6
.rodata:000000000000006A DCB 9 ; case 7
.rodata:000000000000006B DCB 3 ; case 8
.rodata:000000000000006C DCB 3 ; case 9
.rodata:000000000000006D DCB 9 ; case 10
.rodata:000000000000006E DCB 0xF7 ; case 11
.rodata:000000000000006F DCB 0xF7 ; case 12
.rodata:0000000000000070 DCB 0xF7 ; case 13
.rodata:0000000000000071 DCB 0xF7 ; case 14
.rodata:0000000000000072 DCB 0xF7 ; case 15
.rodata:0000000000000073 DCB 0xF7 ; case 16
.rodata:0000000000000074 DCB 0xF7 ; case 17

```

```
.rodata:0000000000000075 DCB 0xF7 ; case 18
.rodata:0000000000000076 DCB 0xF7 ; case 19
.rodata:0000000000000077 DCB 3 ; case 20
.rodata:0000000000000078 DCB 3 ; case 21
.rodata:0000000000000079 DCB 0 ; case 22
.rodata:000000000000007B ; .rodata ends
```

So in case of 1, 9 will be multiplied by 4 and added to the `Lrtx4` label. In case of 22, 0 is to be multiplied by 4 resulting 0. The place right after `Lrtx4` label is `L7` label, where the code printing “22” is. There are no jumtable in the code segment, it is allocated in separate `.rodata` section (there are no special need to place it in code section).

There are also negative bytes (0xF7), they are used for jumping back to the code printing “default” string (at `.L2`).

## 13.4 Fallthrough

Another very popular usage of `switch()` is fallthrough. Here is a small example:

```
1 #define R 1
2 #define W 2
3 #define RW 3
4
5 void f(int type)
6 {
7 int read=0, write=0;
8
9 switch (type)
10 {
11 case RW:
12 read=1;
13 case W:
14 write=1;
15 break;
16 case R:
17 read=1;
18 break;
19 default:
20 break;
21 };
22 printf ("read=%d, write=%d\n", read, write);
23 };
```

If `type = 1 (R)`, `read` to be set to 1, if `type = 2 (W)`, `write` is to be set to 2. In case of `type = 3 (RW)`, both `read` and `write` are to be set to 1.

The piece of code at line 14 is executed in two cases: if `type = RW` or if `type = W`. There are no “break” for “case RW”, that’s OK.

### 13.4.1 MSVC x86

Listing 13.9: MSVC 2012

```
$SG1305 DB 'read=%d, write=%d', 0aH, 00H

_write$ = -12 ; size = 4
_read$ = -8 ; size = 4
tv64 = -4 ; size = 4
_type$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 sub esp, 12
 mov DWORD PTR _read$[ebp], 0
 mov DWORD PTR _write$[ebp], 0
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _type$[ebp]
 mov DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], eax
 cmp DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 1 ; R
 je SHORT $LN2@f
 cmp DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 2 ; W
 je SHORT $LN3@f
 cmp DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 3 ; RW
```

```

 je SHORT $LN4@f
 jmp SHORT $LN5@f
$LN4@f: ; case RW:
 mov DWORD PTR _read$[ebp], 1
$LN3@f: ; case W:
 mov DWORD PTR _write$[ebp], 1
 jmp SHORT $LN5@f
$LN2@f: ; case R:
 mov DWORD PTR _read$[ebp], 1
$LN5@f: ; default
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _write$[ebp]
 push ecx
 mov edx, DWORD PTR _read$[ebp]
 push edx
 push OFFSET $SG1305 ; 'read=%d, write=%d'
 call _printf
 add esp, 12
 mov esp, ebp
 pop ebp
 ret 0
_f ENDP

```

The code is mostly resembles what is in source. There are no jumps between labels \$LN4@f and \$LN3@f: so when code flow are at \$LN4@f, *read* value are first set to 1, then *write*. This is probably why it's called fallthrough: code flow is falling through one piece of code (setting *read*) to another (setting *write*). If *type* = *W*, we are landing at \$LN3@f, so no code setting *read* to 1 is executing.

## 13.4.2 ARM64

Listing 13.10: GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

.LC0:
.string "read=%d, write=%d\n"
f:
 stp x29, x30, [sp, -48]!
 add x29, sp, 0
 str w0, [x29,28]
 str wzr, [x29,44] ; set read and write local variables to zero
 str wzr, [x29,40]
 ldr w0, [x29,28] ; load 'type' argument
 cmp w0, 2 ; type=W?
 beq .L3
 cmp w0, 3 ; type=RW?
 beq .L4
 cmp w0, 1 ; type=R?
 beq .L5
 b .L6 ; otherwise...
.L4: ; case RW
 mov w0, 1
 str w0, [x29,44] ; read=1
.L3: ; case W
 mov w0, 1
 str w0, [x29,40] ; write=1
 b .L6
.L5: ; case R
 mov w0, 1
 str w0, [x29,44] ; read=1
 nop
.L6: ; default
 adrp x0, .LC0 ; "read=%d, write=%d\n"
 add x0, x0, :lo12:LC0
 ldr w1, [x29,44] ; load read
 ldr w2, [x29,40] ; load write
 bl printf
 ldp x29, x30, [sp], 48
 ret

```

Merely the same thing. There are no jumps between labels .L4 and .L3.

## 13.5 Exercises

### 13.5.1 Exercise #1

It's possible to rework C example in [13.2](#) in such way, so the compiler will produce even smaller code, but it will work just the same. Try to achieve it.

Hint: [F.1.3](#).

# Chapter 14

## Loops

### 14.1 Simple example

#### 14.1.1 x86

There is a special LOOP instruction in x86 instruction set, it is checking value in the ECX register and if it is not 0, do ECX [decrement](#) and pass control flow to the label mentioned in the LOOP operand. Probably, this instruction is not very convenient, so, I did not ever see any modern compiler emit it automatically. So, if you see the instruction somewhere in code, it is most likely this is manually written piece of assembly code.

In C/C++ loops are usually constructed using `for()`, `while()`, `do/while()` statements.

Let's start with `for()`.

This statement defines loop initialization (set loop counter to initial value), loop condition (is counter is bigger than a limit?), what is done at each iteration ([increment/decrement](#)) and of course loop body.

```
for (initialization; condition; at each iteration)
{
 loop_body;
}
```

So, generated code will be consisted of four parts as well.

Let's start with simple example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void printing_function(int i)
{
 printf ("f(%d)\n", i);
};

int main()
{
 int i;

 for (i=2; i<10; i++)
 printing_function(i);

 return 0;
};
```

Result (MSVC 2010):

Listing 14.1: MSVC 2010

```
_i$ = -4
_main PROC
 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 push ecx
 mov DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 2 ; loop initialization
 jmp SHORT $LN3@main
$LN2@main:
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp] ; here is what we do after each iteration:
 add eax, 1 ; add 1 to i value
 mov DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
```

```

$LN3@main:
 cmp DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 10 ; this condition is checked *before* each iteration
 jge SHORT $LN1@main ; if i is biggest or equals to 10, let's finish loop
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp] ; loop body: call printing_function(i)
 push ecx
 call _printing_function
 add esp, 4
 jmp SHORT $LN2@main ; jump to loop begin
$LN1@main:
 xor eax, eax ; loop end
 mov esp, ebp
 pop ebp
 ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Nothing very special, as we see.

GCC 4.4.1 emits almost the same code, with one subtle difference:

Listing 14.2: GCC 4.4.1

```

main proc near
var_20 = dword ptr -20h
var_4 = dword ptr -4

 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 and esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
 sub esp, 20h
 mov [esp+20h+var_4], 2 ; i initializing
 jmp short loc_8048476

loc_8048465:
 mov eax, [esp+20h+var_4]
 mov [esp+20h+var_20], eax
 call printing_function
 add [esp+20h+var_4], 1 ; i increment

loc_8048476:
 cmp [esp+20h+var_4], 9
 jle short loc_8048465 ; if i<=9, continue loop
 mov eax, 0
 leave
 retn

main endp

```

Now let's see what we will get if optimization is turned on (/Ox):

Listing 14.3: Optimizing MSVC

```

_main PROC
 push esi
 mov esi, 2
$LL3@main:
 push esi
 call _printing_function
 inc esi
 add esp, 4
 cmp esi, 10 ; 0000000aH
 jl SHORT $LL3@main
 xor eax, eax
 pop esi
 ret 0
_main ENDP

```

What is going on here is: space for the *i* variable is not allocated in local stack anymore, but individual register is allocated for it: the ESI. This is possible in such small functions where not so many local variables are present.

One very important property is the *f()* function must not change the value in the ESI. Our compiler is sure here. And if compiler decided to use the ESI register in *f()* too, its value would be saved then at the *f()* function's prologue and restored at the *f()* function's epilogue. Almost like in our listing: please note PUSH ESI/POP ESI at the function begin and end.

Let's try GCC 4.4.1 with maximal optimization turned on (-O3 option):

Listing 14.4: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```

main proc near
var_10 = dword ptr -10h

 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 and esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
 sub esp, 10h
 mov [esp+10h+var_10], 2
 call printing_function
 mov [esp+10h+var_10], 3
 call printing_function
 mov [esp+10h+var_10], 4
 call printing_function
 mov [esp+10h+var_10], 5
 call printing_function
 mov [esp+10h+var_10], 6
 call printing_function
 mov [esp+10h+var_10], 7
 call printing_function
 mov [esp+10h+var_10], 8
 call printing_function
 mov [esp+10h+var_10], 9
 call printing_function
 xor eax, eax
 leave
 retn
main endp

```

Huh, GCC just unwind our loop.

[Loop unwinding](#) has advantage in these cases when there is not so much iterations and we could cut some execution speed by removing all loop supporting instructions. On the other side, resulting code is obviously larger.

OK, let's increase maximal value of the *i* variable to 100 and try again. GCC will do:

Listing 14.5: GCC

```

main public main
 proc near
var_20 = dword ptr -20h

 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 and esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
 push ebx
 mov ebx, 2 ; i=2
 sub esp, 1Ch
 nop ; aligning label loc_80484D0 (loop body begin) by 16-byte border

loc_80484D0:
 mov [esp+20h+var_20], ebx ; pass i as first argument to printing_function()
 add ebx, 1 ; i++
 call printing_function
 cmp ebx, 64h ; i==100?
 jnz short loc_80484D0 ; if not, continue
 add esp, 1Ch
 xor eax, eax ; return 0
 pop ebx
 mov esp, ebp
 pop ebp
 retn
main endp

```

It is quite similar to what MSVC 2010 with optimization (/Ox) produce. With the exception the EBX register will be fixed to the *i* variable. GCC is sure this register will not be modified inside of the *f()* function, and if it will, it will be saved at the function prologue and restored at epilogue, just like here in the *main()* function.

### 14.1.2 x86: OllyDbg

Let's compile our example in MSVC 2010 with /Ox and /Ob0 options and load it into OllyDbg.

It seems, OllyDbg is able to detect simple loops and show them in square brackets, for convenience:

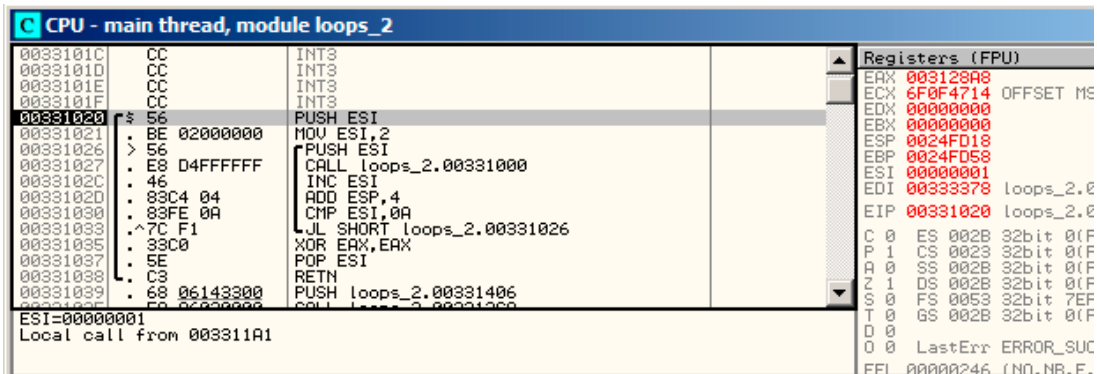


Figure 14.1: OllyDbg: main() begin

By tracing (F8 (step over)) we see how ESI **incrementing**. Here, for instance,  $ESI = i = 6$ :

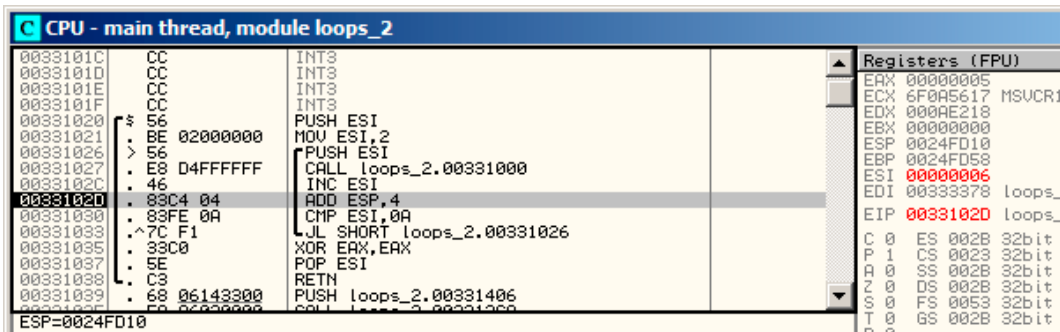


Figure 14.2: OllyDbg: loop body just executed with  $i = 6$

9 is a last loop value. That's why JL will not trigger after **increment**, and function is finishing:

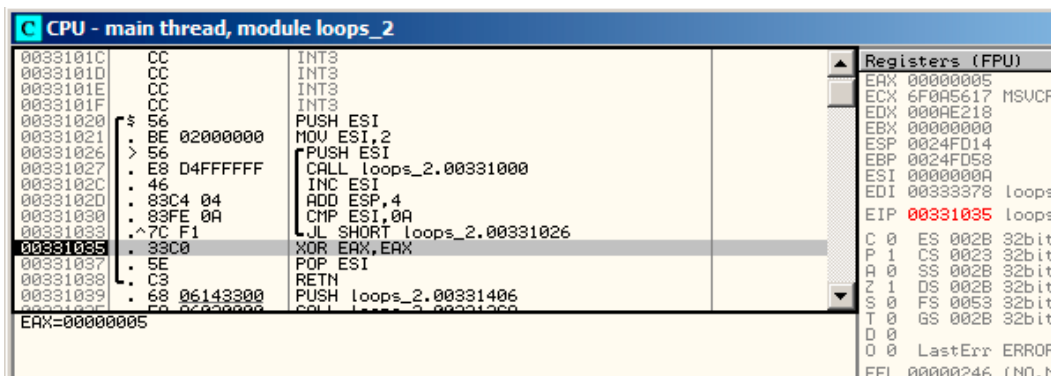


Figure 14.3: OllyDbg:  $ESI = 10$ , loop end

### 14.1.3 x86: tracer

As we might see, it is not very convenient to trace in debugger manually. That's one of the reasons I wrote **tracer** for myself.

I open compiled example in **IDA**, I find the address of the instruction `PUSH ESI` (passing sole argument into `f()`) and this is `0x401026` for me and I run **tracer**:

```
tracer.exe -l:loops_2.exe bpx=loops_2.exe!0x00401026
```

BPX just sets breakpoint at address and then will print registers state.  
In the `tracer.log` I see after running:

```
PID=12884|New process loops_2.exe
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00a328c8 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0f4714 EDX=0x00000000
```



```

ESI=0x00000002 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=PF ZF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000003 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF PF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000004 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF PF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000005 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000006 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF PF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000007 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000008 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000009 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF PF AF SF IF
PID=12884|Process loops_2.exe exited. ExitCode=0 (0x0)

```

We see how value of ESI register is changed from 2 to 9.

Even more than that, [tracer](#) can collect register values on all addresses within function. This is called *trace* there. Each instruction is being traced, all interesting register values are noticed and collected. [IDA.idc-script](#) is generated then. So, in the [IDA](#) I've learned that `main()` function address is `0x00401020` and I run:

```
tracer.exe -l:loops_2.exe bpf=loops_2.exe!0x00401020,trace:cc
```

BPF mean set breakpoint on function.

As a result, I have got `loops_2.exe.idc` and `loops_2.exe_clear.idc` scripts.

I'm loading loops\_2.exe.idc into IDA and I see:

```
.text:00401020
.text:00401020 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:00401020
.text:00401020
.text:00401020 ; int __cdecl main(int argc, const char **argv, const char **envp)
.text:00401020 _main proc near ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+11D↓p
.text:00401020
.text:00401020 argc = dword ptr 4
.text:00401020 argv = dword ptr 8
.text:00401020 envp = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:00401020
.text:00401020 push esi ; ESI=1
.text:00401021 mov esi, 2
.text:00401026
.text:00401026 loc_401026: ; CODE XREF: _main+13↓j
.text:00401026 push esi ; ESI=2..9
.text:00401027 call sub_401000 ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached,
.text:00401028 inc esi ; ESI=2..9
.text:00401029 add esp, 4 ; ESP=0x38fcbc
.text:0040102A cmp esi, 0Ah ; ESI=3..0xa
.text:0040102B jle short loc_401026 ; SF=false,true OF=false
.text:0040102C xor eax, eax
.text:0040102D pop esi
.text:0040102E retn ; EAX=0
.text:0040102F _main endp
```

Figure 14.4: IDA with .idc-script loaded

We see that ESI can be from 2 to 9 at the begin of loop body, but from 3 to 0xA (10) after increment. We can also see that main() is finishing with 0 in EAX.

tracer also generates loops\_2.exe.txt, containing information about how many times each instruction was executed and register values:

Listing 14.6: loops\_2.exe.txt

```
0x401020 (.text+0x20), e= 1 [PUSH ESI] ESI=1
0x401021 (.text+0x21), e= 1 [MOV ESI, 2]
0x401026 (.text+0x26), e= 8 [PUSH ESI] ESI=2..9
0x401027 (.text+0x27), e= 8 [CALL 8D1000h] tracing nested maximum level (1) reached, ↵
 ↵ skipping this CALL 8D1000h=0x8d1000
0x40102c (.text+0x2c), e= 8 [INC ESI] ESI=2..9
0x40102d (.text+0x2d), e= 8 [ADD ESP, 4] ESP=0x38fcbc
0x401030 (.text+0x30), e= 8 [CMP ESI, 0Ah] ESI=3..0xa
0x401033 (.text+0x33), e= 8 [JL 8D1026h] SF=false,true OF=false
0x401035 (.text+0x35), e= 1 [XOR EAX, EAX]
0x401037 (.text+0x37), e= 1 [POP ESI]
0x401038 (.text+0x38), e= 1 [RETN] EAX=0
```

grep can be used here.

## 14.1.4 ARM

### Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
main
 STMFD SP!, {R4,LR}
 MOV R4, #2
 B loc_368
loc_35C ; CODE XREF: main+1C
 MOV R0, R4
 BL printing_function
 ADD R4, R4, #1
loc_368 ; CODE XREF: main+8
 CMP R4, #0xA
 BLT loc_35C
 MOV R0, #0
```

```
LDMFD SP!, {R4,PC}
```

Iteration counter  $i$  is to be stored in the R4 register.

``MOV R4, #2`` instruction just initializing  $i$ .

``MOV R0, R4`` and ``BL printing\_function`` instructions are compose loop body, the first instruction preparing argument for  $f()$  function and the second is calling it.

``ADD R4, R4, #1`` instruction is just adding 1 to the  $i$  variable during each iteration.

``CMP R4, #0xA`` comparing  $i$  with 0xA (10). Next instruction BLT (*Branch Less Than*) will jump if  $i$  is less than 10. Otherwise, 0 will be written into R0 (since our function returns 0) and function execution ended.

### Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```
_main
 PUSH {R4,LR}
 MOVS R4, #2

loc_132
 ; CODE XREF: _main+E
 MOVS R0, R4
 BL printing_function
 ADDS R4, R4, #1
 CMP R4, #0xA
 BLT loc_132
 MOVS R0, #0
 POP {R4,PC}
```

Practically, the same.

### Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

```
_main
 PUSH {R4,R7,LR}
 MOVW R4, #0x1124 ; "%d\n"
 MOVS R1, #2
 MOVT.W R4, #0
 ADD R7, SP, #4
 ADD R4, PC
 MOV R0, R4
 BLX _printf
 MOV R0, R4
 MOVS R1, #3
 BLX _printf
 MOV R0, R4
 MOVS R1, #4
 BLX _printf
 MOV R0, R4
 MOVS R1, #5
 BLX _printf
 MOV R0, R4
 MOVS R1, #6
 BLX _printf
 MOV R0, R4
 MOVS R1, #7
 BLX _printf
 MOV R0, R4
 MOVS R1, #8
 BLX _printf
 MOV R0, R4
 MOVS R1, #9
 BLX _printf
 MOVS R0, #0
 POP {R4,R7,PC}
```

In fact, this was in my  $f()$  function:

```
void printing_function(int i)
{
 // do something here
 printf ("%d\n", i);
};
```

So, LLVM not just *unrolled* the loop, but also represented my very simple function `f()` as *inlined*, and inserted its body 8 times instead of loop. This is possible when function is so primitive (like mine) and when it is called not many times (like here).

### ARM64: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1

Listing 14.7: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1

```
printing_function:
; prepare second argument of printf():
 mov w1, w0
; load address of the "f(%d)\n" string:
 adrp x0, .LC0
 add x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
; branch instead of branch with link and return:
 b printf
main:
; save FP and LR in the local stack:
 stp x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
; set up stack frame:
 add x29, sp, 0
; save contents of X19 register in the local stack:
 str x19, [sp,16]
; we will use W19 register as counter.
; set initial value of 2 to it:
 mov w19, 2
.L3:
; prepare first argument of printing_function():
 mov w0, w19
; increment counter register.
 add w19, w19, 1
; W0 here still holds value of counter value before increment.
; skip in otherwise
 bl printing_function
; is it end?
 cmp w19, 10
; no, jump to the loop body begin:
 bne .L3
; return 0
 mov w0, 0
; restore contents of X19 register:
 ldr x19, [sp,16]
; restore FP and LR values:
 ldp x29, x30, [sp], 32
 ret
.LC0:
 .string "f(%d)\n"
```

### ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1

Listing 14.8: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 -fno-inline

```
printing_function:
; prepare second argument of printf():
 mov w1, w0
; load address of the "f(%d)\n" string:
 adrp x0, .LC0
 add x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
; branch instead of branch with link and return:
 b printf
main:
; save FP and LR in the local stack:
 stp x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
; set up stack frame:
 add x29, sp, 0
; save contents of X19 register in the local stack:
 str x19, [sp,16]
; we will use W19 register as counter.
```

```

; set initial value of 2 to it:
 mov w19, 2
.L3:
; prepare first argument of printing_function():
 mov w0, w19
; increment counter register.
 add w19, w19, 1
; W0 here still holds value of counter value before increment.
; skip in otherwise
 bl printing_function
; is it end?
 cmp w19, 10
; no, jump to the loop body begin:
 bne .L3
; return 0
 mov w0, 0
; restore contents of X19 register:
 ldr x19, [sp,16]
; restore FP and LR values:
 ldp x29, x30, [sp], 32
 ret
.LC0:
 .string "f(%d)\n"

```

### 14.1.5 One more thing

On the code generated we can see: after *i* initialization, loop body will not be executed, but *i* condition checked first, and only after loop body is to be executed. And that is correct. Because, if loop condition is not met at the beginning, loop body must not be executed. For example, this is possible in the following case:

```

for (i=0; i<total_entries_to_process; i++)
 loop_body;

```

If *total\_entries\_to\_process* equals to 0, loop body must not be executed whatsoever. So that is why condition checked before loop body execution.

However, optimizing compiler may swap condition check and loop body, if it sure that the situation described here is not possible (like in case of our very simple example and Keil, Xcode (LLVM), MSVC in optimization mode).

## 14.2 Memory copying routine

Real-world memory copy routines may copy blocks by 4 or 8 bytes at each iteration, use [SIMD](#)<sup>1</sup>, vectorization, etc. But for the sake of simplicity, this example is simplest possible.

```

#include <stdio.h>

void my_memcpy (unsigned char* dst, unsigned char* src, size_t cnt)
{
 size_t i;
 for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
 dst[i]=src[i];
};

```

### 14.2.1 Straight-forward implementation

Listing 14.9: GCC 4.9 x64 optimized for size (-Os)

```

my_memcpy:
; RDI = destination address
; RSI = source address
; RDX = size of block

; initialize counter (i) at 0
 xor eax, eax
.L2:

```

<sup>1</sup>Single instruction, multiple data

```

; all bytes copied? exit then:
 cmp rax, rdx
 je .L5
; load byte at RSI+i:
 mov cl, BYTE PTR [rsi+rax]
; store byte at RDI+i:
 mov BYTE PTR [rdi+rax], cl
 inc rax ; i++
 jmp .L2
.L5:
 ret

```

Listing 14.10: GCC 4.9 ARM64 optimized for size (-Os)

```

my_memcpy:
; X0 = destination address
; X1 = source address
; X2 = size of block

; initialize counter (i) at 0
 mov x3, 0
.L2:
; all bytes copied? exit then:
 cmp x3, x2
 beq .L5
; load byte at X1+i:
 ldrb w4, [x1,x3]
; store byte at X1+i:
 strb w4, [x0,x3]
 add x3, x3, 1 ; i++
 b .L2
.L5:
 ret

```

Listing 14.11: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

my_memcpy PROC
; R0 = destination address
; R1 = source address
; R2 = size of block

 PUSH {r4,lr}
; initialize counter (i) at 0
 MOVS r3,#0
; condition checked at the end of function, so jump there:
 B |L0.12|
|L0.6|
; load byte at R1+i:
 LDRB r4,[r1,r3]
; store byte at R1+i:
 STRB r4,[r0,r3]
; i++
 ADDS r3,r3,#1
|L0.12|
; i<size?
 CMP r3,r2
; jump to the loop begin if it's so:
 BCC |L0.6|
 POP {r4,pc}
 ENDP

```

### 14.2.2 ARM in ARM mode

Keil in ARM mode take full advantage of conditional suffixes:

Listing 14.12: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

my_memcpy PROC
; R0 = destination address

```

```

; R1 = source address
; R2 = size of block

; initialize counter (i) at 0
 MOV r3,#0
|L0.4|
; all bytes copied?
 CMP r3,r2
; the following block is executed only if "Less than" condition,
; i.e., if R2<R3 or i<size.
; load byte at R1+i:
 LDRBCC r12,[r1,r3]
; store byte at R1+i:
 STRBCC r12,[r0,r3]
; i++
 ADDCC r3,r3,#1
; the last instruction of the conditional block.
; jump to loop begin if i<size
; do nothing otherwise (i.e., if i>=size)
 BCC |L0.4|
; return
 BX lr
 ENDP

```

That's why there are only one branch instruction instead of 2.

### 14.2.3 Vectorization

Optimizing GCC can do much more on this example: [25.1.2](#).

## 14.3 Several iterators

Common loop has only one iterator, but there could be several in resulting code.

Here is very simple example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f(int *a1, int *a2, size_t cnt)
{
 size_t i;

 // copy from one array to another in some weird scheme
 for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
 a1[i*3]=a2[i*7];
};

```

There are two multiplications at each iteration and this is costly operation. Can we optimize it somehow? Yes, if we will notice that both array indices are leaping on places we can calculate easily without multiplication.

### 14.3.1 Three iterators

Listing 14.13: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```

f PROC
; RDX=a1
; RCX=a2
; R8=cnt
 test r8, r8 ; cnt==0? exit then
 je SHORT $LN1@f
 npad 11
$LL3@f:
 mov eax, DWORD PTR [rdx]
 lea rcx, QWORD PTR [rcx+12]
 lea rdx, QWORD PTR [rdx+28]
 mov DWORD PTR [rcx-12], eax
 dec r8
 jne SHORT $LL3@f
$LN1@f:

```

```

ret 0
f ENDP

```

Now there are 3 iterators: *cnt* variable and two indices, they are increased by 12 and 28 at each iteration, pointing to new array elements. We can rewrite this code in C/C++:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f(int *a1, int *a2, size_t cnt)
{
 size_t i;
 size_t idx1=0; idx2=0;

 // copy from one array to another in some weird scheme
 for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
 {
 a1[idx1]=a2[idx2];
 idx1+=3;
 idx2+=7;
 };
};

```

So, at the cost of updating 3 iterators on each iteration instead of one, two multiplication operations are dropped.

### 14.3.2 Two iterators

GCC 4.9 did even more, leaving only 2 iterators:

Listing 14.14: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```

; RDI=a1
; RSI=a2
; RDX=cnt
f:
 test rdx, rdx ; cnt==0? exit then
 je .L1
; calculate last element address in a2 and leave it in RDX
 lea rax, [0+rdx*4]
; RAX=RDX*4=cnt*4
 sal rdx, 5
; RDX=RDX<<5=cnt*32
 sub rdx, rax
; RDX=RDX-RAX=cnt*32-cnt*4=cnt*28
 add rdx, rsi
; RDX=RDX+RSI=a2+cnt*28
.L3:
 mov eax, DWORD PTR [rsi]
 add rsi, 28
 add rdi, 12
 mov DWORD PTR [rdi-12], eax
 cmp rsi, rdx
 jne .L3
.L1:
 rep ret

```

There are no *counter* variable: GCC concluded it not needed. Last element of *a2* array is calculated before loop begin (which is easy:  $cnt * 7$ ) and that's how loop will be stopped: just iterate until second index not reached this precalculated value.

About multiplication using shifts/additions/subtractions read here: [16.1.3](#).

This code can be rewritten into C/C++ like that:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f(int *a1, int *a2, size_t cnt)
{
 size_t i;
 size_t idx1=0; idx2=0;
 size_t last_idx2=cnt*7;

 // copy from one array to another in some weird scheme
 for (;)

```



```

 {
 a1[idx1]=a2[idx2];
 idx1+=3;
 idx2+=7;
 if (idx2==last_idx2)
 break;
 };
};

```

GCC (Linaro) 4.9 for ARM64 do the same, but precalculates last index of *a1* array instead of *a2*, and this has the same effect, of course:

Listing 14.15: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 ARM64

```

; X0=a1
; X1=a2
; X2=cnt
f:
 cbz x2, .L1 ; cnt==0? exit then
; calculate last element of a1 array
 add x2, x2, x2, lsl 1
; X2=X2+X2<<1=X2+X2*2=X2*3
 mov x3, 0
 lsl x2, x2, 2
; X2=X2<<2=X2*4=X2*3*4=X2*12
.L3:
 ldr w4, [x1],28 ; load at X1, add 28 to X1 (post-increment)
 str w4, [x0,x3] ; store at X0+X3=a1+X3
 add x3, x3, 12 ; shift X3
 cmp x3, x2 ; end?
 bne .L3
.L1:
 ret

```

### 14.3.3 Intel C++ 2011 case

Compiler optimizations can also be weird, but nevertheless, still correct. Here is what Intel C++ compiler 2011 do:

Listing 14.16: Optimizing Intel C++ 2011 x64

```

f PROC
; parameter 1: rcx = a1
; parameter 2: rdx = a2
; parameter 3: r8 = cnt
.B1.1::
 test r8, r8 ; Preds .B1.0
 jbe exit ; Prob 50%
; LOE rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r12 r13 r14 r15 xmm6 xmm7 xmm8
; xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15
.B1.2::
 cmp r8, 6 ;8.2
 jbe just_copy ; Prob 50%
; LOE rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r12 r13 r14 r15 xmm6 xmm7 xmm8
; xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15
.B1.3::
 cmp rcx, rdx ;9.11
 jbe .B1.5 ; Prob 50%
; LOE rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r12 r13 r14 r15 xmm6 xmm7 xmm8
; xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15
.B1.4::
 mov r10, r8 ;9.11
 mov r9, rcx ;9.11
 shl r10, 5 ;9.11
 lea rax, QWORD PTR [r8*4] ;9.11
 sub r9, rdx ;9.11
 sub r10, rax ;9.11
 cmp r9, r10 ;9.11
 jge just_copy2 ; Prob 50%
; LOE rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r12 r13 r14 r15 xmm6 xmm7 xmm8
; xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15

```

```

.B1.5::
 cmp rdx, rcx ;9.11
 jbe just_copy ;9.11
 ; LOE rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r12 r13 r14 r15 xmm6 xmm7 xmm8 ↵
 ↵ xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15
.B1.6::
 mov r9, rdx ;9.11
 lea rax, QWORD PTR [r8*8] ;9.11
 sub r9, rcx ;9.11
 lea r10, QWORD PTR [rax+r8*4] ;9.11
 cmp r9, r10 ;9.11
 jl just_copy ;9.11
 ; LOE rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r12 r13 r14 r15 xmm6 xmm7 xmm8 ↵
 ↵ xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15
just_copy2::
 ; R8 = cnt
 ; RDX = a2
 ; RCX = a1
 xor r10d, r10d ;8.2
 xor r9d, r9d ;
 xor eax, eax ;
 ; LOE rax rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r9 r10 r12 r13 r14 r15 ↵
 ↵ xmm6 xmm7 xmm8 xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15
.B1.8::
 mov r11d, DWORD PTR [rax+rdx] ;3.6
 inc r10 ;8.2
 mov DWORD PTR [r9+rcx], r11d ;3.6
 add r9, 12 ;8.2
 add rax, 28 ;8.2
 cmp r10, r8 ;8.2
 jb .B1.8 ;8.2
 jmp exit ;8.2
 ; LOE rax rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r9 r10 r12 r13 r14 r15 ↵
 ↵ xmm6 xmm7 xmm8 xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15
just_copy::
 ; R8 = cnt
 ; RDX = a2
 ; RCX = a1
 xor r10d, r10d ;8.2
 xor r9d, r9d ;
 xor eax, eax ;
 ; LOE rax rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r9 r10 r12 r13 r14 r15 ↵
 ↵ xmm6 xmm7 xmm8 xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15
.B1.11::
 mov r11d, DWORD PTR [rax+rdx] ;3.6
 inc r10 ;8.2
 mov DWORD PTR [r9+rcx], r11d ;3.6
 add r9, 12 ;8.2
 add rax, 28 ;8.2
 cmp r10, r8 ;8.2
 jb .B1.11 ;8.2
 ; LOE rax rdx rcx rbx rbp rsi rdi r8 r9 r10 r12 r13 r14 r15 ↵
 ↵ xmm6 xmm7 xmm8 xmm9 xmm10 xmm11 xmm12 xmm13 xmm14 xmm15
exit::
 ; Preds .B1.11 .B1.8 .B1.1
 ret ;10.1

```

First, there are some decisions taken, than one of the routines is executed. Supposedly, it is checked, if arrays are intersected. This is very well known way of optimizing memory blocks copy routines. But copy routines are the same! This is probably error of Intel C++ optimizer, which still produce workable code, though.

I'm adding such example code to my book so reader would understand that compilers output is weird at times, but still correct, because when compiler was tested, tests were passed.

## 14.4 Conclusion

Rough skeleton of loop from 2 to 9 inclusive:

Listing 14.17: x86

```
mov [counter], 2 ; initialization
```

```

 jmp check
body:
 ; loop body
 ; do something here
 ; use counter variable in local stack
 add [counter], 1 ; increment
check:
 cmp [counter], 9
 jle body

```

Increment operation may be represented as 3 instructions in non-optimized code:

Listing 14.18: x86

```

 MOV [counter], 2 ; initialization
 JMP check
body:
 ; loop body
 ; do something here
 ; use counter variable in local stack
 MOV REG, [counter] ; increment
 INC REG
 MOV [counter], REG
check:
 CMP [counter], 9
 JLE body

```

If loop body is short, a whole register can be dedicated to the counter variable:

Listing 14.19: x86

```

 MOV EBX, 2 ; initialization
 JMP check
body:
 ; loop body
 ; do something here
 ; use counter in EBX, but do not modify it!
 INC EBX ; increment
check:
 CMP EBX, 9
 JLE body

```

Some parts of loop may be generated by compiler in different order:

Listing 14.20: x86

```

 MOV [counter], 2 ; initialization
 JMP label_check
label_increment:
 ADD [counter], 1 ; increment
label_check:
 CMP [counter], 10
 JGE exit
 ; loop body
 ; do something here
 ; use counter variable in local stack
 JMP label_increment
exit:

```

Usually condition is checked *before* loop body, but compiler may rearrange loop in that way so condition will be checked *after* loop body. This is when compiler is sure that condition is always *true* on first iteration, so loop body will be executed at least once:

Listing 14.21: x86

```

 MOV REG, 2 ; initialization
body:
 ; loop body
 ; do something here
 ; use counter in REG, but do not modify it!
 INC REG ; increment
 CMP REG, 10
 JL body

```

Using LOOP instruction. This is rare, compilers are not using it. So when you see it, it's a right sign this piece of code is hand-written:

Listing 14.22: x86

```

; count from 10 to 1
MOV ECX, 10
body:
; loop body
; use ECX, but do not modify it!
LOOP body

```

ARM. A R4 register is dedicated to counter variable in this example:

Listing 14.23: ARM

```

MOV R4, 2 ; initialization
B check
body:
; loop body
; do something here
; use counter in R4, but do not modify it!
ADD R4,R4, #1 ; increment
check:
CMP R4, #10
BLT body

```

## 14.5 Exercises

### 14.5.1 Exercise #1

Why LOOP instruction is not used by modern compilers anymore?

### 14.5.2 Exercise #2

Take a loop example from this section (14.1.1), compile it in your favorite OS and compiler and modify (patch) executable file, so the loop range will be [6..20].

### 14.5.3 Exercise #3

What this code does?

Listing 14.24: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

$SG2795 DB '%d', 0aH, 00H

_main PROC
 push esi
 push edi
 mov edi, DWORD PTR __imp__printf
 mov esi, 100
 npad 3 ; align next label
$LL3@main:
 push esi
 push OFFSET $SG2795 ; '%d'
 call edi
 dec esi
 add esp, 8
 test esi, esi
 jg SHORT $LL3@main
 pop edi
 xor eax, eax
 pop esi
 ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Listing 14.25: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

main PROC
 PUSH {r4,lr}
 MOV r4,#0x64
|L0.8|
 MOV r1,r4
 ADR r0,|L0.40|
 BL __2printf
 SUB r4,r4,#1
 CMP r4,#0
 MOVLE r0,#0
 BGT |L0.8|
 POP {r4,pc}
 ENDP

|L0.40|
 DCB "%d\n",0

```

Listing 14.26: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

main PROC
 PUSH {r4,lr}
 MOVS r4,#0x64
|L0.4|
 MOVS r1,r4
 ADR r0,|L0.24|
 BL __2printf
 SUBS r4,r4,#1
 CMP r4,#0
 BGT |L0.4|
 MOVS r0,#0
 POP {r4,pc}
 ENDP

 DCW 0x0000
|L0.24|
 DCB "%d\n",0

```

Listing 14.27: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

main:
 stp x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
 add x29, sp, 0
 stp x19, x20, [sp,16]
 adrp x20, .LC0
 mov w19, 100
 add x20, x20, :lo12:LC0
.L2:
 mov w1, w19
 mov x0, x20
 bl printf
 subs w19, w19, #1
 bne .L2
 ldp x19, x20, [sp,16]
 ldp x29, x30, [sp], 32
 ret
.LC0:
 .string "%d\n"

```

Answer: [F.1.5](#).

#### 14.5.4 Exercise #4

What this code does?

Listing 14.28: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

$SG2795 DB '%d', 0aH, 00H

_main PROC

```

```

 push esi
 push edi
 mov edi, DWORD PTR __imp__printf
 mov esi, 1
 npad 3 ; align next label
$LL3@main:
 push esi
 push OFFSET $SG2795 ; '%d'
 call edi
 add esi, 3
 add esp, 8
 cmp esi, 100
 jl SHORT $LL3@main
 pop edi
 xor eax, eax
 pop esi
 ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Listing 14.29: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

main PROC
 PUSH {r4,lr}
 MOV r4,#1
|L0.8|
 MOV r1,r4
 ADR r0,|L0.40|
 BL __2printf
 ADD r4,r4,#3
 CMP r4,#0x64
 MOVGE r0,#0
 BLT |L0.8|
 POP {r4,pc}
 ENDP

|L0.40|
 DCB "%d\n",0

```

Listing 14.30: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

main PROC
 PUSH {r4,lr}
 MOVS r4,#1
|L0.4|
 MOVS r1,r4
 ADR r0,|L0.24|
 BL __2printf
 ADDS r4,r4,#3
 CMP r4,#0x64
 BLT |L0.4|
 MOVS r0,#0
 POP {r4,pc}
 ENDP

 DCW 0x0000
|L0.24|
 DCB "%d\n",0

```

Listing 14.31: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

main:
 stp x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
 add x29, sp, 0
 stp x19, x20, [sp,16]
 adrp x20, .LC0
 mov w19, 1
 add x20, x20, :lo12:.LC0
.L2:
 mov w1, w19
 mov x0, x20

```

```
add w19, w19, 3
bl printf
cmp w19, 100
bne .L2
ldp x19, x20, [sp,16]
ldp x29, x30, [sp], 32
ret
.LC0:
.string "%d\n"
```

Answer: [F.1.6](#).

## Chapter 15

# Simple C-strings processings

### 15.1 strlen()

Now let's talk about loops one more time. Often, `strlen()` function<sup>1</sup> is implemented using `while()` statement. Here is how it is done in MSVC standard libraries:

```
int my_strlen (const char * str)
{
 const char *eos = str;

 while(*eos++) ;

 return(eos - str - 1);
}

int main()
{
 // test
 return my_strlen("hello!");
};
```

#### 15.1.1 x86

##### Non-optimizing MSVC

Let's compile:

```
_eos$ = -4 ; size = 4
_str$ = 8 ; size = 4
_strlen PROC
 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 push ecx
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _str$[ebp] ; place pointer to string from str
 mov DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp], eax ; place it to local variable eos
$LN2@strlen_:
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp] ; ECX=eos

 ; take 8-bit byte from address in ECX and place it as 32-bit value to EDX with sign ↗
 ↙ extension

 movsx edx, BYTE PTR [ecx]
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp] ; EAX=eos
 add eax, 1 ; increment EAX
 mov DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp], eax ; place EAX back to eos
 test edx, edx ; EDX is zero?
 je SHORT $LN1@strlen_ ; yes, then finish loop
 jmp SHORT $LN2@strlen_ ; continue loop
$LN1@strlen_:

 ; here we calculate the difference between two pointers
```

<sup>1</sup>counting characters in string in C language



```

mov eax, DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp]
sub eax, DWORD PTR _str$[ebp]
sub eax, 1 ; subtract 1 and return result
mov esp, ebp
pop ebp
ret 0
strlen ENDP

```

Two new instructions here: MOVSB and TEST.

About first: MOVSB is intended to take byte from a point in memory and store value in a 32-bit register. MOVSB meaning *MOV with Sign-Extent*. Rest bits starting at 8th till 31th MOVSB will set to 1 if source byte in memory has *minus* sign or to 0 if *plus*.

And here is why all this.

By default, *char* type as signed in MSVC and GCC. If we have two values, one is *char* and another is *int*, (*int* is signed too), and if first value contain  $-2$  (it is coded as  $0xFE$ ) and we just copying this byte into *int* container, there will be  $0x000000FE$ , and this, from the point of signed *int* view is  $254$ , but not  $-2$ . In signed *int*,  $-2$  is coded as  $0xFFFFF0FE$ . So if we need to transfer  $0xFE$  value from variable of *char* type to *int*, we need to identify its sign and extend it. That is what MOVSB does.

Also read about it in “Signed number representations” section (41).

I’m not sure if the compiler needs to store *char* variable in the EDI, it could take 8-bit register part (let’s say DI). Apparently, compiler’s [register allocator](#) works like that.

Then we see TEST EDI, EDI. About TEST instruction, read more in section about bit fields (19). But here, this instruction just checking value in the EDI, if it is equals to 0.

## Non-optimizing GCC

Let’s try GCC 4.4.1:

```

strlen public strlen
strlen proc near
eos = dword ptr -4
arg_0 = dword ptr 8

 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 sub esp, 10h
 mov eax, [ebp+arg_0]
 mov [ebp+eos], eax

loc_80483F0:
 mov eax, [ebp+eos]
 movzx eax, byte ptr [eax]
 test al, al
 setnz al
 add [ebp+eos], 1
 test al, al
 jnz short loc_80483F0
 mov edx, [ebp+eos]
 mov eax, [ebp+arg_0]
 mov ecx, edx
 sub ecx, eax
 mov eax, ecx
 sub eax, 1
 leave
 retn

strlen endp

```

The result almost the same as MSVC did, but here we see MOVZX instead of MOVSB. MOVZX means *MOV with Zero-Extent*. This instruction copies 8-bit or 16-bit value into 32-bit register and sets the rest bits to 0. In fact, this instruction is convenient only since it enable us to replace two instructions at once: `xor eax, eax / mov al, [...]`.

On the other hand, it is obvious to us the compiler could produce the code: `mov al, byte ptr [eax] / test al, al` –it is almost the same, however, the highest EAX register bits will contain random noise. But let’s think it is compiler’s drawback –it cannot produce more understandable code. Strictly speaking, compiler is not obliged to emit understandable (to humans) code at all.

Next new instruction for us is SETNZ. Here, if AL contain not zero, `test al, al` will set 0 to the ZF flag, but SETNZ, if  $ZF==0$  (NZ means *not zero*) will set 1 to the AL. Speaking in natural language, *if AL is not zero, let’s jump to loc\_80483F0*. Compiler emitted slightly redundant code, but let’s not forget the optimization is turned off.

**Optimizing MSVC**

Now let's compile all this in MSVC 2012, with optimization turned on (/Ox):

Listing 15.1: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

```

_str$ = 8 ; size = 4
_strlen PROC
 mov edx, DWORD PTR _str$[esp-4] ; EDX -> pointer to the string
 mov eax, edx ; move to EAX
$LL2@strlen:
 mov cl, BYTE PTR [eax] ; CL = *EAX
 inc eax ; EAX++
 test cl, cl ; CL==0?
 jne SHORT $LL2@strlen ; no, continue loop
 sub eax, edx ; calculate pointers difference
 dec eax ; decrement EAX
 ret 0
_strlen ENDP

```

Now it is all simpler. But it is needless to say the compiler could use registers such efficiently only in small functions with small number of local variables.

INC/DEC— are [increment](#)/[decrement](#) instruction, in other words: add 1 to variable or subtract.

### Optimizing MSVC + OllyDbg

We may try this (optimized) example in OllyDbg. Here is a very first iteration:

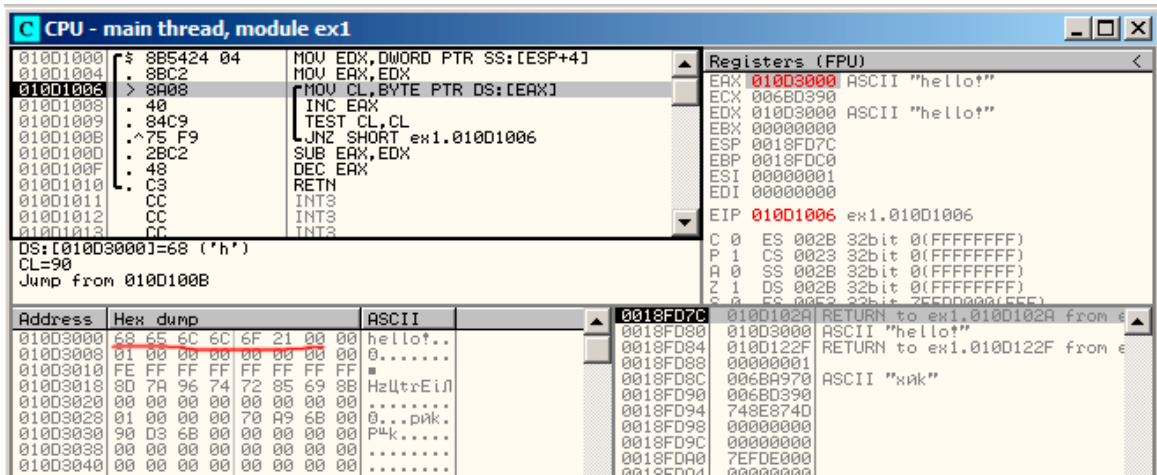


Figure 15.1: OllyDbg: first iteration begin

We see that OllyDbg found a loop and, for convenience, *wrapped* its instructions in bracket. By clicking right button on EAX, we can choose “Follow in Dump” and the memory window position will scroll to the right place. We can see here a string “hello!” in memory. There are at least one zero byte after it and then random garbage. If OllyDbg sees a register with a valid address in it, pointing to some string, it will show a string.

Let's press F8 (step over) enough number of times, so the current address will be at the loop body begin again:

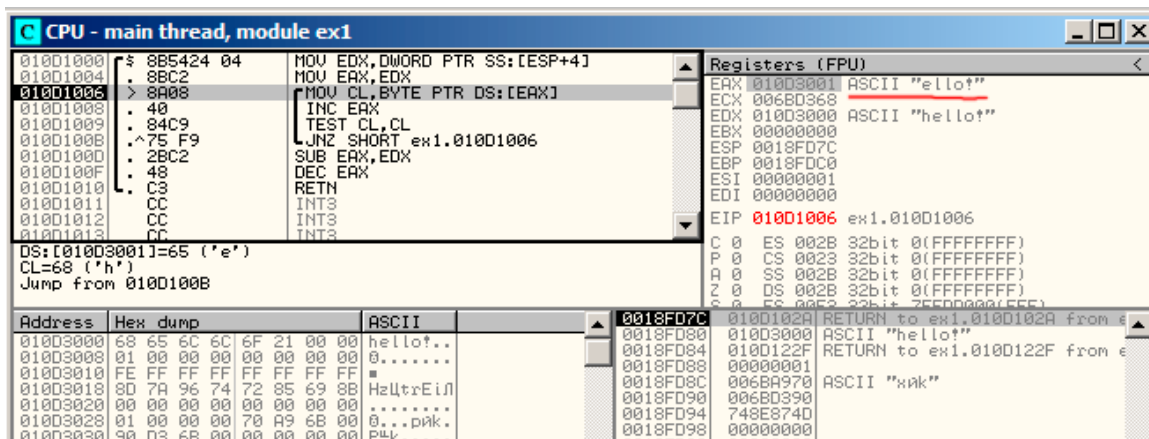


Figure 15.2: OllyDbg: second iteration begin

We see that EAX contain address of the second character in the string.

We will press F8 enough number of times in order to escape from the loop:

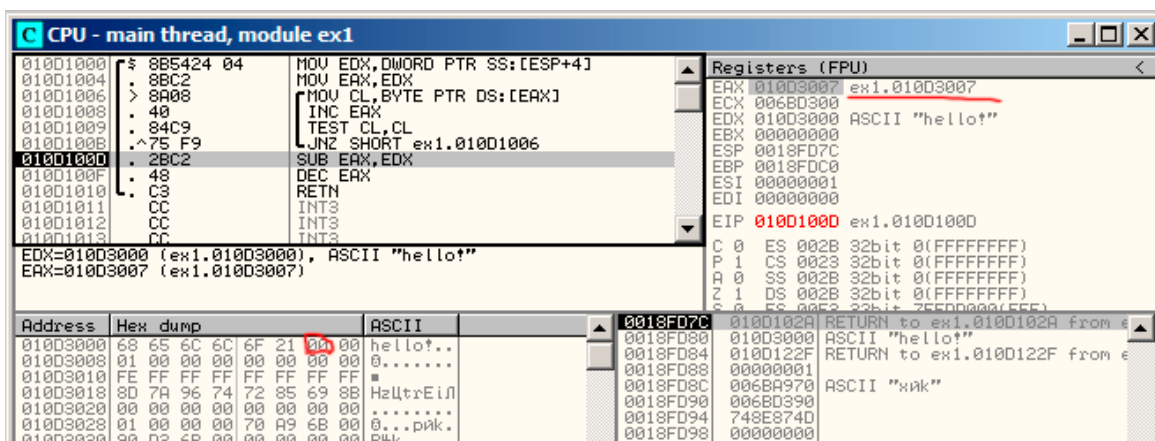


Figure 15.3: OllyDbg: pointers difference to be calculated now

We will see that EAX now contain address of zeroth byte, placed right after the string. Meanwhile, EDX wasn't changed, so it still pointing to the string begin. Difference between these two addresses will be calculated now.

SUB instruction was just executed:

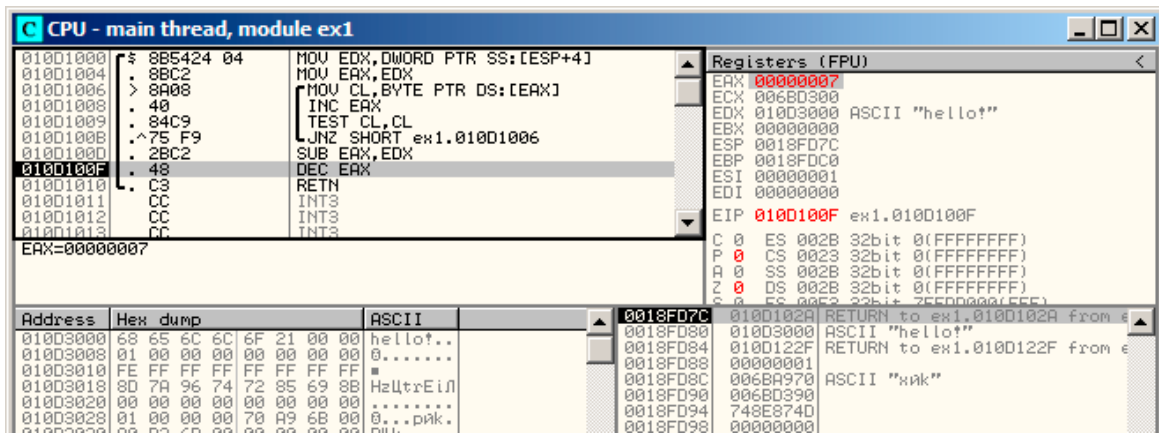


Figure 15.4: OllyDbg: EAX to be decremented now

Difference of pointers in the EAX register now–7. Indeed, the “hello!” string length is 6, but with zeroth byte included–7. But the `strlen()` must return number of non-zero characters in the string. So the decrement will be processed now and then return from the function.

### Optimizing GCC

Let’s check GCC 4.4.1 with optimization turned on (-O3 key):

```

strlen public strlen
 proc near
arg_0 = dword ptr 8

 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 mov ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
 mov eax, ecx

loc_8048418:
 movzx edx, byte ptr [eax]
 add eax, 1
 test dl, dl
 jnz short loc_8048418
 not ecx
 add eax, ecx
 pop ebp
 retn

strlen endp

```

Here GCC is almost the same as MSVC, except of MOVZX presence.

However, MOVZX could be replaced here to `mov dl, byte ptr [eax]`.

Probably, it is simpler for GCC compiler’s code generator to *remember* the whole 32-bit EDX register is allocated for *char* variable and it can be sure the highest bits will not contain any noise at any point.

After, we also see new instruction NOT. This instruction inverts all bits in operand. It can be said, it is synonym to the XOR `ECX, 0fffffffh` instruction. NOT and following ADD calculating pointer difference and subtracting 1. At the beginning ECX, where pointer to *str* is stored, inverted and 1 is subtracted from it.

See also: “Signed number representations” (41).

In other words, at the end of function, just after loop body, these operations are executed:

```

ecx=str;
eax=eos;
ecx=(-ecx)-1;
eax=eax+ecx
return eax

```

...and this is effectively equivalent to:

```

ecx=str;
eax=eos;
eax=eax-ecx;

```

```
eax=eax-1;
return eax
```

Why GCC decided it would be better? I cannot be sure. But I'm sure the both variants are effectively equivalent in efficiency sense.

## 15.1.2 ARM

### 32-bit ARM

#### Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Listing 15.2: Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```
_strlen
eos = -8
str = -4

SUB SP, SP, #8 ; allocate 8 bytes for local variables
STR R0, [SP,#8+str]
LDR R0, [SP,#8+str]
STR R0, [SP,#8+eos]

loc_2CB8 ; CODE XREF: _strlen+28
LDR R0, [SP,#8+eos]
ADD R1, R0, #1
STR R1, [SP,#8+eos]
LDRSB R0, [R0]
CMP R0, #0
BEQ loc_2CD4
B loc_2CB8

loc_2CD4 ; CODE XREF: _strlen+24
LDR R0, [SP,#8+eos]
LDR R1, [SP,#8+str]
SUB R0, R0, R1 ; R0=eos-str
SUB R0, R0, #1 ; R0=R0-1
ADD SP, SP, #8 ; deallocate 8 bytes for local variables
BX LR
```

Non-optimizing LLVM generates too much code, however, here we can see how function works with local variables in the stack. There are only two local variables in our function, *eos* and *str*.

In this listing, generated by IDA, I renamed *var\_8* and *var\_4* into *eos* and *str* manually.

So, first instructions are just saves input value into both *str* and *eos*.

Loop body is beginning at *loc\_2CB8* label.

First three instruction in loop body (LDR, ADD, STR) loads *eos* value into R0, then value is [incremented](#) and it is saved back into *eos* local variable located in the stack.

The next `LDRSB R0, [R0]` (*Load Register Signed Byte*) instruction loading byte from memory at R0 address and sign-extends it to 32-bit<sup>2</sup>. This is similar to MOVSB instruction in x86. The compiler treating this byte as signed since *char* type in C standard is signed. I already wrote about it (15.1.1) in this section, but in relation to x86.

It is should be noted, it is impossible in ARM to use 8-bit part or 16-bit part of 32-bit register separately of the whole register, as it is in x86. Apparently, it is because x86 has a huge history of compatibility with its ancestors up to 16-bit 8086 and even 8-bit 8080, but ARM was developed from scratch as 32-bit RISC-processor. Consequently, in order to process separate bytes in ARM, one have to use 32-bit registers anyway.

So, LDRSB loads symbol from string into R0, one by one. The next CMP and BEQ instructions checks, if loaded symbol is 0. If not 0, control passed to loop body begin. And if 0, loop is finishing.

At the end of function, a difference between *eos* and *str* is calculated, 1 is also subtracting, and resulting value is returned via R0.

N.B. Registers was not saved in this function. That's because by ARM calling convention, R0-R3 registers are "scratch registers", they are intended for arguments passing, its values may not be restored upon function exit since calling function will not use them anymore. Consequently, they may be used for anything we want. Other registers are not used here, so that is why we have nothing to save on the stack. Thus, control may be returned back to calling function by simple jump (BX), to address in the LR register.

<sup>2</sup>Keil compiler treat *char* type as signed, just like MSVC and GCC.

**Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb mode)**

Listing 15.3: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb mode)

```

_strlen
 MOV R1, R0

loc_2DF6 ; CODE XREF: _strlen+8
 LDRB.W R2, [R1],#1
 CMP R2, #0
 BNE loc_2DF6
 MVNS R0, R0
 ADD R0, R1
 BX LR

```

As optimizing LLVM concludes, space on the stack for *eos* and *str* may not be allocated, and these variables may always be stored right in registers. Before loop body beginning, *str* will always be in R0, and *eos*—in R1.

``LDRB.W R2, [R1],#1'' instruction loads byte from memory at the address R1 into R2, sign-extending it to 32-bit value, but not just that. #1 at the instruction's end calling "Post-indexed addressing", this means, 1 is to be added to the R1 after byte load.

Read more about it: [39.2](#).

Then one may spot **CMP** and **BNE**<sup>3</sup> in loop body, these instructions continue operation until 0 will be met in string.

**MVNS**<sup>4</sup> (inverting all bits, NOT in x86) instructions and **ADD** computes  $eos - str - 1$ . In fact, these two instructions computes  $R0 = str + eos$ , which is effectively equivalent to what was in source code, and why it is so, I already described here ([15.1.1](#)).

Apparently, LLVM, just like GCC, concludes this code will be shorter, or faster.

**Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)**

Listing 15.4: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

_strlen
 MOV R1, R0

loc_2C8 ; CODE XREF: _strlen+14
 LDRB R2, [R1],#1
 CMP R2, #0
 SUBEQ R0, R1, R0
 SUBEQ R0, R0, #1
 BNE loc_2C8
 BX LR

```

Almost the same what we saw before, with the exception the  $str - eos - 1$  expression may be computed not at the function's end, but right in loop body. -EQ suffix, as we may recall, means the instruction will be executed only if operands in executed before **CMP** were equal to each other. Thus, if 0 will be in the R0 register, both **SUBEQ** instructions are to be executed and result is leaved in the R0 register.

**ARM64****Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9**

```

my_strlen:
 mov x1, x0
 ; X1 is now temporary pointer (eos), like cursor
.L58:
 ; load byte from X1 to W2, increment X1 by 1 (post-index)
 ldrb w2, [x1],1
 ; Compare and Branch if NonZero: compare W2 with 0, jump to .L58 if it's not
 cbnz w2, .L58
 ; calculate difference between original X0 pointer and current value of X1
 sub x0, x1, x0
 ; decrement lowest 32-bit of result
 sub w0, w0, #1
 ret

```

<sup>3</sup>(PowerPC, ARM) Branch if Not Equal

<sup>4</sup>MoVe Not



The algorithm is the same as in 15.1.1: find a zero byte, then calculate difference between pointers, then decrement result. I added some comments. The only thing worth noting is that my example is somewhat broken: `my_strlen()` function returns 32-bit `int`, while it should return `size_t` or other 64-bit type. The reason for that is that, theoretically, `strlen()` can be called for huge blocks in memory, exceeding 4GB, so it must be able to return 64-bit value on 64-bit platform. So because of my mistake, the last SUB instruction operates on 32-bit part of register, while penultimate SUB instruction works on full 64-bit parts (it calculates pointer difference). It's my mistake, but I decided to leave it as is, as an example of what code could be in such case.

### Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
my_strlen:
; function epilogue
 sub sp, sp, #32
; first argument (str) will be stored in [sp,8]
 str x0, [sp,8]
 ldr x0, [sp,8]
; copy str to eos variable
 str x0, [sp,24]
 nop
.L62:
; eos++
 ldr x0, [sp,24] ; load eos to X0
 add x1, x0, 1 ; increment X0
 str x1, [sp,24] ; save X0 to eos
; load byte from memory at address in X0 to W0
 ldrb w0, [x0]
; is it zero? (wzr is the register always contain 32-bit zero)
 cmp w0, wzr
; jump if not zero (Branch Not Equal)
 bne .L62
; zero byte found. now calculate difference.
; load eos to X1
 ldr x1, [sp,24]
; load str to X0
 ldr x0, [sp,8]
; calculate difference
 sub x0, x1, x0
; decrement result
 sub w0, w0, #1
; function prologue
 add sp, sp, 32
 ret
```

It's more verbose. Variables are often tossed here to and from memory (local stack). The same mistake here: decrement operation is happen on 32-bit register part.

## 15.2 Strings trimming

Another very common task is to remove some characters on begin and/or end.

In this example, we will work with a function which removes all newline characters ([CR<sup>5</sup>](#)/[LF<sup>6</sup>](#)) at the input string end:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>

char* str_trim (char *s)
{
 char c;
 size_t str_len;

 // work as long as \r or \n is at the end of string
 // stop if some other character there or it's an empty string
 // (at start or due to our operation)
 for (str_len=strlen(s); str_len>0 && (c=s[str_len-1]); str_len--)
 {
 if (c=='\r' || c=='\n')
```

<sup>5</sup>Carriage return (13 or '\r' in C/C++)

<sup>6</sup>Line feed (10 or '\n' in C/C++)

```

 s[str_len-1]=0;
 else
 break;
 };
 return s;
};

int main()
{
 // test

 // strdup() is used to copy text string into data segment, because it will crash on ↵
 ↵ Linux,
 // where text strings are allocated in constant data segment, and not modifiable.

 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("\n")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("\r")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("\n\r")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("\r\n")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("test1\r\n")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("test2\n\r")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("test3\n\r\n\r")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("test4\n")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("test5\r")));
 printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup("test6\r\r\r")));
};

```

Input argument is always returned on exit, this is convenient when you need to chain string processing functions, like it was done here in the `main()` function.

The second part of `for()` (`str_len>0 && (c=s[str_len-1])`) is so called “short-circuit” in C/C++ and is very convenient [Yur13, p. 1.3.8]. C/C++ compilers guarantee evaluation sequence from left to right. So if the first clause is false after evaluation, second will never be evaluated.

### 15.2.1 x64: Optimizing MSVC 2013

Listing 15.5: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```

s$ = 8
str_trim PROC

; RCX is the first function argument and it always holds pointer to the string

; this is strlen() function inlined right here:
; set RAX to 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF (-1)
 or rax, -1
$LL14@str_trim:
 inc rax
 cmp BYTE PTR [rcx+rax], 0
 jne SHORT $LL14@str_trim
; is string length zero? exit then
 test eax, eax
$LN18@str_trim:
 je SHORT $LN15@str_trim
; RAX holds string length
; here is probably disassembler (or disassembler printing routine) error,
; LEA RDX... should be here instead of LEA EDX...
 lea edx, DWORD PTR [rax-1]
; idle instruction: EAX will be reset at the next instruction's execution
 mov eax, edx
; load character at s[str_len-1]
 movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rdx+rcx]
; save also pointer to the last character to R8
 lea r8, QWORD PTR [rdx+rcx]
 cmp al, 13 ; is it '\r'?
 je SHORT $LN2@str_trim
 cmp al, 10 ; is it '\n'?
 jne SHORT $LN15@str_trim
$LN2@str_trim:

```

```

; store 0 to that place
 mov BYTE PTR [r8], 0
 mov eax, edx
; check character for 0, but conditional jump is above...
 test edx, edx
 jmp SHORT $LN18@str_trim
$LN15@str_trim:
; return s
 mov rax, rcx
 ret 0
str_trim ENDP

```

First, MSVC inlined `strlen()` function code right in the code, because it concludes this will be faster than usual `strlen()` work + cost of calling it and returning from it. This is called inlining: [31](#).

First instruction of inlined `strlen()` is `OR RAX, 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF`. I don't know, why MSVC uses `OR` instead of `MOV RAX, 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF`, but it does this often. And of course, it is equivalent: all bits are just set, and all bits set is -1 in two's complement arithmetics: [41](#).

Why would -1 number be used in `strlen()`, one might ask? Due to optimizations, of course. Here is the code MSVC did:

Listing 15.6: Inlined `strlen()` by MSVC 2013 x64

```

; RCX = pointer to the input string
; RAX = current string length
 or rax, -1
label:
 inc rax
 cmp BYTE PTR [rcx+rax], 0
 jne SHORT label
; RAX = string length

```

Try to write shorter if you want to initialize counter at 0! Here is my attempt:

Listing 15.7: My version of `strlen()`

```

; RCX = pointer to the input string
; RAX = current string length
 xor rax, rax
label:
 cmp byte ptr [rcx+rax], 0
 jz exit
 inc rax
 jmp label
exit:
; RAX = string length

```

I failed. We ought to use additional `JMP` instruction anyway!

So what MSVC 2013 compiler did is moved `INC` instruction to the place before actual character load. If the very first character is 0, that's OK, `RAX` is 0 at this moment, so the resulting string length is 0.

All the rest in the function seems easy to understand. Another trick is at the end. If not to count `strlen()` inlined code, there are only 3 conditional jumps in function. There should be 4: 4th is to be located at the function end, checking, if the character is zero. But there are unconditional jump to the "\$LN18@str\_trim" label, where we see `JE`, which was first used to check if the input string is empty, right after `strlen()` finish. So the code uses `JE` instruction at this place for two purposes! This may be overkill, but nevertheless, MSVC did it.

Read more, why it's important to do the job without conditional jumps, if possible: [44.1](#).

## 15.2.2 x64: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1

```

str_trim:
 push rbp
 mov rbp, rsp
 sub rsp, 32
 mov QWORD PTR [rbp-24], rdi
; for() first part begins here
 mov rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-24]
 mov rdi, rax
 call strlen
 mov QWORD PTR [rbp-8], rax ; str_len
; for() first part ends here
 jmp .L2

```

```

; for() body begins here
.L5:
 cmp BYTE PTR [rbp-9], 13 ; c=='\r'?
 je .L3
 cmp BYTE PTR [rbp-9], 10 ; c=='\n'?
 jne .L4
.L3:
 mov rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8] ; str_len
 lea rdx, [rax-1] ; EDX=str_len-1
 mov rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-24] ; s
 add rax, rdx ; RAX=s+str_len-1
 mov BYTE PTR [rax], 0 ; s[str_len-1]=0
; for() body ends here
; for() third part begins here
 sub QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 1 ; str_len--
; for() third part ends here
.L2:
; for() second part begins here
 cmp QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 0 ; str_len==0?
 je .L4 ; exit then
; check second clause (and load c)
 mov rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8] ; RAX=str_len
 lea rdx, [rax-1] ; RDX=str_len-1
 mov rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-24] ; RAX=s
 add rax, rdx ; RAX=s+str_len-1
 movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rax] ; AL=s[str_len-1]
 mov BYTE PTR [rbp-9], al ; store loaded char to c
 cmp BYTE PTR [rbp-9], 0 ; is it zero?
 jne .L5 ; yes? exit then
; for() second part ends here
.L4:
; return s
 mov rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-24]
 leave
 ret

```

I added my comments. After `strlen()` execution, control is passed to L2 label, and there are two clauses are checked, one after one. Second will never be checked, if first (`str_len==0`) is false (this is “short-circuit”).

Now let's see this function in short form:

- First for() part (call to `strlen()`)
- goto L2
- L5:
- for() body. goto exit, if needed
- for() third part (decrement of `str_len`)
- L2:
- for() second part: check first clause, then second. goto loop body begin or exit.
- L4:
- // exit
- return s

### 15.2.3 x64: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1

```

str_trim:
 push rbx
 mov rbx, rdi
; RBX will always be s
 call strlen
; check for str_len==0 and exit if it's so
 test rax, rax
 je .L9
 lea rdx, [rax-1]

```

```

; RDX will always contain str_len-1 value, not str_len
; so RDX is more like buffer index variable
 lea rsi, [rbx+rdx] ; RSI=s+str_len-1
 movzx ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi] ; load character
 test cl, cl
 je .L9 ; exit if it's zero
 cmp cl, 10
 je .L4
 cmp cl, 13 ; exit if it's not '\n' and not '\r'
 jne .L9
.L4:
; this is weird instruction. we need RSI=s-1 here.
; it's possible to get it by MOV RSI, EBX / DEC RSI
; but this is two instructions instead of one
 sub rsi, rax
; RSI = s+str_len-1-str_len = s-1
; main loop begin
.L12:
 test rdx, rdx
; store zero at s-1+str_len-1+1 = s-1+str_len = s+str_len-1
 mov BYTE PTR [rsi+1+rdx], 0
; check for str_len-1==0. exit if so.
 je .L9
 sub rdx, 1 ; equivalent to str_len--
; load next character at s+str_len-1
 movzx ecx, BYTE PTR [rbx+rdx]
 test cl, cl ; is it zero? exit then
 je .L9
 cmp cl, 10 ; is it '\n'?
 je .L12
 cmp cl, 13 ; is it '\r'?
 je .L12
.L9:
; return s
 mov rax, rbx
 pop rbx
 ret

```

Now this is more complex. Code before loop body begin executed only once, but it has [CR/LF](#) characters check too! What this code duplication is for?

Common way to implement main loop is probably this:

- (loop begin) check for [CR/LF](#) characters, make decisions
- store zero character

But GCC decided to reverse these two steps. Of course, *store zero character* cannot be first step, so another check is needed:

- workout first character. match it to [CR/LF](#), exit if character is not [CR/LF](#)
- (loop begin) store zero character
- check for [CR/LF](#) characters, make decisions

Now the main loop is very short, which is very good for modern CPUs.

The code doesn't use `str_len` variable, but `str_len-1`. So this is more like index in buffer. Apparently, GCC notices that `str_len-1` statement is used twice. So it's better to allocate a variable which is always holds a value lesser of current string length by one, and decrement it (this is the same effect as decrementing `str_len` variable).

### 15.2.4 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

This implementation is straightforward:

Listing 15.8: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

str_trim:
 stp x29, x30, [sp, -48]!
 add x29, sp, 0
 str x0, [x29,24] ; copy input argument into local stack
 ldr x0, [x29,24] ; s

```

```

 bl strlen
 str x0, [x29,40] ; str_len variable in local stack
 b .L2
; main loop begin
.L5:
 ldrb w0, [x29,39]
; w0=c
 cmp w0, 13 ; is it '\r'?
 beq .L3
 ldrb w0, [x29,39]
; w0=c
 cmp w0, 10 ; is it '\n'?
 bne .L4 ; goto exit if it's not
.L3:
 ldr x0, [x29,40]
; X0=str_len
 sub x0, x0, #1
; X0=str_len-1
 ldr x1, [x29,24]
; X1=s
 add x0, x1, x0
; X0=s+str_len-1
 strb wzr, [x0] ; write byte at s+str_len-1
; decrement str_len:
 ldr x0, [x29,40]
; X0=str_len
 sub x0, x0, #1
; X0=str_len-1
 str x0, [x29,40]
; save X0 or str_len-1 to local stack
.L2:
 ldr x0, [x29,40]
; is str_len==0?
 cmp x0, xzr
; goto exit then
 beq .L4
 ldr x0, [x29,40]
; X0=str_len
 sub x0, x0, #1
; X0=str_len-1
 ldr x1, [x29,24]
; X1=s
 add x0, x1, x0
; X0=s+str_len-1
; load byte at s+str_len-1 to w0
 ldrb w0, [x0]
 strb w0, [x29,39] ; store loaded byte to c
 ldrb w0, [x29,39] ; reload it
; is it zero?
 cmp w0, wzr
; goto exit, if it's zero or to L5 if it's not
 bne .L5
.L4:
; return s
 ldr x0, [x29,24]
 ldp x29, x30, [sp], 48
 ret

```

### 15.2.5 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

This is more advanced optimization. First character is loaded at the beginning, and compared against 10 (LF character). Characters also loaded in the main loop, for characters after first. This is somewhat similar to [15.2.3](#) example.

Listing 15.9: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

str_trim:
 stp x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
 add x29, sp, 0
 str x19, [sp,16]

```

```

 mov x19, x0
; X19 will always hold value of s
 bl strlen
; X0=str_len
 cbz x0, .L9 ; goto L9 (exit) if str_len==0
 sub x1, x0, #1
; X1=X0-1=str_len-1
 add x3, x19, x1
; X3=X19+X1=s+str_len-1
 ldrb w2, [x19,x1] ; load byte at X19+X1=s+str_len-1
; W2=loaded character
 cbz w2, .L9 ; is it zero? jump to exit then
 cmp w2, 10 ; is it '\n'?
 bne .L15
.L12:
; main loop body. loaded character is always 10 or 13 for this moment!
 sub x2, x1, x0
; X2=X1-X0=str_len-1-str_len=-1
 add x2, x3, x2
; X2=X3+X2=s+str_len-1+(-1)=s+str_len-2
 strb wzr, [x2,1] ; store 0 byte at s+str_len-2+1=s+str_len-1
 cbz x1, .L9 ; str_len-1==0? goto exit, if so
 sub x1, x1, #1 ; str_len--
 ldrb w2, [x19,x1] ; load next character at X19+X1=s+str_len-1
 cmp w2, 10 ; is it '\n'?
 cbz w2, .L9 ; jump to exit, if it's zero
 beq .L12 ; jump to begin loop, if it's '\n'
.L15:
 cmp w2, 13 ; is it '\r'?
 beq .L12 ; yes, jump to the loop body begin
.L9:
; return s
 mov x0, x19
 ldr x19, [sp,16]
 ldp x29, x30, [sp], 32
 ret

```

### 15.2.6 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

And again, compiler took advantage of ARM mode conditional instructions, so the code is much more compact.

Listing 15.10: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

str_trim PROC
 PUSH {r4,lr}
; R0=s
 MOV r4,r0
; R4=s
 BL strlen ; it takes s value from R0
; R0=str_len
 MOV r3,#0
; R3 will always hold 0
|L0.16|
 CMP r0,#0 ; str_len==0?
 ADDNE r2,r4,r0 ; (if str_len!=0) R2=R4+R0=s+str_len
 LDRBNE r1,[r2,#-1] ; (if str_len!=0) R1=load byte at R2-1=s+str_len-1
 CMPNE r1,#0 ; (if str_len!=0) compare loaded byte against 0
 BEQ |L0.56| ; jump to exit if str_len==0 or loaded byte is 0
 CMP r1,#0xd ; is loaded byte '\r'?
 CMPNE r1,#0xa ; (if loaded byte is not '\r') is loaded byte '\r'?
 SUBEQ r0,r0,#1 ; (if loaded byte is '\r' or '\n') R0-- or str_len--
 STRBEQ r3,[r2,#-1] ; (if loaded byte is '\r' or '\n') store R3 (zero) at R2-1=s+
 ↪ str_len-1
 BEQ |L0.16| ; jump to loop begin if loaded byte was '\r' or '\n'
|L0.56|
; return s
 MOV r0,r4
 POP {r4,pc}
 ENDP

```

**15.2.7 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)**

There are less number of conditional instructions in Thumb mode, so the code is more ordinary. But there are one really weird thing with 0x20 and 0x19 offsets. Why Keil compiler did so? Honestly, I have no idea. Probably, this is a quirk of Keil optimization process. Nevertheless, the code will work correctly.

Listing 15.11: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

str_trim PROC
 PUSH {r4,lr}
 MOVS r4,r0
; R4=s
 BL strlen ; it takes s value from R0
; R0=str_len
 MOVS r3,#0
; R3 will always hold zero
 B |L0.24|
|L0.12|
 CMP r1,#0xd ; is loaded byte '\r'?
 BEQ |L0.20|
 CMP r1,#0xa ; is loaded byte '\n'?
 BNE |L0.38| ; jump to exit, if no
|L0.20|
 SUBS r0,r0,#1 ; R0-- or str_len--
 STRB r3,[r2,#0x1f] ; store 0 at R2+0x1F=s+str_len-0x20+0x1F=s+str_len-1
|L0.24|
 CMP r0,#0 ; str_len==0?
 BEQ |L0.38| ; yes, jump to exit
 ADDS r2,r4,r0 ; R2=R4+R0=s+str_len
 SUBS r2,r2,#0x20 ; R2=R2-0x20=s+str_len-0x20
 LDRB r1,[r2,#0x1f] ; load byte at R2+0x1F=s+str_len-0x20+0x1F=s+str_len-1 to R1
 CMP r1,#0 ; is loaded byte 0?
 BNE |L0.12| ; jump to loop begin, if it's not 0
|L0.38|
; return s
 MOVS r0,r4
 POP {r4,pc}
 ENDP

```

**15.3 Exercises****15.3.1 Exercise #1**

What this code does?

Listing 15.12: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_s$ = 8
_f PROC
 mov edx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp-4]
 mov cl, BYTE PTR [edx]
 xor eax, eax
 test cl, cl
 je SHORT $LN2@f
 npad 4 ; align next label
$LL4@f:
 cmp cl, 32
 jne SHORT $LN3@f
 inc eax
$LN3@f:
 mov cl, BYTE PTR [edx+1]
 inc edx
 test cl, cl
 jne SHORT $LL4@f
$LN2@f:
 ret 0
_f ENDP

```



Listing 15.13: GCC 4.8.1 -O3

```
f:
.LFB24:
 push ebx
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
 xor eax, eax
 movzx edx, BYTE PTR [ecx]
 test dl, dl
 je .L2
.L3:
 cmp dl, 32
 lea ebx, [eax+1]
 cmove eax, ebx
 add ecx, 1
 movzx edx, BYTE PTR [ecx]
 test dl, dl
 jne .L3
.L2:
 pop ebx
 ret
```

Listing 15.14: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
f PROC
MOV r1,#0
|L0.4|
LDRB r2,[r0,#0]
CMP r2,#0
MOVEQ r0,r1
BXEQ lr
CMP r2,#0x20
ADDEQ r1,r1,#1
ADD r0,r0,#1
B |L0.4|
ENDP
```

Listing 15.15: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```
f PROC
MOVS r1,#0
B |L0.12|
|L0.4|
CMP r2,#0x20
BNE |L0.10|
ADDS r1,r1,#1
|L0.10|
ADDS r0,r0,#1
|L0.12|
LDRB r2,[r0,#0]
CMP r2,#0
BNE |L0.4|
MOVS r0,r1
BX lr
ENDP
```

Listing 15.16: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```
f:
 ldrb w1, [x0]
 cbz w1, .L4
 mov w2, 0
.L3:
 cmp w1, 32
 ldrb w1, [x0,1]!
 csinc w2, w2, w2, ne
 cbnz w1, .L3
.L2:
 mov w0, w2
 ret
.L4:
```

```
mov w2, w1
b .L2
```

Answer [F.1.7](#).

## Chapter 16

# Replacing arithmetic instructions to other ones

While pursuing the goal of optimization, one instruction may be replaced by others, or even with group of instructions.

LEA instruction is also often used for simple arithmetic calculations: [A.6.2](#).

ADD and SUB may replace each other. For example, line 18 in listing [18.32](#).

### 16.1 Multiplication

#### 16.1.1 Multiplication using addition

Here is a simple example:

Listing 16.1: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
unsigned int f(unsigned int a)
{
 return a*8;
};
```

Multiplication by 8 is replaced by 3 addition instructions, which do the same. Apparently, MSVC's optimizer decided that code will be faster.

```
_TEXT SEGMENT
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
; File c:\polygon\c\2.c
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
 add eax, eax
 add eax, eax
 add eax, eax
 ret 0
_f ENDP
_TEXT ENDS
END
```

#### 16.1.2 Multiplication using shifting

Multiplication and division instructions by numbers in form  $2^n$  are often replaced by shift instructions.

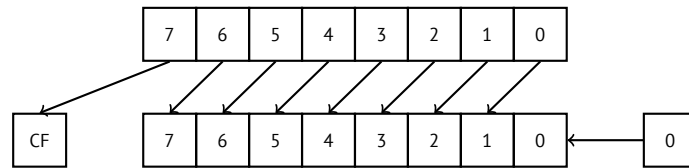
```
unsigned int f(unsigned int a)
{
 return a*4;
};
```

Listing 16.2: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
 shl eax, 2
 pop ebp
 ret 0
_f ENDP
```

Multiplication by 4 is just shifting the number to the left by 2 bits, while inserting 2 zero bits at right (as the last two bits). It is just like to multiply 3 by 100 –we need just to add two zeroes at the right.

That's how shift left instruction works:



Added bits at right—always zeroes.

Multiplication by 4 in ARM:

Listing 16.3: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
f PROC
 LSL r0,r0,#2
 BX lr
ENDP
```

### 16.1.3 Multiplication using shifting/subtracting/adding

It's still possible to get rid of multiplication operation when you multiply by numbers like 7 or 17 and still use shifting. Relatively easy mathematics is used here.

#### 32-bit

```
#include <stdint.h>

int f1(int a)
{
 return a*7;
};

int f2(int a)
{
 return a*28;
};

int f3(int a)
{
 return a*17;
};
```

Listing 16.4: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```
; a*7
_a$ = 8
_f1 PROC
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
; ECX=a
 lea eax, DWORD PTR [ecx*8]
; EAX=ECX*8
 sub eax, ecx
; EAX=EAX-ECX=ECX*8-ECX=ECX*7=a*7
 ret 0
_f1 ENDP

; a*28
_a$ = 8
_f2 PROC
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
; ECX=a
 lea eax, DWORD PTR [ecx*8]
; EAX=ECX*8
 sub eax, ecx
; EAX=EAX-ECX=ECX*8-ECX=ECX*7=a*7
 shl eax, 2
```

```

; EAX=EAX<<2=(a*7)*4=a*28
 ret 0
_f2 ENDP

; a*17
_a$ = 8
_f3 PROC
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
; EAX=a
 shl eax, 4
; EAX=EAX<<4=EAX*16=a*16
 add eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
; EAX=EAX+a=a*16+a=a*17
 ret 0
_f3 ENDP

```

Keil generating for ARM mode took advantage of second operand's shift modifiers:

Listing 16.5: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

; a*7
||f1|| PROC
 RSB r0,r0,r0,LSL #3
; R0=R0<<3-R0=R0*8-R0=a*8-a=a*7
 BX lr
 ENDP

; a*28
||f2|| PROC
 RSB r0,r0,r0,LSL #3
; R0=R0<<3-R0=R0*8-R0=a*8-a=a*7
 LSL r0,r0,#2
; R0=R0<<2=R0*4=a*7*4=a*28
 BX lr
 ENDP

; a*17
||f3|| PROC
 ADD r0,r0,r0,LSL #4
; R0=R0+R0<<4=R0+R0*16=R0*17=a*17
 BX lr
 ENDP

```

But there are no such modifiers in Thumb mode. It also can't optimize f2() function:

Listing 16.6: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

; a*7
||f1|| PROC
 LSLS r1,r0,#3
; R1=R0<<3=a<<3=a*8
 SUBS r0,r1,r0
; R0=R1-R0=a*8-a=a*7
 BX lr
 ENDP

; a*28
||f2|| PROC
 MOVS r1,#0x1c ; 28
; R1=28
 MULS r0,r1,r0
; R0=R1*R0=28*a
 BX lr
 ENDP

; a*17
||f3|| PROC
 LSLS r1,r0,#4
; R1=R0<<4=R0*16=a*16
 ADDS r0,r0,r1
; R0=R0+R1=a+a*16=a*17
 BX lr

```

```
ENDP
```

**64-bit**

```
#include <stdint.h>

int64_t f1(int64_t a)
{
 return a*7;
};

int64_t f2(int64_t a)
{
 return a*28;
};

int64_t f3(int64_t a)
{
 return a*17;
};
```

Listing 16.7: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```
; a*7
f1:
 lea rax, [0+rdi*8]
; RAX=RDI*8=a*8
 sub rax, rdi
; RAX=RAX-RDI=a*8-a=a*7
 ret

; a*28
f2:
 lea rax, [0+rdi*4]
; RAX=RDI*4=a*4
 sal rdi, 5
; RDI=RDI<<5=RDI*32=a*32
 sub rdi, rax
; RDI=RDI-RAX=a*32-a*4=a*28
 mov rax, rdi
 ret

; a*17
f3:
 mov rax, rdi
 sal rax, 4
; RAX=RAX<<4=a*16
 add rax, rdi
; RAX=a*16+a=a*17
 ret
```

GCC 4.9 for ARM64 is also terse, thanks to shift modifiers:

Listing 16.8: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 ARM64

```
; a*7
f1:
 lsl x1, x0, 3
; X1=X0<<3=X0*8=a*8
 sub x0, x1, x0
; X0=X1-X0=a*8-a=a*7
 ret

; a*28
f2:
 lsl x1, x0, 5
; X1=X0<<5=a*32
 sub x0, x1, x0, lsl 2
; X0=X1-X0<<2=a*32-a<<2=a*32-a*4=a*28
```

```

ret
; a*17
f3:
add x0, x0, x0, lsl 4
; X0=X0+X0<<4=a+a*16=a*17
ret

```

## 16.2 Division

### 16.2.1 Division using shifts

For example:

```

unsigned int f(unsigned int a)
{
 return a/4;
};

```

We got (MSVC 2010):

Listing 16.9: MSVC 2010

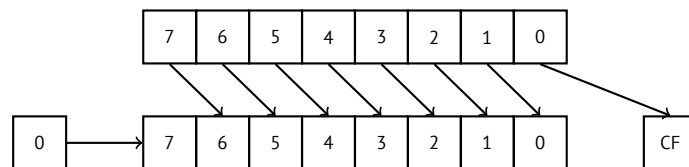
```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
 shr eax, 2
 ret 0
_f ENDP

```

SHR (*Shift Right*) instruction in this example is shifting a number by 2 bits right. Two freed bits at left (e.g., two most significant bits) are set to zero. Two least significant bits are dropped. In fact, these two dropped bits – division operation remainder.

SHR instruction works just like as SHL but in other direction.



It can be easily understood if to imagine decimal numeral system and number 23. 23 can be easily divided by 10 just by dropping last digit (3 – is division remainder). 2 is leaving after operation as a [quotient](#).

So remainder is dropped, but that's OK, we work on integer values anyway, these are not floating point numbers!

Division by 4 in ARM:

Listing 16.10: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
 LSR r0, r0, #2
 BX lr
 ENDP

```

## 16.3 Division by 9

Very simple function:

```

int f(int a)
{
 return a/9;
};

```

**16.3.1 x86**

...is compiled in a very predictable way:

Listing 16.11: MSVC

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
 cdq ; sign extend EAX to EDX:EAX
 mov ecx, 9
 idiv ecx
 pop ebp
 ret 0
_f ENDP

```

IDIV divides 64-bit number stored in the EDX:EAX register pair by value in the ECX register. As a result, EAX will contain **quotient**, and EDX –remainder. Result is returning from the f() function in the EAX register, so, the value is not moved anymore after division operation, it is in right place already. Since IDIV requires value in the EDX:EAX register pair, CDQ instruction (before IDIV) extending value in the EAX to 64-bit value taking value sign into account, just as MOVSBX does. If we turn optimization on (/Ox), we got:

Listing 16.12: Optimizing MSVC

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC

 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
 mov eax, 954437177 ; 38e38e39H
 imul ecx
 sar edx, 1
 mov eax, edx
 shr eax, 31 ; 0000001fH
 add eax, edx
 ret 0
_f ENDP

```

This is –division by multiplication. Multiplication operation works much faster. And it is possible to use the trick <sup>1</sup> to produce a code which is effectively equivalent and faster.

This is also called “strength reduction” in compiler optimization.

GCC 4.4.1 generates almost the same code even without additional optimization flags, just like MSVC with optimization turned on:

Listing 16.13: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```

public f
f proc near

arg_0 = dword ptr 8

 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 mov ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
 mov edx, 954437177 ; 38E38E39h
 mov eax, ecx
 imul edx
 sar edx, 1
 mov eax, ecx
 sar eax, 1Fh
 mov ecx, edx
 sub ecx, eax
 mov eax, ecx
 pop ebp
 retn
f endp

```

<sup>1</sup>Read more about division by multiplication in [War02, pp. 10-3]



### 16.3.2 ARM

ARM processor, just like in any other "pure" RISC-processors, lacks division instruction. It also lacks a single instruction for multiplication by 32-bit constant (recall that 32-bit constant cannot fit into 32-bit opcode). By taking advantage of this clever trick (or *hack*), it is possible to do division using only three instructions: addition, subtraction and bit shifts (19).

Here is an example of 32-bit number division by 10 from [Ltd94, 3.3 Division by a Constant]. Quotient and remainder on output.

```

; takes argument in a1
; returns quotient in a1, remainder in a2
; cycles could be saved if only divide or remainder is required
SUB a2, a1, #10 ; keep (x-10) for later
SUB a1, a1, a1, lsr #2
ADD a1, a1, a1, lsr #4
ADD a1, a1, a1, lsr #8
ADD a1, a1, a1, lsr #16
MOV a1, a1, lsr #3
ADD a3, a1, a1, asl #2
SUBS a2, a2, a3, asl #1 ; calc (x-10) - (x/10)*10
ADDPL a1, a1, #1 ; fix-up quotient
ADDMI a2, a2, #10 ; fix-up remainder
MOV pc, lr

```

#### Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```

__text:00002C58 39 1E 08 E3 E3 18 43 E3 MOV R1, 0x38E38E39
__text:00002C60 10 F1 50 E7 SMMUL R0, R0, R1
__text:00002C64 C0 10 A0 E1 MOV R1, R0, ASR#1
__text:00002C68 A0 0F 81 E0 ADD R0, R1, R0, LSR#31
__text:00002C6C 1E FF 2F E1 BX LR

```

This code is mostly the same to what was generated by optimizing MSVC and GCC. Apparently, LLVM use the same algorithm for constants generating.

Observant reader may ask, how MOV writes 32-bit value in register, while this is not possible in ARM mode. It is impossible indeed, but, as we see, there are 8 bytes per instruction instead of standard 4, in fact, there are two instructions. First instruction loading 0x8E39 value into low 16 bit of register and second instruction is in fact MOVT, it loading 0x383E into high 16-bit of register. IDA is fully aware of such sequences, and for the sake of compactness, reduced it to one single "pseudo-instruction".

SMMUL (*Signed Most Significant Word Multiply*) instruction multiply numbers treating them as signed numbers, and leaving high 32-bit part of result in the R0 register, dropping low 32-bit part of result.

``MOV R1, R0, ASR#1`` instruction is arithmetic shift right by one bit.

``ADD R0, R1, R0, LSR#31`` is  $R0 = R1 + R0 \gg 31$

As a matter of fact, there is no separate shifting instruction in ARM mode. Instead, an instructions like (MOV, ADD, SUB, RSB)<sup>2</sup> may be supplied by suffix, if the second operand must be shifted, if yes, by what value and how. ASR meaning *Arithmetic Shift Right*, LSR—*Logical Shift Right*.

#### Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

```

MOV R1, 0x38E38E39
SMMUL.W R0, R0, R1
ASRS R1, R0, #1
ADD.W R0, R1, R0, LSR#31
BX LR

```

There are separate instructions for shifting in thumb mode, and one of them is used here—ASRS (arithmetic shift right).

#### Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) and Keil 6/2013

Non-optimizing LLVM does not generate code we saw before in this section, but inserts a call to library function `__divsi3` instead.

What about Keil: it inserts call to library function `__aeabi_idivmod` in all cases.

<sup>2</sup>These instructions are also called "data processing instructions"

### 16.3.3 How it works

That's how division can be replaced by multiplication and division by  $2^n$  numbers:

$$result = \frac{input}{divisor} = \frac{input \cdot \frac{2^n}{divisor}}{2^n} = \frac{input \cdot M}{2^n}$$

Where  $M$  is *magic*-coefficient.

That's how  $M$  can be computed:

$$M = \frac{2^n}{divisor}$$

So these code snippets are usually have this form:

$$result = \frac{input \cdot M}{2^n}$$

Division by  $2^n$  is usually done by simple right bit shift. If  $n < 32$ , then low part of **product** is shifted (in EAX or RAX). If  $n \geq 32$ , then the high part of **product** is shifted (in EDX or RDX).

$n$  is chosen in order to minimize error.

When doing signed division, sign of multiplication result also added to the output result.

Take a look at the difference:

```
int f3_32_signed(int a)
{
 return a/3;
};

unsigned int f3_32_unsigned(unsigned int a)
{
 return a/3;
};
```

In the unsigned version of function, *magic*-coefficient is 0xAAAAAAB and multiplication result is divided by  $2^{33}$ .

In the signed version of function, *magic*-coefficient is 0x5555556 and multiplication result is divided by  $2^{32}$ . There are no division instruction though: result is just taken from EDX.

Sign is also taken from multiplication result: high 32 bits of result is shifted by 31 (leaving sign in least significant bit of EAX). 1 is added to the final result if sign is negative, for result correction.

Listing 16.14: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```
_f3_32_unsigned PROC
 mov eax, -1431655765 ; aaaaaaabH
 mul DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4] ; unsigned multiply
; EDX=(input*0xaaaaaab)/2^32
 shr edx, 1
; EDX=(input*0xaaaaaab)/2^33
 mov eax, edx
 ret 0
_f3_32_unsigned ENDP

_f3_32_signed PROC
 mov eax, 1431655766 ; 5555556H
 imul DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4] ; signed multiply
; take high part of product
; it is just the same as if to shift product by 32 bits right or to divide it by 2^32
 mov eax, edx ; EAX=EDX=(input*0x5555556)/2^32
 shr eax, 31 ; 0000001fH
 add eax, edx ; add 1 if sign is negative
 ret 0
_f3_32_signed ENDP
```

Read more about it in [War02, pp. 10-3].

### 16.3.4 Getting divisor

#### Variant #1

Often, the code has a form of:

```

mov eax, MAGICAL_CONSTANT
imul input_value
sar edx, SHIFTING_COEFFICIENT ; signed division by 2^x using arithmetic shift right
mov eax, edx
shr eax, 31
add eax, edx

```

Let's denote 32-bit *magic*-coefficient as  $M$ , shifting coefficient by  $C$  and divisor by  $D$ .  
The divisor we need to get is:

$$D = \frac{2^{32+C}}{M}$$

For example:

Listing 16.15: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```

mov eax, 2021161081 ; 78787879H
imul DWORD_PTR _a$[esp-4]
sar edx, 3
mov eax, edx
shr eax, 31 ; 0000001fH
add eax, edx

```

This is:

$$D = \frac{2^{32+3}}{2021161081}$$

Numbers are larger than 32-bit ones, so I use Wolfram Mathematica for convenience:

Listing 16.16: Wolfram Mathematica

```

In[1]:=N[2^(32+3)/2021161081]
Out[1]:=17.

```

So the divisor from the code I used for example is 17.

As of x64 division, things are the same, but  $2^{64}$  should be used instead of  $2^{32}$ :

```

uint64_t f1234(uint64_t a)
{
 return a/1234;
};

```

Listing 16.17: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

f1234 PROC
mov rax, 7653754429286296943 ; 6a37991a23aead6fH
mul rcx
shr rdx, 9
mov rax, rdx
ret 0
f1234 ENDP

```

Listing 16.18: Wolfram Mathematica

```

In[1]:=N[2^(64+9)/16^6a37991a23aead6f]
Out[1]:=1234.

```

## Variant #2

A variant with omitted arithmetic shift is also exist:

```

mov eax, 55555556h ; 1431655766
imul ecx
mov eax, edx
shr eax, 1Fh

```

The method of getting divisor is simplified:

$$D = \frac{2^{32}}{M}$$

As of my example, this is:

$$D = \frac{2^{32}}{1431655766}$$

And again I use Wolfram Mathematica:

Listing 16.19: Wolfram Mathematica

```
In[1]:=N[2^32/16^^55555556]
Out[1]:=3.
```

The divisor is 3.

## 16.4 Exercises

### 16.4.1 Exercise #1

What this code does?

Listing 16.20: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8
_f PROC
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
 mov eax, -968154503 ; c64b2279H
 imul ecx
 add edx, ecx
 sar edx, 9
 mov eax, edx
 shr eax, 31 ; 0000001fH
 add eax, edx
 ret 0
_f ENDP
```

Listing 16.21: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```
f:
 mov w1, 8825
 movk w1, 0xc64b, lsl 16
 smull x1, w0, w1
 lsr x1, x1, 32
 add w1, w0, w1
 asr w1, w1, 9
 sub w0, w1, w0, asr 31
 ret
```

Answer [F.1.8](#).

### 16.4.2 Exercise #2

What this code does?

Listing 16.22: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8
_f PROC
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
 lea eax, DWORD PTR [ecx*8]
 sub eax, ecx
 ret 0
_f ENDP
```

Listing 16.23: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
f PROC
 RSB r0,r0,r0,LSL #3
 BX lr
ENDP
```

Listing 16.24: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```
f PROC
 LSLS r1,r0,#3
 SUBS r0,r1,r0
 BX lr
ENDP
```

Listing 16.25: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```
f:
 lsl w1, w0, 3
 sub w0, w1, w0
 ret
```

Answer [F.1.8](#).

## Chapter 17

# Floating-point unit

FPU<sup>1</sup> – is a device within main CPU specially designed to deal with floating point numbers.

It was called coprocessor in past. It stay aside of the main CPU and looks like programmable calculator in some way.

It is worth to study stack machines<sup>2</sup> before FPU studying, or learn Forth language basics<sup>3</sup>.

It is interesting to know that coprocessor in past (before 80486 CPU) was a separate chip and it was not always settled on motherboard. It was possible to buy it separately and install <sup>4</sup>.

Starting at 80486 DX CPU, FPU is always present in it.

FWAIT instruction may remind us that fact—it switches CPU to waiting state, so it can wait until FPU finishes its work. Another rudiment is the fact that FPU-instruction opcodes are started with so called “escape”-opcodes (D8 . . DF), i.e., opcodes passed into separate coprocessor.

FPU has a stack capable to hold 8 80-bit registers, each register can hold a number in IEEE 754<sup>5</sup>format. They are ST(0)..ST(7). For brevity, IDA and OllyDbg shows ST(0) as ST, which is represented in some textbooks and manuals as “Stack Top”.

Standard C/C++ languages offer at least two floating number types, *float* (*single-precision*<sup>6</sup>, 32 bits)<sup>7</sup> and *double* (*double-precision*<sup>8</sup>, 64 bits).

GCC also supports *long double* type (*extended precision*<sup>9</sup>, 80 bit) but MSVC is not.

*float* type requires the same number of bits as *int* type in 32-bit environment, but number representation is completely different.

Number in IEEE 754 format consisting of *sign*, *significand* (also called *fraction*) and *exponent*.

## 17.1 Simple example

Let’s consider simple example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

double f (double a, double b)
{
 return a/3.14 + b*4.1;
};

int main()
```

<sup>1</sup>Floating-point unit

<sup>2</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stack\\_machine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stack_machine)

<sup>3</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forth\\_\(programming\\_language\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forth_(programming_language))

<sup>4</sup>For example, John Carmack used fixed-point arithmetic values in his Doom video game, stored in 32-bit GPR registers (16 bit for intergral part and another 16 bit for fractional part), so the Doom could work on 32-bit computer without FPU, i.e., 80386 and 80486 SX

<sup>5</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IEEE\\_754-2008](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IEEE_754-2008)

<sup>6</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Single-precision\\_floating-point\\_format](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Single-precision_floating-point_format)

<sup>7</sup>single precision float numbers format is also addressed in the *Working with the float type as with a structure* (21.6.2) section

<sup>8</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Double-precision\\_floating-point\\_format](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Double-precision_floating-point_format)

<sup>9</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Extended\\_precision](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Extended_precision)

```
{
 printf ("%f\n", f(1.2, 3.4));
};
```

### 17.1.1 x86

#### MSVC

Compile it in MSVC 2010:

Listing 17.1: MSVC 2010: f()

```
CONST SEGMENT
__real@4010666666666666 DQ 0401066666666666r ; 4.1
CONST ENDS
CONST SEGMENT
__real@40091eb851eb851f DQ 040091eb851eb851fr ; 3.14
CONST ENDS
_TEXT SEGMENT
_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_f PROC
 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 fld QWORD PTR _a$[ebp]

; current stack state: ST(0) = _a

 fdiv QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f

; current stack state: ST(0) = result of _a divided by 3.13

 fld QWORD PTR _b$[ebp]

; current stack state: ST(0) = _b; ST(1) = result of _a divided by 3.13

 fmul QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666

; current stack state: ST(0) = result of _b * 4.1; ST(1) = result of _a divided by 3.13

 faddp ST(1), ST(0)

; current stack state: ST(0) = result of addition

 pop ebp
 ret 0
_f ENDP
```

FLD takes 8 bytes from stack and load the number into the ST(0) register, automatically converting it into internal 80-bit format (*extended precision*).

FDIV divides value in the ST(0) register by number stored at address `__real@40091eb851eb851f` –3.14 value is encoded there. Assembler syntax missing floating point numbers, so, what we see here is hexadecimal representation of 3.14 number in 64-bit IEEE 754 format.

After FDIV execution, ST(0) will hold **quotient**.

By the way, there is also FDIVP instruction, which divides ST(1) by ST(0), popping both these values from stack and then pushing result. If you know Forth language<sup>10</sup>, you will quickly understand that this is stack machine<sup>11</sup>.

The next FLD instruction pushing *b* value into stack.

After that, quotient is placed to the ST(1) register, and the ST(0) will hold *b* value.

The next FMUL instruction do multiplication: *b* from the ST(0) register by value at `__real@4010666666666666` (4.1 number is there) and leaves result in the ST(0) register.

The very last FADDP instruction adds two values at top of stack, storing result to the ST(1) register and then popping value at ST(1), hereby leaving result at top of stack in the ST(0).

The function must return result in the ST(0) register, so there are no any other instructions except of function epilogue after FADDP.

<sup>10</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forth\\_\(programming\\_language\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forth_(programming_language))

<sup>11</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stack\\_machine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stack_machine)

MSVC + OllyDbg

I marked by red 2 pairs of 32-bit words in stack. Each pair is double-number in IEEE 754 format passed from main(). We see how first FLD loads a value (1.2) from stack and put it into ST(0) register:

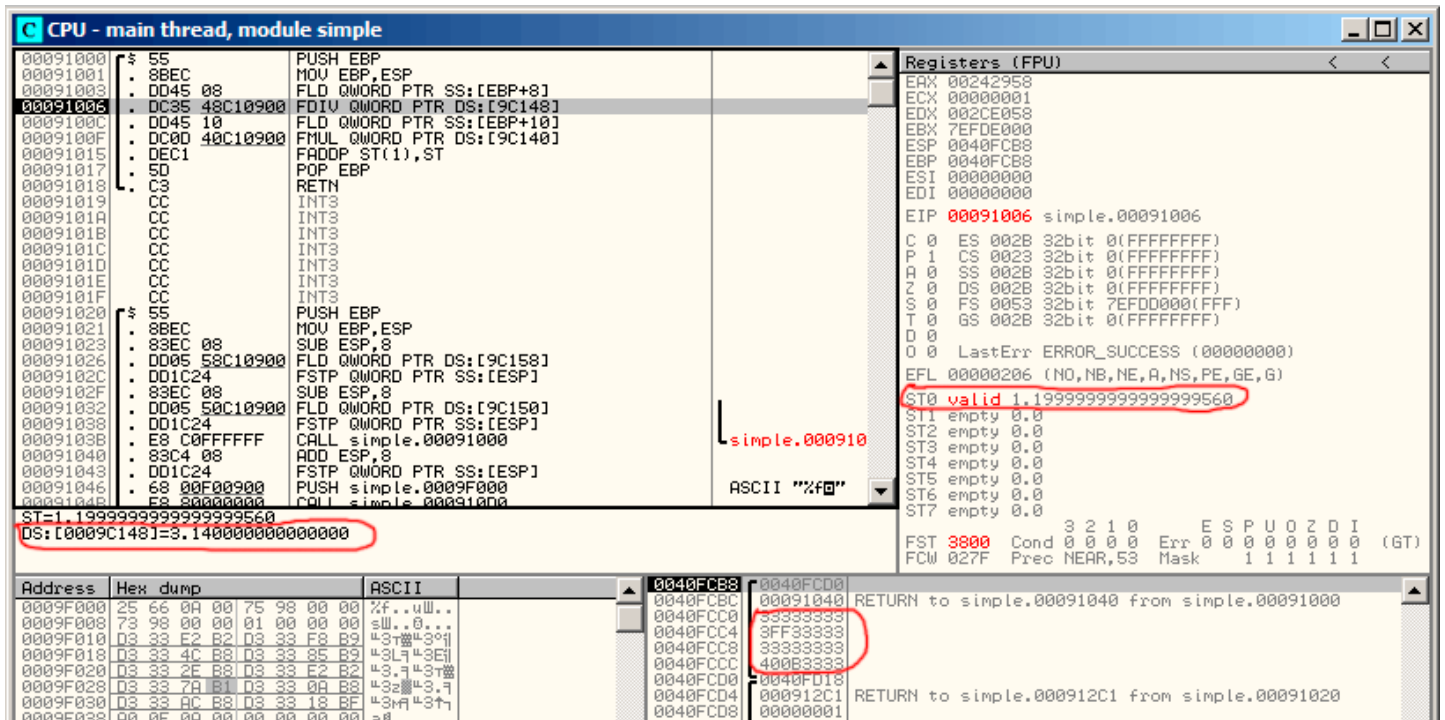


Figure 17.1: OllyDbg: first FLD executed

Because of unavoidable conversion errors from 64-bit IEEE 754 float point number into 80-bit (used internally in FPU), we see here 1.999..., which is close to 1.2. EIP right now is pointing to the next instruction (FDIV), which loads double-number (a constant) from memory. For convenience, OllyDbg shows its value: 3.14.



Let's trace more. FDIV executed, now ST(0) contain 0.382... (quotient):

The screenshot shows the OllyDbg interface with the following components:

- Disassembly Window:** Shows assembly instructions for the main thread. The instruction at address 0009100C is highlighted: `FDIV QWORD PTR DS:[9C140] FLD QWORD PTR SS:[EBP+10]`. Other instructions include `PUSH EBP`, `MOV EBP,ESP`, `FLD QWORD PTR DS:[9C148]`, `FADD ST(1),ST`, `POP EBP`, `RETN`, `INT3`, `SUB ESP,8`, `FSTP QWORD PTR DS:[9C150]`, `CALL simple.00091000`, `ADD ESP,8`, `FSTP QWORD PTR SS:[ESP]`, `PUSH simple.0009F000`, and `CALL simple.00091000`.
- Registers (FPU) Window:** Shows the state of the floating-point registers. ST0 is highlighted with a red circle and contains the value `0.3821656050955413719`. Other registers (ST1-ST7) are empty. The control word (FCW) is 027F and the precision is NEAR.
- Stack Window:** Shows the stack contents. The stack pointer (ESP) is at address 0040FCB8. The stack contains return addresses for subroutines `simple.00091040` and `simple.00091020`.

Figure 17.2: OllyDbg: FDIV executed



Next: FMUL was executed, now **product** is in ST(0):

The screenshot shows the OllyDbg interface with the following components:

- Disassembly Window:** Shows assembly instructions from address 00091000 to 00091040. The instruction at 00091015 is `FADD ST(1),ST`, which is highlighted. Below it, the instruction at 00091020 is `FSTP QWORD PTR DS:[9C150]`, which is also highlighted. A comment `simple.000910` is visible next to the instruction at 0009103B.
- Registers (FPU) Window:** Shows the status of floating-point registers. ST0 is valid and contains the value `13.93999999999997730`, which is circled in red. ST1 is valid and contains `0.3821656050955413719`. Other registers (ST2-ST7) are empty.
- Registers (GPR) Window:** Shows the status of general-purpose registers. EIP is `00091015`. Other registers (EAX-EDI) are shown with their current values.
- Memory Dump Window:** Shows the memory dump starting at address `0040FCB8`. The dump shows the return sequence from `simple.00091040` to `simple.00091000`.
- Status Bar:** Shows the current status of the floating-point unit, including `ST=13.93999999999997730` and `ST(1)=0.3821656050955413719`.

Figure 17.4: OllyDbg: FMUL executed

Next: FADDP was executed, now result of addition is in ST(0), and ST(1) is cleared:

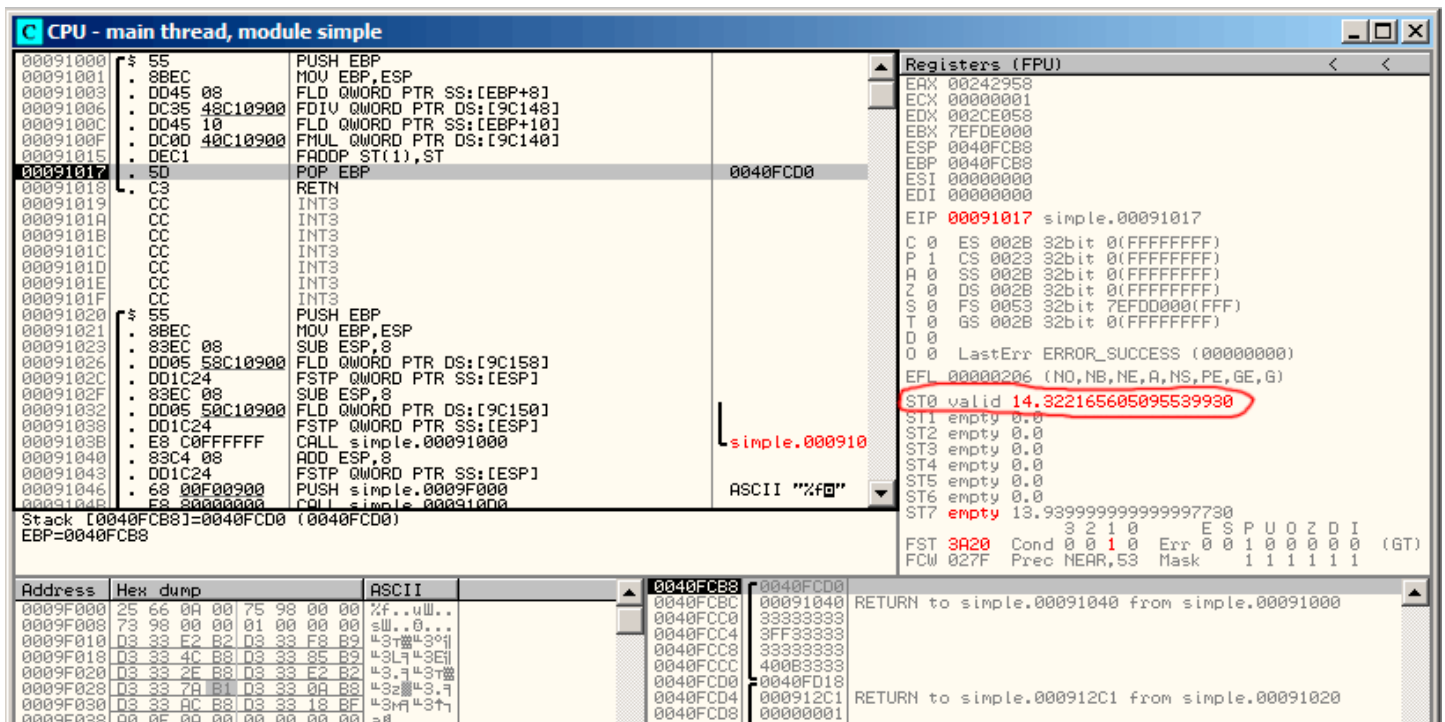


Figure 17.5: OllyDbg: FADDP executed

Result is left in ST(0), because the function returns its value in ST(0). main() will take this value from the register soon.

We also see something unusual: 13.93... value is now located in ST(7). Why?

As I wrote before, FPU registers is stack: 17. But this is simplification. Just imagine if it would be implemented in hardware as it's described, then all the rest 7 register's contents must be moved (or copied) to adjacent registers during pushing and popping, and that's a lot of work. In reality, FPU has just 8 registers and a pointer (called TOP) which has register number, which is current "top of stack". When value is pushed into stack, TOP register is changing and pointing to a next available register, and then a value is written to it. The procedure is reversed if value is popped, however, register which was freed is not cleared (it could be cleared, but this is another work which may degrade performance). So that's what we see here. It can be said, FADDP saved sum in stack, and then popped one element. But in fact, this instruction saved sum and then shifted TOP register. More precisely, FPU registers is circular buffer.

**GCC**

GCC 4.4.1 (with -O3 option) emits the same code, however, slightly different:

Listing 17.2: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```

f
public f
proc near

arg_0 = qword ptr 8
arg_8 = qword ptr 10h

 push ebp
 fld ds:dbl_8048608 ; 3.14

; stack state now: ST(0) = 3.13

 mov ebp, esp
 fdivr [ebp+arg_0]

; stack state now: ST(0) = result of division

 fld ds:dbl_8048610 ; 4.1

; stack state now: ST(0) = 4.1, ST(1) = result of division

```

```

 fmul [ebp+arg_8]
; stack state now: ST(0) = result of multiplication, ST(1) = result of division

 pop ebp
 faddp st(1), st
; stack state now: ST(0) = result of addition

 retn
f endp

```

The difference is that, first of all, 3.14 is pushed to stack (into ST(0)), and then value in `arg_0` is divided by value in the ST(0) register.

FDIVR meaning *Reverse Divide* –to divide with divisor and dividend swapped with each other. There is no likewise instruction for multiplication since multiplication is commutative operation, so we have just FMUL without its -R counterpart.

FADDP adding two values but also popping one value from stack. After that operation, ST(0) holds the sum.

### 17.1.2 ARM: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Until ARM has floating standardized point support, several processor manufacturers may add their own instructions extensions. Then, VFP (*Vector Floating Point*) was standardized.

One important difference from x86, there you working with FPU-stack, but here, in ARM, there are no any stack, you work just with registers.

```

f
 VLDR D16, =3.14
 VMOV D17, R0, R1 ; load a
 VMOV D18, R2, R3 ; load b
 VDIV.F64 D16, D17, D16 ; a/3.14
 VLDR D17, =4.1
 VMUL.F64 D17, D18, D17 ; b*4.1
 VADD.F64 D16, D17, D16 ; +
 VMOV R0, R1, D16
 BX LR

dbl_2C98 DCFD 3.14 ; DATA XREF: f
dbl_2CA0 DCFD 4.1 ; DATA XREF: f+10

```

So, we see here new registers used, with D prefix. These are 64-bit registers, there are 32 of them, and these can be used both for floating-point numbers (double) but also for SIMD (it is called NEON here in ARM). There are also 32 32-bit S-registers, they are intended to be used for single precision floating pointer numbers (float). It is easy to remember: D-registers are intended for double precision numbers, while S-registers –for single precision numbers. More about it: [B.3.3](#).

Both (3.14 and 4.1) constants are stored in memory in IEEE 754 form.

VLDR and VMOV instructions, as it can be easily deduced, are analogous to the LDR and MOV instructions, but they works with D-registers. It should be noted that these instructions, just like D-registers, are intended not only for floating point numbers, but can be also used for SIMD (NEON) operations and this will also be revealed soon.

Arguments are passed to function in common way, via R-registers, however, each number having double precision has size 64-bits, so, for passing each, two R-registers are needed.

``VMOV D17, R0, R1`` at the very beginning, composing two 32-bit values from R0 and R1 into one 64-bit value and saves it to D17.

``VMOV R0, R1, D16`` is inverse operation, what was in D16 leaving in two R0 and R1 registers, since double-precision number, needing 64 bits for storage, is returning in the R0 and R1 registers pair.

VDIV, VMUL and VADD, are instruction for floating point numbers processing, computing, [quotient](#), [product](#) and sum, respectively.

The code for thumb-2 is same.

### 17.1.3 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

f
 PUSH {R3-R7,LR}
 MOVS R7, R2
 MOVS R4, R3
 MOVS R5, R0
 MOVS R6, R1
 LDR R2, =0x66666666 ; 4.1

```

```

 LDR R3, =0x40106666
 MOVS R0, R7
 MOVS R1, R4
 BL __aeabi_dmul
 MOVS R7, R0
 MOVS R4, R1
 LDR R2, =0x51EB851F ; 3.14
 LDR R3, =0x40091EB8
 MOVS R0, R5
 MOVS R1, R6
 BL __aeabi_ddiv
 MOVS R2, R7
 MOVS R3, R4
 BL __aeabi_dadd
 POP {R3-R7,PC}

; 4.1 in IEEE 754 form:
dword_364 DCD 0x66666666 ; DATA XREF: f+A
dword_368 DCD 0x40106666 ; DATA XREF: f+C
; 3.14 in IEEE 754 form:
dword_36C DCD 0x51EB851F ; DATA XREF: f+1A
dword_370 DCD 0x40091EB8 ; DATA XREF: f+1C

```

Keil generated for processor without FPU or NEON support. So, double-precision floating numbers are passed via generic R-registers, and instead of FPU-instructions, service library functions are called (like `__aeabi_dmul`, `__aeabi_ddiv`, `__aeabi_dadd`) which emulates multiplication, division and addition floating-point numbers. Of course, that is slower than FPU-coprocessor, but it is better than nothing.

By the way, similar FPU-emulating libraries were very popular in x86 world when coprocessors were rare and expensive, and were installed only on expensive computers.

FPU-coprocessor emulating called *soft float* or *armel* in ARM world, while using coprocessor's FPU-instructions called *hard float* or *armhf*.

#### 17.1.4 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Very compact code:

```

f:
; D0 = a, D1 = b
 ldr d2, .LC25 ; 3.14
; D2 = 3.14
 fdiv d0, d0, d2
; D0 = D0/D2 = a/3.14
 ldr d2, .LC26 ; 4.1
; D2 = 4.1
 fmadd d0, d1, d2, d0
; D0 = D1*D2+D0 = b*4.1+a/3.14
 ret

; constants in IEEE 754 format
.LC25:
 .word 1374389535 ; 3.14
 .word 1074339512
.LC26:
 .word 1717986918 ; 4.1
 .word 1074816614

```

#### 17.1.5 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

f:
 sub sp, sp, #16
 str d0, [sp,8] ; store a in Register Save Area
 str d1, [sp] ; store b in Register Save Area
 ldr x1, [sp,8]
; X1 = a
 ldr x0, .LC25
; X0 = 3.14
 fmov d0, x1

```

```

 fmov d1, x0
; D0 = a, D1 = 3.14
 fdiv d0, d0, d1
; D0 = D0/D1 = a/3.14

 fmov x1, d0
; X1 = a/3.14
 ldr x2, [sp]
; X2 = b
 ldr x0, .LC26
; X0 = 4.1
 fmov d0, x2
; D0 = b
 fmov d1, x0
; D1 = 4.1
 fmul d0, d0, d1
; D0 = D0*D1 = b*4.1

 fmov x0, d0
; X0 = D0 = b*4.1
 fmov d0, x1
; D0 = a/3.14
 fmov d1, x0
; D1 = X0 = b*4.1
 fadd d0, d0, d1
; D0 = D0+D1 = a/3.14 + b*4.1

; redundant code:
 fmov x0, d0
 fmov d0, x0
 add sp, sp, 16
 ret

.LC25:
 .word 1374389535 ; 3.14
 .word 1074339512

.LC26:
 .word 1717986918 ; 4.1
 .word 1074816614

```

Non-optimizing GCC is more verbose. There are a lot of unnecessary value shuffling, including clearly redundant code (last two FMOV instructions). Probably, GCC 4.9 is not yet good on generating ARM64 code. What is worth to note is that ARM64 has 64-bit registers, and D-registers are 64-bit ones as well. So the compiler is free to save values of *double* type in GPR's instead of local stack. This wasn't possible on 32-bit CPUs.

And again, as an exercise, you can try to optimize this function manually, without introducing new instructions like FMADD.

## 17.2 Passing floating point number via arguments

```

#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main ()
{
 printf ("32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n", pow (32.01,1.54));

 return 0;
}

```

### 17.2.1 x86

Let's see what we got in (MSVC 2010):

Listing 17.3: MSVC 2010

```

CONST SEGMENT
__real@40400147ae147ae1 DQ 040400147ae147ae1r ; 32.01
__real@3ff8a3d70a3d70a4 DQ 03ff8a3d70a3d70a4r ; 1.54

```

```

CONST ENDS

_main PROC
 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 sub esp, 8 ; allocate place for the first variable
 fld QWORD PTR __real@3ff8a3d70a3d70a4
 fstp QWORD PTR [esp]
 sub esp, 8 ; allocate place for the second variable
 fld QWORD PTR __real@40400147ae147ae1
 fstp QWORD PTR [esp]
 call _pow
 add esp, 8 ; "return back" place of one variable.

; in local stack here 8 bytes still reserved for us.
; result now in ST(0)

 fstp QWORD PTR [esp] ; move result from ST(0) to local stack for printf()
 push OFFSET $SG2651
 call _printf
 add esp, 12
 xor eax, eax
 pop ebp
 ret 0
_main ENDP

```

FLD and FSTP are moving variables from/to data segment to FPU stack. `pow()`<sup>12</sup> taking both values from FPU-stack and returns result in the ST(0) register. `printf()` takes 8 bytes from local stack and interpret them as *double* type variable.

By the way, pair of MOV instructions could be used here for moving values from memory into stack: because values in memory are stored in IEEE 754 format, and `pow()` also takes them in this format, so, no conversion is necessary. That's how it's done in the next ARM example: [17.2.2](#).

## 17.2.2 ARM + Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

```

_main
var_C = -0xC

 PUSH {R7,LR}
 MOV R7, SP
 SUB SP, SP, #4
 VLDR D16, =32.01
 VMOV R0, R1, D16
 VLDR D16, =1.54
 VMOV R2, R3, D16
 BLX _pow
 VMOV D16, R0, R1
 MOV R0, 0xFC1 ; "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n"
 ADD R0, PC
 VMOV R1, R2, D16
 BLX _printf
 MOVS R1, 0
 STR R0, [SP,#0xC+var_C]
 MOV R0, R1
 ADD SP, SP, #4
 POP {R7,PC}

dbl_2F90 DCFD 32.01 ; DATA XREF: _main+6
dbl_2F98 DCFD 1.54 ; DATA XREF: _main+E

```

As I wrote before, 64-bit floating pointer numbers are passed in R-registers pairs. This code is redundant for a little (certainly because optimization is turned off), since it is actually possible to load values into R-registers directly without touching D-registers.

So, as we see, `_pow` function receiving first argument in R0 and R1, and the second one in R2 and R3. Function leaves result in R0 and R1. Result of `_pow` is moved into D16, then in R1 and R2 pair, from where `printf()` will take the resulting number.

<sup>12</sup>standard C function, raises a number to the given power (exponentiation)



### 17.2.3 ARM + Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

_main
 STMFD SP!, {R4-R6,LR}
 LDR R2, =0xA3D70A4 ; y
 LDR R3, =0x3FF8A3D7
 LDR R0, =0xAE147AE1 ; x
 LDR R1, =0x40400147
 BL pow
 MOV R4, R0
 MOV R2, R4
 MOV R3, R1
 ADR R0, a32_011_54Lf ; "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n"
 BL __2printf
 MOV R0, #0
 LDMFD SP!, {R4-R6,PC}

y DCD 0xA3D70A4 ; DATA XREF: _main+4
dword_520 DCD 0x3FF8A3D7 ; DATA XREF: _main+8
; double x
x DCD 0xAE147AE1 ; DATA XREF: _main+C
dword_528 DCD 0x40400147 ; DATA XREF: _main+10
a32_011_54Lf DCB "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf",0xA,0
; DATA XREF: _main+24

```

D-registers are not used here, only R-register pairs are used.

### 17.2.4 ARM64 + Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

f:
 stp x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
 add x29, sp, 0
 ldr d1, .LC1 ; load 1.54 into D1
 ldr d0, .LC0 ; load 32.01 into D0
 bl pow
; result of pow() in D0
 adrp x0, .LC2
 add x0, x0, :lo12:LC2
 bl printf
 mov w0, 0
 ldp x29, x30, [sp], 16
 ret

.LC0:
; 32.01 in IEEE 754 format
 .word -1374389535
 .word 1077936455

.LC1:
; 1.54 in IEEE 754 format
 .word 171798692
 .word 1073259479

.LC2:
 .string "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n"

```

Constants are loaded into D0 and D1: pow() function will take them there. Result is in D0 after execution of pow(). It is passed into printf() without any modification and moving, because printf() takes arguments of [integral types](#) and pointers from X-registers, and floating pointer arguments from D-registers.

## 17.3 Comparison example

Let's try this:

```

#include <stdio.h>

double d_max (double a, double b)
{
 if (a>b)
 return a;
}

```

```

 return b;
};

int main()
{
 printf ("%f\n", d_max (1.2, 3.4));
 printf ("%f\n", d_max (5.6, -4));
};

```

Despite simplicity of the function, it will be harder to understand how it works.

### 17.3.1 x86

#### Non-optimizing MSVC

MSVC 2010 generated:

Listing 17.4: MSVC 2010

```

PUBLIC _d_max
_TEXT SEGMENT
_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_d_max PROC
 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 fld QWORD PTR _b$[ebp]

; current stack state: ST(0) = _b
; compare _b (ST(0)) and _a, and pop register

 fcomp QWORD PTR _a$[ebp]

; stack is empty here

 fnstsw ax
 test ah, 5
 jp SHORT $LN1@d_max

; we are here only if a>b

 fld QWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
 jmp SHORT $LN2@d_max
$LN1@d_max:
 fld QWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
$LN2@d_max:
 pop ebp
 ret 0
_d_max ENDP

```

So, FLD loading `_b` into the `ST(0)` register.

FCOMP compares the value in the `ST(0)` register with what is in `_a` value and set `C3/C2/C0` bits in FPU status word register. This is 16-bit register reflecting current state of FPU.

After bits are set, the FCOMP instruction also popping one variable from stack. This is what distinguish it from FCOM, which is just comparing values, leaving the stack at the same state.

Unfortunately, CPU before Intel P6<sup>13</sup> has not any conditional jumps instructions which are checking `C3/C2/C0` bits. Probably, it is a matter of history (remember: FPU was separate chip in past).

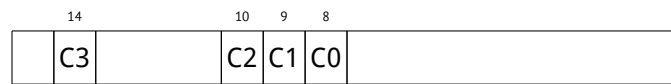
Modern CPU starting at Intel P6 has FCOMI/FCOMIP/FUCOMI/FUCOMIP instructions –which does the same, but modifies CPU flags ZF/PF/CF.

So the FNSTSW instruction copies FPU status word register to the AX. Bits `C3/C2/C0` are placed at positions 14/10/8, they will be at the same positions in the AX register and all they are placed in high part of the AX –AH.

- If  $b > a$  in our example, then `C3/C2/C0` bits will be set as following: 0, 0, 0.
- If  $a > b$ , then bits will be set: 0, 0, 1.
- If  $a = b$ , then bits will be set: 1, 0, 0.
- If result is unordered (in case of error), then bits will be set: 1, 1, 1.

<sup>13</sup>Intel P6 is Pentium Pro, Pentium II, etc

This is how C3/C2/C0 bits are located in the AX register:



This is how C3/C2/C0 bits are located in the AH register:



After `test ah, 5` execution<sup>14</sup>, only C0 and C2 bits (on 0 and 2 position) will be considered, all other bits will be ignored.

Now let's talk about *parity flag*. Another notable epoch rudiment.

This flag is to be set to 1 if number of ones in last calculation result is even. And to 0 if odd.

Let's look into Wikipedia<sup>15</sup>:

One common reason to test the parity flag actually has nothing to do with parity. The FPU has four condition flags (C0 to C3), but they can not be tested directly, and must instead be first copied to the flags register. When this happens, C0 is placed in the carry flag, C2 in the parity flag and C3 in the zero flag. The C2 flag is set when e.g. incomparable floating point values (NaN or unsupported format) are compared with the FUCOM instructions.

As noted in Wikipedia, the parity flag used sometimes in FPU code and let's see how.

The PF flag will be set to 1 if both C0 and C2 are set to 0 or both are 1. And then following `JP (jump if PF==1)` will be triggered. If we recall values of the C3/C2/C0 for various cases, we will see the conditional jump JP will be triggered in two cases: if  $b > a$  or  $a = b$  (C3 bit is not considering here since it was cleared while execution of the `test ah, 5` instruction).

It is all simple thereafter. If conditional jump was triggered, `FLD` will load the `_b` value to the `ST(0)` register, and if it is not triggered, the value of the `_a` variable will be loaded.

### What about C2 flag checking?

C2 flag is set in case of error (NaN, etc), but our code doesn't check it. If programmer is aware about FPU errors, he/she must add additional checks.

<sup>14</sup>5=1001b

<sup>15</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parity\\_flag](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parity_flag)

First OllyDbg example: a=1.2 and b=3.4

Let's load the example into OllyDbg:

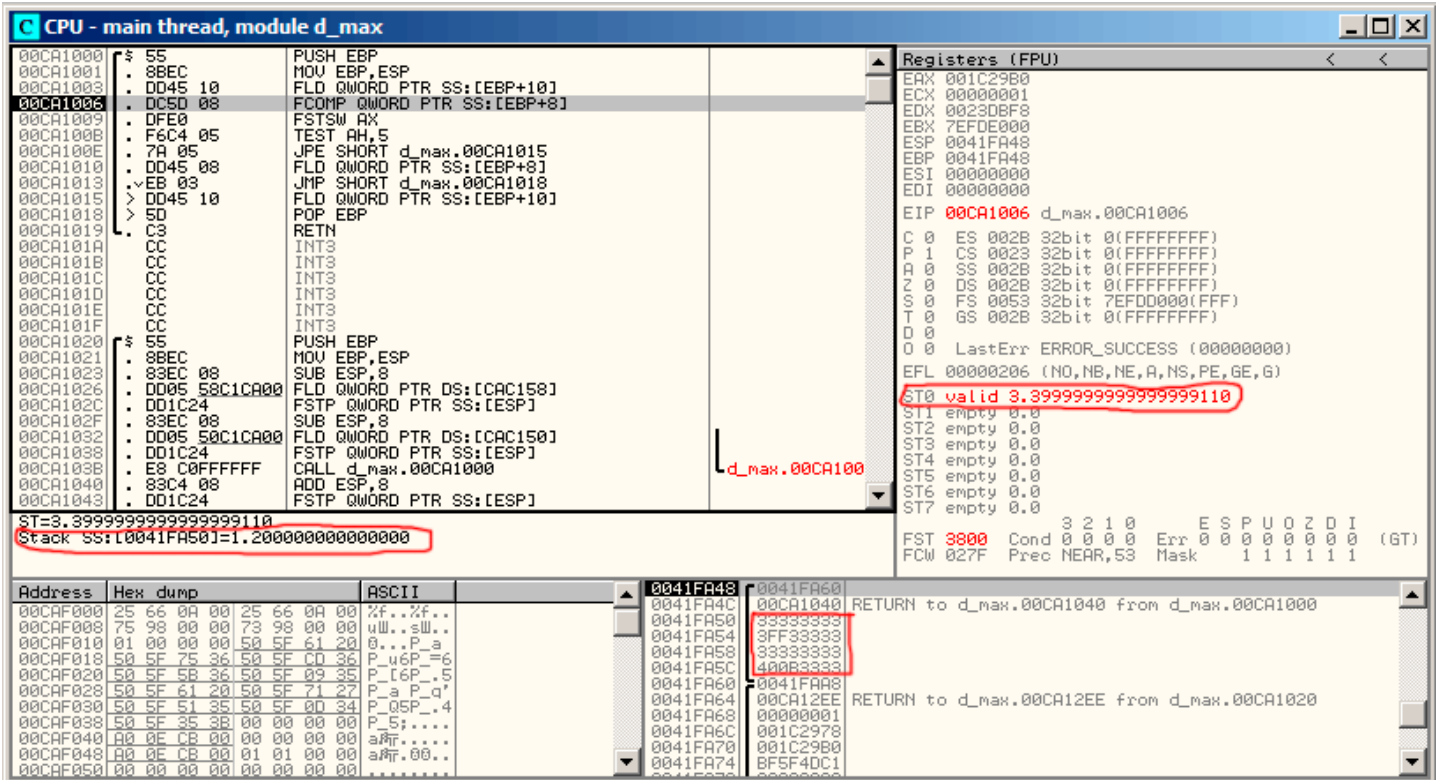


Figure 17.6: OllyDbg: first FLD is executed

Current function arguments are:  $a = 1.2$  and  $b = 3.4$  (We can see them in stack: two pairs of 32-bit values).  $b$  (3.4) already loaded in `ST(0)`. `FCOMP` will be executed now. OllyDbg show the second `FCOMP` argument, which is in stack right now.

FCOMP is executed:

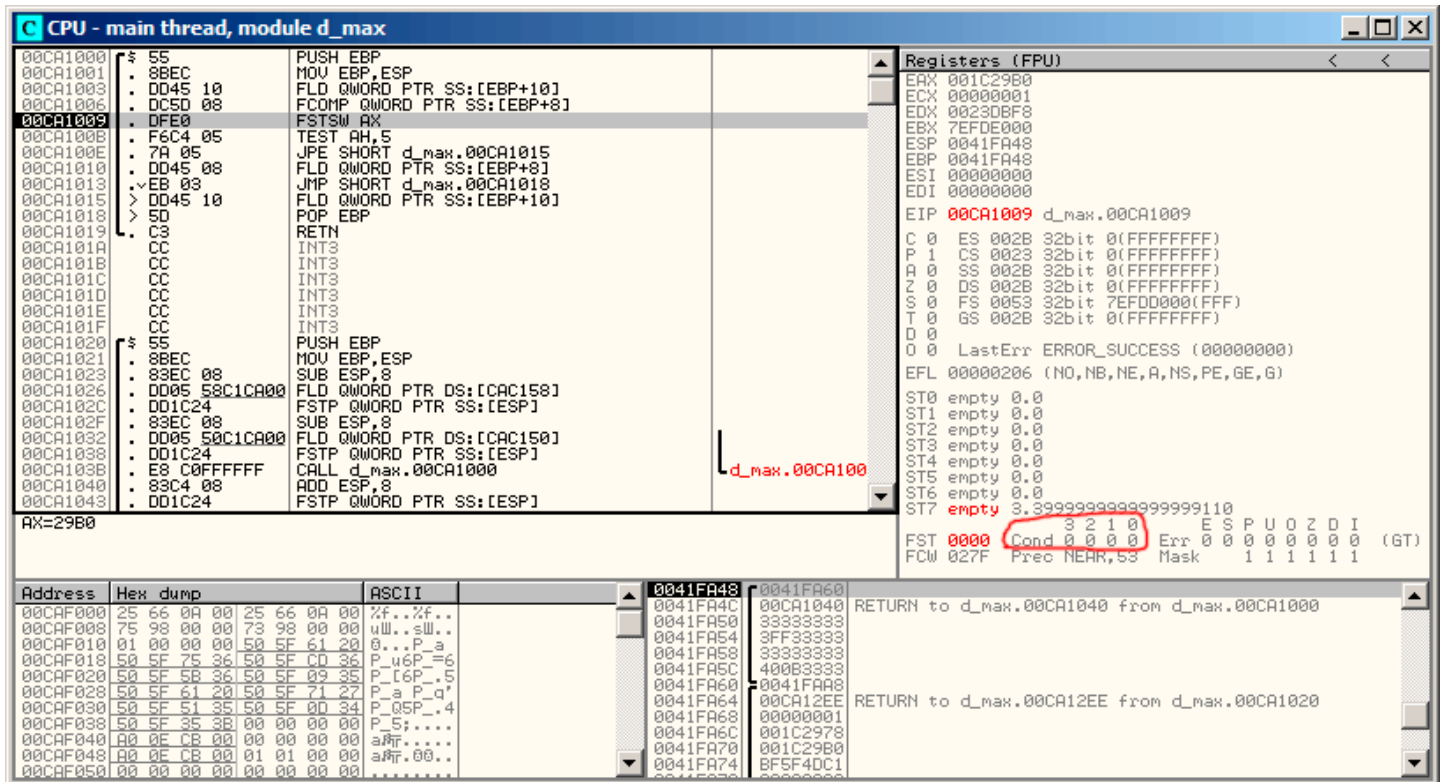


Figure 17.7: OllyDbg: FCOMP is executed

We see FPU condition flags state: all zeroes. Popped value is reflected as ST(7), I wrote earlier about reason of this: 17.1.1.

FNSTSW is executed:

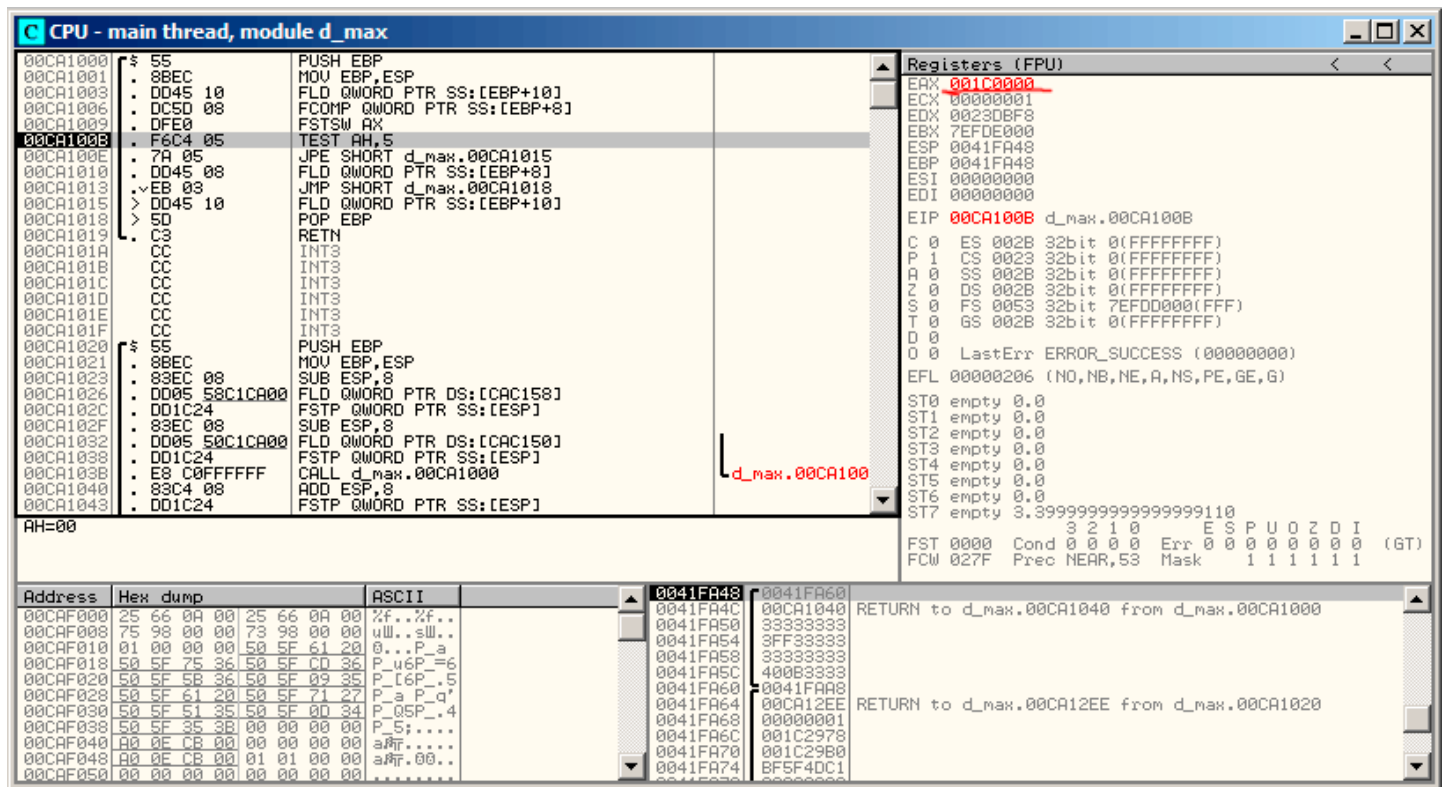


Figure 17.8: OllyDbg: FNSTSW is executed

We see that AX register contain zeroes: indeed, all condition flags has zeroes. (OllyDbg disassembles FNSTSW instruction as FSTSW – they are synonyms).

TEST is executed:

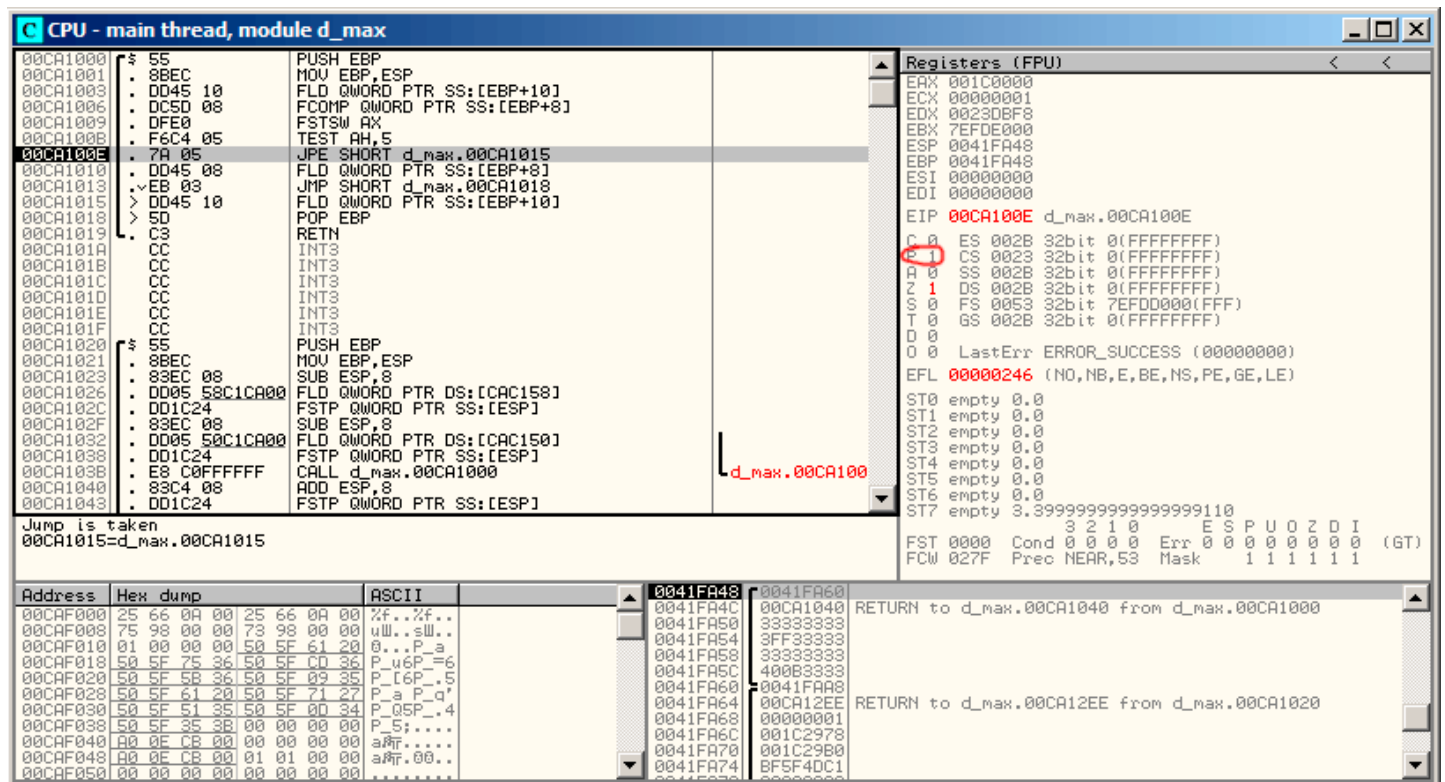


Figure 17.9: OllyDbg: TEST is executed

PF flag is one. Indeed: number of bits set in 0 is 0 and 0 is even number. OllyDbg disassembles JP as [JPE<sup>16</sup>](#) – they are synonyms. And it will be triggered right now.

<sup>16</sup>Jump Parity Even (x86 instruction)

JPE triggered, FLD loads *b* (3.4) value into ST(0):

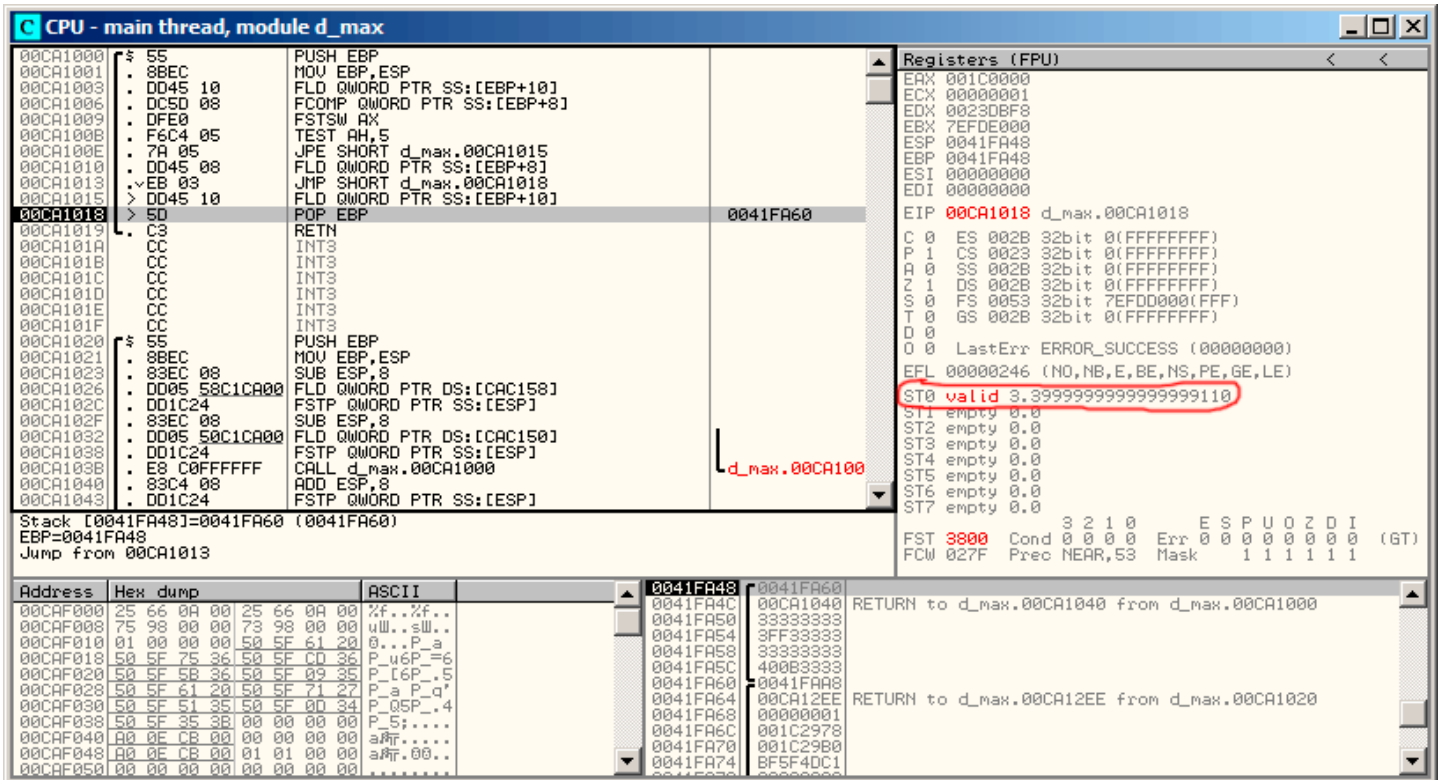


Figure 17.10: OllyDbg: second FLD is executed

The function finishes its work.



Second OllyDbg example: a=5.6 and b=-4

Let's load example into OllyDbg:

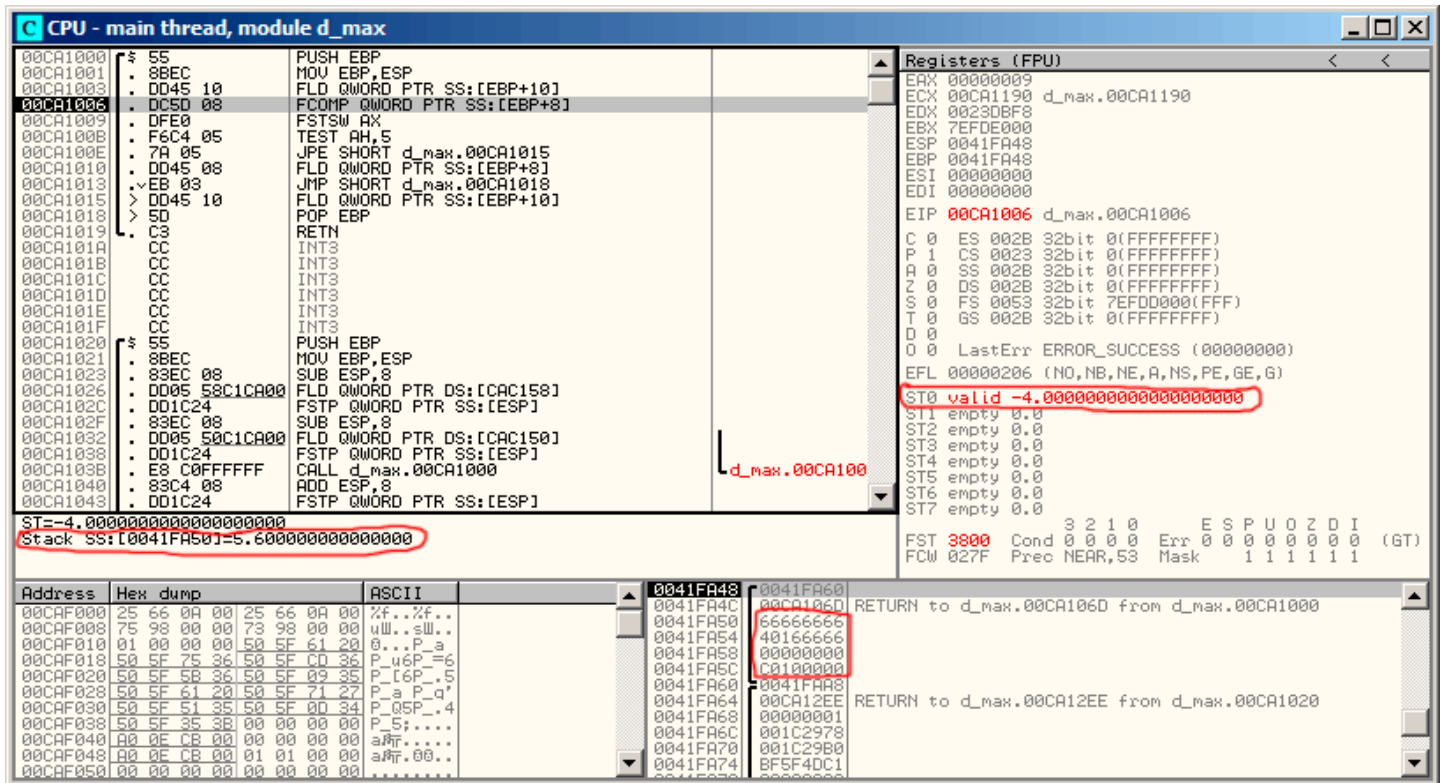


Figure 17.11: OllyDbg: first FLD executed

Current function arguments are:  $a = 5.6$  and  $b = -4$ .  $b$  ( $-4$ ) is already loaded into ST(0). FCOMP will be executed now. OllyDbg shows second FCOMP argument which is in stack right now.

FCOMP executed:

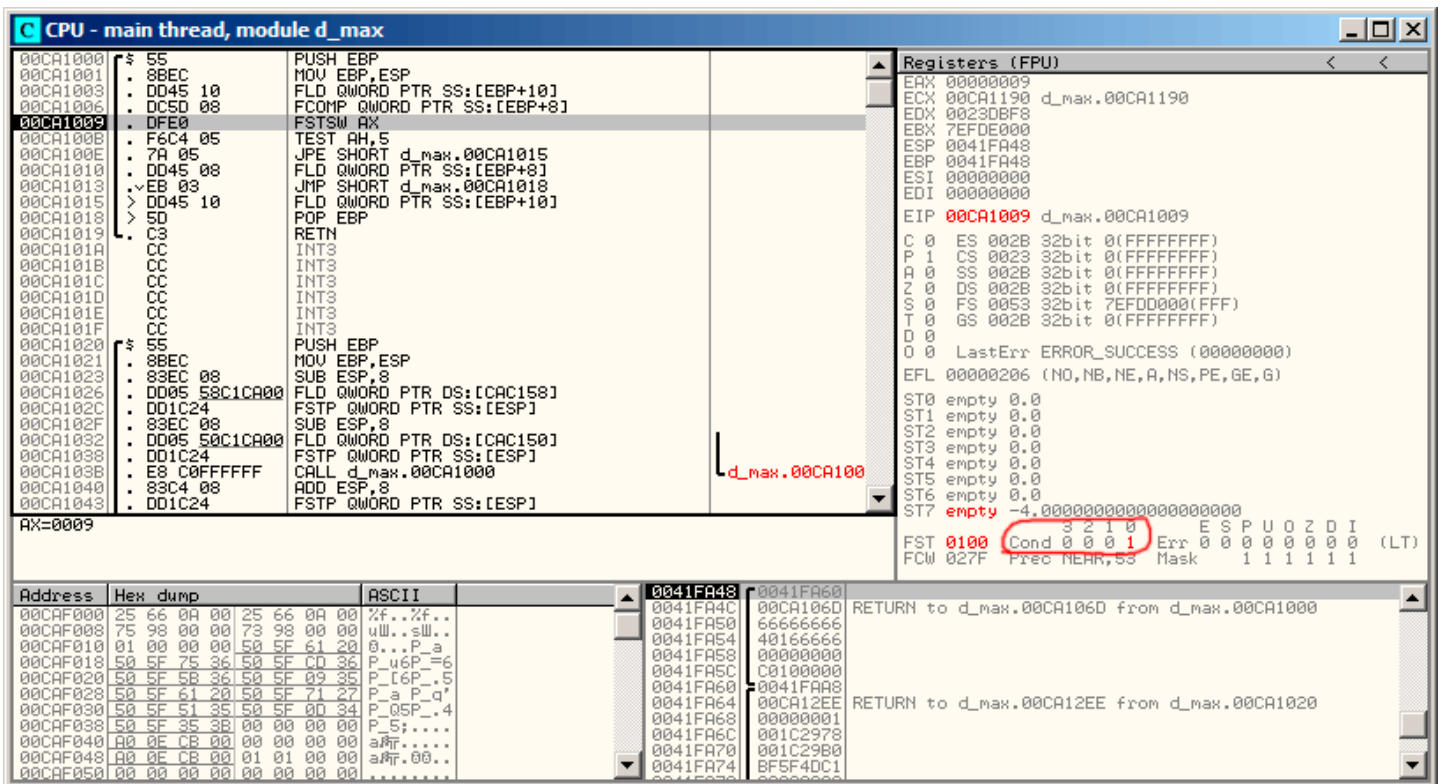


Figure 17.12: OllyDbg: FCOMP executed

We see FPU condition flags state: all zeroes except of C0.

FNSTSW executed:

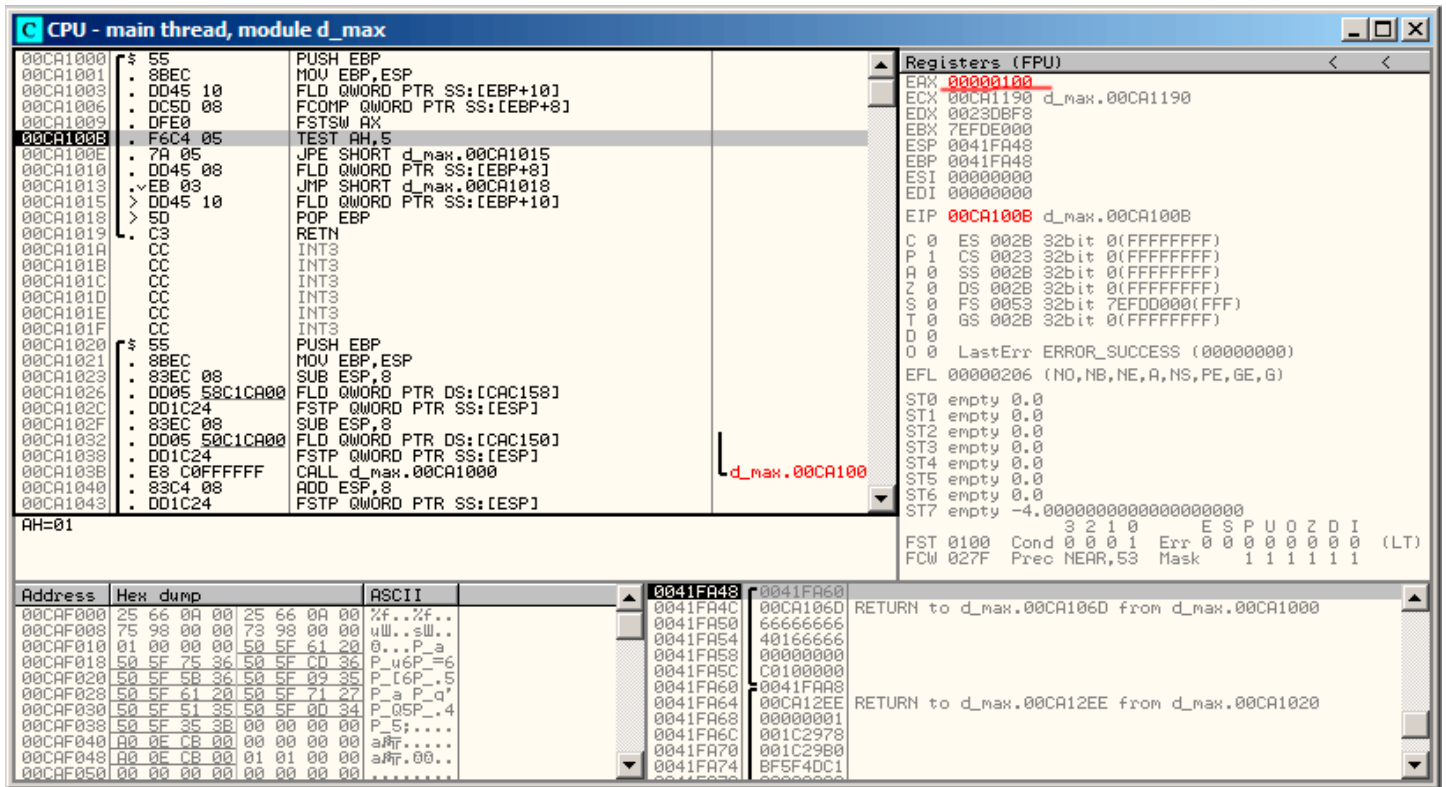


Figure 17.13: OllyDbg: FNSTSW executed

We see that AX register contain 0x100: C0 flag now at the place of 16th bit.

TEST executed:

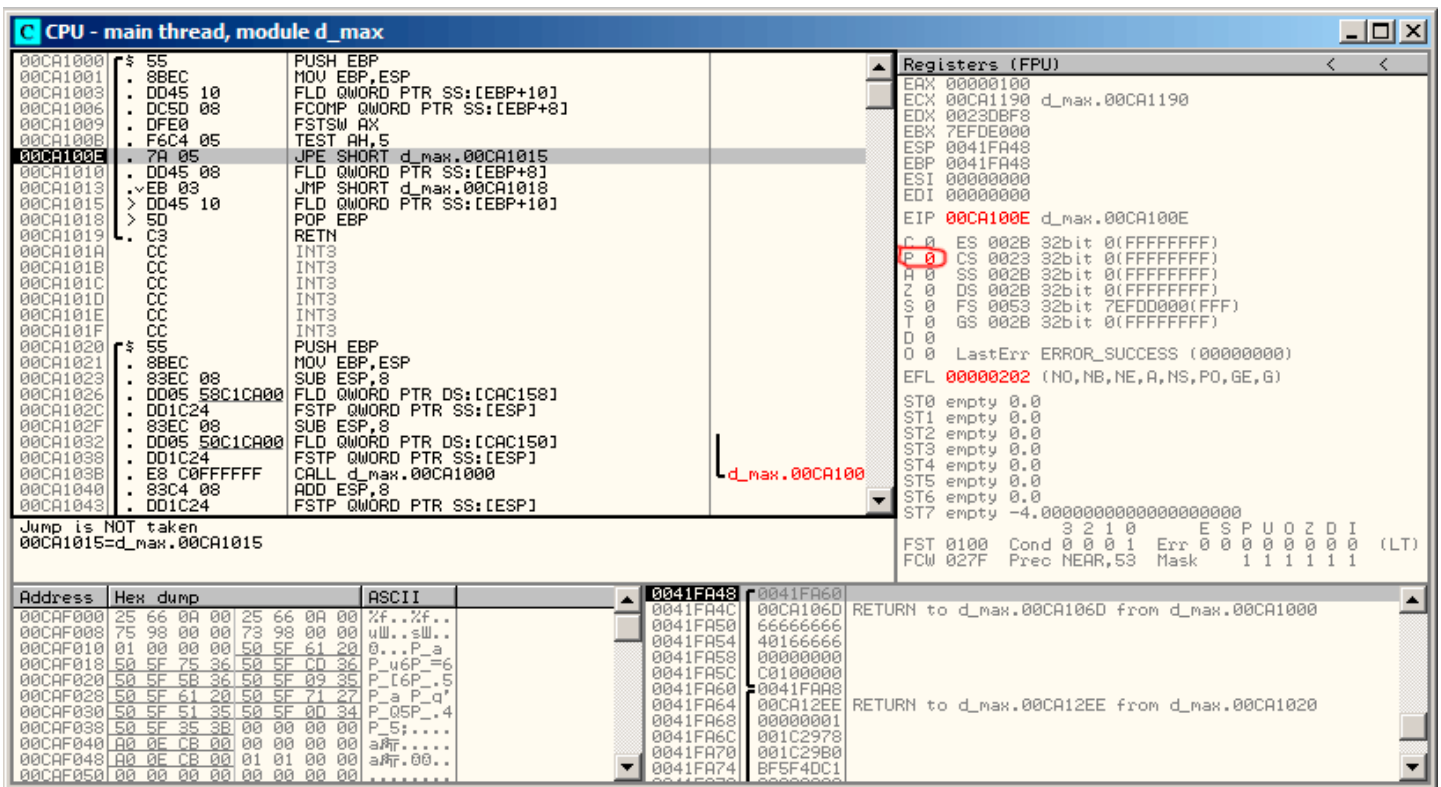


Figure 17.14: OllyDbg: TEST executed

PF flag is cleared. Indeed: count of bits set in 0x100 is 1 and 1 is odd number. `JPE` will not be triggered now.

JPE wasn't triggered, FLD loads *a* value (5.6) into ST(0):

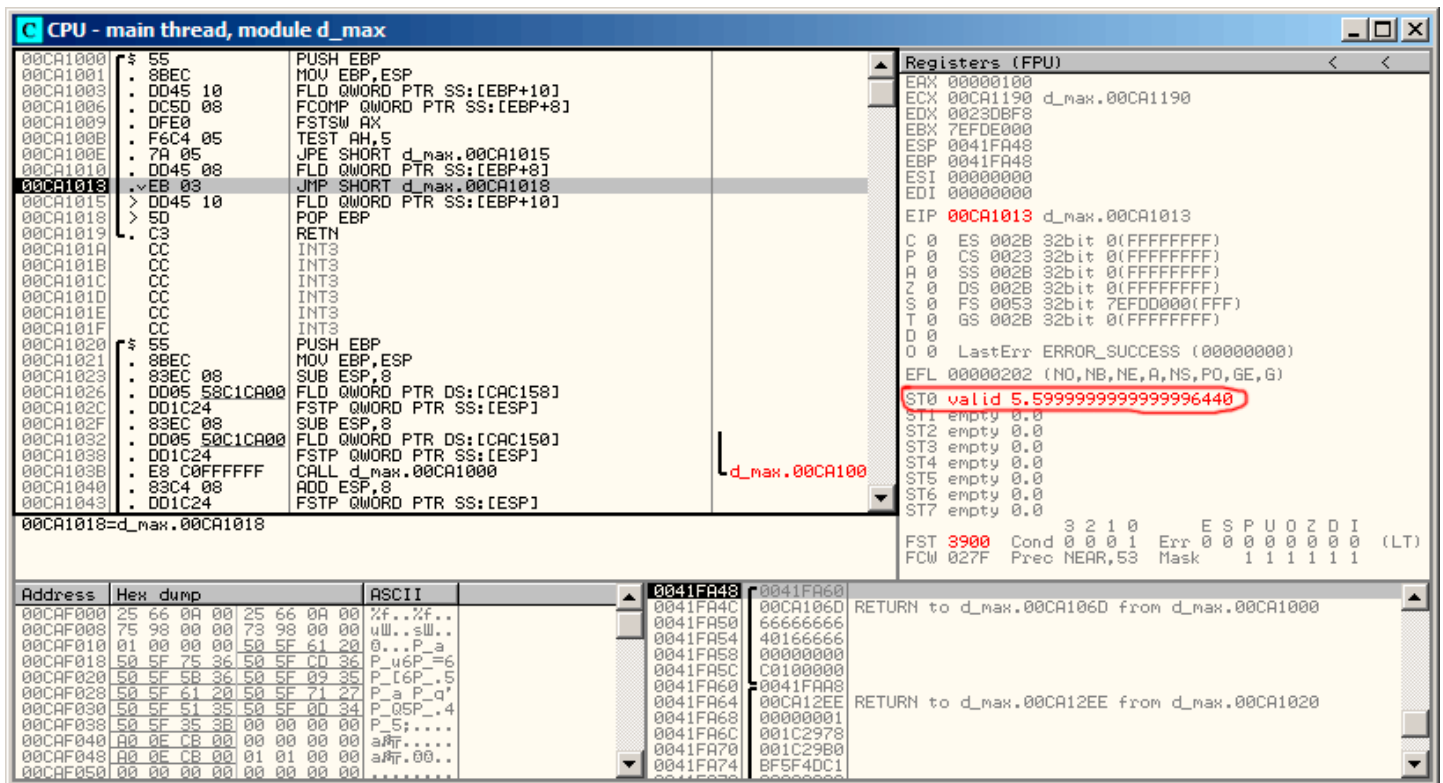


Figure 17.15: OllyDbg: second FLD executed

The function finishes its work.

**Optimizing MSVC 2010**

Listing 17.5: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_d_max PROC
 fld QWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
 fld QWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]

; current stack state: ST(0) = _a, ST(1) = _b

 fcom ST(1) ; compare _a and ST(1) = (_b)
 fnstsw ax
 test ah, 65 ; 00000041H
 jne SHORT $LN5@d_max
 fstp ST(1) ; copy ST(0) to ST(1) and pop register, leave (_a) on top

; current stack state: ST(0) = _a

 ret 0
$LN5@d_max:
 fstp ST(0) ; copy ST(0) to ST(0) and pop register, leave (_b) on top

; current stack state: ST(0) = _b

 ret 0
_d_max ENDP

```

FCOM is distinguished from FCOMP in that sense that it just comparing values and leaves FPU stack in the same state. Unlike previous example, operands here in reverse order. And that is why result of comparison in the C3/C2/C0 will be different:

- If  $a > b$  in our example, then C3/C2/C0 bits will be set as: 0, 0, 0.

- If  $b > a$ , then bits will be set as: 0, 0, 1.
- If  $a = b$ , then bits will be set as: 1, 0, 0.

It can be said, `test ah, 65` instruction just leaves two bits –C3 and C0. Both will be zeroes if  $a > b$ : in that case JNE jump will not be triggered. Then `FSTP ST(1)` is following –this instruction copies value in the ST(0) into operand and popping one value from FPU stack. In other words, the instruction copies ST(0) (where `_a` value is now) into the ST(1). After that, two values of the `_a` are at the top of stack now. After that, one value is popping. After that, ST(0) will contain `_a` and function is finished.

Conditional JNE jump is triggered in two cases: if  $b > a$  or  $a = b$ . ST(0) will be copied into ST(0), it is just like idle (NOP) operation, then one value is popping from stack and top of stack (ST(0)) will contain what was in the ST(1) before (that is `_b`). Then function finishes. The reason this instruction is used here probably is because FPU has no other instruction to pop value from the stack and discard it.

First OllyDbg example: a=1.2 and b=3.4

Both FLD executed:

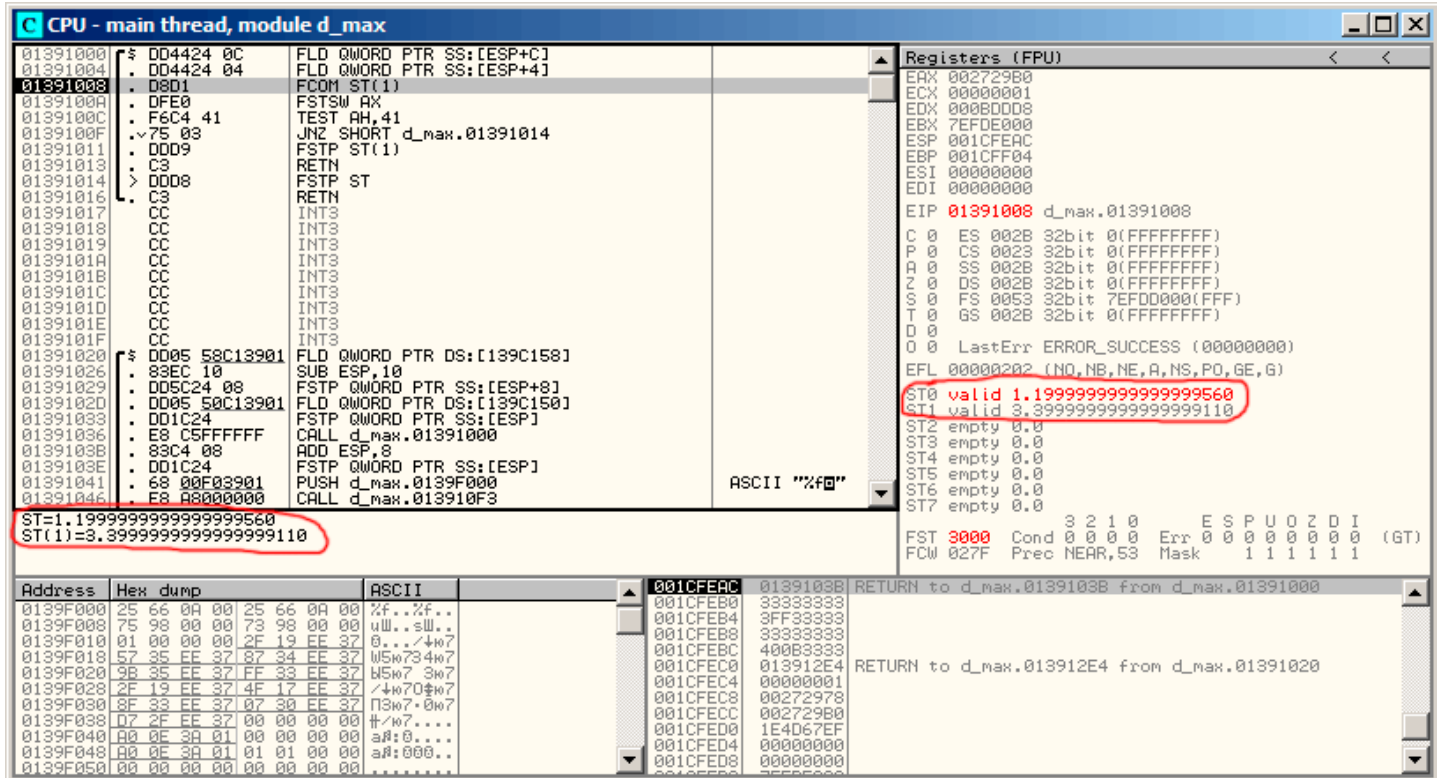


Figure 17.16: OllyDbg: both FLD are executed

FComp being executed: OllyDbg shows contents of ST(0) and ST(1), for convenience.



FCOM is done:

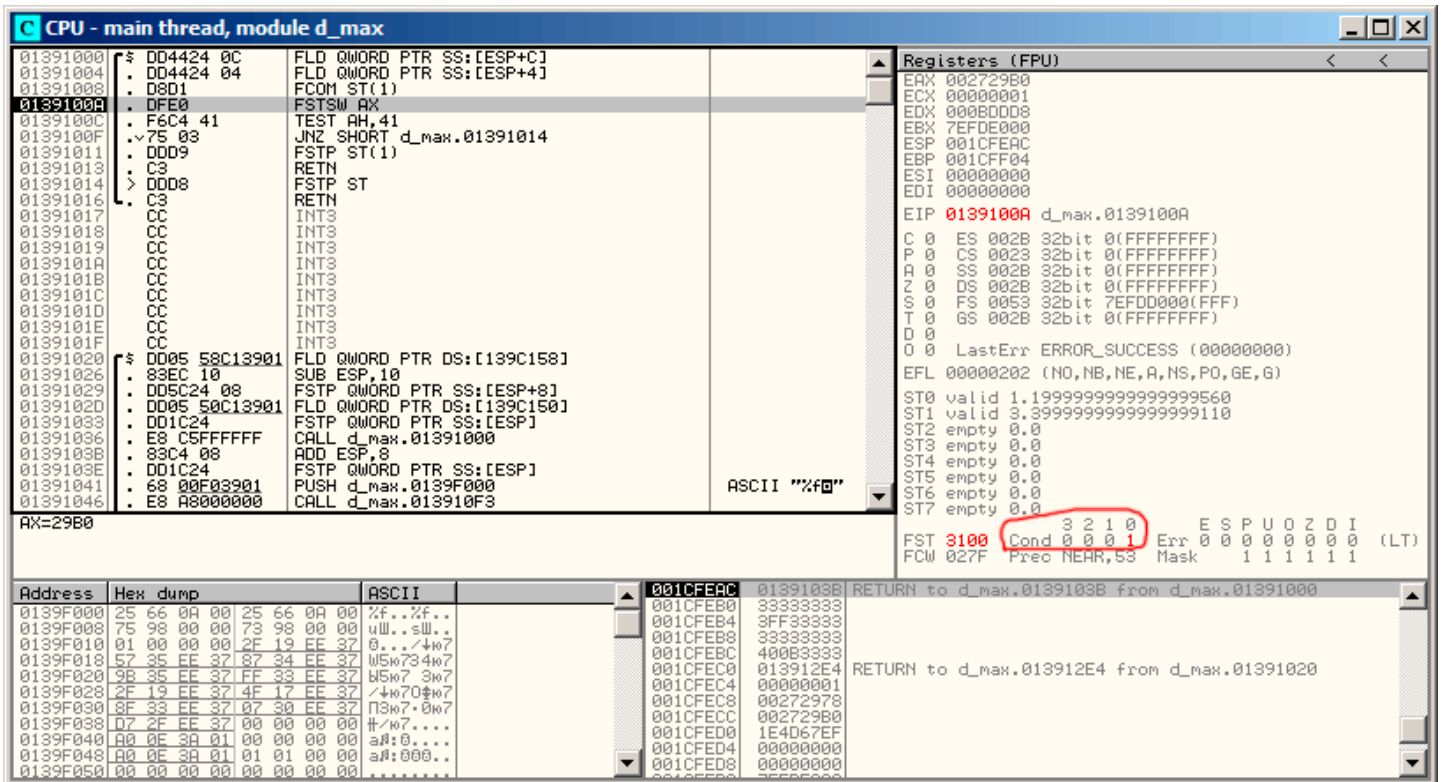


Figure 17.17: OllyDbg: FCOM is executed

C0 is set, all other condition flags are cleared.



FNSTSW is done, AX=0x3100:

The screenshot displays the OllyDbg interface with the following components:

- Assembly Window:** Shows assembly instructions starting at address 01391000. Key instructions include:
  - 01391000: FLD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+C]
  - 01391004: FLD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4]
  - 01391008: FCOM ST(1)
  - 0139100C: FSTSW AX
  - 01391010: TEST AH,41
  - 01391011: JNZ SHORT d\_max.01391014
  - 01391013: FSTP ST(1)
  - 01391014: RETN
  - 01391016: FSTP ST
  - 01391017: RETN
  - 01391018-0139101F: INT3 instructions.
  - 01391020: FLD QWORD PTR DS:[139C1501]
  - 01391022: SUB ESP,10
  - 01391024: FSTP QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+0]
  - 01391026: FLD QWORD PTR DS:[139C1501]
  - 01391028: FSTP QWORD PTR SS:[ESP]
  - 0139102A: CALL d\_max.01391000
  - 0139102C: ADD ESP,8
  - 0139102E: FSTP QWORD PTR SS:[ESP]
  - 01391030: PUSH d\_max.0139F000
  - 01391032: CALL d\_max.013910F3
- Registers (FPU) Window:** Shows the state of floating-point registers. EAX is highlighted as 00273100. Other registers like ECX, EDI, etc., are shown with their values.
- Memory Dump Window:** Shows a hex dump of memory starting at address 001CFEAC. The hex values are 25 66 0A 00 25 66 0A 00, and the corresponding ASCII characters are %f..%f..

Figure 17.18: OllyDbg: FNSTSW is executed

TEST is executed:

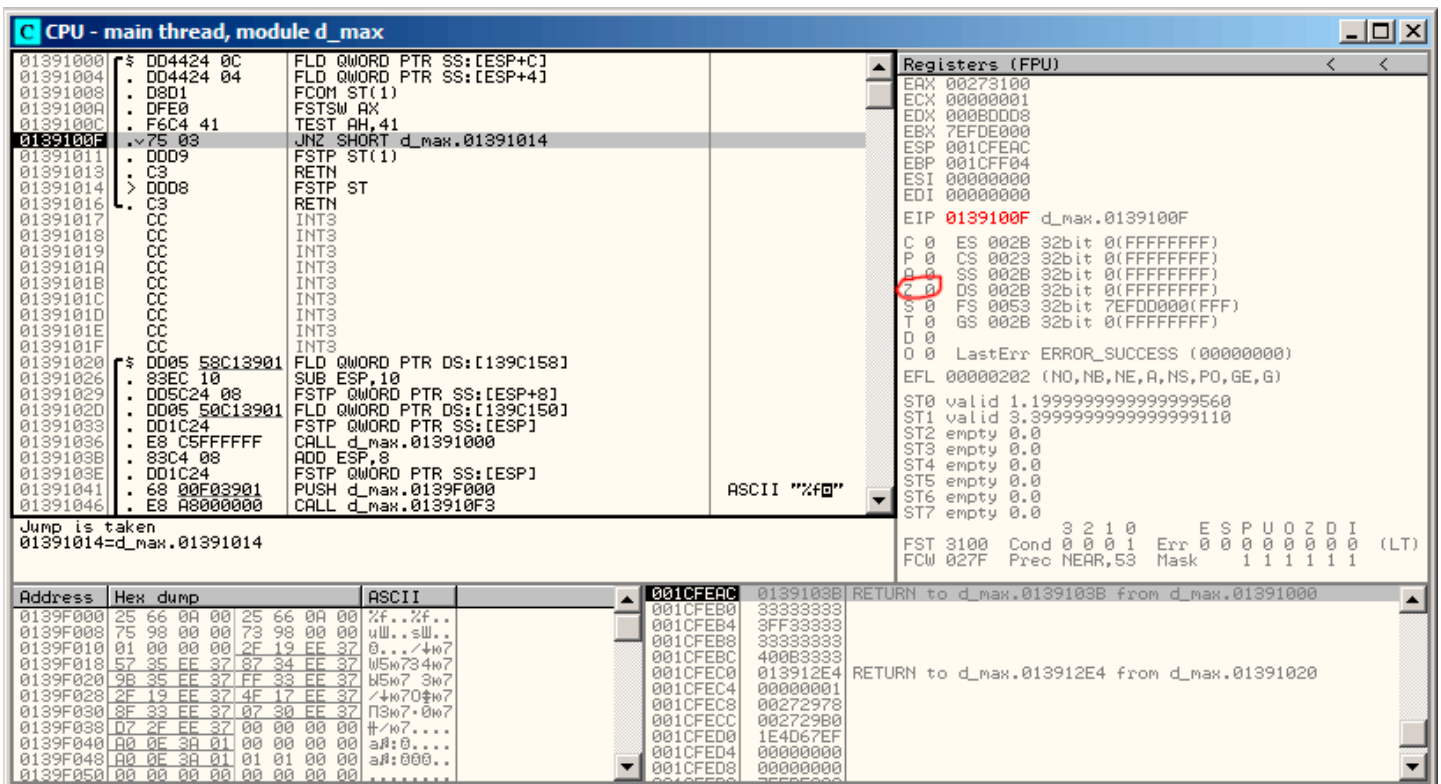


Figure 17.19: OllyDbg: TEST is executed

ZF=0, conditional jump will trigger now.

FSTP ST (or FSTP ST(0)) executed: 1.2 was popped from the stack, and 3.4 was left on top of it:

The screenshot shows the OllyDbg interface with the following details:

- Registers (FPU):** ST0 valid 3.3999999999999999110 (highlighted in red). Other registers (ST1-ST7) are empty.
- Registers (GPR):** EIP 01391016 d\_max.01391016. Other registers (EAX-EDI) are zero.
- Assembly:**

```

01391016 C3 RETN
01391017 CC INT3
01391018 CC INT3
01391019 CC INT3
0139101A CC INT3
0139101B CC INT3
0139101C CC INT3
0139101D CC INT3
0139101E CC INT3
0139101F CC INT3
01391020 DD05 58C13901 FLD QWORD PTR DS:[139C158]
01391021 83EC 10 SUB ESP,10
01391022 DD5C24 08 FSTP QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+8]
01391023 DD05 50C13901 FLD QWORD PTR DS:[139C150]
01391024 DD1C24 FSTP QWORD PTR SS:[ESP]
01391025 E8 C5FFFFFF CALL d_max.01391000
01391026 83C4 08 ADD ESP,8
01391027 DD1C24 FSTP QWORD PTR SS:[ESP]
01391028 68 00F03901 PUSH d_max.0139F000
01391029 E8 A8000000 CALL d_max.013910F3

```
- Stack:** Address 001CFEAC contains the value 0139103B. Address 001CFE8 contains the value 013912E4.

Figure 17.20: OllyDbg: FSTP is executed

We see that the FSTP ST instruction works just like popping one value from FPU-stack.

Second OllyDbg example: a=5.6 and b=-4

Both FLD executed:

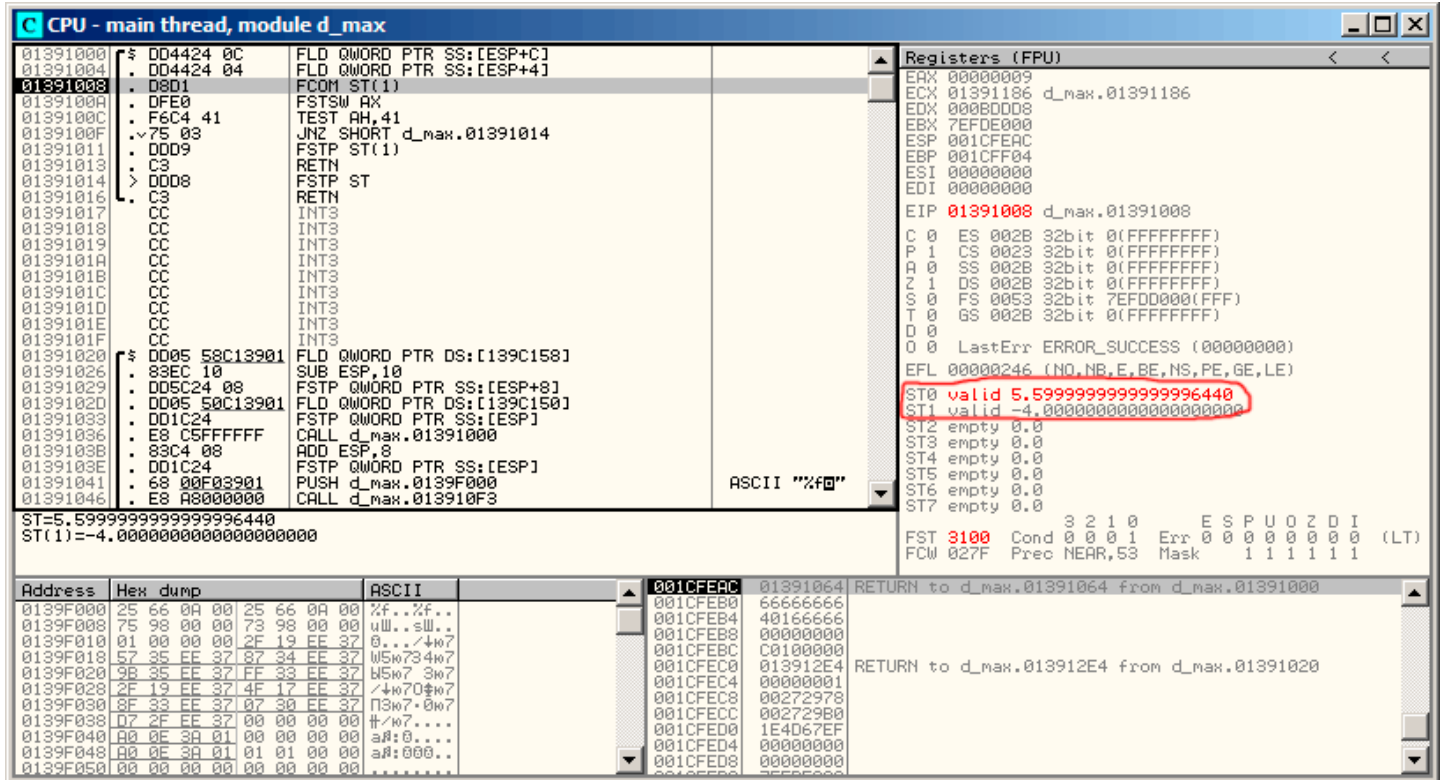


Figure 17.21: OllyDbg: both FLD are executed

FCOMP being executed.

FCOM done:

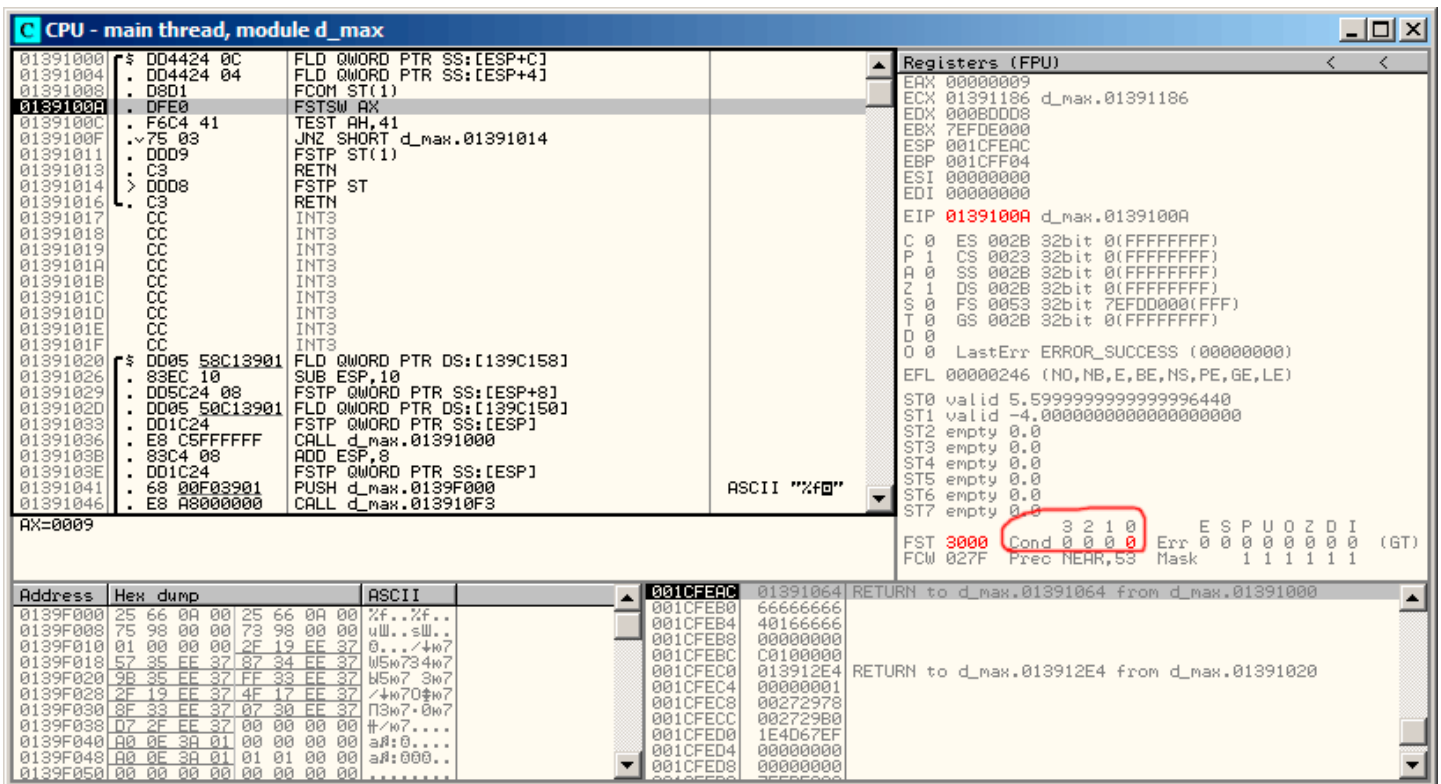


Figure 17.22: OllyDbg: FCOM is executed

All condition-flags are cleared.

FNSTSW done, AX=0x3000:

The screenshot displays the OllyDbg interface with three main panes:

- Assembly Window:** Shows assembly instructions at addresses 01391000 to 01391046. The instruction at 0139100C is `TEST AH,41`, which is highlighted. Other instructions include `FLD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+C]`, `FCOM ST(1)`, `RETN`, and `CALL d_max.01391000`.
- Registers (FPU) Window:** Shows the state of the x87 registers. `EAX` is `0003000`. Other registers like `ECX`, `EDX`, `EBX`, etc., are also listed with their values.
- Memory Dump Window:** Shows a hex dump of memory starting at address `001CFEAC`. The hex values are `25 66 0A 00 25 66 0A 00`, and the corresponding ASCII characters are `%f..%f..`.

Figure 17.23: OllyDbg: FNSTSW is executed

TEST is done:

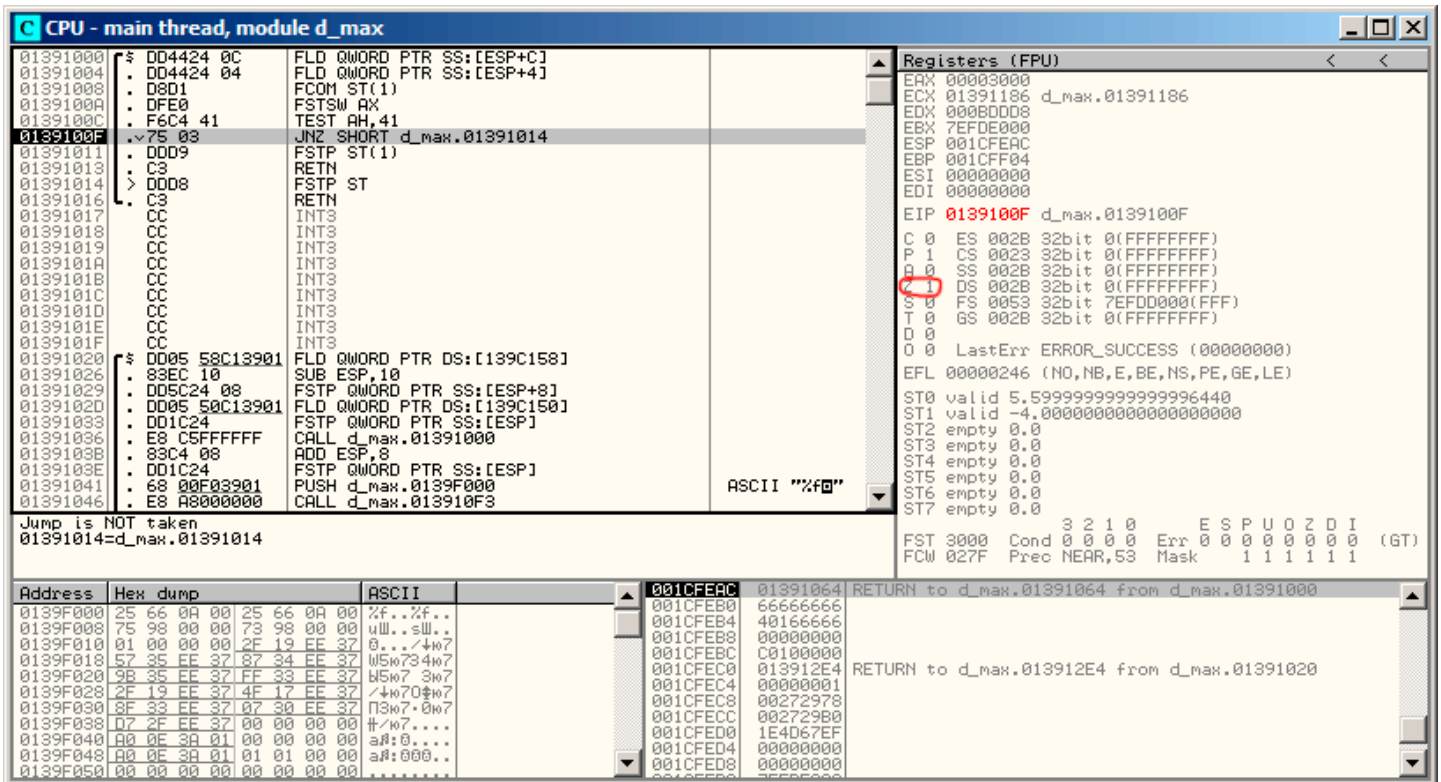


Figure 17.24: OllyDbg: TEST is executed

ZF=1, jump will not be triggered now.



FSTP ST(1) was executed: a value of 5.6 is now at the top of FPU-stack.

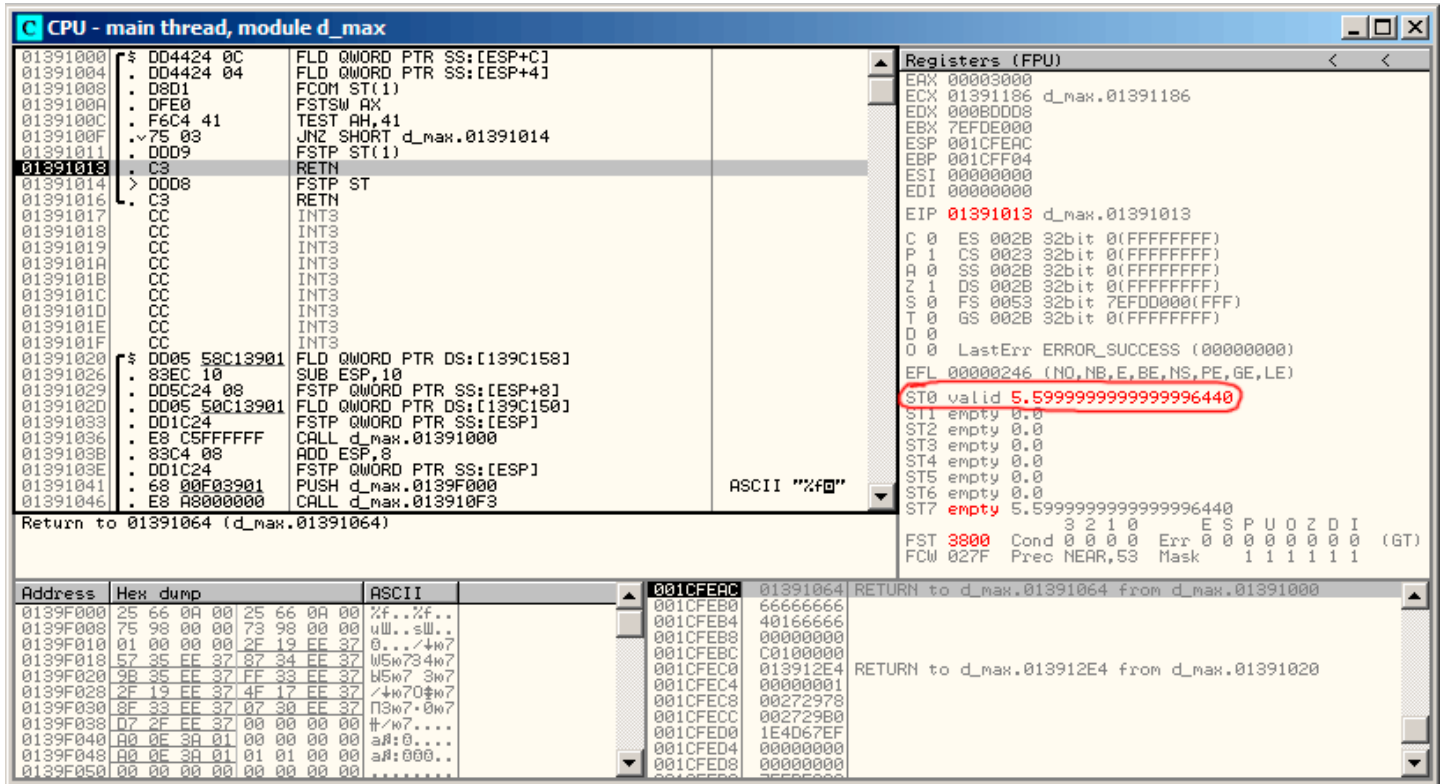


Figure 17.25: OllyDbg: FSTP is executed

We now see that FSTP ST(1) instruction works as follows: it leaves what was at the top of stack, but clears ST(1) register.

**GCC 4.4.1**

Listing 17.6: GCC 4.4.1

```
d_max proc near
b = qword ptr -10h
a = qword ptr -8
a_first_half = dword ptr 8
a_second_half = dword ptr 0Ch
b_first_half = dword ptr 10h
b_second_half = dword ptr 14h

 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 sub esp, 10h

; put a and b to local stack:

 mov eax, [ebp+a_first_half]
 mov dword ptr [ebp+a], eax
 mov eax, [ebp+a_second_half]
 mov dword ptr [ebp+a+4], eax
 mov eax, [ebp+b_first_half]
 mov dword ptr [ebp+b], eax
 mov eax, [ebp+b_second_half]
 mov dword ptr [ebp+b+4], eax

; load a and b to FPU stack:

 fld [ebp+a]
 fld [ebp+b]
```



```

; current stack state: ST(0) - b; ST(1) - a
 fxch st(1) ; this instruction swapping ST(1) and ST(0)
; current stack state: ST(0) - a; ST(1) - b
 fucompp ; compare a and b and pop two values from stack, i.e., a and b
 fnstsw ax ; store FPU status to AX
 sahf ; load SF, ZF, AF, PF, and CF flags state from AH
 setnbe al ; store 1 to AL if CF=0 and ZF=0
 test al, al ; AL==0 ?
 jz short loc_8048453 ; yes
 fld [ebp+a]
 jmp short locret_8048456

loc_8048453:
 fld [ebp+b]

locret_8048456:
 leave
 retn

d_max endp

```

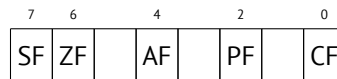
FUCOMPP –is almost like FCOM, but popping both values from stack and handling “not-a-numbers” differently.

More about *not-a-numbers*:

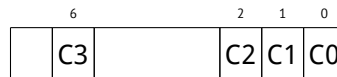
FPU is able to deal with a special values which are *not-a-numbers* or NaNs<sup>17</sup>. These are infinity, result of dividing by 0, etc. Not-a-numbers can be “quiet” and “signaling”. It is possible to continue to work with “quiet” NaNs, but if one try to do any operation with “signaling” NaNs –an exception will be raised.

FCOM will raise exception if any operand is NaN. FUCOM will raise exception only if any operand is signaling NaN (SNaN).

The following instruction is SAHF (*Store AH into Flags*) –this is rare instruction in the code not related to FPU. 8 bits from AH are moving into lower 8 bits of CPU flags in the following order:



Let’s recall the FNSTSW is moving interesting for us bits C3/C2/C0 into the AH and they will be in positions 6, 2, 0 in the AH register:



In other words, fnstsw ax / sahf instruction pair is moving C3/C2/C0 into ZF, PF, CF CPU flags.

Now let’s also recall, what values in the C3/C2/C0 bits will be set:

- If  $a$  is greater than  $b$  in our example, then C3/C2/C0 bits will be set as: 0, 0, 0.
- if  $a$  is less than  $b$ , then bits will be set as: 0, 0, 1.
- If  $a = b$ , then: 1, 0, 0.

In other words, after three FUCOMPP/FNSTSW/SAHF instructions, we will have these CPU flags states:

- If  $a > b$ , CPU flags will be set as: ZF=0, PF=0, CF=0.
- If  $a < b$ , then flags will be set as: ZF=0, PF=0, CF=1.
- If  $a = b$ , then: ZF=1, PF=0, CF=0.

It is depends of CPU flags, will SETNBE instruction store 1 to AL or 0. It is almost JNBE instruction counterpart, with the exception that SETcc<sup>18</sup> is storing 1 or 0 to the AL, but Jcc do actual jump or not. SETNBE store 1 only if CF=0 and ZF=0. If it is not true, 0 will be stored into AL.

Only in one case both CF is 0 and ZF is also 0 simultaneously: if  $a > b$ .

Then 1 will be stored to the AL and the following JZ will not be triggered and function will return `_a`. In all other cases, `_b` will be returned.

<sup>17</sup><http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/NaN>

<sup>18</sup>cc is condition code

## Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

Listing 17.7: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```

d_max public d_max
 proc near
arg_0 = qword ptr 8
arg_8 = qword ptr 10h

 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 fld [ebp+arg_0] ; _a
 fld [ebp+arg_8] ; _b

; stack state now: ST(0) = _b, ST(1) = _a
 fxch st(1)

; stack state now: ST(0) = _a, ST(1) = _b
 fucom st(1) ; compare _a and _b
 fnstsw ax
 sahf
 ja short loc_8048448

; store ST(0) to ST(0) (idle operation), pop value at top of stack, leave _b at top
 fstp st
 jmp short loc_804844A

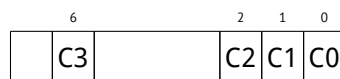
loc_8048448:
; store _a to ST(0), pop value at top of stack, leave _a at top
 fstp st(1)

loc_804844A:
 pop ebp
 retn
d_max endp

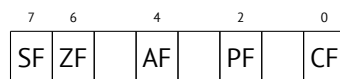
```

It is almost the same except one: JA is used after SAHF. Actually, conditional jump instructions checking “larger”, “lesser” or “equal” for unsigned number comparison (these are JA, JAE, JBE, JBE, JE/JZ, JNA, JNAE, JNB, JNBE, JNE/JNZ) are checking only CF and ZF flags.

Let’s recall how C3/C2/C0 bits are located in the AH register after FSTSW/FNSTSW execution:



Let’s also recall, how bits from AH are stored into CPU flags after SAHF execution:



C3 and C0 bits after comparison are moving into ZF and CF flags exactly, so conditional jumps will be able to work here. JA will work if both CF are ZF zero.

Thereby, conditional jump instructions listed here can be used after FNSTSW/SAHF instructions pair.

Apparently, FPU C3/C2/C0 status bits were placed there intentionally, so to easily map them to base CPU flags without additional permutations. But I’m not sure.

### GCC 4.8.1 with -O3 optimization turned on

Some new FPU instructions were appeared in P6 Intel family<sup>19</sup>. These are FUCOMI (compare operands and set flags of the main CPU) and FCMOVcc (works like CMOVcc, but on FPU registers). Apparently, GCC maintainers decided to drop support of pre-P6 Intel CPUs (early Pentiums, etc).

And also, FPU is no longer separate unit in P6 Intel family, so now it is possible to modify/check flags of main CPU from FPU.

So what we got is:

<sup>19</sup>Starting at Pentium Pro, Pentium-II, etc

Listing 17.8: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```

fld QWORD PTR [esp+4] ; load a
fld QWORD PTR [esp+12] ; load b
; ST0=b, ST1=a
fxch st(1)
; ST0=a, ST1=b
; compare a and b
fucomi st, st(1)
; move ST1 (b here) to ST0 if a<=b
; leave a in ST0 otherwise
fcmovbe st, st(1)
; discard value in ST1
fstp st(1)
ret

```

I'm not sure why FXCH (swap operands) is here. It's possible to get rid of it easily by swapping two first FLD instructions or by replacing FCMOVBE (*below or equal*) by FCMOVA (*above*). Probably, compiler's inaccuracy.

So FUCOMI compares ST(0) (*a*) and ST(1) (*b*) and then sets main CPU flags. FCMOVBE checks flags and copying ST(1) (*b* here at the moment) to ST(0) (*a* here) if  $ST0(a) \leq ST1(b)$ . Otherwise ( $a > b$ ), it leaves *a* in ST(0).

The last FSTP leaves ST(0) on top of stack discarding ST(1) contents.

Let's trace this function in GDB:

Listing 17.9: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 and GDB

```

1 dennis@ubuntuv:~/polygon$ gcc -O3 d_max.c -o d_max -fno-inline
2 dennis@ubuntuv:~/polygon$ gdb d_max
3 GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
4 Copyright (C) 2013 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
5 License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
6 This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
7 There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law. Type "show copying"
8 and "show warranty" for details.
9 This GDB was configured as "i686-linux-gnu".
10 For bug reporting instructions, please see:
11 <http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>...
12 Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/d_max...(no debugging symbols found)...done.
13 (gdb) b d_max
14 Breakpoint 1 at 0x80484a0
15 (gdb) run
16 Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/d_max
17
18 Breakpoint 1, 0x080484a0 in d_max ()
19 (gdb) ni
20 0x080484a4 in d_max ()
21 (gdb) disas $eip
22 Dump of assembler code for function d_max:
23 0x080484a0 <+0>: fldl 0x4(%esp)
24 => 0x080484a4 <+4>: fldl 0xc(%esp)
25 0x080484a8 <+8>: fxch %st(1)
26 0x080484aa <+10>: fucomi %st(1),%st
27 0x080484ac <+12>: fcmovbe %st(1),%st
28 0x080484ae <+14>: fstp %st(1)
29 0x080484b0 <+16>: ret
30 End of assembler dump.
31 (gdb) ni
32 0x080484a8 in d_max ()
33 (gdb) info float
34 R7: Valid 0x3fff999999999999800 +1.199999999999999956
35 =>R6: Valid 0x4000d9999999999999800 +3.399999999999999911
36 R5: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
37 R4: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
38 R3: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
39 R2: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
40 R1: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
41 R0: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
42
43 Status Word: 0x3000
44 TOP: 6
45 Control Word: 0x037f IM DM ZM OM UM PM
46 PC: Extended Precision (64-bits)

```

```

47 RC: Round to nearest
48 Tag Word: 0x0fff
49 Instruction Pointer: 0x73:0x080484a4
50 Operand Pointer: 0x7b:0xbffff118
51 Opcode: 0x0000
52 (gdb) ni
53 0x080484aa in d_max ()
54 (gdb) info float
55 R7: Valid 0x4000d99999999999800 +3.39999999999999911
56 =>R6: Valid 0x3fff999999999999800 +1.19999999999999956
57 R5: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
58 R4: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
59 R3: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
60 R2: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
61 R1: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
62 R0: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
63
64 Status Word: 0x3000
65 TOP: 6
66 Control Word: 0x037f IM DM ZM OM UM PM
67 PC: Extended Precision (64-bits)
68 RC: Round to nearest
69 Tag Word: 0x0fff
70 Instruction Pointer: 0x73:0x080484a8
71 Operand Pointer: 0x7b:0xbffff118
72 Opcode: 0x0000
73 (gdb) disas $eip
74 Dump of assembler code for function d_max:
75 0x080484a0 <+0>: fldl 0x4(%esp)
76 0x080484a4 <+4>: fldl 0xc(%esp)
77 0x080484a8 <+8>: fxch %st(1)
78 => 0x080484aa <+10>: fucomi %st(1),%st
79 0x080484ac <+12>: fcmovbe %st(1),%st
80 0x080484ae <+14>: fstp %st(1)
81 0x080484b0 <+16>: ret
82 End of assembler dump.
83 (gdb) ni
84 0x080484ac in d_max ()
85 (gdb) info registers
86 eax 0x1 1
87 ecx 0xbffff1c4 -1073745468
88 edx 0x8048340 134513472
89 ebx 0xb7fbf000 -1208225792
90 esp 0xbffff10c 0xbffff10c
91 ebp 0xbffff128 0xbffff128
92 esi 0x0 0
93 edi 0x0 0
94 eip 0x80484ac 0x80484ac <d_max+12>
95 eflags 0x203 [CF IF]
96 cs 0x73 115
97 ss 0x7b 123
98 ds 0x7b 123
99 es 0x7b 123
100 fs 0x0 0
101 gs 0x33 51
102 (gdb) ni
103 0x080484ae in d_max ()
104 (gdb) info float
105 R7: Valid 0x4000d99999999999800 +3.39999999999999911
106 =>R6: Valid 0x4000d99999999999800 +3.39999999999999911
107 R5: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
108 R4: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
109 R3: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
110 R2: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
111 R1: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
112 R0: Empty 0x0000000000000000000
113
114 Status Word: 0x3000
115 TOP: 6
116 Control Word: 0x037f IM DM ZM OM UM PM

```

```

117 PC: Extended Precision (64-bits)
118 RC: Round to nearest
119 Tag Word: 0x0fff
120 Instruction Pointer: 0x73:0x080484ac
121 Operand Pointer: 0x7b:0xbffff118
122 Opcode: 0x0000
123 (gdb) disas $eip
124 Dump of assembler code for function d_max:
125 0x080484a0 <+0>: fldl 0x4(%esp)
126 0x080484a4 <+4>: fldl 0xc(%esp)
127 0x080484a8 <+8>: fxch %st(1)
128 0x080484aa <+10>: fucomi %st(1),%st
129 0x080484ac <+12>: fcmovbe %st(1),%st
130 => 0x080484ae <+14>: fstp %st(1)
131 0x080484b0 <+16>: ret
132 End of assembler dump.
133 (gdb) ni
134 0x080484b0 in d_max ()
135 (gdb) info float
136 =>R7: Valid 0x4000d9999999999999800 +3.39999999999999911
137 R6: Empty 0x4000d9999999999999800
138 R5: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
139 R4: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
140 R3: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
141 R2: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
142 R1: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
143 R0: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
144
145 Status Word: 0x3800
146 TOP: 7
147 Control Word: 0x037f IM DM ZM OM UM PM
148 PC: Extended Precision (64-bits)
149 RC: Round to nearest
150 Tag Word: 0x3fff
151 Instruction Pointer: 0x73:0x080484ae
152 Operand Pointer: 0x7b:0xbffff118
153 Opcode: 0x0000
154 (gdb) quit
155 A debugging session is active.
156
157 Inferior 1 [process 30194] will be killed.
158
159 Quit anyway? (y or n) y
160 dennis@ubuntuv:~/polygon$

```

Using “ni”, let’s execute two first FLD instructions.

Let’s examine FPU registers (line 33).

As I wrote before, FPU registers set is circular buffer rather than stack (17.1.1). And GDB shows not STx registers, but internal FPU registers (Rx). Arrow (at line 35) points to the current stack top. You may also see TOP register contents in *Status Word* (line 44) it has 6 now, so stack top is now points to the internal register 6.

*a* and *b* values are swapped after FXCH is executed (line 54).

FUCOMI is executed (line 83). Let’s see flags: CF is set (line 95).

FCMOVBE is actually copied value of *b* (see line 104).

FSTP leaves one value at the top of stack (line 136). TOP value is now 7, so FPU stack top is points to internal register 7.

## 17.3.2 ARM

### Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Listing 17.10: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```

VMOV D16, R2, R3 ; b
VMOV D17, R0, R1 ; a
VCMPE.F64 D17, D16
VMRS APSR_nzcv, FPSCR
VMOVGT.F64 D16, D17 ; copy b to D16
VMOV R0, R1, D16
BX LR

```

A very simple case. Input values are placed into the D17 and D16 registers and then compared with the help of VCMPE instruction. Just like in x86 coprocessor, ARM coprocessor has its own status and flags register, (FPSCR<sup>20</sup>), since there is a need to store coprocessor-specific flags. And just like in x86, there are no conditional jump instruction in ARM, which can check bits in coprocessor status register, so there is VMRS instruction, copying 4 bits (N, Z, C, V) from the coprocessor status word into bits of *general* status (APSR<sup>21</sup> register).

VMOVGT is analogue of MOVGT, instruction for D-registers, to be executed if one operand is greater than other while comparing (*GT—Greater Than*).

If it will be executed, *b* value will be written into D16, stored at the moment in D17.

Otherwise, *a* value will stay in the D16 register.

Penultimate instruction VMOV will prepare value in the D16 register for returning it via R0 and R1 registers pair.

### Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

Listing 17.11: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

VMOV	D16, R2, R3 ; b
VMOV	D17, R0, R1 ; a
VCMPE.F64	D17, D16
VMRS	APSR_nzcv, FPSCR
IT GT	
VMOVGT.F64	D16, D17
VMOV	R0, R1, D16
BX	LR

Almost the same as in previous example, however slightly different. As we already know, many instructions in ARM mode can be supplied by condition predicate.

But there is no such thing in thumb mode. There is no place in 16-bit instructions for spare 4 bits in which condition can be encoded.

However, thumb-2 was extended to make possible to specify predicates to old thumb instructions.

Here, is the IDA-generated listing, we see VMOVGT instruction, the same as in previous example.

In fact, usual VMOV is encoded there, but IDA added -GT suffix to it, since there is ``IT GT`` instruction placed right before.

IT instruction defines so-called *if-then block*. After the instruction, it is possible to place up to 4 instructions, to which predicate suffix will be added. In our example, ``IT GT`` meaning, the next instruction will be executed, if *GT (Greater Than)* condition is true.

Now more complex code fragment, by the way, from “Angry Birds” (for iOS):

Listing 17.12: Angry Birds Classic

ITE NE	
VMOVNE	R2, R3, D16
VMOVEQ	R2, R3, D17

ITE meaning *if-then-else* and it encode suffixes for two next instructions. First instruction will execute if condition encoded in ITE (*NE, not equal*) will be true at the moment, and the second –if the condition will not be true. (Inverse condition of NE is EQ (*equal*)).

Slightly harder, and this fragment is also from “Angry Birds”:

Listing 17.13: Angry Birds Classic

ITTTT EQ	
MOVEQ	R0, R4
ADDEQ	SP, SP, #0x20
POPEQ.W	{R8, R10}
POPEQ	{R4-R7, PC}

4 “T” symbols in instruction mnemonic means the 4 next instructions will be executed if condition is true. That’s why IDA added -EQ suffix to each 4 instructions.

And if there will be, for example, ITEEE EQ (*if-then-else-else-else*), then suffixes will be set as follows:

-EQ
-NE
-NE
-NE

Another fragment from “Angry Birds”:

<sup>20</sup>(ARM) Floating-Point Status and Control Register

<sup>21</sup>(ARM) Application Program Status Register

Listing 17.14: Angry Birds Classic

```

CMP.W R0, #0xFFFFFFFF
ITTE LE
SUBLE.W R10, R0, #1
NEGLE R0, R0
MOVGT R10, R0

```

ITTE (*if-then-then-else*) means the 1st and 2nd instructions will be executed, if LE (*Less or Equal*) condition is true, and 3rd—if inverse condition (GT—*Greater Than*) is true.

Compilers usually not generating all possible combinations. For example, it mentioned “Angry Birds” game (*classic* version for iOS) only these cases of IT instruction are used: IT, ITE, ITT, ITTE, ITTT, ITTTT. How I learnt this? It is possible in [IDA](#) to produce listing files, so I did it, but I also set in options to show 4 bytes of each opcodes. Then, knowing the high part of 16-bit opcode (IT is 0xBF), I did this using `grep`:

```
cat AngryBirdsClassic.lst | grep " BF" | grep "IT" > results.lst
```

By the way, if to program in ARM assembly language manually for thumb-2 mode, with adding conditional suffixes, assembler will add IT instructions automatically, with respectable flags, where it is necessary.

### Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Listing 17.15: Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```

b = -0x20
a = -0x18
val_to_return = -0x10
saved_R7 = -4

 STR R7, [SP,#saved_R7]!
 MOV R7, SP
 SUB SP, SP, #0x1C
 BIC SP, SP, #7
 VMOV D16, R2, R3
 VMOV D17, R0, R1
 VSTR D17, [SP,#0x20+a]
 VSTR D16, [SP,#0x20+b]
 VLDR D16, [SP,#0x20+a]
 VLDR D17, [SP,#0x20+b]
 VCMPE.F64 D16, D17
 VMRS APSR_nzcv, FPSCR
 BLE loc_2E08
 VLDR D16, [SP,#0x20+a]
 VSTR D16, [SP,#0x20+val_to_return]
 B loc_2E10

loc_2E08
 VLDR D16, [SP,#0x20+b]
 VSTR D16, [SP,#0x20+val_to_return]

loc_2E10
 VLDR D16, [SP,#0x20+val_to_return]
 VMOV R0, R1, D16
 MOV SP, R7
 LDR R7, [SP+0x20+b],#4
 BX LR

```

Almost the same we already saw, but too much redundant code because of *a* and *b* variables stored in the local stack, as well as returning value.

### Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

Listing 17.16: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

PUSH {R3-R7,LR}
MOVS R4, R2
MOVS R5, R3
MOVS R6, R0
MOVS R7, R1
BL __aeabi_cdrcmple

```

```

 BCS loc_1C0
 MOVS R0, R6
 MOVS R1, R7
 POP {R3-R7,PC}

loc_1C0
 MOVS R0, R4
 MOVS R1, R5
 POP {R3-R7,PC}

```

Keil doesn't generate FPU-instructions since it cannot rely it will be supported on the target CPU, and it cannot be done by straightforward bitwise comparing. So there is called external library function for comparing: `__aeabi_cdr cmple`.

N.B. Comparison result is to be left in flags by this function, so the following BCS (*Carry set - Greater than or equal*) instruction may work without any additional code.

### 17.3.3 ARM64

#### Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

d_max:
; D0 - a, D1 - b
 fcmpe d0, d1
 fcsel d0, d0, d1, gt
; now result in D0
 ret

```

ARM64 ISA now also have FPU-instructions which sets APSR CPU flags instead of FPSCR, for convenience. FPU is not separate device here anymore (at least, logically). That is FCMPE, it compares two values, passed here in D0 and D1 (which are first and second function arguments) and sets APSR flags (N, Z, C, V).

FCSEL (*Floating Conditional Select*) copies value of D0 or D1 into D0 depending on condition (GT (*Greater Than*) here), and again, it uses flags in APSR register instead of FPSCR. This is much more convenient, if to compare to the instruction set in older CPUs.

If condition is true (GT) then value of D0 is copied into D0 (i.e., nothing happens). If condition is not true, value of D1 is copied into D0.

#### Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

d_max:
; save input arguments in Register Save Area
 sub sp, sp, #16
 str d0, [sp,8]
 str d1, [sp]
; reload values
 ldr x1, [sp,8]
 ldr x0, [sp]
 fmov d0, x1
 fmov d1, x0
; D0 - a, D1 - b
 fcmpe d0, d1
 ble .L76
; a>b; load D0 (a) into X0
 ldr x0, [sp,8]
 b .L74
.L76:
; a<=b; load D1 (b) into X0
 ldr x0, [sp]
.L74:
; result in X0
 fmov d0, x0
; result in D0
 add sp, sp, 16
 ret

```

Non-optimizing GCC is more verbose. First, function saves input argument values in the local stack (*Register Save Area*). Then the code reloads these values into X0/X1 registers and finally copies them into D0/D1 for comparison using FCMPE. A lot of redundant code, but that is how non-optimizing compiler may work. FCMPE compare values and set APSR flags. At



this moment, compiler is not yet thinking about more convenient FCSEL instruction, so it proceed to old methods: using BLE instruction (*Branch if Less than or Equal*). In one case ( $a > b$ ),  $a$  value is reloaded into X0. In other case ( $a \leq b$ ),  $b$  value is placed in X0. Finally, value from X0 copied into D0, because returning value is leaved in this register.

### Exercise

As an exercise, you may try to optimize this piece of code manually by removing redundant instructions, but do not introduce new ones (including FCSEL).

### Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9–float

I also rewrote this example, now *float* is used instead of *double*.

```
float f_max (float a, float b)
{
 if (a>b)
 return a;

 return b;
};
```

```
f_max:
; S0 - a, S1 - b
 fcmpe s0, s1
 fcsele s0, s0, s1, gt
; now result in S0
 ret
```

It is a very same code, but S-registers are used instead of D- ones. So numbers of *float* type is passed in 32-bit S-registers (which are in fact lower parts of 64-bit D-registers).

## 17.4 x64

How float point numbers are processed in x86-64, read more here: [27](#).

## 17.5 Exercises

### 17.5.1 Exercise #1

Eliminate FXCH instrucion in example [17.3.1](#) and test it.

### 17.5.2 Exercise #2

What this code does?

Listing 17.17: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
__real@4014000000000000 DQ 0401400000000000r ; 5

_a1$ = 8 ; size = 8
_a2$ = 16 ; size = 8
_a3$ = 24 ; size = 8
_a4$ = 32 ; size = 8
_a5$ = 40 ; size = 8
_f PROC
 fld QWORD PTR _a1$[esp-4]
 fadd QWORD PTR _a2$[esp-4]
 fadd QWORD PTR _a3$[esp-4]
 fadd QWORD PTR _a4$[esp-4]
 fadd QWORD PTR _a5$[esp-4]
 fdiv QWORD PTR __real@4014000000000000
 ret 0
_f ENDP
```

Listing 17.18: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode / compiled for Cortex-R4F CPU)

```
f PROC
 VADD.F64 d0,d0,d1
 VMOV.F64 d1,#5.00000000
 VADD.F64 d0,d0,d2
 VADD.F64 d0,d0,d3
 VADD.F64 d2,d0,d4
 VDIV.F64 d0,d2,d1
 BX lr
ENDP
```

Listing 17.19: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```
f:
 fadd d0, d0, d1
 fmov d1, 5.0e+0
 fadd d2, d0, d2
 fadd d3, d2, d3
 fadd d0, d3, d4
 fdiv d0, d0, d1
 ret
```

Answer [F.1.9](#).

# Chapter 18

## Arrays

Array is just a set of variables in memory, always lying next to each other, always has same type <sup>1</sup>.

### 18.1 Simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
 int a[20];
 int i;

 for (i=0; i<20; i++)
 a[i]=i*2;

 for (i=0; i<20; i++)
 printf ("a[%d]=%d\n", i, a[i]);

 return 0;
};
```

#### 18.1.1 x86

##### MSVC

Let's compile:

Listing 18.1: MSVC 2008

```
_TEXT SEGMENT
_i$ = -84 ; size = 4
_a$ = -80 ; size = 80
_main PROC
 push ebp
 mov ebp, esp
 sub esp, 84 ; 00000054H
 mov DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
 jmp SHORT $LN6@main
$LN5@main:
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
 add eax, 1
 mov DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN6@main:
 cmp DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 20 ; 00000014H
 jge SHORT $LN4@main
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
 shl ecx, 1
 mov edx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
 mov DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+edx*4], ecx
 jmp SHORT $LN5@main
$LN4@main:
```

<sup>1</sup>AKA<sup>2</sup> "homogeneous container"

```

 mov DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
 jmp SHORT $LN3@main
$LN2@main:
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
 add eax, 1
 mov DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN3@main:
 cmp DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 20 ; 00000014H
 jge SHORT $LN1@main
 mov ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
 mov edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+ecx*4]
 push edx
 mov eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
 push eax
 push OFFSET $SG2463
 call _printf
 add esp, 12 ; 0000000cH
 jmp SHORT $LN2@main
$LN1@main:
 xor eax, eax
 mov esp, ebp
 pop ebp
 ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Nothing very special, just two loops: first is filling loop and second is printing loop. `shl ecx, 1` instruction is used for value multiplication by 2 in the ECX, more about below [16.2.1](#).

80 bytes are allocated on the stack for array, that is 20 elements of 4 bytes.

Let's try this example in OllyDbg.

We see how array gets filled: each element is 32-bit word of *int* type, step by 2:

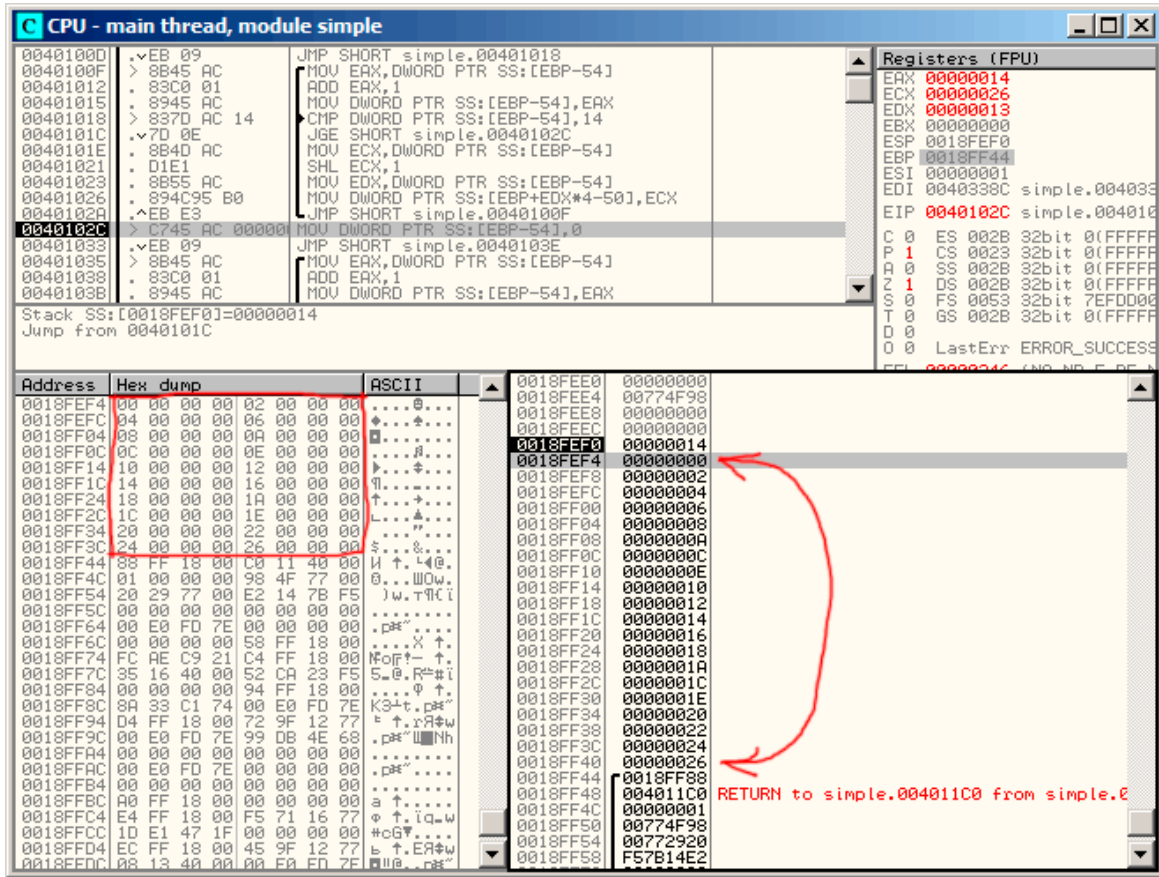


Figure 18.1: OllyDbg: after array filling

Since this array is located in stack, we see all its 20 elements inside of stack.

**GCC**

Here is what GCC 4.4.1 does:

Listing 18.2: GCC 4.4.1

```

main public main
proc near ; DATA XREF: _start+17

var_70 = dword ptr -70h
var_6C = dword ptr -6Ch
var_68 = dword ptr -68h
i_2 = dword ptr -54h
i = dword ptr -4

push ebp
mov ebp, esp
and esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
sub esp, 70h
mov [esp+70h+i], 0 ; i=0
jmp short loc_804840A

loc_80483F7:
mov eax, [esp+70h+i]
mov edx, [esp+70h+i]
add edx, edx ; edx=i*2
mov [esp+eax*4+70h+i_2], edx
add [esp+70h+i], 1 ; i++

loc_804840A:
cmp [esp+70h+i], 13h
jle short loc_80483F7

```

```

 mov [esp+70h+i], 0
 jmp short loc_8048441

loc_804841B:
 mov eax, [esp+70h+i]
 mov edx, [esp+eax*4+70h+i_2]
 mov eax, offset aADD ; "a[%d]=%d\n"
 mov [esp+70h+var_68], edx
 mov edx, [esp+70h+i]
 mov [esp+70h+var_6C], edx
 mov [esp+70h+var_70], eax
 call _printf
 add [esp+70h+i], 1

loc_8048441:
 cmp [esp+70h+i], 13h
 jle short loc_804841B
 mov eax, 0
 leave
 retn

main endp

```

By the way, a variable has *int\** type (the pointer to *int*) –you can try to pass a pointer to array to another function, but it much correctly to say the pointer to the first array element is passed (addresses of another element's places are calculated in obvious way). If to index this pointer as *a[idx]*, *idx* just to be added to the pointer and the element placed there (to which calculated pointer is pointing) returned.

An interesting example: string of characters like “string” is array of characters and it has *const char[]* type. Index can also be applied to this pointer. And that is why it is possible to write like `string[i]` –this is correct C/C++ expression!

## 18.1.2 ARM

### Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

EXPORT _main
_main
 STMTFD SP!, {R4,LR}
 SUB SP, SP, #0x50 ; allocate place for 20 int variables

; first loop

 MOV R4, #0 ; i
 B loc_4A0

loc_494
 MOV R0, R4,LSL#1 ; R0=R4*2
 STR R0, [SP,R4,LSL#2] ; store R0 to SP+R4<<2 (same as SP+R4*4)
 ADD R4, R4, #1 ; i=i+1

loc_4A0
 CMP R4, #20 ; i<20?
 BLT loc_494 ; yes, run loop body again

; second loop

 MOV R4, #0 ; i
 B loc_4C4

loc_4B0
 LDR R2, [SP,R4,LSL#2] ; (second printf argument) R2=*(SP+R4<<4) (same as *(SP+
 ↪ R4*4))
 MOV R1, R4 ; (first printf argument) R1=i
 ADR R0, aADD ; "a[%d]=%d\n"
 BL __2printf
 ADD R4, R4, #1 ; i=i+1

loc_4C4
 CMP R4, #20 ; i<20?
 BLT loc_4B0 ; yes, run loop body again
 MOV R0, #0 ; value to return
 ADD SP, SP, #0x50 ; deallocate place, allocated for 20 int variables
 LDMFD SP!, {R4,PC}

```

`int` type requires 32 bits for storage (or 4 bytes), so for storage of 20 `int` variables, 80 (0x50) bytes are needed. So that is why ```SUB SP, SP, #0x50``` instruction in function epilogue allocates exactly this amount of space in local stack.

In both first and second loops, `i` loop iterator will be placed in the R4 register.

A number to be written into array is calculating as  $i * 2$  which is effectively equivalent to shifting left by one bit, so ```MOV R0, R4, LSL#1``` instruction do this.

```STR R0, [SP, R4, LSL#2]``` writes R0 contents into array. Here is how a pointer to array element is to be calculated: `SP` pointing to array begin, R4 is `i`. So shift `i` left by 2 bits, that is effectively equivalent to multiplication by 4 (since each array element has size of 4 bytes) and add it to address of array begin.

The second loop has inverse ```LDR R2, [SP, R4, LSL#2]``` instruction, it loads from array value we need, and the pointer to it is calculated likewise.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

_main
    PUSH    {R4,R5,LR}
; allocate place for 20 int variables + one more variable
    SUB     SP, SP, #0x54

; first loop

    MOVS    R0, #0          ; i
    MOV     R5, SP          ; pointer to first array element

loc_1CE
    LSLS    R1, R0, #1      ; R1=i<<1 (same as i*2)
    LSLS    R2, R0, #2      ; R2=i<<2 (same as i*4)
    ADDS    R0, R0, #1      ; i=i+1
    CMP     R0, #20         ; i<20?
    STR     R1, [R5,R2]     ; store R1 to *(R5+R2) (same R5+i*4)
    BLT     loc_1CE        ; yes, i<20, run loop body again

; second loop

loc_1DC
    MOVS    R4, #0          ; i=0
    LSLS    R0, R4, #2      ; R0=i<<2 (same as i*4)
    LDR     R2, [R5,R0]     ; load from *(R5+R0) (same as R5+i*4)
    MOVS    R1, R4
    ADR     R0, aADD        ; "a[%d]=%d\n"
    BL      __2printf
    ADDS    R4, R4, #1      ; i=i+1
    CMP     R4, #20         ; i<20?
    BLT     loc_1DC        ; yes, i<20, run loop body again
    MOVS    R0, #0          ; value to return
; deallocate place, allocated for 20 int variables + one more variable
    ADD     SP, SP, #0x54
    POP     {R4,R5,PC}

```

Thumb code is very similar. Thumb mode has special instructions for bit shifting (like `LSLS`), which calculates value to be written into array and address of each element in array as well.

Compiler allocates slightly more space in local stack, however, last 4 bytes are not used.

Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

Listing 18.3: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

```

.LC0:
    .string "a[%d]=%d\n"
main:
; save FP and LR in stack frame:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -112]!
; set stack frame (FP=SP)
    add    x29, sp, 0
; setting initial counter variable at 0 (WZR is the register always holding zero):
    str    wzr, [x29,108]
; jump to loop condition checking code:
    b     .L2
.L3:

```

```

; load i variable:
    ldr    w0, [x29,108]
; multiply it by 2:
    lsl    w2, w0, 1
; find a place of an array in local stack:
    add    x0, x29, 24
; load 32-bit integer from local stack and sign extend it:
    ldrsw  x1, [x29,108]
; calculate address of element (X0+X1<<2=array address+i*4) and store W2 (i*2) there:
    str    w2, [x0,x1,ls1 2]
; increment counter (i):
    ldr    w0, [x29,108]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    str    w0, [x29,108]
.L2:
; check if we finished:
    ldr    w0, [x29,108]
    cmp    w0, 19
; jump to L3 (loop body begin) if not:
    ble    .L3
; second part of the function begins here.
; setting initial counter variable at 0.
; by the way, the same place in the local stack is used for counter,
; because the same variable (i) is being used as counter.
    str    wzr, [x29,108]
    b      .L4
.L5:
; calculate array address:
    add    x0, x29, 24
; load i value:
    ldrsw  x1, [x29,108]
; load value from the array at the address (X0+X1<<2 = address of array + i*4)
    ldr    w2, [x0,x1,ls1 2]
; load address of the "a[%d]=%d\n" string:
    adrp   x0, .LC0
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC0
; load i variable to W1 and pass it to printf() as second argument:
    ldr    w1, [x29,108]
; W2 still contains the value of array element which was just loaded.
; call printf():
    bl     printf
; increment i variable:
    ldr    w0, [x29,108]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    str    w0, [x29,108]
.L4:
; are we finished?
    ldr    w0, [x29,108]
    cmp    w0, 19
; jump to the loop body begin if not:
    ble    .L5
; return 0
    mov    w0, 0
; restore FP and LR:
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 112
    ret

```

18.2 Buffer overflow

18.2.1 Reading behind array bounds

So, array indexing is just `array[index]`. If you study generated code closely, you'll probably note missing index bounds checking, which could check index, *if it is less than 20*. What if index will be 20 or greater? That's the one C/C++ feature it is often blamed for.

Here is a code successfully compiling and working:

```
#include <stdio.h>
```



```

int main()
{
    int a[20];
    int i;

    for (i=0; i<20; i++)
        a[i]=i*2;

    printf ("a[20]=%d\n", a[20]);

    return 0;
};

```

Compilation results (MSVC 2008):

```

$SG2474 DB      'a[20]=%d', 0aH, 00H

_i$ = -84 ; size = 4
_a$ = -80 ; size = 80
_main  PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 84
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
    jmp     SHORT $LN3@main
$LN2@main:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    add     eax, 1
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN3@main:
    cmp     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 20
    jge     SHORT $LN1@main
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    shl     ecx, 1
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+edx*4], ecx
    jmp     SHORT $LN2@main
$LN1@main:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+80]
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET $SG2474 ; 'a[20]=%d'
    call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add     esp, 8
    xor     eax, eax
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_main    ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS
END

```

I'm running it, and I got:

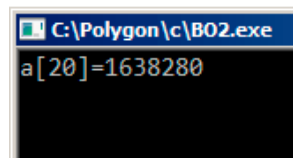


Figure 18.2: OllyDbg: console output

It is just *something*, occasionally lying in the stack near to array, 80 bytes from its first element.

Let's try to find out using OllyDbg, where this value came from. Let's load and find a value located right after the last array element:

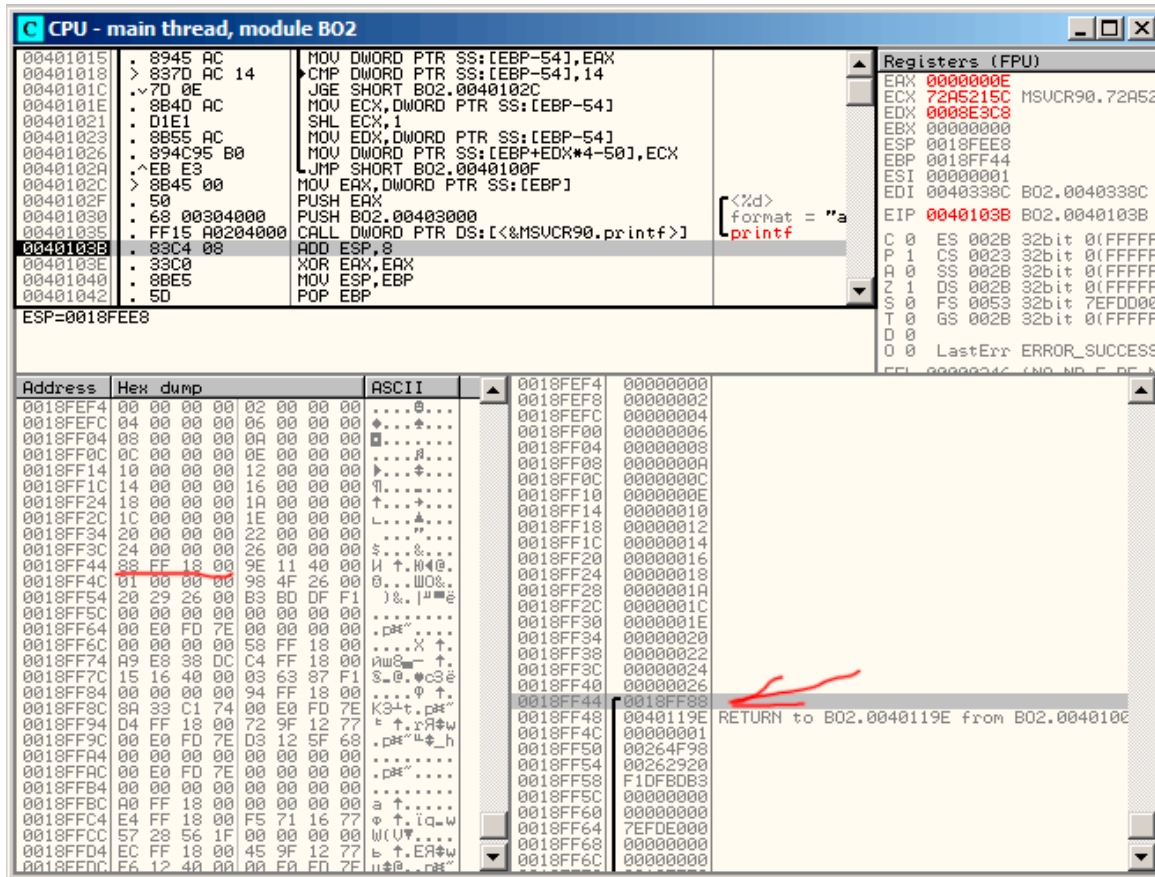


Figure 18.3: OllyDbg: reading of 20th element and execution of `printf()`

What is this? Judging by stack layout, this is saved EBP register value.

Let's trace further and see, how it will be restored:

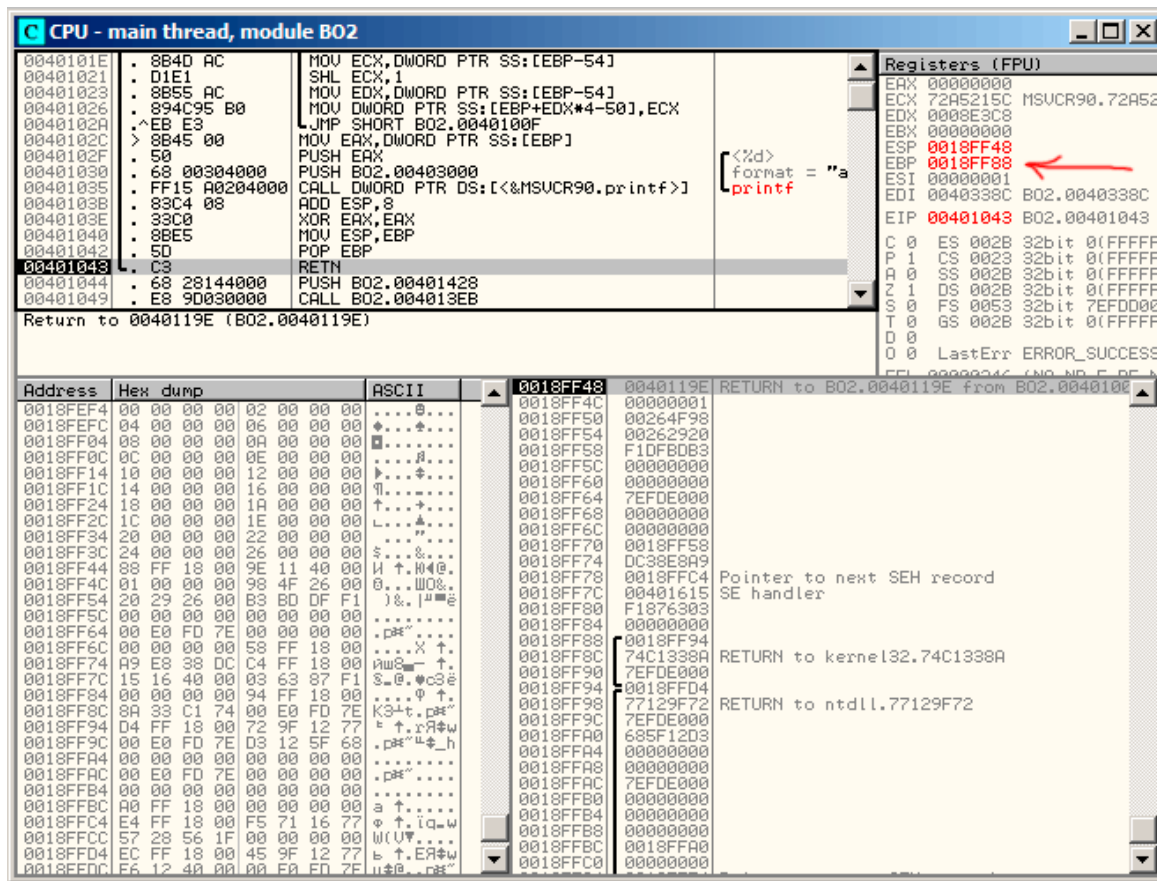


Figure 18.4: OllyDbg: restoring value of EBP register

Indeed, how it could be done differently? Compiler may generate some additional code for checking index value to be always in array's bound (like in higher-level programming languages³) but this makes running code slower.

18.2.2 Writing behind array bounds

OK, we read some values from the stack *illegally* but what if we could write something to it?

Here is what we will write:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int a[20];
    int i;

    for (i=0; i<30; i++)
        a[i]=i;

    return 0;
};
```

MSVC

And what we've got:

```
_TEXT SEGMENT
_i$ = -84 ; size = 4
_a$ = -80 ; size = 80
_main PROC
push ebp
mov ebp, esp
```

³Java, Python, etc

```
sub    esp, 84
mov    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
jmp    SHORT $LN3@main
$LN2@main:
mov    eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
add    eax, 1
mov    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN3@main:
cmp    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 30 ; 0000001eH
jge    SHORT $LN1@main
mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
mov    edx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp] ; that instruction is obviously redundant
mov    DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+ecx*4], edx ; ECX could be used as second operand here instead
jmp    SHORT $LN2@main
$LN1@main:
xor    eax, eax
mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
ret    0
_main  ENDP
```

Run compiled program and its crashing. No wonder. Let's see, where exactly it is crashing.

Let's load into OllyDbg, trace until all 30 elements are written:

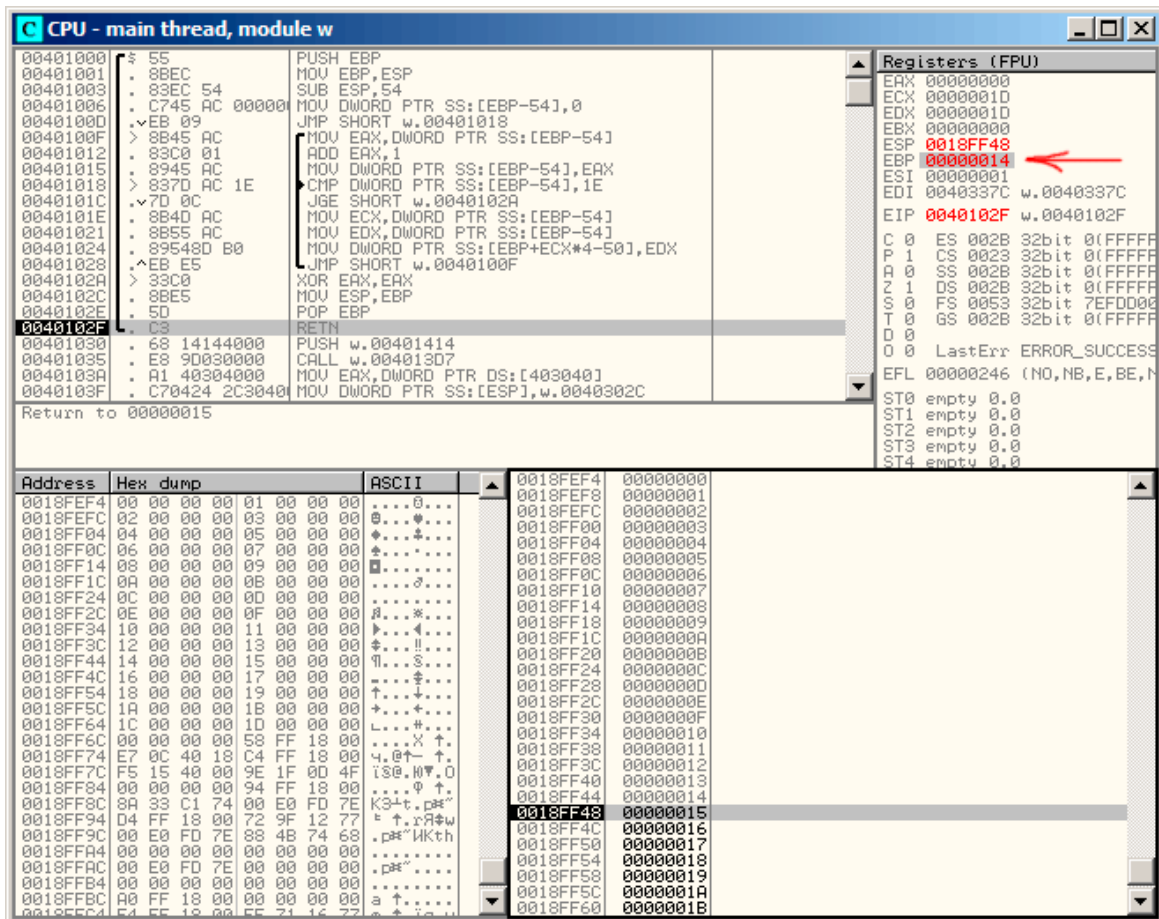


Figure 18.5: OllyDbg: after restoring value of EBP

Trace until the function end:

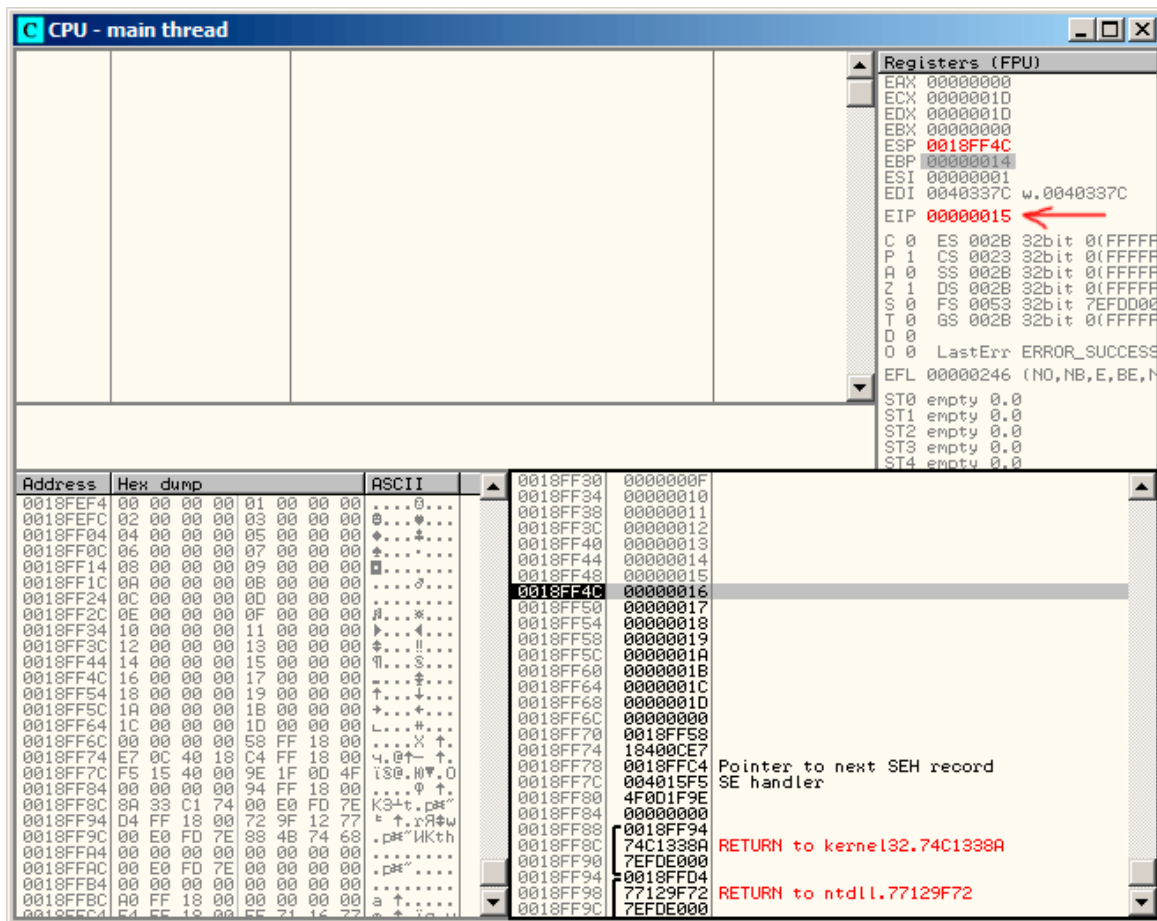


Figure 18.6: OllyDbg: EIP is restored, but OllyDbg can't disassemble at 0x15

Now please keep your eyes on registers.

EIP is 0x15 now. It is not legal address for code – at least for win32 code! We trapped there somehow against our will. It is also interesting fact the EBP register contain 0x14, ECX and EDX – 0x1D.

Let's study stack layout more.

After control flow was passed into main(), the value in the EBP register was saved on the stack. Then, 84 bytes was allocated for array and i variable. That's (20+1)*sizeof(int). The ESP pointing now to the _i variable in the local stack and after execution of next PUSH something, something will be appeared next to _i.

That's stack layout while control is inside main():

ESP	4 bytes allocated for i variable
ESP+4	80 bytes allocated for a[20] array
ESP+84	saved EBP value
ESP+88	returning address

a[19]=something statement writes last int in array bounds (in bounds so far!)

a[20]=something statement writes something to the place where value of the EBP is saved.

Please take a look at registers state at the crash moment. In our case, number 20 was written to 20th element. By the function ending, function epilogue restores original EBP value. (20 in decimal base is 0x14 in hexadecimal). Then, RET instruction was executed, which is effectively equivalent to POP EIP instruction.

RET instruction taking returning address from the stack (that is the address inside of CRT), which was called main(), and 21 was stored there (0x15 in hexadecimal). The CPU trapped at the address 0x15, but there is no executable code, so exception was raised.

Welcome! It is called buffer overflow⁴.

Replace int array by string (char array), create a long string deliberately, and pass it to the program, to the function which is not checking string length and copies it to short buffer, and you'll able to point to a program an address to which it must jump. Not that simple in reality, but that is how it was emerged⁵

⁴http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stack_buffer_overflow

⁵Classic article about it: [One96].

GCC

Let's try the same code in GCC 4.4.1. We got:

```

main          public main
              proc near
a             = dword ptr -54h
i             = dword ptr -4

              push    ebp
              mov     ebp, esp
              sub     esp, 60h ; 96
              mov     [ebp+i], 0
              jmp     short loc_80483D1
loc_80483C3:  mov     eax, [ebp+i]
              mov     edx, [ebp+i]
              mov     [ebp+eax*4+a], edx
              add     [ebp+i], 1
loc_80483D1:  cmp     [ebp+i], 1Dh
              jle     short loc_80483C3
              mov     eax, 0
              leave
              retn
main         endp

```

Running this in Linux will produce: Segmentation fault.

If we run this in GDB debugger, we getting this:

```

(gdb) r
Starting program: /home/dennis/RE/1

Program received signal SIGSEGV, Segmentation fault.
0x00000016 in ?? ()
(gdb) info registers
eax             0x0          0
ecx             0xd2f96388     -755407992
edx             0x1d          29
ebx             0x26eff4     2551796
esp             0xbffff4b0     0xbffff4b0
ebp             0x15          0x15
esi             0x0          0
edi             0x0          0
eip             0x16          0x16
eflags         0x10202     [ IF RF ]
cs             0x73          115
ss             0x7b          123
ds             0x7b          123
es             0x7b          123
fs             0x0          0
gs             0x33          51
(gdb)

```

Register values are slightly different then in win32 example since stack layout is slightly different too.

18.3 Buffer overflow protection methods

There are several methods to protect against it, regardless of C/C++ programmers' negligence. MSVC has options like⁶:

```

/RTCs Stack Frame runtime checking
/GZ Enable stack checks (/RTCs)

```

One of the methods is to write random value among local variables to stack at function prologue and to check it in function epilogue before function exiting. And if value is not the same, do not execute last instruction RET, but halt (or hang). Process will hang, but that is much better then remote attack to your host.

⁶Wikipedia: compiler-side buffer overflow protection methods:
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Buffer_overflow_protection

This random value is called “canary” sometimes, it is related to miner’s canary⁷, they were used by miners in these days, in order to detect poisonous gases quickly. Canaries are very sensitive to mine gases, they become very agitated in case of danger, or even dead.

If to compile our very simple array example (18.1) in MSVC with RTC1 and RTCs option, you will see call to `@_RTC_CheckStackVars@8` function at the function end, checking “canary” correctness.

Let’s see how GCC handles this. Let’s take `alloca()` (5.2.4) example:

```
#ifdef __GNUC__
#include <alloca.h> // GCC
#else
#include <malloc.h> // MSVC
#endif
#include <stdio.h>

void f()
{
    char *buf=(char*)alloca (600);
#ifdef __GNUC__
    snprintf (buf, 600, "hi! %d, %d, %d\n", 1, 2, 3); // GCC
#else
    _snprintf (buf, 600, "hi! %d, %d, %d\n", 1, 2, 3); // MSVC
#endif

    puts (buf);
};
```

By default, without any additional options, GCC 4.7.3 will insert “canary” check into code:

Listing 18.4: GCC 4.7.3

```
.LC0:
.string "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
f:
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ebx
    sub     esp, 676
    lea    ebx, [esp+39]
    and     ebx, -16
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+20], 3
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+16], 2
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+12], 1
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+8], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+4], 600
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], ebx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR gs:20 ; canary
    mov     DWORD PTR [ebp-12], eax
    xor     eax, eax
    call   _snprintf
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], ebx
    call   puts
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [ebp-12]
    xor     eax, DWORD PTR gs:20 ; check canary
    jne    .L5
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR [ebp-4]
    leave
    ret
.L5:
    call   __stack_chk_fail
```

Random value is located in `gs:20`. It is to be written on the stack and then, at the function end, value in the stack is compared with correct “canary” in `gs:20`. If values are not equal to each other, `__stack_chk_fail` function will be called and we will see something like that in console (Ubuntu 13.04 x86):

```
*** buffer overflow detected ***: ./2_1 terminated
===== Backtrace: =====
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(__fortify_fail+0x63)[0xb7699bc3]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(+0x10593a)[0xb769893a]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(+0x105008)[0xb7698008]
```

⁷http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Domestic_Canary#Miner.27s_canary


```

/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(_IO_default_xsputn+0x8c)[0xb7606e5c]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(_IO_vfprintf+0x165)[0xb75d7a45]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(__vsprintf_chk+0xc9)[0xb76980d9]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(__sprintf_chk+0x2f)[0xb7697fef]
./2_1[0x8048404]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(__libc_start_main+0xf5)[0xb75ac935]
===== Memory map: =====
08048000-08049000 r-xp 00000000 08:01 2097586 /home/dennis/2_1
08049000-0804a000 r--p 00000000 08:01 2097586 /home/dennis/2_1
0804a000-0804b000 rw-p 00001000 08:01 2097586 /home/dennis/2_1
094d1000-094f2000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0 [heap]
b7560000-b757b000 r-xp 00000000 08:01 1048602 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/libgcc_s.so.1
b757b000-b757c000 r--p 0001a000 08:01 1048602 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/libgcc_s.so.1
b757c000-b757d000 rw-p 0001b000 08:01 1048602 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/libgcc_s.so.1
b7592000-b7593000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0
b7593000-b7740000 r-xp 00000000 08:01 1050781 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc-2.17.so
b7740000-b7742000 r--p 001ad000 08:01 1050781 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc-2.17.so
b7742000-b7743000 rw-p 001af000 08:01 1050781 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc-2.17.so
b7743000-b7746000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0
b775a000-b775d000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0
b775d000-b775e000 r-xp 00000000 00:00 0 [vdso]
b775e000-b777e000 r-xp 00000000 08:01 1050794 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/ld-2.17.so
b777e000-b777f000 r--p 0001f000 08:01 1050794 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/ld-2.17.so
b777f000-b7780000 rw-p 00020000 08:01 1050794 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/ld-2.17.so
bff35000-bff56000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0 [stack]
Aborted (core dumped)

```

gs—is so-called segment register, these registers were used widely in MS-DOS and DOS-extenders times. Today, its function is different. If to say briefly, the gs register in Linux is always pointing to the TLS (56) —various information specific to thread is stored there (by the way, in win32 environment, the fs register plays the same role, it pointing to TIB⁸ ⁹).

More information can be found in Linux source codes (at least in 3.11 version), in *arch/x86/include/asm/stackprotector.h* file this variable is described in comments.

18.3.1 Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

Let's back to our simple array example (18.1), again, now we can see how LLVM will check “canary” correctness:

```

_main
var_64      = -0x64
var_60      = -0x60
var_5C      = -0x5C
var_58      = -0x58
var_54      = -0x54
var_50      = -0x50
var_4C      = -0x4C
var_48      = -0x48
var_44      = -0x44
var_40      = -0x40
var_3C      = -0x3C
var_38      = -0x38
var_34      = -0x34
var_30      = -0x30
var_2C      = -0x2C
var_28      = -0x28
var_24      = -0x24
var_20      = -0x20
var_1C      = -0x1C
var_18      = -0x18
canary      = -0x14
var_10      = -0x10

    PUSH    {R4-R7,LR}
    ADD     R7, SP, #0xC
    STR.W   R8, [SP,#0xC+var_10]!
    SUB     SP, SP, #0x54

```

⁸Thread Information Block

⁹https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Win32_Thread_Information_Block

```

MOVW    R0, #aObjc_methtype ; "objc_methtype"
MOVS    R2, #0
MOVT.W  R0, #0
MOVS    R5, #0
ADD     R0, PC
LDR.W   R8, [R0]
LDR.W   R0, [R8]
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+canary]
MOVS    R0, #2
STR     R2, [SP,#0x64+var_64]
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_60]
MOVS    R0, #4
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_5C]
MOVS    R0, #6
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_58]
MOVS    R0, #8
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_54]
MOVS    R0, #0xA
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_50]
MOVS    R0, #0xC
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_4C]
MOVS    R0, #0xE
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_48]
MOVS    R0, #0x10
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_44]
MOVS    R0, #0x12
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_40]
MOVS    R0, #0x14
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_3C]
MOVS    R0, #0x16
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_38]
MOVS    R0, #0x18
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_34]
MOVS    R0, #0x1A
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_30]
MOVS    R0, #0x1C
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_2C]
MOVS    R0, #0x1E
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_28]
MOVS    R0, #0x20
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_24]
MOVS    R0, #0x22
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_20]
MOVS    R0, #0x24
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_1C]
MOVS    R0, #0x26
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_18]
MOV     R4, 0xFDA ; "a[%d]=%d\n"
MOV     R0, SP
ADDS    R6, R0, #4
ADD     R4, PC
B       loc_2F1C

```

; second loop begin

```

loc_2F14
ADDS    R0, R5, #1
LDR.W   R2, [R6,R5,LSL#2]
MOV     R5, R0

```

```

loc_2F1C
MOV     R0, R4
MOV     R1, R5
BLX    _printf
CMP     R5, #0x13
BNE    loc_2F14
LDR.W   R0, [R8]
LDR     R1, [SP,#0x64+canary]
CMP     R0, R1
ITTTT EQ          ; canary still correct?

```

```

MOVEQ    R0, #0
ADDEQ    SP, SP, #0x54
LDREQ.W  R8, [SP+0x64+var_64],#4
POPEQ    {R4-R7,PC}
BLX      ___stack_chk_fail

```

First of all, as we see, LLVM made loop “unrolled” and all values are written into array one-by-one, already calculated since LLVM concluded it will be faster. By the way, ARM mode instructions may help to do this even faster, and finding this way could be your homework.

At the function end we see “canaries” comparison –that laying in local stack and correct one, to which the R8 register pointing. If they are equal to each other, 4-instruction block is triggered by `ITTTT EQ`, it is writing 0 into R0, function epilogue and exit. If “canaries” are not equal, block will not be executed, and jump to `___stack_chk_fail` function will be occurred, which, as I suppose, will halt execution.

18.4 One more word about arrays

Now we understand, why it is impossible to write something like that in C/C++ code ¹⁰:

```

void f(int size)
{
    int a[size];
    ...
};

```

That’s just because compiler must know exact array size to allocate space for it in local stack layout on compiling stage.

If you need array of arbitrary size, allocate it by `malloc()`, then access allocated memory block as array of variables of type you need. Or use C99 standard feature [ISO07, pp. 6.7.5/2], but it looks like `alloca()` (5.2.4) internally.

18.5 Array of pointers to strings

Here is also example of array of pointers.

Listing 18.5: Get month name

```

#include <stdio.h>

const char* month1[]=
{
    "January",
    "February",
    "March",
    "April",
    "May",
    "June",
    "July",
    "August",
    "September",
    "October",
    "November",
    "December"
};

// in 0..11 range
const char* get_month1 (int month)
{
    return month1[month];
};

```

18.5.1 x64

Listing 18.6: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```

_DATA SEGMENT
month1 DQ     FLAT:$SG3122
       DQ     FLAT:$SG3123

```

¹⁰However, it is possible in C99 standard [ISO07, pp. 6.7.5/2]: GCC is actually do this by allocating array dynamically on the stack (like `alloca()` (5.2.4))

```

DQ    FLAT:$SG3124
DQ    FLAT:$SG3125
DQ    FLAT:$SG3126
DQ    FLAT:$SG3127
DQ    FLAT:$SG3128
DQ    FLAT:$SG3129
DQ    FLAT:$SG3130
DQ    FLAT:$SG3131
DQ    FLAT:$SG3132
DQ    FLAT:$SG3133
$SG3122 DB    'January', 00H
$SG3123 DB    'February', 00H
$SG3124 DB    'March', 00H
$SG3125 DB    'April', 00H
$SG3126 DB    'May', 00H
$SG3127 DB    'June', 00H
$SG3128 DB    'July', 00H
$SG3129 DB    'August', 00H
$SG3130 DB    'September', 00H
$SG3156 DB    '%s', 0aH, 00H
$SG3131 DB    'October', 00H
$SG3132 DB    'November', 00H
$SG3133 DB    'December', 00H
_DATA  ENDS

month$ = 8
get_month1 PROC
    movsxd    rax, ecx
    lea      rcx, OFFSET FLAT:month1
    mov      rax, QWORD PTR [rcx+rax*8]
    ret      0
get_month1 ENDP

```

The code is very simple:

- The first MOVSSXD instruction copies 32-bit value from ECX (where *month* argument is passed) to RAX with sign-extension (because *month* argument has *int* type). The reason of extension laying in the fact that this 32-bit value will be used in calculation among with other 64-bit values. Hence, it should be promoted to 64-bit value ¹¹.
- Then the address of the whole pointers table is loaded into RCX.
- Finally, the input value (*month*) is multiplied by 8 and added to the address. Indeed: we are in 64-bit environment and all address (or pointers) require exactly 64 bits (or 8 bytes) for storage. Hence, each table element has width of 8 bytes. And that's why to pick element of specific number, *month* * 8 bytes should be skipped from the start. That's what MOV does. But it also loads element at this address. For 1 it would be pointer to the string containing "February" string, etc.

Optimizing GCC 4.9 can do the job even better ¹²:

Listing 18.7: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```

movsx    rdi, edi
mov      rax, QWORD PTR month1[0+rdi*8]
ret

```

32-bit MSVC

Let's also compile it in 32-bit MSVC compiler:

Listing 18.8: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x86

```

_month$ = 8
_get_month1 PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _month$[esp-4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _month1[eax*4]
    ret     0
_get_month1 ENDP

```

¹¹It is somewhat weird issue, but negative array index could be passed here (negative array indices will be explained later: 18.8). And if it will, negative input *int* value will be sign-extended correctly and the corresponding element before table will be picked. It will not work correctly without sign-extension.

¹²"0+" left in listing because GCC assembler output is not tidy enough for eliminating it. It's displacement, and it's zero here.

Input value not needed to be extended to 64-bit value, so it is used as is. And it's multiplied by 4, because table elements has width of 32-bit or 4 bytes.

18.5.2 32-bit ARM

ARM in ARM mode

Listing 18.9: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

get_month1 PROC
    LDR    r1, |L0.100|
    LDR    r0, [r1, r0, LSL #2]
    BX    lr
    ENDP

|L0.100|
    DCD    ||.data|

    DCB    "January", 0
    DCB    "February", 0
    DCB    "March", 0
    DCB    "April", 0
    DCB    "May", 0
    DCB    "June", 0
    DCB    "July", 0
    DCB    "August", 0
    DCB    "September", 0
    DCB    "October", 0
    DCB    "November", 0
    DCB    "December", 0

    AREA ||.data|, DATA, ALIGN=2

month1
    DCD    ||.conststring|
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x8
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x11
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x17
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x1d
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x21
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x26
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x2b
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x32
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x3c
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x44
    DCD    ||.conststring|+0x4d

```

Table address is loaded into R1. All the rest is done using only one LDR instruction. Then input *month* value is shifted left by 2 (which is the same as multiplying by 4), this value added to R1 (where address of table is) and then a value is loaded at this address. Then 32-bit value is loaded into R0 from the table.

ARM in Thumb mode

The code is mostly the same, but less dense, because LSL suffix cannot be specified in LDR instruction here:

```

get_month1 PROC
    LSLS   r0, r0, #2
    LDR    r1, |L0.64|
    LDR    r0, [r1, r0]
    BX    lr
    ENDP

```

18.5.3 ARM64

Listing 18.10: Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

```

get_month1:
    adrp   x1, .LANCHOR0
    add    x1, x1, :lo12:.LANCHOR0

```

```

        ldr    x0, [x1,w0,sxtw 3]
        ret

.LANCHOR0 = . + 0
        .type  month1, %object
        .size  month1, 96
month1:
        .xword .LC2
        .xword .LC3
        .xword .LC4
        .xword .LC5
        .xword .LC6
        .xword .LC7
        .xword .LC8
        .xword .LC9
        .xword .LC10
        .xword .LC11
        .xword .LC12
        .xword .LC13

.LC2:
        .string "January"
.LC3:
        .string "February"
.LC4:
        .string "March"
.LC5:
        .string "April"
.LC6:
        .string "May"
.LC7:
        .string "June"
.LC8:
        .string "July"
.LC9:
        .string "August"
.LC10:
        .string "September"
.LC11:
        .string "October"
.LC12:
        .string "November"
.LC13:
        .string "December"

```

Table address is loaded into X1 using ADRP/ADD pair. Then corresponding element is picked using only one instruction LDR, which takes W0 (register where input *month* argument is), shifts it 3 bits left (which is the same as multiplying by 8), sign-extends it (this is what “sxtw” suffix mean) and adds to X0. Then 64-bit value is loaded into X0 from the table.

18.5.4 Array overflow

Our function accepts values in range of 0..11, but what if 12 will be passed? There are no element in table present at this place. So, the function will load some value which happened to be located there, and return it. Soon after, some other function will try to get a string at this address and may crash.

I compiled the example in MSVC for win64 and opened it in IDA to see what linker placed after the table:

Listing 18.11: Executable in IDA

```

off_140011000  dq offset aJanuary_1      ; DATA XREF: .text:0000000140001003
               ; "January"
               dq offset aFebruary_1 ; "February"
               dq offset aMarch_1    ; "March"
               dq offset aApril_1   ; "April"
               dq offset aMay_1     ; "May"
               dq offset aJune_1    ; "June"
               dq offset aJuly_1    ; "July"
               dq offset aAugust_1  ; "August"
               dq offset aSeptember_1 ; "September"
               dq offset aOctober_1 ; "October"
               dq offset aNovember_1 ; "November"
               dq offset aDecember_1 ; "December"

```

```

aJanuary_1    db 'January',0          ; DATA XREF: sub_140001020+4
               ; .data:off_140011000
aFebruary_1   db 'February',0       ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011008
               align 4
aMarch_1      db 'March',0          ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011010
               align 4
aApril_1      db 'April',0          ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011018

```

Month names are came right after. Our program is tiny after all, so there are no much data to pack in the data segment, so these are names. But I should to note that there might be really *anything* what linker decided to put by chance.

So what if 12 will be passed to the function? 13th table element will be returned. Let's see how CPU will treat the bytes there as 64-bit value:

Listing 18.12: Executable in IDA

```

off_140011000  dq offset qword_140011060
               ; DATA XREF: .text:0000000140001003
               dq offset aFebruary_1  ; "February"
               dq offset aMarch_1    ; "March"
               dq offset aApril_1    ; "April"
               dq offset aMay_1      ; "May"
               dq offset aJune_1     ; "June"
               dq offset aJuly_1     ; "July"
               dq offset aAugust_1   ; "August"
               dq offset aSeptember_1 ; "September"
               dq offset aOctober_1  ; "October"
               dq offset aNovember_1 ; "November"
               dq offset aDecember_1 ; "December"
qword_140011060 dq 797261756E614Ah   ; DATA XREF: sub_140001020+4
               ; .data:off_140011000
aFebruary_1   db 'February',0       ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011008
               align 4
aMarch_1      db 'March',0          ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011010

```

And this is 0x797261756E614A. Soon after, some other function (presumably, string processing) will try to read bytes at this address expecting C-string there. Most likely it will crash, because this value is don't look like a valid address.

Array overflow protection

If something can go wrong, it will

Murphy's Law

It's a bit naive to expect that every programmer who use your function or library will never pass an argument larger than 11.

There are also a good "fail early and fail loudly" or "fail-fast" philosophy, which teaches to report problems as early as possible and stop.

One of such methods in C/C++ is assertions. We can modify our program to fail if incorrect value is passed:

Listing 18.13: assert() added

```

const char* get_month1_checked (int month)
{
    assert (month<12);
    return month1[month];
};

```

Assertion macro will check for valid values at each function start and fail if it's not.

Listing 18.14: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```

$SG3143 DB      'm', 00H, 'o', 00H, 'n', 00H, 't', 00H, 'h', 00H, '.', 00H
         DB      'c', 00H, 00H, 00H
$SG3144 DB      'm', 00H, 'o', 00H, 'n', 00H, 't', 00H, 'h', 00H, '<', 00H
         DB      '1', 00H, '2', 00H, 00H, 00H

month$ = 48
get_month1_checked PROC
$LN5:
    push    rbx
    sub     rsp, 32

```

```

movsxd  rbx, ecx
cmp     ebx, 12
jl      SHORT $LN3@get_month1
lea     rdx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG3143
lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG3144
mov     r8d, 29
call    _wassert
$LN3@get_month1:
lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:month1
mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rcx+rbx*8]
add     rsp, 32
pop     rbx
ret     0
get_month1_checked ENDP

```

In fact, `assert()` is not a function, but macro. It checks for condition, then pass also line number and file name to another function which will show this information to user.

Here we see that both file name and condition was encoded in UTF-16. Line number is also passed (it's 29).

This mechanism is same in probably all compilers. Here is what GCC does:

Listing 18.15: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```

.LC1:
.string "month.c"
.LC2:
.string "month<12"

get_month1_checked:
cmp     edi, 11
jg     .L6
movsxd rdi, edi
mov     rax, QWORD PTR month1[0+rdi*8]
ret

.L6:
push   rax
mov    ecx, OFFSET FLAT:___PRETTY_FUNCTION__.2423
mov    edx, 29
mov    esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC2
call   __assert_fail

___PRETTY_FUNCTION__.2423:
.string "get_month1_checked"

```

So it also pass function name for convenience.

Nothing came for free: sanitizing check as well. It makes your program slower, especially if `assert()` macros used in small time-critical functions. So MSVC, for example, leaves checks in Debug builds, but in Release builds they all are disappear.

Microsoft [Windows NT](#) kernels are also came in “checked” and “free” builds ¹³. First has validation checks (hence, “checked”), second doesn't (hence, “free” of checks).

18.6 Multidimensional arrays

Internally, multidimensional array is essentially the same thing as linear array.

Since computer memory in linear, it is one-dimensional array. But this one-dimensional array can be easily represented as multidimensional for convenience.

For example, that is how `a[3][4]` array elements will be placed in one-dimensional array of 12 cells:

¹³[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/hardware/ff543450\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/hardware/ff543450(v=vs.85).aspx)

[0][0]
[0][1]
[0][2]
[0][3]
[1][0]
[1][1]
[1][2]
[1][3]
[2][0]
[2][1]
[2][2]
[2][3]

Table 18.1: Two-dimensional array represented in memory as one-dimensional

Here is how each cell of 3*4 array will be placed in memory space:

0	1	2	3
4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11

Table 18.2: Memory addresses of each cell of two-dimensional array

So, in order to calculate an address of elements we need, first multiply first index by 4 (matrix width) and then add second index. That's called *row-major order*, and this method of arrays and matrices representation is used in at least C/C++ and Python. *row-major order* term in plain English language means: "first, write elements of first row, then second row ...and finally elements of last row".

Another method of representation called *column-major order* (array indices used in reverse order) and it is used at least in FORTRAN, MATLAB and R. *column-major order* term in plain English language means: "first, write elements of first column, then second column ...and finally elements of last column".

Which method is better? In general, in terms of performance and cache memory, the best scheme of data organization is that one, in which elements are accessed sequentially. So if your functions access data per rows, row-major order is better, and otherwise.

18.6.1 Two-dimensional array example

We will work with array of *char* type, meaning that each element require only one byte in memory.

Row filling example

Let's fill the second row with values: 0...3:

Listing 18.16: Row filling example

```
#include <stdio.h>

char a[3][4];

int main()
{
    int x, y;

    // clear array
    for (x=0; x<3; x++)
        for (y=0; y<4; y++)
            a[x][y]=0;

    // fill second row by 0..3:
    for (y=0; y<4; y++)
        a[1][y]=y;
};
```

I marked all three rows with red. We see that second row now has values 0, 1, 2 and 3:

Address	Hex dump	ASCII
01303370	00 00 00 00 00 01 02 03	.....00*
01303378	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....
01303380	02 00 00 00 3A 3D C4 9E	0...:=~0
01303388	3A 3D C4 9E 00 00 00 00	:~0....
01303390	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....

Figure 18.7: OllyDbg: array is filled

Column filling example

Let's fill the third column with values: 0...2.

Listing 18.17: Column filling example

```
#include <stdio.h>

char a[3][4];

int main()
{
    int x, y;

    // clear array
    for (x=0; x<3; x++)
        for (y=0; y<4; y++)
            a[x][y]=0;

    // fill third column by 0..2:
    for (x=0; x<3; x++)
        a[x][2]=x;
};
```

I also marked three rows by red here. We see that in each row, at third position, these values are written: 0, 1 and 2.

Address	Hex dump	ASCII
00B13370	00 00 00 00 00 00 01 00	.....0.
00B13378	00 00 02 00 00 00 00 00	..0.....
00B13380	02 00 00 00 93 61 C8 E6	0...Ya^u
00B13388	93 61 C8 E6 00 00 00 00	Ya^u....
00B13390	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	.....

Figure 18.8: OllyDbg: array is filled

18.6.2 Access two-dimensional array as one-dimensional

I can easily show how to access two-dimensional array as one-dimensional array in at least two other ways:

```
#include <stdio.h>

char a[3][4];

char get_by_coordinates1 (char array[3][4], int a, int b)
{
    return array[a][b];
};

char get_by_coordinates2 (char *array, int a, int b)
{
    // treat input array as one-dimensional
    // 4 is array width here
    return array[a*4+b];
};

char get_by_coordinates3 (char *array, int a, int b)
{
```

```

    // treat input array as pointer,
    // calculate address, get value at it
    // 4 is array width here
    return *(array+a*4+b);
};

int main()
{
    a[2][3]=123;
    printf ("%d\n", get_by_coordinates1(a, 2, 3));
    printf ("%d\n", get_by_coordinates2(a, 2, 3));
    printf ("%d\n", get_by_coordinates3(a, 2, 3));
};

```

Compile it and run: it will show correct values.

What did MSVC 2013 is fascinating, all three routines are just the same!

Listing 18.18: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```

array$ = 8
a$ = 16
b$ = 24
get_by_coordinates3 PROC
; RCX=array
; RDX=a
; R8=b
    movsxd rax, r8d
; EAX=b
    movsxd r9, edx
; R9=a
    add rax, rcx
; RAX=b+array
    movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rax+r9*4]
; AL=load at RAX+R9*4=b+array+a*4=array+a*4+b
    ret 0
get_by_coordinates3 ENDP

array$ = 8
a$ = 16
b$ = 24
get_by_coordinates2 PROC
    movsxd rax, r8d
    movsxd r9, edx
    add rax, rcx
    movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rax+r9*4]
    ret 0
get_by_coordinates2 ENDP

array$ = 8
a$ = 16
b$ = 24
get_by_coordinates1 PROC
    movsxd rax, r8d
    movsxd r9, edx
    add rax, rcx
    movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rax+r9*4]
    ret 0
get_by_coordinates1 ENDP

```

GCC also generates equivalent routines, but slightly different:

Listing 18.19: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```

; RDI=array
; RSI=a
; RDX=b

get_by_coordinates1:
; sign-extend input 32-bit int values a,b to 64-bit
    movsx rsi, esi
    movsx rdx, edx
    lea rax, [rdi+rsi*4]

```

```

; RAX=RDI+RSI*4=array+a*4
    movzx    eax, BYTE PTR [rax+rdx]
; AL=load at RAX+RDX=array+a*4+b
    ret

get_by_coordinates2:
    lea     eax, [rdx+rsi*4]
; RAX=RDX+RSI*4=b+a*4
    cdqe
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [rdi+rax]
; AL=load at RDI+RAX=array+b+a*4
    ret

get_by_coordinates3:
    sal     esi, 2
; ESI=a<<2=a*4
; sign-extend input 32-bit int values a*4,b to 64-bit
    movsx   rdx, edx
    movsx   rsi, esi
    add     rdi, rsi
; RDI=RDI+RSI=array+a*4
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [rdi+rdx]
; AL=load at RDI+RDX=array+a*4+b
    ret

```

18.6.3 Three-dimensional array example

Same thing about multidimensional arrays.

Now we will work with array of *int* type: each element require 4 bytes in memory.

Let's see:

Listing 18.20: simple example

```

#include <stdio.h>

int a[10][20][30];

void insert(int x, int y, int z, int value)
{
    a[x][y][z]=value;
};

```

x86

We got (MSVC 2010):

Listing 18.21: MSVC 2010

```

_DATA    SEGMENT
COMM    _a:DWORD:01770H
_DATA    ENDS
PUBLIC  _insert
_TEXT    SEGMENT
_x$ = 8           ; size = 4
_y$ = 12          ; size = 4
_z$ = 16          ; size = 4
_value$ = 20      ; size = 4
_insert    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
    imul   eax, 2400           ; eax=600*4*x
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _y$[ebp]
    imul   ecx, 120           ; ecx=30*4*y
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR _a[eax+ecx] ; edx=a + 600*4*x + 30*4*y
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _z$[ebp]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _value$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [edx+eax*4], ecx ; *(edx+z*4)=value
    pop     ebp

```

```

ret    0
_insert ENDP
_TEXT  ENDS

```

Nothing special. For index calculation, three input arguments are multiplying by formula $address = 600 \cdot 4 \cdot x + 30 \cdot 4 \cdot y + 4z$ to represent array as multidimensional. Do not forget the *int* type is 32-bit (4 bytes), so all coefficients must be multiplied by 4.

Listing 18.22: GCC 4.4.1

```

insert      public insert
            proc near

x           = dword ptr 8
y           = dword ptr 0Ch
z           = dword ptr 10h
value      = dword ptr 14h

            push    ebp
            mov     ebp, esp
            push    ebx
            mov     ebx, [ebp+x]
            mov     eax, [ebp+y]
            mov     ecx, [ebp+z]
            lea    edx, [eax+eax]           ; edx=y*2
            mov     eax, edx              ; eax=y*2
            shl    eax, 4                 ; eax=(y*2)<<4 = y*2*16 = y*32
            sub    eax, edx               ; eax=y*32 - y*2=y*30
            imul   edx, ebx, 600          ; edx=x*600
            add    eax, edx               ; eax=eax+edx=y*30 + x*600
            lea    edx, [eax+ecx]        ; edx=y*30 + x*600 + z
            mov     eax, [ebp+value]
            mov     dword ptr ds:a[edx*4], eax ; *(a+edx*4)=value
            pop    ebx
            pop    ebp
            retn

insert      endp

```

GCC compiler does it differently. For one of operations calculating $(30y)$, GCC produced a code without multiplication instruction. This is how it done: $(y + y) \ll 4 - (y + y) = (2y) \ll 4 - 2y = 2 \cdot 16 \cdot y - 2y = 32y - 2y = 30y$. Thus, for $30y$ calculation, only one addition operation used, one bitwise shift operation and one subtraction operation. That works faster.

ARM + Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb mode)

Listing 18.23: Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb mode)

```

_insert

value      = -0x10
z          = -0xC
y          = -8
x          = -4

; allocate place in local stack for 4 values of int type
SUB        SP, SP, #0x10
MOV        R9, 0xFC2 ; a
ADD        R9, PC
LDR.W     R9, [R9]
STR        R0, [SP,#0x10+x]
STR        R1, [SP,#0x10+y]
STR        R2, [SP,#0x10+z]
STR        R3, [SP,#0x10+value]
LDR        R0, [SP,#0x10+value]
LDR        R1, [SP,#0x10+z]
LDR        R2, [SP,#0x10+y]
LDR        R3, [SP,#0x10+x]
MOV        R12, 2400
MUL.W     R3, R3, R12
ADD        R3, R9
MOV        R9, 120

```

```

MUL.W  R2, R2, R9
ADD    R2, R3
LSLS   R1, R1, #2 ; R1=R1<<2
ADD    R1, R2
STR    R0, [R1] ; R1 - address of array element
; deallocate place in local stack, allocated for 4 values of int type
ADD    SP, SP, #0x10
BX     LR

```

Non-optimizing LLVM saves all variables in local stack, however, it is redundant. Address of array element is calculated by formula we already figured out.

ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb mode)

Listing 18.24: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb mode)

```

_insert
MOVW   R9, #0x10FC
MOV.W  R12, #2400
MOVT.W R9, #0
RSB.W  R1, R1, R1, LSL#4 ; R1 - y. R1=y<<4 - y = y*16 - y = y*15
ADD    R9, PC ; R9 = pointer to a array
LDR.W  R9, [R9]
MLA.W  R0, R0, R12, R9 ; R0 - x, R12 - 2400, R9 - pointer to a. R0=x*2400 + ptr to a
ADD.W  R0, R0, R1, LSL#3 ; R0 = R0+R1<<3 = R0+R1*8 = x*2400 + ptr to a + y*15*8 =
; ptr to a + y*30*4 + x*600*4
STR.W  R3, [R0, R2, LSL#2] ; R2 - z, R3 - value. address=R0+z*4 =
; ptr to a + y*30*4 + x*600*4 + z*4
BX     LR

```

Tricks for replacing multiplication by shift, addition and subtraction which we already considered are also present here.

Here we also see new instruction for us: RSB (*Reverse Subtract*). It works just as SUB, but it swaps its operands with each other before. Why? SUB and RSB are those instructions, to the second operand of which shift coefficient may be applied: (LSL#4). But this coefficient may be applied only to second operand. That's fine for commutative operations like addition or multiplication (operands may be swapped there without result affecting). But subtraction is non-commutative operation, so RSB exist for these cases.

``LDR.W R9, [R9]`` instruction works like LEA (A.6.2) in x86, but it does nothing here, it is redundant. Apparently, compiler not optimized it.

18.6.4 More examples

Computer screen is represented as 2D array, but video-buffer is linear 1D array. We talk about it here: [74.2](#).

18.7 Pack of strings as two-dimensional array

Let's revisit function which returns name of month: listing.18.5. As you may see, at least one memory load operation is needed to prepare a pointer to the string consisting of month name. Will it be possible to get rid of this memory load operation? In fact yes, if to represent list of strings as a two-dimensional array:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <assert.h>

const char month2[12][10]=
{
    { 'J', 'a', 'n', 'u', 'a', 'r', 'y', 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'F', 'e', 'b', 'r', 'u', 'a', 'r', 'y', 0, 0 },
    { 'M', 'a', 'r', 'c', 'h', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'A', 'p', 'r', 'i', 'l', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'M', 'a', 'y', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'J', 'u', 'n', 'e', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'J', 'u', 'l', 'y', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'A', 'u', 'g', 'u', 's', 't', 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'S', 'e', 'p', 't', 'e', 'm', 'b', 'e', 'r', 0 },
    { 'O', 'c', 't', 'o', 'b', 'e', 'r', 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'N', 'o', 'v', 'e', 'm', 'b', 'e', 'r', 0, 0 },
    { 'D', 'e', 'c', 'e', 'm', 'b', 'e', 'r', 0, 0 }
};

```

```
// in 0..11 range
const char* get_month2 (int month)
{
    return &month2[month][0];
};
```

Here is what we've got:

Listing 18.25: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
month2 DB    04aH
        DB    061H
        DB    06eH
        DB    075H
        DB    061H
        DB    072H
        DB    079H
        DB    00H
        DB    00H
        DB    00H
...
get_month2 PROC
; sign-extend input argument and promote to 64-bit value
    movsxd  rax, ecx
    lea     rcx, QWORD PTR [rax+rax*4]
; RCX=month+month*4=month*5
    lea     rax, OFFSET FLAT:month2
; RAX=pointer to the table
    lea     rax, QWORD PTR [rax+rcx*2]
; RAX=pointer to table + RCX*2=pointer to table + month*5*2=pointer to table + month*10
    ret     0
get_month2 ENDP
```

There are no memory access at all. All this function do is calculating point at which the first character of month name is: *pointer_to_the_table + month * 10*. There are also two LEA instructions which are effectively working as several MUL and MOV instructions.

Width of the array is 10 bytes. Indeed, longest string here is “September” (9 bytes) plus terminating zero is 10 bytes. Other month names are padded by zero bytes, so they all occupy the same space (10 bytes). Thus, our function works even faster, because all string are started at points which can be easily calculated.

GCC 4.9 can do it even shorter:

Listing 18.26: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```
movsx  rdi, edi
lea    rax, [rdi+rdi*4]
lea    rax, month2[rax+rax]
ret
```

LEA is also used for multiplication by 10 here.

Non-optimizing compilers do multiplication differently.

Listing 18.27: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```
get_month2:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp
    mov     DWORD PTR [rbp-4], edi
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-4]
    movsx   rdx, eax
; RDX = sign-extended input value
    mov     rax, rdx
; RAX = month
    sal    rax, 2
; RAX = month<<2 = month*4
    add    rax, rdx
; RAX = RAX+RDX = month*4+month = month*5
    add    rax, rax
; RAX = RAX*2 = month*5*2 = month*10
    add    rax, OFFSET FLAT:month2
; RAX = month*10 + pointer to the table
```

```
pop    rbp
ret
```

Non-optimizing MSVC just use IMUL instruction:

Listing 18.28: Non-optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
month$ = 8
get_month2 PROC
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+8], ecx
    movsxd  rax, DWORD PTR month$[rsp]
; RAX = sign-extended input value
    imul   rax, rax, 10
; RAX = RAX*10
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:month2
; RCX = pointer to the table
    add    rcx, rax
; RCX = RCX+RAX = pointer to the table+month*10
    mov    rax, rcx
; RAX = pointer to the table+month*10
    mov    ecx, 1
; RCX = 1
    imul   rcx, rcx, 0
; RCX = 1*0 = 0
    add    rax, rcx
; RAX = pointer to the table+month*10 + 0 = pointer to the table+month*10
    ret    0
get_month2 ENDP
```

...but one thing is weird here: why to add multiplication by zero and adding zero to the final result? I don't know, this looks like compiler code generator quirk, which wasn't caught by compiler's tests (resulting code is correct after all). I intentionally add such pieces of code so the reader would understand, that sometimes one shouldn't puzzle over such compiler's artifacts.

18.7.1 32-bit ARM

Optimizing Keil for Thumb mode use multiplication instruction MULS:

Listing 18.29: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```
; R0 = month
    MOVS    r1,#0xa
; R1 = 10
    MULS   r0,r1,r0
; R0 = R1*R0 = 10*month
    LDR    r1,|L0.68|
; R1 = pointer to the table
    ADDS   r0,r0,r1
; R0 = R0+R1 = 10*month + pointer to the table
    BX     lr
```

Optimizing Keil for ARM mode use add and shift operations:

Listing 18.30: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
; R0 = month
    LDR    r1,|L0.104|
; R1 = pointer to the table
    ADD    r0,r0,r0,LSL #2
; R0 = R0+R0<<2 = R0+R0*4 = month*5
    ADD    r0,r1,r0,LSL #1
; R0 = R1+R0<<2 = pointer to the table + month*5*2 = pointer to the table + month*10
    BX     lr
```

18.7.2 ARM64

Listing 18.31: Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

```
; W0 = month
    sxtw   x0, w0
; X0 = sign-extended input value
```



```

    adrp    x1, .LANCHOR1
    add     x1, x1, :lo12:.LANCHOR1
; X1 = pointer to the table
    add     x0, x0, x0, lsl 2
; X0 = X0+X0<<2 = X0+X0*4 = X0*5
    add     x0, x1, x0, lsl 1
; X0 = X1+X0<<1 = X1+X0*2 = pointer to the table + X0*10
    ret

```

SXTW is used for sign-extension and promoting input 32-bit value into 64-bit one and storing it in X0. ADRP/ADD pair is used for loading address of the table. ADD instructions also has LSL suffix, which helps with multiplications.

18.7.3 Conclusion

This is a bit old-school technique to store strings. You may find a lot of it in Oracle RDBMS, for example. But I don't really know if it's worth to do it on modern computers. Nevertheless, it was a good example of arrays, so I added it to this book.

18.8 Negative array indices

It's possible to address a space *before* array by supplying negative index, e.g., `array[-1]`.

It's very hard to say, why one should need it, I know probably only one practical application of this technique. C/C++ array elements indices are started at 0, but some PLS has first index at 1 (at least FORTRAN). Programmers may still have this habit, so using this little trick, it's possible to address first element in C/C++ using index 1:

```

#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int random_value=0x11223344;
    unsigned char array[10];
    int i;
    unsigned char *fakearray=&array[-1];

    for (i=0; i<10; i++)
        array[i]=i;

    printf ("first element %d\n", fakearray[1]);
    printf ("second element %d\n", fakearray[2]);
    printf ("last element %d\n", fakearray[10]);

    printf ("array[-1]=%02X, array[-2]=%02X, array[-3]=%02X, array[-4]=%02X\n",
           array[-1],
           array[-2],
           array[-3],
           array[-4]);
};

```

Listing 18.32: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```

1  $SG2751 DB      'first element %d', 0aH, 00H
2  $SG2752 DB      'second element %d', 0aH, 00H
3  $SG2753 DB      'last element %d', 0aH, 00H
4  $SG2754 DB      'array[-1]=%02X, array[-2]=%02X, array[-3]=%02X, array[-4]'
5  DB             ']=%02X', 0aH, 00H
6
7  _fakearray$ = -24          ; size = 4
8  _random_value$ = -20      ; size = 4
9  _array$ = -16             ; size = 10
10 _i$ = -4                  ; size = 4
11 _main PROC
12     push    ebp
13     mov     ebp, esp
14     sub     esp, 24
15     mov     DWORD PTR _random_value$[ebp], 287454020 ; 11223344H
16     ; set fakearray[] one byte earlier before array[]
17     lea    eax, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
18     add    eax, -1 ; eax=eax-1
19     mov     DWORD PTR _fakearray$[ebp], eax

```

```

20     mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
21     jmp     SHORT $LN3@main
22     ; fill array[] with 0..9
23 $LN2@main:
24     mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
25     add     ecx, 1
26     mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], ecx
27 $LN3@main:
28     cmp     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 10
29     jge     SHORT $LN1@main
30     mov     edx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
31     mov     al, BYTE PTR _i$[ebp]
32     mov     BYTE PTR _array$[ebp+edx], al
33     jmp     SHORT $LN2@main
34 $LN1@main:
35     mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _fakearray$[ebp]
36     ; ecx=address of fakearray[0], ecx+1 is fakearray[1] or array[0]
37     movzx   edx, BYTE PTR [ecx+1]
38     push   edx
39     push   OFFSET $SG2751 ; 'first element %d'
40     call   _printf
41     add     esp, 8
42     mov     eax, DWORD PTR _fakearray$[ebp]
43     ; eax=address of fakearray[0], eax+2 is fakearray[2] or array[1]
44     movzx   ecx, BYTE PTR [eax+2]
45     push   ecx
46     push   OFFSET $SG2752 ; 'second element %d'
47     call   _printf
48     add     esp, 8
49     mov     edx, DWORD PTR _fakearray$[ebp]
50     ; edx=address of fakearray[0], edx+10 is fakearray[10] or array[9]
51     movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [edx+10]
52     push   eax
53     push   OFFSET $SG2753 ; 'last element %d'
54     call   _printf
55     add     esp, 8
56     ; subtract 4, 3, 2 and 1 from pointer to array[0] in order to find values before array[]
57     ↪ []
58     lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
59     movzx  edx, BYTE PTR [ecx-4]
60     push  edx
61     lea    eax, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
62     movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [eax-3]
63     push  ecx
64     lea    edx, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
65     movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [edx-2]
66     push  eax
67     lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
68     movzx  edx, BYTE PTR [ecx-1]
69     push  edx
70     ↪ X'
71     call   _printf
72     add     esp, 20
73     xor     eax, eax
74     mov     esp, ebp
75     pop     ebp
76     ret     0
_main   ENDP

```

So we have `array[]` of ten elements, filled with `0..9` bytes. Then we have `fakearray[]` pointer which points one byte before `array[]`. `fakearray[1]` pointing exactly to `array[0]`. But we still curious, what is before `array[]`? I added `random_value` before `array[]` and set it to `0x11223344`. Non-optimizing compiler allocated variables in the order they were declared, so yes, 32-bit `random_value` is right before `array`.

I run it, and:

```

first element 0
second element 1
last element 9
array[-1]=11, array[-2]=22, array[-3]=33, array[-4]=44

```

Stack fragment I copy-pasted from OllyDbg stack window (with my comments):

Listing 18.33: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```
CPU Stack
Address  Value
001DFBCC /001DFBD3 ; fakearray pointer
001DFBD0 |11223344 ; random_value
001DFBD4 |03020100 ; 4 bytes of array[]
001DFBD8 |07060504 ; 4 bytes of array[]
001DFBDC |00CB0908 ; random garbage + 2 last bytes of array[]
001DFBE0 |0000000A ; last i value after loop was finished
001DFBE4 |001DFC2C ; saved EBP value
001DFBE8 \00CB129D ; Return Address
```

Pointer to the fakearray[] (0x001DFBD3) is indeed address of array[] in stack (0x001DFBD4), but minus 1 byte.

It's still very hackish and dubious trick, I doubt anyone should use it in production code, but as a demonstration, it fits perfectly here.

18.9 Conclusion

Array is a pack of values in memory located adjacently. It's true for any element type, including structures. Access to specific array element is just calculation of its address.

18.10 Exercises

18.10.1 Exercise #1

What this code does?

Listing 18.34: MSVC 2010 + /O1

```
_a$ = 8      ; size = 4
_b$ = 12     ; size = 4
_c$ = 16     ; size = 4
?s@@YAXPAN00@Z PROC ; s, COMDAT
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _c$[esp-4]
    push   esi
    push   edi
    sub     ecx, eax
    sub     edx, eax
    mov     edi, 200 ; 000000c8H
$LL6@s:
    push   100 ; 00000064H
    pop    esi
$LL3@s:
    fld    QWORD PTR [ecx+eax]
    fadd   QWORD PTR [eax]
    fstp   QWORD PTR [edx+eax]
    add    eax, 8
    dec    esi
    jne    SHORT $LL3@s
    dec    edi
    jne    SHORT $LL6@s
    pop    edi
    pop    esi
    ret    0
?s@@YAXPAN00@Z ENDP ; s
```

(/O1: minimize space).

Listing 18.35: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
PUSH    {r4-r12,lr}
MOV     r9,r2
MOV     r10,r1
MOV     r11,r0
MOV     r5,#0
```

```

|L0.20|
    ADD    r0,r5,r5,LSL #3
    ADD    r0,r0,r5,LSL #4
    MOV    r4,#0
    ADD    r8,r10,r0,LSL #5
    ADD    r7,r11,r0,LSL #5
    ADD    r6,r9,r0,LSL #5
|L0.44|
    ADD    r0,r8,r4,LSL #3
    LDM    r0,{r2,r3}
    ADD    r1,r7,r4,LSL #3
    LDM    r1,{r0,r1}
    BL     __aeabi_dadd
    ADD    r2,r6,r4,LSL #3
    ADD    r4,r4,#1
    STM    r2,{r0,r1}
    CMP    r4,#0x64
    BLT   |L0.44|
    ADD    r5,r5,#1
    CMP    r5,#0xc8
    BLT   |L0.20|
    POP    {r4-r12,pc}

```

Listing 18.36: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

    PUSH   {r0-r2,r4-r7,lr}
    MOVS   r4,#0
    SUB    sp,sp,#8
|L0.6|
    MOVS   r1,#0x19
    MOVS   r0,r4
    LSLS   r1,r1,#5
    MULS   r0,r1,r0
    LDR    r2,[sp,#8]
    LDR    r1,[sp,#0xc]
    ADDS   r2,r0,r2
    STR    r2,[sp,#0]
    LDR    r2,[sp,#0x10]
    MOVS   r5,#0
    ADDS   r7,r0,r2
    ADDS   r0,r0,r1
    STR    r0,[sp,#4]
|L0.32|
    LSLS   r6,r5,#3
    ADDS   r0,r0,r6
    LDM    r0!,{r2,r3}
    LDR    r0,[sp,#0]
    ADDS   r1,r0,r6
    LDM    r1,{r0,r1}
    BL     __aeabi_dadd
    ADDS   r2,r7,r6
    ADDS   r5,r5,#1
    STM    r2!,{r0,r1}
    CMP    r5,#0x64
    BGE   |L0.62|
    LDR    r0,[sp,#4]
    B     |L0.32|
|L0.62|
    ADDS   r4,r4,#1
    CMP    r4,#0xc8
    BLT   |L0.6|
    ADD    sp,sp,#0x14
    POP    {r4-r7,pc}

```

Listing 18.37: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

s:
    sub    sp, sp, #48
    str    x0, [sp,24]
    str    x1, [sp,16]

```

```

    str    x2, [sp,8]
    str    wzr, [sp,44]
    b      .L2
.L5:
    str    wzr, [sp,40]
    b      .L3
.L4:
    ldr    w1, [sp,44]
    mov    w0, 100
    mul    w0, w1, w0
    sxtw   x1, w0
    ldrsw  x0, [sp,40]
    add    x0, x1, x0
    lsl    x0, x0, 3
    ldr    x1, [sp,8]
    add    x0, x1, x0
    ldr    w2, [sp,44]
    mov    w1, 100
    mul    w1, w2, w1
    sxtw   x2, w1
    ldrsw  x1, [sp,40]
    add    x1, x2, x1
    lsl    x1, x1, 3
    ldr    x2, [sp,24]
    add    x1, x2, x1
    ldr    x2, [x1]
    ldr    w3, [sp,44]
    mov    w1, 100
    mul    w1, w3, w1
    sxtw   x3, w1
    ldrsw  x1, [sp,40]
    add    x1, x3, x1
    lsl    x1, x1, 3
    ldr    x3, [sp,16]
    add    x1, x3, x1
    ldr    x1, [x1]
    fmov   d0, x2
    fmov   d1, x1
    fadd   d0, d0, d1
    fmov   x1, d0
    str    x1, [x0]
    ldr    w0, [sp,40]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    str    w0, [sp,40]
.L3:
    ldr    w0, [sp,40]
    cmp    w0, 99
    ble    .L4
    ldr    w0, [sp,44]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    str    w0, [sp,44]
.L2:
    ldr    w0, [sp,44]
    cmp    w0, 199
    ble    .L5
    add    sp, sp, 48
    ret

```

Answer [F.1.10](#).

18.10.2 Exercise #2

What this code does?

Listing 18.38: MSVC 2010 + /O1

```

tv315 = -8           ; size = 4
tv291 = -4           ; size = 4
_a$ = 8              ; size = 4
_b$ = 12             ; size = 4

```

```

_c$ = 16 ; size = 4
?m@@YAXPAN00@Z PROC ; m, COMDAT
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    push    ecx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    push    ebx
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    sub     edx, esi
    push    edi
    sub     esi, ebx
    mov     DWORD PTR tv315[ebp], 100 ; 00000064H
$LL9@m:
    mov     eax, ebx
    mov     DWORD PTR tv291[ebp], 300 ; 0000012cH
$LL6@m:
    fldz
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR [esi+eax]
    fstp   QWORD PTR [eax]
    mov     edi, 200 ; 000000c8H
$LL3@m:
    dec     edi
    fld    QWORD PTR [ecx+edx]
    fmul   QWORD PTR [ecx]
    fadd   QWORD PTR [eax]
    fstp   QWORD PTR [eax]
    jne    HORT $LL3@m
    add    eax, 8
    dec    DWORD PTR tv291[ebp]
    jne    SHORT $LL6@m
    add    ebx, 800 ; 00000320H
    dec    DWORD PTR tv315[ebp]
    jne    SHORT $LL9@m
    pop    edi
    pop    esi
    pop    ebx
    leave
    ret    0
?m@@YAXPAN00@Z ENDP ; m

```

(/O1: minimize space).

Listing 18.39: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

    PUSH    {r0-r2,r4-r11,lr}
    SUB     sp,sp,#8
    MOV     r5,#0
|L0.12|
    LDR     r1,[sp,#0xc]
    ADD     r0,r5,r5,LSL #3
    ADD     r0,r0,r5,LSL #4
    ADD     r1,r1,r0,LSL #5
    STR     r1,[sp,#0]
    LDR     r1,[sp,#8]
    MOV     r4,#0
    ADD     r11,r1,r0,LSL #5
    LDR     r1,[sp,#0x10]
    ADD     r10,r1,r0,LSL #5
|L0.52|
    MOV     r0,#0
    MOV     r1,r0
    ADD     r7,r10,r4,LSL #3
    STM     r7,{r0,r1}
    MOV     r6,r0
    LDR     r0,[sp,#0]
    ADD     r8,r11,r4,LSL #3
    ADD     r9,r0,r4,LSL #3
|L0.84|

```

```

LDM    r9,{r2,r3}
LDM    r8,{r0,r1}
BL     __aeabi_dmul
LDM    r7,{r2,r3}
BL     __aeabi_dadd
ADD    r6,r6,#1
STM    r7,{r0,r1}
CMP    r6,#0xc8
BLT    |L0.84|
ADD    r4,r4,#1
CMP    r4,#0x12c
BLT    |L0.52|
ADD    r5,r5,#1
CMP    r5,#0x64
BLT    |L0.12|
ADD    sp,sp,#0x14
POP    {r4-r11,pc}

```

Listing 18.40: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

PUSH   {r0-r2,r4-r7,lr}
MOVS   r0,#0
SUB    sp,sp,#0x10
STR    r0,[sp,#0]
|L0.8|
MOVS   r1,#0x19
LSLS   r1,r1,#5
MULS   r0,r1,r0
LDR    r2,[sp,#0x10]
LDR    r1,[sp,#0x14]
ADDS   r2,r0,r2
STR    r2,[sp,#4]
LDR    r2,[sp,#0x18]
MOVS   r5,#0
ADDS   r7,r0,r2
ADDS   r0,r0,r1
STR    r0,[sp,#8]
|L0.32|
LSLS   r4,r5,#3
MOVS   r0,#0
ADDS   r2,r7,r4
STR    r0,[r2,#0]
MOVS   r6,r0
STR    r0,[r2,#4]
|L0.44|
LDR    r0,[sp,#8]
ADDS   r0,r0,r4
LDM    r0!,{r2,r3}
LDR    r0,[sp,#4]
ADDS   r1,r0,r4
LDM    r1,{r0,r1}
BL     __aeabi_dmul
ADDS   r3,r7,r4
LDM    r3,{r2,r3}
BL     __aeabi_dadd
ADDS   r2,r7,r4
ADDS   r6,r6,#1
STM    r2!,{r0,r1}
CMP    r6,#0xc8
BLT    |L0.44|
MOVS   r0,#0xff
ADDS   r5,r5,#1
ADDS   r0,r0,#0x2d
CMP    r5,r0
BLT    |L0.32|
LDR    r0,[sp,#0]
ADDS   r0,r0,#1
CMP    r0,#0x64
STR    r0,[sp,#0]
BLT    |L0.8|

```

```

ADD    sp,sp,#0x1c
POP    {r4-r7,pc}

```

Listing 18.41: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

m:
    sub    sp, sp, #48
    str    x0, [sp,24]
    str    x1, [sp,16]
    str    x2, [sp,8]
    str    wzr, [sp,44]
    b     .L2
.L7:
    str    wzr, [sp,40]
    b     .L3
.L6:
    ldr    w1, [sp,44]
    mov    w0, 100
    mul    w0, w1, w0
    sxtw   x1, w0
    ldrsw  x0, [sp,40]
    add    x0, x1, x0
    lsl    x0, x0, 3
    ldr    x1, [sp,8]
    add    x0, x1, x0
    ldr    x1, .LC0
    str    x1, [x0]
    str    wzr, [sp,36]
    b     .L4
.L5:
    ldr    w1, [sp,44]
    mov    w0, 100
    mul    w0, w1, w0
    sxtw   x1, w0
    ldrsw  x0, [sp,40]
    add    x0, x1, x0
    lsl    x0, x0, 3
    ldr    x1, [sp,8]
    add    x0, x1, x0
    ldr    w2, [sp,44]
    mov    w1, 100
    mul    w1, w2, w1
    sxtw   x2, w1
    ldrsw  x1, [sp,40]
    add    x1, x2, x1
    lsl    x1, x1, 3
    ldr    x2, [sp,8]
    add    x1, x2, x1
    ldr    x2, [x1]
    ldr    w3, [sp,44]
    mov    w1, 100
    mul    w1, w3, w1
    sxtw   x3, w1
    ldrsw  x1, [sp,40]
    add    x1, x3, x1
    lsl    x1, x1, 3
    ldr    x3, [sp,24]
    add    x1, x3, x1
    ldr    x3, [x1]
    ldr    w4, [sp,44]
    mov    w1, 100
    mul    w1, w4, w1
    sxtw   x4, w1
    ldrsw  x1, [sp,40]
    add    x1, x4, x1
    lsl    x1, x1, 3
    ldr    x4, [sp,16]
    add    x1, x4, x1
    ldr    x1, [x1]
    fmov   d0, x3

```



```

    fmov    d1, x1
    fmul   d0, d0, d1
    fmov   x1, d0
    fmov   d0, x2
    fmov   d1, x1
    fadd   d0, d0, d1
    fmov   x1, d0
    str    x1, [x0]
    ldr    w0, [sp,36]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    str    w0, [sp,36]
.L4:
    ldr    w0, [sp,36]
    cmp    w0, 199
    ble    .L5
    ldr    w0, [sp,40]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    str    w0, [sp,40]
.L3:
    ldr    w0, [sp,40]
    cmp    w0, 299
    ble    .L6
    ldr    w0, [sp,44]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    str    w0, [sp,44]
.L2:
    ldr    w0, [sp,44]
    cmp    w0, 99
    ble    .L7
    add    sp, sp, 48
    ret

```

Answer [F.1.10](#).

18.10.3 Exercise #3

What this code does?

Try to determine array dimensions, at least partially.

Listing 18.42: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_array$ = 8
_x$ = 12
_y$ = 16
_f      PROC
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _x$[esp-4]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _y$[esp-4]
    mov    ecx, eax
    shl   ecx, 4
    sub   ecx, eax
    lea   eax, DWORD PTR [edx+ecx*8]
    mov   ecx, DWORD PTR _array$[esp-4]
    fld   QWORD PTR [ecx+eax*8]
    ret   0
_f      ENDP

```

Listing 18.43: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
    RSB    r1,r1,r1,LSL #4
    ADD    r0,r0,r1,LSL #6
    ADD    r1,r0,r2,LSL #3
    LDM    r1,{r0,r1}
    BX    lr
    ENDP

```

Listing 18.44: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

f PROC
    MOVS   r3,#0xf

```

```

LSLS    r3,r3,#6
MULS    r1,r3,r1
ADDS    r0,r1,r0
LSLS    r1,r2,#3
ADDS    r1,r0,r1
LDM     r1,{r0,r1}
BX      lr
ENDP

```

Listing 18.45: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

f:
    sxtw    x1, w1
    add     x0, x0, x2, sxtw 3
    lsl     x2, x1, 10
    sub     x1, x2, x1, lsl 6
    ldr     d0, [x0,x1]
    ret

```

Answer [F.1.10](#)

18.10.4 Exercise #4

What this code does?

Try to determine array dimensions, at least partially.

Listing 18.46: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_array$ = 8
_x$ = 12
_y$ = 16
_z$ = 20
_f      PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _x$[esp-4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _y$[esp-4]
    mov     ecx, eax
    shl     ecx, 4
    sub     ecx, eax
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR [edx+ecx*4]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _array$[esp-4]
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR [eax+eax*4]
    shl     eax, 4
    add     eax, DWORD PTR _z$[esp-4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+eax*4]
    ret     0
_f      ENDP

```

Listing 18.47: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
    RSB     r1,r1,r1,LSL #4
    ADD     r1,r1,r1,LSL #2
    ADD     r0,r0,r1,LSL #8
    ADD     r1,r2,r2,LSL #2
    ADD     r0,r0,r1,LSL #6
    LDR     r0,[r0,r3,LSL #2]
    BX      lr
ENDP

```

Listing 18.48: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

f PROC
    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    MOVS    r4,#0x4b
    LSLS    r4,r4,#8
    MULS    r1,r4,r1
    ADDS    r0,r1,r0
    MOVS    r1,#0xff
    ADDS    r1,r1,#0x41
    MULS    r2,r1,r2

```

```

ADDS    r0,r0,r2
LSLS    r1,r3,#2
LDR     r0,[r0,r1]
POP     {r4,pc}
ENDP

```

Listing 18.49: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

f:
sxtw    x2, w2
mov     w4, 19200
add     x2, x2, x2, lsl 2
smull   x1, w1, w4
lsl     x2, x2, 4
add     x3, x2, x3, sxtw
add     x0, x0, x3, lsl 2
ldr     w0, [x0,x1]
ret

```

Answer [F.1.10](#)

18.10.5 Exercise #5

What this code does?

Listing 18.50: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /GS-

```

COMM    _tbl:DWORD:064H
tv759 = -4      ; size = 4
_main   PROC
        push    ecx
        push    ebx
        push    ebp
        push    esi
        xor     edx, edx
        push    edi
        xor     esi, esi
        xor     edi, edi
        xor     ebx, ebx
        xor     ebp, ebp
        mov     DWORD PTR tv759[esp+20], edx
        mov     eax, OFFSET _tbl+4
        npad    8 ; align next label
$LL6@main:
        lea     ecx, DWORD PTR [edx+edx]
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax+4], ecx
        mov     ecx, DWORD PTR tv759[esp+20]
        add     DWORD PTR tv759[esp+20], 3
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax+8], ecx
        lea     ecx, DWORD PTR [edx*4]
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax+12], ecx
        lea     ecx, DWORD PTR [edx*8]
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax], edx
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax+16], ebp
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax+20], ebx
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax+24], edi
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax+32], esi
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax-4], 0
        mov     DWORD PTR [eax+28], ecx
        add     eax, 40
        inc     edx
        add     ebp, 5
        add     ebx, 6
        add     edi, 7
        add     esi, 9
        cmp     eax, OFFSET _tbl+404
        jl     SHORT $LL6@main
        pop     edi
        pop     esi

```

```

        pop     ebp
        xor     eax, eax
        pop     ebx
        pop     ecx
        ret     0
_main   ENDP

```

Listing 18.51: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

main PROC
    LDR     r12, |L0.60|
    MOV     r1, #0
|L0.8|
    ADD     r2, r1, r1, LSL #2
    MOV     r0, #0
    ADD     r2, r12, r2, LSL #3
|L0.20|
    MUL     r3, r1, r0
    STR     r3, [r2, r0, LSL #2]
    ADD     r0, r0, #1
    CMP     r0, #0xa
    BLT     |L0.20|
    ADD     r1, r1, #1
    CMP     r1, #0xa
    MOVGE  r0, #0
    BLT     |L0.8|
    BX     lr
    ENDP

|L0.60|
    DCD     ||.bss||

    AREA  ||.bss||, DATA, NOINIT, ALIGN=2

tbl
    %      400

```

Listing 18.52: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

main PROC
    PUSH   {r4, r5, lr}
    LDR    r4, |L0.40|
    MOVS   r1, #0
|L0.6|
    MOVS   r2, #0x28
    MULS   r2, r1, r2
    MOVS   r0, #0
    ADDS   r3, r2, r4
|L0.14|
    MOVS   r2, r1
    MULS   r2, r0, r2
    LSLS   r5, r0, #2
    ADDS   r0, r0, #1
    CMP    r0, #0xa
    STR    r2, [r3, r5]
    BLT    |L0.14|
    ADDS   r1, r1, #1
    CMP    r1, #0xa
    BLT    |L0.6|
    MOVS   r0, #0
    POP    {r4, r5, pc}
    ENDP

|L0.40|
    DCW    0x0000
    DCD    ||.bss||

    AREA  ||.bss||, DATA, NOINIT, ALIGN=2

tbl

```

Listing 18.53: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

    .comm    tbl,400,8
main:
    sub     sp, sp, #16
    str     wzr, [sp,12]
    b      .L2
.L5:
    str     wzr, [sp,8]
    b      .L3
.L4:
    ldr     w1, [sp,12]
    ldr     w0, [sp,8]
    mul     w3, w1, w0
    adrp   x0, tbl
    add     x2, x0, :lo12:tbl
    ldrsw  x4, [sp,8]
    ldrsw  x1, [sp,12]
    mov     x0, x1
    lsl     x0, x0, 2
    add     x0, x0, x1
    lsl     x0, x0, 1
    add     x0, x0, x4
    str     w3, [x2,x0,lsl 2]
    ldr     w0, [sp,8]
    add     w0, w0, 1
    str     w0, [sp,8]
.L3:
    ldr     w0, [sp,8]
    cmp     w0, 9
    ble    .L4
    ldr     w0, [sp,12]
    add     w0, w0, 1
    str     w0, [sp,12]
.L2:
    ldr     w0, [sp,12]
    cmp     w0, 9
    ble    .L5
    mov     w0, 0
    add     sp, sp, 16
    ret

```

Answer [F.1.10](#)

Chapter 19

Working with specific bits

A lot of functions defining input flags in arguments using bit fields. Of course, it could be substituted by *bool*-typed variables set, but it is not frugally.

19.1 Specific bit checking

19.1.1 x86

Win32 API example:

```
HANDLE fh;

fh=CreateFile ("file", GENERIC_WRITE | GENERIC_READ, FILE_SHARE_READ, NULL, OPEN_ALWAYS,
FILE_ATTRIBUTE_NORMAL, NULL);
```

We got (MSVC 2010):

Listing 19.1: MSVC 2010

```
push    0
push    128                ; 00000080H
push    4
push    0
push    1
push    -1073741824       ; c0000000H
push    OFFSET $SG78813
call   DWORD PTR __imp__CreateFileA@28
mov    DWORD PTR _fh$[ebp], eax
```

Let's take a look into WinNT.h:

Listing 19.2: WinNT.h

```
#define GENERIC_READ      (0x80000000L)
#define GENERIC_WRITE     (0x40000000L)
#define GENERIC_EXECUTE  (0x20000000L)
#define GENERIC_ALL       (0x10000000L)
```

Everything is clear, $\text{GENERIC_READ} | \text{GENERIC_WRITE} = 0x80000000 | 0x40000000 = 0xC0000000$, and that is value is used as the second argument for `CreateFile()`¹ function.

How `CreateFile()` will check flags?

Let's take a look into `KERNEL32.DLL` in Windows XP SP3 x86 and we'll find this fragment of code in the function `CreateFileW`:

Listing 19.3: `KERNEL32.DLL` (Windows XP SP3 x86)

```
.text:7C83D429      test    byte ptr [ebp+dwDesiredAccess+3], 40h
.text:7C83D42D      mov    [ebp+var_8], 1
.text:7C83D434      jz     short loc_7C83D417
.text:7C83D436      jmp    loc_7C810817
```

Here we see `TEST` instruction, it takes, however, not the whole second argument, but only most significant byte (`ebp+dwDesiredAccess+3`) and checks it for `0x40` flag (meaning `GENERIC_WRITE` flag here)

¹[MSDN: CreateFile function](#)

TEST is merely the same instruction as AND, but without result saving (recall the fact CMP instruction is merely the same as SUB, but without result saving (7.3.1)).

This fragment of code logic is as follows:

```
if ((dwDesiredAccess&0x40000000) == 0) goto loc_7C83D417
```

If AND instruction leaving this bit, ZF flag is to be cleared and JZ conditional jump will not be triggered. Conditional jump will be triggered only if 0x40000000 bit is absent in the dwDesiredAccess variable –then AND result will be 0, ZF flag will be set and conditional jump is to be triggered.

Let's try GCC 4.4.1 and Linux:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <fcntl.h>

void main()
{
    int handle;

    handle=open ("file", O_RDWR | O_CREAT);
};
```

We got:

Listing 19.4: GCC 4.4.1

```
main          public main
              proc near
var_20        = dword ptr -20h
var_1C        = dword ptr -1Ch
var_4         = dword ptr -4

              push    ebp
              mov     ebp, esp
              and     esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
              sub     esp, 20h
              mov     [esp+20h+var_1C], 42h
              mov     [esp+20h+var_20], offset aFile ; "file"
              call   _open
              mov     [esp+20h+var_4], eax
              leave
              retn
main          endp
```

Let's take a look into open() function in the libc.so.6 library, but there is only syscall:

Listing 19.5: open() (libc.so.6)

```
.text:000BE69B    mov     edx, [esp+4+mode] ; mode
.text:000BE69F    mov     ecx, [esp+4+flags] ; flags
.text:000BE6A3    mov     ebx, [esp+4+filename] ; filename
.text:000BE6A7    mov     eax, 5
.text:000BE6AC    int     80h                ; LINUX - sys_open
```

So, open() bit fields apparently checked somewhere in Linux kernel.

Of course, it is easy to download both Glibc and Linux kernel source code, but we are interesting to understand the matter without it.

So, as of Linux 2.6, when sys_open syscall is called, control eventually passed into do_sys_open kernel function. From there –to the do_filp_open() function (this function located in kernel source tree in the file fs/namei.c).

N.B. Aside from common passing arguments via stack, there is also a method of passing some of them via registers. This is also called fastcall (55.3). This works faster since CPU not needed to access a stack in memory to read argument values. GCC has option *regparm*², and it is possible to set a number of arguments which might be passed via registers.

Linux 2.6 kernel compiled with *-mregparm=3* option^{3 4}.

What it means to us, the first 3 arguments will be passed via EAX, EDX and ECX registers, the rest ones via stack. Of course, if arguments number is less than 3, only part of registers are to be used.

So, let's download Linux Kernel 2.6.31, compile it in Ubuntu: make *vmlinux*, open it in *IDA*, find the *do_filp_open()* function. At the beginning, we will see (comments are mine):

²<http://ohse.de/uwe/articles/gcc-attributes.html#func-regparm>

³http://kernelnewbies.org/Linux_2_6_20#head-042c62f290834eb1fe0a1942bbf5bb9a4accbc8f

⁴See also `arch\x86\include\asm\calling.h` file in kernel tree

Listing 19.6: do_filp_open() (linux kernel 2.6.31)

```

do_filp_open    proc near
...
                push    ebp
                mov     ebp, esp
                push    edi
                push    esi
                push    ebx
                mov     ebx, ecx
                add     ebx, 1
                sub     esp, 98h
                mov     esi, [ebp+arg_4] ; acc_mode (5th arg)
                test    bl, 3
                mov     [ebp+var_80], eax ; dfd (1th arg)
                mov     [ebp+var_7C], edx ; pathname (2th arg)
                mov     [ebp+var_78], ecx ; open_flag (3th arg)
                jnz     short loc_C01EF684
                mov     ebx, ecx          ; ebx <- open_flag

```

gcc saves first 3 arguments values in local stack. Otherwise, if compiler would not touch these registers, it would be too tight environment for compiler's [register allocator](#).

Let's find this fragment of code:

Listing 19.7: do_filp_open() (linux kernel 2.6.31)

```

loc_C01EF6B4:
                test    bl, 40h          ; CODE XREF: do_filp_open+4F
                jnz     loc_C01EF810      ; O_CREAT
                mov     edi, ebx
                shr     edi, 11h
                xor     edi, 1
                and     edi, 1
                test    ebx, 10000h
                jz      short loc_C01EF6D3
                or      edi, 2

```

0x40 – is what O_CREAT macro equals to. open_flag checked for 0x40 bit presence, and if this bit is 1, next JNZ instruction is triggered.

19.1.2 ARM

O_CREAT bit is checked differently in Linux kernel 3.8.0.

Listing 19.8: linux kernel 3.8.0

```

struct file *do_filp_open(int dfd, struct filename *pathname,
                          const struct open_flags *op)
{
...
    filp = path_openat(dfd, pathname, &nd, op, flags | LOOKUP_RCU);
...
}

static struct file *path_openat(int dfd, struct filename *pathname,
                                struct nameidata *nd, const struct open_flags *op, int flags)
{
...
    error = do_last(nd, &path, file, op, &opened, pathname);
...
}

static int do_last(struct nameidata *nd, struct path *path,
                  struct file *file, const struct open_flags *op,
                  int *opened, struct filename *name)
{
...
    if (!(open_flag & O_CREAT)) {
...
        error = lookup_fast(nd, path, &inode);
...

```



```

    } else {
    ...
        error = complete_walk(nd);
    }
...
}

```

Here is how kernel compiled for ARM mode looks like in [IDA](#):

Listing 19.9: do_last() (vmlinux)

```

...
.text:C0169EA8      MOV          R9, R3 ; R3 - (4th argument) open_flag
...
.text:C0169ED4      LDR          R6, [R9] ; R6 - open_flag
...
.text:C0169F68      TST          R6, #0x40 ; jumptable C0169F00 default case
.text:C0169F6C      BNE          loc_C016A128
.text:C0169F70      LDR          R2, [R4,#0x10]
.text:C0169F74      ADD          R12, R4, #8
.text:C0169F78      LDR          R3, [R4,#0xC]
.text:C0169F7C      MOV          R0, R4
.text:C0169F80      STR          R12, [R11,#var_50]
.text:C0169F84      LDRB         R3, [R2,R3]
.text:C0169F88      MOV          R2, R8
.text:C0169F8C      CMP          R3, #0
.text:C0169F90      ORRNE        R1, R1, #3
.text:C0169F94      STRNE        R1, [R4,#0x24]
.text:C0169F98      ANDS         R3, R6, #0x200000
.text:C0169F9C      MOV          R1, R12
.text:C0169FA0      LDRNE        R3, [R4,#0x24]
.text:C0169FA4      ANDNE        R3, R3, #1
.text:C0169FA8      EORNE        R3, R3, #1
.text:C0169FAC      STR          R3, [R11,#var_54]
.text:C0169FB0      SUB          R3, R11, #-var_38
.text:C0169FB4      BL           lookup_fast
...
.text:C016A128      loc_C016A128 ; CODE XREF: do_last.isra.14+DC
.text:C016A128      MOV          R0, R4
.text:C016A12C      BL           complete_walk
...

```

TST is analogical to a TEST instruction in x86.

We can “spot” visually this code fragment by the fact the `lookup_fast()` will be executed in one case and the `complete_walk()` in another case. This is corresponding to the `do_last()` function source code.

`O_CREAT` macro is equals to `0x40` here too.

19.2 Specific bit setting/clearing

For example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

#define IS_SET(flag, bit)      ((flag) & (bit))
#define SET_BIT(var, bit)     ((var) |= (bit))
#define REMOVE_BIT(var, bit)  ((var) &= ~(bit))

int f(int a)
{
    int rt=a;

    SET_BIT (rt, 0x4000);
    REMOVE_BIT (rt, 0x200);

    return rt;
};

int main()
{
    f(0x12340678);
}

```

};

19.2.1 x86

Non-optimizing MSVC

We got (MSVC 2010):

Listing 19.10: MSVC 2010

```

_rt$ = -4          ; size = 4
_a$ = 8           ; size = 4
_f PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    or      ecx, 16384          ; 00004000H
    mov     DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], ecx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    and     edx, -513          ; fffffdffH
    mov     DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], edx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_f ENDP

```

OR instruction adds one more bit to value while ignoring the rest ones.

AND resetting one bit. It can be said, AND just copies all bits except one. Indeed, in the second AND operand only those bits are set, which are needed to be saved, except one bit we would not like to copy (which is 0 in bitmask). It is easier way to memorize the logic.

OR executed:

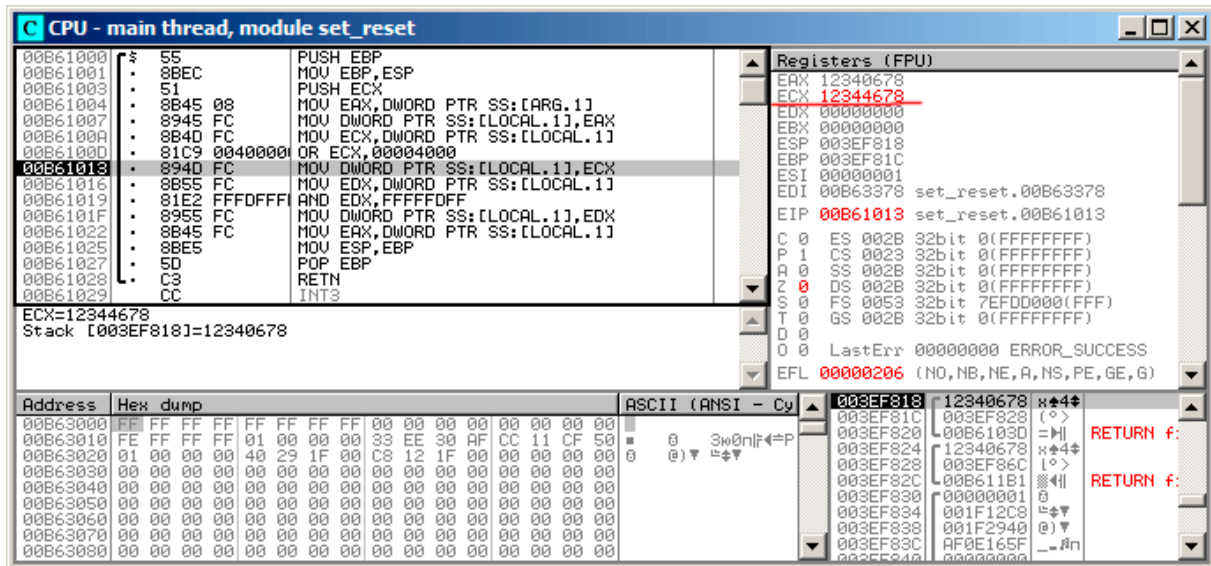


Figure 19.2: OllyDbg: OR executed

15th bit is set: 0x12344678 (10010001101000100011001111000).

Value is reloaded again (because it's not optimizing compiler's mode):

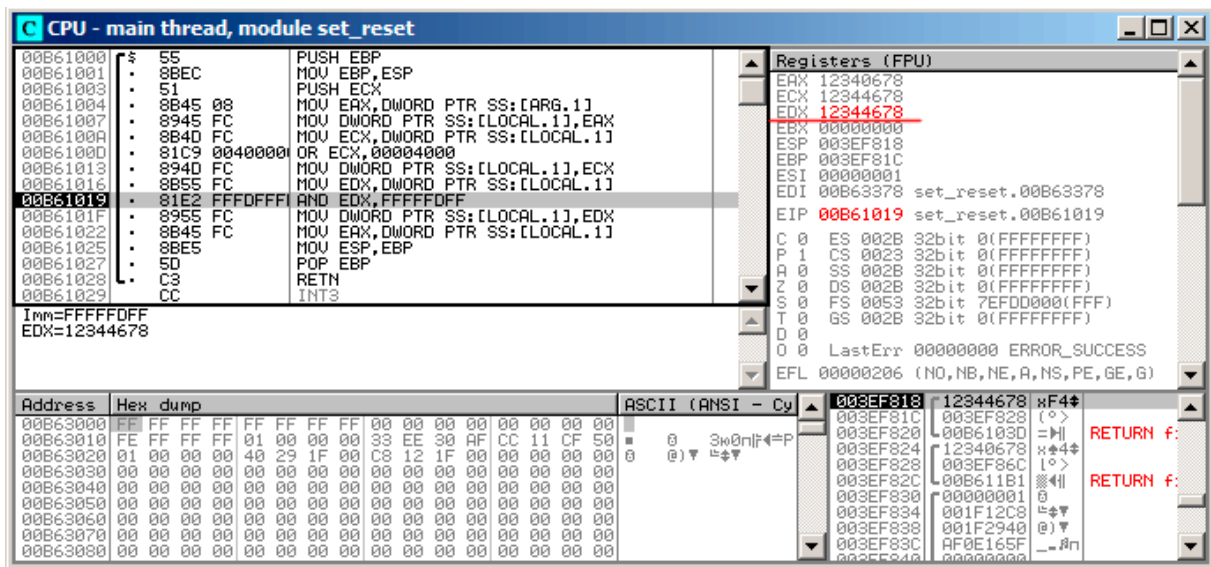


Figure 19.3: OllyDbg: value was reloaded into EDX

AND executed:

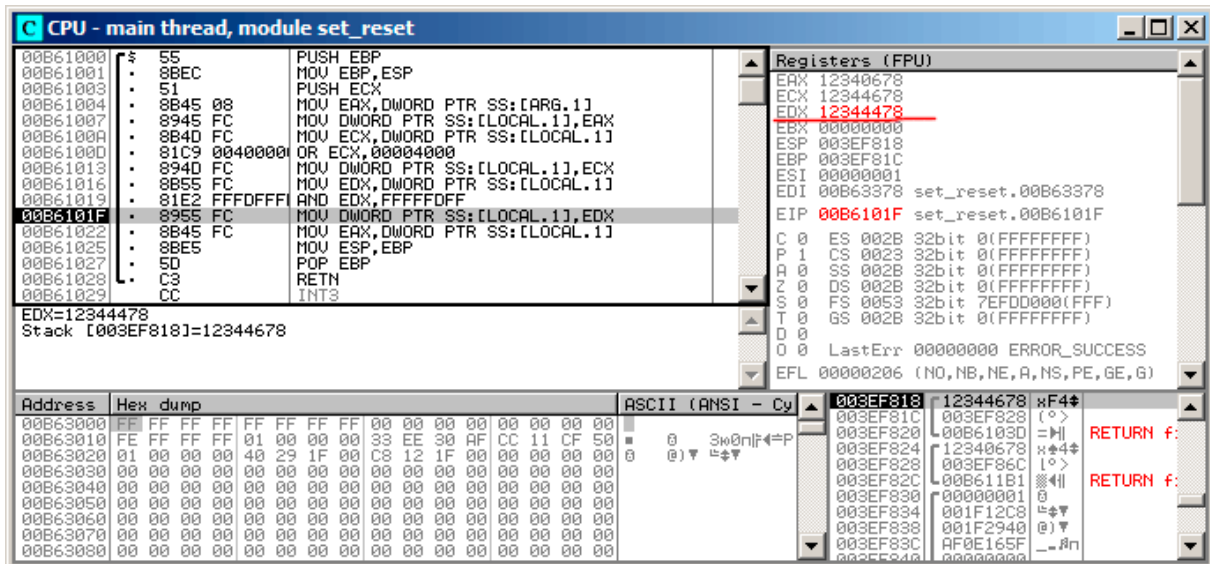


Figure 19.4: OllyDbg: AND executed

10th bit is cleared (or, in other words, all bits are leaved instead of 10th) and final value now is 0x12344478 (10010001101000100010001111000).

Optimizing MSVC

If we compile it in MSVC with optimization turned on (/Ox), the code is even shorter:

Listing 19.11: Optimizing MSVC

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    and    eax, -513 ; ffffffffh
    or     eax, 16384 ; 00004000h
    ret    0
_f ENDP
    
```

Non-optimizing GCC

Let's try GCC 4.4.1 without optimization:

Listing 19.12: Non-optimizing GCC

```

f      public f
      proc near

var_4  = dword ptr -4
arg_0  = dword ptr 8

      push    ebp
      mov     ebp, esp
      sub     esp, 10h
      mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
      mov     [ebp+var_4], eax
      or     [ebp+var_4], 4000h
      and    [ebp+var_4], 0FFFFFFFh
      mov     eax, [ebp+var_4]

      leave
      retn
f      endp
    
```

There is a redundant code present, however, it is shorter than MSVC version without optimization. Now let's try GCC with optimization turned on -O3:

Optimizing GCC

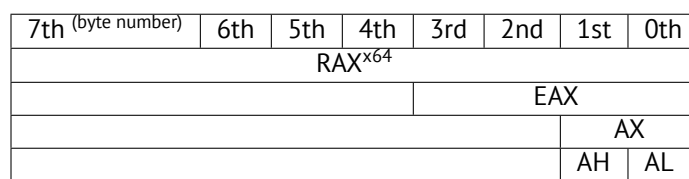
Listing 19.13: Optimizing GCC

```

public f
proc near
arg_0      = dword ptr 8

push  ebp
mov    ebp, esp
mov    eax, [ebp+arg_0]
pop    ebp
or     ah, 40h
and    ah, 0FDh
retn
endp
    
```

That's shorter. It is worth noting the compiler works with the EAX register part via the AH register –that is the EAX register part from 8th to 15th bits inclusive.



N.B. 16-bit CPU 8086 accumulator was named AX and consisted of two 8-bit halves –AL (lower byte) and AH (higher byte). In 80386 almost all registers were extended to 32-bit, accumulator was named EAX, but for the sake of compatibility, its *older parts* may be still accessed as AX/AH/AL registers.

Since all x86 CPUs are 16-bit 8086 CPU successors, these *older* 16-bit opcodes are shorter than newer 32-bit opcodes. That's why ``or ah, 40h`` instruction occupying only 3 bytes. It would be more logical way to emit here ``or eax, 04000h`` but that is 5 bytes, or even 6 (in case if register in first operand is not EAX).

Optimizing GCC and regparm

It would be even shorter if to turn on -O3 optimization flag and also set regparm=3.

Listing 19.14: Optimizing GCC

```

public f
proc near
push  ebp
or     ah, 40h
mov    ebp, esp
and    ah, 0FDh
pop    ebp
retn
endp
    
```

Indeed –first argument is already loaded into EAX, so it is possible to work with it in-place. It is worth noting that both function prologue (``push ebp / mov ebp, esp``) and epilogue (``pop ebp``) can easily be omitted here, but GCC probably is not good enough for such code size optimizations. However, such short functions are better to be *inlined functions* (31).

19.2.2 ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 19.15: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

02 0C C0 E3      BIC    R0, R0, #0x200
01 09 80 E3      ORR    R0, R0, #0x4000
1E FF 2F E1      BX     LR
    
```

BIC (*Bitwise bit Clear*) is an instruction clearing specific bits. This is just like AND instruction, but with inverted operand. I.e., it's analogous to NOT+AND instruction pair.

ORR is "logical or", analogical to OR in x86.

So far, so easy.

19.2.3 ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

Listing 19.16: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

01 21 89 03      MOVS    R1, 0x4000
08 43           ORRS    R0, R1
49 11           ASRS    R1, R1, #5    ; generate 0x200 and place to R1
88 43           BICS    R0, R1
70 47           BX     LR

```

Apparently, Keil concludes the code in thumb mode, making 0x200 from 0x4000, will be more compact than code, writing 0x200 to arbitrary register.

So that is why, with the help of ASRS (arithmetic shift right), this value is calculating as $0x4000 \gg 5$.

19.2.4 ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Listing 19.17: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```

42 0C C0 E3      BIC     R0, R0, #0x4200
01 09 80 E3      ORR     R0, R0, #0x4000
1E FF 2F E1      BX     LR

```

The code was generated by LLVM, in source code form, in fact, could be looks like:

```

REMOVE_BIT (rt, 0x4200);
SET_BIT (rt, 0x4000);

```

And it does exactly the same we need. But why 0x4200? Perhaps, that is the LLVM optimizer's artifact ⁵. Probably, compiler's optimizer error, but generated code works correctly anyway.

More about compiler's anomalies, read here (81).

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) for thumb mode generates likewise code.

19.2.5 ARM: more about BIC instruction

If to rework example slightly:

```

int f(int a)
{
    int rt=a;

    REMOVE_BIT (rt, 0x1234);

    return rt;
};

```

Then optimizing Keil 5.03 in ARM mode will do:

```

f PROC
    BIC    r0,r0,#0x1000
    BIC    r0,r0,#0x234
    BX     lr
    ENDP

```

There are two BIC instructions, i.e., 0x1234 bits are cleared in two passes. This is because it's not possible to encode 0x1234 value in BIC instruction, but it's possible to encode 0x1000 or 0x234.

19.2.6 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Optimizing GCC compiling for ARM64 can use AND instruction instead of BIC:

Listing 19.18: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

f:
    and    w0, w0, -513    ; 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFDFF
    orr    w0, w0, 16384   ; 0x4000
    ret

```

⁵It was LLVM build 2410.2.00 bundled with Apple Xcode 4.6.3

19.2.7 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Non-optimizing GCC generate more redundant code, but works just like optimized:

Listing 19.19: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
f:
    sub    sp, sp, #32
    str    w0, [sp,12]
    ldr    w0, [sp,12]
    str    w0, [sp,28]
    ldr    w0, [sp,28]
    orr    w0, w0, 16384    ; 0x4000
    str    w0, [sp,28]
    ldr    w0, [sp,28]
    and    w0, w0, -513     ; 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFDFF
    str    w0, [sp,28]
    ldr    w0, [sp,28]
    add    sp, sp, 32
    ret
```

19.3 Shifts

Bit shifts in C/C++ are implemented using `<<` and `>>` operators.

x86 ISA has SHL (SHift Left) and SHR (SHift Right) instructions for this.

Shift instructions are often used in division and multiplications by power of two numbers: 2^n (e.g., 1, 2, 4, 8, etc): [16.1.2](#), [16.2.1](#).

19.4 Counting bits set to 1

Here is a simple example of function, calculating number of bits set in input value.

This operation is also called “population count”⁶.

```
#include <stdio.h>

#define IS_SET(flag, bit)    ((flag) & (bit))

int f(unsigned int a)
{
    int i;
    int rt=0;

    for (i=0; i<32; i++)
        if (IS_SET (a, 1<<i))
            rt++;

    return rt;
};

int main()
{
    f(0x12345678); // test
};
```

In this loop, iteration count value i counting from 0 to 31, $1 \ll i$ statement will be counting from 1 to $0x80000000$. Describing this operation in natural language, we would say *shift 1 by n bits left*. In other words, $1 \ll i$ statement will consequently produce all possible bit positions in 32-bit number. Freed bit at right is always cleared.

Here is a table of all possible $1 \ll i$ for $i = 0 \dots 31$:

⁶modern x86 CPUs (supporting SSE4) even have POPCNT instruction for it

C/C++ expression	Power of two	Decimal form	Hexadecimal form
$1 \ll 0$	1	1	1
$1 \ll 1$	2^1	2	2
$1 \ll 2$	2^2	4	4
$1 \ll 3$	2^3	8	8
$1 \ll 4$	2^4	16	0x10
$1 \ll 5$	2^5	32	0x20
$1 \ll 6$	2^6	64	0x40
$1 \ll 7$	2^7	128	0x80
$1 \ll 8$	2^8	256	0x100
$1 \ll 9$	2^9	512	0x200
$1 \ll 10$	2^{10}	1024	0x400
$1 \ll 11$	2^{11}	2048	0x800
$1 \ll 12$	2^{12}	4096	0x1000
$1 \ll 13$	2^{13}	8192	0x2000
$1 \ll 14$	2^{14}	16384	0x4000
$1 \ll 15$	2^{15}	32768	0x8000
$1 \ll 16$	2^{16}	65536	0x10000
$1 \ll 17$	2^{17}	131072	0x20000
$1 \ll 18$	2^{18}	262144	0x40000
$1 \ll 19$	2^{19}	524288	0x80000
$1 \ll 20$	2^{20}	1048576	0x100000
$1 \ll 21$	2^{21}	2097152	0x200000
$1 \ll 22$	2^{22}	4194304	0x400000
$1 \ll 23$	2^{23}	8388608	0x800000
$1 \ll 24$	2^{24}	16777216	0x1000000
$1 \ll 25$	2^{25}	33554432	0x2000000
$1 \ll 26$	2^{26}	67108864	0x4000000
$1 \ll 27$	2^{27}	134217728	0x8000000
$1 \ll 28$	2^{28}	268435456	0x10000000
$1 \ll 29$	2^{29}	536870912	0x20000000
$1 \ll 30$	2^{30}	1073741824	0x40000000
$1 \ll 31$	2^{31}	2147483648	0x80000000

These constant numbers (bit masks) are very often appears in code and practicing reverse engineer should quickly spot them. You probably shouldn't memorize decimal numbers, but hexadecimal ones are very easy to memorize.

These constants are very often used for mapping flags to specific bits. For example, here is excerpt from `ssl_private.h` file from Apache 2.4.6 source code:

```
/**
 * Define the SSL options
 */
#define SSL_OPT_NONE          (0)
#define SSL_OPT_RELSET        (1<<0)
#define SSL_OPT_STDENVVARS    (1<<1)
#define SSL_OPT_EXPORTCERTDATA (1<<3)
#define SSL_OPT_FAKEBASICAUTH (1<<4)
#define SSL_OPT_STRICTREQUIRE (1<<5)
#define SSL_OPT_OPTRENEGOTIATE (1<<6)
#define SSL_OPT_LEGACYDNFORMAT (1<<7)
```

Let's back to our example.

`IS_SET` macro is checking bit presence in the `a`.

The `IS_SET` macro is in fact logical and operation (*AND*) and it returns 0 if specific bit is absent there, or bit mask, if the bit is present. `if()` operator triggered in C/C++ if expression in it is not a zero, it might be even 123456, that is why it always working correctly.

19.4.1 x86

MSVC

Let's compile (MSVC 2010):

Listing 19.20: MSVC 2010

```
_rt$ = -8 ; size = 4
```

```

_i$ = -4          ; size = 4
_a$ = 8          ; size = 4
_f PROC
  push  ebp
  mov   ebp, esp
  sub   esp, 8
  mov   DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], 0
  mov   DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
  jmp   SHORT $LN4@f
$LN3@f:
  mov   eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp] ; increment of 1
  add   eax, 1
  mov   DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN4@f:
  cmp   DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 32 ; 00000020H
  jge   SHORT $LN2@f          ; loop finished?
  mov   edx, 1
  mov   ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
  shl   edx, cl                ; EDX=EDX<<CL
  and   edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
  je    SHORT $LN1@f          ; result of AND instruction was 0?
                                   ; then skip next instructions
  mov   eax, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp] ; no, not zero
  add   eax, 1                 ; increment rt
  mov   DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], eax
$LN1@f:
  jmp   SHORT $LN3@f
$LN2@f:
  mov   eax, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
  mov   esp, ebp
  pop   ebp
  ret   0
_f     ENDP

```

OllyDbg

Let's load this example into OllyDbg. Let's input value be 0x12345678.

For $i = 1$, we see how i is loaded into ECX:

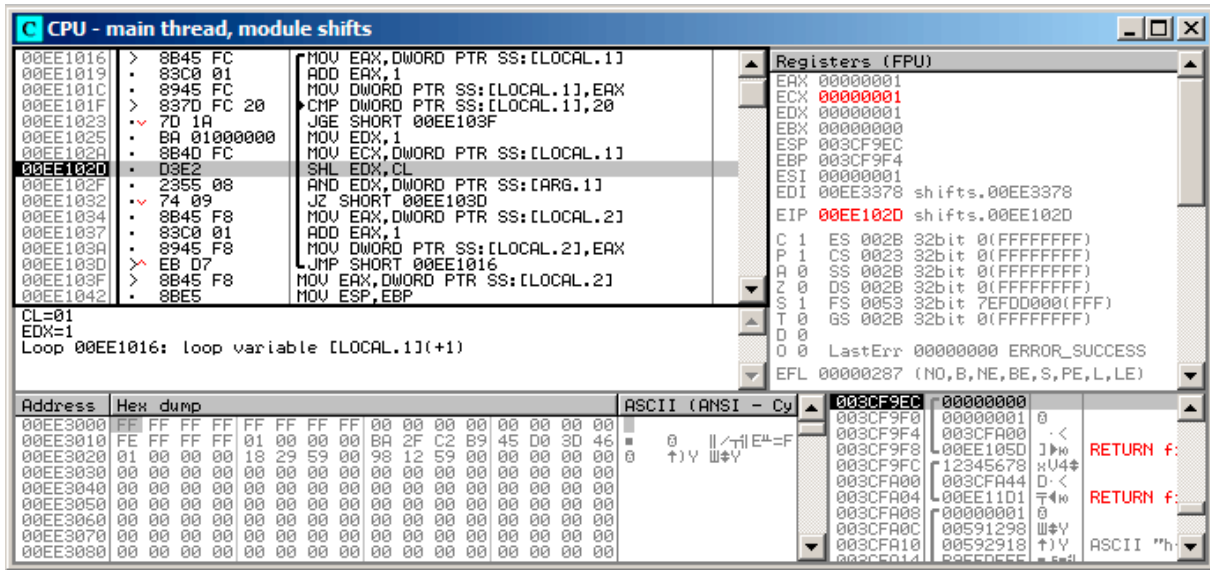


Figure 19.5: OllyDbg: $i = 1$, i is loaded into ECX

EDX is 1. SHL is to be executed now.

SHL was executed:

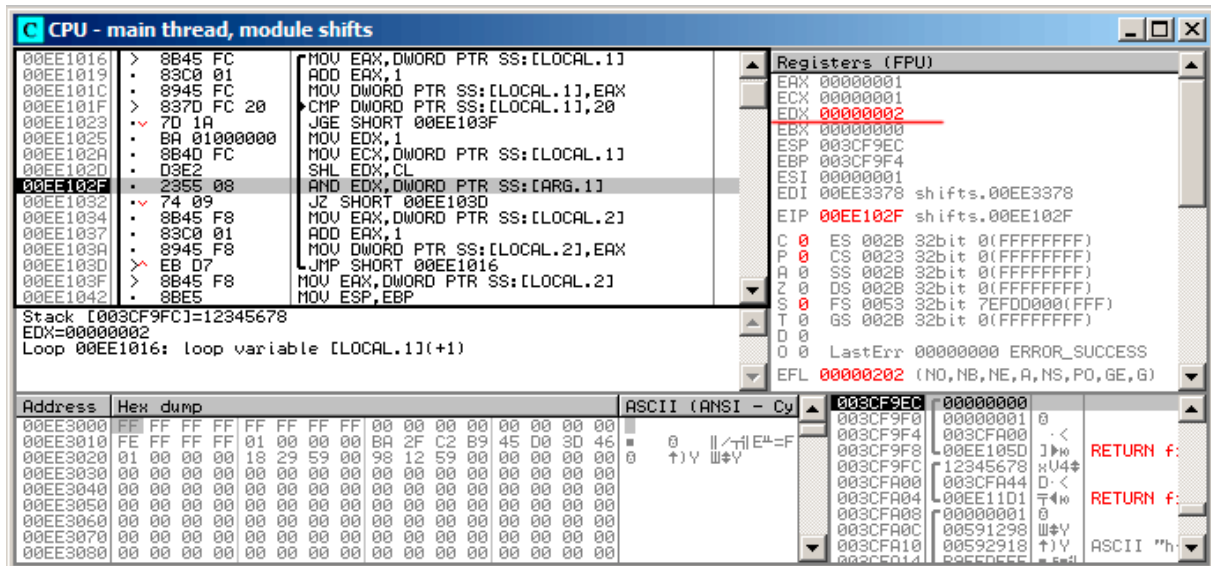


Figure 19.6: OllyDbg: $i = 1$, $EDX = 1 \ll 1 = 2$

EDX contain $1 \ll 1$ (or 2). This is a bit mask.

AND sets ZF to 1, which is meaning that input value (0x12345678) ANDed with 2 resulting 0:

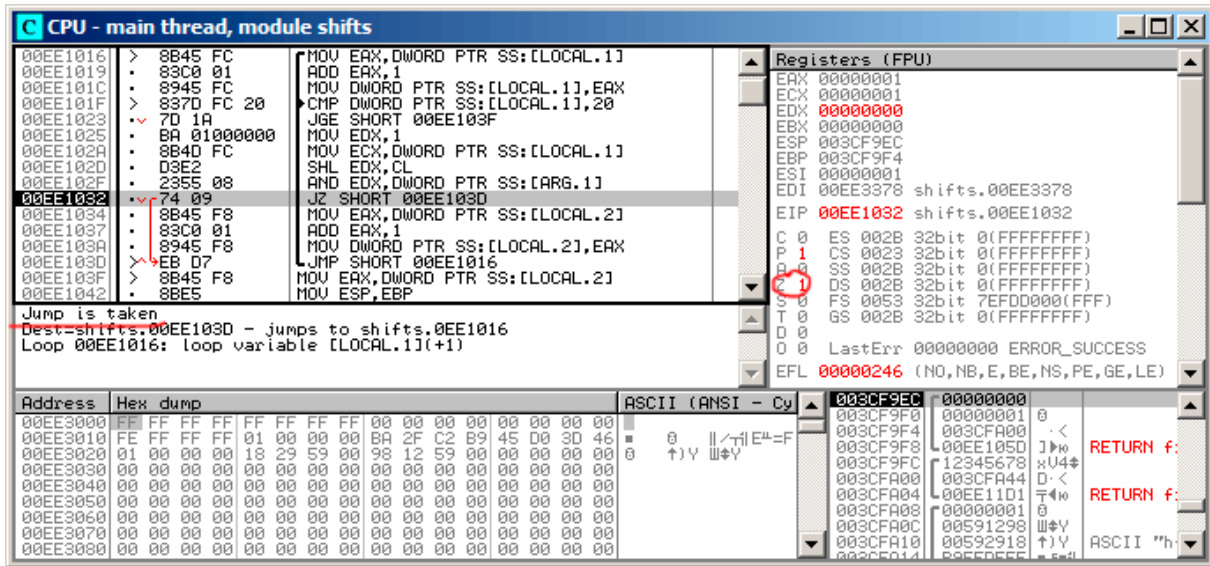


Figure 19.7: OllyDbg: $i = 1$, are there that bit in the input value? No. (ZF = 1)

So, there are no corresponding bit in input value. The piece of code which increments counter will not be executed: JZ instruction will *bypass* it.

Now I traced some time further and *i* is now 4. SHL is to be executed now:

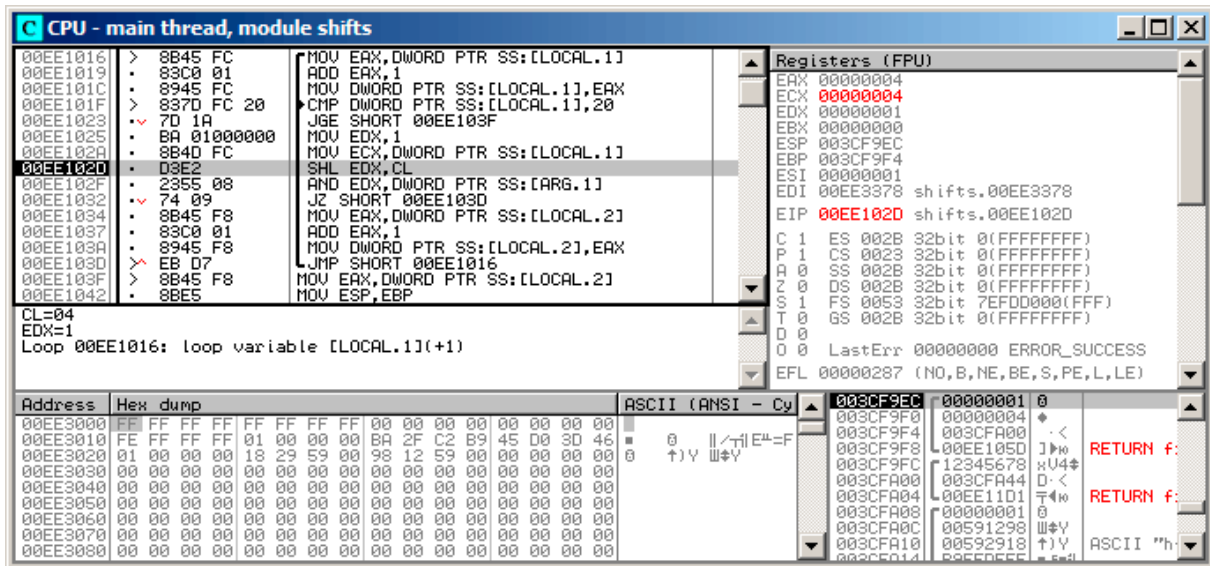


Figure 19.8: OllyDbg: *i* = 4, *i* is loaded into ECX

EDX = 1 << 4 (or 0x10 or 16):

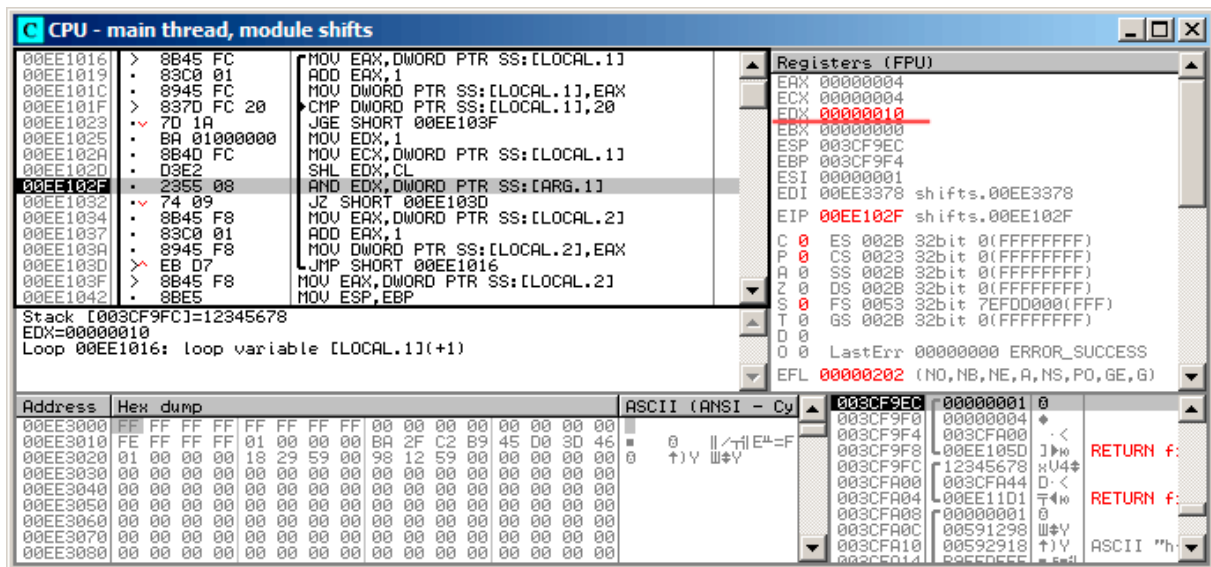


Figure 19.9: OllyDbg: $i = 4$, $EDX = 1 \ll 4 = 0x10$

This is another bit mask.

AND is executed:

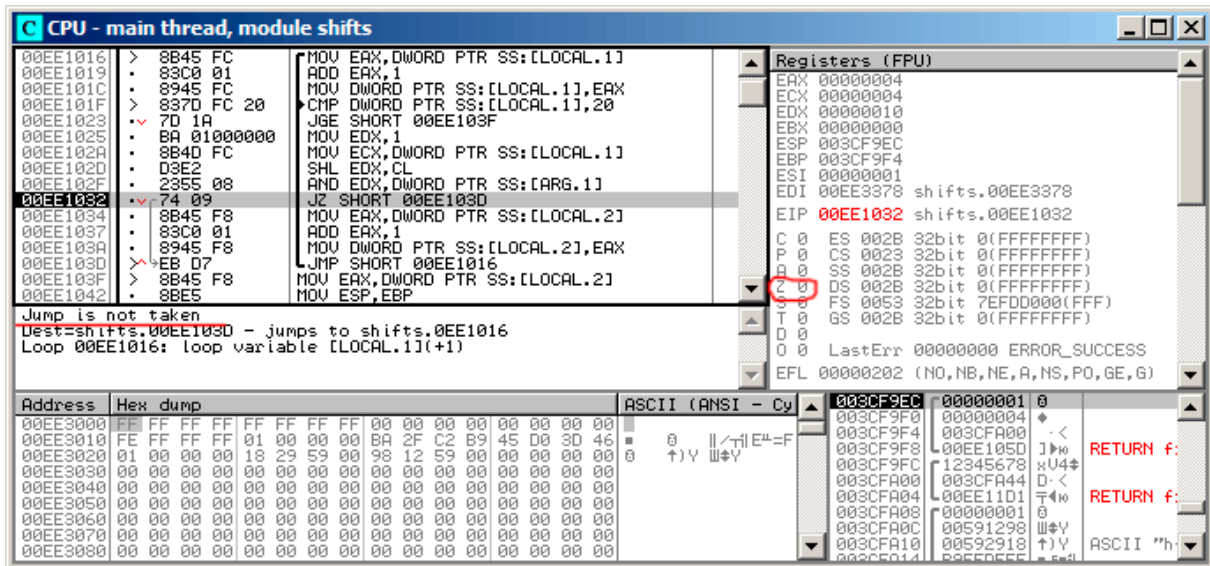


Figure 19.10: OllyDbg: $i = 4$, are there that bit in the input value? Yes. (ZF = 0)

ZF is 0 because this bit is present in input value. Indeed, $0x12345678 \& 0x10 = 0x10$. This bit counts: jump will not trigger and bits counter will be incremented now.

The function returns 13. This is total bits set in $0x12345678$ value.

GCC

Let's compile it in GCC 4.4.1:

Listing 19.21: GCC 4.4.1

```

f                public f
proc near
rt              = dword ptr -0Ch
i               = dword ptr -8
arg_0          = dword ptr 8

                push    ebp
                mov     ebp, esp
                push    ebx
                sub     esp, 10h
                mov     [ebp+rt], 0
                mov     [ebp+i], 0
                jmp     short loc_80483EF

loc_80483D0:
                mov     eax, [ebp+i]
                mov     edx, 1
                mov     ebx, edx
                mov     ecx, eax
                shl     ebx, cl
                mov     eax, ebx
                and     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
                test    eax, eax
                jz      short loc_80483EB
                add     [ebp+rt], 1

loc_80483EB:
                add     [ebp+i], 1

loc_80483EF:
                cmp     [ebp+i], 1Fh
                jle     short loc_80483D0
                mov     eax, [ebp+rt]
                add     esp, 10h
                pop     ebx
                pop     ebp
    
```

```
f          retn
          endp
```

19.4.2 x64

I changed example slightly to extend it to 64-bit:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

#define IS_SET(flag, bit)      ((flag) & (bit))

int f(uint64_t a)
{
    uint64_t i;
    int rt=0;

    for (i=0; i<64; i++)
        if (IS_SET (a, 1ULL<<i))
            rt++;

    return rt;
};
```

Non-optimizing GCC 4.8.2

So far so easy.

Listing 19.22: Non-optimizing GCC 4.8.2

```
f:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp
    mov     QWORD PTR [rbp-24], rdi ; a
    mov     DWORD PTR [rbp-12], 0   ; rt=0
    mov     QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 0    ; i=0
    jmp     .L2

.L4:
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]
    mov     rdx, QWORD PTR [rbp-24]
; RAX = i, RDX = a
    mov     ecx, eax
; ECX = i
    shr     rdx, cl
; RDX = RDX>>CL = a>>i
    mov     rax, rdx
; RAX = RDX = a>>i
    and     eax, 1
; EAX = EAX&1 = (a>>i)&1
    test    rax, rax
; the last bit is zero?
; skip the next ADD instruction, if it's so.
    je     .L3
    add     DWORD PTR [rbp-12], 1   ; rt++

.L3:
    add     QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 1    ; i++

.L2:
    cmp     QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 63  ; i<63?
    jbe    .L4                    ; jump to the loop body begin, if so
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-12] ; return rt
    pop     rbp
    ret
```

Optimizing GCC 4.8.2

Listing 19.23: Optimizing GCC 4.8.2

```

1 f:
2     xor     eax, eax       ; rt variable will be here
3     xor     ecx, ecx       ; i variable will be here
4 .L3:
5     mov     rsi, rdi       ; load input value
6     lea     edx, [rax+1]   ; EDX=EAX+1
7 ; EDX here is a `new version of rt', which will be written into rt variable, if the last bit is 1
8     shr     rsi, cl        ; RSI=RSI>>CL
9     and     esi, 1         ; ESI=ESI&1
10 ; the last bit is 1? If so, write `new version of rt' into EAX
11     cmovne eax, edx
12     add     rcx, 1         ; RCX++
13     cmp     rcx, 64
14     jne    .L3
15     rep ret                ; AKA fatret

```

This code is more terse, but also, has some quirk. While all examples we saw so far, incrementing “rt” value after comparing specific bit with one, the code here incrementing “rt” before (line 6), writing new value into EDX register. Then, if the last bit was 1, CMOVNE⁷ instruction (which is synonymous to CMOVNZ⁸) *commits* new value of “rt” by moving EDX (“proposed rt value”) into EAX (“current rt” to be returned at the end). Hence, incrementing is done at each step of loop, i.e., 64 times, without any relation to the input value.

The advantage of this code is that it contain only one conditional jump (at the end of loop) instead of two jumps (skipping “rt” value increment and at the end of loop). And that might work faster on the modern CPUs with branch predictors: 44.1.

The last instruction is REP RET (opcode F3 C3) which is also called FATRET by MSVC. This is somewhat optimized version of RET, which is recommended by AMD to be placed at the end of function, if RET goes right after conditional jump: [AMD13b, p.15]⁹.

Optimizing MSVC 2010

Listing 19.24: MSVC 2010

```

a$ = 8
f PROC
; RCX = input value
xor     eax, eax
mov     edx, 1
lea     r8d, QWORD PTR [rax+64]
; R8D=64
npad    5
$LL4@f:
test    rdx, rcx
; there are no such bit in input value?
; skip the next INC instruction then.
je     SHORT $LN3@f
inc     eax     ; rt++
$LN3@f:
rol     rdx, 1 ; RDX=RDX<<1
dec     r8     ; R8--
jne    SHORT $LL4@f
fatret 0
f ENDP

```

Here is the ROL instruction is used instead of SHL, which is in fact “rotate left” instead of “shift left”, but here, in this example, it will work just as SHL.

Read more about rotate instruction here: A.6.3.

R8 here is counting from 64 to 0. It’s just like inverted *i* variable.

Here is a table of some registers during execution:

⁷Conditional MOVE if Not Equal

⁸Conditional MOVE if Not Zero

⁹More information on it: <http://repzret.org/p/repzret/>

RDX	R8
0x0000000000000001	64
0x0000000000000002	63
0x0000000000000004	62
0x0000000000000008	61
...	...
0x4000000000000000	2
0x8000000000000000	1

At the end we see FATRET instruction, which was described here: [19.4.2](#).

Optimizing MSVC 2012

Listing 19.25: MSVC 2012

```

a$ = 8
f PROC
; RCX = input value
xor    eax, eax
mov    edx, 1
lea   r8d, QWORD PTR [rax+32]
; EDX = 1, R8D = 32
npad   5
$LL4@f:
; pass 1 -----
test   rdx, rcx
je     SHORT $LN3@f
inc    eax    ; rt++
$LN3@f:
rol    rdx, 1 ; RDX=RDX<<1
; -----
; pass 2 -----
test   rdx, rcx
je     SHORT $LN11@f
inc    eax    ; rt++
$LN11@f:
rol    rdx, 1 ; RDX=RDX<<1
; -----
dec    r8    ; R8--
jne    SHORT $LL4@f
fatret 0
f ENDP

```

Optimizing MSVC 2012 does almost the same job as optimizing MSVC 2010, but somehow, it generates two identical loop bodies and loop count is now 32 instead of 64. To be honest, I don't know why. Some optimization trick? Maybe it's better for loop body to be slightly longer? Anyway, I add the code here intentionally to show that sometimes, compiler output may be really weird and illogical, but perfectly working, of course.

19.4.3 ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Listing 19.26: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

	MOV	R1, R0
	MOV	R0, #0
	MOV	R2, #1
	MOV	R3, R0
loc_2E54	TST	R1, R2,LSL R3 ; set flags according to R1 & (R2<<R3)
	ADD	R3, R3, #1 ; R3++
	ADDNE	R0, R0, #1 ; if ZF flag is cleared by TST, R0++
	CMP	R3, #32
	BNE	loc_2E54
	BX	LR

TST is the same things as TEST in x86.

As I mentioned before ([16.3.2](#)), there are no separate shifting instructions in ARM mode. However, there are modifiers LSL (*Logical Shift Left*), LSR (*Logical Shift Right*), ASR (*Arithmetic Shift Right*), ROR (*Rotate Right*) and RRX (*Rotate Right with Extend*), which may be added to such instructions as MOV, TST, CMP, ADD, SUB, RSB¹⁰.

¹⁰These instructions are also called "data processing instructions"

These modifiers define, how to shift second operand and by how many bits.
Thus ``TST R1, R2, LSL R3`` instruction works here as $R1 \wedge (R2 \ll R3)$.

19.4.4 ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

Almost the same, but here are two LSL.W/TST instructions are used instead of single TST, because, in thumb mode, it is not possible to define LSL modifier right in TST.

```

MOV        R1, R0
MOVS      R0, #0
MOV.W     R9, #1
MOVS      R3, #0
loc_2F7A
LSL.W     R2, R9, R3
TST       R2, R1
ADD.W     R3, R3, #1
IT NE
ADDNE     R0, #1
CMP       R3, #32
BNE       loc_2F7A
BX        LR

```

19.4.5 ARM64 + Optimizing GCC 4.9

I took 64-bit example I already used: [19.4.2](#).

Listing 19.27: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.8

```

f:
    mov     w2, 0           ; rt=0
    mov     x5, 1
    mov     w1, w2
.L2:
    lsl     x4, x5, x1      ; w4 = w5<<w1 = 1<<i
    add     w3, w2, 1       ; new_rt=rt+1
    tst     x4, x0          ; (1<<i) & a
    add     w1, w1, 1       ; i++
; result of TST was non-zero?
; then w2=w3 or rt=new_rt.
; otherwise: w2=w2 or rt=rt (idle operation)
    csel   w2, w3, w2, ne
    cmp     w1, 64          ; i<64?
    bne    .L2             ; yes
    mov     w0, w2          ; return rt
    ret

```

The result is very similar to what GCC generated for x64: [19.23](#).

CSEL instruction is “Conditional SElect”, it just choose one variable of two depending on flags set by TST and copy value into W2 register, which holds “rt” variable.

19.4.6 ARM64 + Non-optimizing GCC 4.9

Again, I use 64-bit example I already used: [19.4.2](#).

The code is more verbose, as usual.

Listing 19.28: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.8

```

f:
    sub     sp, sp, #32
    str     x0, [sp,8]      ; store a value to Register Save Area
    str     wzr, [sp,24]    ; rt=0
    str     wzr, [sp,28]    ; i=0
    b       .L2
.L4:
    ldr     w0, [sp,28]
    mov     x1, 1
    lsl     x0, x1, x0      ; X0 = X1<<X0 = 1<<i
    mov     x1, x0
; X1 = 1<<1

```

```

    ldr    x0, [sp,8]
; X0 = a
    and   x0, x1, x0
; X0 = X1&X0 = (1<<i) & a
; X0 is zero? then jump to .L3, skipping rt increment
    cmp   x0, xzr
    beq   .L3
; rt++
    ldr   w0, [sp,24]
    add   w0, w0, 1
    str   w0, [sp,24]
.L3:
; i++
    ldr   w0, [sp,28]
    add   w0, w0, 1
    str   w0, [sp,28]
.L2:
; i<=63? then jump to .L4
    ldr   w0, [sp,28]
    cmp   w0, 63
    ble   .L4
; return rt
    ldr   w0, [sp,24]
    add   sp, sp, 32
    ret

```

19.5 CRC32 calculation example

This is very popular table-based CRC32 hash calculation technique¹¹.

```

/* By Bob Jenkins, (c) 2006, Public Domain */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stddef.h>
#include <string.h>

typedef unsigned long  ub4;
typedef unsigned char  ub1;

static const ub4 crctab[256] = {
    0x00000000, 0x77073096, 0xee0e612c, 0x990951ba, 0x076dc419, 0x706af48f,
    0xe963a535, 0x9e6495a3, 0x0edb8832, 0x79dcb8a4, 0xe0d5e91e, 0x97d2d988,
    0x09b64c2b, 0x7eb17cbd, 0xe7b82d07, 0x90bf1d91, 0x1db71064, 0x6ab020f2,
    0xf3b97148, 0x84be41de, 0x1adad47d, 0x6ddde4eb, 0xf4d4b551, 0x83d385c7,
    0x136c9856, 0x646ba8c0, 0xfd62f97a, 0x8a65c9ec, 0x14015c4f, 0x63066cd9,
    0xfa0f3d63, 0x8d080df5, 0x3b6e20c8, 0x4c69105e, 0xd56041e4, 0xa2677172,
    0x3c03e4d1, 0x4b04d447, 0xd20d85fd, 0xa50ab56b, 0x35b5a8fa, 0x42b2986c,
    0xdbbbc9d6, 0xacbcf940, 0x32d86ce3, 0x45df5c75, 0xdcd60dcf, 0xabd13d59,
    0x26d930ac, 0x51de003a, 0xc8d75180, 0xbf7d06116, 0x21b4f4b5, 0x56b3c423,
    0xcfba9599, 0xb8bda50f, 0x2802b89e, 0x5f058808, 0xc60cd9b2, 0xb10be924,
    0x2f6f7c87, 0x58684c11, 0xc1611dab, 0xb6662d3d, 0x76dc4190, 0x01db7106,
    0x98d220bc, 0xefd5102a, 0x71b18589, 0x06b6b51f, 0x9fbfe4a5, 0xe8b8d433,
    0x7807c9a2, 0x0f00f934, 0x9609a88e, 0xe10e9818, 0x7f6a0dbb, 0x086d3d2d,
    0x91646c97, 0xe6635c01, 0x6b6b51f4, 0x1c6c6162, 0x856530d8, 0xf262004e,
    0x6c0695ed, 0x1b01a57b, 0x8208f4c1, 0xf50fc457, 0x65b0d9c6, 0x12b7e950,
    0x8bbeb8ea, 0xfcb9887c, 0x62dd1ddf, 0x15da2d49, 0x8cd37cf3, 0xfbd44c65,
    0x4db26158, 0x3ab551ce, 0xa3bc0074, 0xd4bb30e2, 0x4adfa541, 0x3dd895d7,
    0xa4d1c46d, 0xd3d6f4fb, 0x4369e96a, 0x346ed9fc, 0xad678846, 0xda60b8d0,
    0x44042d73, 0x33031de5, 0xaa0a4c5f, 0xdd0d7cc9, 0x5005713c, 0x270241aa,
    0xbe0b1010, 0xc90c2086, 0x5768b525, 0x206f85b3, 0xb966d409, 0xce61e49f,
    0x5edef90e, 0x29d9c998, 0xb0d09822, 0xc7d7a8b4, 0x59b33d17, 0x2eb40d81,
    0xb7bd5c3b, 0xc0ba6cad, 0xedb88320, 0x9abfb3b6, 0x03b6e20c, 0x74b1d29a,
    0xead54739, 0x9dd277af, 0x04db2615, 0x73dc1683, 0xe3630b12, 0x94643b84,
    0x0d6d6a3e, 0x7a6a5aa8, 0xe40ecf0b, 0x9309ff9d, 0x0a00ae27, 0x7d079eb1,
    0xf00f9344, 0x8708a3d2, 0x1e01f268, 0x6906c2fe, 0xf762575d, 0x806567cb,
    0x196c3671, 0x6e6b06e7, 0xfed41b76, 0x89d32be0, 0x10da7a5a, 0x67dd4acc,
    0xf9b9df6f, 0x8ebeeff9, 0x17b7be43, 0x60b08ed5, 0xd6d6a3e8, 0xa1d1937e,

```

¹¹Source code was taken here: <http://burtleburtle.net/bob/c/crc.c>

```

0x38d8c2c4, 0x4fdff252, 0xd1bb67f1, 0xa6bc5767, 0x3fb506dd, 0x48b2364b,
0xd80d2bda, 0xaf0a1b4c, 0x36034af6, 0x41047a60, 0xdf60efc3, 0xa867df55,
0x316e8eef, 0x4669be79, 0xcb61b38c, 0xbc66831a, 0x256fd2a0, 0x5268e236,
0xcc0c7795, 0xbb0b4703, 0x220216b9, 0x5505262f, 0xc5ba3bbe, 0xb2bd0b28,
0x2bb45a92, 0x5cb36a04, 0xc2d7ffa7, 0xb5d0cf31, 0x2cd99e8b, 0x5bdeae1d,
0x9b64c2b0, 0xec63f226, 0x756aa39c, 0x026d930a, 0x9c0906a9, 0xeb0e363f,
0x72076785, 0x05005713, 0x95bf4a82, 0xe2b87a14, 0x7bb12bae, 0x0cb61b38,
0x92d28e9b, 0xe5d5be0d, 0x7cdcefb7, 0x0bdbdf21, 0x86d3d2d4, 0xf1d4e242,
0x68ddb3f8, 0x1fda836e, 0x81be16cd, 0xf6b9265b, 0x6fb077e1, 0x18b74777,
0x88085ae6, 0xff0f6a70, 0x66063bca, 0x11010b5c, 0x8f659eff, 0xf862ae69,
0x616bffd3, 0x166ccf45, 0xa00ae278, 0xd70dd2ee, 0x4e048354, 0x3903b3c2,
0xa7672661, 0xd06016f7, 0x4969474d, 0x3e6e77db, 0xaed16a4a, 0xd9d65adc,
0x40df0b66, 0x37d83bf0, 0xa9bcae53, 0xdeb9ec5, 0x47b2cf7f, 0x30b5ffe9,
0xbdbdf21c, 0xcabac28a, 0x53b39330, 0x24b4a3a6, 0xbad03605, 0xcdd70693,
0x54de5729, 0x23d967bf, 0xb3667a2e, 0xc4614ab8, 0x5d681b02, 0x2a6f2b94,
0xb40bbe37, 0xc30c8ea1, 0x5a05df1b, 0x2d02ef8d,

```

```
};
```

```
/* how to derive the values in crctab[] from polynomial 0xedb88320 */
```

```
void build_table()
```

```
{
    ub4 i, j;
    for (i=0; i<256; ++i) {
        j = i;
        j = (j>>1) ^ ((j&1) ? 0xedb88320 : 0);
        j = (j>>1) ^ ((j&1) ? 0xedb88320 : 0);
        j = (j>>1) ^ ((j&1) ? 0xedb88320 : 0);
        j = (j>>1) ^ ((j&1) ? 0xedb88320 : 0);
        j = (j>>1) ^ ((j&1) ? 0xedb88320 : 0);
        j = (j>>1) ^ ((j&1) ? 0xedb88320 : 0);
        j = (j>>1) ^ ((j&1) ? 0xedb88320 : 0);
        j = (j>>1) ^ ((j&1) ? 0xedb88320 : 0);
        printf("0x%.8lx, ", j);
        if (i%6 == 5) printf("\n");
    }
}
```

```
/* the hash function */
```

```
ub4 crc(const void *key, ub4 len, ub4 hash)
```

```
{
    ub4 i;
    const ub1 *k = key;
    for (hash=len, i=0; i<len; ++i)
        hash = (hash >> 8) ^ crctab[(hash & 0xff) ^ k[i]];
    return hash;
}
```

```
/* To use, try "gcc -O crc.c -o crc; crc < crc.c" */
```

```
int main()
```

```
{
    char s[1000];
    while (gets(s)) printf("%.8lx\n", crc(s, strlen(s), 0));
    return 0;
}
```

We are interesting in the `crc()` function only. By the way, pay attention to two loop initializers in the `for()` statement: `hash=len, i=0`. C/C++ standard allows this, of course. Emitted code will contain two operations in loop initialization part instead of usual one.

Let's compile it in MSVC with optimization (`/Ox`). For the sake of brevity, only `crc()` function is listed here, with my comments.

```

_key$ = 8           ; size = 4
_len$ = 12          ; size = 4
_hash$ = 16         ; size = 4
_crc PROC
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _len$[esp-4]
    xor     ecx, ecx ; i will be stored in ECX
    mov     eax, edx
    test    edx, edx

```

```

    jbe    SHORT $LN1@crc
    push  ebx
    push  esi
    mov   esi, DWORD PTR _key$(esp+4) ; ESI = key
    push  edi
$LL3@crc:
; work with bytes using only 32-bit registers. byte from address key+i we store into EDI

    movzx edi, BYTE PTR [ecx+esi]
    mov   ebx, eax ; EBX = (hash = len)
    and  ebx, 255 ; EBX = hash & 0xff

; XOR EDI, EBX (EDI=EDI^EBX) - this operation uses all 32 bits of each register
; but other bits (8-31) are cleared all time, so it's OK
; these are cleared because, as for EDI, it was done by MOVZX instruction above
; high bits of EBX was cleared by AND EBX, 255 instruction above (255 = 0xff)

    xor   edi, ebx

; EAX=EAX>>8; bits 24-31 taken "from nowhere" will be cleared
    shr  eax, 8

; EAX=EAX^crctab[EDI*4] - choose EDI-th element from crctab[] table
    xor  eax, DWORD PTR _crctab[edi*4]
    inc  ecx          ; i++
    cmp  ecx, edx     ; i<len ?
    jb  SHORT $LL3@crc ; yes
    pop  edi
    pop  esi
    pop  ebx
$LN1@crc:
    ret  0
_crc  ENDP

```

Let's try the same in GCC 4.4.1 with -O3 option:

```

crc
public crc
proc near

key      = dword ptr 8
hash    = dword ptr 0Ch

    push  ebp
    xor   edx, edx
    mov   ebp, esp
    push  esi
    mov   esi, [ebp+key]
    push  ebx
    mov   ebx, [ebp+hash]
    test  ebx, ebx
    mov   eax, ebx
    jz    short loc_80484D3
    nop                    ; padding
    lea  esi, [esi+0]      ; padding; works as NOP (ESI doesn't changing here)

loc_80484B8:
    mov   ecx, eax        ; save previous state of hash to ECX
    xor   al, [esi+edx]   ; AL=*(key+i)
    add  edx, 1           ; i++
    shr  ecx, 8           ; ECX=hash>>8
    movzx eax, al         ; EAX=*(key+i)
    mov  eax, dword ptr ds:crctab[eax*4] ; EAX=crctab[EAX]
    xor  eax, ecx         ; hash=EAX^ECX
    cmp  ebx, edx
    ja   short loc_80484B8

loc_80484D3:
    pop  ebx
    pop  esi
    pop  ebp

```



```

crc      retn
\        endp

```

GCC aligned loop start on a 8-byte boundary by adding NOP and `lea esi, [esi+0]` (that is the *idle operation* too). Read more about it in `npad` section (78).

19.6 Network address calculation example

As we know, TCP/IP address (IPv4) consists of four numbers in 0...255 range, i.e., four bytes. Four bytes can be fitted in 32-bit variable easily, so, IPv4 host address, network mask or network address can all be 32-bit integers.

From a user's point of view, network mask is defined in four numbers format like 255.255.255.0 or so, but network engineers use more compact notation (CIDR¹²), like /8, /16 or like that. This notation just defines number of bits mask has, starting at MSB¹³.

Mask	Hosts	Usable	Netmask	Hex mask	
/30	4	2	255.255.255.252	fffffffc	
/29	8	6	255.255.255.248	ffffff8	
/28	16	14	255.255.255.240	ffffff0	
/27	32	30	255.255.255.224	ffffffe0	
/26	64	62	255.255.255.192	ffffffc0	
/24	256	254	255.255.255.0	ffffff00	class C network
/23	512	510	255.255.254.0	fffffe00	
/22	1024	1022	255.255.252.0	fffffc00	
/21	2048	2046	255.255.248.0	ffff8000	
/20	4096	4094	255.255.240.0	ffff0000	
/19	8192	8190	255.255.224.0	ffffe000	
/18	16384	16382	255.255.192.0	ffffc000	
/17	32768	32766	255.255.128.0	ffff8000	
/16	65536	65534	255.255.0.0	ffff0000	class B network
/8	16777216	16777214	255.0.0.0	ff000000	class A network

Here is a small example, which calculates network address by applying network mask to host address.

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

uint32_t form_IP (uint8_t ip1, uint8_t ip2, uint8_t ip3, uint8_t ip4)
{
    return (ip1<<24) | (ip2<<16) | (ip3<<8) | ip4;
};

void print_as_IP (uint32_t a)
{
    printf ("%d.%d.%d.%d\n",
            (a>>24)&0xFF,
            (a>>16)&0xFF,
            (a>>8)&0xFF,
            (a)&0xFF);
};

// bit=31..0
uint32_t set_bit (uint32_t input, int bit)
{
    return input=input|(1<<bit);
};

uint32_t form_netmask (uint8_t netmask_bits)
{
    uint32_t netmask=0;
    uint8_t i;

    for (i=0; i<netmask_bits; i++)
        netmask=set_bit(netmask, 31-i);
};

```

¹²Classless Inter-Domain Routing

¹³Most significant bit/byte

```

        return netmask;
};

void calc_network_address (uint8_t ip1, uint8_t ip2, uint8_t ip3, uint8_t ip4, uint8_t
↳ netmask_bits)
{
    uint32_t netmask=form_netmask(netmask_bits);
    uint32_t ip=form_IP(ip1, ip2, ip3, ip4);
    uint32_t netw_adr;

    printf ("netmask=");
    print_as_IP (netmask);

    netw_adr=ip&netmask;

    printf ("network address=");
    print_as_IP (netw_adr);
};

int main()
{
    calc_network_address (10, 1, 2, 4, 24);    // 10.1.2.4, /24
    calc_network_address (10, 1, 2, 4, 8);     // 10.1.2.4, /8
    calc_network_address (10, 1, 2, 4, 25);   // 10.1.2.4, /25
    calc_network_address (10, 1, 2, 64, 26);  // 10.1.2.4, /26
};

```

19.6.1 calc_network_address()

calc_network_address() function is simplest one: it just ANDing host address with network mask, resulting network address.

Listing 19.29: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

```

1  _ip1$ = 8           ; size = 1
2  _ip2$ = 12          ; size = 1
3  _ip3$ = 16          ; size = 1
4  _ip4$ = 20          ; size = 1
5  _netmask_bits$ = 24 ; size = 1
6  _calc_network_address PROC
7      push     edi
8      push     DWORD PTR _netmask_bits$[esp]
9      call    _form_netmask
10     push     OFFSET $SG3045 ; 'netmask='
11     mov     edi, eax
12     call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
13     push     edi
14     call    _print_as_IP
15     push     OFFSET $SG3046 ; 'network address='
16     call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
17     push     DWORD PTR _ip4$[esp+16]
18     push     DWORD PTR _ip3$[esp+20]
19     push     DWORD PTR _ip2$[esp+24]
20     push     DWORD PTR _ip1$[esp+28]
21     call    _form_IP
22     and     eax, edi          ; network address = host address & netmask
23     push     eax
24     call    _print_as_IP
25     add     esp, 36
26     pop     edi
27     ret     0
28 _calc_network_address ENDP

```

At line 22 we see most important AND— here is network address is calculated.

19.6.2 form_IP()

form_IP() function just puts all 4 bytes into 32-bit value.

Here is how it is usually done:

- Allocate a variable for return value. Set it to 0.
- Take fourth (lowest) byte, apply OR operation to this byte and return value. Return value contain 4th byte now.
- Take third byte, shift it by 8 bits left. You'll get a value in form of 0x0000bb00 where bb is your third byte. Apply OR operation to the resulting value and return value. Return value contain 0x000000aa so far, so ORing values will produce value in form of 0x0000bbaa.
- Take second byte, shift it by 16 bits left. You'll get a value in form of 0x00cc0000 where cc is your second byte. Apply OR operation to the resulting value and return value. Return value contain 0x0000bbaa so far, so ORing values will produce value in form 0x00ccbbaa.
- Take first byte, shift it by 24 bits left. You'll get a value in form of 0xdd000000 where dd is your first byte. Apply OR operation to the resulting value and return value. Return value contain 0x00ccbbaa so far, so ORing values will produce value in form of 0xddccbbaa.

And that's how it's done by non-optimizing MSVC 2012:

Listing 19.30: Non-optimizing MSVC 2012

```
; denote ip1 as "dd", ip2 as "cc", ip3 as "bb", ip4 as "aa".
_ip1$ = 8      ; size = 1
_ip2$ = 12     ; size = 1
_ip3$ = 16     ; size = 1
_ip4$ = 20     ; size = 1
_form_IP PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR _ip1$[ebp]
    ; EAX=000000dd
    shl     eax, 24
    ; EAX=dd000000
    movzx   ecx, BYTE PTR _ip2$[ebp]
    ; ECX=000000cc
    shl     ecx, 16
    ; ECX=00cc0000
    or      eax, ecx
    ; EAX=ddcc0000
    movzx   edx, BYTE PTR _ip3$[ebp]
    ; EDX=000000bb
    shl     edx, 8
    ; EDX=0000bb00
    or      eax, edx
    ; EAX=ddccb000
    movzx   ecx, BYTE PTR _ip4$[ebp]
    ; ECX=000000aa
    or      eax, ecx
    ; EAX=ddccbbaa
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_form_IP ENDP
```

Well, order is different, but, of course, order of operations doesn't matters.
Optimizing MSVC 2012 does essentially the same, but in different way:

Listing 19.31: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

```
; denote ip1 as "dd", ip2 as "cc", ip3 as "bb", ip4 as "aa".
_ip1$ = 8      ; size = 1
_ip2$ = 12     ; size = 1
_ip3$ = 16     ; size = 1
_ip4$ = 20     ; size = 1
_form_IP PROC
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR _ip1$[esp-4]
    ; EAX=000000dd
    movzx   ecx, BYTE PTR _ip2$[esp-4]
    ; ECX=000000cc
    shl     eax, 8
    ; EAX=0000dd00
    or      eax, ecx
```

```

; EAX=0000ddcc
movzx ecx, BYTE PTR _ip3$[esp-4]
; ECX=000000bb
shl eax, 8
; EAX=00ddcc00
or eax, ecx
; EAX=00ddccbb
movzx ecx, BYTE PTR _ip4$[esp-4]
; ECX=000000aa
shl eax, 8
; EAX=ddccbb00
or eax, ecx
; EAX=ddccbbaa
ret 0
_form_IP ENDP

```

We could say, each byte is written to the lowest 8 bits of returning value, and then returning value is shifting by one byte left at each step. Repeat 4 times for each input byte.

That's it! Unfortunately, there are probably no other ways to do so. I've never heard of CPUs or ISAs which has some instruction for composing a value from bits or bytes. It's all usually done by bit shifting and ORing.

19.6.3 print_as_IP()

print_as_IP() do inverse: split 32-bit value into 4 bytes.

Slicing works somewhat simpler: just shift input value by 24, 16, 8 or 0 bits, take bits from zeroth to seventh (lowest byte), and that's it:

Listing 19.32: Non-optimizing MSVC 2012

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_print_as_IP PROC
push ebp
mov ebp, esp
mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; EAX=ddccbbaa
and eax, 255
; EAX=000000aa
push eax
mov ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; ECX=ddccbbaa
shr ecx, 8
; ECX=00ddccbb
and ecx, 255
; ECX=000000bb
push ecx
mov edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; EDX=ddccbbaa
shr edx, 16
; EDX=0000ddcc
and edx, 255
; EDX=000000cc
push edx
mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; EAX=ddccbbaa
shr eax, 24
; EAX=000000dd
and eax, 255 ; probably redundant instruction
; EAX=000000dd
push eax
push OFFSET $SG2973 ; '%d.%d.%d.%d'
call DWORD PTR __imp__printf
add esp, 20
pop ebp
ret 0
_print_as_IP ENDP

```

Optimizing MSVC 2012 does almost the same, but without unnecessary input value reloads:

Listing 19.33: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

```

_a$ = 8          ; size = 4
_print_as_IP PROC
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    ; ECX=ddccbbaa
    movzx  eax, cl
    ; EAX=000000aa
    push   eax
    mov    eax, ecx
    ; EAX=ddccbbaa
    shr   eax, 8
    ; EAX=00ddccbb
    and   eax, 255
    ; EAX=000000bb
    push   eax
    mov    eax, ecx
    ; EAX=ddccbbaa
    shr   eax, 16
    ; EAX=0000ddcc
    and   eax, 255
    ; EAX=000000cc
    push   eax
    ; ECX=ddccbbaa
    shr   ecx, 24
    ; ECX=000000dd
    push   ecx
    push   OFFSET $SG3020 ; '%d.%d.%d.%d'
    call  DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add   esp, 20
    ret   0
_print_as_IP ENDP

```

19.6.4 form_netmask() and set_bit()

form_netmask() makes network mask value from CIDR notation. Of course, it would be much effective to use there some kind of precalculated table, but I wrote it in this way intentionally, to demonstrate bit shifts. I also made separate function set_bit(). It's a not very good idea to make a function for such primitive operation, but it would be easy to understand how it all works.

Listing 19.34: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

```

_input$ = 8          ; size = 4
_bit$ = 12          ; size = 4
_set_bit PROC
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _bit$[esp-4]
    mov    eax, 1
    shl   eax, cl
    or    eax, DWORD PTR _input$[esp-4]
    ret   0
_set_bit ENDP

_netmask_bits$ = 8   ; size = 1
_form_netmask PROC
    push  ebx
    push  esi
    movzx esi, BYTE PTR _netmask_bits$[esp+4]
    xor   ecx, ecx
    xor   bl, bl
    test  esi, esi
    jle  SHORT $LN9@form_netma
    xor   edx, edx
$LL3@form_netma:
    mov   eax, 31
    sub   eax, edx
    push  eax
    push  ecx
    call  _set_bit
    inc  bl
    movzx edx, bl
    add  esp, 8

```

```

    mov     ecx, eax
    cmp     edx, esi
    jl     SHORT $LL3@form_netma
$LN9@form_netma:
    pop     esi
    mov     eax, ecx
    pop     ebx
    ret     0
_form_netmask ENDP

```

`set_bit()` is primitive: just shift 1 to number of bits we need and then ORing it with “input” value. `form_netmask()` has a loop: it will set as many bits (starting from **MSB**) as passed in `netmask_bits` argument

19.6.5 Summary

That’s it! I run it and got:

```

netmask=255.255.255.0
network address=10.1.2.0
netmask=255.0.0.0
network address=10.0.0.0
netmask=255.255.255.128
network address=10.1.2.0
netmask=255.255.255.192
network address=10.1.2.64

```

19.7 Conclusion

Analogous to the C/C++ shifting operators `<<` and `>>`, shift instructions in x86 are `SHR/SHL` (for unsigned values), `SAR/SHL` (for signed values).

ARM shift instructions are `LSR/LSL` (for unsigned values), `ASR/LSL` (for signed values). It’s also possible to add shifting suffix to some instructions (which are called “data processing instructions”).

19.7.1 Check for specific bit (known at compiling stage)

Test if the 1000000 bit (0x40) is present in register’s value:

Listing 19.35: C/C++

```

if (input&0x40)
    ...

```

Listing 19.36: x86

```

TEST REG, 40h
JNZ is_set
; bit is not set

```

Listing 19.37: x86

```

TEST REG, 40h
JZ is_cleared
; bit is set

```

Listing 19.38: ARM (ARM mode)

```

TST REG, #0x40
BNE is_set
; bit is not set

```

Sometimes, `AND` is used instead of `TEST`, but flags are set just as the same.

19.7.2 Check for specific bit (specified at runtime)

This is usually done by this C/C++ code snippet (shift value by n bits right, then cut off lowest bit):

Listing 19.39: C/C++

```
if ((value>>n)&1)
    ....
```

This is usually implemented in x86 code as:

Listing 19.40: x86

```
; REG=input_value
; CL=n
SHR REG, CL
AND REG, 1
```

Or (shift 1 bit n times left, isolate this bit in input value and check, if it's not zero):

Listing 19.41: C/C++

```
if (value & (1<<n))
    ....
```

This is usually implemented in x86 code as:

Listing 19.42: x86

```
; CL=n
MOV REG, 1
SHL REG, CL
AND input_value, REG
```

19.7.3 Set specific bit (known at compiling stage)

Listing 19.43: C/C++

```
value=value|0x40;
```

Listing 19.44: x86

```
OR REG, 40h
```

Listing 19.45: ARM (ARM mode) and ARM64

```
ORR R0, R0, #0x40
```

19.7.4 Set specific bit (specified at runtime)

Listing 19.46: C/C++

```
value=value|(1<<n);
```

This is usually implemented in x86 code as:

Listing 19.47: x86

```
; CL=n
MOV REG, 1
SHL REG, CL
OR input_value, REG
```

19.7.5 Clear specific bit (known at compiling stage)

Just apply AND operation with inverted value:

Listing 19.48: C/C++

```
value=value&(~0x40);
```

Listing 19.49: x86

```
AND REG, 0FFFFFFBFh
```

Listing 19.50: x64

```
AND REG, 0FFFFFFFFFFFFFFBFh
```

This is actually leaving all bits set but one.

ARM in ARM mode has BIC instruction, which works like NOT+AND instruction pair:

Listing 19.51: ARM (ARM mode)

```
BIC R0, R0, #0x40
```

19.7.6 Clear specific bit (specified at runtime)

Listing 19.52: C/C++

```
value=value&(~(1<<n));
```

Listing 19.53: x86

```
; CL=n
MOV REG, 1
SHL REG, CL
NOT REG
AND input_value, REG
```

19.8 Exercises**19.8.1 Exercise #1**

What this code does?

Listing 19.54: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8
_f PROC
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    mov     eax, ecx
    mov     edx, ecx
    shl     edx, 16           ; 00000010H
    and     eax, 65280       ; 0000ff00H
    or      eax, edx
    mov     edx, ecx
    and     edx, 16711680    ; 00ff0000H
    shr     ecx, 16         ; 00000010H
    or      edx, ecx
    shl     eax, 8
    shr     edx, 8
    or      eax, edx
    ret     0
_f ENDP
```

Listing 19.55: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
f PROC
    MOV     r1,#0xff0000
    AND     r1,r1,r0,LSL #8
    MOV     r2,#0xff00
```



```

ORR    r1,r1,r0,LSR #24
AND    r2,r2,r0,LSR #8
ORR    r1,r1,r2
ORR    r0,r1,r0,LSL #24
BX     lr
ENDP

```

Listing 19.56: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

f PROC
MOVS   r3,#0xff
LSLS   r2,r0,#8
LSLS   r3,r3,#16
ANDS   r2,r2,r3
LSRS   r1,r0,#24
ORRS   r1,r1,r2
LSRS   r2,r0,#8
ASRS   r3,r3,#8
ANDS   r2,r2,r3
ORRS   r1,r1,r2
LSLS   r0,r0,#24
ORRS   r0,r0,r1
BX     lr
ENDP

```

Listing 19.57: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

f:
    rev    w0, w0
    ret

```

Answer: [F.1.11](#).

19.8.2 Exercise #2

What this code does?

Listing 19.58: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _a$[esp]
    xor     ecx, ecx
    push    edi
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+1]
    xor     eax, eax
    npad   3 ; align next label
$LL3@f:
    mov     edi, esi
    shr     edi, cl
    add     ecx, 4
    and     edi, 15
    imul   edi, edx
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [edx+edx*4]
    add     eax, edi
    add     edx, edx
    cmp     ecx, 28
    jle    SHORT $LL3@f
    pop     edi
    pop     esi
    ret     0
_f PROC
ENDP

```

Listing 19.59: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
MOV    r3,r0
MOV    r1,#0
MOV    r2,#1

```

```

MOV    r0,r1
|L0.16|
LSR    r12,r3,r1
AND    r12,r12,#0xf
MLA    r0,r12,r2,r0
ADD    r1,r1,#4
ADD    r2,r2,r2,LSL #2
CMP    r1,#0x1c
LSL    r2,r2,#1
BLE    |L0.16|
BX     lr
ENDP

```

Listing 19.60: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

f PROC
PUSH   {r4,lr}
MOVS   r3,r0
MOVS   r1,#0
MOVS   r2,#1
MOVS   r0,r1
|L0.10|
MOVS   r4,r3
LSRS   r4,r4,r1
LSLS   r4,r4,#28
LSRS   r4,r4,#28
MULS   r4,r2,r4
ADDS   r0,r4,r0
MOVS   r4,#0xa
MULS   r2,r4,r2
ADDS   r1,r1,#4
CMP    r1,#0x1c
BLE    |L0.10|
POP    {r4,pc}
ENDP

```

Listing 19.61: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

f:
sub    sp, sp, #32
str    w0, [sp,12]
str    wzr, [sp,28]
mov    w0, 1
str    w0, [sp,24]
str    wzr, [sp,20]
b      .L2
.L3:
ldr    w0, [sp,28]
ldr    w1, [sp,12]
lsr    w0, w1, w0
and    w1, w0, 15
ldr    w0, [sp,24]
mul    w0, w1, w0
ldr    w1, [sp,20]
add    w0, w1, w0
str    w0, [sp,20]
ldr    w0, [sp,28]
add    w0, w0, 4
str    w0, [sp,28]
ldr    w1, [sp,24]
mov    w0, w1
lsl    w0, w0, 2
add    w0, w0, w1
lsl    w0, w0, 1
str    w0, [sp,24]
.L2:
ldr    w0, [sp,28]
cmp    w0, 28
ble    .L3
ldr    w0, [sp,20]

```

```
add    sp, sp, 32
ret
```

Answer: [F.1.11](#).

19.8.3 Exercise #3

Using [MSDN](#)¹⁴ documentation, find out, which flags were used in `MessageBox()` win32 function call.

Listing 19.62: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_main PROC
  push 278595 ; 00044043H
  push OFFSET $SG79792 ; 'caption'
  push OFFSET $SG79793 ; 'hello, world!'
  push 0
  call DWORD PTR __imp__MessageBoxA@16
  xor  eax, eax
  ret  0
_main ENDP
```

Answer: [F.1.11](#).

19.8.4 Exercise #4

What this code does?

Listing 19.63: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_m$ = 8 ; size = 4
_n$ = 12 ; size = 4
_f PROC
  mov ecx, DWORD PTR _n$[esp-4]
  xor  eax, eax
  xor  edx, edx
  test ecx, ecx
  je   SHORT $LN2@f
  push esi
  mov  esi, DWORD PTR _m$[esp]
$LL3@f:
  test cl, 1
  je   SHORT $LN1@f
  add  eax, esi
  adc  edx, 0
$LN1@f:
  add  esi, esi
  shr  ecx, 1
  jne SHORT $LL3@f
  pop  esi
$LN2@f:
  ret  0
_f ENDP
```

Listing 19.64: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
f PROC
  PUSH {r4,lr}
  MOV  r3,r0
  MOV  r0,#0
  MOV  r2,r0
  MOV  r12,r0
  B    |L0.48|
|L0.24|
  TST  r1,#1
  BEQ  |L0.40|
  ADDS r0,r0,r3
  ADC  r2,r2,r12
|L0.40|
  LSL  r3,r3,#1
```

¹⁴Microsoft Developer Network

```

|L0.48| LSR      r1,r1,#1
        CMP      r1,#0
        MOVEQ    r1,r2
        BNE     |L0.24|
        POP     {r4,pc}
        ENDP

```

Listing 19.65: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

f PROC
    PUSH    {r4,r5,lr}
    MOVS    r3,r0
    MOVS    r0,#0
    MOVS    r2,r0
    MOVS    r4,r0
    B       |L0.24|
|L0.12|   LSL    r5,r1,#31
        BEQ    |L0.20|
        ADDS  r0,r0,r3
        ADCS  r2,r2,r4
|L0.20|   LSL    r3,r3,#1
        LSRS  r1,r1,#1
|L0.24|   CMP    r1,#0
        BNE    |L0.12|
        MOVS  r1,r2
        POP   {r4,r5,pc}
        ENDP

```

Listing 19.66: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

f:
    mov     w2, w0
    mov     x0, 0
    cbz    w1, .L2
.L3:
    and     w3, w1, 1
    lsr    w1, w1, 1
    cmp     w3, wzr
    add     x3, x0, x2, uxtw
    lsl    w2, w2, 1
    csel   x0, x3, x0, ne
    cbnz   w1, .L3
.L2:
    ret

```

Answer: [F.1.11](#).

Chapter 20

Linear congruential generator as random number generator

Linear congruential generator is probably simplest possible way to generate random numbers. It's not in favour in modern times¹, but it's so simple (just one multiplication, one addition and one AND operation), so we can use it as an example.

```
#include <stdint.h>

// from the Numerical Recipes book
#define RNG_a 1664525
#define RNG_c 1013904223

static uint32_t rand_state;

void srand (uint32_t init)
{
    rand_state=init;
}

int rand ()
{
    rand_state=rand_state*RNG_a;
    rand_state=rand_state+RNG_c;
    return rand_state & 0x7fff;
}
```

So there are two functions: one is used for internal state initialization, and the second one is called for random numbers generating.

We see two constants here used in algorithm. I defined it using `#define` C/C++ statement. It's a macro. The difference between C/C++ macro and constant is that all macros are replaced by its value by C/C++ preprocessor, and it's not holding any value in the memory. By contrast, constant is read-only variable. It's possible to take a pointer (or address) of constant variable, but impossible to do so with macro.

The last AND operation is needed because by C-standard, `rand()` should return value in 0..32767 range. If you want to get 32-bit random variables, just the last omit AND operation.

20.1 x86

Listing 20.1: Optimizing MSVC 2013

```
_BSS SEGMENT
_rand_state DD 01H DUP (?)
_BSS ENDS

_init$ = 8
_srand PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _init$[esp-4]
    mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state, eax
    ret     0
_srand ENDP

_TEXT SEGMENT
```

¹Mersenne twister is better

```

_rand PROC
    imul    eax, DWORD PTR _rand_state, 1664525
    add     eax, 1013904223          ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state, eax
    and     eax, 32767              ; 00007fffH
    ret     0
_rand ENDP

_TEXT ENDS

```

Here we see it: both constants are embedded into the code. There are no memory allocated for them. `srand()` function just copies input value into the internal `rand_state` variable.

`rand()` takes it, calculate next `rand_state`, cuts it and leaves it in the EAX register.

Non-Optimized version is more verbose:

Listing 20.2: Non-optimizing MSVC 2013

```

_BSS SEGMENT
_rand_state DD 01H DUP (?)
_BSS ENDS

_init$ = 8
_srand PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _init$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state, eax
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_srand ENDP

_TEXT SEGMENT
_rand PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    imul   eax, DWORD PTR _rand_state, 1664525
    mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state, eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _rand_state
    add     ecx, 1013904223          ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state, ecx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _rand_state
    and     eax, 32767              ; 00007fffH
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_rand ENDP

_TEXT ENDS

```

20.2 x64

x64 version is mostly the same and uses 32-bit registers instead of 64-bit ones (because we work with *int* values here). But `srand()` function takes input argument from the ECX register rather than from stack:

Listing 20.3: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```

_BSS SEGMENT
rand_state DD 01H DUP (?)
_BSS ENDS

init$ = 8
srand PROC
; ECX = input argument
    mov     DWORD PTR rand_state, ecx
    ret     0
srand ENDP

_TEXT SEGMENT
rand PROC
    imul   eax, DWORD PTR rand_state, 1664525          ; 0019660dH

```

```

    add    eax, 1013904223          ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov    DWORD PTR rand_state, eax
    and    eax, 32767              ; 00007fffH
    ret    0
rand     ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS

```

GCC compiler do mostly the same code.

20.3 32-bit ARM

Listing 20.4: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

srand PROC
    LDR    r1, |L0.52| ; load pointer to rand_state
    STR    r0, [r1, #0] ; save rand_state
    BX    lr
    ENDP

rand PROC
    LDR    r0, |L0.52| ; load pointer to rand_state
    LDR    r2, |L0.56| ; load RNG_a
    LDR    r1, [r0, #0] ; load rand_state
    MUL    r1, r2, r1
    LDR    r2, |L0.60| ; load RNG_c
    ADD    r1, r1, r2
    STR    r1, [r0, #0] ; save rand_state
; AND with 0x7FFF:
    LSL    r0, r1, #17
    LSR    r0, r0, #17
    BX    lr
    ENDP

|L0.52|
DCD    ||.data|
|L0.56|
DCD    0x0019660d
|L0.60|
DCD    0x3c6ef35f

    AREA ||.data|, DATA, ALIGN=2

rand_state
DCD    0x00000000

```

It's not possible to embed 32-bit constants into ARM instructions, so Keil is ought to place them externally and load them additionally.

One interesting thing is that it's not possible to embed 0x7FFF constant as well. So what Keil does is shifting `rand_state` left by 17 bits and then shifting it right by 17 bits. This is analogous to $(rand_state \ll 17) \gg 17$ statement. Seems to be useless operation, but nevertheless, what it does is clearing high 17 bits, leaving low 15 bits intact, and that's our goal after all.

Optimizing Keil for thumb mode do mostly the same code.

Chapter 21

Structures

It can be defined that the C/C++ structure, with some assumptions, just a set of variables, always stored in memory together, not necessary of the same type ¹.

21.1 MSVC: SYSTEMTIME example

Let's take SYSTEMTIME² win32 structure describing time.

That's how it is defined:

Listing 21.1: WinBase.h

```
typedef struct _SYSTEMTIME {
    WORD wYear;
    WORD wMonth;
    WORD wDayOfWeek;
    WORD wDay;
    WORD wHour;
    WORD wMinute;
    WORD wSecond;
    WORD wMilliseconds;
} SYSTEMTIME, *PSYSTEMTIME;
```

Let's write a C function to get current time:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    SYSTEMTIME t;
    GetSystemTime (&t);

    printf ("%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d\n",
           t.wYear, t.wMonth, t.wDay,
           t.wHour, t.wMinute, t.wSecond);

    return;
};
```

We got (MSVC 2010):

Listing 21.2: MSVC 2010 /GS-

```
_t$ = -16 ; size = 16
_main      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 16
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
    push    eax
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__GetSystemTime@4
    movzx  ecx, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+12] ; wSecond
    push   ecx
```

¹AKA "heterogeneous container"

²MSDN: [SYSTEMTIME structure](#)


```

movzx  edx, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+10] ; wMinute
push   edx
movzx  eax, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+8] ; wHour
push   eax
movzx  ecx, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+6] ; wDay
push   ecx
movzx  edx, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+2] ; wMonth
push   edx
movzx  eax, WORD PTR _t$[ebp] ; wYear
push   eax
push   OFFSET $SG78811 ; '%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf
add    esp, 28
xor    eax, eax
mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

16 bytes are allocated for this structure in local stack –that is exactly `sizeof(WORD)*8` (there are 8 WORD variables in the structure).

Pay attention to the fact the structure beginning with wYear field. It can be said, a pointer to SYSTEMTIME structure is passed to the `GetSystemTime()`³, but it is also can be said, pointer to the wYear field is passed, and that is the same! `GetSystemTime()` writes current year to the WORD pointer pointing to, then shifts 2 bytes ahead, then writes current month, etc, etc.

³MSDN: SYSTEMTIME structure

21.1.1 OllyDbg

Let's compile this example in MSVC 2010 with /GS- /MD keys and run it in OllyDbg. Let's open windows of data and stack at the address which is passed as the first argument into GetSystemTime() function, let's wait until it's executed and we see this:

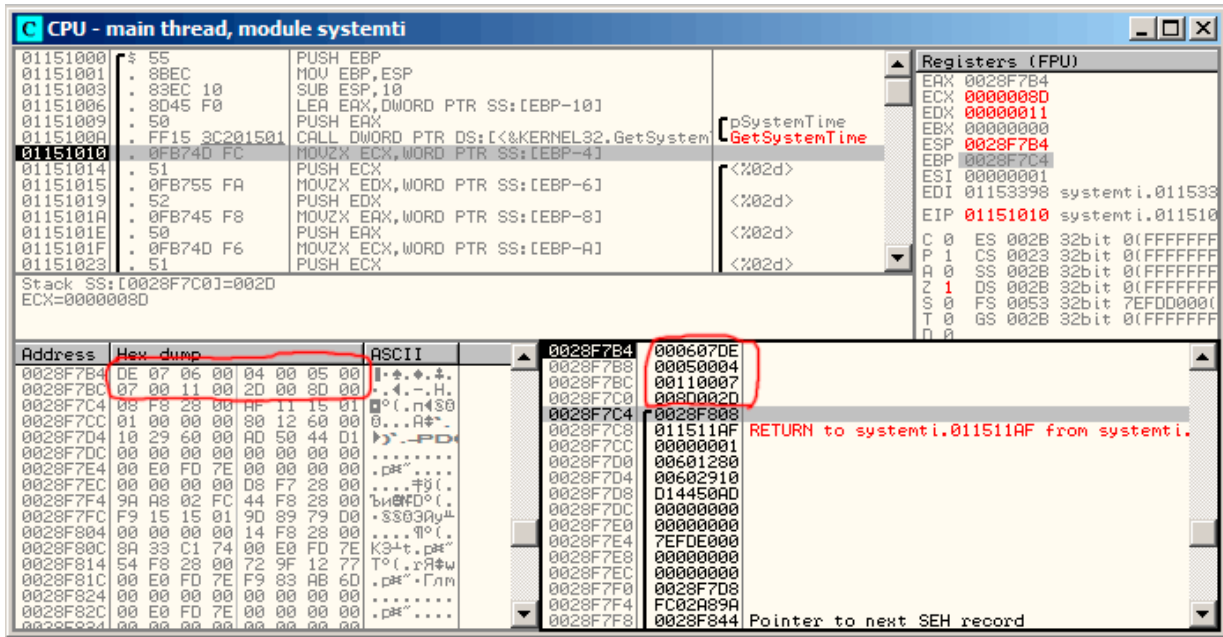


Figure 21.1: OllyDbg: GetSystemTime() just executed

Precise system time of function execution on my computer is 5 June 2014, 7:17:45:

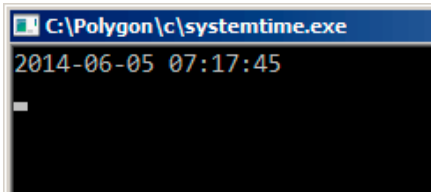


Figure 21.2: OllyDbg: printf() output

So we see these 16 bytes in the data window:

```
DE 07 06 00 04 00 04 00
07 00 11 00 2D 00 8D 00
```

Each two bytes representing one structure field. Since *endianness* is *little endian*, we see low byte first and then high one. Hence, these are values which are currently stored in memory:

Hexadecimal number	decimal number	field name
0x07DE	2014	wYear
0x0006	6	wMonth
0x0004	4	wDayOfWeek
0x0005	5	wDay
0x0007	7	wHour
0x0011	17	wMinute
0x002D	45	wSecond
0x008D	141	wMilliseconds

The same values are seen in the stack window, but they are grouped as 32-bit values.

And then printf() just takes values it needs and outputs them to the console.

Some values printf() doesn't output (wDayOfWeek and wMilliseconds), but they are in memory right now, available for usage.

21.1.2 Replacing the structure by array

The fact the structure fields are just variables located side-by-side, I can demonstrate by the following way. Keeping in mind SYSTEMTIME structure description, I can rewrite this simple example like this:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    WORD array[8];
    GetSystemTime (array);

    printf ("%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d\n",
        array[0] /* wYear */, array[1] /* wMonth */, array[3] /* wDay */,
        array[4] /* wHour */, array[5] /* wMinute */, array[6] /* wSecond */);

    return;
};
```

Compiler will grumble for a little:

```
systemtime2.c(7) : warning C4133: 'function' : incompatible types - from 'WORD [8]' to 'LPSYSTEMTIME'
    ↳ LPSYSTEMTIME'
```

But nevertheless, it will produce this code:

Listing 21.3: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```
$SG78573 DB      '%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d', 0aH, 00H

_array$ = -16   ; size = 16
_main PROC
    push     ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 16
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
    push    eax
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__GetSystemTime@4
    movzx  ecx, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+12] ; wSecond
    push   ecx
    movzx  edx, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+10] ; wMinute
    push   edx
    movzx  eax, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+8] ; wHour
    push   eax
    movzx  ecx, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+6] ; wDay
    push   ecx
    movzx  edx, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+2] ; wMonth
    push   edx
    movzx  eax, WORD PTR _array$[ebp] ; wYear
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG78573
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 28
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main ENDP
```

And it works just as the same!

It is very interesting fact the result in assembly form cannot be distinguished from the result of previous compilation. So by looking at this code, one cannot say for sure, was there structure declared, or an array.

Nevertheless, no one will do it in sane state of mind. Since it is not convenient. Also structure fields may be changed by developers, swapped, etc.

I'm not adding OllyDbg example here, because it will be just as the same as in the case with structure.

21.2 Let's allocate space for structure using malloc()

However, sometimes it is simpler to place structures not in local stack, but in [heap](#):

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>
```

```

void main()
{
    SYSTEMTIME *t;

    t=(SYSTEMTIME *)malloc (sizeof (SYSTEMTIME));

    GetSystemTime (t);

    printf ("%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d\n",
            t->wYear, t->wMonth, t->wDay,
            t->wHour, t->wMinute, t->wSecond);

    free (t);

    return;
};

```

Let's compile it now with optimization (/Ox) so to easily see what we need.

Listing 21.4: Optimizing MSVC

```

_main      PROC
    push    esi
    push    16
    call    _malloc
    add     esp, 4
    mov     esi, eax
    push    esi
    call    DWORD PTR __imp__GetSystemTime@4
    movzx   eax, WORD PTR [esi+12] ; wSecond
    movzx   ecx, WORD PTR [esi+10] ; wMinute
    movzx   edx, WORD PTR [esi+8] ; wHour
    push    eax
    movzx   eax, WORD PTR [esi+6] ; wDay
    push    ecx
    movzx   ecx, WORD PTR [esi+2] ; wMonth
    push    edx
    movzx   edx, WORD PTR [esi] ; wYear
    push    eax
    push    ecx
    push    edx
    push    OFFSET $SG78833
    call    _printf
    push    esi
    call    _free
    add     esp, 32
    xor     eax, eax
    pop     esi
    ret     0
_main      ENDP

```

So, `sizeof(SYSTEMTIME) = 16`, that is exact number of bytes to be allocated by `malloc()`. It returns the pointer to freshly allocated memory block in the EAX register, which is then moved into the ESI register. `GetSystemTime()` win32 function undertake to save value in the ESI, and that is why it is not saved here and continue to be used after `GetSystemTime()` call.

New instruction –`MOVZX` (*Move with Zero eXtent*). It may be used almost in those cases as `MOVSX`, but, it clears other bits to 0. That's because `printf()` requires 32-bit *int*, but we got `WORD` in structure –that is 16-bit unsigned type. That's why by copying value from `WORD` into *int*, bits from 16 to 31 must also be cleared, because there will be random noise otherwise, left there from previous operations on registers.

In this example, I can represent structure as array of 8 `WORD`-s:

```

#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    WORD *t;

    t=(WORD *)malloc (16);

    GetSystemTime (t);

```

```

printf ("%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d\n",
        t[0] /* wYear */, t[1] /* wMonth */, t[3] /* wDay */,
        t[4] /* wHour */, t[5] /* wMinute */, t[6] /* wSecond */);

free (t);

return;
};

```

We got:

Listing 21.5: Optimizing MSVC

```

$SG78594 DB      '%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d', 0aH, 00H

_main PROC
push     esi
push     16
call    _malloc
add     esp, 4
mov     esi, eax
push    esi
call    DWORD PTR __imp__GetSystemTime@4
movzx   eax, WORD PTR [esi+12]
movzx   ecx, WORD PTR [esi+10]
movzx   edx, WORD PTR [esi+8]
push    eax
movzx   eax, WORD PTR [esi+6]
push    ecx
movzx   ecx, WORD PTR [esi+2]
push    edx
movzx   edx, WORD PTR [esi]
push    eax
push    ecx
push    edx
push    OFFSET $SG78594
call    _printf
push    esi
call    _free
add     esp, 32
xor     eax, eax
pop     esi
ret     0
_main  ENDP

```

Again, we got the code cannot be distinguished from the previous. And again I should note, one should not do this in practice, unless you know what you do.

21.3 UNIX: struct tm

21.3.1 Linux

As of Linux, let's take tm structure from `time.h` for example:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>

void main()
{
    struct tm t;
    time_t unix_time;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    localtime_r (&unix_time, &t);

    printf ("Year: %d\n", t.tm_year+1900);
    printf ("Month: %d\n", t.tm_mon);
    printf ("Day: %d\n", t.tm_mday);
}

```

```

printf ("Hour: %d\n", t.tm_hour);
printf ("Minutes: %d\n", t.tm_min);
printf ("Seconds: %d\n", t.tm_sec);
};

```

Let's compile it in GCC 4.4.1:

Listing 21.6: GCC 4.4.1

```

main proc near
push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
and     esp, 0FFFFFF0h
sub     esp, 40h
mov     dword ptr [esp], 0 ; first argument for time()
call   time
mov     [esp+3Ch], eax
lea     eax, [esp+3Ch] ; take pointer to what time() returned
lea     edx, [esp+10h] ; at ESP+10h struct tm will begin
mov     [esp+4], edx ; pass pointer to the structure begin
mov     [esp], eax ; pass pointer to result of time()
call   localtime_r
mov     eax, [esp+24h] ; tm_year
lea     edx, [eax+76Ch] ; edx=eax+1900
mov     eax, offset format ; "Year: %d\n"
mov     [esp+4], edx
mov     [esp], eax
call   printf
mov     edx, [esp+20h] ; tm_mon
mov     eax, offset aMonthD ; "Month: %d\n"
mov     [esp+4], edx
mov     [esp], eax
call   printf
mov     edx, [esp+1Ch] ; tm_mday
mov     eax, offset aDayD ; "Day: %d\n"
mov     [esp+4], edx
mov     [esp], eax
call   printf
mov     edx, [esp+18h] ; tm_hour
mov     eax, offset aHourD ; "Hour: %d\n"
mov     [esp+4], edx
mov     [esp], eax
call   printf
mov     edx, [esp+14h] ; tm_min
mov     eax, offset aMinutesD ; "Minutes: %d\n"
mov     [esp+4], edx
mov     [esp], eax
call   printf
mov     edx, [esp+10h]
mov     eax, offset aSecondsD ; "Seconds: %d\n"
mov     [esp+4], edx ; tm_sec
mov     [esp], eax
call   printf
leave
retn
main endp

```

Somehow, IDA did not create local variable names in local stack. But since we already experienced reverse engineers :-), we may do it without this information in this simple example.

Please also pay attention to the `lea edx, [eax+76Ch]` – this instruction just adds 0x76C (1900) to the value in the EAX register, but does not modify any flags. See also the relevant section about LEA ([A.6.2](#)).

GDB

Let's try to load the example into GDB ⁴:

Listing 21.7: GDB

```
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ date
```

⁴I corrected the *date* result slightly for demonstration purposes. Of course, I wasn't able to run GDB that quickly in the same second.

```

Mon Jun  2 18:10:37 EEST 2014
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gcc GCC_tm.c -o GCC_tm
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gdb GCC_tm
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
Copyright (C) 2013 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law.  Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "i686-linux-gnu".
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/GCC_tm...(no debugging symbols found)...done.
(gdb) b printf
Breakpoint 1 at 0x8048330
(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/GCC_tm

Breakpoint 1, __printf (format=0x80485c0 "Year: %d\n") at printf.c:29
29  printf.c: No such file or directory.
(gdb) x/20x $esp
0xbffff0dc: 0x080484c3      0x080485c0      0x000007de      0x00000000
0xbffff0ec: 0x08048301      0x538c93ed      0x00000025      0x0000000a
0xbffff0fc: 0x00000012      0x00000002      0x00000005      0x00000072
0xbffff10c: 0x00000001      0x00000098      0x00000001      0x00002a30
0xbffff11c: 0x0804b090      0x08048530      0x00000000      0x00000000
(gdb)

```

We can easily find our structure in the stack. First, let's see how it's defined in *time.h*:

Listing 21.8: time.h

```

struct tm
{
    int    tm_sec;
    int    tm_min;
    int    tm_hour;
    int    tm_mday;
    int    tm_mon;
    int    tm_year;
    int    tm_wday;
    int    tm_yday;
    int    tm_isdst;
};

```

Take a notice that 32-bit *int* here instead of WORD in SYSTEMTIME. So, each field occupies 32-bit word. Here is a fields of our structure in the stack:

```

0xbffff0dc: 0x080484c3      0x080485c0      0x000007de      0x00000000
0xbffff0ec: 0x08048301      0x538c93ed      0x00000025      0x0000000a  sec  0x0000000a  min
0xbffff0fc: 0x00000012      hour 0x00000002      mday 0x00000005      mon  0x00000072      year
0xbffff10c: 0x00000001      wday 0x00000098      yday 0x00000001      isdst0x00002a30
0xbffff11c: 0x0804b090      0x08048530      0x00000000      0x00000000

```

Or as a table:

Hexadecimal number	decimal number	field name
0x00000025	37	tm_sec
0x0000000a	10	tm_min
0x00000012	18	tm_hour
0x00000002	2	tm_mday
0x00000005	5	tm_mon
0x00000072	114	tm_year
0x00000001	1	tm_wday
0x00000098	152	tm_yday
0x00000001	1	tm_isdst

Just like in case of SYSTEMTIME (21.1), there are also other fields available, but not used, like tm_wday, tm_yday, tm_isdst.

Structure as a set of values

In order to illustrate the structure is just variables laying side-by-side in one place, let's rework example, while looking at the *tm* structure definition again: listing.21.8.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>

void main()
{
    int tm_sec, tm_min, tm_hour, tm_mday, tm_mon, tm_year, tm_wday, tm_yday, tm_isdst;
    time_t unix_time;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    localtime_r (&unix_time, &tm_sec);

    printf ("Year: %d\n", tm_year+1900);
    printf ("Month: %d\n", tm_mon);
    printf ("Day: %d\n", tm_mday);
    printf ("Hour: %d\n", tm_hour);
    printf ("Minutes: %d\n", tm_min);
    printf ("Seconds: %d\n", tm_sec);
};
```

N.B. The pointer to the exactly *tm_sec* field is passed into *localtime_r*, i.e., to the first "structure" element. Compiler will warn us:

Listing 21.9: GCC 4.7.3

```
GCC_tm2.c: In function 'main':
GCC_tm2.c:11:5: warning: passing argument 2 of 'localtime_r' from incompatible pointer type [↵
↳ enabled by default]
In file included from GCC_tm2.c:2:0:
/usr/include/time.h:59:12: note: expected 'struct tm *' but argument is of type 'int *'
```

But nevertheless, will generate this:

Listing 21.10: GCC 4.7.3

```
main      proc near
var_30    = dword ptr -30h
var_2C    = dword ptr -2Ch
unix_time = dword ptr -1Ch
tm_sec    = dword ptr -18h
tm_min    = dword ptr -14h
tm_hour   = dword ptr -10h
tm_mday   = dword ptr -0Ch
tm_mon    = dword ptr -8
tm_year   = dword ptr -4

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        and     esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
        sub     esp, 30h
        call    __main
        mov     [esp+30h+var_30], 0 ; arg 0
        call    time
        mov     [esp+30h+unix_time], eax
        lea    eax, [esp+30h+tm_sec]
        mov     [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
        lea    eax, [esp+30h+unix_time]
        mov     [esp+30h+var_30], eax
        call    localtime_r
        mov     eax, [esp+30h+tm_year]
        add     eax, 1900
        mov     [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
        mov     [esp+30h+var_30], offset aYearD ; "Year: %d\n"
        call    printf
        mov     eax, [esp+30h+tm_mon]
        mov     [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
```



```

    mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aMonthD ; "Month: %d\n"
    call   printf
    mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_mday]
    mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
    mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aDayD ; "Day: %d\n"
    call   printf
    mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_hour]
    mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
    mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aHourD ; "Hour: %d\n"
    call   printf
    mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_min]
    mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
    mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aMinutesD ; "Minutes: %d\n"
    call   printf
    mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_sec]
    mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
    mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aSecondsD ; "Seconds: %d\n"
    call   printf
    leave
    retn
main     endp

```

This code is identical to what we saw previously and it is not possible to say, was it structure in original source code or just pack of variables.

And this works. However, it is not recommended to do this in practice. Usually, non-optimizing compiler allocated variables in local stack in the same order as they were declared in function. Nevertheless, there is no any guarantee.

By the way, some other compiler may warn the `tm_year`, `tm_mon`, `tm_mday`, `tm_hour`, `tm_min` variables, but not `tm_sec` are used without being initialized. Indeed, compiler is not aware these will be filled when calling to `localtime_r()`.

I chose exactly this example for illustration, since all structure fields has *int* type. This will not work if structure fields have 16-bit size (`WORD`), as in case of `SYSTEMTIME` structure—`GetSystemTime()` will fill them incorrectly (because local variables will be aligned on 32-bit border). Read more about it in next section: “Fields packing in structure” (21.4).

So, structure is just variables pack laying on one place, side-by-side. I could say the structure is a syntactic sugar, directing compiler to hold them in one place. However, I’m not programming languages expert, so, most likely, I’m wrong with this term. By the way, there were a times, in very early C versions (before 1972), in which there were no structures at all [Rit93].

I’m not adding debugger example here: because it will be just the same as you already saw.

Structure as an array of 32-bit words

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>

void main()
{
    struct tm t;
    time_t unix_time;
    int i;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    localtime_r (&unix_time, &t);

    for (i=0; i<9; i++)
    {
        int tmp=((int*)&t)[i];
        printf ("0x%08X (%d)\n", tmp, tmp);
    };
};

```

I just cast pointer to structure to array of *int*'s. And that works! I run example at 23:51:45 26-July-2014.

```

0x0000002D (45)
0x00000033 (51)
0x00000017 (23)
0x0000001A (26)
0x00000006 (6)
0x00000072 (114)

```

```
0x00000006 (6)
0x000000CE (206)
0x00000001 (1)
```

Variables here are just in the same order as they are enumerated in structure definition: [21.8](#). Here is how it was compiled:

Listing 21.11: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```
main      proc near
          push    ebp
          mov     ebp, esp
          push    esi
          push    ebx
          and     esp, 0FFFFFF0h
          sub     esp, 40h
          mov     dword ptr [esp], 0 ; timer
          lea    ebx, [esp+14h]
          call   _time
          lea    esi, [esp+38h]
          mov     [esp+4], ebx      ; tp
          mov     [esp+10h], eax
          lea    eax, [esp+10h]
          mov     [esp], eax       ; timer
          call   _localtime_r
          nop
          lea    esi, [esi+0]      ; NOP
loc_80483D8:
; EBX here is pointer to structure, ESI is the pointer to the end of it.
          mov     eax, [ebx]       ; get 32-bit word from array
          add     ebx, 4           ; next field in structure
          mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset a0x08xD ; "0x%08X (%d)\n"
          mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
          mov     [esp+0Ch], eax   ; pass value to printf()
          mov     [esp+8], eax     ; pass value to printf()
          call   ___printf_chk
          cmp     ebx, esi        ; meet structure end?
          jnz    short loc_80483D8 ; no - load next value
          lea    esp, [ebp-8]
          pop     ebx
          pop     esi
          pop     ebp
          retn
main      endp
```

Indeed: the space in local stack is first treated as structure, then it's treated as array.

It's even possible to modify structure fields through this pointer.

And again, it's dubious hackish way to do things, which is not recommended to use in production code.

Exercise

As an exercise, try to modify (increase by 1) current month number treating structure as array.

Structure as an array of bytes

I can do even more. Let's cast the pointer to array of bytes and dump it:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>

void main()
{
    struct tm t;
    time_t unix_time;
    int i, j;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    localtime_r (&unix_time, &t);
```

```

for (i=0; i<9; i++)
{
    for (j=0; j<4; j++)
        printf ("0x%02X ", ((unsigned char*)&t)[i*4+j]);
    printf ("\n");
};
};

```

```

0x2D 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x33 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x17 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x1A 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x06 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x72 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x06 0x00 0x00 0x00
0xCE 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x01 0x00 0x00 0x00

```

I run this example also at 23:51:45 26-July-2014. The values are just the same as in previous dump (21.3.1), and of course, lower byte goes first, because this is little-endian architecture (42).

Listing 21.12: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```

main          proc near
              push    ebp
              mov     ebp, esp
              push   edi
              push   esi
              push   ebx
              and     esp, 0FFFFFF0h
              sub     esp, 40h
              mov     dword ptr [esp], 0 ; timer
              lea    esi, [esp+14h]
              call   _time
              lea    edi, [esp+38h] ; struct end
              mov     [esp+4], esi ; tp
              mov     [esp+10h], eax
              lea    eax, [esp+10h]
              mov     [esp], eax ; timer
              call   _localtime_r
              lea    esi, [esi+0] ; NOP
; ESI here is the pointer to structure in local stack. EDI is the pointer to structure end.
loc_8048408:
              xor     ebx, ebx ; j=0

loc_804840A:
              movzx  eax, byte ptr [esi+ebx] ; load byte
              add     ebx, 1 ; j=j+1
              mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset a0x02x ; "0x%02X "
              mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
              mov     [esp+8], eax ; pass loaded byte to printf()
              call   ___printf_chk
              cmp     ebx, 4
              jnz    short loc_804840A
; print newline character
              mov     dword ptr [esp], 0Ah ; c
              add     esi, 4
              call   _putchar
              cmp     esi, edi ; meet struct end?
              jnz    short loc_8048408 ; j=0
              lea    esp, [ebp-0Ch]
              pop     ebx
              pop     esi
              pop     edi
              pop     ebp
              retn
main          endp

```

21.3.2 ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

Same example:

Listing 21.13: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

var_38 = -0x38
var_34 = -0x34
var_30 = -0x30
var_2C = -0x2C
var_28 = -0x28
var_24 = -0x24
timer  = -0xC

    PUSH    {LR}
    MOVS   R0, #0          ; timer
    SUB    SP, SP, #0x34
    BL     time
    STR    R0, [SP,#0x38+timer]
    MOV    R1, SP          ; tp
    ADD    R0, SP, #0x38+timer ; timer
    BL     localtime_r
    LDR    R1, =0x76C
    LDR    R0, [SP,#0x38+var_24]
    ADDS   R1, R0, R1
    ADR    R0, aYearD      ; "Year: %d\n"
    BL     __2printf
    LDR    R1, [SP,#0x38+var_28]
    ADR    R0, aMonthD     ; "Month: %d\n"
    BL     __2printf
    LDR    R1, [SP,#0x38+var_2C]
    ADR    R0, aDayD       ; "Day: %d\n"
    BL     __2printf
    LDR    R1, [SP,#0x38+var_30]
    ADR    R0, aHourD      ; "Hour: %d\n"
    BL     __2printf
    LDR    R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34]
    ADR    R0, aMinutesD   ; "Minutes: %d\n"
    BL     __2printf
    LDR    R1, [SP,#0x38+var_38]
    ADR    R0, aSecondsD   ; "Seconds: %d\n"
    BL     __2printf
    ADD    SP, SP, #0x34
    POP    {PC}

```

21.3.3 ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

IDA “get to know” tm structure (because IDA “knows” argument types of library functions like `localtime_r()`), so it shows here structure elements accesses and also names are assigned to them.

Listing 21.14: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

```

var_38 = -0x38
var_34 = -0x34

    PUSH {R7,LR}
    MOV  R7, SP
    SUB  SP, SP, #0x30
    MOVS R0, #0 ; time_t *
    BLX _time
    ADD  R1, SP, #0x38+var_34 ; struct tm *
    STR  R0, [SP,#0x38+var_38]
    MOV  R0, SP ; time_t *
    BLX _localtime_r
    LDR  R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_year]
    MOV  R0, 0xF44 ; "Year: %d\n"
    ADD  R0, PC ; char *
    ADDW R1, R1, #0x76C
    BLX _printf
    LDR  R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_mon]

```

```

MOV R0, 0xF3A ; "Month: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
BLX _printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_mday]
MOV R0, 0xF35 ; "Day: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
BLX _printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_hour]
MOV R0, 0xF2E ; "Hour: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
BLX _printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_min]
MOV R0, 0xF28 ; "Minutes: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
BLX _printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34]
MOV R0, 0xF25 ; "Seconds: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
BLX _printf
ADD SP, SP, #0x30
POP {R7,PC}

```

...

```

00000000 tm      struc ; (sizeof=0x2C, standard type)
00000000 tm_sec  DCD ?
00000004 tm_min  DCD ?
00000008 tm_hour DCD ?
0000000C tm_mday DCD ?
00000010 tm_mon  DCD ?
00000014 tm_year DCD ?
00000018 tm_wday DCD ?
0000001C tm_yday DCD ?
00000020 tm_isdst DCD ?
00000024 tm_gmtoff DCD ?
00000028 tm_zone DCD ? ; offset
0000002C tm      ends

```

21.4 Fields packing in structure

One important thing is fields packing in structures⁵.

Let's take a simple example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

struct s
{
    char a;
    int b;
    char c;
    int d;
};

void f(struct s s)
{
    printf ("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d\n", s.a, s.b, s.c, s.d);
};

int main()
{
    struct s tmp;
    tmp.a=1;
    tmp.b=2;
    tmp.c=3;
    tmp.d=4;
    f(tmp);
}

```

⁵See also: [Wikipedia: Data structure alignment](#)

};

As we see, we have two *char* fields (each is exactly one byte) and two more – *int* (each - 4 bytes).

21.4.1 x86

That's all compiling into:

Listing 21.15: MSVC 2012 /GS- /Ob0

```

1  _tmp$ = -16
2  _main PROC
3      push    ebp
4      mov     ebp, esp
5      sub     esp, 16
6      mov     BYTE PTR _tmp$[ebp], 1      ; set field a
7      mov     DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+4], 2  ; set field b
8      mov     BYTE PTR _tmp$[ebp+8], 3   ; set field c
9      mov     DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+12], 4 ; set field d
10     sub     esp, 16                    ; allocate place for temporary structure
11     mov     eax, esp
12     mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp]  ; copy our structure to the temporary one
13     mov     DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
14     mov     edx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+4]
15     mov     DWORD PTR [eax+4], edx
16     mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+8]
17     mov     DWORD PTR [eax+8], ecx
18     mov     edx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+12]
19     mov     DWORD PTR [eax+12], edx
20     call    _f
21     add     esp, 16
22     xor     eax, eax
23     mov     esp, ebp
24     pop     ebp
25     ret     0
26 _main ENDP
27
28 _s$ = 8 ; size = 16
29 ?f@@YAXUs@@@Z PROC ; f
30     push    ebp
31     mov     ebp, esp
32     mov     eax, DWORD PTR _s$[ebp+12]
33     push    eax
34     movsx  ecx, BYTE PTR _s$[ebp+8]
35     push    ecx
36     mov     edx, DWORD PTR _s$[ebp+4]
37     push    edx
38     movsx  eax, BYTE PTR _s$[ebp]
39     push    eax
40     push    OFFSET $SG3842
41     call    _printf
42     add     esp, 20
43     pop     ebp
44     ret     0
45 ?f@@YAXUs@@@Z ENDP ; f
46 _TEXT ENDS

```

By the way, we pass a structure as a whole, but in fact, as we can see, the structure is being copied to the temporary one (a place in stack is allocated in line 10 for it, and then all 4 fields, one by one, is copied in lines 12 ... 19), then its pointer is to be passed (or address). The structure is copied, because it's unknown, will the *f()* function modify structure or not. If it's so, then the structure inside of *main()* should remain as the same. We could use pointers in C/C++, and resulting code might be almost the same, but without copying.

As we can see, each field's address is aligned on a 4-bytes border. That's why each *char* occupies 4 bytes here (like *int*). Why? Thus it is easier for CPU to access memory at aligned addresses and to cache data from it.

However, it is not very economical in size sense.

Let's try to compile it with option (*/Zp1*) (*/Zp[n]* pack structures on *n*-byte boundary).

Listing 21.16: MSVC 2012 /GS- /Zp1

```

1  _main PROC
2      push    ebp

```

```

3   mov     ebp, esp
4   sub     esp, 12
5   mov     BYTE PTR _tmp$[ebp], 1      ; set field a
6   mov     DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+1], 2  ; set field b
7   mov     BYTE PTR _tmp$[ebp+5], 3   ; set field c
8   mov     DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+6], 4  ; set field d
9   sub     esp, 12                    ; allocate place for temporary structure
10  mov     eax, esp
11  mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp]   ; copy 10 bytes
12  mov     DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
13  mov     edx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+4]
14  mov     DWORD PTR [eax+4], edx
15  mov     cx, WORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+8]
16  mov     WORD PTR [eax+8], cx
17  call    _f
18  add     esp, 12
19  xor     eax, eax
20  mov     esp, ebp
21  pop     ebp
22  ret     0
23 _main   ENDP
24
25 _TEXT   SEGMENT
26 _s$ = 8 ; size = 10
27 ?f@@YAXUs@@@Z PROC      ; f
28   push  ebp
29   mov   ebp, esp
30   mov   eax, DWORD PTR _s$[ebp+6]
31   push  eax
32   movsx ecx, BYTE PTR _s$[ebp+5]
33   push  ecx
34   mov   edx, DWORD PTR _s$[ebp+1]
35   push  edx
36   movsx eax, BYTE PTR _s$[ebp]
37   push  eax
38   push  OFFSET $SG3842
39   call  _printf
40   add   esp, 20
41   pop  ebp
42   ret  0
43 ?f@@YAXUs@@@Z ENDP      ; f

```

Now the structure takes only 10 bytes and each *char* value takes 1 byte. What it give to us? Size economy. And as drawback –CPU will access these fields without full performance it could.

Structure is also copied in `main()`. Not by one-by-one field, but 10 bytes, using three pairs of `MOV`. Why not 4? Compiler decided that it's better to copy 10 bytes using 3 `MOV` pairs then to copy two 32-bit words and two bytes using 4 `MOV` pairs. By the way, such copy implementation using `MOV` instead of `memcpy()` function calling is widely used, because it's faster then to call `memcpy()` –if to consider short blocks, of course: [31.1.5](#).

As it can be easily guessed, if the structure is used in many source and object files, all these must be compiled with the same convention about structures packing.

Aside from `MSVC /Zp` option which set how to align each structure field, here is also `#pragma pack` compiler option, it can be defined right in source code. It is available in both `MSVC`⁶ and `GCC`⁷.

Let's back to the `SYSTEMTIME` structure consisting in 16-bit fields. How our compiler know to pack them on 1-byte alignment boundary?

`WinNT.h` file has this:

Listing 21.17: `WinNT.h`

```
#include "pshpack1.h"
```

And this:

Listing 21.18: `WinNT.h`

```
#include "pshpack4.h" // 4 byte packing is the default
```

The file `PshPack1.h` looks like:

⁶MSDN: [Working with Packing Structures](#)

⁷Structure-Packing Pragmas

Listing 21.19: PshPack1.h

```
#if ! (defined(lint) || defined(RC_INVOKED))
#if ( _MSC_VER >= 800 && !defined(_M_I86)) || defined(_PUSHPOP_SUPPORTED)
#pragma warning(disable:4103)
#endif
#if !(defined( MIDL_PASS )) || defined( __midl )
#pragma pack(push,1)
#else
#pragma pack(1)
#endif
#else
#pragma pack(1)
#endif
#endif /* ! (defined(lint) || defined(RC_INVOKED)) */
```

That's how compiler will pack structures defined after `#pragma pack`.

21.4.2 x86 + OllyDbg + fields are packed by default

Let's try our example (where fields are aligned by default (4 bytes)) in OllyDbg:

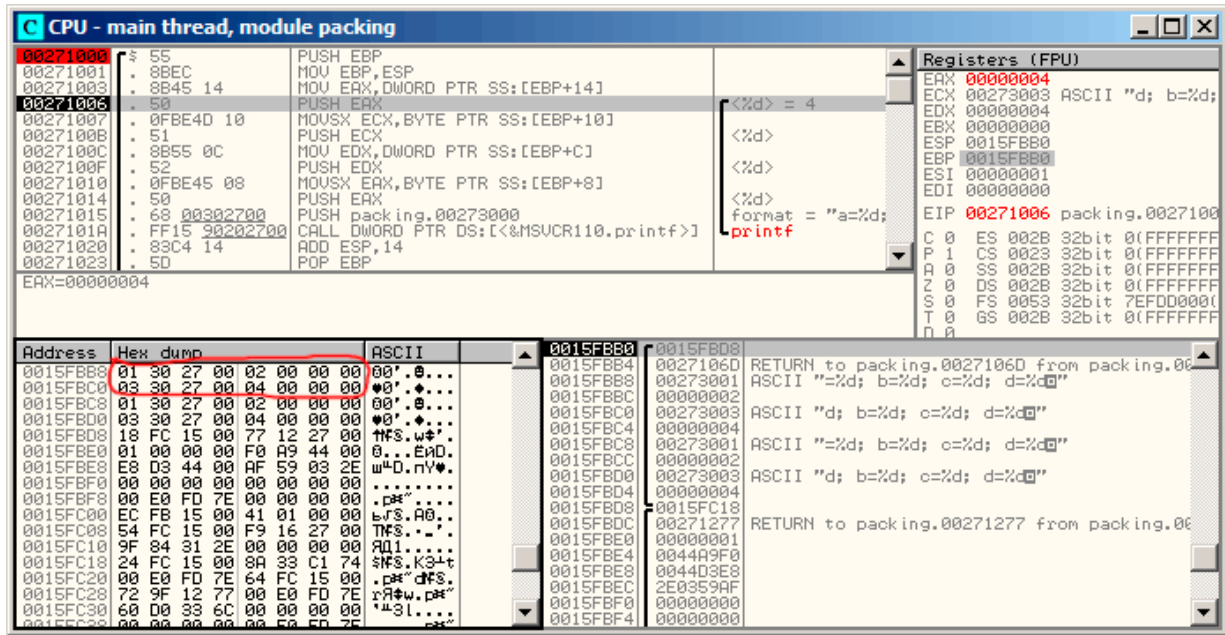


Figure 21.3: OllyDbg: Before printf() execution

We see our 4 fields in data window. But where from random bytes (0x30, 0x27) aside of first (a) and third (c) fields are came? By looking at our listing 21.15, we can see that first and third field has `char` type, therefore, only one byte is written, 1 and 3 respectively (lines 6 and 8). Other 3 bytes of 32-bit words are not being modified in memory! Hence, random garbage is there. This garbage influence `printf()` output in no way, because values for it are prepared using `MOVSX` instruction, which takes bytes, but not words: listing.21.15 (lines 34 and 38).

By the way, `MOVSX` (sign-extending) instruction is used here, because `char` type is signed by default in MSVC and GCC. If the type `unsigned char` or `uint8_t` be here, `MOVZX` instruction would be used instead.

21.4.3 x86 + OllyDbg + fields aligning by 1 byte boundary

Things are much clearer here: 4 fields occupies 10 bytes and values are stored side-by-side

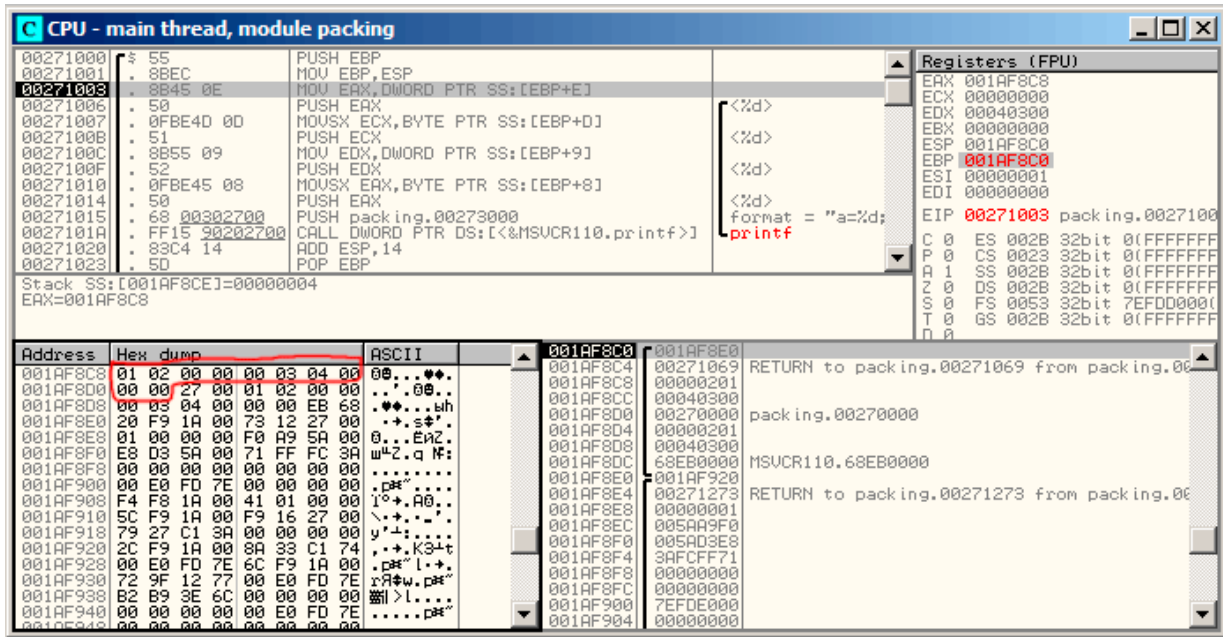


Figure 21.4: OllyDbg: Before printf() execution

21.4.4 ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

Listing 21.20: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```
.text:0000003E      exit ; CODE XREF: f+16
.text:0000003E 05 B0          ADD     SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000040 00 BD          POP     {PC}

.text:00000280      f
.text:00000280
.text:00000280      var_18 = -0x18
.text:00000280      a      = -0x14
.text:00000280      b      = -0x10
.text:00000280      c      = -0xC
.text:00000280      d      = -8
.text:00000280 0F B5          PUSH   {R0-R3,LR}
.text:00000282 81 B0          SUB    SP, SP, #4
.text:00000284 04 98          LDR   R0, [SP,#16] ; d
.text:00000286 02 9A          LDR   R2, [SP,#8] ; b
.text:00000288 00 90          STR   R0, [SP]
.text:0000028A 68 46          MOV   R0, SP
.text:0000028C 03 7B          LDRB  R3, [R0,#12] ; c
.text:0000028E 01 79          LDRB  R1, [R0,#4] ; a
.text:00000290 59 A0          ADR   R0, aADBDCDDD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d\n"
.text:00000292 05 F0 AD FF    BL    __2printf
.text:00000296 D2 E6          B     exit
```

As we may recall, here a structure passed instead of pointer to structure, and since first 4 function arguments in ARM are passed via registers, so then structure fields are passed via R0-R3.

LDRB loads one byte from memory and extending it to 32-bit, taking into account its sign. This is akin to MOVSWX instruction in x86. Here it is used for loading fields *a* and *c* from structure.

One more thing we spot easily, instead of function epilogue, here is jump to another function's epilogue! Indeed, that was quite different function, not related in any way to our function, however, it has exactly the same epilogue (probably because, it hold 5 local variables too (5 * 4 = 0x14)). Also it is located nearby (take a look on addresses). Indeed, there is no difference, which epilogue to execute, if it works just as we need. Apparently, Keil decides to reuse a part of another function by a reason of economy. Epilogue takes 4 bytes while jump – only 2.

21.4.5 ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

Listing 21.21: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (thumb-2 mode)

```

var_C = -0xC

    PUSH    {R7,LR}
    MOV     R7, SP
    SUB     SP, SP, #4
    MOV     R9, R1 ; b
    MOV     R1, R0 ; a
    MOVW    R0, #0xF10 ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d\n"
    SXTB    R1, R1 ; prepare a
    MOVT.W  R0, #0
    STR     R3, [SP,#0xC+var_C] ; place d to stack for printf()
    ADD     R0, PC ; format-string
    SXTB    R3, R2 ; prepare c
    MOV     R2, R9 ; b
    BLX    _printf
    ADD     SP, SP, #4
    POP     {R7,PC}

```

SXTB (*Signed Extend Byte*) is analogous to MOVSX in x86. All the rest –just the same.

21.5 Nested structures

Now what about situations when one structure is defined inside of another structure?

```

#include <stdio.h>

struct inner_struct
{
    int a;
    int b;
};

struct outer_struct
{
    char a;
    int b;
    struct inner_struct c;
    char d;
    int e;
};

void f(struct outer_struct s)
{
    printf ("a=%d; b=%d; c.a=%d; c.b=%d; d=%d; e=%d\n",
           s.a, s.b, s.c.a, s.c.b, s.d, s.e);
};

int main()
{
    struct outer_struct s;
    s.a=1;
    s.b=2;
    s.c.a=100;
    s.c.b=101;
    s.d=3;
    s.e=4;
    f(s);
};

```

... in this case, both inner_struct fields will be placed between a,b and d,e fields of outer_struct. Let's compile (MSVC 2010):

Listing 21.22: Optimizing MSVC 2010 /Ob0

```
$SG2802 DB 'a=%d; b=%d; c.a=%d; c.b=%d; d=%d; e=%d', 0aH, 00H
```

```

_TEXT    SEGMENT
_s$ = 8
_f      PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+16]
    movsx   ecx, BYTE PTR _s$[esp+12]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+8]
    push    eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+8]
    push    ecx
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+8]
    push    edx
    movsx   edx, BYTE PTR _s$[esp+8]
    push    eax
    push    ecx
    push    edx
    push    OFFSET $SG2802 ; 'a=%d; b=%d; c.a=%d; c.b=%d; d=%d; e=%d'
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 28
    ret     0
_f      ENDP

_s$ = -24
_main   PROC
    sub     esp, 24
    push    ebx
    push    esi
    push    edi
    mov     ecx, 2
    sub     esp, 24
    mov     eax, esp
    mov     BYTE PTR _s$[esp+60], 1
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+60]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax], ebx
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+4], ecx
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+98]
    lea    esi, DWORD PTR [ecx+99]
    lea    edi, DWORD PTR [ecx+2]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+8], edx
    mov     BYTE PTR _s$[esp+76], 3
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+76]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+12], esi
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+16], ecx
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+20], edi
    call   _f
    add     esp, 24
    pop     edi
    pop     esi
    xor     eax, eax
    pop     ebx
    add     esp, 24
    ret     0
_main   ENDP

```

One curious point here is that by looking onto this assembly code, we do not even see that another structure was used inside of it! Thus, we would say, nested structures are finally unfolds into *linear* or *one-dimensional* structure.

Of course, if to replace `struct inner_struct c;` declaration to `struct inner_struct *c;` (thus making a pointer here) situation will be quite different.

21.5.1 OllyDbg

Let's load the example into OllyDbg and take a look on `outer_struct` in memory:

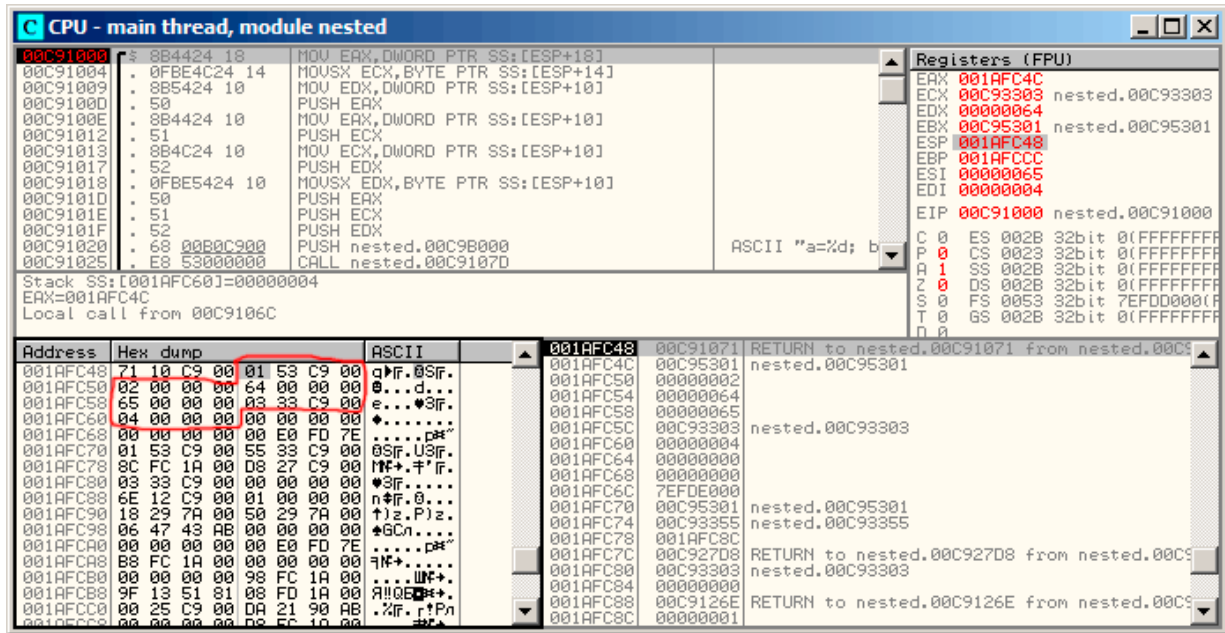


Figure 21.5: OllyDbg: Before `printf()` execution

That's how values are located in memory:

- (`outer_struct.a`) byte 1 + 3 bytes of random garbage;
- (`outer_struct.b`) 32-bit word 2;
- (`inner_struct.a`) 32-bit word 0x64 (100);
- (`inner_struct.b`) 32-bit word 0x65 (101);
- (`outer_struct.d`) byte 3 + 3 bytes of random garbage;
- (`outer_struct.e`) 32-bit word 4.

21.6 Bit fields in structure

21.6.1 CPUID example

C/C++ language allow to define exact number of bits for each structure fields. It is very useful if one needs to save memory space. For example, one bit is enough for variable of `bool` type. But of course, it is not rational if speed is important.

Let's consider `CPUID`⁸ instruction example. This instruction returning information about current CPU and its features.

If the `EAX` is set to 1 before instruction execution, `CPUID` will return this information packed into the `EAX` register:

3:0 (4 bits)	Stepping
7:4 (4 bits)	Model
11:8 (4 bits)	Family
13:12 (2 bits)	Processor Type
19:16 (4 bits)	Extended Model
27:20 (8 bits)	Extended Family

MSVC 2010 has `CPUID` macro, but GCC 4.4.1 –has not. So let's make this function by yourself for GCC with the help of its built-in assembler⁹.

```
#include <stdio.h>

#ifdef __GNUC__
static inline void cpuid(int code, int *a, int *b, int *c, int *d) {
    asm volatile("cpuid":"=a"(*a),"=b"(*b),"=c"(*c),"=d"(*d):"a"(code));
}
```

⁸<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CPUID>

⁹More about internal GCC assembler

```

}
#endif

#ifdef _MSC_VER
#include <intrin.h>
#endif

struct CPUID_1_EAX
{
    unsigned int stepping:4;
    unsigned int model:4;
    unsigned int family_id:4;
    unsigned int processor_type:2;
    unsigned int reserved1:2;
    unsigned int extended_model_id:4;
    unsigned int extended_family_id:8;
    unsigned int reserved2:4;
};

int main()
{
    struct CPUID_1_EAX *tmp;
    int b[4];

#ifdef _MSC_VER
    __cpuid(b,1);
#endif

#ifdef __GNUC__
    cpuid (1, &b[0], &b[1], &b[2], &b[3]);
#endif

    tmp=(struct CPUID_1_EAX *)&b[0];

    printf ("stepping=%d\n", tmp->stepping);
    printf ("model=%d\n", tmp->model);
    printf ("family_id=%d\n", tmp->family_id);
    printf ("processor_type=%d\n", tmp->processor_type);
    printf ("extended_model_id=%d\n", tmp->extended_model_id);
    printf ("extended_family_id=%d\n", tmp->extended_family_id);

    return 0;
};

```

After CPUID will fill EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX, these registers will be reflected in the `b[]` array. Then, we have a pointer to the `CPUID_1_EAX` structure and we point it to the value in the EAX from `b[]` array.

In other words, we treat 32-bit *int* value as a structure. Then we read from the structure.

MSVC

Let's compile it in MSVC 2008 with `/Ox` option:

Listing 21.23: Optimizing MSVC 2008

```

_b$ = -16 ; size = 16
_main PROC
    sub     esp, 16
    push   ebx

    xor     ecx, ecx
    mov     eax, 1
    cpuid
    push   esi
    lea    esi, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+24]
    mov     DWORD PTR [esi], eax
    mov     DWORD PTR [esi+4], ebx
    mov     DWORD PTR [esi+8], ecx
    mov     DWORD PTR [esi+12], edx

    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+24]

```

```

mov    eax, esi
and    eax, 15
push   eax
push   OFFSET $SG15435 ; 'stepping=%d', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf

mov    ecx, esi
shr    ecx, 4
and    ecx, 15
push   ecx
push   OFFSET $SG15436 ; 'model=%d', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf

mov    edx, esi
shr    edx, 8
and    edx, 15
push   edx
push   OFFSET $SG15437 ; 'family_id=%d', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf

mov    eax, esi
shr    eax, 12
and    eax, 3
push   eax
push   OFFSET $SG15438 ; 'processor_type=%d', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf

mov    ecx, esi
shr    ecx, 16
and    ecx, 15
push   ecx
push   OFFSET $SG15439 ; 'extended_model_id=%d', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf

shr    esi, 20
and    esi, 255
push   esi
push   OFFSET $SG15440 ; 'extended_family_id=%d', 0aH, 00H
call   _printf
add    esp, 48
pop    esi

xor    eax, eax
pop    ebx

add    esp, 16
ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

SHR instruction shifting value in the EAX register by number of bits must be *skipped*, e.g., we ignore some bits *at right*. AND instruction clears bits not needed *at left*, or, in other words, leaves only those bits in the EAX register we need now.

MSVC + OllyDbg

Let's load our example into OllyDbg and see, which values was set in EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX after execution of CPUID:

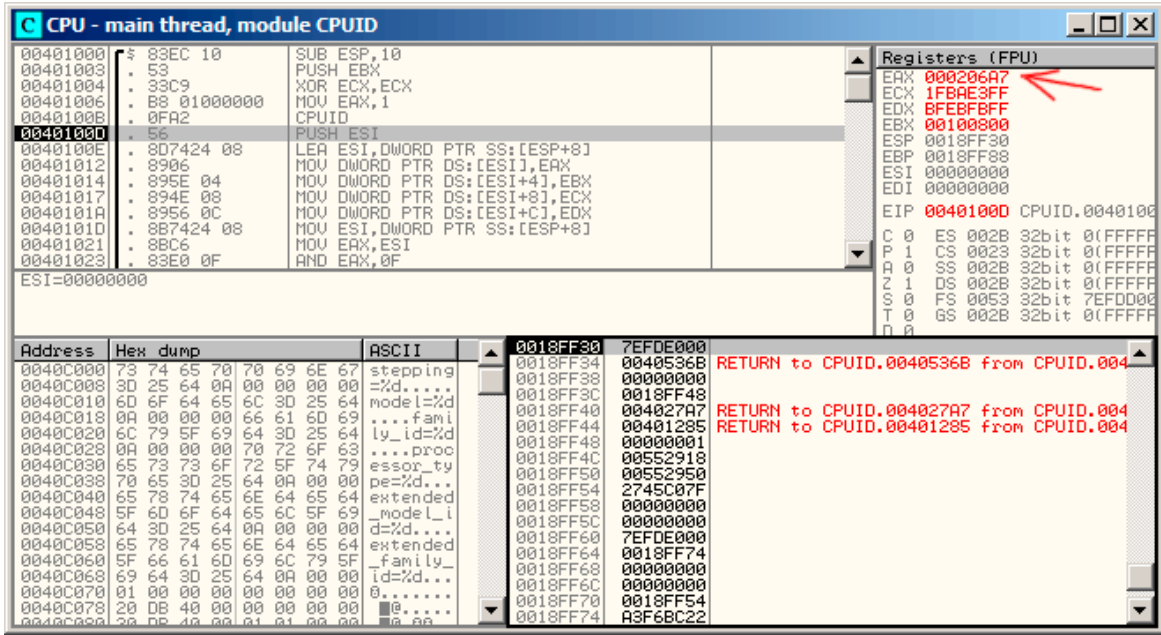


Figure 21.6: OllyDbg: After CPUID execution

EAX has 0x000206A7 (my CPU is Intel Xeon E3-1220).

This is 0000000000000000100000011010100111 in binary form.

Here is how bits are distributed by fields:

field	in binary form	in decimal form
reserved2	0000	0
extended_family_id	00000000	0
extended_model_id	0010	2
reserved1	00	0
processor_id	00	0
family_id	0110	6
model	1010	10
stepping	0111	7

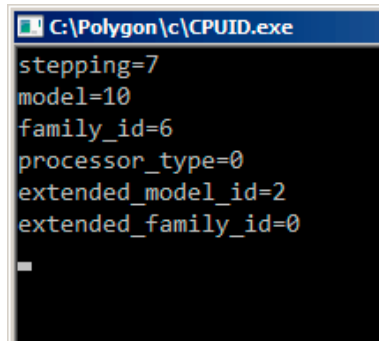


Figure 21.7: OllyDbg: Result

GCC

Let's try GCC 4.4.1 with -O3 option.

Listing 21.24: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```
main      proc near ; DATA XREF: _start+17
push     ebp
mov      ebp, esp
and      esp, 0FFFFFF0h
```



```

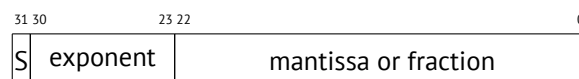
push    esi
mov     esi, 1
push    ebx
mov     eax, esi
sub     esp, 18h
cpuid
mov     esi, eax
and     eax, 0Fh
mov     [esp+8], eax
mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aSteppingD ; "stepping=%d\n"
mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
call    __printf_chk
mov     eax, esi
shr     eax, 4
and     eax, 0Fh
mov     [esp+8], eax
mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aModelD ; "model=%d\n"
mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
call    __printf_chk
mov     eax, esi
shr     eax, 8
and     eax, 0Fh
mov     [esp+8], eax
mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aFamily_idD ; "family_id=%d\n"
mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
call    __printf_chk
mov     eax, esi
shr     eax, 0Ch
and     eax, 3
mov     [esp+8], eax
mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aProcessor_type ; "processor_type=%d\n"
mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
call    __printf_chk
mov     eax, esi
shr     eax, 10h
shr     esi, 14h
and     eax, 0Fh
and     esi, 0FFh
mov     [esp+8], eax
mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aExtended_model ; "extended_model_id=%d\n"
mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
call    __printf_chk
mov     [esp+8], esi
mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset unk_80486D0
mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
call    __printf_chk
add     esp, 18h
xor     eax, eax
pop     ebx
pop     esi
mov     esp, ebp
pop     ebp
retn
main    endp

```

Almost the same. The only thing worth noting is the GCC somehow united calculation of `extended_model_id` and `extended_family_id` into one block, instead of calculating them separately, before corresponding each `printf()` call.

21.6.2 Working with the float type as with a structure

As it was already noted in section about FPU (17), both *float* and *double* types consisted of *sign*, *significand* (or *fraction*) and *exponent*. But will we able to work with these fields directly? Let's try with *float*.



(S—sign)

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <assert.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <memory.h>

struct float_as_struct
{
    unsigned int fraction : 23; // fractional part
    unsigned int exponent : 8; // exponent + 0x3FF
    unsigned int sign : 1;     // sign bit
};

float f(float _in)
{
    float f=_in;
    struct float_as_struct t;

    assert (sizeof (struct float_as_struct) == sizeof (float));

    memcpy (&t, &f, sizeof (float));

    t.sign=1; // set negative sign
    t.exponent=t.exponent+2; // multiply d by 2^n (n here is 2)

    memcpy (&f, &t, sizeof (float));

    return f;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%f\n", f(1.234));
};

```

`float_as_struct` structure occupies as much space in memory as *float*, i.e., 4 bytes or 32 bits.

Now we setting negative sign in input value and also, by adding 2 to exponent, we thereby multiplying the whole number by 2^2 , i.e., by 4.

Let's compile in MSVC 2008 without optimization turned on:

Listing 21.25: Non-optimizing MSVC 2008

```

_t$ = -8 ; size = 4
_f$ = -4 ; size = 4
__in$ = 8 ; size = 4
?f@YAMM@Z PROC ; f
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 8

    fld     DWORD PTR __in$[ebp]
    fstp   DWORD PTR _f$[ebp]

    push    4
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _f$[ebp]
    push    eax
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    call   _memcpy
    add     esp, 12

    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
    or     edx, -2147483648 ; 80000000H - set minus sign
    mov     DWORD PTR _t$[ebp], edx

    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
    shr     eax, 23 ; 00000017H - drop significand
    and     eax, 255 ; 000000ffH - leave here only exponent
    add     eax, 2 ; add 2 to it
    and     eax, 255 ; 000000ffH
    shl     eax, 23 ; 00000017H - shift result to place of bits 30:23

```

```

mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
and     ecx, -2139095041 ; 807ffffFH - drop exponent
or      ecx, eax        ; add original value without exponent with new calculated exponent
mov     DWORD PTR _t$[ebp], ecx

push    4
lea     edx, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
push    edx
lea     eax, DWORD PTR _f$[ebp]
push    eax
call    _memcpy
add     esp, 12

fld     DWORD PTR _f$[ebp]

mov     esp, ebp
pop     ebp
ret     0
?f@YAMM@Z ENDP ; f

```

Redundant for a bit. If it is compiled with /Ox flag there is no memcpy() call, f variable is used directly. But it is easier to understand it all by looking at unoptimized version.

What GCC 4.4.1 with -O3 will do?

Listing 21.26: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```

; f(float)
public _Z1ff
_Z1ff proc near

var_4 = dword ptr -4
arg_0 = dword ptr 8

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 4
    mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
    or      eax, 80000000h ; set minus sign
    mov     edx, eax
    and     eax, 807FFFFFH ; leave only significand and exponent in EAX
    shr     edx, 23        ; prepare exponent
    add     edx, 2         ; add 2
    movzx   edx, dl        ; clear all bits except 7:0 in EAX
    shl     edx, 23        ; shift new calculated exponent to its place
    or      eax, edx       ; add new exponent and original value without exponent
    mov     [ebp+var_4], eax
    fld     [ebp+var_4]
    leave
    retn

_Z1ff endp

public main
main proc near
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and     esp, 0FFFFFF0h
    sub     esp, 10h
    fld     ds:dword_8048614 ; -4.936
    fstp   qword ptr [esp+8]
    mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset asc_8048610 ; "%f\n"
    mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
    call    ___printf_chk
    xor     eax, eax
    leave
    retn
main endp

```

The f() function is almost understandable. However, what is interesting, GCC was able to calculate f(1.234) result during compilation stage despite all this hodge-podge with structure fields and prepared this argument to the printf() as precalculated at compile time!

21.7 Exercises

21.7.1 Exercise #1

http://beginners.re/exercises/per_chapter/struct_exercise_Linux86.tar¹⁰:

This Linux x86 program opens a file and prints some number. What this number is?

Answer: [F.1.12](#).

21.7.2 Exercise #2

This function takes some structure on input and do something. Try to reverse engineer structure field types. Function contents may be ignored so far.

Listing 21.27: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

$SG2802 DB      '%f', 0aH, 00H
$SG2803 DB      '%c, %d', 0aH, 00H
$SG2805 DB      'error #2', 0aH, 00H
$SG2807 DB      'error #1', 0aH, 00H

__real@405ec00000000000 DQ 0405ec0000000000r    ; 123
__real@407bc00000000000 DQ 0407bc0000000000r    ; 444

_s$ = 8
_f      PROC
        push     esi
        mov     esi, DWORD PTR _s$[esp]
        cmp     DWORD PTR [esi], 1000
        jle    SHORT $LN4@f
        cmp     DWORD PTR [esi+4], 10
        jbe    SHORT $LN3@f
        fld     DWORD PTR [esi+8]
        sub     esp, 8
        fmul    QWORD PTR __real@407bc00000000000
        fld     QWORD PTR [esi+16]
        fmul    QWORD PTR __real@405ec00000000000
        faddp   ST(1), ST(0)
        fstp    QWORD PTR [esp]
        push    OFFSET $SG2802 ; '%f'
        call    _printf
        movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [esi+25]
        movsx   ecx, BYTE PTR [esi+24]
        push    eax
        push    ecx
        push    OFFSET $SG2803 ; '%c, %d'
        call    _printf
        add     esp, 24
        pop     esi
        ret     0
$LN3@f:
        pop     esi
        mov     DWORD PTR _s$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2805 ; 'error #2'
        jmp     _printf
$LN4@f:
        pop     esi
        mov     DWORD PTR _s$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2807 ; 'error #1'
        jmp     _printf
_f      ENDP

```

Listing 21.28: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
    PUSH    {r4-r6,lr}
    MOV     r4,r0
    LDR     r0,[r0,#0]
    CMP     r0,#0x3e8
    ADRL   r0,|L0.140|
    BLE    |L0.132|

```

¹⁰GCC 4.8.1 -03

```

LDR    r0,[r4,#4]
CMP    r0,#0xa
ADRLS  r0,|L0.152|
BLS    |L0.132|
ADD    r0,r4,#0x10
LDM    r0,{r0,r1}
LDR    r3,|L0.164|
MOV    r2,#0
BL     __aeabi_dmul
MOV    r5,r0
MOV    r6,r1
LDR    r0,[r4,#8]
LDR    r1,|L0.168|
BL     __aeabi_fm1
BL     __aeabi_f2d
MOV    r2,r5
MOV    r3,r6
BL     __aeabi_dadd
MOV    r2,r0
MOV    r3,r1
ADR    r0,|L0.172|
BL     __2printf
LDRB  r2,[r4,#0x19]
LDRB  r1,[r4,#0x18]
POP    {r4-r6,lr}
ADR    r0,|L0.176|
B      __2printf
|L0.132|
POP    {r4-r6,lr}
B      __2printf
ENDP

|L0.140|
DCB    "error #1\n",0
DCB    0
DCB    0

|L0.152|
DCB    "error #2\n",0
DCB    0
DCB    0

|L0.164|
DCD    0x405ec000

|L0.168|
DCD    0x43de0000

|L0.172|
DCB    "%f\n",0

|L0.176|
DCB    "%c, %d\n",0

```

Listing 21.29: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

f PROC
PUSH   {r4-r6,lr}
MOV    r4,r0
LDR    r0,[r0,#0]
CMP    r0,#0x3e8
ADRLE  r0,|L0.140|
BLE    |L0.132|
LDR    r0,[r4,#4]
CMP    r0,#0xa
ADRLS  r0,|L0.152|
BLS    |L0.132|
ADD    r0,r4,#0x10
LDM    r0,{r0,r1}
LDR    r3,|L0.164|
MOV    r2,#0
BL     __aeabi_dmul
MOV    r5,r0
MOV    r6,r1
LDR    r0,[r4,#8]

```

```

LDR    r1,|L0.168|
BL     __aeabi_fmul
BL     __aeabi_f2d
MOV    r2,r5
MOV    r3,r6
BL     __aeabi_dadd
MOV    r2,r0
MOV    r3,r1
ADR    r0,|L0.172|
BL     __2printf
LDRB   r2,[r4,#0x19]
LDRB   r1,[r4,#0x18]
POP    {r4-r6,lr}
ADR    r0,|L0.176|
B      __2printf
|L0.132|
POP    {r4-r6,lr}
B      __2printf
ENDP

|L0.140|
DCB    "error #1\n",0
DCB    0
DCB    0

|L0.152|
DCB    "error #2\n",0
DCB    0
DCB    0

|L0.164|
DCD    0x405ec000

|L0.168|
DCD    0x43de0000

|L0.172|
DCB    "%f\n",0

|L0.176|
DCB    "%c, %d\n",0

```

Listing 21.30: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```

f:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
    add    x29, sp, 0
    ldr    w1, [x0]
    str    x19, [sp,16]
    cmp    w1, 1000
    ble    .L2
    ldr    w1, [x0,4]
    cmp    w1, 10
    bls    .L3
    ldr    s1, [x0,8]
    mov    x19, x0
    ldr    s0, .LC1
    adrp   x0, .LC0
    ldr    d2, [x19,16]
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC0
    fmul   s1, s1, s0
    ldr    d0, .LC2
    fmul   d0, d2, d0
    fcvt   d1, s1
    fadd   d0, d1, d0
    bl     printf
    ldrb   w1, [x19,24]
    adrp   x0, .LC3
    ldrb   w2, [x19,25]
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:LC3
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
    b      printf
.L3:
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]

```

```
    adrp    x0, .LC4
    ldp     x29, x30, [sp], 32
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC4
    b       puts
.L2:
    ldr     x19, [sp,16]
    adrp    x0, .LC5
    ldp     x29, x30, [sp], 32
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC5
    b       puts
    .size   f, .-f
.LC1:
    .word   1138622464
.LC2:
    .word   0
    .word   1079951360
.LC0:
    .string "%f\n"
.LC3:
    .string "%c, %d\n"
.LC4:
    .string "error #2"
.LC5:
    .string "error #1"
```

Answer: [F.1.12](#).

Chapter 22

Unions

22.1 Pseudo-random number generator example

If we need float random numbers from 0 to 1, the most simplest thing is to use PRNG¹ like Mersenne twister. It produces random 32-bit values in DWORD form. Then we can transform this value to *float* and then dividing it by RAND_MAX (0xFFFFFFFF in our case) –value we got will be in 0..1 interval.

But as we know, division operation is slow. Also, we would like to issue as small number of FPU operations as possible. Will it be possible to get rid of division?

Let's recall what float number consisted of: sign bit, significand bits and exponent bits. We need just to store random bits to all significand bits for getting random float number!

Exponent cannot be zero (number is denormalized in this case), so we will store 01111111 to exponent –this means exponent is 1. Then fill significand with random bits, set sign bit to 0 (which means positive number) and voilà. Generated numbers will be in 1 to 2 interval, so we also must subtract 1 from it.

Very simple linear congruential random numbers generator is used in my example², produces 32-bit numbers. The PRNG initializing by current time in UNIX-style.

Then, *float* type represented as *union* –it is the C/C++ construction enabling us to interpret piece of memory as differently typed. In our case, we are able to create a variable of union type and then access to it as it is *float* or as it is *uint32_t*. It can be said, it is just a hack. A dirty one.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <time.h>

union uint32_t_float
{
    uint32_t i;
    float f;
};

// from the Numerical Recipes book
const uint32_t RNG_a=1664525;
const uint32_t RNG_c=1013904223;

int main()
{
    uint32_t_float tmp;

    uint32_t RNG_state=time(NULL); // initial seed
    for (int i=0; i<100; i++)
    {
        RNG_state=RNG_state*RNG_a+RNG_c;
        tmp.i=RNG_state & 0x007fffff | 0x3F800000;
        float x=tmp.f-1;
        printf ("%f\n", x);
    };
    return 0;
};
```

Listing 22.1: Optimizing MSVC 2010

¹Pseudorandom number generator

²idea was taken from: <http://goo.gl/KiVQjZ>


```

$SG4232    DB    '%f', 0aH, 00H

__real@3ff0000000000000 DQ 03ff000000000000r    ; 1

tv140 = -4                ; size = 4
_tmp$ = -4                ; size = 4
_main      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and     esp, -64        ; ffffffff0H
    sub     esp, 56         ; 00000038H
    push    esi
    push    edi
    push    0
    call   __time64
    add     esp, 4
    mov     esi, eax
    mov     edi, 100        ; 00000064H
$LN3@main:

; let's generate random 32-bit number

    imul   esi, 1664525     ; 0019660dH
    add    esi, 1013904223  ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov    eax, esi

; leave bits for significand only

    and    eax, 8388607     ; 007ffffffH

; set exponent to 1

    or     eax, 1065353216  ; 3f800000H

; store this value as int

    mov    DWORD PTR _tmp$[esp+64], eax
    sub    esp, 8

; load this value as float

    fld    DWORD PTR _tmp$[esp+72]

; subtract one from it

    fsub   QWORD PTR __real@3ff0000000000000
    fstp   DWORD PTR tv140[esp+72]
    fld    DWORD PTR tv140[esp+72]
    fstp   QWORD PTR [esp]
    push   OFFSET $SG4232
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 12          ; 0000000cH
    dec    edi
    jne    SHORT $LN3@main
    pop    edi
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    esi
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main     ENDP
_TEXT    ENDS
END

```

GCC produces very similar code.

22.2 Calculating machine epsilon

22.2.1 x86

Machine epsilon is a smallest possible granule FPU can work with. The more bits allocated for floating point number, the smaller machine epsilon. It is $2^{-23} = 1.19e - 07$ for *float* and $2^{-52} = 2.22e - 16$ for *double*.

It's interesting, how easy it's possible to calculate machine epsilon:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

union uint_float
{
    uint32_t i;
    float f;
};

float calculate_machine_epsilon(float start)
{
    union uint_float v;
    v.f=start;
    v.i++;
    return v.f-start;
}

void main()
{
    printf ("%g\n", calculate_machine_epsilon(1.234567));
};
```

What we do here is just treating fraction part of IEEE 754 number as integer and adding 1 to it. Resulting number will be *starting_value + machine_epsilon*, so we just need to subtract starting value (using floating point arithmetics) to measure, what number one bit reflects in the single precision (*float*).

union serves here as a way to access IEEE 754 number as a regular integer. Adding 1 to it is in fact adds 1 to *fraction* part of number, however, needless to say, overflow is possible, which will add yet another bit to exponent part.

Listing 22.2: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
tv130 = 8
_v$ = 8
_start$ = 8
_calculate_machine_epsilon PROC
    fld     DWORD PTR _start$[esp-4]
    fst     DWORD PTR _v$[esp-4]      ; this instruction is redundant
    inc     DWORD PTR _v$[esp-4]
    fsubr   DWORD PTR _v$[esp-4]
    fstp    DWORD PTR tv130[esp-4]   ; \ this instruction pair is also redundant
    fld     DWORD PTR tv130[esp-4]   ; /
    ret     0
_calculate_machine_epsilon ENDP
```

Second FST instruction is redundant: there are no need to store input value to the same place (compiler decided to allocate *v* variable at the same point of local stack as input argument).

Then it is incremented with INC, as it is usual integer variable. Then it is loaded into FPU as it is 32-bit IEEE 754 number, FSUBR do the job and resulting value is in the ST0.

Two last FSTP/FLD instruction pair is redundant, but compiler didn't optimized them.

22.2.2 ARM64

Let's extend our example to 64-bit:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

typedef union
{
    uint64_t i;
    double d;
} uint_double;
```

```
double calculate_machine_epsilon(double start)
{
    uint_double v;
    v.d=start;
    v.i++;
    return v.d-start;
}

void main()
{
    printf ("%g\n", calculate_machine_epsilon(1.234567));
};
```

ARM64 has no instruction which can add a number to FPU D-register, so input value (came in D0) is first copied into GPR, incremented, copied to FPU register D1, then subtraction occurred.

Listing 22.3: Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

```
calculate_machine_epsilon:
    fmov    x0, d0        ; load input double value into X0
    add    x0, x0, 1     ; X0++
    fmov    d1, x0       ; move it to FPU register
    fsub   d0, d1, d0    ; subtract
    ret
```

See also this example compiled for x64 with SIMD instructions: [27.4](#).

22.2.3 Conclusion

It's hard to say, whether someone will need this trickery in real-world code, but as I write many times in this book, this example is serving well for explaining IEEE 754 format and union feature of C/C++.

Chapter 23

Pointers to functions

Pointer to function, as any other pointer, is just an address of function beginning in its code segment.

It is often used in callbacks ¹.

Well-known examples are:

- `qsort()`², `atexit()`³ from the standard C library;
- *NIX OS signals⁴;
- thread starting: `CreateThread()` (win32), `pthread_create()` (POSIX);
- a lot of win32 functions, e.g. `EnumChildWindows()`⁵.
- a lot of places in Linux kernel, for example, filesystem driver functions are called via callbacks: <http://lxr.free-electrons.com/source/include/linux/fs.h?v=3.14#L1525>
- GCC plugin functions are also called via callbacks: <https://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/gccint/Plugin-API.html#Plugin-API>
- One example of function pointers is a table in “dwm” Linux window manager, consisting of shortcuts. Each shortcut has corresponding function to call if the specific key has been pressed: <https://github.com/cdown/dwm/blob/master/config.def.h#L117>
As one may see, such table is much more easier to handle than large `switch()` statement.

So, `qsort()` function is a C/C++ standard library quicksort implementation. The function is able to sort anything, any types of data, as long as you have a function for these two elements comparison, and `qsort()` is able to call it.

The comparison function can be defined as:

```
int (*compare)(const void *, const void *)
```

Let's use slightly modified example I found [here](#):

```
1 /* ex3 Sorting ints with qsort */
2
3 #include <stdio.h>
4 #include <stdlib.h>
5
6 int comp(const void * _a, const void * _b)
7 {
8     const int *a=(const int *)_a;
9     const int *b=(const int *)_b;
10
11     if (*a==*b)
12         return 0;
13     else
14         if (*a < *b)
15             return -1;
16         else
17             return 1;
18 }
19
```

¹[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Callback_\(computer_science\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Callback_(computer_science))

²[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Qsort_\(C_standard_library\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Qsort_(C_standard_library))

³<http://www.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/009695399/functions/atexit.html>

⁴<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Signal.h>

⁵[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms633494\(VS.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms633494(VS.85).aspx)

```

20 int main(int argc, char* argv[])
21 {
22     int numbers[10]={1892,45,200,-98,4087,5,-12345,1087,88,-100000};
23     int i;
24
25     /* Sort the array */
26     qsort(numbers,10,sizeof(int),comp) ;
27     for (i=0;i<9;i++)
28         printf("Number = %d\n",numbers[ i ] ) ;
29     return 0;
30 }

```

23.1 MSVC

Let's compile it in MSVC 2010 (I omitted some parts for the sake of brevity) with `/Ox` option:

Listing 23.1: Optimizing MSVC 2010: `/GS- /MD`

```

__a$ = 8 ; size = 4
__b$ = 12 ; size = 4
_comp PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR __a$[esp-4]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __b$[esp-4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [eax]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    cmp     eax, ecx
    jne     SHORT $LN4@comp
    xor     eax, eax
    ret     0
$LN4@comp:
    xor     edx, edx
    cmp     eax, ecx
    setge  dl
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [edx+edx-1]
    ret     0
_comp ENDP

_numbers$ = -40 ; size = 40
_argc$ = 8 ; size = 4
_argv$ = 12 ; size = 4
_main PROC
    sub     esp, 40 ; 00000028H
    push   esi
    push   OFFSET _comp
    push   4
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+52]
    push   10 ; 0000000aH
    push   eax
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+60], 1892 ; 00000764H
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+64], 45 ; 0000002dH
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+68], 200 ; 000000c8H
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+72], -98 ; ffffffff9eH
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+76], 4087 ; 00000ff7H
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+80], 5
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+84], -12345 ; fffffcfc7H
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+88], 1087 ; 0000043fH
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+92], 88 ; 00000058H
    mov    DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+96], -100000 ; fffe7960H
    call  _qsort
    add    esp, 16 ; 00000010H
    ...

```

Nothing surprising so far. As a fourth argument, an address of label `_comp` is passed, that is just a place where function `comp()` located, or, in other words, address of the very first instruction of this function.

How `qsort()` calling it?

Let's take a look into this function located in `MSVCR80.DLL` (a MSVC DLL module with C standard library functions):

Listing 23.2: MSVCR80.DLL

```

.text:7816CBF0 ; void __cdecl qsort(void *, unsigned int, unsigned int, int (__cdecl *)(const ↵
    ↵ void *, const void *))
.text:7816CBF0         public _qsort
.text:7816CBF0         _qsort         proc near
.text:7816CBF0
.text:7816CBF0 lo             = dword ptr -104h
.text:7816CBF0 hi             = dword ptr -100h
.text:7816CBF0 var_FC          = dword ptr -0FCh
.text:7816CBF0 stkptr        = dword ptr -0F8h
.text:7816CBF0 lostk         = dword ptr -0F4h
.text:7816CBF0 histk         = dword ptr -7Ch
.text:7816CBF0 base         = dword ptr 4
.text:7816CBF0 num           = dword ptr 8
.text:7816CBF0 width        = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:7816CBF0 comp         = dword ptr 10h
.text:7816CBF0
.text:7816CBF0         sub         esp, 100h

....

.text:7816CCE0 loc_7816CCE0:                                     ; CODE XREF: _qsort+B1
.text:7816CCE0         shr         eax, 1
.text:7816CCE2         imul       eax, ebp
.text:7816CCE5         add        eax, ebx
.text:7816CCE7         mov        edi, eax
.text:7816CCE9         push       edi
.text:7816CCEA         push       ebx
.text:7816CCEB         call      [esp+118h+comp]
.text:7816CCF2         add        esp, 8
.text:7816CCF5         test       eax, eax
.text:7816CCF7         jle       short loc_7816CD04

```

comp— is fourth function argument. Here the control is just passed to the address in the comp argument. Before it, two arguments prepared for comp(). Its result is checked after its execution.

That's why it is dangerous to use pointers to functions. First of all, if you call qsort() with incorrect pointer to function, qsort() may pass control to incorrect point, a process may crash and this bug will be hard to find.

Second reason is the callback function types must comply strictly, calling wrong function with wrong arguments of wrong types may lead to serious problems, however, process crashing is not a big problem —big problem is to determine a reason of crashing —because compiler may be silent about potential trouble while compiling.

23.1.1 MSVC + OllyDbg

Let's load our example into OllyDbg and set breakpoint on `comp()` function.

How values are compared we can see at the very first `comp()` call:

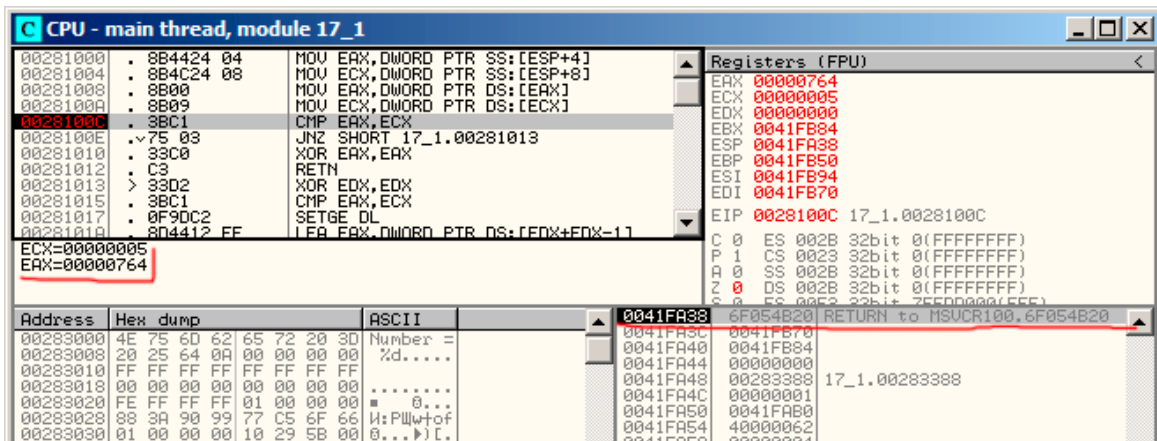


Figure 23.1: OllyDbg: first call of `comp()`

OllyDbg shows compared values in the window under code window, for convenience. We can also see that the `SP` pointing to `RA` where the place in `qsort()` function is (actually located in `MSVCR100.DLL`).

By tracing (F8) until RETN instruction, and pressing F8 one more time, we returning into qsort() function:

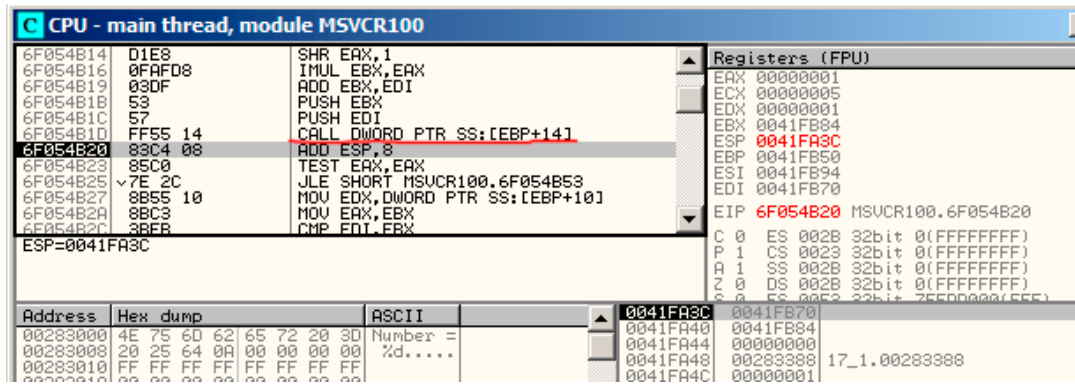


Figure 23.2: OllyDbg: the code in qsort() right after comp() call

That was a call to comparison function.

Here is also screenshot of the moment of the second call of `comp()` – now values to be compared are different:

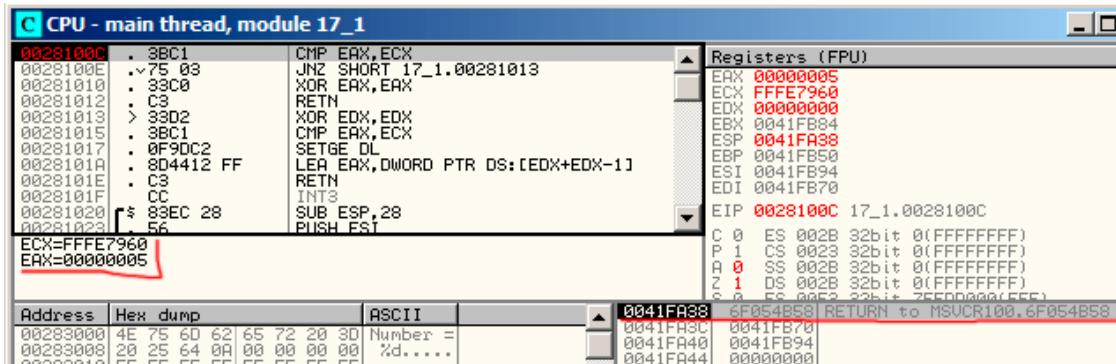


Figure 23.3: OllyDbg: second call of `comp()`

23.1.2 MSVC + tracer

Let's also see, which pairs are compared. These 10 numbers are being sorted: 1892, 45, 200, -98, 4087, 5, -12345, 1087, 88, -100000.

I found the address of the first `CMP` instruction in `comp()`, it is `0x0040100C` and I'm setting breakpoint on it:

```
tracer.exe -l:17_1.exe bpx=17_1.exe!0x0040100C
```

I'm getting information about registers at breakpoint:

```
PID=4336|New process 17_1.exe
(0) 17_1.exe!0x40100c
EAX=0x00000764 EBX=0x0051f7c8 ECX=0x00000005 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0x0051f7d8 EDI=0x0051f7b4 EBP=0x0051f794 ESP=0x0051f67c
EIP=0x0028100c
FLAGS=IF
(0) 17_1.exe!0x40100c
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x0051f7c8 ECX=0xfffe7960 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0x0051f7d8 EDI=0x0051f7b4 EBP=0x0051f794 ESP=0x0051f67c
EIP=0x0028100c
FLAGS=PF ZF IF
(0) 17_1.exe!0x40100c
EAX=0x00000764 EBX=0x0051f7c8 ECX=0x00000005 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0x0051f7d8 EDI=0x0051f7b4 EBP=0x0051f794 ESP=0x0051f67c
EIP=0x0028100c
FLAGS=CF PF ZF IF
...
```

I filtered out `EAX` and `ECX` and got:

```
EAX=0x00000764 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x00000005 ECX=0xfffe7960
EAX=0x00000764 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x0000002d ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x00000058 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x0000043f ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xffffcfc7 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x000000c8 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xffffffff9e ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x00000ff7 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x00000ff7 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xffffffff9e ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xffffffff9e ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xffffcfc7 ECX=0xfffe7960
EAX=0x00000005 ECX=0xffffcfc7
EAX=0xffffffff9e ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xffffcfc7 ECX=0xfffe7960
EAX=0xffffffff9e ECX=0xffffcfc7
EAX=0xffffcfc7 ECX=0xfffe7960
EAX=0x000000c8 ECX=0x00000ff7
EAX=0x0000002d ECX=0x00000ff7
EAX=0x0000043f ECX=0x00000ff7
EAX=0x00000058 ECX=0x00000ff7
```

```
EAX=0x00000764 ECX=0x0000ff7  
EAX=0x00000c8 ECX=0x0000764  
EAX=0x000002d ECX=0x0000764  
EAX=0x000043f ECX=0x0000764  
EAX=0x0000058 ECX=0x0000764  
EAX=0x00000c8 ECX=0x0000058  
EAX=0x000002d ECX=0x0000c8  
EAX=0x000043f ECX=0x0000c8  
EAX=0x00000c8 ECX=0x0000058  
EAX=0x000002d ECX=0x0000c8  
EAX=0x000002d ECX=0x0000058
```

That's 34 pairs. Therefore, quick sort algorithm needs 34 comparison operations for sorting these 10 numbers.

23.1.3 MSVC + tracer (code coverage)

We can also use tracer's feature to collect all possible register's values and show them in [IDA](#).

Let's trace all instructions in `comp()` function:

```
tracer.exe -l:17_1.exe bpf=17_1.exe!0x00401000,trace:cc
```

We getting `.idc-script` for loading into [IDA](#) and load it:

```
.text:00401000
.text:00401000 ; int __cdecl PtFuncCompare(const void *, const void *)
.text:00401000 PtFuncCompare proc near ; DATA XREF: _main+5↓o
.text:00401000
.text:00401000 arg_0 = dword ptr 4
.text:00401000 arg_4 = dword ptr 8
.text:00401000
.text:00401000 mov eax, [esp+arg_0] ; [ESP+4]=0x45f7ec..0x45f810(step=4), L"?\x04?
.text:00401004 mov ecx, [esp+arg_4] ; [ESP+8]=0x45f7ec..0x45f7f4(step=4), 0x45f7fc
.text:00401008 mov eax, [eax] ; [EAX]=5, 0x2d, 0x58, 0xc8, 0x43f, 0x764, 0xff
.text:0040100a mov ecx, [ecx] ; [ECX]=5, 0x58, 0xc8, 0x764, 0xff7, 0xffffe7960
.text:0040100c cmp eax, ecx ; EAX=5, 0x2d, 0x58, 0xc8, 0x43f, 0x764, 0xff7,
.text:0040100e jnz short loc_401013 ; ZF=false
.text:00401010 xor eax, eax
.text:00401012 retn
.text:00401013 ; -----
.text:00401013
.text:00401013 loc_401013: ; CODE XREF: PtFuncCompare+E↑j
.text:00401013 xor edx, edx
.text:00401015 cmp eax, ecx ; EAX=5, 0x2d, 0x58, 0xc8, 0x43f, 0x764, 0xff7,
.text:00401017 setnl dl ; SF=false,true OF=false
.text:0040101a lea eax, [edx+edx-1]
.text:0040101e retn ; EAX=1, 0xffffffff
.text:0040101e PtFuncCompare endp
.text:0040101f
```

Figure 23.4: tracer and IDA. N.B.: some values are cutted at right

[IDA](#) gave the function name (`PtFuncCompare`) –it seems, because [IDA](#) sees that pointer to this function is passed into `qsort()`.

We see that *a* and *b* pointers are pointing to various places in array, but step between points is 4—indeed, 32-bit values are stored in the array.

We see that the instructions at `0x401010` and `0x401012` was never executed (so they leaved as white): indeed, `comp()` was never returned 0, because there no equal elements in array.

23.2 GCC

Not a big difference:

Listing 23.3: GCC

```
lea    eax, [esp+40h+var_28]
mov    [esp+40h+var_40], eax
mov    [esp+40h+var_28], 764h
mov    [esp+40h+var_24], 2Dh
mov    [esp+40h+var_20], 0C8h
mov    [esp+40h+var_1C], 0FFFFFF9Eh
mov    [esp+40h+var_18], 0FF7h
mov    [esp+40h+var_14], 5
mov    [esp+40h+var_10], 0FFFCFC7h
mov    [esp+40h+var_C], 43Fh
mov    [esp+40h+var_8], 58h
mov    [esp+40h+var_4], 0FFFE7960h
mov    [esp+40h+var_34], offset comp
mov    [esp+40h+var_38], 4
mov    [esp+40h+var_3C], 0Ah
call   _qsort
```

`comp()` function:

```

public comp
proc near
comp
arg_0      = dword ptr  8
arg_4      = dword ptr  0Ch

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        mov     eax, [ebp+arg_4]
        mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
        mov     edx, [eax]
        xor     eax, eax
        cmp     [ecx], edx
        jnz    short loc_8048458
        pop     ebp
        retn

loc_8048458:
        setnl   al
        movzx  eax, al
        lea   eax, [eax+eax-1]
        pop   ebp
        retn
comp      endp

```

`qsort()` implementation is located in the `libc.so.6` and it is in fact just a wrapper⁶ for `qsort_r()`. It will call then `quicksort()`, where our defined function will be called via passed pointer:

Listing 23.4: (file `libc.so.6`, `glibc` version—2.10.1)

```

.text:0002DDF6      mov     edx, [ebp+arg_10]
.text:0002DDF9      mov     [esp+4], esi
.text:0002DDFD      mov     [esp], edi
.text:0002DE00      mov     [esp+8], edx
.text:0002DE04      call   [ebp+arg_C]
...

```

23.2.1 GCC + GDB (with source code)

Obviously, we have a C-source code of our example (23), so we can set breakpoint (*b*) on line number (11th—the line where first comparison is occurred). We also need to compile example with debugging information included (`-g`), so the table with addresses and corresponding line numbers is present. We can also print values by variable name (*p*): debugging information also has information about which register and/or local stack element contain which variable.

We can also see stack (*bt*) and find out that there are some intermediate function `msort_with_tmp()` used in `Glibc`.

Listing 23.5: GDB session

```

dennis@ubuntuv:~/polygon$ gcc 17_1.c -g
dennis@ubuntuv:~/polygon$ gdb ./a.out
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
Copyright (C) 2013 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law. Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "i686-linux-gnu".
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/a.out...done.
(gdb) b 17_1.c:11
Breakpoint 1 at 0x804845f: file 17_1.c, line 11.
(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/./a.out

Breakpoint 1, comp (_a=0xbffff0f8, _b=_b@entry=0xbffff0fc) at 17_1.c:11
11      if (*a==*b)
(gdb) p *a

```

⁶a concept like [think function](#)

```

$1 = 1892
(gdb) p *b
$2 = 45
(gdb) c
Continuing.

Breakpoint 1, comp (_a=0xbffff104, _b=_b@entry=0xbffff108) at 17_1.c:11
11      if (*a==*b)
(gdb) p *a
$3 = -98
(gdb) p *b
$4 = 4087
(gdb) bt
#0  comp (_a=0xbffff0f8, _b=_b@entry=0xbffff0fc) at 17_1.c:11
#1  0xb7e42872 in msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=2)
    at msort.c:65
#2  0xb7e4273e in msort_with_tmp (n=2, b=0xbffff0f8, p=0xbffff07c) at msort.c:45
#3  msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=5) at msort.c:53
#4  0xb7e4273e in msort_with_tmp (n=5, b=0xbffff0f8, p=0xbffff07c) at msort.c:45
#5  msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=10) at msort.c:53
#6  0xb7e42cef in msort_with_tmp (n=10, b=0xbffff0f8, p=0xbffff07c) at msort.c:45
#7  __GI_qsorth_r (b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=10, s=s@entry=4, cmp=cmp@entry=0x804844d <
    ↵ comp>,
    arg=arg@entry=0x0) at msort.c:297
#8  0xb7e42dcf in __GI_qsorth (b=0xbffff0f8, n=10, s=4, cmp=0x804844d <comp>) at msort.c:307
#9  0x0804850d in main (argc=1, argv=0xbffff1c4) at 17_1.c:26
(gdb)

```

23.2.2 GCC + GDB (no source code)

But often there are no source code at all, so we can disassemble `comp()` function (`disas`), find the very first `CMP` instruction and set breakpoint (`b`) at that address. At each breakpoint, we will dump all register contents (`info registers`). Stack information is also available (`bt`), but partial: there are no line number information for `comp()` function.

Listing 23.6: GDB session

```

dennis@ubuntuv:~/polygon$ gcc 17_1.c
dennis@ubuntuv:~/polygon$ gdb ./a.out
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
Copyright (C) 2013 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law. Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "i686-linux-gnu".
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/a.out...(no debugging symbols found)...done.
(gdb) set disassembly-flavor intel
(gdb) disas comp
Dump of assembler code for function comp:
0x0804844d <+0>:   push   ebp
0x0804844e <+1>:   mov    ebp,esp
0x08048450 <+3>:   sub    esp,0x10
0x08048453 <+6>:   mov    eax,DWORD PTR [ebp+0x8]
0x08048456 <+9>:   mov    DWORD PTR [ebp-0x8],eax
0x08048459 <+12>:  mov    eax,DWORD PTR [ebp+0xc]
0x0804845c <+15>:  mov    DWORD PTR [ebp-0x4],eax
0x0804845f <+18>:  mov    eax,DWORD PTR [ebp-0x8]
0x08048462 <+21>:  mov    edx,DWORD PTR [eax]
0x08048464 <+23>:  mov    eax,DWORD PTR [ebp-0x4]
0x08048467 <+26>:  mov    eax,DWORD PTR [eax]
0x08048469 <+28>:  cmp    edx,eax
0x0804846b <+30>:  jne   0x8048474 <comp+39>
0x0804846d <+32>:  mov    eax,0x0
0x08048472 <+37>:  jmp   0x804848e <comp+65>
0x08048474 <+39>:  mov    eax,DWORD PTR [ebp-0x8]
0x08048477 <+42>:  mov    edx,DWORD PTR [eax]
0x08048479 <+44>:  mov    eax,DWORD PTR [ebp-0x4]

```

```

0x0804847c <+47>:  mov    eax,DWORD PTR [eax]
0x0804847e <+49>:  cmp    edx,eax
0x08048480 <+51>:  jge    0x8048489 <comp+60>
0x08048482 <+53>:  mov    eax,0xffffffff
0x08048487 <+58>:  jmp    0x804848e <comp+65>
0x08048489 <+60>:  mov    eax,0x1
0x0804848e <+65>:  leave
0x0804848f <+66>:  ret

```

End of assembler dump.

(gdb) b *0x08048469

Breakpoint 1 at 0x8048469

(gdb) run

Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/./a.out

Breakpoint 1, 0x08048469 in comp ()

(gdb) info registers

```

eax            0x2d      45
ecx            0xbffff0f8  -1073745672
edx            0x764     1892
ebx            0xb7fc0000 -1208221696
esp            0xbfffeeb8  0xbfffeeb8
ebp            0xbfffeec8  0xbfffeec8
esi            0xbffff0fc  -1073745668
edi            0xbffff010 -1073745904
eip            0x8048469  0x8048469 <comp+28>
eflags        0x286     [ PF SF IF ]
cs             0x73     115
ss             0x7b     123
ds             0x7b     123
es             0x7b     123
fs             0x0      0
gs             0x33     51

```

(gdb) c

Continuing.

Breakpoint 1, 0x08048469 in comp ()

(gdb) info registers

```

eax            0xff7     4087
ecx            0xbffff104 -1073745660
edx            0xffffffff9e -98
ebx            0xb7fc0000 -1208221696
esp            0xbfffee58  0xbfffee58
ebp            0xbfffee68  0xbfffee68
esi            0xbffff108  -1073745656
edi            0xbffff010 -1073745904
eip            0x8048469  0x8048469 <comp+28>
eflags        0x282     [ SF IF ]
cs             0x73     115
ss             0x7b     123
ds             0x7b     123
es             0x7b     123
fs             0x0      0
gs             0x33     51

```

(gdb) c

Continuing.

Breakpoint 1, 0x08048469 in comp ()

(gdb) info registers

```

eax            0xffffffff9e -98
ecx            0xbffff100 -1073745664
edx            0xc8     200
ebx            0xb7fc0000 -1208221696
esp            0xbfffeeb8  0xbfffeeb8
ebp            0xbfffeec8  0xbfffeec8
esi            0xbffff104  -1073745660
edi            0xbffff010 -1073745904
eip            0x8048469  0x8048469 <comp+28>
eflags        0x286     [ PF SF IF ]
cs             0x73     115
ss             0x7b     123

```

```
ds          0x7b    123
es          0x7b    123
fs          0x0     0
gs          0x33    51
(gdb) bt
#0  0x08048469 in comp ()
#1  0xb7e42872 in msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=2)
    at msort.c:65
#2  0xb7e4273e in msort_with_tmp (n=2, b=0xbffff0f8, p=0xbffff07c) at msort.c:45
#3  msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=5) at msort.c:53
#4  0xb7e4273e in msort_with_tmp (n=5, b=0xbffff0f8, p=0xbffff07c) at msort.c:45
#5  msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=10) at msort.c:53
#6  0xb7e42cef in msort_with_tmp (n=10, b=0xbffff0f8, p=0xbffff07c) at msort.c:45
#7  __GI_qsorth_r (b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=10, s=s@entry=4, cmp=cmp@entry=0x804844d <↵
    ↵ comp>,
    arg=arg@entry=0x0) at msort.c:297
#8  0xb7e42dcf in __GI_qsorth (b=0xbffff0f8, n=10, s=4, cmp=0x804844d <comp>) at msort.c:307
#9  0x0804850d in main ()
```

Chapter 24

64-bit values in 32-bit environment

In the 32-bit environment [GPR's](#) are 32-bit, so 64-bit values are stored and passed as 32-bit value pairs ¹.

24.1 Arguments passing, addition, subtraction

```
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f1 (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a+b;
};

void f1_test ()
{
#ifdef __GNUC__
    printf ("%lld\n", f1(12345678901234, 23456789012345));
#else
    printf ("%I64d\n", f1(12345678901234, 23456789012345));
#endif
};

uint64_t f2 (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a-b;
};
```

Listing 24.1: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob1

```
_a$ = 8      ; size = 8
_b$ = 16     ; size = 8
_f1 PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    add     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp]
    adc     edx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
    ret     0
_f1 ENDP

_f1_test PROC
    push   5461          ; 00001555H
    push   1972608889   ; 75939f79H
    push   2874         ; 00000b3aH
    push   1942892530   ; 73ce2ff2H
    call   _f1
    push   edx
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG1436 ; '%I64d', 0aH, 00H
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 28
    ret    0
_f1_test ENDP
```

¹By the way, 32-bit values are passed as pairs in 16-bit environment just as the same: [40.4](#)


```

_f2    PROC
      mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
      sub     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
      mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp]
      sbb    edx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
      ret     0
_f2    ENDP

```

We may see in the `f1_test()` function as each 64-bit value is passed by two 32-bit values, high part first, then low part.

Addition and subtraction occurring by pairs as well.

While addition, low 32-bit part are added first. If carry was occurred while addition, `CF` flag is set. The next `ADC` instruction adds high parts of values, but also adds 1 if $CF = 1$.

Subtraction is also occurred by pairs. The very first `SUB` may also turn `CF` flag on, which will be checked in the subsequent `SBB` instruction: if carry flag is on, then 1 will also be subtracted from the result.

In a 32-bit environment, 64-bit values are returned from a functions in `EDX:EAX` registers pair. It is easily can be seen how `f1()` function is then passed to `printf()`.

Listing 24.2: GCC 4.8.1 -O1 -fno-inline

```

_f1:
      mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
      mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
      add     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
      adc     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
      ret

_f1_test:
      sub     esp, 28
      mov     DWORD PTR [esp+8], 1972608889 ; 75939f79H
      mov     DWORD PTR [esp+12], 5461 ; 00001555H
      mov     DWORD PTR [esp], 1942892530 ; 73ce2ff2H
      mov     DWORD PTR [esp+4], 2874 ; 00000b3aH
      call    _f1
      mov     DWORD PTR [esp+4], eax
      mov     DWORD PTR [esp+8], edx
      mov     DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:LC0 ; "%lld\12\0"
      call    _printf
      add     esp, 28
      ret

_f2:
      mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
      mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
      sub     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
      sbb    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
      ret

```

GCC code is the same.

24.2 Multiplication, division

```

#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f3 (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a*b;
};

uint64_t f4 (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a/b;
};

```

```
uint64_t f5 (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a % b;
};
```

Listing 24.3: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob1

```
_a$ = 8          ; size = 8
_b$ = 16        ; size = 8
_f3 PROC
    push    DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
    push    DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
    push    DWORD PTR _a$[esp+8]
    push    DWORD PTR _a$[esp+8]
    call    __allmul ; long long multiplication
    ret     0
_f3 ENDP

_a$ = 8          ; size = 8
_b$ = 16        ; size = 8
_f4 PROC
    push    DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
    push    DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
    push    DWORD PTR _a$[esp+8]
    push    DWORD PTR _a$[esp+8]
    call    __aulldiv ; unsigned long long division
    ret     0
_f4 ENDP

_a$ = 8          ; size = 8
_b$ = 16        ; size = 8
_f5 PROC
    push    DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
    push    DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
    push    DWORD PTR _a$[esp+8]
    push    DWORD PTR _a$[esp+8]
    call    __aullrem ; unsigned long long remainder
    ret     0
_f5 ENDP
```

Multiplication and division is more complex operation, so usually, the compiler embedds calls to the library functions doing that.

These functions meaning are here: [D](#).

Listing 24.4: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 -fno-inline

```
_f3:
    push    ebx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [esp+20]
    imul   ebx, eax
    imul   ecx, edx
    mul    edx
    add    ecx, ebx
    add    edx, ecx
    pop    ebx
    ret

_f4:
    sub    esp, 28
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+40]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+44]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp+8], eax
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp+12], edx
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+36]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp], eax
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], edx
```

```

    call    ___udivdi3 ; unsigned division
    add     esp, 28
    ret

_f5:
    sub     esp, 28
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+40]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+44]
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+8], eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+12], edx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+36]
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], eax
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+4], edx
    call    ___umoddi3 ; unsigned modulo
    add     esp, 28
    ret

```

GCC doing almost the same, but multiplication code is inlined right in the function, thinking it could be more efficient. GCC has different library function names: [C](#).

24.3 Shifting right

```

#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f6 (uint64_t a)
{
    return a>>7;
};

```

Listing 24.5: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob1

```

_a$ = 8      ; size = 8
_f6         PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp]
    shrd   eax, edx, 7
    shr    edx, 7
    ret     0
_f6         ENDP

```

Listing 24.6: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 -fno-inline

```

_f6:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    shrd   eax, edx, 7
    shr    edx, 7
    ret

```

Shifting also occurring in two passes: first lower part is shifting, then higher part. But the lower part is shifting with the help of SHRD instruction, it shifting EDX value by 7 bits, but pulling new bits from EAX, i.e., from the higher part. Higher part is shifting using more popular SHR instruction: indeed, freed bits in the higher part should be just filled with zeroes.

24.4 Converting 32-bit value into 64-bit one

```

#include <stdint.h>

int64_t f7 (int64_t a, int64_t b, int32_t c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

int64_t f7_main ()
{
    return f7(12345678901234, 23456789012345, 12345);
};

```

Listing 24.7: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob1

```

_a$ = 8      ; size = 8
_b$ = 16     ; size = 8
_c$ = 24     ; size = 4
_f7 PROC
    push     esi
    push     DWORD PTR _b$[esp+4]
    push     DWORD PTR _b$[esp+4]
    push     DWORD PTR _a$[esp+12]
    push     DWORD PTR _a$[esp+12]
    call    __allmul ; long long multiplication
    mov     ecx, eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _c$[esp]
    mov     esi, edx
    cdq     ; input: 32-bit value in EAX; output: 64-bit value in EDX:EAX
    add     eax, ecx
    adc     edx, esi
    pop     esi
    ret     0
_f7 ENDP

_f7_main PROC
    push     12345          ; 00003039H
    push     5461           ; 00001555H
    push     1972608889     ; 75939f79H
    push     2874           ; 00000b3aH
    push     1942892530     ; 73ce2ff2H
    call    _f7
    add     esp, 20         ; 00000014H
    ret     0
_f7_main ENDP

```

Here we also run into necessity to extend 32-bit signed value from *c* into 64-bit signed. Unsigned values are converted straightforwardly: all bits in higher part must be set to 0. But it is not appropriate for signed data types: sign should be copied into higher part of resulting number. CDQ instruction doing that here, it takes input value in EAX, extending it to 64-bit and leaving it in the EDX:EAX registers pair. In other words, CDQ instruction gets number sign in EAX (by getting just most significant bit in EAX), and depending of it, setting all 32-bits in EDX to 0 or 1. Its operation is somewhat similar to the MOVSB instruction.

Listing 24.8: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 -fno-inline

```

_f7:
    push     edi
    push     esi
    push     ebx
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
    mov     edi, DWORD PTR [esp+24]
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR [esp+20]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [esp+28]
    mov     eax, esi
    mul     edi
    imul   ebx, edi
    imul   ecx, esi
    mov     esi, edx
    add     ecx, ebx
    mov     ebx, eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    add     esi, ecx
    cdq     ; input: 32-bit value in EAX; output: 64-bit value in EDX:EAX
    add     eax, ebx
    adc     edx, esi
    pop     ebx
    pop     esi
    pop     edi
    ret

_f7_main:
    sub     esp, 28
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+16], 12345      ; 00003039H
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+8], 1972608889 ; 75939f79H

```

```
mov    DWORD PTR [esp+12], 5461      ; 00001555H
mov    DWORD PTR [esp], 1942892530   ; 73ce2ff2H
mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], 2874       ; 00000b3aH
call   _f7
add    esp, 28
ret
```

GCC generates just the same code as MSVC, but inlines multiplication code right in the function.

Chapter 25

SIMD

SIMD is an acronym: *Single Instruction, Multiple Data*.

As it is said, it is multiple data processing using only one instruction.

As **FPU**, that **CPU** subsystem looks like separate processor inside x86.

SIMD began as MMX in x86. 8 new 64-bit registers appeared: MM0-MM7.

Each MMX register may hold 2 32-bit values, 4 16-bit values or 8 bytes. For example, it is possible to add 8 8-bit values (bytes) simultaneously by adding two values in MMX-registers.

One simple example is graphics editor, representing image as a two dimensional array. When user change image brightness, the editor must add a coefficient to each pixel value, or to subtract. For the sake of brevity, our image may be grayscale and each pixel defined by one 8-bit byte, then it is possible to change brightness of 8 pixels simultaneously.

When MMX appeared, these registers was actually located in FPU registers. It was possible to use either FPU or MMX at the same time. One might think, Intel saved on transistors, but in fact, the reason of such symbiosis is simpler –older **OS** may not aware of additional CPU registers would not save them at the context switching, but will save FPU registers. Thus, MMX-enabled CPU + old **OS** + process utilizing MMX features = that all will work together.

SSE—is extension of SIMD registers up to 128 bits, now separately from FPU.

AVX—another extension to 256 bits.

Now about practical usage.

Of course, memory copy routines (`memcpy`), memory comparing (`memcmp`) and so on.

One more example: we got DES encryption algorithm, it takes 64-bit block, 56-bit key, encrypt block and produce 64-bit result. DES algorithm may be considered as a very large electronic circuit, with wires and AND/OR/NOT gates.

Bitslice DES¹ —is an idea of processing group of blocks and keys simultaneously. Let's say, variable of type *unsigned int* on x86 may hold up to 32 bits, so, it is possible to store there intermediate results for 32 blocks-keys pairs simultaneously, using 64+56 variables of *unsigned int* type.

I wrote an utility to brute-force Oracle RDBMS passwords/hashes (ones based on DES), slightly modified bitslice DES algorithm for SSE2 and AVX —now it is possible to encrypt 128 or 256 block-keys pairs simultaneously.

http://conus.info/utils/ops_SIMD/

25.1 Vectorization

Vectorization², for example, is when you have a loop taking couple of arrays at input and produces one array. Loop body takes values from input arrays, do something and put result into output array. It is important that there is only one single operation applied to each element. Vectorization —is to process several elements simultaneously.

Vectorization is not very fresh technology: author of this textbook saw it at least on Cray Y-MP supercomputer line from 1988 when played with its “lite” version Cray Y-MP EL ³.

For example:

```
for (i = 0; i < 1024; i++)
{
    C[i] = A[i]*B[i];
}
```

This fragment of code takes elements from A and B, multiplies them and save result into C.

If each array element we have is 32-bit *int*, then it is possible to load 4 elements from A into 128-bit XMM-register, from B to another XMM-registers, and by executing `PMULLD` (*Multiply Packed Signed Dword Integers and Store Low Result*) and `PMULHW` (*Multiply Packed Signed Integers and Store High Result*), it is possible to get 4 64-bit **products** at once.

Thus, loop body count is 1024/4 instead of 1024, that is 4 times less and, of course, faster.

¹<http://www.darkside.com.au/bitslice/>

²Wikipedia: [vectorization](#)

³Remotely. It is installed in the museum of supercomputers: <http://www.cray-cyber.org>

25.1.1 Addition example

Some compilers can do vectorization automatically in a simple cases, e.g., Intel C++⁴.

I wrote tiny function:

```
int f (int sz, int *ar1, int *ar2, int *ar3)
{
    for (int i=0; i<sz; i++)
        ar3[i]=ar1[i]+ar2[i];

    return 0;
};
```

Intel C++

Let's compile it with Intel C++ 11.1.051 win32:

```
icl intel.cpp /QaxSSE2 /Faintel.asm /Ox
```

We got (in IDA):

```
; int __cdecl f(int, int *, int *, int *)
        public ?f@@YAHHPAH00@Z
?f@@YAHHPAH00@Z proc near

var_10 = dword ptr -10h
sz      = dword ptr  4
ar1     = dword ptr  8
ar2     = dword ptr 0Ch
ar3     = dword ptr 10h

        push    edi
        push    esi
        push    ebx
        push    esi
        mov     edx, [esp+10h+sz]
        test   edx, edx
        jle    loc_15B
        mov     eax, [esp+10h+ar3]
        cmp    edx, 6
        jle    loc_143
        cmp    eax, [esp+10h+ar2]
        jbe    short loc_36
        mov     esi, [esp+10h+ar2]
        sub    esi, eax
        lea    ecx, ds:0[edx*4]
        neg    esi
        cmp    ecx, esi
        jbe    short loc_55

loc_36: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+21
        cmp    eax, [esp+10h+ar2]
        jnb    loc_143
        mov     esi, [esp+10h+ar2]
        sub    esi, eax
        lea    ecx, ds:0[edx*4]
        cmp    esi, ecx
        jb     loc_143

loc_55: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+34
        cmp    eax, [esp+10h+ar1]
        jbe    short loc_67
        mov     esi, [esp+10h+ar1]
        sub    esi, eax
        neg    esi
        cmp    ecx, esi
        jbe    short loc_7F
```

⁴More about Intel C++ automatic vectorization: [Excerpt: Effective Automatic Vectorization](#)

```

loc_67: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+59
        cmp     eax, [esp+10h+ar1]
        jnb    loc_143
        mov     esi, [esp+10h+ar1]
        sub     esi, eax
        cmp     esi, ecx
        jb     loc_143

loc_7F: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+65
        mov     edi, eax           ; edi = ar1
        and     edi, 0Fh         ; is ar1 16-byte aligned?
        jz     short loc_9A      ; yes
        test    edi, 3
        jnz    loc_162
        neg     edi
        add     edi, 10h
        shr     edi, 2

loc_9A: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+84
        lea     ecx, [edi+4]
        cmp     edx, ecx
        jl     loc_162
        mov     ecx, edx
        sub     ecx, edi
        and     ecx, 3
        neg     ecx
        add     ecx, edx
        test    edi, edi
        jbe    short loc_D6
        mov     ebx, [esp+10h+ar2]
        mov     [esp+10h+var_10], ecx
        mov     ecx, [esp+10h+ar1]
        xor     esi, esi

loc_C1: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+CD
        mov     edx, [ecx+esi*4]
        add     edx, [ebx+esi*4]
        mov     [eax+esi*4], edx
        inc     esi
        cmp     esi, edi
        jb     short loc_C1
        mov     ecx, [esp+10h+var_10]
        mov     edx, [esp+10h+sz]

loc_D6: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+B2
        mov     esi, [esp+10h+ar2]
        lea     esi, [esi+edi*4] ; is ar2+i*4 16-byte aligned?
        test    esi, 0Fh
        jz     short loc_109    ; yes!
        mov     ebx, [esp+10h+ar1]
        mov     esi, [esp+10h+ar2]

loc_ED: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+105
        movdqu xmm1, xmmword ptr [ebx+edi*4]
        movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+edi*4] ; ar2+i*4 is not 16-byte aligned, so load it to ↵
        ↵ xmm0
        padd    xmm1, xmm0
        movdqa xmmword ptr [eax+edi*4], xmm1
        add     edi, 4
        cmp     edi, ecx
        jb     short loc_ED
        jmp     short loc_127

loc_109: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+E3
        mov     ebx, [esp+10h+ar1]
        mov     esi, [esp+10h+ar2]

loc_111: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+125
        movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [ebx+edi*4]
        padd    xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+edi*4]

```



```

movdqa xmmword ptr [eax+edi*4], xmm0
add     edi, 4
cmp     edi, ecx
jb      short loc_111

loc_127: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+107
; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+164
cmp     ecx, edx
jnb     short loc_15B
mov     esi, [esp+10h+ar1]
mov     edi, [esp+10h+ar2]

loc_133: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+13F
mov     ebx, [esi+ecx*4]
add     ebx, [edi+ecx*4]
mov     [eax+ecx*4], ebx
inc     ecx
cmp     ecx, edx
jb      short loc_133
jmp     short loc_15B

loc_143: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+17
; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+3A ...
mov     esi, [esp+10h+ar1]
mov     edi, [esp+10h+ar2]
xor     ecx, ecx

loc_14D: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+159
mov     ebx, [esi+ecx*4]
add     ebx, [edi+ecx*4]
mov     [eax+ecx*4], ebx
inc     ecx
cmp     ecx, edx
jb      short loc_14D

loc_15B: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+A
; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+129 ...
xor     eax, eax
pop     ecx
pop     ebx
pop     esi
pop     edi
retn

loc_162: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+8C
; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+9F
xor     ecx, ecx
jmp     short loc_127
?f@@YAHHPAH00@Z endp

```

SSE2-related instructions are:

- **MOVDQU** (*Move Unaligned Double Quadword*)— it just load 16 bytes from memory into a XMM-register.
- **PADDD** (*Add Packed Integers*)— adding 4 pairs of 32-bit numbers and leaving result in first operand. By the way, no exception raised in case of overflow and no flags will be set, just low 32-bit of result will be stored. If one of PADDD operands is address of value in memory, then address must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. If it is not aligned, exception will be occurred⁵.
- **MOVDQA** (*Move Aligned Double Quadword*)— the same as MOVDQU, but requires address of value in memory to be aligned on a 16-bit border. If it is not aligned, exception will be raised. MOVDQA works faster than MOVDQU, but requires aforesaid.

So, these SSE2-instructions will be executed only in case if there are more 4 pairs to work on plus pointer ar3 is aligned on a 16-byte boundary.

More than that, if ar2 is aligned on a 16-byte boundary as well, this fragment of code will be executed:

```

movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [ebx+edi*4] ; ar1+i*4
padd   xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+edi*4] ; ar2+i*4
movdqa xmmword ptr [eax+edi*4], xmm0 ; ar3+i*4

```

⁵More about data aligning: [Wikipedia: Data structure alignment](#)

Otherwise, value from ar2 will be loaded into XMM0 using MOVDQU, it does not require aligned pointer, but may work slower:

```
movdqu xmm1, xmmword ptr [ebx+edi*4] ; ar1+i*4
movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+edi*4] ; ar2+i*4 is not 16-byte aligned, so load it to xmm0
padd   xmm1, xmm0
movdqa xmmword ptr [eax+edi*4], xmm1 ; ar3+i*4
```

In all other cases, non-SSE2 code will be executed.

GCC

GCC may also vectorize in a simple cases⁶, if to use -O3 option and to turn on SSE2 support: -msse2.

What we got (GCC 4.4.1):

```
; f(int, int *, int *, int *)
      public _Z1fiPiS_S_
_Z1fiPiS_S_ proc near

var_18      = dword ptr -18h
var_14      = dword ptr -14h
var_10      = dword ptr -10h
arg_0       = dword ptr  8
arg_4       = dword ptr  0Ch
arg_8       = dword ptr  10h
arg_C       = dword ptr  14h

      push    ebp
      mov     ebp, esp
      push   edi
      push   esi
      push   ebx
      sub    esp, 0Ch
      mov    ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
      mov    esi, [ebp+arg_4]
      mov    edi, [ebp+arg_8]
      mov    ebx, [ebp+arg_C]
      test   ecx, ecx
      jle   short loc_80484D8
      cmp    ecx, 6
      lea   eax, [ebx+10h]
      ja    short loc_80484E8

loc_80484C1: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+4B
             ; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+61 ...
             xor    eax, eax
             nop
             lea   esi, [esi+0]

loc_80484C8: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+36
             mov    edx, [edi+eax*4]
             add    edx, [esi+eax*4]
             mov    [ebx+eax*4], edx
             add    eax, 1
             cmp    eax, ecx
             jnz   short loc_80484C8

loc_80484D8: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+17
             ; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+A5
             add    esp, 0Ch
             xor    eax, eax
             pop    ebx
             pop    esi
             pop    edi
             pop    ebp
             retn

      align 8
```

⁶More about GCC vectorization support: <http://gcc.gnu.org/projects/tree-ssa/vectorization.html>

```

loc_80484E8: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+1F
    test    bl, 0Fh
    jnz     short loc_80484C1
    lea    edx, [esi+10h]
    cmp    ebx, edx
    jbe    loc_8048578

loc_80484F8: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+E0
    lea    edx, [edi+10h]
    cmp    ebx, edx
    ja     short loc_8048503
    cmp    edi, eax
    jbe    short loc_80484C1

loc_8048503: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+5D
    mov    eax, ecx
    shr    eax, 2
    mov    [ebp+var_14], eax
    shl    eax, 2
    test   eax, eax
    mov    [ebp+var_10], eax
    jz     short loc_8048547
    mov    [ebp+var_18], ecx
    mov    ecx, [ebp+var_14]
    xor    eax, eax
    xor    edx, edx
    nop

loc_8048520: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+9B
    movdqu xmm1, xmmword ptr [edi+eax]
    movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+eax]
    add    edx, 1
    padd  xmm0, xmm1
    movdqa xmmword ptr [ebx+eax], xmm0
    add    eax, 10h
    cmp    edx, ecx
    jb     short loc_8048520
    mov    ecx, [ebp+var_18]
    mov    eax, [ebp+var_10]
    cmp    ecx, eax
    jz     short loc_80484D8

loc_8048547: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+73
    lea    edx, ds:0[eax*4]
    add    esi, edx
    add    edi, edx
    add    ebx, edx
    lea    esi, [esi+0]

loc_8048558: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+CC
    mov    edx, [edi]
    add    eax, 1
    add    edi, 4
    add    edx, [esi]
    add    esi, 4
    mov    [ebx], edx
    add    ebx, 4
    cmp    ecx, eax
    jg     short loc_8048558
    add    esp, 0Ch
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    ebx
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    pop    ebp
    retn

loc_8048578: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+52
    cmp    eax, esi
    jnb    loc_80484C1

```

```

        jmp     loc_80484F8
_Z1fiPiS_S_ endp

```

Almost the same, however, not as meticulously as Intel C++ doing it.

25.1.2 Memory copy example

Let's revisit simple memcopy() example (14.2):

```

#include <stdio.h>

void my_memcpy (unsigned char* dst, unsigned char* src, size_t cnt)
{
    size_t i;
    for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
        dst[i]=src[i];
};

```

And that's what optimizing GCC 4.9.1 did:

Listing 25.1: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```

my_memcpy:
; RDI = destination address
; RSI = source address
; RDX = size of block
    test    rdx, rdx
    je     .L41
    lea    rax, [rdi+16]
    cmp    rsi, rax
    lea    rax, [rsi+16]
    setae  cl
    cmp    rdi, rax
    setae  al
    or     cl, al
    je     .L13
    cmp    rdx, 22
    jbe    .L13
    mov    rcx, rsi
    push   rbp
    push   rbx
    neg    rcx
    and    ecx, 15
    cmp    rcx, rdx
    cmova  rcx, rdx
    xor    eax, eax
    test   rcx, rcx
    je     .L4
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi]
    cmp    rcx, 1
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi], al
    je     .L15
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+1]
    cmp    rcx, 2
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+1], al
    je     .L16
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+2]
    cmp    rcx, 3
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+2], al
    je     .L17
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+3]
    cmp    rcx, 4
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+3], al
    je     .L18
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+4]
    cmp    rcx, 5
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+4], al
    je     .L19
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+5]
    cmp    rcx, 6
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+5], al

```

```

je .L20
movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+6]
cmp rcx, 7
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+6], al
je .L21
movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+7]
cmp rcx, 8
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+7], al
je .L22
movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+8]
cmp rcx, 9
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+8], al
je .L23
movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+9]
cmp rcx, 10
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+9], al
je .L24
movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+10]
cmp rcx, 11
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+10], al
je .L25
movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+11]
cmp rcx, 12
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+11], al
je .L26
movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+12]
cmp rcx, 13
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+12], al
je .L27
movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+13]
cmp rcx, 15
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+13], al
jne .L28
movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+14]
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+14], al
mov eax, 15
.L4:
mov r10, rdx
lea r9, [rdx-1]
sub r10, rcx
lea r8, [r10-16]
sub r9, rcx
shr r8, 4
add r8, 1
mov r11, r8
sal r11, 4
cmp r9, 14
jbe .L6
lea rbp, [rsi+rcx]
xor r9d, r9d
add rcx, rdi
xor ebx, ebx
.L7:
movdqa xmm0, XMMWORD PTR [rbp+0+r9]
add rbx, 1
movups XMMWORD PTR [rcx+r9], xmm0
add r9, 16
cmp rbx, r8
jb .L7
add rax, r11
cmp r10, r11
je .L1
.L6:
movzx ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+rax]
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+rax], cl
lea rcx, [rax+1]
cmp rdx, rcx
jbe .L1
movzx ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+1+rax]
mov BYTE PTR [rdi+1+rax], cl

```

```

lea    rcx, [rax+2]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+2+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+2+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+3]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+3+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+3+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+4]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+4+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+4+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+5]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+5+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+5+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+6]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+6+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+6+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+7]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+7+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+7+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+8]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+8+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+8+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+9]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+9+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+9+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+10]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+10+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+10+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+11]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+11+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+11+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+12]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+12+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+12+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+13]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+13+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+13+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+14]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  edx, BYTE PTR [rsi+14+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+14+rax], dl
.L1:
pop    rbx
pop    rbp
.L41:
rep   ret

```

```

.L13:
    xor     eax, eax
.L3:
    movzx   ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+rax]
    mov     BYTE PTR [rdi+rax], cl
    add     rax, 1
    cmp     rax, rdx
    jne     .L3
    rep    ret
.L28:
    mov     eax, 14
    jmp     .L4
.L15:
    mov     eax, 1
    jmp     .L4
.L16:
    mov     eax, 2
    jmp     .L4
.L17:
    mov     eax, 3
    jmp     .L4
.L18:
    mov     eax, 4
    jmp     .L4
.L19:
    mov     eax, 5
    jmp     .L4
.L20:
    mov     eax, 6
    jmp     .L4
.L21:
    mov     eax, 7
    jmp     .L4
.L22:
    mov     eax, 8
    jmp     .L4
.L23:
    mov     eax, 9
    jmp     .L4
.L24:
    mov     eax, 10
    jmp     .L4
.L25:
    mov     eax, 11
    jmp     .L4
.L26:
    mov     eax, 12
    jmp     .L4
.L27:
    mov     eax, 13
    jmp     .L4

```

25.2 SIMD strlen() implementation

It should be noted the SIMD-instructions may be inserted into C/C++ code via special macros⁷. As of MSVC, some of them are located in the `intrin.h` file.

It is possible to implement `strlen()` function⁸ using SIMD-instructions, working 2-2.5 times faster than common implementation. This function will load 16 characters into a XMM-register and check each against zero⁹.

```

size_t strlen_sse2(const char *str)
{
    register size_t len = 0;
    const char *s=str;
    bool str_is_aligned((((unsigned int)str)&0xFFFFFFFF0) == (unsigned int)str;

```

⁷MSDN: MMX, SSE, and SSE2 Intrinsics

⁸`strlen()` – standard C library function for calculating string length

⁹The example is based on source code from: http://www.strchr.com/sse2_optimised_strlen.

```

if (str_is_aligned==false)
    return strlen (str);

__m128i xmm0 = _mm_setzero_si128();
__m128i xmm1;
int mask = 0;

for (;;)
{
    xmm1 = _mm_load_si128((__m128i *)s);
    xmm1 = _mm_cmpeq_epi8(xmm1, xmm0);
    if ((mask = _mm_movemask_epi8(xmm1)) != 0)
    {
        unsigned long pos;
        _BitScanForward(&pos, mask);
        len += (size_t)pos;

        break;
    }
    s += sizeof(__m128i);
    len += sizeof(__m128i);
};

return len;
}

```

Let's compile in MSVC 2010 with /Ox option:

Listing 25.2: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_pos$75552 = -4          ; size = 4
_str$ = 8              ; size = 4
?strlen_sse2@@YAIPBD@Z PROC ; strlen_sse2

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and     esp, -16          ; ffffffff0H
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _str$[ebp]
    sub     esp, 12          ; 0000000cH
    push    esi
    mov     esi, eax
    and     esi, -16          ; ffffffff0H
    xor     edx, edx
    mov     ecx, eax
    cmp     esi, eax
    je      SHORT $LN4@strlen_sse
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [eax+1]
    npad   3 ; align next label
$LL11@strlen_sse:
    mov     cl, BYTE PTR [eax]
    inc     eax
    test    cl, cl
    jne    SHORT $LL11@strlen_sse
    sub     eax, edx
    pop     esi
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
$LN4@strlen_sse:
    movdqa xmm1, XMMWORD PTR [eax]
    pxor   xmm0, xmm0
    pcmpeqb xmm1, xmm0
    pmovmskb eax, xmm1
    test   eax, eax
    jne    SHORT $LN9@strlen_sse
$LL3@strlen_sse:
    movdqa xmm1, XMMWORD PTR [ecx+16]
    add     ecx, 16          ; 00000010H
    pcmpeqb xmm1, xmm0
    add     edx, 16          ; 00000010H

```



```

    pmovmskb eax, xmm1
    test     eax, eax
    je      SHORT $LL3@strlen_sse
$LN9@strlen_sse:
    bsf     eax, eax
    mov     ecx, eax
    mov     DWORD PTR _pos$75552[esp+16], eax
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+edx]
    pop     esi
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
?strlen_sse2@@YAIPBD@Z ENDP          ; strlen_sse2

```

First of all, we check `str` pointer, if it is aligned on a 16-byte boundary. If not, let's call generic `strlen()` implementation.

Then, load next 16 bytes into the XMM1 register using `MOVDQA` instruction.

Observant reader might ask, why `MOVDQU` cannot be used here since it can load data from the memory regardless pointer alignment?

Yes, it might be done in this way: if pointer is aligned, load data using `MOVDQA`, if not – use slower `MOVDQU`.

But here we are may stick into hard to notice caveat:

In [Windows NT](#) line of [OS](#) (but not limited to it), memory allocated by pages of 4 KiB (4096 bytes). Each win32-process has ostensibly 4 GiB, but in fact, only some parts of address space are connected to real physical memory. If the process accessing to the absent memory block, exception will be raised. That's how [VM](#) works¹⁰.

So, a function loading 16 bytes at once, may step over a border of allocated memory block. Let's consider, [OS](#) allocated 8192 (0x2000) bytes at the address 0x008c0000. Thus, the block is the bytes starting from address 0x008c0000 to 0x008c1fff inclusive.

After the block, that is, starting from address 0x008c2000 there is nothing at all, e.g., [OS](#) not allocated any memory there. Attempt to access a memory starting from the address will raise exception.

And let's consider, the program holding a string containing 5 characters almost at the end of block, and that is not a crime.

0x008c1ff8	'h'
0x008c1ff9	'e'
0x008c1ffa	'l'
0x008c1ffb	'l'
0x008c1ffc	'o'
0x008c1ffd	'\x00'
0x008c1ffe	random noise
0x008c1fff	random noise

So, in common conditions the program calling `strlen()` passing it a pointer to string 'hello' lying in memory at address 0x008c1ff8. `strlen()` will read one byte at a time until 0x008c1ffd, where zero-byte, and so here it will stop working.

Now if we implement our own `strlen()` reading 16 byte at once, starting at any address, will it be aligned or not, `MOVDQU` may attempt to load 16 bytes at once at address 0x008c1ff8 up to 0x008c2008, and then exception will be raised. That's the situation to be avoided, of course.

So then we'll work only with the addresses aligned on a 16 byte boundary, what in combination with a knowledge of [OS](#) page size is usually aligned on a 16-byte boundary too, give us some warranty our function will not read from unallocated memory.

Let's back to our function.

`_mm_setzero_si128()` – is a macro generating `pxor xmm0, xmm0` – instruction just clears the XMM0 register.

`_mm_load_si128()` – is a macro for `MOVDQA`, it just loading 16 bytes from the address into the XMM1 register.

`_mm_cmpeq_epi8()` – is a macro for `PCMPEQB`, is an instruction comparing two XMM-registers bitwise.

And if some byte was equals to other, there will be 0xff at this point in the result or 0 if otherwise.

For example.

```
XMM1: 11223344556677880000000000000000
```

```
XMM0: 11ab3444007877881111111111111111
```

After `pcmpeqb xmm1, xmm0` execution, the XMM1 register shall contain:

```
XMM1: ff0000ff0000ffff0000000000000000
```

¹⁰[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Page_\(computer_memory\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Page_(computer_memory))

In our case, this instruction comparing each 16-byte block with the block of 16 zero-bytes, was set in the XMM0 register by `pxor xmm0, xmm0`.

The next macro is `_mm_movemask_epi8()` –that is `PMOVMASKB` instruction.

It is very useful if to use it with `PCMPEQB`.

```
pmovmskb eax, xmm1
```

This instruction will set first EAX bit into 1 if most significant bit of the first byte in the XMM1 is 1. In other words, if first byte of the XMM1 register is `0xff`, first EAX bit will be set to 1 too.

If second byte in the XMM1 register is `0xff`, then second EAX bit will be set to 1 too. In other words, the instruction is answering to the question “which bytes in the XMM1 are `0xff`?” And will prepare 16 bits in the EAX register. Other bits in the EAX register are to be cleared.

By the way, do not forget about this feature of our algorithm. There might be 16 bytes on input like:

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	3	2	1	0
“h”	“e”	“l”	“l”	“o”	0	garbage			0	garbage

It is a 'hello' string, terminating zero, and also a random noise in memory. If we load these 16 bytes into XMM1 and compare them with zeroed XMM0, we will get something like ¹¹:

```
XMM1: 0000ff00000000000000ff0000000000
```

This means, the instruction found two zero bytes, and that is not surprising.

`PMOVMASKB` in our case will prepare EAX like (in binary representation): `0010000000100000b`.

Obviously, our function must take only first zero bit and ignore the rest ones.

The next instruction—`BSF` (*Bit Scan Forward*). This instruction find first bit set to 1 and stores its position into first operand.

```
EAX=0010000000100000b
```

After `bsf eax, eax` instruction execution, EAX will contain 5, this means, 1 found at 5th bit position (starting from zero).

MSVC has a macro for this instruction: `_BitScanForward`.

Now it is simple. If zero byte found, its position added to what we already counted and now we have ready to return result.

Almost all.

By the way, it is also should be noted, MSVC compiler emitted two loop bodies side by side, for optimization.

By the way, SSE 4.2 (appeared in Intel Core i7) offers more instructions where these string manipulations might be even easier: http://www.strchr.com/strcmp_and_strlen_using_sse_4.2

¹¹I use here order from MSB to LSB¹²

Chapter 26

64 bits

26.1 x86-64

It is a 64-bit extension to x86-architecture.

From the reverse engineer's perspective, most important changes are:

- Almost all registers (except FPU and SIMD) are extended to 64 bits and got R- prefix. 8 additional registers added. Now [GPR](#)'s are: RAX, RBX, RCX, RDX, RBP, RSP, RSI, RDI, R8, R9, R10, R11, R12, R13, R14, R15.

It is still possible to access to *older* register parts as usual. For example, it is possible to access lower 32-bit part of the RAX register using EAX:

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RAX ^{x64}							
						EAX	
						AX	
						AH	AL

New R8-R15 registers also has its *lower parts*: R8D-R15D (lower 32-bit parts), R8W-R15W (lower 16-bit parts), R8L-R15L (lower 8-bit parts).

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R8							
						R8D	
						R8W	
						R8L	

SIMD-registers number is doubled from 8 to 16: XMM0-XMM15.

- In Win64, function calling convention is slightly different, somewhat resembling fastcall ([55.3](#)). First 4 arguments stored in the RCX, RDX, R8, R9 registers, others –in the stack. [Caller](#) function must also allocate 32 bytes so the [callee](#) may save there 4 first arguments and use these registers for own needs. Short functions may use arguments just from registers, but larger may save their values on the stack.

System V AMD64 ABI (Linux, *BSD, Mac OS X)[[Mit13](#)] also somewhat resembling fastcall, it uses 6 registers RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8, R9 for the first 6 arguments. All the rest are passed in the stack.

See also section about calling conventions ([55](#)).

- C/C++ *int* type is still 32-bit for compatibility.
- All pointers are 64-bit now.

This provokes irritation sometimes: now one need twice as much memory for storing pointers, including, cache memory, despite the fact x64 [CPU](#)s can address only 48 bits of external [RAM](#).

Since now register number is doubled, compilers has more space now for maneuvering called [register allocation](#). What it meanings for us, emitted code will contain less local variables.

For example, function calculating first S-box of DES encryption algorithm, it processing 32/64/128/256 values at once (depending on DES_type type (uint32, uint64, SSE2 or AVX)) using bitslice DES method (read more about this technique here ([25](#))):

```

/*
 * Generated S-box files.
 *
 * This software may be modified, redistributed, and used for any purpose,
 * so long as its origin is acknowledged.
 *
 * Produced by Matthew Kwan - March 1998
 */

#ifdef _WIN64
#define DES_type unsigned __int64
#else
#define DES_type unsigned int
#endif

void
s1 (
    DES_type    a1,
    DES_type    a2,
    DES_type    a3,
    DES_type    a4,
    DES_type    a5,
    DES_type    a6,
    DES_type    *out1,
    DES_type    *out2,
    DES_type    *out3,
    DES_type    *out4
) {
    DES_type    x1, x2, x3, x4, x5, x6, x7, x8;
    DES_type    x9, x10, x11, x12, x13, x14, x15, x16;
    DES_type    x17, x18, x19, x20, x21, x22, x23, x24;
    DES_type    x25, x26, x27, x28, x29, x30, x31, x32;
    DES_type    x33, x34, x35, x36, x37, x38, x39, x40;
    DES_type    x41, x42, x43, x44, x45, x46, x47, x48;
    DES_type    x49, x50, x51, x52, x53, x54, x55, x56;

    x1 = a3 & ~a5;
    x2 = x1 ^ a4;
    x3 = a3 & ~a4;
    x4 = x3 | a5;
    x5 = a6 & x4;
    x6 = x2 ^ x5;
    x7 = a4 & ~a5;
    x8 = a3 ^ a4;
    x9 = a6 & ~x8;
    x10 = x7 ^ x9;
    x11 = a2 | x10;
    x12 = x6 ^ x11;
    x13 = a5 ^ x5;
    x14 = x13 & x8;
    x15 = a5 & ~a4;
    x16 = x3 ^ x14;
    x17 = a6 | x16;
    x18 = x15 ^ x17;
    x19 = a2 | x18;
    x20 = x14 ^ x19;
    x21 = a1 & x20;
    x22 = x12 ^ ~x21;
    *out2 ^= x22;
    x23 = x1 | x5;
    x24 = x23 ^ x8;
    x25 = x18 & ~x2;
    x26 = a2 & ~x25;
    x27 = x24 ^ x26;
    x28 = x6 | x7;
    x29 = x28 ^ x25;
    x30 = x9 ^ x24;
    x31 = x18 & ~x30;
    x32 = a2 & x31;

```

```

x33 = x29 ^ x32;
x34 = a1 & x33;
x35 = x27 ^ x34;
*out4 ^= x35;
x36 = a3 & x28;
x37 = x18 & ~x36;
x38 = a2 | x3;
x39 = x37 ^ x38;
x40 = a3 | x31;
x41 = x24 & ~x37;
x42 = x41 | x3;
x43 = x42 & ~a2;
x44 = x40 ^ x43;
x45 = a1 & ~x44;
x46 = x39 ^ ~x45;
*out1 ^= x46;
x47 = x33 & ~x9;
x48 = x47 ^ x39;
x49 = x4 ^ x36;
x50 = x49 & ~x5;
x51 = x42 | x18;
x52 = x51 ^ a5;
x53 = a2 & ~x52;
x54 = x50 ^ x53;
x55 = a1 | x54;
x56 = x48 ^ ~x55;
*out3 ^= x56;
}

```

There is a lot of local variables. Of course, not all those will be in local stack. Let's compile it with MSVC 2008 with /Ox option:

Listing 26.1: Optimizing MSVC 2008

```

PUBLIC      _s1
; Function compile flags: /Ogtpy
_TEXT      SEGMENT
_x6$ = -20      ; size = 4
_x3$ = -16      ; size = 4
_x1$ = -12      ; size = 4
_x8$ = -8       ; size = 4
_x4$ = -4       ; size = 4
_a1$ = 8        ; size = 4
_a2$ = 12       ; size = 4
_a3$ = 16       ; size = 4
_x33$ = 20      ; size = 4
_x7$ = 20       ; size = 4
_a4$ = 20       ; size = 4
_a5$ = 24       ; size = 4
tv326 = 28      ; size = 4
_x36$ = 28      ; size = 4
_x28$ = 28      ; size = 4
_a6$ = 28       ; size = 4
_out1$ = 32     ; size = 4
_x24$ = 36     ; size = 4
_out2$ = 36     ; size = 4
_out3$ = 40     ; size = 4
_out4$ = 44     ; size = 4
_s1        PROC
    sub     esp, 20                ; 00000014H
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a5$[esp+16]
    push   ebx
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR _a4$[esp+20]
    push   ebp
    push   esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _a3$[esp+28]
    push   edi
    mov     edi, ebx
    not    edi
    mov     ebp, edi
    and    edi, DWORD PTR _a5$[esp+32]

```

```

mov    ecx, edx
not    ecx
and    ebp, esi
mov    eax, ecx
and    eax, esi
and    ecx, ebx
mov    DWORD PTR _x1$[esp+36], eax
xor    eax, ebx
mov    esi, ebp
or     esi, edx
mov    DWORD PTR _x4$[esp+36], esi
and    esi, DWORD PTR _a6$[esp+32]
mov    DWORD PTR _x7$[esp+32], ecx
mov    edx, esi
xor    edx, eax
mov    DWORD PTR _x6$[esp+36], edx
mov    edx, DWORD PTR _a3$[esp+32]
xor    edx, ebx
mov    ebx, esi
xor    ebx, DWORD PTR _a5$[esp+32]
mov    DWORD PTR _x8$[esp+36], edx
and    ebx, edx
mov    ecx, edx
mov    edx, ebx
xor    edx, ebp
or     edx, DWORD PTR _a6$[esp+32]
not    ecx
and    ecx, DWORD PTR _a6$[esp+32]
xor    edx, edi
mov    edi, edx
or     edi, DWORD PTR _a2$[esp+32]
mov    DWORD PTR _x3$[esp+36], ebp
mov    ebp, DWORD PTR _a2$[esp+32]
xor    edi, ebx
and    edi, DWORD PTR _a1$[esp+32]
mov    ebx, ecx
xor    ebx, DWORD PTR _x7$[esp+32]
not    edi
or     ebx, ebp
xor    edi, ebx
mov    ebx, edi
mov    edi, DWORD PTR _out2$[esp+32]
xor    ebx, DWORD PTR [edi]
not    eax
xor    ebx, DWORD PTR _x6$[esp+36]
and    eax, edx
mov    DWORD PTR [edi], ebx
mov    ebx, DWORD PTR _x7$[esp+32]
or     ebx, DWORD PTR _x6$[esp+36]
mov    edi, esi
or     edi, DWORD PTR _x1$[esp+36]
mov    DWORD PTR _x28$[esp+32], ebx
xor    edi, DWORD PTR _x8$[esp+36]
mov    DWORD PTR _x24$[esp+32], edi
xor    edi, ecx
not    edi
and    edi, edx
mov    ebx, edi
and    ebx, ebp
xor    ebx, DWORD PTR _x28$[esp+32]
xor    ebx, eax
not    eax
mov    DWORD PTR _x33$[esp+32], ebx
and    ebx, DWORD PTR _a1$[esp+32]
and    eax, ebp
xor    eax, ebx
mov    ebx, DWORD PTR _out4$[esp+32]
xor    eax, DWORD PTR [ebx]
xor    eax, DWORD PTR _x24$[esp+32]
mov    DWORD PTR [ebx], eax

```

```

mov     eax, DWORD PTR _x28$[esp+32]
and     eax, DWORD PTR _a3$[esp+32]
mov     ebx, DWORD PTR _x3$[esp+36]
or      edi, DWORD PTR _a3$[esp+32]
mov     DWORD PTR _x36$[esp+32], eax
not     eax
and     eax, edx
or      ebx, ebp
xor     ebx, eax
not     eax
and     eax, DWORD PTR _x24$[esp+32]
not     ebp
or      eax, DWORD PTR _x3$[esp+36]
not     esi
and     ebp, eax
or      eax, edx
xor     eax, DWORD PTR _a5$[esp+32]
mov     edx, DWORD PTR _x36$[esp+32]
xor     edx, DWORD PTR _x4$[esp+36]
xor     ebp, edi
mov     edi, DWORD PTR _out1$[esp+32]
not     eax
and     eax, DWORD PTR _a2$[esp+32]
not     ebp
and     ebp, DWORD PTR _a1$[esp+32]
and     edx, esi
xor     eax, edx
or      eax, DWORD PTR _a1$[esp+32]
not     ebp
xor     ebp, DWORD PTR [edi]
not     ecx
and     ecx, DWORD PTR _x33$[esp+32]
xor     ebp, ebx
not     eax
mov     DWORD PTR [edi], ebp
xor     eax, ecx
mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _out3$[esp+32]
xor     eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
pop     edi
pop     esi
xor     eax, ebx
pop     ebp
mov     DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
pop     ebx
add     esp, 20                ; 00000014H
ret     0
_s1     ENDP

```

5 variables was allocated in local stack by compiler.

Now let's try the same thing in 64-bit version of MSVC 2008:

Listing 26.2: Optimizing MSVC 2008

```

a1$ = 56
a2$ = 64
a3$ = 72
a4$ = 80
x36$1$ = 88
a5$ = 88
a6$ = 96
out1$ = 104
out2$ = 112
out3$ = 120
out4$ = 128
s1   PROC
$LN3:
mov   QWORD PTR [rsp+24], rbx
mov   QWORD PTR [rsp+32], rbp
mov   QWORD PTR [rsp+16], rdx
mov   QWORD PTR [rsp+8], rcx
push  rsi

```

```

push    rdi
push    r12
push    r13
push    r14
push    r15
mov     r15, QWORD PTR a5$[rsp]
mov     rcx, QWORD PTR a6$[rsp]
mov     rbp, r8
mov     r10, r9
mov     rax, r15
mov     rdx, rbp
not     rax
xor     rdx, r9
not     r10
mov     r11, rax
and     rax, r9
mov     rsi, r10
mov     QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp], rax
and     r11, r8
and     rsi, r8
and     r10, r15
mov     r13, rdx
mov     rbx, r11
xor     rbx, r9
mov     r9, QWORD PTR a2$[rsp]
mov     r12, rsi
or      r12, r15
not     r13
and     r13, rcx
mov     r14, r12
and     r14, rcx
mov     rax, r14
mov     r8, r14
xor     r8, rbx
xor     rax, r15
not     rbx
and     rax, rdx
mov     rdi, rax
xor     rdi, rsi
or      rdi, rcx
xor     rdi, r10
and     rbx, rdi
mov     rcx, rdi
or      rcx, r9
xor     rcx, rax
mov     rax, r13
xor     rax, QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp]
and     rcx, QWORD PTR a1$[rsp]
or      rax, r9
not     rcx
xor     rcx, rax
mov     rax, QWORD PTR out2$[rsp]
xor     rcx, QWORD PTR [rax]
xor     rcx, r8
mov     QWORD PTR [rax], rcx
mov     rax, QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp]
mov     rcx, r14
or      rax, r8
or      rcx, r11
mov     r11, r9
xor     rcx, rdx
mov     QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp], rax
mov     r8, rsi
mov     rdx, rcx
xor     rdx, r13
not     rdx
and     rdx, rdi
mov     r10, rdx
and     r10, r9
xor     r10, rax

```



```

xor    r10, rbx
not    rbx
and    rbx, r9
mov    rax, r10
and    rax, QWORD PTR a1$[rsp]
xor    rbx, rax
mov    rax, QWORD PTR out4$[rsp]
xor    rbx, QWORD PTR [rax]
xor    rbx, rcx
mov    QWORD PTR [rax], rbx
mov    rbx, QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp]
and    rbx, rbp
mov    r9, rbx
not    r9
and    r9, rdi
or     r8, r11
mov    rax, QWORD PTR out1$[rsp]
xor    r8, r9
not    r9
and    r9, rcx
or     rdx, rbp
mov    rbp, QWORD PTR [rsp+80]
or     r9, rsi
xor    rbx, r12
mov    rcx, r11
not    rcx
not    r14
not    r13
and    rcx, r9
or     r9, rdi
and    rbx, r14
xor    r9, r15
xor    rcx, rdx
mov    rdx, QWORD PTR a1$[rsp]
not    r9
not    rcx
and    r13, r10
and    r9, r11
and    rcx, rdx
xor    r9, rbx
mov    rbx, QWORD PTR [rsp+72]
not    rcx
xor    rcx, QWORD PTR [rax]
or     r9, rdx
not    r9
xor    rcx, r8
mov    QWORD PTR [rax], rcx
mov    rax, QWORD PTR out3$[rsp]
xor    r9, r13
xor    r9, QWORD PTR [rax]
xor    r9, r8
mov    QWORD PTR [rax], r9
pop    r15
pop    r14
pop    r13
pop    r12
pop    rdi
pop    rsi
ret    0
s1    ENDP

```

Nothing allocated in local stack by compiler, x36 is synonym for a5.
 By the way, there are CPUs with much more GPR's, e.g. Itanium (128 registers).

26.2 ARM

64-bit instructions were appeared in ARMv8.

26.3 Float point numbers

How float point numbers are processed in x86-64, read more here: [27](#).

Chapter 27

Working with float point numbers using SIMD

Of course, FPU remained in x86-compatible processors, when SIMD extensions were added.

SIMD-extensions (SSE2) offers more easy way to work with float-point numbers.

Number format remaining the same (IEEE 754).

So, modern compilers (including those generating for x86-64) usually uses SIMD-instructions instead of FPU ones.

It can be said, it's a good news, because it's easier to work with them.

We will reuse here examples from the FPU section: 17.

27.1 Simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

double f (double a, double b)
{
    return a/3.14 + b*4.1;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%f\n", f(1.2, 3.4));
};
```

27.1.1 x64

Listing 27.1: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
__real@4010666666666666 DQ 0401066666666666r    ; 4.1
__real@40091eb851eb851f DQ 040091eb851eb851fr  ; 3.14

a$ = 8
b$ = 16
f      PROC
        divsd    xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f
        mulsd    xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666
        addsd    xmm0, xmm1
        ret      0
f      ENDP
```

Input floating point values are passed in XMM0-XMM3 registers, all the rest—via stack ¹.

a is passed in XMM0, *b*—via XMM1. XMM-registers are 128-bit (as we know from the section about SIMD: 25), but *double* values—64 bit ones, so only lower register half is used.

DIVSD is SSE-instruction, meaning “Divide Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values”, it just divides one value of *double* type by another, stored in the lower halves of operands.

Constants are encoded by compiler in IEEE 754 format.

MULSD and ADDSD works just as the same, but doing multiplication and addition.

The result of *double* type the function leaves in XMM0 register.

That is how non-optimizing MSVC works:

¹MSDN: Parameter Passing

Listing 27.2: MSVC 2012 x64

```

__real@4010666666666666 DQ 0401066666666666r ; 4.1
__real@40091eb851eb851f DQ 040091eb851eb851fr ; 3.14

a$ = 8
b$ = 16
f PROC
    movsdx QWORD PTR [rsp+16], xmm1
    movsdx QWORD PTR [rsp+8], xmm0
    movsdx xmm0, QWORD PTR a$[rsp]
    divsd xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f
    movsdx xmm1, QWORD PTR b$[rsp]
    mulsd xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666
    addsd xmm0, xmm1
    ret 0
f ENDP

```

Slightly redundant. Input arguments are saved in “shadow space” (8.2.1), but only lower register halves, i.e., only 64-bit values of *double* type.

GCC produces very same code.

27.1.2 x86

I also compiled this example for x86. Despite the fact of generating for x86, MSVC 2012 use SSE2-instructions:

Listing 27.3: Non-optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

```

tv70 = -8 ; size = 8
_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_f PROC
    push ebp
    mov ebp, esp
    sub esp, 8
    movsd xmm0, QWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    divsd xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f
    movsd xmm1, QWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    mulsd xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666
    addsd xmm0, xmm1
    movsd QWORD PTR tv70[ebp], xmm0
    fld QWORD PTR tv70[ebp]
    mov esp, ebp
    pop ebp
    ret 0
_f ENDP

```

Listing 27.4: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

```

tv67 = 8 ; size = 8
_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_f PROC
    movsd xmm1, QWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    divsd xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f
    movsd xmm0, QWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    mulsd xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666
    addsd xmm1, xmm0
    movsd QWORD PTR tv67[esp-4], xmm1
    fld QWORD PTR tv67[esp-4]
    ret 0
_f ENDP

```

It’s almost the same code, however, there are couple differences related to calling conventions: 1) arguments are passed not in XMM registers, but in stack, like in FPU examples (17); 2) function result is returned in ST(0) – in order to do so, it’s copied (through local variable tv) from one of XMM-registers into ST(0).

Let's try optimized example in OllyDbg:

The screenshot shows the OllyDbg interface with the following details:

- Assembly Window:** Shows assembly code for the main thread. The instruction at address 01331030 is `MOVSD XMM1, QWORD PTR DS:[13320C8]`, which is highlighted in red. This instruction loads the value of variable `a` into the XMM1 register.
- Registers (FPU) Window:** Shows the state of floating-point registers. XMM1 contains the value `1.2000000000000000`. Other registers like XMM0, XMM2, etc., contain `0.0`.
- Memory Dump Window:** Shows the memory dump at address 0017FBC0. The value at address 01331030 is `33333333`, which corresponds to the float value 1.2000000000000000.

Figure 27.1: OllyDbg: MOVSD loads value of `a` into XMM1

The screenshot displays the OllyDbg interface with the following components:

- Assembly Window:** Shows instructions from address 01331000 to 01331099. Key instructions include:
 - 01331000: F20F104C24 0 MOUSD XMM1, QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4]
 - 01331006: F20F5E0D C02 DIUSD XMM1, QWORD PTR DS:[13320C0]
 - 0133100E: F20F104424 0 MOUSD XMM0, QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+0C]
 - 01331014: F20F5905 002 MULSD XMM0, QWORD PTR DS:[13320D0]
 - 0133101C: F20F58C8 ADDSD XMM1, XMM0
 - 01331020: F20F114C24 0 MOUSD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4], XMM1
 - 01331026: DD4424 04 FLD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4]
 - 0133102A: C3 RETN
 - 0133102B: CC INT3
 - 0133102C: CC INT3
 - 0133102D: CC INT3
 - 0133102E: CC INT3
 - 0133102F: CC INT3
 - 01331030: F20F1005 C02 MOUSD XMM0, QWORD PTR DS:[13320C8]
 - 01331036: 83EC 10 SUB ESP, 10
 - 0133103B: F20F114424 0 MOUSD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+8], XMM0
 - 01331041: F20F1005 802 MOUSD XMM0, QWORD PTR DS:[13320B8]
 - 01331049: F20F110424 MOUSD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP], XMM0
 - 0133104E: E8 00FFFFFF CALL 01331000
 - 01331053: DD5C24 08 FSTP QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+8]
 - 01331057: 83C4 08 ADD ESP, 8
 - 0133105D: 68 00303301 PUSH OFFSET 01333000
 - 0133105F: FF15 30203300 CALL QWORD PTR DS:[<&MSUCR110.printf>]
 - 01331065: 83C4 0C ADD ESP, 0C
 - 01331068: 83C0 XOR EAX, EAX
 - 0133106A: C3 RETN
 - 0133106B: CC INT3
 - 0133106C: CC INT3
 - 0133106D: CC INT3
 - 0133106E: CC INT3
 - 0133106F: CC INT3
 - 01331070: B8 405A0000 MOV EAX, 5A40
 - 01331075: 66:3905 0000 CMP WORD PTR DS:[<STRUCT IMAGE_DOS_HEAD
 - 0133107C: 74 04 JE SHORT 01331082
 - 0133107E: 33C0 XOR EAX, EAX
 - 01331080: EB 34 JMP SHORT 013310B6
 - 01331082: 8B0D 3C003300 MOV ECX, DWORD PTR DS:[133003C]
 - 01331088: 81B9 00003300 CMP DWORD PTR DS:[ECX+<STRUCT IMAGE_DOS
 - 01331092: 75 EA JNE SHORT 0133107E
 - 01331094: B8 0B010000 MOV EAX, 10B
 - 01331099: 66:3981 1800 CMP WORD PTR DS:[ECX+13300181] AX
- Registers (FPU) Window:** Shows floating-point registers. XMM0 contains 1.2000000000000000 and XMM1 contains 0.3821656050955414. Other registers (EAX, ECX, EDX, etc.) are shown with their current values.
- Stack Window:** Shows the stack at address 0017FBC0, which is the return address from simple.01331000 to simple.01331030.

Figure 27.2: OllyDbg: DIVSD calculated quotient and stored it in XMM1

The screenshot displays the OllyDbg interface with the following components:

- Assembly Window:** Shows assembly instructions such as `MULSD XMM0, QWORD PTR DS:[13320C8]` and `ADDSD XMM1, XMM0`. Comments indicate floating-point values like `FLOAT 3.14000` and `FLOAT 4.10000`.
- Registers (FPU) Window:** Lists floating-point registers. XMM0 is highlighted with the value `13.9400000000000000`. XMM1 contains `0.3821656050955414`. Other registers like EAX, ECX, etc., are also visible.
- Memory Dump Window:** Shows a hex dump of memory starting at address `0017FBC0`. The dump includes ASCII characters and hex values, with a return address `0017FBC0` highlighted.

Figure 27.3: OllyDbg: MULSD calculated product and stored it in XMM0

CPU - main thread, module simple

Address	Hex dump	ASCII (A)	Comment
01331000	F20F104C24 0	MOUSD XMM1, QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4]	
01331006	F20F5E00 C02	DIUSD XMM1, QWORD PTR DS:[13320C0]	FLOAT 3.1400
0133100E	F20F104424 0	MOUSD XMM0, QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+0C]	
01331014	F20F5905 002	MULSD XMM0, QWORD PTR DS:[13320D0]	FLOAT 4.1000
0133101C	F20F58C8	ADDSD XMM1, XMM0	
01331020	F20F114C24 0	MOUSD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4], XMM1	FLOAT 0.0, 1
01331026	DD4424 04	FLD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4]	
0133102A	C3	RETN	
0133102B	CC	INT3	
0133102C	CC	INT3	
0133102D	CC	INT3	
0133102E	CC	INT3	
0133102F	CC	INT3	
01331030	F20F1005 C82	MOUSD XMM0, QWORD PTR DS:[13320C8]	FLOAT 3.4000
01331038	83EC 10	SUB ESP, 10	
0133103B	F20F114424 0	MOUSD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+8], XMM0	
01331041	F20F1005 B82	MOUSD XMM0, QWORD PTR DS:[13320B8]	FLOAT 1.2000
01331049	F20F110424	MOUSD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP], XMM0	
0133104E	E8 ADFFFFFF	CALL 01331000	
01331053	DD5C24 08	FSTP QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+8]	
01331057	83C4 08	ADD ESP, 8	
0133105A	68 00303301	PUSH OFFSET 01333000	ASCII "%f0"
0133105F	FF15 3020330	CALL DWORD PTR DS:[<&MSUCR110.pr intf>]	
01331065	83C4 0C	ADD ESP, 0C	
01331068	33C0	XOR EAX, EAX	
0133106A	C3	RETN	
0133106B	CC	INT3	
0133106C	CC	INT3	
0133106D	CC	INT3	
0133106E	CC	INT3	
0133106F	CC	INT3	
01331070	B8 4D5A0000	MOV EAX, 5A4D	
01331075	66:3905 0000	CMP WORD PTR DS:[<STRUCT IMAGE_DOS_HEAD	
0133107A	74 04	JE SHORT 01331082	
0133107E	33C0	XOR EAX, EAX	
01331080	EB 34	JMP SHORT 013310B6	
01331082	8B0D 3C00330	MOV ECX, QWORD PTR DS:[133003C]	
01331088	81B9 0000330	CMP DWORD PTR DS:[ECX+<STRUCT IMAGE_DOS	
01331092	75 EA	JNE SHORT 0133107E	
01331094	B8 0B010000	MOV EAX, 10B	
01331099	66:3981 1800	CMP WORD PTR DS:[ECX+13300181] AX	

XMM1=0.0, 14.32216560509554
Stack [0017FBC4]=1.2000000000000000

Registers (FPU)

EAX	60F80634	MSUCR110.___initenv
ECX	0066D530	
EDX	00000000	
EBX	00000000	
ESP	0017FBC0	
EBP	0017FC10	
ESI	00000001	
EDI	00000000	
EIP	01331020	simple.01331020
C 0	ES 002B	32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
P 0	CS 0023	32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
A 0	SS 002B	32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
Z 0	DS 002B	32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
S 0	FS 0053	32bit 7EFD0000(FFF)
T 0	GS 002B	32bit 0(FFFFFFFF)
D 0		
O 0	LastErr	00000000 ERROR_SUCCESS
EFL	00000202	(NO, NB, NE, A, NS, PO, GE, G)
ST0	empty	0.0
ST1	empty	0.0
ST2	empty	0.0
ST3	empty	0.0
ST4	empty	0.0
ST5	empty	0.0
ST6	empty	0.0
ST7	empty	0.0
FST	0000	Cond 0 0 0 0 Err 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 (GT)
FCW	027F	Prec NEAR, 53 Mask 1 1 1 1 1 1
Last cmd	0000	00000000
XMM0		0.0 13.9400000000000000
XMM1		0.0 14.32216560509554
XMM2		0.0 0.0
XMM3		0.0 0.0
XMM4		0.0 0.0
XMM5		0.0 0.0
XMM6		0.0 0.0
XMM7		0.0 0.0
MXCSR	00001FA0	FZ 0 DZ 0 Err 1 0 0 0 0 0
		Rnd NEAR Mask 1 1 1 1 1 1

Address Hex dump ASCII (A)

0017FBC4	33333333	3333	RETURN from simple.01331000 to simple.013
0017FBC8	3FF33333	33e?	
0017FBCC	33333333	3333	
0017FBD0	400B3333	3330	
0017FBD4	01331271	q#30	RETURN from simple.01331030 to simple.013
0017FBD8	00000001	0	
0017FBDc	0066AC00	mf	
0017FBE0	0066D530	0ff	
0017FBE4	874CE9AB	лwL3	
0017FBE8	00000000		
0017FBEC	00000000		
0017FBF0	7EFD0000	pat	
0017FBF4	00000000		
0017FBF8	0017FBE4	0r	
0017FBFC	0000028A	K0	
0017FC00	0017FC4C	L#	Pointer to next SEH record
0017FC04	013316F9	-30	SE handler
0017FC08	868334F3	e4h	

Figure 27.4: OllyDbg: ADDSD adds value in XMM0 to XMM1

The screenshot displays the OllyDbg interface with the following components:

- Assembly Window:** Shows assembly instructions such as `F20F104C24 0 MOUSD XMM1, QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4]` and `DD4424 04 FLD QWORD PTR SS:[ESP+4]`. The instruction `FLD` is highlighted, indicating the floating-point load operation.
- Registers (FPU) Window:** Lists floating-point registers. `ST0` is highlighted and contains the value `valid 14.322165605095539930`. Other registers like `ST1` through `ST7` are empty.
- Stack Window:** Shows the stack dump starting at address `0017FBC0`. It includes a return path: `RETURN from simple.01331053 to simple.01331013`.

Figure 27.5: OllyDbg: FLD left function result in ST(0)

We see that OllyDbg shows XMM-registers as *double* number pairs, but only *lower* part is used. Apparently, OllyDbg shows them in that format because SSE2-instructions (suffixed with -SD) are executed right now. But of course, it's possible to switch register format and to see its contents as 4 *float*-numbers or just as 16 bytes.

27.2 Passing floating point number via arguments

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main ()
{
    printf ("32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n", pow (32.01,1.54));

    return 0;
}
```

They are passed in lower halves of the XMM0-XMM3 registers.

Listing 27.5: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
$SG1354 DB      '32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf', 0aH, 00H

__real@40400147ae147ae1 DQ 040400147ae147ae1r    ; 32.01
__real@3ff8a3d70a3d70a4 DQ 03ff8a3d70a3d70a4r  ; 1.54

main PROC
    sub     rsp, 40                                ; 00000028H
    movsdx  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@3ff8a3d70a3d70a4
    movsdx  xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@40400147ae147ae1
    call    pow
    lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1354
    movaps  xmm1, xmm0
    movd    rdx, xmm1
    call    printf
    xor     eax, eax
    add     rsp, 40                                ; 00000028H
    ret     0
main ENDP
```

There are no MOVSDX instruction in Intel [Int13] and AMD [AMD13a] manuals, it is called there just MOVSD. So there are two instructions sharing the same name in x86 (about other: A.6.2). Apparently, Microsoft developers wanted to get rid of mess, so they renamed it into MOVSDX. It just loads a value into lower half of XMM-register.

`pow()` takes arguments from XMM0 and XMM1, and returning result in XMM0. It is then moved into RDX for `printf()`. Why? Honestly speaking, I don't know, maybe because `printf()`—is a variable arguments function?

Listing 27.6: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
.LC2:
    .string "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n"

main:
    sub     rsp, 8
    movsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR .LC0[rip]
    movsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR .LC1[rip]
    call   pow
    ; result is now in XMM0
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC2
    mov    eax, 1 ; number of vector registers passed
    call   printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 8
    ret

.LC0:
    .long  171798692
    .long  1073259479

.LC1:
    .long  2920577761
    .long  1077936455
```

GCC makes more clear result. Value for `printf()` is passed in XMM0. By the way, here is a case when 1 is written into EAX for `printf()`—this mean that one argument will be passed in vector registers, just as the standard requires [Mit13].

27.3 Comparison example

```
#include <stdio.h>

double d_max (double a, double b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return a;

    return b;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%f\n", d_max (1.2, 3.4));
    printf ("%f\n", d_max (5.6, -4));
};
```

27.3.1 x64

Listing 27.7: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
a$ = 8
b$ = 16
d_max PROC
    comisd xmm0, xmm1
    ja     SHORT $LN2@d_max
    movaps xmm0, xmm1
$LN2@d_max:
    fatret 0
d_max ENDP
```

Optimizing MSVC generates a code very easy to understand.

COMISD is “Compare Scalar Ordered Double-Precision Floating-Point Values and Set EFLAGS”. Essentially, that is what it does.

Non-optimizing MSVC generates more redundant code, but it is still not hard to understand:

Listing 27.8: MSVC 2012 x64

```
a$ = 8
b$ = 16
d_max PROC
    movsdx QWORD PTR [rsp+16], xmm1
    movsdx QWORD PTR [rsp+8], xmm0
    movsdx xmm0, QWORD PTR a$[rsp]
    comisd xmm0, QWORD PTR b$[rsp]
    jbe    SHORT $LN1@d_max
    movsdx xmm0, QWORD PTR a$[rsp]
    jmp    SHORT $LN2@d_max
$LN1@d_max:
    movsdx xmm0, QWORD PTR b$[rsp]
$LN2@d_max:
    fatret 0
d_max ENDP
```

However, GCC 4.4.6 did more optimizing and used the MAXSD (“Return Maximum Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value”) instruction, which just choose maximal value!

Listing 27.9: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
d_max:
    maxsd  xmm0, xmm1
    ret
```

27.3.2 x86

Let's compile this example in MSVC 2012 with optimization turned on:

Listing 27.10: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_d_max PROC
movsd xmm0, QWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
comisd xmm0, QWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
jbe SHORT $LN1@d_max
fld QWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
ret 0
$LN1@d_max:
fld QWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
ret 0
_d_max ENDP

```

Almost the same, but values of *a* and *b* are taken from stack and function result is left in ST(0).

If to load this example in OllyDbg, we will see how COMISD instruction compares values and set/clear CF and PF flags:

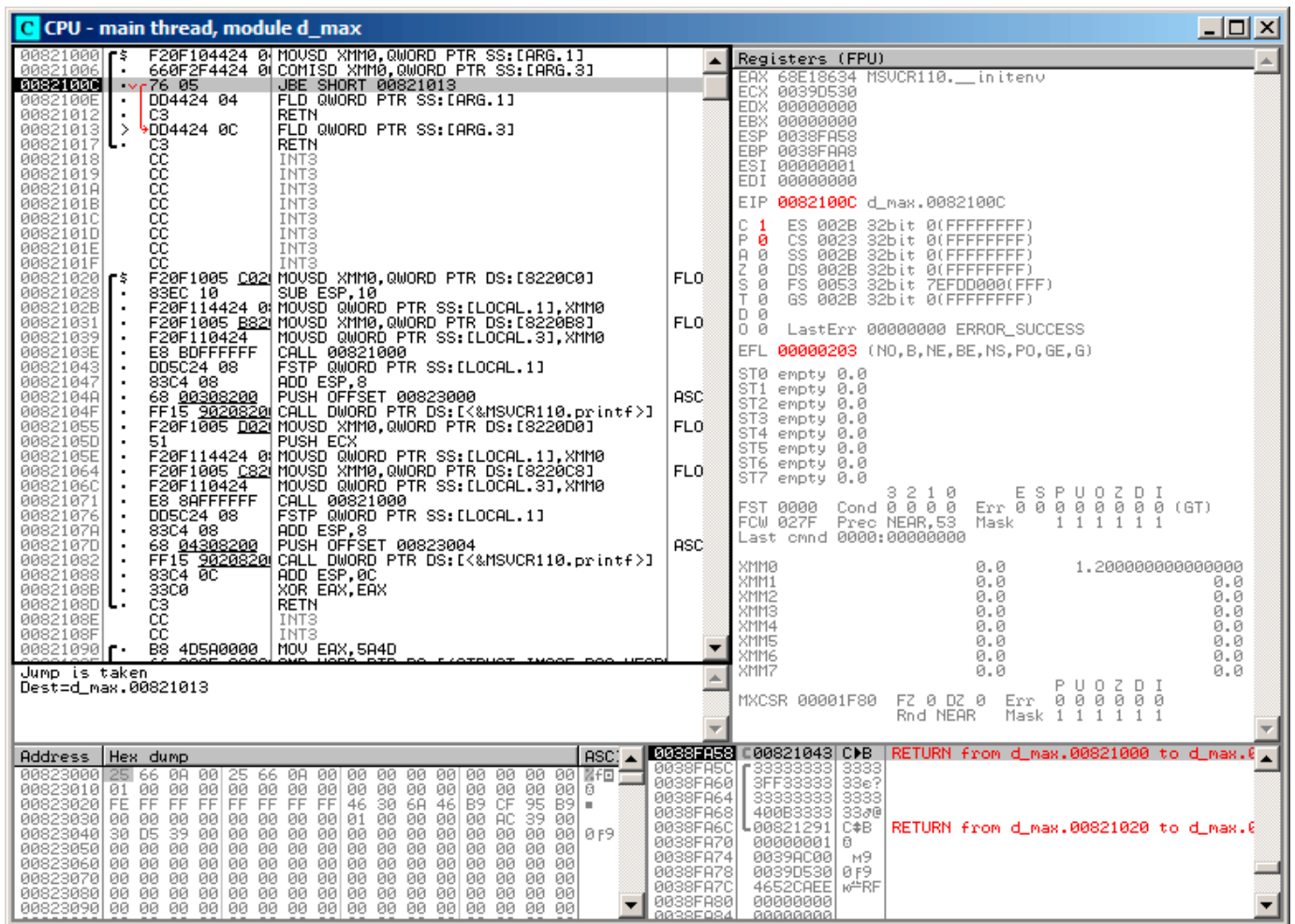


Figure 27.6: OllyDbg: COMISD changed CF and PF flags

27.4 Calculating machine epsilon: x64 and SIMD

Let's revisit "calculating machine epsilon" example for *double* listing.22.2.2 again.

Now we compile it for x64:

Listing 27.11: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

v$ = 8
calculate_machine_epsilon PROC
movsdx QWORD PTR v$[rsp], xmm0
movaps xmm1, xmm0

```

```

inc     QWORD PTR v$[rsp]
movsdx xmm0, QWORD PTR v$[rsp]
subsd  xmm0, xmm1
ret     0
calculate_machine_epsilon ENDP

```

There are no way to add 1 to 128-bit XMM register, so it must be placed into memory yet.

There are, however, ADDSD instruction (*Add Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values*) which can add a value to lowest 64-bit half of XMM register while ignoring highest one, but MSVC 2012 probably is not that good yet ².

Nevertheless, the value is then reloaded to XMM register and subtraction is occurred. SUBSD is “Subtract Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values”, i.e., it operates on lowest 64-bit part of 128-bit XMM register. Result is returned in XMM0 register.

27.5 Summary

Only lower half of XMM-registers are used in all examples here, a number in IEEE 754 format is stored there.

Essentially, all instructions prefixed by -SD (“Scalar Double-Precision”)—are instructions working with float point numbers in IEEE 754 format stored in the lower 64-bit half of XMM-register.

And it is easier than FPU, probably because SIMD extensions were evolved not as chaotic as FPU in the past. Stack register model is not used.

If you would try to replace *double* to *float* in these examples, the same instructions will be used, but prefixed with -SS (“Scalar Single-Precision”), for example, MOVSS, COMISS, ADDSS, etc.

“Scalar” mean that SIMD-register will contain only one value instead of several. Instructions working with several values in a register simultaneously, has “Packed” in the name.

Needless to say that SSE2-instructions works with 64-bit IEEE 754 numbers (*double*), while internal representation of float-point numbers in FPU — 80-bit numbers. Hence, FPU may produce less round-off errors, as a consequence, FPU may give more precise calculation results.

²As an exercise, you may try to rework this code to eliminate local stack usage.

Chapter 28

Temperature converting

Another very popular example in programming books for beginners, is a small program converting Fahrenheit temperature to Celsius or back.

$$C = \frac{5 \cdot (F - 32)}{9}$$

I also added simple error handling: 1) we should check if user enters correct number; 2) we should check if Celsius temperature is not below -273 number (which is below absolute zero, as we may remember from school physics lessons).

`exit()` function terminates program instantly, without returning to the [caller](#) function.

28.1 Integer values

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

int main()
{
    int celsius, fahr;
    printf ("Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:\n");
    if (scanf ("%d", &fahr)!=1)
    {
        printf ("Error while parsing your input\n");
        exit(0);
    };

    celsius = 5 * (fahr-32) / 9;

    if (celsius<-273)
    {
        printf ("Error: incorrect temperature!\n");
        exit(0);
    };
    printf ("Celsius: %d\n", celsius);
};
```

28.1.1 Optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

Listing 28.1: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

```
$SG4228 DB      'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:', 0aH, 00H
$SG4230 DB      '%d', 00H
$SG4231 DB      'Error while parsing your input', 0aH, 00H
$SG4233 DB      'Error: incorrect temperature!', 0aH, 00H
$SG4234 DB      'Celsius: %d', 0aH, 00H

_fahr$ = -4                                ; size = 4
_main PROC
    push    ecx
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    push    OFFSET $SG4228 ; 'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:'
```

```

    call    esi                ; call printf()
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+12]
    push  eax
    push  OFFSET $SG4230      ; '%d'
    call  DWORD PTR __imp__scanf
    add   esp, 12                ; 0000000cH
    cmp   eax, 1
    je    SHORT $LN2@main
    push  OFFSET $SG4231      ; 'Error while parsing your input'
    call  esi                ; call printf()
    add   esp, 4
    push  0
    call  DWORD PTR __imp__exit
$LN9@main:
$LN2@main:
    mov   eax, DWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+8]
    add   eax, -32                ; ffffffff0H
    lea   ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+eax*4]
    mov   eax, 954437177        ; 38e38e39H
    imul  ecx
    sar   edx, 1
    mov   eax, edx
    shr   eax, 31                ; 0000001fH
    add   eax, edx
    cmp   eax, -273            ; ffffffffefH
    jge   SHORT $LN10@main
    push  OFFSET $SG4233      ; 'Error: incorrect temperature!'
    call  esi                ; call printf()
    add   esp, 4
    push  0
    call  DWORD PTR __imp__exit
$LN10@main:
$LN1@main:
    push  eax
    push  OFFSET $SG4234      ; 'Celsius: %d'
    call  esi                ; call printf()
    add   esp, 8
    ; return 0 - at least by C99 standard
    xor   eax, eax
    pop   esi
    pop   ecx
    ret   0
$LN8@main:
_main   ENDP

```

What we can say about it:

- Address of `printf()` is first loaded into ESI register, so the subsequent `printf()` calls are processed just by CALL ESI instruction. It's a very popular compiler technique, possible if several consequent calls to the same function are present in the code, and/or, if there are free register which can be used for this.
- We see `ADD EAX, -32` instruction at the place where 32 should be subtracted from the value. $EAX = EAX + (-32)$ is equivalent to $EAX = EAX - 32$ and somehow, compiler decide to use ADD instead of SUB. Maybe it's worth it, but I'm not sure.
- LEA instruction is used when value should be multiplied by 5: `lea ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+eax*4]`. Yes, $i + i * 4$ is equivalent to $i * 5$ and LEA works faster then IMUL. By the way, `SHL EAX, 2 / ADD EAX, EAX` instructions pair could be also used here instead— some compilers do it in this way.
- Division by multiplication trick (16.3) is also used here.
- `main()` function returns 0 while we haven't `return 0` at its end. C99 standard tells us [ISO07, p. 5.1.2.2.3] that `main()` will return 0 in case of `return` statement absence. This rule works only for `main()` function. Though, MSVC doesn't officially support C99, but maybe its support partial?

28.1.2 Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

The code is almost the same, but I've found `INT 3` instructions after each `exit()` call:

```

xor    ecx, ecx
call   QWORD PTR __imp__exit
int    3

```

INT 3 is a debugger breakpoint.

It is known that `exit()` is one of functions which never can return¹, so if it does, something really odd happens and it's time to load debugger.

28.2 Float point values

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

int main()
{
    double celsius, fahr;
    printf ("Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:\n");
    if (scanf ("%lf", &fahr)!=1)
    {
        printf ("Error while parsing your input\n");
        exit(0);
    };

    celsius = 5 * (fahr-32) / 9;

    if (celsius<-273)
    {
        printf ("Error: incorrect temperature!\n");
        exit(0);
    };
    printf ("Celsius: %lf\n", celsius);
};

```

MSVC 2010 x86 use [FPU](#) instructions...

Listing 28.2: Optimizing MSVC 2010 x86

```

$SG4038 DB      'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:', 0aH, 00H
$SG4040 DB      '%lf', 00H
$SG4041 DB      'Error while parsing your input', 0aH, 00H
$SG4043 DB      'Error: incorrect temperature!', 0aH, 00H
$SG4044 DB      'Celsius: %lf', 0aH, 00H

__real@c071100000000000 DQ 0c0711000000000000r    ; -273
__real@4022000000000000 DQ 040220000000000000r    ; 9
__real@4014000000000000 DQ 040140000000000000r    ; 5
__real@4040000000000000 DQ 040400000000000000r    ; 32

_fahr$ = -8                                     ; size = 8
_main PROC
sub     esp, 8
push   esi
mov     esi, DWORD PTR __imp__printf
push   OFFSET $SG4038                          ; 'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:'
call   esi                                       ; call printf
lea    eax, DWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+16]
push   eax
push   OFFSET $SG4040                          ; '%lf'
call   DWORD PTR __imp__scanf
add    esp, 12                                  ; 0000000cH
cmp    eax, 1
je     SHORT $LN2@main
push   OFFSET $SG4041                          ; 'Error while parsing your input'
call   esi                                       ; call printf
add    esp, 4
push   0
call   DWORD PTR __imp__exit

```

¹another popular one is `longjmp()`


```

$LN2@main:
    fld     QWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+12]
    fsub   QWORD PTR __real@4040000000000000 ; 32
    fmul   QWORD PTR __real@4014000000000000 ; 5
    fdiv   QWORD PTR __real@4022000000000000 ; 9
    fld     QWORD PTR __real@c071100000000000 ; -273
    fcomp  ST(1)
    fnstsw ax
    test   ah, 65 ; 00000041H
    jne    SHORT $LN1@main
    push   OFFSET $SG4043 ; 'Error: incorrect temperature!'
    fstp   ST(0)
    call   esi ; call printf
    add    esp, 4
    push   0
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__exit
$LN1@main:
    sub    esp, 8
    fstp   QWORD PTR [esp]
    push   OFFSET $SG4044 ; 'Celsius: %lf'
    call   esi
    add    esp, 12 ; 0000000cH
    ; return 0
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    esi
    add    esp, 8
    ret    0
$LN10@main:
_main   ENDP

```

...but MSVC from year 2012 use [SIMD](#) instructions instead:

Listing 28.3: Optimizing MSVC 2010 x86

```

$SG4228 DB 'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:', 0aH, 00H
$SG4230 DB '%lf', 00H
$SG4231 DB 'Error while parsing your input', 0aH, 00H
$SG4233 DB 'Error: incorrect temperature!', 0aH, 00H
$SG4234 DB 'Celsius: %lf', 0aH, 00H
__real@c071100000000000 DQ 0c0711000000000000r ; -273
__real@4040000000000000 DQ 040400000000000000r ; 32
__real@4022000000000000 DQ 040220000000000000r ; 9
__real@4014000000000000 DQ 040140000000000000r ; 5

_fahr$ = -8 ; size = 8
_main PROC
    sub    esp, 8
    push   esi
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    push   OFFSET $SG4228 ; 'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:'
    call   esi ; call printf
    lea   eax, DWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+16]
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG4230 ; '%lf'
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__scanf
    add    esp, 12 ; 0000000cH
    cmp    eax, 1
    je     SHORT $LN2@main
    push   OFFSET $SG4231 ; 'Error while parsing your input'
    call   esi ; call printf
    add    esp, 4
    push   0
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__exit
$LN9@main:
$LN2@main:
    movsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+12]
    subsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4040000000000000 ; 32
    movsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@c071100000000000 ; -273
    mulsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4014000000000000 ; 5
    divsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4022000000000000 ; 9
    comisd xmm0, xmm1

```

```

    jbe     SHORT $LN1@main
    push   OFFSET $SG4233          ; 'Error: incorrect temperature!'
    call   esi                     ; call printf
    add    esp, 4
    push   0
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__exit
$LN10@main:
$LN1@main:
    sub    esp, 8
    movsd  QWORD PTR [esp], xmm1
    push   OFFSET $SG4234          ; 'Celsius: %lf'
    call   esi                     ; call printf
    add    esp, 12                 ; 0000000cH
    ; return 0
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    esi
    add    esp, 8
    ret    0
$LN8@main:
_main    ENDP

```

Of course, [SIMD](#) instructions are available in x86 mode, including those working with floating point numbers. It's somewhat easier to use them for calculations, so the new Microsoft compiler use them.

We may also notice that `-273` value is loaded into `XMM0` register too early. And that's OK, because, compiler may emit instructions not in the order they are in source code.

Chapter 29

Fibonacci numbers

Another often used in programming textbooks example is a recursive function generating Fibonacci numbers¹. The sequence is very simple: each consecutive number is a sum of two previous. First two numbers are 1's or 0, 1 and 1.

The beginning of the sequence is:

0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89, 144, 233, 377, 610, 987, 1597, 2584, 4181...

29.1 Example #1

Implementation is simple. This program generates a sequence till 21.

```
#include <stdio.h>

void fib (int a, int b, int limit)
{
    printf ("%d\n", a+b);
    if (a+b > limit)
        return;
    fib (b, a+b, limit);
};

int main()
{
    printf ("0\n1\n1\n");
    fib (1, 1, 20);
};
```

Listing 29.1: MSVC 2010 x86

```
_TEXT SEGMENT
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_b$ = 12 ; size = 4
_limit$ = 16 ; size = 4
_fib PROC
    push ebp
    mov ebp, esp
    mov eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    add eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push eax
    push OFFSET $SG2750 ; "%d"
    call DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add esp, 8
    mov ecx, DWORD PTR _limit$[ebp]
    push ecx
    mov edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    add edx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push edx
    mov eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push eax
    call _fib
    add esp, 12
    pop ebp
```

¹<http://oeis.org/A000045>

```
_fib    ret    0
       ENDP

_main  PROC
       push   ebp
       mov    ebp, esp
       push   OFFSET $SG2753 ; "0\n1\n1\n"
       call  DWORD PTR __imp__printf
       add   esp, 4
       push   20
       push   1
       push   1
       call  _fib
       add   esp, 12
       xor   eax, eax
       pop   ebp
       ret   0
_main  ENDP
```

So I wanted to illustrate stack frames by this.

Let's load the example to OllyDbg and trace to the latest call of f() function:

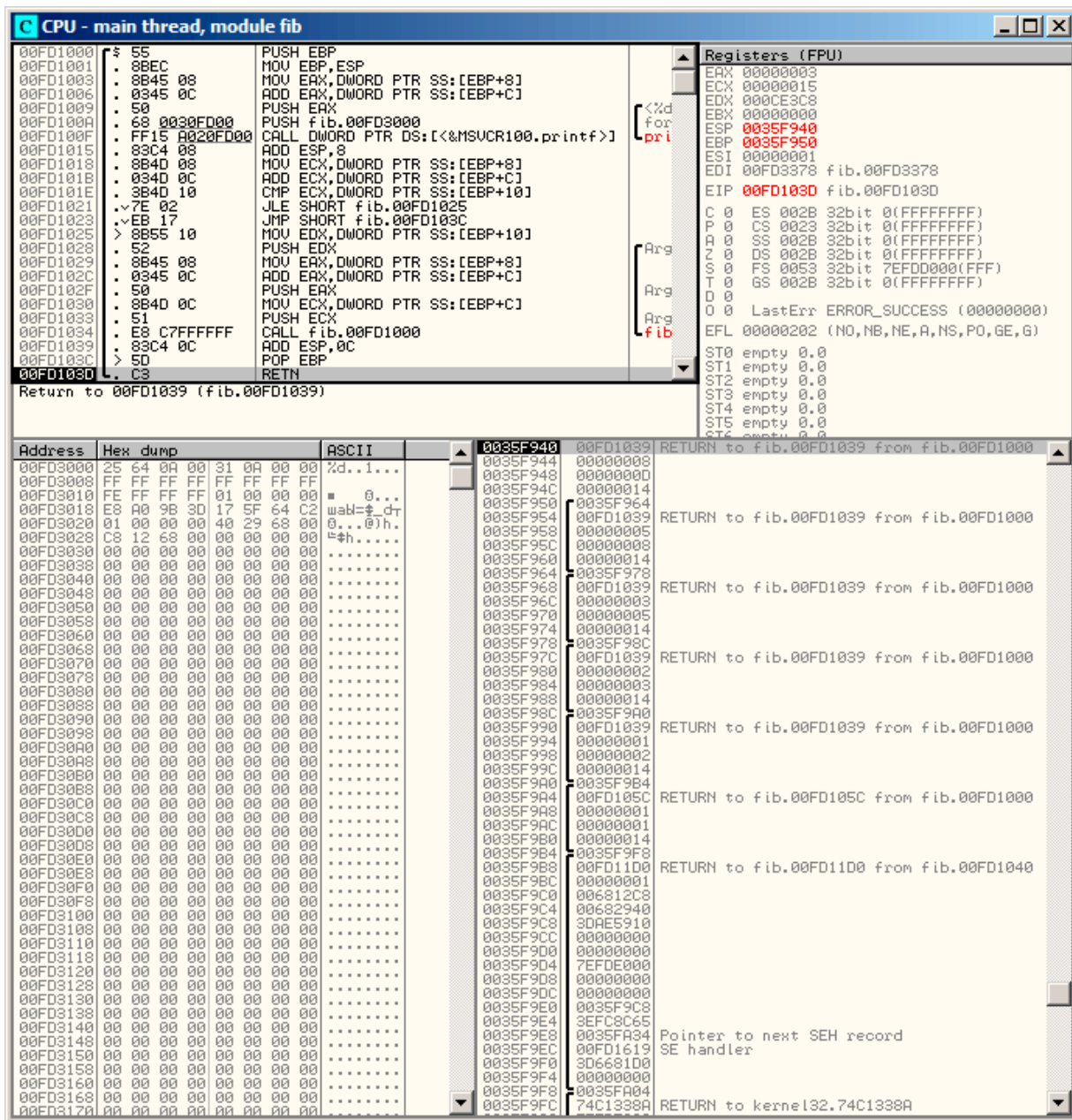


Figure 29.1: OllyDbg: last call of f()

Let's investigate stack more closely. I added some comments to it ²:

```

0035F940  00FD1039  RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F944  00000008  argument #1: a
0035F948  0000000D  argument #2: b
0035F94C  00000014  argument #3: limit
0035F950  /0035F964  saved EBP register
0035F954  |00FD1039  RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F958  |00000005  argument #1: a
0035F95C  |00000008  argument #2: b
0035F960  |00000014  argument #3: limit
0035F964  ]0035F978  saved EBP register
0035F968  |00FD1039  RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F96C  |00000003  argument #1: a
0035F970  |00000005  argument #2: b
0035F974  |00000014  argument #3: limit
0035F978  ]0035F98C  saved EBP register
0035F97C  |00FD1039  RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F980  |00000002  argument #1: a
0035F984  |00000003  argument #2: b
0035F988  |00000014  argument #3: limit
0035F98C  ]0035F9A0  saved EBP register
0035F990  |00FD1039  RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F994  |00000001  argument #1: a
0035F998  |00000002  argument #2: b
0035F99C  |00000014  argument #3: limit
0035F9A0  ]0035F9B4  saved EBP register
0035F9A4  |00FD105C  RETURN to fib.00FD105C from fib.00FD1000
0035F9A8  |00000001  argument #1: a          \
0035F9AC  |00000001  argument #2: b          | prepared in main() for f1()
0035F9B0  |00000014  argument #3: limit      /
0035F9B4  ]0035F9F8  saved EBP register
0035F9B8  |00FD11D0  RETURN to fib.00FD11D0 from fib.00FD1040
0035F9BC  |00000001  main() argument #1: argc \
0035F9C0  |006812C8  main() argument #2: argv | prepared in CRT for main()
0035F9C4  |00682940  main() argument #3: envp /

```

The function is recursive ³, hence stack looks like “sandwich”. We see that *limit* argument is always the same (0x14 or 20), but *a* and *b* arguments are different for each call. There are also *RA*-s and saved EBP values. OllyDbg is able to determine EBP-based frames, so it draws these brackets. Values inside of each bracket are *stack frame*, in other words, stack area which each function incarnation can use as scratch space. We can also say that each function incarnation must not access stack elements beyond frame boundaries (excluding function arguments), although it's technically possible. It's usually true, unless function has bugs. Each saved EBP value is an address of previous *stack frame*: it is a reason why some debuggers can easily divide stack by frames and dump each function's arguments.

As we see here, each function incarnation prepares arguments for the next function call.

At the very end we see a 3 arguments for *main()*. *argc* is 1 (yes, indeed, the program I run without command-line arguments).

It's easy to do stack overflow: just remove (or comment) *limit* check and it will crash with exception 0xC00000FD (stack overflow).

29.2 Example #2

My function has some amount of redundancy, so let's add new local variable *next* and replace all “a+b” by it:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void fib (int a, int b, int limit)
{
    int next=a+b;
    printf ("%d\n", next);
    if (next > limit)
        return;
    fib (b, next, limit);
};

int main()

```

²By the way, it's possible to select several entries in OllyDbg and copy them to clipboard (Ctrl-C). That's what I just did.

³i.e., calling itself

```
{
    printf ("0\n1\n1\n");
    fib (1, 1, 20);
};
```

This is output of non-optimizing MSVC, so *next* variable is actually allocated in local stack:

Listing 29.2: MSVC 2010 x86

```
_next$ = -4      ; size = 4
_a$ = 8         ; size = 4
_b$ = 12        ; size = 4
_limit$ = 16    ; size = 4
_fib PROC
    push        ebp
    mov         ebp, esp
    push        ecx
    mov         eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    add         eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    mov         DWORD PTR _next$[ebp], eax
    mov         ecx, DWORD PTR _next$[ebp]
    push        ecx
    push        OFFSET $SG2751 ; '%d'
    call        DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add         esp, 8
    mov         edx, DWORD PTR _next$[ebp]
    cmp         edx, DWORD PTR _limit$[ebp]
    jle         SHORT $LN1@fib
    jmp         SHORT $LN2@fib
$LN1@fib:
    mov         eax, DWORD PTR _limit$[ebp]
    push        eax
    mov         ecx, DWORD PTR _next$[ebp]
    push        ecx
    mov         edx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push        edx
    call        _fib
    add         esp, 12
$LN2@fib:
    mov         esp, ebp
    pop         ebp
    ret         0
_fib ENDP

_main PROC
    push        ebp
    mov         ebp, esp
    push        OFFSET $SG2753 ; "0\n1\n1\n"
    call        DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add         esp, 4
    push        20
    push        1
    push        1
    call        _fib
    add         esp, 12
    xor         eax, eax
    pop         ebp
    ret         0
_main ENDP
```

Let's load OllyDbg again:

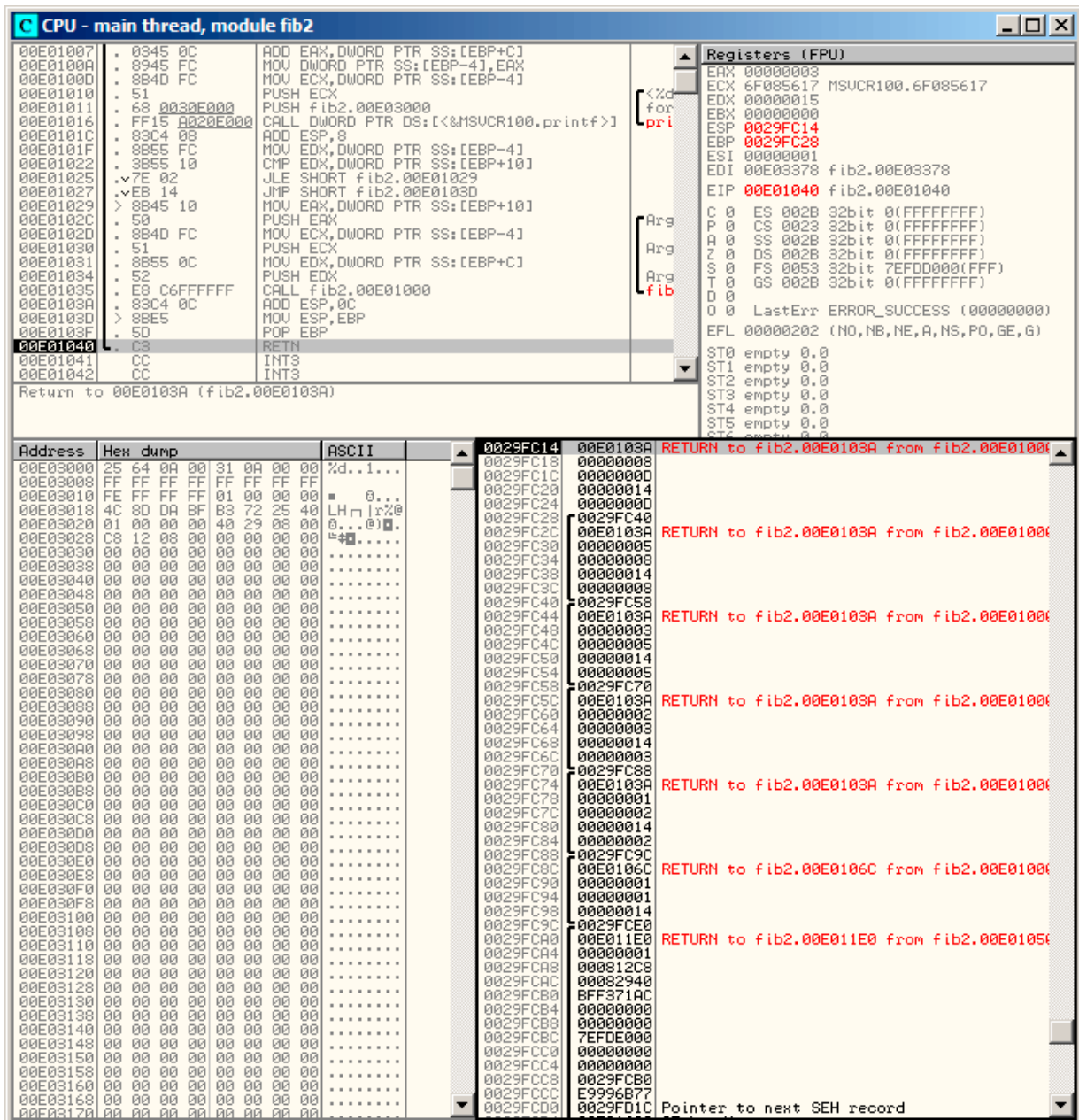


Figure 29.2: OllyDbg: last call of f()

Now *next* variable is present in each frame.

Let's investigate the stack more closely. I added my comments again:

```

0029FC14 00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC18 00000008 argument #1: a
0029FC1C 0000000D argument #2: b
0029FC20 00000014 argument #3: limit
0029FC24 0000000D "next" variable
0029FC28 /0029FC40 saved EBP register
0029FC2C |00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC30 |00000005 argument #1: a
0029FC34 |00000008 argument #2: b
0029FC38 |00000014 argument #3: limit
0029FC3C |00000008 "next" variable
0029FC40 ]0029FC58 saved EBP register
0029FC44 |00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC48 |00000003 argument #1: a
0029FC4C |00000005 argument #2: b
0029FC50 |00000014 argument #3: limit
0029FC54 |00000005 "next" variable
0029FC58 ]0029FC70 saved EBP register
0029FC5C |00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC60 |00000002 argument #1: a
0029FC64 |00000003 argument #2: b
0029FC68 |00000014 argument #3: limit
0029FC6C |00000003 "next" variable
0029FC70 ]0029FC88 saved EBP register
0029FC74 |00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC78 |00000001 argument #1: a \
0029FC7C |00000002 argument #2: b | prepared in f1() for next f1()
0029FC80 |00000014 argument #3: limit /
0029FC84 |00000002 "next" variable
0029FC88 ]0029FC9C saved EBP register
0029FC8C |00E0106C RETURN to fib2.00E0106C from fib2.00E01000
0029FC90 |00000001 argument #1: a \
0029FC94 |00000001 argument #2: b | prepared in main() for f1()
0029FC98 |00000014 argument #3: limit /
0029FC9C ]0029FCE0 saved EBP register
0029FCA0 |00E011E0 RETURN to fib2.00E011E0 from fib2.00E01050
0029FCA4 |00000001 main() argument #1: argc \
0029FCA8 |000812C8 main() argument #2: argv | prepared in CRT for main()
0029FCAC |00082940 main() argument #3: envp /

```

Here we see it: *next* value is calculated in each function incarnation, then passed as *b* argument to the next incarnation.

29.3 Summary

Recursive functions are aesthetically nice, but technically may degrade performance because of heavy stack usage. One who write performance critical code pieces, probably, should avoid recursion there.

Chapter 30

C99 restrict

Here is a reason why FORTRAN programs, in some cases, works faster than C/C++ ones.

```
void f1 (int* x, int* y, int* sum, int* product, int* sum_product, int* update_me, size_t s)
{
    for (int i=0; i<s; i++)
    {
        sum[i]=x[i]+y[i];
        product[i]=x[i]*y[i];
        update_me[i]=i*123; // some dummy value
        sum_product[i]=sum[i]+product[i];
    };
};
```

That's very simple example with one specific thing in it: pointer to `update_me` array could be a pointer to `sum` array, `product` array, or even `sum_product` array—since it is not a crime in it, right?

Compiler is fully aware about it, so it generates a code with four stages in loop body:

- calculate next `sum[i]`
- calculate next `product[i]`
- calculate next `update_me[i]`
- calculate next `sum_product[i]`— on this stage, we need to load from memory already calculated `sum[i]` and `product[i]`

Is it possible to optimize the last stage? Since already calculated `sum[i]` and `product[i]` are not necessary to load from memory again, because we already calculated them. Yes, but compiler is not sure that nothing was overwritten on 3rd stage! This is called “pointer aliasing”, a situation, when compiler cannot be sure that a memory to which a pointer is pointing, was not changed.

restrict in C99 standard [ISO07, pp. 6.7.3/1] is a promise, given by programmer to compiler that the function arguments marked by this keyword will always be pointing to different memory locations and never be crossed.

If to be more precise and describe this formally, *restrict* shows that only this pointer is to be used to access an object, and no other pointer will be used for it. It can be even said the object will be accessed only via one single pointer, if it is marked as *restrict*.

Let's add this keyword to each argument-pointer:

```
void f2 (int* restrict x, int* restrict y, int* restrict sum, int* restrict product, int* ↵
    ↵ restrict sum_product,
    int* restrict update_me, size_t s)
{
    for (int i=0; i<s; i++)
    {
        sum[i]=x[i]+y[i];
        product[i]=x[i]*y[i];
        update_me[i]=i*123; // some dummy value
        sum_product[i]=sum[i]+product[i];
    };
};
```

Let's see results:

Listing 30.1: GCC x64: f1()

```
f1:
    push    r15 r14 r13 r12 rbp rdi rsi rbx
```

```

mov    r13, QWORD PTR 120[rsp]
mov    rbp, QWORD PTR 104[rsp]
mov    r12, QWORD PTR 112[rsp]
test   r13, r13
je     .L1
add    r13, 1
xor    ebx, ebx
mov    edi, 1
xor    r11d, r11d
jmp    .L4
.L6:
mov    r11, rdi
mov    rdi, rax
.L4:
lea    rax, 0[0+r11*4]
lea    r10, [rcx+rax]
lea    r14, [rdx+rax]
lea    rsi, [r8+rax]
add    rax, r9
mov    r15d, DWORD PTR [r10]
add    r15d, DWORD PTR [r14]
mov    DWORD PTR [rsi], r15d      ; store to sum[]
mov    r10d, DWORD PTR [r10]
imul  r10d, DWORD PTR [r14]
mov    DWORD PTR [rax], r10d     ; store to product[]
mov    DWORD PTR [r12+r11*4], ebx ; store to update_me[]
add    ebx, 123
mov    r10d, DWORD PTR [rsi]     ; reload sum[i]
add    r10d, DWORD PTR [rax]     ; reload product[i]
lea    rax, 1[rdi]
cmp    rax, r13
mov    DWORD PTR 0[rbp+r11*4], r10d ; store to sum_product[]
jne    .L6
.L1:
pop    rbx rsi rdi rbp r12 r13 r14 r15
ret

```

Listing 30.2: GCC x64: f2()

```

f2:
push   r13 r12 rbp rdi rsi rbx
mov    r13, QWORD PTR 104[rsp]
mov    rbp, QWORD PTR 88[rsp]
mov    r12, QWORD PTR 96[rsp]
test   r13, r13
je     .L7
add    r13, 1
xor    r10d, r10d
mov    edi, 1
xor    eax, eax
jmp    .L10
.L11:
mov    rax, rdi
mov    rdi, r11
.L10:
mov    esi, DWORD PTR [rcx+rax*4]
mov    r11d, DWORD PTR [rdx+rax*4]
mov    DWORD PTR [r12+rax*4], r10d ; store to update_me[]
add    r10d, 123
lea    ebx, [rsi+r11]
imul  r11d, esi
mov    DWORD PTR [r8+rax*4], ebx   ; store to sum[]
mov    DWORD PTR [r9+rax*4], r11d ; store to product[]
add    r11d, ebx
mov    DWORD PTR 0[rbp+rax*4], r11d ; store to sum_product[]
lea    r11, 1[rdi]
cmp    r11, r13
jne    .L11
.L7:
pop    rbx rsi rdi rbp r12 r13

```

ret

The difference between compiled `f1()` and `f2()` function is as follows: in `f1()`, `sum[i]` and `product[i]` are reloaded in the middle of loop, and in `f2()` there are no such thing, already calculated values are used, since we “promised” to compiler, that no one and nothing will change values in `sum[i]` and `product[i]` while execution of loop body, so it is “sure” the value from memory may not be loaded again. Obviously, second example will work faster.

But what if pointers in function arguments will be crossed somehow? This will be on programmer’s conscience, and results may be incorrect.

Let’s back to FORTRAN. Compilers of this programming language treats all pointers as such, so when it was not possible to set *restrict* in C, FORTRAN may generate faster code in these cases.

How practical is it? In the cases when function works with several big blocks in memory. There are a lot of such in linear algebra, for instance. A lot of linear algebra used on supercomputers/[HPC](#)¹, probably, that is why, traditionally, FORTRAN is still used there [[Loh10](#)].

But when a number of iterations is not very big, certainly, speed boost will not be significant.

¹High-Performance Computing

Chapter 31

Inline functions

Inlined code is when compiler, instead of placing call instruction to a small or tiny function, just placing its body right in-place.

Listing 31.1: Simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

int celsius_to_fahrenheit (int celsius)
{
    return celsius * 9 / 5 + 32;
};

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    int celsius=atol(argv[1]);
    printf ("%d\n", celsius_to_fahrenheit (celsius));
};
```

... is compiled in very predictable way, however, if to turn on GCC optimization (-O3), we'll see:

Listing 31.2: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```
_main:
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and     esp, -16
    sub     esp, 16
    call    ___main
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [ebp+12]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], eax
    call    _atol
    mov     edx, 1717986919
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:LC2 ; "%d\n"
    lea    ecx, [eax+eax*8]
    mov     eax, ecx
    imul   edx
    sar     ecx, 31
    sar     edx
    sub     edx, ecx
    add     edx, 32
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+4], edx
    call    _printf
    leave
    ret
```

(Here division is done by multiplication(16.3).)

Yes, our small function `celsius_to_fahrenheit()` was just placed before `printf()` call. Why? It may be faster than executing this function's code plus calling/returning overhead.

In past, such function must be marked with "inline" keyword in function's declaration, however, in modern times, these functions are automatically chosen by compiler.

31.1 Strings and memory functions

Another very common automatic optimization tactic is inlining of string functions like *strcpy()*, *strcmp()*, *strlen()*, *memset()*, *memcpy()*, *memcpy()*, etc.

Sometimes it's faster then to call separate function.

These are very frequent patterns, which are highly advisable to reverse engineers to learn to detect automatically.

31.1.1 strcmp()

Listing 31.3: strcmp() example

```
bool is_bool (char *s)
{
    if (strcmp (s, "true")==0)
        return true;
    if (strcmp (s, "false")==0)
        return false;

    assert(0);
};
```

Listing 31.4: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```
.LC0:
    .string "true"
.LC1:
    .string "false"
is_bool:
.LFB0:
    push    edi
    mov     ecx, 5
    push    esi
    mov     edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    sub     esp, 20
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    repz   cmpsb
    je     .L3
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    mov     ecx, 6
    mov     edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
    repz   cmpsb
    seta   cl
    setb   dl
    xor     eax, eax
    cmp    cl, dl
    jne    .L8
    add    esp, 20
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    ret

.L8:
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], 0
    call   assert
    add    esp, 20
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    ret

.L3:
    add    esp, 20
    mov    eax, 1
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    ret
```

Listing 31.5: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
$SG3454 DB    'true', 00H
$SG3456 DB    'false', 00H
```

```

_s$ = 8 ; size = 4
?is_bool@@YA_NPAD@Z PROC ; is_bool
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _s$[esp]
    mov     ecx, OFFSET $SG3454 ; 'true'
    mov     eax, esi
    npad   4 ; align next label
$LL6@is_bool:
    mov     dl, BYTE PTR [eax]
    cmp     dl, BYTE PTR [ecx]
    jne     SHORT $LN7@is_bool
    test    dl, dl
    je     SHORT $LN8@is_bool
    mov     dl, BYTE PTR [eax+1]
    cmp     dl, BYTE PTR [ecx+1]
    jne     SHORT $LN7@is_bool
    add     eax, 2
    add     ecx, 2
    test    dl, dl
    jne     SHORT $LL6@is_bool
$LN8@is_bool:
    xor     eax, eax
    jmp     SHORT $LN9@is_bool
$LN7@is_bool:
    sbb     eax, eax
    sbb     eax, -1
$LN9@is_bool:
    test    eax, eax
    jne     SHORT $LN2@is_bool

    mov     al, 1
    pop     esi

    ret     0
$LN2@is_bool:

    mov     ecx, OFFSET $SG3456 ; 'false'
    mov     eax, esi
$LL10@is_bool:
    mov     dl, BYTE PTR [eax]
    cmp     dl, BYTE PTR [ecx]
    jne     SHORT $LN11@is_bool
    test    dl, dl
    je     SHORT $LN12@is_bool
    mov     dl, BYTE PTR [eax+1]
    cmp     dl, BYTE PTR [ecx+1]
    jne     SHORT $LN11@is_bool
    add     eax, 2
    add     ecx, 2
    test    dl, dl
    jne     SHORT $LL10@is_bool
$LN12@is_bool:
    xor     eax, eax
    jmp     SHORT $LN13@is_bool
$LN11@is_bool:
    sbb     eax, eax
    sbb     eax, -1
$LN13@is_bool:
    test    eax, eax
    jne     SHORT $LN1@is_bool

    xor     al, al
    pop     esi

    ret     0
$LN1@is_bool:

    push    11
    push    OFFSET $SG3458
    push    OFFSET $SG3459

```

```

    call    DWORD PTR __imp__wassert
    add     esp, 12
    pop     esi

    ret     0
?is_bool@YA_NPAD@Z ENDP ; is_bool

```

31.1.2 strlen()

Listing 31.6: strlen() example

```

int strlen_test(char *s1)
{
    return strlen(s1);
};

```

Listing 31.7: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_s1$ = 8 ; size = 4
_strlen_test PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _s1$[esp-4]
    lea     edx, DWORD PTR [eax+1]
$LL3@strlen_tes:
    mov     cl, BYTE PTR [eax]
    inc     eax
    test    cl, cl
    jne     SHORT $LL3@strlen_tes
    sub     eax, edx
    ret     0
_strlen_test ENDP

```

31.1.3 strcpy()

Listing 31.8: strcpy() example

```

void strcpy_test(char *s1, char *outbuf)
{
    strcpy(outbuf, s1);
};

```

Listing 31.9: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_s1$ = 8      ; size = 4
_outbuf$ = 12 ; size = 4
_strcpy_test PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _s1$[esp-4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _outbuf$[esp-4]
    sub     edx, eax
    npad    6 ; align next label
$LL3@strcpy_tes:
    mov     cl, BYTE PTR [eax]
    mov     BYTE PTR [edx+eax], cl
    inc     eax
    test    cl, cl
    jne     SHORT $LL3@strcpy_tes
    ret     0
_strcpy_test ENDP

```

31.1.4 memset()

Example#1

Listing 31.10: 32 bytes

```

#include <stdio.h>

```



```
void f(char *out)
{
    memset(out, 0, 32);
};
```

Many compilers doesn't generate call to `memset()` for short blocks, but rather inserting `MOV`:

Listing 31.11: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```
f:
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi], 0
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi+8], 0
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi+16], 0
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi+24], 0
    ret
```

By the way, that remind us unrolled loops: [14.1.4](#).

Example#2

Listing 31.12: 67 bytes

```
#include <stdio.h>
void f(char *out)
{
    memset(out, 0, 67);
};
```

When block size is not multiply of 4 or 8, compilers may behave differently. For instance, MSVC 2012 continue to insert `MOV`:

Listing 31.13: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
out$ = 8
f    PROC
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    QWORD PTR [rcx], rax
    mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+8], rax
    mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+16], rax
    mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+24], rax
    mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+32], rax
    mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+40], rax
    mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+48], rax
    mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+56], rax
    mov    WORD PTR [rcx+64], ax
    mov    BYTE PTR [rcx+66], al
    ret    0
f    ENDP
```

...while GCC uses `REP STOSQ`, concluding that this would be shorter than pack of `MOV`'s:

Listing 31.14: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```
f:
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi], 0
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi+59], 0
    mov    rcx, rdi
    lea   rdi, [rdi+8]
    xor    eax, eax
    and   rdi, -8
    sub   rcx, rdi
    add   ecx, 67
    shr   ecx, 3
    rep  stosq
    ret
```

31.1.5 memcpy()

Short blocks

Short block copy routine is often implemented as pack of `MOV` instructions.

Listing 31.15: memcpy() example

```
void memcpy_7(char *inbuf, char *outbuf)
{
    memcpy(outbuf+10, inbuf, 7);
};
```

Listing 31.16: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_inbuf$ = 8      ; size = 4
_outbuf$ = 12   ; size = 4
_memcpy_7 PROC
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _inbuf$[esp-4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _outbuf$[esp-4]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+10], edx
    mov     dx, WORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov     WORD PTR [eax+14], dx
    mov     cl, BYTE PTR [ecx+6]
    mov     BYTE PTR [eax+16], cl
    ret     0
_memcpy_7 ENDP
```

Listing 31.17: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```
memcpy_7:
    push    ebx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR [eax]
    lea    edx, [ecx+10]
    mov     DWORD PTR [ecx+10], ebx
    movzx  ecx, WORD PTR [eax+4]
    mov     WORD PTR [edx+4], cx
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [eax+6]
    mov     BYTE PTR [edx+6], al
    pop    ebx
    ret
```

That's usually done as follows: 4-byte blocks are copied first, then 16-bit word (if needed), then the last byte (if needed). Structures are also copied using MOV: [21.4.1](#).

Long blocks

Compilers behave differently here.

Listing 31.18: memcpy() example

```
void memcpy_128(char *inbuf, char *outbuf)
{
    memcpy(outbuf+10, inbuf, 128);
};

void memcpy_123(char *inbuf, char *outbuf)
{
    memcpy(outbuf+10, inbuf, 123);
};
```

While copying 128 bytes, MSVC can do this with single MOVSD instruction (because 128 divides evenly by 4):

Listing 31.19: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_inbuf$ = 8      ; size = 4
_outbuf$ = 12   ; size = 4
_memcpy_128 PROC
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _inbuf$[esp]
    push    edi
    mov     edi, DWORD PTR _outbuf$[esp+4]
    add     edi, 10
    mov     ecx, 32
    rep movsd
```

```

    pop    edi
    pop    esi
    ret    0
_memcpy_128 ENDP

```

When 123 bytes are copying, 30 32-byte words are copied first using instruction MOVSD (that's 120 bytes), then 2 bytes are copied using MOVSW, then one more byte using MOVSB.

Listing 31.20: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_inbuf$ = 8           ; size = 4
_outbuf$ = 12        ; size = 4
_memcpy_123 PROC
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _inbuf$[esp]
    push    edi
    mov     edi, DWORD PTR _outbuf$[esp+4]
    add     edi, 10
    mov     ecx, 30
    rep movsd
    movsw
    movsb
    pop     edi
    pop     esi
    ret     0
_memcpy_123 ENDP

```

GCC uses one big universal functions, working for any block size:

Listing 31.21: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```

memcpy_123:
.LFB3:
    push    edi
    mov     eax, 123
    push    esi
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
    lea     edi, [edx+10]
    test    edi, 1
    jne     .L24
    test    edi, 2
    jne     .L25
.L7:
    mov     ecx, eax
    xor     edx, edx
    shr     ecx, 2
    test    al, 2
    rep movsd
    je     .L8
    movzx   edx, WORD PTR [esi]
    mov     WORD PTR [edi], dx
    mov     edx, 2
.L8:
    test    al, 1
    je     .L5
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [esi+edx]
    mov     BYTE PTR [edi+edx], al
.L5:
    pop     esi
    pop     edi
    ret
.L24:
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [esi]
    lea     edi, [edx+11]
    add     esi, 1
    test    edi, 2
    mov     BYTE PTR [edx+10], al
    mov     eax, 122
    je     .L7
.L25:
    movzx   edx, WORD PTR [esi]

```

```

    add    edi, 2
    add    esi, 2
    sub    eax, 2
    mov    WORD PTR [edi-2], dx
    jmp    .L7
.LFE3:

```

Universal memory copy functions are usually works as follows: calculate, how many 32-bit words can be copied, then copy then by MOVSD, then copy remaining bytes.

More complex copy functions uses [SIMD](#) instructions and also take memory aligning into consideration.

31.1.6 memcmp()

Listing 31.22: memcmp() example

```

void memcpy_1235(char *inbuf, char *outbuf)
{
    memcpy(outbuf+10, inbuf, 1235);
};

```

For any block size, MSVC 2010 inserts the same universal function:

Listing 31.23: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_buf1$ = 8      ; size = 4
_buf2$ = 12     ; size = 4
_memcmp_1235 PROC
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _buf2$[esp-4]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _buf1$[esp-4]
    push   esi
    push   edi
    mov     esi, 1235
    add     edx, 10
$LL4@memcmp_123:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    cmp     eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    jne     SHORT $LN10@memcmp_123
    sub     esi, 4
    add     ecx, 4
    add     edx, 4
    cmp     esi, 4
    jae     SHORT $LL4@memcmp_123
$LN10@memcmp_123:
    movzx   edi, BYTE PTR [ecx]
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [edx]
    sub     eax, edi
    jne     SHORT $LN7@memcmp_123
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [edx+1]
    movzx   edi, BYTE PTR [ecx+1]
    sub     eax, edi
    jne     SHORT $LN7@memcmp_123
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [edx+2]
    movzx   edi, BYTE PTR [ecx+2]
    sub     eax, edi
    jne     SHORT $LN7@memcmp_123
    cmp     esi, 3
    jbe     SHORT $LN6@memcmp_123
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [edx+3]
    movzx   ecx, BYTE PTR [ecx+3]
    sub     eax, ecx
$LN7@memcmp_123:
    sar     eax, 31
    pop     edi
    or     eax, 1
    pop     esi
    ret     0
$LN6@memcmp_123:
    pop     edi
    xor     eax, eax
    pop     esi

```

```
    ret    0
_memcmp_1235 ENDP
```

31.1.7 IDA script

I wrote small [IDA](https://github.com/yurichev/IDA_scripts) script for searching and folding such very frequently seen pieces of inline code:
https://github.com/yurichev/IDA_scripts.

Chapter 32

Incorrectly disassembled code

Practicing reverse engineers often dealing with incorrectly disassembled code.

32.1 Disassembling started incorrectly (x86)

Unlike ARM and MIPS (where any instruction has length of 2 or 4 bytes), x86 instructions has variable size, so, any disassembler, starting at the middle of x86 instruction, may produce incorrect results.

As an example:

```

add     [ebp-31F7Bh], cl
dec     dword ptr [ecx-3277Bh]
dec     dword ptr [ebp-2CF7Bh]
inc     dword ptr [ebx-7A76F33Ch]
fdiv   st(4), st
db 0FFh
dec     dword ptr [ecx-21F7Bh]
dec     dword ptr [ecx-22373h]
dec     dword ptr [ecx-2276Bh]
dec     dword ptr [ecx-22B63h]
dec     dword ptr [ecx-22F4Bh]
dec     dword ptr [ecx-23343h]
jmp     dword ptr [esi-74h]
xchg   eax, ebp
clc
std
db 0FFh
db 0FFh
mov     word ptr [ebp-214h], cs ; <- disassembler finally found right track here
mov     word ptr [ebp-238h], ds
mov     word ptr [ebp-23Ch], es
mov     word ptr [ebp-240h], fs
mov     word ptr [ebp-244h], gs
pushf
pop     dword ptr [ebp-210h]
mov     eax, [ebp+4]
mov     [ebp-218h], eax
lea     eax, [ebp+4]
mov     [ebp-20Ch], eax
mov     dword ptr [ebp-2D0h], 10001h
mov     eax, [eax-4]
mov     [ebp-21Ch], eax
mov     eax, [ebp+0Ch]
mov     [ebp-320h], eax
mov     eax, [ebp+10h]
mov     [ebp-31Ch], eax
mov     eax, [ebp+4]
mov     [ebp-314h], eax
call    ds:IsDebuggerPresent
mov     edi, eax
lea     eax, [ebp-328h]
push   eax
call    sub_407663
pop     ecx
test   eax, eax

```

```
jnz     short loc_402D7B
```

There are incorrectly disassembled instructions at the beginning, but eventually, disassembler finds right track.

32.2 How random noise looks disassembled?

Common properties which can be easily spotted are:

- Unusually big instruction dispersion. Most frequent x86 instructions are PUSH, MOV, CALL, but here we will see instructions from any instruction group: FPU instructions, IN/OUT instructions, rare and system instructions, everything messed up in one single place.
- Big and random values, offsets and immediates.
- Jumps having incorrect offsets often jumping into the middle of another instructions.

Listing 32.1: random noise (x86)

```

mov     bl, 0Ch
mov     ecx, 0D38558Dh
mov     eax, ds:2C869A86h
db     67h
mov     dl, 0CCh
insb
movsb
push   eax
xor    [edx-53h], ah
fcom  qword ptr [edi-45A0EF72h]
pop    esp
pop    ss
in     eax, dx
dec    ebx
push   esp
lds    esp, [esi-41h]
retf
rcl    dword ptr [eax], cl
mov    cl, 9Ch
mov    ch, 0DFh
push   cs
insb
mov    esi, 0D9C65E4Dh
imul  ebp, [ecx], 66h
pushf
sal    dword ptr [ebp-64h], cl
sub    eax, 0AC433D64h
out    8Ch, eax
pop    ss
sbb   [eax], ebx
aas
xchg  cl, [ebx+ebx*4+14B31Eh]
jecxz short near ptr loc_58+1
xor   al, 0C6h
inc   edx
db   36h
pusha
stosb
test  [ebx], ebx
sub   al, 0D3h ; 'L'
pop   eax
stosb

loc_58: ; CODE XREF: seg000:0000004A
test  [esi], eax
inc   ebp
das
db   64h
pop   ecx
das
hlt

```

```

pop     edx
out     0B0h, al
lodsb
push    ebx
cdq
out     dx, al
sub     al, 0Ah
sti
outsd
add     dword ptr [edx], 96FCBE4Bh
and     eax, 0E537EE4Fh
inc     esp
stosd
cdq
push    ecx
in      al, 0CBh
mov     ds:0D114C45Ch, al
mov     esi, 659D1985h

```

Listing 32.2: random noise (x86-64)

```

lea     esi, [rax+rdx*4+43558D29h]
loc_AF3: ; CODE XREF: seg000:0000000000000B46
rc1     byte ptr [rsi+rax*8+29BB423Ah], 1
lea     ecx, cs:0FFFFFFFB2A6780Fh
mov     al, 96h
mov     ah, 0CEh
push    rsp
lods   byte ptr [esi]

db 2Fh ; /

pop     rsp
db     64h
retf   0E993h

cmp     ah, [rax+4Ah]
movzx  rsi, dword ptr [rbp-25h]
push   4Ah
movzx  rdi, dword ptr [rdi+rdx*8]

db 9Ah

rcr     byte ptr [rax+1Dh], cl
lodsd
xor     [rbp+6CF20173h], edx
xor     [rbp+66F8B593h], edx
push   rbx
sbb    ch, [rbx-0Fh]
stosd
int     87h
db     46h, 4Ch
out     33h, rax
xchg   eax, ebp
test   ecx, ebp
movsd
leave
push   rsp

db 16h

xchg   eax, esi
pop    rdi
loc_B3D: ; CODE XREF: seg000:0000000000000B5F
mov     ds:93CA685DF98A90F9h, eax
jnz    short near ptr loc_AF3+6
out     dx, eax

```



```

cwde
mov     bh, 5Dh ; ']'
movsb
pop     rbp

```

Listing 32.3: random noise (ARM (ARM mode))

```

BLNE   0xFE16A9D8
BGE    0x1634D0C
SVCCS  0x450685
STRNVT R5, [PC], #-0x964
LDCGE  p6, c14, [R0], #0x168
STCCSL p9, c9, [LR], #0x14C
CMNHIP PC, R10, LSL#22
FLDMIADNV LR!, {D4}
MCR    p5, 2, R2, c15, c6, 4
BLGE   0x1139558
BLGT   0xFF9146E4
STRNEB R5, [R4], #0xCA2
STMNEIB R5, {R0, R4, R6, R7, R9-SP, PC}
STMIA  R8, {R0, R2-R4, R7, R8, R10, SP, LR}^
STRB   SP, [R8], PC, ROR#18
LDCCS  p9, c13, [R6], #0x1BC
LDRGE  R8, [R9], #0x66E
STRNEB R5, [R8], #-0x8C3
STCCSL p15, c9, [R7], #-0x84
RSBLS  LR, R2, R11, ASR LR
SVC GT 0x9B0362
SVC GT 0xA73173
STMNEDB R11!, {R0, R1, R4-R6, R8, R10, R11, SP}
STR    R0, [R3], #-0xCE4
LDCGT  p15, c8, [R1], #0x2CC
LDRCCB R1, [R11], -R7, ROR#30
BLLT   0xFED9D58C
BL     0x13E60F4
LDMVSIB R3!, {R1, R4-R7}^
USATNE R10, #7, SP, LSL#11
LDRGEB LR, [R1], #0xE56
STRPLT R9, [LR], #0x567
LDRLT  R11, [R1], #-0x29B
SVCNV  0x12DB29
MVNNVS R5, SP, LSL#25
LDCL   p8, c14, [R12], #-0x288
STCNEL p2, c6, [R6], #-0xBC!
SVCNV  0x2E5A2F
BLX    0x1A8C97E
TEQGE  R3, #0x1100000
STMLSIA R6, {R3, R6, R10, R11, SP}
BICPLS R12, R2, #0x5800
BNE    0x7CC408
TEQGE  R2, R4, LSL#20
SUBS   R1, R11, #0x28C
BICVS  R3, R12, R7, ASR R0
LDRMI  R7, [LR], R3, LSL#21
BLMI   0x1A79234
STMVCDB R6, {R0-R3, R6, R7, R10, R11}
EORMI  R12, R6, #0xC5
MCR RCS p1, 0xF, R1, R3, c2

```

Listing 32.4: random noise (ARM (thumb mode))

```

LSRS   R3, R6, #0x12
LDRH   R1, [R7], #0x2C]
SUBS   R0, #0x55 ; 'U'
ADR    R1, loc_3C
LDR    R2, [SP], #0x218]
CMP    R4, #0x86
SXTB   R7, R4
LDR    R4, [R1], #0x4C]
STR    R4, [R4, R2]

```

```

STR    R0, [R6,#0x20]
BGT    0xFFFFFFFF72
LDRH   R7, [R2,#0x34]
LDRSH  R0, [R2,R4]
LDRB   R2, [R7,R2]

DCB 0x17
DCB 0xED

STRB   R3, [R1,R1]
STR    R5, [R0,#0x6C]
LDMIA  R3, {R0-R5,R7}
ASRS   R3, R2, #3
LDR    R4, [SP,#0x2C4]
SVC    0xB5
LDR    R6, [R1,#0x40]
LDR    R5, =0xB2C5CA32
STMIA  R6, {R1-R4,R6}
LDR    R1, [R3,#0x3C]
STR    R1, [R5,#0x60]
BCC    0xFFFFFFFF70
LDR    R4, [SP,#0x1D4]
STR    R5, [R5,#0x40]
ORRS   R5, R7

loc_3C ; DATA XREF: ROM:00000006
B      0xFFFFFFFF98

```

Listing 32.5: random noise (MIPS little endian)

```

lw     $t9, 0xCB3($t5)
sb     $t5, 0x3855($t0)
sltiu  $a2, $a0, -0x657A
ldr    $t4, -0x4D99($a2)
daddi  $s0, $s1, 0x50A4
lw     $s7, -0x2353($s4)
bgtz1  $a1, 0x17C5C

.byte 0x17
.byte 0xED
.byte 0x4B # K
.byte 0x54 # T

lwc2   $31, 0x66C5($sp)
lwu    $s1, 0x10D3($a1)
ldr    $t6, -0x204B($zero)
lwc1   $f30, 0x4DBE($s2)
daddiu $t1, $s1, 0x6BD9
lwu    $s5, -0x2C64($v1)
cop0   0x13D642D
bne    $gp, $t4, 0xFFFF9EF0
lh     $ra, 0x1819($s1)
sdl    $fp, -0x6474($t8)
jal    0x78C0050
ori    $v0, $s2, 0xC634
blez   $gp, 0xFFEA9D4
swl    $t8, -0x2CD4($s2)
sltiu  $a1, $k0, 0x685
sdc1   $f15, 0x5964($at)
sw     $s0, -0x19A6($a1)
sltiu  $t6, $a3, -0x66AD
lb     $t7, -0x4F6($t3)
sd     $fp, 0x4B02($a1)

```

It is also important to keep in mind that cleverly constructed unpacking and decrypting code (including self-modifying) may look like noise as well, nevertheless, it executes correctly.

Chapter 33

Duff's device

Duff's device¹ is an unrolled loop with a feature to jump inside of it. Unrolled loop is implemented using fall-through switch() statement.

I would use here a slightly simplified version of Tom Duff's original code.

Let's say, we need to write a function which clears a region in memory. Someone can think about simple loop, clearing byte per byte. It's obviously slow, since all modern computer has much wider memory bus. So the more right way is to clear memory region by 4 or 8 byte blocks. Since we will work with 64-bit example here, we will clear memory by 8 byte blocks. So far so good. But what about tail? Memory clearing routine will also be called for regions of size not multiple by 8.

So here is an algorithm:

- calculate number of 8-byte blocks, clear them using 8-byte memory accesses;
- calculate size of tail, clear it using 1-byte memory accesses.

The second step can be implemented using simple loop. But let's implement it as an unrolled loop:

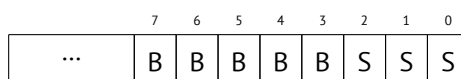
```
#include <stdint.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void bzero(uint8_t* dst, size_t count)
{
    int i;

    if (count & (~7))
        // work out 8-byte blocks
        for (i=0; i<count>>3; i++)
        {
            *(uint64_t*)dst=0;
            dst=dst+8;
        };

    // work out the tail
    switch(count & 7)
    {
    case 7: *dst++ = 0;
    case 6: *dst++ = 0;
    case 5: *dst++ = 0;
    case 4: *dst++ = 0;
    case 3: *dst++ = 0;
    case 2: *dst++ = 0;
    case 1: *dst++ = 0;
    case 0: // do nothing
        break;
    }
}
```

Let's first understand how calculation is done. Memory region size is came in 64-bit value. And it can be divided by two parts:



¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Duff's_device

(B is number of 8-byte blocks and S is size of tale in bytes).

If to divide input memory region size by 8, the value is just shifted by 3 bits left. But to calculate remainder, we just need to isolate lowest 3 bits! So the number of 8-byte blocks calculated as $count \gg 3$ and remainder calculated as $count \& 7$.

At first, we also need to understand, will we execute 8-byte procude at all, so we need to compare $count$ value, if it's greater than 7. We do this by clearing 3 lowest bits and comparing resulting number with zero, because, all we need here is to answer the question, if the high part of count value is non-zero.

Of course, this works because 8 is 2^3 , so division by 2^n numbers is that easy. It's not possible for other numbers.

It's actually hard to say, if these geekery tricks are worth using, because they lead to hard-to-read code. However, these tricks are very popular and practicing programmer, although may not use them, should nevertheless understand them.

So the first part is simple: get number of 8-byte blocks and write 64-bit zero values to memory.

The second part is unrolled loop implemented as fall-through switch() statement. First, let's express in plain English, what we should do here. We should "write as many zero bytes in memory, as $count \& 7$ value tells us". If it's 0, jump to the end, there are no work to do. If it's 1, jump to the place inside switch() statement, where only one storage operation is to be occurred. If it's 2, jump to another place, where two storage operation to be executed, etc. 7 as input value will lead to execution of all 7 operations. There are no 8, because memory region of 8 bytes will be processed by the first part of our function.

So we did it as an unrolled loop. It was definitely faster on older computers than usual loops (on contrary, modern CPUs works better on short loops then on unrolled ones). Maybe it's still can be good on the modern low-cost embedded MCU²s.

Let's see what Optimizing MSVC 2012 does:

```
dst$ = 8
count$ = 16
bzero PROC
    test    rdx, -8
    je     SHORT $LN11@bzero
; work out 8-byte blocks
    xor    r10d, r10d
    mov    r9, rdx
    shr    r9, 3
    mov    r8d, r10d
    test   r9, r9
    je     SHORT $LN11@bzero
    npad   5
$LL19@bzero:
    inc    r8d
    mov    QWORD PTR [rcx], r10
    add    rcx, 8
    movsxd rax, r8d
    cmp    rax, r9
    jb     SHORT $LL19@bzero
$LN11@bzero:
; work out the tail
    and    edx, 7
    dec    rdx
    cmp    rdx, 6
    ja     SHORT $LN9@bzero
    lea    r8, OFFSET FLAT:__ImageBase
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR $LN22@bzero[r8+rdx*4]
    add    rax, r8
    jmp    rax
$LN8@bzero:
    mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
    inc    rcx
$LN7@bzero:
    mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
    inc    rcx
$LN6@bzero:
    mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
    inc    rcx
$LN5@bzero:
    mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
    inc    rcx
$LN4@bzero:
    mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
    inc    rcx
$LN3@bzero:
    mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
```

²Microcontroller unit

```

    inc    rcx
$LN2@bzero:
    mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
$LN9@bzero:
    fatret 0
    npad   1
$LN22@bzero:
    DD    $LN2@bzero
    DD    $LN3@bzero
    DD    $LN4@bzero
    DD    $LN5@bzero
    DD    $LN6@bzero
    DD    $LN7@bzero
    DD    $LN8@bzero
bzero    ENDP

```

First part of the function is predictable to us. The second part is just unrolled loop and a jump passing flow to the correct instruction inside of it. There are no other code between MOV/INC instruction pairs, so execution will fall till the very end, executing as many pairs, as needed.

By the way, we may observe that MOV/INC pair consumes some fixed number of bytes (3+3). So the pair consumes 6 bytes. Knowing that, we can get rid of `switch()` jumtable, we can just multiple input value by 6 and jump to `current_RIP + input_value * 6`. This will also be faster because we do not need to fetch a value from the jumtable. Well, 6 probably is not very good constant for fast multiplication and maybe it's not worth it, but you've got the idea³. That is what old-school demomakers did in past with unrolled loops.

³As an exercise, you can try rework the code to get rid of jumtable. Instruction pair can be rewritten so it will consume 4 bytes or maybe 8. 1 byte is also possible (using STOSB instruction).

Chapter 34

Variadic functions

Functions like `printf()` and `scanf()` take variable number of arguments. How are they accessed?

34.1 Computing arithmetic mean

Let's imagine, I need to calculate arithmetic mean, and by some weird reason, I need to specify all values in function arguments. This is just sum of all values divided by its number.

But it's impossible to get number of arguments in variadic function in C/C++, so I'll denote value of `-1` as a terminator.

There are standard `stdarg.h` file which define macros for dealing such type of arguments. `printf()` and `scanf()` use it as well.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

int arith_mean(int v, ...)
{
    va_list args;
    int sum=v, count=1, i;
    va_start(args, v);

    while(1)
    {
        i=va_arg(args, int);
        if (i==-1) // terminator
            break;
        sum=sum+i;
        count++;
    }

    va_end(args);
    return sum/count;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", arith_mean (1, 2, 7, 10, 15, -1));
};
```

The very first argument should be treated just like usual argument. All other arguments are loaded using `va_arg` macro and summed.

So what is inside?

34.1.1 cdecl calling conventions

Listing 34.1: Optimizing MSVC 6.0

```
_v$ = 8
_arith_mean PROC NEAR
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _v$[esp-4] ; load 1st argument into sum
    push   esi
    mov     esi, 1                    ; count=1
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR _v$[esp]  ; get address of the 1st argument
$L838:
```

```

mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [edx+4]    ; load next argument
add     edx, 4                    ; shift pointer to the next argument
cmp     ecx, -1                  ; is it -1?
je      SHORT $L856              ; exit if so
add     eax, ecx                 ; sum = sum + loaded argument
inc     esi                      ; count++
jmp     SHORT $L838

$L856:
; calculate quotient

    cdq
    idiv  esi
    pop   esi
    ret   0
_arith_mean ENDP

$SG851 DB     '%d', 0aH, 00H

_main PROC NEAR
push   -1
push   15
push   10
push   7
push   2
push   1
call   _arith_mean
push   eax
push   OFFSET FLAT:$SG851 ; '%d'
call   _printf
add    esp, 32
ret    0
_main ENDP

```

The arguments, as we may see, is pushed in `main()` one-by-one. The first argument is pushed first. Terminator value (-1) pushed last.

`arith_mean()` function takes first argument and stores it to `sum` variable. Then, it sets EDX register to the address of the second argument, takes value from it, adds to `sum`, and do this in infinite loop, until -1 is met.

When it's met, sum is divided by number of all values which were not -1 and the `quotient` is returned.

So, in other words, I would say, the function treat stack fragment as an array of integer values of infinite length. Now we can understand why cdecl calling convention forcing to pass the first argument last. Because otherwise, it would not be possible to find the last value, or, for printf-like functions, it would not be possible to find address of the format-string.

34.1.2 Register-based calling conventions

Observant reader may ask, what about calling conventions where first arguments are passed in registers? Let's see:

Listing 34.2: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

$SG3013 DB     '%d', 0aH, 00H

v$ = 8
arith_mean PROC
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+8], ecx    ; 1th argument
    mov     QWORD PTR [rsp+16], rdx   ; 2nd argument
    mov     QWORD PTR [rsp+24], r8    ; 3rd argument
    mov     eax, ecx                 ; sum = 1st argument
    lea    rcx, QWORD PTR v$[rsp+8] ; pointer to the 2nd argument
    mov     QWORD PTR [rsp+32], r9    ; 4th argument
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rcx]      ; load 2nd argument
    mov     r8d, 1                   ; count=1
    cmp     edx, -1                  ; 2nd argument is -1?
    je      SHORT $LN8@arith_mean    ; exit if so
$LL3@arith_mean:
    add     eax, edx                 ; sum = sum + loaded argument
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rcx+8]    ; load next argument
    lea    rcx, QWORD PTR [rcx+8]    ; shift pointer to point to the argument after next
    inc     r8d                      ; count++
    cmp     edx, -1                  ; is loaded argument -1
    jne    SHORT $LL3@arith_mean     ; go to loop begin if it's not
$LN8@arith_mean:

```

```

; calculate quotient
    cdq
    idiv    r8d
    ret    0
arith_mean ENDP

main    PROC
    sub    rsp, 56                ; 00000038H
    mov    edx, 2
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+40], -1
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+32], 15
    lea   r9d, QWORD PTR [rdx+8]
    lea   r8d, QWORD PTR [rdx+5]
    lea   ecx, QWORD PTR [rdx-1]
    call  arith_mean
    lea   rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG3013
    mov   edx, eax
    call  printf
    xor   eax, eax
    add   rsp, 56                ; 00000038H
    ret   0
main    ENDP

```

We see that first 4 arguments are passed in registers and two more – in stack. `arith_mean()` function first place these 4 arguments into *Shadow Space* and then treat *Shadow Space* and stack behind it as a single continuous array!

What about GCC? Things are slightly clumsy here, because now the function is divided by two parts: first part is saving registers into “red zone”, workout that space, and the second part working out the rest of stack:

Listing 34.3: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```

arith_mean:
    lea   rax, [rsp+8]
    ; save 6 input registers in "red zone" in the local stack
    mov   QWORD PTR [rsp-40], rsi
    mov   QWORD PTR [rsp-32], rdx
    mov   QWORD PTR [rsp-16], r8
    mov   QWORD PTR [rsp-24], rcx
    mov   esi, 8
    mov   QWORD PTR [rsp-64], rax
    lea   rax, [rsp-48]
    mov   QWORD PTR [rsp-8], r9
    mov   DWORD PTR [rsp-72], 8
    lea   rdx, [rsp+8]
    mov   r8d, 1
    mov   QWORD PTR [rsp-56], rax
    jmp   .L5

.L7:
    ; work out saved arguments
    lea   rax, [rsp-48]
    mov   ecx, esi
    add   esi, 8
    add   rcx, rax
    mov   ecx, DWORD PTR [rcx]
    cmp   ecx, -1
    je    .L4

.L8:
    add   edi, ecx
    add   r8d, 1

.L5:
    ; decide, which part we will work out now.
    ; is current argument number less or equal 6?
    cmp   esi, 47
    jbe   .L7                ; no, process saved arguments then
    ; work out arguments from stack
    mov   rcx, rdx
    add   rdx, 8
    mov   ecx, DWORD PTR [rcx]
    cmp   ecx, -1
    jne   .L8

.L4:
    mov   eax, edi

```



```

        cdq
        idiv    r8d
        ret

.LC1:
        .string "%d\n"
main:
        sub     rsp, 8
        mov     edx, 7
        mov     esi, 2
        mov     edi, 1
        mov     r9d, -1
        mov     r8d, 15
        mov     ecx, 10
        xor     eax, eax
        call    arith_mean
        mov     esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
        mov     edx, eax
        mov     edi, 1
        xor     eax, eax
        add     rsp, 8
        jmp     __printf_chk

```

34.2 vprintf() function case

Many programmers define their own logging functions which takes printf-like format string + variable number of arguments.

Another popular example is die() function, which prints some message and exits. We need some way to pack input arguments of unknown number and pass them to printf() function. But how? That's why there are functions with "v" in name. One of them is vprintf(): it takes format-string and pointer of va_list type:

```

#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

void die (const char * fmt, ...)
{
    va_list va;
    va_start (va, fmt);

    vprintf (fmt, va);
    exit(0);
};

```

By closer examination, we may see that va_list is a pointer to an array. Let's compile:

Listing 34.4: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_fmt$ = 8
_die  PROC
    ; load 1st argument (format-string)
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _fmt$[esp-4]
    ; get pointer to the 2nd argument
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR _fmt$[esp]
    push    eax                ; pass pointer
    push    ecx
    call    _vprintf
    add     esp, 8
    push    0
    call    _exit
$LN3@die:
    int     3
_die  ENDP

```

We see that all our function does is just takes a pointer passes it to vprintf() and it will treat it like an infinite array of arguments!

Listing 34.5: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

fmt$ = 48
die  PROC
    ; save first 4 arguments in Shadow Space

```

```
mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+8], rcx
mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+16], rdx
mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+24], r8
mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+32], r9
sub    rsp, 40
lea    rdx, QWORD PTR fmt$[rsp+8] ; pass pointer to the 1st argument
; RCX here is still points to the 1st argument (format-string) of die()
; so vprintf() will take it right from RCX
call   vprintf
xor    ecx, ecx
call   exit
int    3
die    ENDP
```

Chapter 35

String to number conversion (atoi())

Let's try to reimplement `atoi()` standard C function.

35.1 Simple example

Here is simplest possible way to read number represented in [ASCII](#)¹ form. It's not error-prone: character other than digit will lead to incorrect result.

```
#include <stdio.h>

int my_atoi (char *s)
{
    int rt=0;

    while (*s)
    {
        rt=rt*10 + (*s-'0');
        s++;
    };

    return rt;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("1234"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("1234567890"));
};
```

So what the algorithm does is just reads digits from left to right. A zero [ASCII](#) character is subtracted from each digit. Digits from 0 to 9 are came subsequently in the [ASCII](#) table, so, we may not even know exact '0' character value. All we need to know is that '0' minus '0' is 0, '9' minus '0' is 9 and so on. Subtracting '0' from each character resulting a number from 0 to 9 inclusive. Any other character will lead to incorrect result, of course! Each digit is to be added to the final result (in "rt" variable), but final result is also multiplied by 10 at each digit. In other word, result is shifted left by one position in decimal form on each iteration. The very last digit is added, but not shifted.

35.1.1 Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

Listing 35.1: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
s$ = 8
my_atoi PROC
; load first character
    movzx    r8d, BYTE PTR [rcx]
; EAX is allocated for rt variable
; it's 0 at start
    xor     eax, eax
; first character is zero-byte, i.e., string terminator?
; exit then.
    test    r8b, r8b
    je     SHORT $LN9@my_atoi
```

¹American Standard Code for Information Interchange

```

$LL2@my_atoi:
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [rax+rax*4]
; EDX=RAX+RAX*4=rt+rt*4=rt*5
    movsx  eax, r8b
; EAX=input character
; load next character to R8D
    movzx  r8d, BYTE PTR [rcx+1]
; shift RCX pointer to the next character:
    lea    rcx, QWORD PTR [rcx+1]
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [rax+rdx*2]
; EAX=RAX+RDX*2=input character + rt*5*2=input character + rt*10
; correct digit by subtracting 48 (0x30 or '0')
    add    eax, -48 ; ffffffff0H
; was last character zero?
    test   r8b, r8b
; jump to loop begin, if not
    jne    SHORT $LL2@my_atoi
$LN9@my_atoi:
    ret    0
my_atoi ENDP

```

Character is loaded in two places: first character and all subsequent characters. This is done for loop regrouping. There are no instruction for multiplication by 10, two LEA instruction do this instead. MSVC sometimes use ADD instruction with negative constant instead of SUB. This is the case. I truly don't know why this is better than SUB. But MSVC does this often.

35.1.2 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 is more concise, but there are one redundant RET instruction at the end. One would be enough.

Listing 35.2: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```

my_atoi:
; load input character into EDX
    movsx  edx, BYTE PTR [rdi]
; EAX is allocated for rt variable
    xor    eax, eax
; exit, if loaded character is null byte
    test   dl, dl
    je     .L4
.L3:
    lea    eax, [rax+rax*4]
; EAX=RAX*5=rt*5
; shift pointer to the next character:
    add    rdi, 1
    lea    eax, [rdx-48+rax*2]
; EAX=input character - 48 + RAX*2 = input character - '0' + rt*10
; load next character:
    movsx  edx, BYTE PTR [rdi]
; goto loop begin, if loaded character is not null byte
    test   dl, dl
    jne    .L3
    rep   ret
.L4:
    rep   ret

```

35.1.3 Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 35.3: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

my_atoi PROC
; R1 will contain pointer to character
    MOV    r1,r0
; R0 will contain rt variable
    MOV    r0,#0
    B     |L0.28|
|L0.12|
    ADD    r0,r0,r0,LSL #2
; R0=R0+R0<<2=rt*5
    ADD    r0,r2,r0,LSL #1

```

```

; R0=input character + rt*5<<1 = input character + rt*10
; correct whole thing by subtracting '0' from rt:
    SUB    r0,r0,#0x30
; shift pointer to the next character:
    ADD    r1,r1,#1
|L0.28|
; load input character to R2
    LDRB   r2,[r1,#0]
; is it null byte? if no, jump to loop body.
    CMP    r2,#0
    BNE    |L0.12|
; exit if null byte.
; rt variable is still in R0 register, ready to be used in caller function
    BX    lr
    ENDP

```

35.1.4 Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

Listing 35.4: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (thumb mode)

```

my_atoi PROC
; R1 will be pointer to the input character
    MOVS   r1,r0
; R0 is allocated to rt variable
    MOVS   r0,#0
    B      |L0.16|
|L0.6|
    MOVS   r3,#0xa
; R3=10
    MULS   r0,r3,r0
; R0=R3*R0=rt*10
; shift pointer to the next character:
    ADDS   r1,r1,#1
; correct whole thing by subtracting '0' from it:
    SUBS   r0,r0,#0x30
    ADDS   r0,r2,r0
; rt=R2+R0=input character + (rt*10 - '0')
|L0.16|
; load input character to R2
    LDRB   r2,[r1,#0]
; is it zero?
    CMP    r2,#0
; jump to loop body if it's not
    BNE    |L0.6|
; rt variable in R0 now, ready to be used in caller function
    BX    lr
    ENDP

```

Interestingly, from school mathematics we may remember that order of addition and subtraction operations doesn't matter. That's our case: first, $rt * 10 - '0'$ expression is computed, then the input character value is added to it. Indeed, result is the same, but compiler probably did some regrouping.

35.1.5 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

ARM64 compiler can use pre-increment instruction suffix:

Listing 35.5: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

my_atoi:
; load input character into W1
    ldrb   w1, [x0]
    mov    x2, x0
; X2=address of input string
; is loaded character zero?
; jump to exit if it's so
; W1 will contain 0 in this case.
; it will be reloaded into W0 at L4.
    cbz   w1, .L4
; W0 will contain rt variable

```

```

; initialize it at zero:
    mov     w0, 0
.L3:
; subtract 48 or '0' from input variable and put result into w3:
    sub     w3, w1, #48
; load next character at X2+1 into w1 with pre-increment:
    ldrb    w1, [x2,1]!
    add     w0, w0, w0, lsl 2
; W0=W0+W0<<2=W0+W0*4=rt*5
    add     w0, w3, w0, lsl 1
; W0=input digit + W0<<1 = input digit + rt*5*2 = input digit + rt*10
; if the character we just loaded is not null byte, jump to the loop begin
    cbnz   w1, .L3
; variable to be returned (rt) is in w0, ready to be used in caller function
    ret
.L4:
    mov     w0, w1
    ret

```

35.2 Slightly advanced example

My new code snippet is more advanced, now it checks for minus sign at the very first character and reports about error if non-digit was found in the input string:

```

#include <stdio.h>

int my_atoi (char *s)
{
    int negative=0;
    int rt=0;

    if (*s=='-')
    {
        negative=1;
        s++;
    };

    while (*s)
    {
        if (*s<'0' || *s>'9')
        {
            printf ("Error! Unexpected char: '%c'\n", *s);
            exit(0);
        };
        rt=rt*10 + (*s-'0');
        s++;
    };

    if (negative)
        return -rt;
    return rt;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("1234"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("1234567890"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("-1234"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("-1234567890"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("-a1234567890")); // error
};

```

35.2.1 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

Listing 35.6: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```
.LC0:
```

```

        .string "Error! Unexpected char: '%c'\n"

my_atoi:
    sub     rsp, 8
    movsx  edx, BYTE PTR [rdi]
; check for minus sign
    cmp    dl, 45 ; '-'
    je     .L22
    xor    esi, esi
    test   dl, dl
    je     .L20
.L10:
; ESI=0 here if there was no minus sign and 1 if it was
    lea   eax, [rdx-48]
; any character other than digit will result unsigned number greater than 9 after subtraction
; so if it's not digit, jump to L4, where error will be reported:
    cmp   al, 9
    ja    .L4
    xor   eax, eax
    jmp   .L6
.L7:
    lea   ecx, [rdx-48]
    cmp   cl, 9
    ja    .L4
.L6:
    lea   eax, [rax+rax*4]
    add   rdi, 1
    lea   eax, [rdx-48+rax*2]
    movsx edx, BYTE PTR [rdi]
    test  dl, dl
    jne   .L7
; if there was no minus sign, skip NEG instruction
; if it was, execute it.
    test  esi, esi
    je    .L18
    neg   eax
.L18:
    add   rsp, 8
    ret
.L22:
    movsx edx, BYTE PTR [rdi+1]
    lea   rax, [rdi+1]
    test  dl, dl
    je    .L20
    mov   rdi, rax
    mov   esi, 1
    jmp   .L10
.L20:
    xor   eax, eax
    jmp   .L18
.L4:
; report error. character is in EDX
    mov   edi, 1
    mov   esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "Error! Unexpected char: '%c'\n"
    xor   eax, eax
    call  __printf_chk
    xor   edi, edi
    call  exit

```

If minus sign was encountered at the string begin, NEG instruction will be executed at the end. It just negates a number.

There are also one thing to mention. How common programmer would check if the character is not a digit? Just how I wrote in the source code:

```

if (*s < '0' || *s > '9')
    ...

```

There are two comparison operations. What is interesting is that we can replace both operations by single one: just subtract '0' from character value, treat result as unsigned value (this is important) and check if it's greater than 9.

As an example, let's say, user input contain dot character (".") which have [ASCII](#) code 46. $46 - 48 = -2$ if to treat result as signed number. Indeed, dot character is located two places earlier than "0" character in the [ASCII](#) table. But it is 0xFFFFFFFF

(4294967294) if to treat result as unsigned value, and that's definitely bigger than 9!

Compilers does this often, so it's important to recognize these tricks.

Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64 does the same tricks.

35.2.2 Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 35.7: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

1 my_atoi PROC
2     PUSH    {r4-r6,lr}
3     MOV     r4,r0
4     LDRB    r0,[r0,#0]
5     MOV     r6,#0
6     MOV     r5,r6
7     CMP     r0,#0x2d '-'
8 ; R6 will contain 1 if minus was encountered, 0 if otherwise
9     MOVEQ   r6,#1
10    ADDEQ   r4,r4,#1
11    B       |L0.80|
12 |L0.36|
13    SUB     r0,r1,#0x30
14    CMP     r0,#0xa
15    BCC     |L0.64|
16    ADR     r0,|L0.220|
17    BL      __2printf
18    MOV     r0,#0
19    BL      exit
20 |L0.64|
21    LDRB    r0,[r4],#1
22    ADD     r1,r5,r5,LSL #2
23    ADD     r0,r0,r1,LSL #1
24    SUB     r5,r0,#0x30
25 |L0.80|
26    LDRB    r1,[r4,#0]
27    CMP     r1,#0
28    BNE     |L0.36|
29    CMP     r6,#0
30 ; negate result
31    RSBNE   r0,r5,#0
32    MOVEQ   r0,r5
33    POP     {r4-r6,pc}
34    ENDP
35
36 |L0.220|
37    DCB     "Error! Unexpected char: '%c'\n",0

```

There are no NEG instruction in 32-bit ARM, so “Reverse Subtraction” operation (line 31) is used here. It is triggered if the result of CMP instruction (at line 29) was “Not Equal” (hence -NE suffix). So what RSBNE does is subtract resulting value from 0. It works just like regular subtraction operation, but swaps operands. Subtracting any number from 0 resulting negation: $0 - x = -x$.

Thumb code is mostly the same.

GCC 4.9 for ARM64 can use NEG instruction, available in ARM64.

Chapter 36

Branchless abs() function

Let's revisit example I gave earlier [12.2](#) and ask ourselves, is it possible to make a branchless version of the function in x86 code?

```
int my_abs (int i)
{
    if (i<0)
        return -i;
    else
        return i;
};
```

And the answer is yes.

36.1 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

We could see it if to compile it using optimizing GCC 4.9:

Listing 36.1: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```
my_abs:
    mov     edx, edi
    mov     eax, edi
    sar     edx, 31
; EDX is 0xFFFFFFFF here if sign of input value is minus
; EDX is 0 if sign of input value is plus (including 0)
; the following two instructions have effect only if EDX is 0xFFFFFFFF
; or idle if EDX is 0
    xor     eax, edx
    sub     eax, edx
    ret
```

That's how it works:

Algorithmically shift input value left by 31. Algorithmical shift meaning sign extension, so if **MSB** is 1, all 32 bits will be filled with 1, or with 0 if otherwise. In other words, `SAR reg, 31` instruction makes `0xFFFFFFFF` if the sign was negative or 0 if positive. After `SAR` executed, we have this value in `EDX`. Then, if value is `0xFFFFFFFF` (i.e., sign is negative), input value is inverted (because `XOR reg, 0xFFFFFFFF` is effectively inverse operation). Then, again, if value is `0xFFFFFFFF` (i.e., sign is negative), 1 is added to the final result (because subtracting -1 from some value resulting in incrementing it). Inversion and incrementing is exactly how two's complement value is negated: [41](#).

We may observe that the last two instruction does something if sign of input value is negative. Otherwise (if sign is positive) they do not do anything at all, leaving input value untouched.

The algorithm is described in [\[War02, pp. 2-4\]](#). I'm not sure, how GCC does it, deduced by itself or find suitable pattern among known ones?

36.2 Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

GCC 4.9 for ARM64 makes mostly the same, decide to use full 64-bit registers. There are less number of instructions, because input value can be shifted using instruction suffixed ("asr") instead of separate instruction.

Listing 36.2: Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

```
my_abs:
; sign-extend input 32-bit value to X0 64-bit register:
```

```
sxtw    x0, w0
eor     x1, x0, x0, asr 63
; X1=X0^(X0>>63) (shift is arithmetical)
sub     x0, x1, x0, asr 63
; X0=X1-(X0>>63)=X0^(X0>>63)-(X0>>63) (all shifts are arithmetical)
ret
```

Chapter 37

C++

37.1 Classes

37.1.1 Simple example

Internally, C++ classes representation is almost the same as structures representation.

Let's try an example with two variables, two constructors and one method:

```
#include <stdio.h>

class c
{
private:
    int v1;
    int v2;
public:
    c() // default ctor
    {
        v1=667;
        v2=999;
    };

    c(int a, int b) // ctor
    {
        v1=a;
        v2=b;
    };

    void dump()
    {
        printf ("%d; %d\n", v1, v2);
    };
};

int main()
{
    class c c1;
    class c c2(5,6);

    c1.dump();
    c2.dump();

    return 0;
};
```

MSVC-x86

Here is how main() function looks like translated into assembly language:

Listing 37.1: MSVC

```
_c2$ = -16 ; size = 8
_c1$ = -8 ; size = 8
_main PROC
```

```

push ebp
mov  ebp, esp
sub  esp, 16
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c1$[ebp]
call ??0c@@QAE@XZ ; c::c
push 6
push 5
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c2$[ebp]
call ??0c@@QAE@HH@Z ; c::c
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c1$[ebp]
call ?dump@c@@QAE@XZ ; c::dump
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c2$[ebp]
call ?dump@c@@QAE@XZ ; c::dump
xor  eax, eax
mov  esp, ebp
pop  ebp
ret  0
_main ENDP

```

So what's going on. For each object (instance of class *c*) 8 bytes allocated, that is exactly size of 2 variables storage.

For *c1* a default argumentless constructor `??0c@@QAE@XZ` is called. For *c2* another constructor `??0c@@QAE@HH@Z` is called and two numbers are passed as arguments.

A pointer to object (*this* in C++ terminology) is passed in the ECX register. This is called thiscall (37.1.1) –a pointer to object passing method.

MSVC doing it using the ECX register. Needless to say, it is not a standardized method, other compilers could do it differently, e.g., via first function argument (like GCC).

Why these functions has so odd names? That's [name mangling](#).

C++ class may contain several methods sharing the same name but having different arguments –that is polymorphism. And of course, different classes may own methods sharing the same name.

Name mangling enable us to encode class name + method name + all method argument types in one ASCII-string, which is to be used as internal function name. That's all because neither linker, nor DLL OS loader (mangled names may be among DLL exports as well) knows nothing about C++ or OOP¹.

`dump()` function is called two times.

Now let's see constructors' code:

Listing 37.2: MSVC

```

_this$ = -4 ; size = 4
??0c@@QAE@XZ PROC ; c::c, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
push ebp
mov  ebp, esp
push ecx
mov  DWORD PTR _this$[ebp], ecx
mov  eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov  DWORD PTR [eax], 667
mov  ecx, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov  DWORD PTR [ecx+4], 999
mov  eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov  esp, ebp
pop  ebp
ret  0
??0c@@QAE@XZ ENDP ; c::c

_this$ = -4 ; size = 4
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_b$ = 12 ; size = 4
??0c@@QAE@HH@Z PROC ; c::c, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
push ebp
mov  ebp, esp
push ecx
mov  DWORD PTR _this$[ebp], ecx
mov  eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov  ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
mov  DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
mov  edx, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov  eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]

```

¹Object-Oriented Programming

```

mov  DWORD PTR [edx+4], eax
mov  eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov  esp, ebp
pop  ebp
ret  8
??0c@@QAE@HH@Z ENDP ; c::c

```

Constructors are just functions, they use pointer to structure in the ECX, copying the pointer into own local variable, however, it is not necessary.

From the C++ standard [ISO13, p. 12.1] we know that constructors should not return any values. In fact, internally, constructors are returning pointer to the newly created object, i.e., *this*.

Now dump() method:

Listing 37.3: MSVC

```

_this$ = -4 ; size = 4
?dump@c@@QAEXXZ PROC ; c::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
push  ebp
mov  ebp, esp
push  ecx
mov  DWORD PTR _this$[ebp], ecx
mov  eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
push  ecx
mov  edx, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov  eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
push  eax
push  OFFSET ??_C@_07NJBDCIEC@?$CFd?$DL?5?$CFd?6?$AA@
call  _printf
add  esp, 12
mov  esp, ebp
pop  ebp
ret  0
?dump@c@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; c::dump

```

Simple enough: dump() taking pointer to the structure containing two *int*'s in the ECX, takes two values from it and passing it into printf().

The code is much shorter if compiled with optimization (/Ox):

Listing 37.4: MSVC

```

??0c@@QAE@XZ PROC ; c::c, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
mov  eax, ecx
mov  DWORD PTR [eax], 667
mov  DWORD PTR [eax+4], 999
ret  0
??0c@@QAE@XZ ENDP ; c::c

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_b$ = 12 ; size = 4
??0c@@QAE@HH@Z PROC ; c::c, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
mov  edx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
mov  eax, ecx
mov  ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
mov  DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
mov  DWORD PTR [eax+4], edx
ret  8
??0c@@QAE@HH@Z ENDP ; c::c

?dump@c@@QAEXXZ PROC ; c::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
push  eax
push  ecx
push  OFFSET ??_C@_07NJBDCIEC@?$CFd?$DL?5?$CFd?6?$AA@
call  _printf
add  esp, 12

```

```
ret 0
?dump@c@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; c::dump
```

That's all. One more thing to say is the [stack pointer](#) was not corrected with `add esp, X` after constructor called. Withal, constructor has `ret 8` instead of the `RET` at the end.

This is all because thiscall ([37.1.1](#)) calling convention here used, the method of passing values through the stack, which is, together with stdcall ([55.2](#)) method, offers to correct stack to [callee](#) rather than to [caller](#). `ret x` instruction adds `X` to the value in the ESP, then passes control to the [caller](#) function.

See also section about calling conventions ([55](#)).

It is also should be noted the compiler deciding when to call constructor and destructor –but that is we already know from C++ language basics.

MSVC–x86-64

As we already know, first 4 function arguments in x86-64 are passed in RCX, RDX, R8, R9 registers, all the rest—via stack. Nevertheless, *this* pointer to the object is passed in RCX, first method argument—in RDX, etc. We can see this in the `c(int a, int b)` method internals:

Listing 37.5: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
; void dump()
?dump@c@@QAAXXZ PROC ; c::dump
mov     r8d, DWORD PTR [rcx+4]
mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rcx]
lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:??_C@_07NJBDCIEC?@$CFd?$DL?5?$CFd?6?$AA@ ; '%d; %d'
jmp     printf
?dump@c@@QAAXXZ ENDP ; c::dump

; c(int a, int b)
??0c@@QEAA@HH@Z PROC ; c::c
mov     DWORD PTR [rcx], edx ; 1st argument: a
mov     DWORD PTR [rcx+4], r8d ; 2nd argument: b
mov     rax, rcx
ret     0
??0c@@QEAA@HH@Z ENDP ; c::c

; default ctor
??0c@@QEAA@XZ PROC ; c::c
mov     DWORD PTR [rcx], 667
mov     DWORD PTR [rcx+4], 999
mov     rax, rcx
ret     0
??0c@@QEAA@XZ ENDP ; c::c
```

`int` data type is still 32-bit in x64², so that is why 32-bit register's parts are used here.

We also see `JMP printf` instead of `RET` in the `dump()` method, that *hack* we already saw earlier: [13.1.1](#).

GCC–x86

It is almost the same story in GCC 4.4.1, with a few exceptions.

Listing 37.6: GCC 4.4.1

```
public main
main proc near

var_20 = dword ptr -20h
var_1C = dword ptr -1Ch
var_18 = dword ptr -18h
var_10 = dword ptr -10h
var_8 = dword ptr -8

push ebp
mov ebp, esp
and esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
```

²Apparently, for easier porting of C/C++ 32-bit code to x64

```

sub esp, 20h
lea eax, [esp+20h+var_8]
mov [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call _ZN1cC1Ev
mov [esp+20h+var_18], 6
mov [esp+20h+var_1C], 5
lea eax, [esp+20h+var_10]
mov [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call _ZN1cC1Eii
lea eax, [esp+20h+var_8]
mov [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call _ZN1c4dumpEv
lea eax, [esp+20h+var_10]
mov [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call _ZN1c4dumpEv
mov eax, 0
leave
retn
main endp

```

Here we see another *name mangling* style, specific to GNU ³ It is also can be noted the pointer to object is passed as first function argument – invisibly for programmer, of course.

First constructor:

```

_ZN1cC1Ev      public _ZN1cC1Ev ; weak
               proc near                               ; CODE XREF: main+10
arg_0          = dword ptr 8
               push ebp
               mov  ebp, esp
               mov  eax, [ebp+arg_0]
               mov  dword ptr [eax], 667
               mov  eax, [ebp+arg_0]
               mov  dword ptr [eax+4], 999
               pop  ebp
               retn
_ZN1cC1Ev      endp

```

What it does is just writes two numbers using pointer passed in first (and single) argument.

Second constructor:

```

_ZN1cC1Eii    public _ZN1cC1Eii
               proc near
arg_0          = dword ptr 8
arg_4          = dword ptr 0Ch
arg_8          = dword ptr 10h
               push ebp
               mov  ebp, esp
               mov  eax, [ebp+arg_0]
               mov  edx, [ebp+arg_4]
               mov  [eax], edx
               mov  eax, [ebp+arg_0]
               mov  edx, [ebp+arg_8]
               mov  [eax+4], edx
               pop  ebp
               retn
_ZN1cC1Eii    endp

```

This is a function, analog of which could be looks like:

```

void ZN1cC1Eii (int *obj, int a, int b)
{
    *obj=a;
    *(obj+1)=b;
};

```

³There is a good document about various compilers name mangling conventions: [Fog14].

...and that is completely predictable.

Now dump() function:

```

public _ZN1c4dumpEv
proc near
_ZN1c4dumpEv
var_18      = dword ptr -18h
var_14      = dword ptr -14h
var_10      = dword ptr -10h
arg_0       = dword ptr  8

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        sub     esp, 18h
        mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
        mov     edx, [eax+4]
        mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
        mov     eax, [eax]
        mov     [esp+18h+var_10], edx
        mov     [esp+18h+var_14], eax
        mov     [esp+18h+var_18], offset aDD ; "%d; %d\n"
        call   _printf
        leave
        retn
_ZN1c4dumpEv endp

```

This function in its *internal representation* has sole argument, used as pointer to the object (*this*).

This function could be rewritten into C:

```

void ZN1c4dumpEv (int *obj)
{
    printf ("%d; %d\n", *obj, *(obj+1));
};

```

Thus, if to base our judgment on these simple examples, the difference between MSVC and GCC is style of function names encoding (*name mangling*) and passing pointer to object (via the ECX register or via the first argument).

GCC—x86-64

The first 6 arguments, as we already know, are passed in the RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8, R9 [Mit13] registers, and the pointer to *this* via first one (RDI) and that is what we see here. *int* data type is also 32-bit here. *JMP* instead of *RET* *hack* is also used here.

Listing 37.7: GCC 4.4.6 x64

```

; default ctor
_ZN1cC2Ev:
    mov  DWORD PTR [rdi], 667
    mov  DWORD PTR [rdi+4], 999
    ret

; c(int a, int b)
_ZN1cC2Eii:
    mov  DWORD PTR [rdi], esi
    mov  DWORD PTR [rdi+4], edx
    ret

; dump()
_ZN1c4dumpEv:
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [rdi+4]
    mov  esi, DWORD PTR [rdi]
    xor  eax, eax
    mov  edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "%d; %d\n"
    jmp  printf

```


37.1.2 Class inheritance

It can be said about inherited classes that it is simple structure we already considered, but extending in inherited classes.

Let's take simple example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

class object
{
    public:
        int color;
        object() { };
        object (int color) { this->color=color; };
        void print_color() { printf ("color=%d\n", color); };
};

class box : public object
{
    private:
        int width, height, depth;
    public:
        box(int color, int width, int height, int depth)
        {
            this->color=color;
            this->width=width;
            this->height=height;
            this->depth=depth;
        };
        void dump()
        {
            printf ("this is box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d\n", color, width, ↵
            ↵ height, depth);
        };
};

class sphere : public object
{
    private:
        int radius;
    public:
        sphere(int color, int radius)
        {
            this->color=color;
            this->radius=radius;
        };
        void dump()
        {
            printf ("this is sphere. color=%d, radius=%d\n", color, radius);
        };
};

int main()
{
    box b(1, 10, 20, 30);
    sphere s(2, 40);

    b.print_color();
    s.print_color();

    b.dump();
    s.dump();

    return 0;
};
```

Let's investigate generated code of the dump() functions/methods and also object::print_color(), let's see memory layout for structures-objects (as of 32-bit code).

So, dump() methods for several classes, generated by MSVC 2008 with /Ox and /Ob0 options ⁴

⁴/Ob0 options means inline expansion disabling since function inlining right into the code where the function is called will make our experiment harder

Listing 37.8: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

??_C@_09GCEDOLPA@color?$DN?$CFd?6?$AA@ DB 'color=%d', 0aH, 00H ; `string'
?print_color@object@@QAEXXZ PROC ; object::print_color, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push eax

; 'color=%d', 0aH, 00H
    push OFFSET ??_C@_09GCEDOLPA@color?$DN?$CFd?6?$AA@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 8
    ret  0
?print_color@object@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; object::print_color

```

Listing 37.9: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

?dump@box@@QAEXXZ PROC ; box::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+12]
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    push eax
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push edx
    push eax
    push ecx

; 'this is box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d', 0aH, 00H ; `string'
    push OFFSET ??_C@_0DG@NCNGAADL@this?5is?5box?4?5color?$DN?$CFd?0?5width?$DN?$CFd?0@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 20
    ret  0
?dump@box@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; box::dump

```

Listing 37.10: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

?dump@sphere@@QAEXXZ PROC ; sphere::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push eax
    push ecx

; 'this is sphere. color=%d, radius=%d', 0aH, 00H
    push OFFSET ??_C@_0CF@EFEDJLDC@this?5is?5sphere?4?5color?$DN?$CFd?0?5radius@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 12
    ret  0
?dump@sphere@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; sphere::dump

```

So, here is memory layout:
(base class *object*)

offset	description
+0x0	int color

(inherited classes)
box:

offset	description
+0x0	int color
+0x4	int width
+0x8	int height
+0xC	int depth

sphere:

offset	description
+0x0	int color
+0x4	int radius

Let's see `main()` function body:

Listing 37.11: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

PUBLIC _main
_TEXT SEGMENT
_s$ = -24 ; size = 8
_b$ = -16 ; size = 16
_main PROC
    sub esp, 24
    push 30
    push 20
    push 10
    push 1
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+40]
    call ??0box@@QAE@HHHH@Z ; box::box
    push 40
    push 2
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+32]
    call ??0sphere@@QAE@HH@Z ; sphere::sphere
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+24]
    call ?print_color@object@@QAEXXZ ; object::print_color
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+24]
    call ?print_color@object@@QAEXXZ ; object::print_color
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+24]
    call ?dump@box@@QAEXXZ ; box::dump
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+24]
    call ?dump@sphere@@QAEXXZ ; sphere::dump
    xor eax, eax
    add esp, 24
    ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Inherited classes must always add their fields after base classes' fields, so to make possible for base class methods to work with their own fields.

When `object::print_color()` method is called, a pointers to both `box` object and `sphere` object are passed as `this`, it can work with these objects easily since `color` field in these objects is always at the pinned address (at `+0x0` offset).

It can be said, `object::print_color()` method is agnostic in relation to input object type as long as fields will be *pinned* at the same addresses, and this condition is always true.

And if you create inherited class of the e.g. `box` class, compiler will add new fields after `depth` field, leaving `box` class fields at the pinned addresses.

Thus, `box::dump()` method will work fine accessing `color/width/height/depts` fields always pinned on known addresses.

GCC-generated code is almost likewise, with the sole exception of this pointer passing (as it was described above, it passing as first argument instead of the ECX registers).

37.1.3 Encapsulation

Encapsulation is data hiding in the *private* sections of class, e.g. to allow access to them only from this class methods, but no more than.

However, are there any marks in code about the very fact that some field is private and some other –not?

No, there are no such marks.

Let's try simple example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

class box
{
private:
    int color, width, height, depth;
public:
    box(int color, int width, int height, int depth)
    {
        this->color=color;
        this->width=width;
        this->height=height;
        this->depth=depth;
    };
    void dump()

```

```

    {
        printf ("this is box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d\n", color, width, ↵
        ↵ height, depth);
    };
};

```

Let's compile it again in MSVC 2008 with /Ox and /Ob0 options and let's see `box::dump()` method code:

```

?dump@box@@QAEXXZ PROC ; box::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+12]
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    push eax
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push edx
    push eax
    push ecx
; 'this is box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d', 0aH, 00H
    push OFFSET ??_C@_ODG@NCNGAADL@this?5is?5box?4?5color?$DN?$CFd?0?5width?$DN?$CFd?0@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 20
    ret  0
?dump@box@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; box::dump

```

Here is a memory layout of the class:

offset	description
+0x0	int color
+0x4	int width
+0x8	int height
+0xC	int depth

All fields are private and not allowed to access from any other functions, but, knowing this layout, can we create a code modifying these fields?

So I added `hack_oop_encapsulation()` function, which, if has the body as follows, will not compile:

```

void hack_oop_encapsulation(class box * o)
{
    o->width=1; // that code can't be compiled:
                // "error C2248: 'box::width' : cannot access private member declared in class ↵
    ↵ 'box'"
};

```

Nevertheless, if to cast `box` type to *pointer to int array*, and if to modify array of the *int*-s we got, then we have success.

```

void hack_oop_encapsulation(class box * o)
{
    unsigned int *ptr_to_object=reinterpret_cast<unsigned int*>(o);
    ptr_to_object[1]=123;
};

```

This functions' code is very simple – it can be said, the function taking pointer to array of the *int*-s on input and writing 123 to the second *int*:

```

?hack_oop_encapsulation@YAXPAVbox@@@Z PROC ; hack_oop_encapsulation
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR _o$[esp-4]
    mov  DWORD PTR [eax+4], 123
    ret  0
?hack_oop_encapsulation@YAXPAVbox@@@Z ENDP ; hack_oop_encapsulation

```

Let's check, how it works:

```

int main()
{
    box b(1, 10, 20, 30);

    b.dump();

    hack_oop_encapsulation(&b);

    b.dump();
}

```

```

    return 0;
};

```

Let's run:

```

this is box. color=1, width=10, height=20, depth=30
this is box. color=1, width=123, height=20, depth=30

```

We see, encapsulation is just class fields protection only on compiling stage. C++ compiler will not allow to generate a code modifying protected fields straightforwardly, nevertheless, it is possible with the help of *dirty hacks*.

37.1.4 Multiple inheritance

Multiple inheritance is a class creation which inherits fields and methods from two or more classes.

Let's write simple example again:

```

#include <stdio.h>

class box
{
public:
    int width, height, depth;
    box() { };
    box(int width, int height, int depth)
    {
        this->width=width;
        this->height=height;
        this->depth=depth;
    };
    void dump()
    {
        printf ("this is box. width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d\n", width, height, depth);
    };
    int get_volume()
    {
        return width * height * depth;
    };
};

class solid_object
{
public:
    int density;
    solid_object() { };
    solid_object(int density)
    {
        this->density=density;
    };
    int get_density()
    {
        return density;
    };
    void dump()
    {
        printf ("this is solid_object. density=%d\n", density);
    };
};

class solid_box: box, solid_object
{
public:
    solid_box (int width, int height, int depth, int density)
    {
        this->width=width;
        this->height=height;
        this->depth=depth;
        this->density=density;
    };
    void dump()

```

```

    {
        printf ("this is solid_box. width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d, density=%d\n", width, ↵
        height, depth, density);
    };
    int get_weight() { return get_volume() * get_density(); };
};

int main()
{
    box b(10, 20, 30);
    solid_object so(100);
    solid_box sb(10, 20, 30, 3);

    b.dump();
    so.dump();
    sb.dump();
    printf ("%d\n", sb.get_weight());

    return 0;
};

```

Let's compile it in MSVC 2008 with /Ox and /Ob0 options and let's see `box::dump()`, `solid_object::dump()` and `solid_box::dump()` methods code:

Listing 37.12: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

?dump@box@@QAEXXZ PROC ; box::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    push eax
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push edx
    push eax
; 'this is box. width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d', 0aH, 00H
    push OFFSET ??_C@_OCM@DIKPHDFI@this?5is?5box?4?5width?$DN?$CFd?0?5height?$DN?$CFd@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 16
    ret  0
?dump@box@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; box::dump

```

Listing 37.13: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

?dump@solid_object@@QAEXXZ PROC ; solid_object::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push eax
; 'this is solid_object. density=%d', 0aH
    push OFFSET ??_C@_OCC@KICFJINL@this?5is?5solid_object?4?5density?$DN?$CFd@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 8
    ret  0
?dump@solid_object@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; solid_object::dump

```

Listing 37.14: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

?dump@solid_box@@QAEXXZ PROC ; solid_box::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+12]
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    push eax
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push edx
    push eax
    push ecx
; 'this is solid_box. width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d, density=%d', 0aH
    push OFFSET ??_C@_ODO@HNCNIHNN@this?5is?5solid_box?4?5width?$DN?$CFd?0?5hei@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 20
    ret  0

```

```
?dump@solid_box@@@QAEHXZ ENDP ; solid_box::dump
```

So, the memory layout for all three classes is:

box class:

offset	description
+0x0	width
+0x4	height
+0x8	depth

solid_object class:

offset	description
+0x0	density

It can be said, *solid_box* class memory layout will be *united*:

solid_box class:

offset	description
+0x0	width
+0x4	height
+0x8	depth
+0xC	density

The code of the `box::get_volume()` and `solid_object::get_density()` methods is trivial:

Listing 37.15: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
?get_volume@box@@@QAEHXZ PROC ; box::get_volume, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    imul eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    imul eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    ret  0
?get_volume@box@@@QAEHXZ ENDP ; box::get_volume
```

Listing 37.16: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
?get_density@solid_object@@@QAEHXZ PROC ; solid_object::get_density, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    ret  0
?get_density@solid_object@@@QAEHXZ ENDP ; solid_object::get_density
```

But the code of the `solid_box::get_weight()` method is much more interesting:

Listing 37.17: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
?get_weight@solid_box@@@QAEHXZ PROC ; solid_box::get_weight, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    push esi
    mov  esi, ecx
    push edi
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR [esi+12]
    call ?get_density@solid_object@@@QAEHXZ ; solid_object::get_density
    mov  ecx, esi
    mov  edi, eax
    call ?get_volume@box@@@QAEHXZ ; box::get_volume
    imul eax, edi
    pop  edi
    pop  esi
    ret  0
?get_weight@solid_box@@@QAEHXZ ENDP ; solid_box::get_weight
```

`get_weight()` just calling two methods, but for `get_volume()` it just passing pointer to this, and for `get_density()` it passing pointer to this shifted by 12 (or 0xC) bytes, and there, in the `solid_box` class memory layout, fields of the `solid_object` class are beginning.

Thus, `solid_object::get_density()` method will believe it is dealing with usual `solid_object` class, and `box::get_volume()` method will work with its three fields, believing this is usual object of the `box` class.

Thus, we can say, an object of a class, inheriting from several other classes, representing in memory *united* class, containing all inherited fields. And each inherited method called with a pointer to corresponding structure's part passed.

37.1.5 Virtual methods

Yet another simple example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

class object
{
public:
    int color;
    object() { };
    object (int color) { this->color=color; };
    virtual void dump()
    {
        printf ("color=%d\n", color);
    };
};

class box : public object
{
private:
    int width, height, depth;
public:
    box(int color, int width, int height, int depth)
    {
        this->color=color;
        this->width=width;
        this->height=height;
        this->depth=depth;
    };
    void dump()
    {
        printf ("this is box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d\n", color, width, ↵
        ↵ height, depth);
    };
};

class sphere : public object
{
private:
    int radius;
public:
    sphere(int color, int radius)
    {
        this->color=color;
        this->radius=radius;
    };
    void dump()
    {
        printf ("this is sphere. color=%d, radius=%d\n", color, radius);
    };
};

int main()
{
    box b(1, 10, 20, 30);
    sphere s(2, 40);

    object *o1=&b;
    object *o2=&s;

    o1->dump();
    o2->dump();
    return 0;
};

```

Class *object* has virtual method `dump()`, being replaced in the *box* and *sphere* class-inheritors.

If in an environment, where it is not known what type has `object`, as in the `main()` function in example, a virtual method `dump()` is called, somewhere, the information about its type must be stored, so to call relevant virtual method.

Let's compile it in MSVC 2008 with `/Ox` and `/Ob0` options and let's see `main()` function code:


```

_s$ = -32 ; size = 12
_b$ = -20 ; size = 20
_main PROC
    sub esp, 32
    push 30
    push 20
    push 10
    push 1
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+48]
    call ??0box@@QAE@HHHH@Z ; box::box
    push 40
    push 2
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+40]
    call ??0sphere@@QAE@HH@Z ; sphere::sphere
    mov eax, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+32]
    mov edx, DWORD PTR [eax]
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+32]
    call edx
    mov eax, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+32]
    mov edx, DWORD PTR [eax]
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+32]
    call edx
    xor eax, eax
    add esp, 32
    ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Pointer to the `dump()` function is taken somewhere from object. Where the address of new method would be written there? Only somewhere in constructors: there is no other place since nothing more is called in the `main()` function. ⁵

Let's see `box` class constructor's code:

```

??_R0?AVbox@@@8 DD FLAT:??_7type_info@@6B@ ; box `RTTI Type Descriptor'
    DD 00H
    DB '.?AVbox@@', 00H

??_R1A@?0A@EA@box@@@8 DD FLAT:??_R0?AVbox@@@8 ; box::`RTTI Base Class Descriptor at (0,-1,0,64)'
    DD 01H
    DD 00H
    DD 0fffffffH
    DD 00H
    DD 040H
    DD FLAT:??_R3box@@@8

??_R2box@@@8 DD FLAT:??_R1A@?0A@EA@box@@@8 ; box::`RTTI Base Class Array'
    DD FLAT:??_R1A@?0A@EA@object@@@8

??_R3box@@@8 DD 00H ; box::`RTTI Class Hierarchy Descriptor'
    DD 00H
    DD 02H
    DD FLAT:??_R2box@@@8

??_R4box@@6B@ DD 00H ; box::`RTTI Complete Object Locator'
    DD 00H
    DD 00H
    DD FLAT:??_R0?AVbox@@@8
    DD FLAT:??_R3box@@@8

??_7box@@6B@ DD FLAT:??_R4box@@6B@ ; box::`vftable'
    DD FLAT:??dump@box@@UAEXXZ

_color$ = 8 ; size = 4
_width$ = 12 ; size = 4
_height$ = 16 ; size = 4
_depth$ = 20 ; size = 4
??0box@@QAE@HHHH@Z PROC ; box::box, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    push esi
    mov esi, ecx

```

⁵About pointers to functions, read more in relevant section:(23)

```

call ??0object@@QAE@XZ ; object::object
mov  eax, DWORD PTR _color$[esp]
mov  ecx, DWORD PTR _width$[esp]
mov  edx, DWORD PTR _height$[esp]
mov  DWORD PTR [esi+4], eax
mov  eax, DWORD PTR _depth$[esp]
mov  DWORD PTR [esi+16], eax
mov  DWORD PTR [esi], OFFSET ??_7box@@6B@
mov  DWORD PTR [esi+8], ecx
mov  DWORD PTR [esi+12], edx
mov  eax, esi
pop  esi
ret  16
??0box@@QAE@HHHH@Z ENDP ; box::box

```

Here we see slightly different memory layout: the first field is a pointer to some table `box::`vftable'` (name was set by MSVC compiler).

In this table we see a link to the table named `box::`RTTI Complete Object Locator'` and also a link to the `box::dump()` method. So this is named virtual methods table and [RTTI](#)⁶. Table of virtual methods contain addresses of methods and [RTTI](#) table contain information about types. By the way, [RTTI](#)-tables are the tables enumerated while calling to `dynamic_cast` and `typeid` in C++. You can also see here class name as plain text string. Thus, a method of base `object` class may call virtual method `object::dump()`, which in turn, will call a method of inherited class since that information is present right in the object's structure.

Some additional CPU time needed for enumerating these tables and finding right virtual method address, thus virtual methods are widely considered as slightly slower than common methods.

In GCC-generated code [RTTI](#)-tables constructed slightly differently.

37.2 ostream

Let's start again with a "hello world" example, but now will use ostream:

```

#include <iostream>

int main()
{
    std::cout << "Hello, world!\n";
}

```

Almost any C++ textbook tells that `<<` operation can be replaced (overloaded) for other types. That is what is done in ostream. We see that `operator<<` is called for ostream:

Listing 37.18: MSVC 2012 (reduced listing)

```

$SG37112 DB 'Hello, world!', 0aH, 00H

_main PROC
    push OFFSET $SG37112
    push OFFSET ?cout@std@@3V?$basic_ostream@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@@1@A ; std::cout
    call ???$?6U?$char_traits@D@std@@@std@@YAAAV?$basic_ostream@DU?
    ↵ $char_traits@D@std@@@0@AAV10@PBD@Z ; std::operator<<<std::char_traits<char> >
    add esp, 8
    xor eax, eax
    ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Let's modify the example:

```

#include <iostream>

int main()
{
    std::cout << "Hello, " << "world!\n";
}

```

And again, from many C++ textbooks we know that the result of each `operator<<` in ostream is forwarded to the next one. Indeed:

⁶Run-time type information

Listing 37.19: MSVC 2012

```

$SG37112 DB 'world!', 0aH, 00H
$SG37113 DB 'Hello, ', 00H

_main PROC
    push OFFSET $SG37113 ; 'Hello, '
    push OFFSET ?cout@std@@3V?$basic_ostream@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@@1@A ; std::cout
    call ???$6U?$char_traits@D@std@@@std@@YAAAV?$basic_ostream@DU?
    ↵ $char_traits@D@std@@@0@AAV10@PBD@Z ; std::operator<<<std::char_traits<char> >
    add esp, 8

    push OFFSET $SG37112 ; 'world!'
    push eax ; result of previous function execution
    call ???$6U?$char_traits@D@std@@@std@@YAAAV?$basic_ostream@DU?
    ↵ $char_traits@D@std@@@0@AAV10@PBD@Z ; std::operator<<<std::char_traits<char> >
    add esp, 8

    xor eax, eax
    ret 0
_main ENDP

```

If to replace operator<< by f(), that code can be rewritten as:

```
f(f(std::cout, "Hello, "), "world!")
```

GCC generates almost the same code as MSVC.

37.3 References

In C++, references are pointers (10) as well, but they are called *safe*, because it is harder to make a mistake while dealing with them [ISO13, p. 8.3.2]. For example, reference must always be pointing to the object of corresponding type and cannot be NULL [Cli, p. 8.6]. Even more than that, reference cannot be changed, it is impossible to point it to another object (reset) [Cli, p. 8.5].

If we will try to change the pointers example (10) to use references instead of pointers:

```

void f2 (int x, int y, int & sum, int & product)
{
    sum=x+y;
    product=x*y;
};

```

Then we'll figure out the compiled code is just the same as in pointers example (10):

Listing 37.20: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_x$ = 8 ; size = 4
_y$ = 12 ; size = 4
_sum$ = 16 ; size = 4
_product$ = 20 ; size = 4
?f2@@YAXHHAH0@Z PROC ; f2
    mov ecx, DWORD PTR _y$[esp-4]
    mov eax, DWORD PTR _x$[esp-4]
    lea edx, DWORD PTR [eax+ecx]
    imul eax, ecx
    mov ecx, DWORD PTR _product$[esp-4]
    push esi
    mov esi, DWORD PTR _sum$[esp]
    mov DWORD PTR [esi], edx
    mov DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
    pop esi
    ret 0
?f2@@YAXHHAH0@Z ENDP ; f2

```

(A reason why C++ functions has such strange names, is described here: 37.1.1.)

37.4 STL

N.B.: all examples here were checked only in 32-bit environment. x64 wasn't checked.

37.4.1 `std::string`

Internals

Many string libraries [Yur13, p. 2.2] implements structure containing pointer to the buffer containing string, a variable always containing current string length (that is very convenient for many functions: [Yur13, p. 2.2.1]) and a variable containing current buffer size. A string in buffer is usually terminated with zero: in order to be able to pass a pointer to a buffer into the functions taking usual C ASCIIZ-string.

It is not specified in the C++ standard [ISO13] how `std::string` should be implemented, however, it is usually implemented as described above.

C++ strings is not a class (as `QString` in Qt, for instance) but template (`basic_string`), this is done in order to support various character types: at least `char` and `wchar_t`.

So, `std::string` is a class with `char` as base type. And `std::wstring` is a class with `wchar_t` as base type.

MSVC

MSVC implementation may store buffer in place instead of pointer to buffer (if the string is shorter than 16 symbols).

This mean that short string will occupy at least $16 + 4 + 4 = 24$ bytes in 32-bit environment or at least $16 + 8 + 8 = 32$ bytes in 64-bit, and if the string is longer than 16 characters, add also length of the string itself.

Listing 37.21: example for MSVC

```
#include <string>
#include <stdio.h>

struct std_string
{
    union
    {
        char buf[16];
        char* ptr;
    } u;
    size_t size; // AKA 'Mysize' in MSVC
    size_t capacity; // AKA 'Myres' in MSVC
};

void dump_std_string(std::string s)
{
    struct std_string *p=(struct std_string*)&s;
    printf ("[%s] size:%d capacity:%d\n", p->size>16 ? p->u.ptr : p->u.buf, p->size, p->
    ↵ capacity);
};

int main()
{
    std::string s1="short string";
    std::string s2="string longer than 16 bytes";

    dump_std_string(s1);
    dump_std_string(s2);

    // that works without using c_str()
    printf ("%s\n", &s1);
    printf ("%s\n", s2);
};
```

Almost everything is clear from the source code.

Couple notes:

If the string is shorter than 16 symbols, a buffer for the string will not be allocated in the [heap](#). This is convenient because in practice, large amount of strings are short indeed. Apparently, Microsoft developers chose 16 characters as a good balance.

Very important thing here is in the end of `main()` functions: I'm not using `c_str()` method, nevertheless, if to compile the code and run, both strings will be appeared in the console!

This is why it works.

The string is shorter than 16 characters and buffer with the string is located in the beginning of `std::string` object (it can be treated just as structure). `printf()` treats pointer as a pointer to the null-terminated array of characters, hence it works.

Second string (longer than 16 characters) printing is even more dangerous: it is typical programmer's mistake (or typo) to forget to write `c_str()`. This works because at the moment a pointer to buffer is located at the start of structure. This may left unnoticed for a long span of time: until a longer string will appear there, then a process will crash.

GCC

GCC implementation of a structure has one more variable—reference count.

One interesting fact is that a pointer to `std::string` instance of class points not to beginning of the structure, but to the pointer to buffer. In `libstdc++-v3\include\bits\basic_string.h` we may read that it was made for convenient debugging:

```
* The reason you want _M_data pointing to the character %array and
* not the _Rep is so that the debugger can see the string
* contents. (Probably we should add a non-inline member to get
* the _Rep for the debugger to use, so users can check the actual
* string length.)
```

[basic_string.h source code](#)

I considering this in my example:

Listing 37.22: example for GCC

```
#include <string>
#include <stdio.h>

struct std_string
{
    size_t length;
    size_t capacity;
    size_t refcount;
};

void dump_std_string(std::string s)
{
    char *p1=(char*)&s; // GCC type checking workaround
    struct std_string *p2=(struct std_string*)(p1-sizeof(struct std_string));
    printf ("%s] size:%d capacity:%d\n", p1, p2->length, p2->capacity);
};

int main()
{
    std::string s1="short string";
    std::string s2="string longer than 16 bytes";

    dump_std_string(s1);
    dump_std_string(s2);

    // GCC type checking workaround:
    printf ("%s\n", *(char*)&s1);
    printf ("%s\n", *(char*)&s2);
};
```

A trickery should be also used to imitate mistake I already wrote above because GCC has stronger type checking, nevertheless, `printf()` works here without `c_str()` as well.

More complex example

```
#include <string>
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    std::string s1="Hello, ";
    std::string s2="world!\n";
    std::string s3=s1+s2;

    printf ("%s\n", s3.c_str());
}
```

Listing 37.23: MSVC 2012

```
$SG39512 DB 'Hello, ', 00H
$SG39514 DB 'world!', 0aH, 00H
$SG39581 DB '%s', 0aH, 00H
```

```

_s2$ = -72 ; size = 24
_s3$ = -48 ; size = 24
_s1$ = -24 ; size = 24
_main PROC
    sub    esp, 72

    push  7
    push  OFFSET $SG39512
    lea   ecx, DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+80]
    mov   DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+100], 15
    mov   DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+96], 0
    mov   BYTE PTR _s1$[esp+80], 0
    call  ?assign@?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@QAEAAV12@PBDI@Z ; ↵
    ↵ std::basic_string<char,std::char_traits<char>,std::allocator<char> >::assign

    push  7
    push  OFFSET $SG39514
    lea   ecx, DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+80]
    mov   DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+100], 15
    mov   DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+96], 0
    mov   BYTE PTR _s2$[esp+80], 0
    call  ?assign@?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@QAEAAV12@PBDI@Z ; ↵
    ↵ std::basic_string<char,std::char_traits<char>,std::allocator<char> >::assign

    lea   eax, DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+72]
    push  eax
    lea   eax, DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+76]
    push  eax
    lea   eax, DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+80]
    push  eax
    call  ???HDU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@1@@std@@YA?AV?$basic_string@DU?
    ↵ $char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@@0@ABV10@0@Z ; std::operator+<char,std::char_traits<
    ↵ char>,std::allocator<char> >

    ; inlined c_str() method:
    cmp   DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+104], 16
    lea   eax, DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+84]
    cmovae eax, DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+84]

    push  eax
    push  OFFSET $SG39581
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 20

    cmp   DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+92], 16
    jb    SHORT $LN119@main
    push  DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+72]
    call  ???@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
    add   esp, 4
$LN119@main:
    cmp   DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+92], 16
    mov   DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+92], 15
    mov   DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+88], 0
    mov   BYTE PTR _s3$[esp+72], 0
    jb    SHORT $LN151@main
    push  DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+72]
    call  ???@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
    add   esp, 4
$LN151@main:
    cmp   DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+92], 16
    mov   DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+92], 15
    mov   DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+88], 0
    mov   BYTE PTR _s2$[esp+72], 0
    jb    SHORT $LN195@main
    push  DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+72]
    call  ???@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
    add   esp, 4
$LN195@main:
    xor   eax, eax
    add   esp, 72

```

```
ret 0
_main ENDP
```

Compiler not constructing strings statically: how it is possible anyway if buffer should be located in the [heap](#)? Usual ASCII strings are stored in the data segment instead, and later, at the moment of execution, with the help of “assign” method, s1 and s2 strings are constructed. With the help of operator+, s3 string is constructed.

Please note that there are no call to `c_str()` method, because, its code is tiny enough so compiler inlined it right here: if the string is shorter than 16 characters, a pointer to buffer is left in EAX register, and an address of the string buffer located in the [heap](#) is fetched otherwise.

Next, we see calls to the 3 destructors, and they are called if string is longer than 16 characters: then a buffers in the [heap](#) should be freed. Otherwise, since all three `std::string` objects are stored in the stack, they are freed automatically, upon function finish.

As a consequence, short strings processing is faster because of lesser [heap](#) accesses.

GCC code is even simpler (because GCC way, as I mentioned above, is not to store shorter string right in the structure):

Listing 37.24: GCC 4.8.1

```
.LC0:
.string "Hello, "
.LC1:
.string "world!\n"
main:
push ebp
mov  ebp, esp
push edi
push esi
push ebx
and  esp, -16
sub  esp, 32
lea  ebx, [esp+28]
lea  edi, [esp+20]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp+8], ebx
lea  esi, [esp+24]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], edi

call _ZNStC1EPKcRKSaIcE

mov  DWORD PTR [esp+8], ebx
mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], esi

call _ZNStC1EPKcRKSaIcE

mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], edi
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], ebx

call _ZNStC1ERKSs

mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], esi
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], ebx

call _ZNSt6appendERKSs

; inlined c_str():
mov  eax, DWORD PTR [esp+28]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], eax

call puts

mov  eax, DWORD PTR [esp+28]
lea  ebx, [esp+19]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], ebx
sub  eax, 12
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], eax
call _ZNSt4_Rep10_M_disposeERKSaIcE
mov  eax, DWORD PTR [esp+24]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], ebx
sub  eax, 12
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], eax
```

```

call _ZN5s4_Rep10_M_disposeERKSaIcE
mov  eax, DWORD PTR [esp+20]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], ebx
sub  eax, 12
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], eax
call _ZN5s4_Rep10_M_disposeERKSaIcE
lea  esp, [ebp-12]
xor  eax, eax
pop  ebx
pop  esi
pop  edi
pop  ebp
ret

```

It can be seen that not a pointer to object is passed to destructors, but rather a place 12 bytes (or 3 words) before, i.e., pointer to the real start of the structure.

std::string as a global variable

Experienced C++ programmers may argue: a global variables of [STL⁷](#) types are in fact can be defined.

Yes, indeed:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <string>

std::string s="a string";

int main()
{
    printf ("%s\n", s.c_str());
};

```

In fact, this variable will be initialized even before main() start.

Listing 37.25: MSVC 2012: here is global variable constructed and also its destructor is registered

```

??_Es@@YAXXZ PROC
    push 8
    push OFFSET $SG39512 ; 'a string'
    mov  ecx, OFFSET ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A ; s
    call ?assign@?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@QAEAAV12@PBIDI@Z ; ↵
    ↵ std::basic_string<char,std::char_traits<char>,std::allocator<char> >::assign
    push OFFSET ??_Fs@@YAXXZ ; `dynamic atexit destructor for 's'`
    call _atexit
    pop  ecx
    ret 0
??_Es@@YAXXZ ENDP

```

Listing 37.26: MSVC 2012: here global variable is used in main()

```

$SG39512 DB 'a string', 00H
$SG39519 DB '%s', 0aH, 00H

_main PROC
    cmp  DWORD PTR ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A+20, 16
    mov  eax, OFFSET ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A ; s
    cmovae eax, DWORD PTR ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A
    push eax
    push OFFSET $SG39519 ; '%s'
    call _printf
    add  esp, 8
    xor  eax, eax
    ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Listing 37.27: MSVC 2012: this destructor function is called before exit

```

??_Fs@@YAXXZ PROC
    push ecx

```

⁷(C++) Standard Template Library: [37.4](#)


```

cmp  DWORD PTR ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A+20, 16
jb   SHORT $LN23@dynamic
push esi
mov  esi, DWORD PTR ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR $T2[esp+8]
call ??0?$_Wrap_alloc@V?$allocator@D@std@@@std@@QAE@XZ
push OFFSET ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A ; s
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR $T2[esp+12]
call ??$destroy@PAD@?$_Wrap_alloc@V?$allocator@D@std@@@std@@QAE@XPAPAD@Z
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR $T1[esp+8]
call ??0?$_Wrap_alloc@V?$allocator@D@std@@@std@@QAE@XZ
push esi
call ??3@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
add  esp, 4
pop  esi
$LN23@dynamic:
mov  DWORD PTR ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A+20, 15
mov  DWORD PTR ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A+16, 0
mov  BYTE PTR ?s@@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@std@@A, 0
pop  ecx
ret  0
??_Fs@@YAXXZ ENDP

```

In fact, a special function with all constructors of global variables is called from `CRT`, before `main()`. More than that: with the help of `atexit()` another function is registered: which contain calls to all destructors of such global variables. GCC works likewise:

Listing 37.28: GCC 4.8.1

```

main:
push  ebp
mov   ebp, esp
and   esp, -16
sub   esp, 16
mov   eax, DWORD PTR s
mov   DWORD PTR [esp], eax
call  puts
xor   eax, eax
leave
ret

.LC0:
.string "a string"
_GLOBAL__sub_I_s:
sub   esp, 44
lea   eax, [esp+31]
mov   DWORD PTR [esp+8], eax
mov   DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
mov   DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:s
call  _ZNSsC1EPKcRKSaIcE
mov   DWORD PTR [esp+8], OFFSET FLAT:__dso_handle
mov   DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:s
mov   DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:_ZNSsD1Ev
call  __cxa_atexit
add   esp, 44
ret

.LFE645:
.size  _GLOBAL__sub_I_s, .-_GLOBAL__sub_I_s
.section .init_array,"aw"
.align 4
.long  _GLOBAL__sub_I_s
.globl s
.bss
.align 4
.type  s, @object
.size  s, 4

s:
.zero 4
.hidden __dso_handle

```

But it not create a separate functions for this, each destructor is passed to `atexit()`, one by one.

37.4.2 std::list

This is a well-known doubly-linked list: each element has two pointers, to the previous and the next elements.

This means that a memory footprint is enlarged by 2 **words** for each element (8 bytes in 32-bit environment or 16 bytes in 64-bit).

C++ STL just adds “next” and “previous” pointers to your existing structure you wish to unite into a list.

Let’s work out an example with a simple 2-variable structure we want to store in the list.

Although C++ standard [ISO13] does not tell how to implement it, MSVC and GCC implementations are straightforward and similar to each other, so here is only one source code for both:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <list>
#include <iostream>

struct a
{
    int x;
    int y;
};

struct List_node
{
    struct List_node* _Next;
    struct List_node* _Prev;
    int x;
    int y;
};

void dump_List_node (struct List_node *n)
{
    printf ("ptr=0x%p _Next=0x%p _Prev=0x%p x=%d y=%d\n",
           n, n->_Next, n->_Prev, n->x, n->y);
};

void dump_List_vals (struct List_node* n)
{
    struct List_node* current=n;

    for (;;)
    {
        dump_List_node (current);
        current=current->_Next;
        if (current==n) // end
            break;
    };
};

void dump_List_val (unsigned int *a)
{
#ifdef _MSC_VER
    // GCC implementation doesn't have "size" field
    printf ("_Myhead=0x%p, _Mysize=%d\n", a[0], a[1]);
#endif
    dump_List_vals ((struct List_node*)a[0]);
};

int main()
{
    std::list<struct a> l;

    printf ("* empty list:\n");
    dump_List_val((unsigned int*)(void*)&l);

    struct a t1;
    t1.x=1;
    t1.y=2;
    l.push_front (t1);
    t1.x=3;
    t1.y=4;
    l.push_front (t1);
};
```

```

t1.x=5;
t1.y=6;
l.push_back (t1);

printf ("* 3-elements list:\n");
dump_List_val((unsigned int*)(void*)&l);

std::list<struct a>::iterator tmp;
printf ("node at .begin:\n");
tmp=l.begin();
dump_List_node ((struct List_node *)*(void**)&tmp);
printf ("node at .end:\n");
tmp=l.end();
dump_List_node ((struct List_node *)*(void**)&tmp);

printf ("* let's count from the begin:\n");
std::list<struct a>::iterator it=l.begin();
printf ("1st element: %d %d\n", (*it).x, (*it).y);
it++;
printf ("2nd element: %d %d\n", (*it).x, (*it).y);
it++;
printf ("3rd element: %d %d\n", (*it).x, (*it).y);
it++;
printf ("element at .end(): %d %d\n", (*it).x, (*it).y);

printf ("* let's count from the end:\n");
std::list<struct a>::iterator it2=l.end();
printf ("element at .end(): %d %d\n", (*it2).x, (*it2).y);
it2--;
printf ("3rd element: %d %d\n", (*it2).x, (*it2).y);
it2--;
printf ("2nd element: %d %d\n", (*it2).x, (*it2).y);
it2--;
printf ("1st element: %d %d\n", (*it2).x, (*it2).y);

printf ("removing last element...\n");
l.pop_back();
dump_List_val((unsigned int*)(void*)&l);
};

```

GCC

Let's start with GCC.

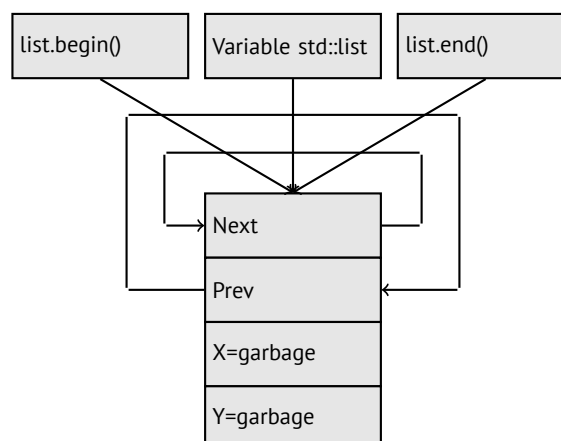
When we run the example, we'll see a long dump, let's work with it part by part.

```

* empty list:
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=0

```

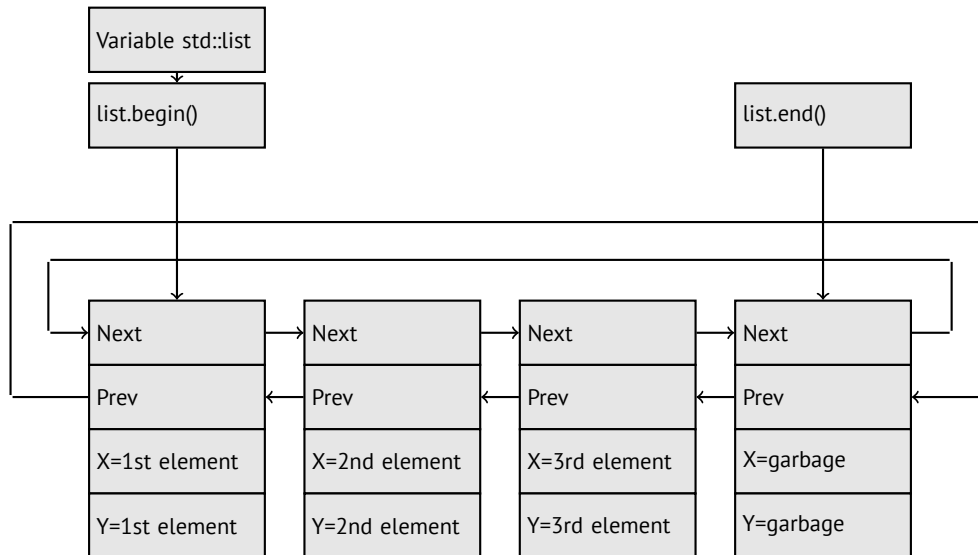
Here we see an empty list. Despite the fact it is empty, it has one element with garbage (AKA *dummy node*) in *x* and *y* variables. Both "next" and "prev" pointers are pointing to the self node:



That's the moment when `.begin` and `.end` iterators are equal to each other. Let's push 3 elements, and the list internally will be:

```
* 3-elements list:
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4
ptr=0x00034988 _Next=0x00034b40 _Prev=0x000349a0 x=1 y=2
ptr=0x00034b40 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x00034988 x=5 y=6
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034b40 x=5 y=6
```

The last element is still at 0x0028fe90, it will not be moved until list disposal. It still contain random garbage in x and y fields (5 and 6). By occasion, these values are the same as in the last element, but it doesn't mean they are meaningful. Here is how these 3 elements are stored in memory:



The variable l always points to the first node.

`.begin()` and `.end()` iterators are not variables, but functions, when called, returning pointers to a corresponding nodes.

Having a dummy element (AKA *sentinel node*) is a very popular practice in implementing doubly-linked lists. Without it, a lot of operations may become slightly more complex and, hence, slower.

Iterator in fact is just a pointer to a node. `list.begin()` and `list.end()` are just returning pointers.

```
node at .begin:
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4
node at .end:
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034b40 x=5 y=6
```

The fact the last element has a pointer to the first and first element has a pointer to the last one, remind us circular list.

This is very helpful here: having a pointer to the first list element, i.e., that is in the l variable, it is easy to get a pointer to the last one quickly, without need to traverse whole list. Inserting element at the list end is also quick, thanks to this feature.

`operator--` and `operator++` are just set current iterator value to the `current_node->prev` or `current_node->next` values. Reverse iterators (`.rbegin`, `.rend`) works just as the same, but in inverse way.

`operator*` of iterator just returns pointer to the point in the node structure, where user's structure is beginning, i.e., pointer to the very first structure element (x).

List insertion and deletion is trivial: just allocate new node (or deallocate) and fix all pointers to be valid.

That's why iterator may become invalid after element deletion: it may still point to the node already deallocated. This is also called *dangling pointer*. And of course, the information from the freed node, to which iterator still points, cannot be used anymore.

The GCC implementation (as of 4.8.1) doesn't store current list size: this implies slow `.size()` method: it should traverse the whole list for counting elements, because it doesn't have any other way to get the information. This mean this operation is $O(n)$, i.e., it is as slow, as how many elements present in the list.

Listing 37.29: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 -fno-inline-small-functions

```
main proc near
  push ebp
  mov  ebp, esp
  push esi
  push ebx
  and  esp, 0FFFFFF0h
  sub  esp, 20h
  lea  ebx, [esp+10h]
  mov  dword ptr [esp], offset s ; "* empty list:"
  mov  [esp+10h], ebx
```

```

mov [esp+14h], ebx
call puts
mov [esp], ebx
call _Z13dump_List_valPj ; dump_List_val(uint *)
lea esi, [esp+18h]
mov [esp+4], esi
mov [esp], ebx
mov dword ptr [esp+18h], 1 ; X for new element
mov dword ptr [esp+1Ch], 2 ; Y for new element
call _ZNSt4listI1aSaISO_EE10push_frontERKS0_ ; std::list<a,std::allocator<a>>::push_front(a&
↳ const&)
mov [esp+4], esi
mov [esp], ebx
mov dword ptr [esp+18h], 3 ; X for new element
mov dword ptr [esp+1Ch], 4 ; Y for new element
call _ZNSt4listI1aSaISO_EE10push_frontERKS0_ ; std::list<a,std::allocator<a>>::push_front(a&
↳ const&)
mov dword ptr [esp], 10h
mov dword ptr [esp+18h], 5 ; X for new element
mov dword ptr [esp+1Ch], 6 ; Y for new element
call _Znwj ; operator new(uint)
cmp eax, 0FFFFFFF8h
jz short loc_80002A6
mov ecx, [esp+1Ch]
mov edx, [esp+18h]
mov [eax+0Ch], ecx
mov [eax+8], edx

```

loc_80002A6: ; CODE XREF: main+86

```

mov [esp+4], ebx
mov [esp], eax
call _ZNSt8__detail15_List_node_base7_M_hookEPS0_ ; std::__detail::_List_node_base::_M_hook&
↳ (std::__detail::_List_node_base*)
mov dword ptr [esp], offset a3ElementsList ; "* 3-elements list:"
call puts
mov [esp], ebx
call _Z13dump_List_valPj ; dump_List_val(uint *)
mov dword ptr [esp], offset aNodeAt_begin ; "node at .begin:"
call puts
mov eax, [esp+10h]
mov [esp], eax
call _Z14dump_List_nodeP9List_node ; dump_List_node(List_node *)
mov dword ptr [esp], offset aNodeAt_end ; "node at .end:"
call puts
mov [esp], ebx
call _Z14dump_List_nodeP9List_node ; dump_List_node(List_node *)
mov dword ptr [esp], offset aLetSCountFromT ; "* let's count from the begin:"
call puts
mov esi, [esp+10h]
mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a1stElementDD ; "1st element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov esi, [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a2ndElementDD ; "2nd element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov esi, [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a3rdElementDD ; "3rd element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1

```

```

mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov eax, [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
mov edx, [eax+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], edx
mov eax, [eax+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset aElementAt_endD ; "element at .end(): %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov dword ptr [esp], offset aLetSCountFro_0 ; "** let's count from the end:"
call puts
mov eax, [esp+1Ch]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset aElementAt_endD ; "element at .end(): %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esp+18h]
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov esi, [esp+14h]
mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a3rdElementDD ; "3rd element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov esi, [esi+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a2ndElementDD ; "2nd element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov eax, [esi+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
mov edx, [eax+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], edx
mov eax, [eax+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a1stElementDD ; "1st element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov dword ptr [esp], offset aRemovingLastEl ; "removing last element..."
call puts
mov esi, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], esi
call _ZNSt8__detail15_List_node_base9_M_unhookEv ; std::__detail::_List_node_base::~
↳ _M_unhook(void)
mov [esp], esi ; void *
call _ZdlPv ; operator delete(void *)
mov [esp], ebx
call _Z13dump_List_valPj ; dump_List_val(uint *)
mov [esp], ebx
call _ZNSt10_List_baseI1aSaIS0_EE8_M_clearEv ; std::_List_base<a,std::allocator<a>>::
↳ _M_clear(void)
lea esp, [ebp-8]
xor eax, eax
pop ebx
pop esi
pop ebp
retn
main endp

```

Listing 37.30: The whole output

```

* empty list:
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=0
* 3-elements list:
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4

```

```

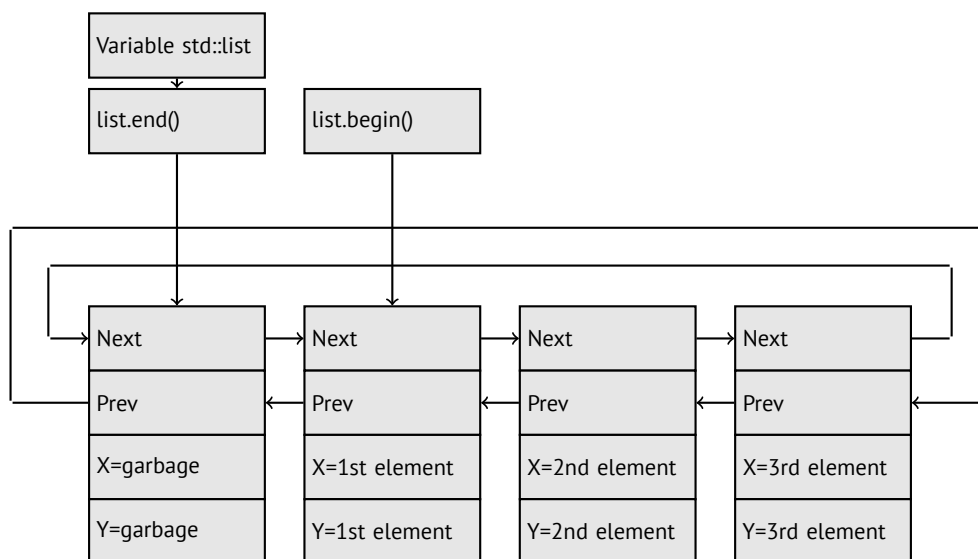
ptr=0x00034988 _Next=0x00034b40 _Prev=0x000349a0 x=1 y=2
ptr=0x00034b40 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x00034988 x=5 y=6
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034b40 x=5 y=6
node at .begin:
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4
node at .end:
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034b40 x=5 y=6
* let's count from the begin:
1st element: 3 4
2nd element: 1 2
3rd element: 5 6
element at .end(): 5 6
* let's count from the end:
element at .end(): 5 6
3rd element: 5 6
2nd element: 1 2
1st element: 3 4
removing last element...
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4
ptr=0x00034988 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x000349a0 x=1 y=2
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034988 x=5 y=6

```

MSVC

MSVC implementation (2012) is just the same, but it also stores current list size. This mean, `.size()` method is very fast ($O(1)$): just read one value from memory. On the other way, size variable must be corrected at each insertion/deletion.

MSVC implementation is also slightly different in a way it arrange nodes:



GCC has its dummy element at the end of the list, while MSVC at the beginning of it.

Listing 37.31: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Fa2.asm /GS- /Ob1

```

_l$ = -16 ; size = 8
_t1$ = -8 ; size = 8
_main PROC
  sub esp, 16
  push ebx
  push esi
  push edi
  push 0
  push 0
  lea ecx, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36]
  mov DWORD PTR _l$[esp+40], 0
  ; allocate first "garbage" element
  call ?_Buynode0@?$_List_alloc@$0A@U?$_List_base_types@Ua@@V?
  ↪ $allocator@Ua@@@std@@@std@@@std@@@QAEPAU?$_List_node@Ua@@@PAX@2@PAU32@0@Z ; std::
  ↪ _List_alloc<0,std::_List_base_types<a,std::allocator<a>>>::_Buynode0
  mov edi, DWORD PTR __imp__printf
  mov ebx, eax
  push OFFSET $SG40685 ; '* empty list:'

```

```

mov  DWORD PTR _l$[esp+32], ebx
call  edi ; printf
lea  eax, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+32]
push  eax
call  ?dump_List_val@@YAXPAI@Z ; dump_List_val
mov  esi, DWORD PTR [ebx]
add  esp, 8
lea  eax, DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28]
push  eax
push  DWORD PTR [esi+4]
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36]
push  esi
mov  DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+40], 1 ; data for a new node
mov  DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+44], 2 ; data for a new node
; allocate new node
call  ??$_Buynode@ABUa@@@?$_List_buy@Ua@@V?$allocator@Ua@@@std@@@std@@QAEPAU?↵
↵ $_List_node@Ua@@PAX@1@PAU21@0ABUa@@@Z ; std::_List_buy<a,std::allocator<a> >::_Buynode<a
↵ const &>
mov  DWORD PTR [esi+4], eax
mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
mov  DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28], 3 ; data for a new node
mov  DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
mov  esi, DWORD PTR [ebx]
lea  eax, DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28]
push  eax
push  DWORD PTR [esi+4]
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36]
push  esi
mov  DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+44], 4 ; data for a new node
; allocate new node
call  ??$_Buynode@ABUa@@@?$_List_buy@Ua@@V?$allocator@Ua@@@std@@@std@@QAEPAU?↵
↵ $_List_node@Ua@@PAX@1@PAU21@0ABUa@@@Z ; std::_List_buy<a,std::allocator<a> >::_Buynode<a
↵ const &>
mov  DWORD PTR [esi+4], eax
mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
mov  DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28], 5 ; data for a new node
mov  DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
lea  eax, DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28]
push  eax
push  DWORD PTR [ebx+4]
lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36]
push  ebx
mov  DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+44], 6 ; data for a new node
; allocate new node
call  ??$_Buynode@ABUa@@@?$_List_buy@Ua@@V?$allocator@Ua@@@std@@@std@@QAEPAU?↵
↵ $_List_node@Ua@@PAX@1@PAU21@0ABUa@@@Z ; std::_List_buy<a,std::allocator<a> >::_Buynode<a
↵ const &>
mov  DWORD PTR [ebx+4], eax
mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
push  OFFSET $SG40689 ; '* 3-elements list:'
mov  DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36], 3
mov  DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
call  edi ; printf
lea  eax, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+32]
push  eax
call  ?dump_List_val@@YAXPAI@Z ; dump_List_val
push  OFFSET $SG40831 ; 'node at .begin:'
call  edi ; printf
push  DWORD PTR [ebx] ; get next field of node $l$ variable points to
call  ?dump_List_node@@YAXPAUList_node@@@Z ; dump_List_node
push  OFFSET $SG40835 ; 'node at .end:'
call  edi ; printf
push  ebx ; pointer to the node $l$ variable points to!
call  ?dump_List_node@@YAXPAUList_node@@@Z ; dump_List_node
push  OFFSET $SG40839 ; '* let's count from the begin:'
call  edi ; printf
mov  esi, DWORD PTR [ebx] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
push  DWORD PTR [esi+12]
push  DWORD PTR [esi+8]
push  OFFSET $SG40846 ; '1st element: %d %d'

```



```

call edi ; printf
mov esi, DWORD PTR [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
push DWORD PTR [esi+12]
push DWORD PTR [esi+8]
push OFFSET $SG40848 ; '2nd element: %d %d'
call edi ; printf
mov esi, DWORD PTR [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
push DWORD PTR [esi+12]
push DWORD PTR [esi+8]
push OFFSET $SG40850 ; '3rd element: %d %d'
call edi ; printf
mov eax, DWORD PTR [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
add esp, 64
push DWORD PTR [eax+12]
push DWORD PTR [eax+8]
push OFFSET $SG40852 ; 'element at .end(): %d %d'
call edi ; printf
push OFFSET $SG40853 ; '* let''s count from the end:'
call edi ; printf
push DWORD PTR [ebx+12] ; use x and y fields from the node $l$ variable points to
push DWORD PTR [ebx+8]
push OFFSET $SG40860 ; 'element at .end(): %d %d'
call edi ; printf
mov esi, DWORD PTR [ebx+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
push DWORD PTR [esi+12]
push DWORD PTR [esi+8]
push OFFSET $SG40862 ; '3rd element: %d %d'
call edi ; printf
mov esi, DWORD PTR [esi+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
push DWORD PTR [esi+12]
push DWORD PTR [esi+8]
push OFFSET $SG40864 ; '2nd element: %d %d'
call edi ; printf
mov eax, DWORD PTR [esi+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
push DWORD PTR [eax+12]
push DWORD PTR [eax+8]
push OFFSET $SG40866 ; '1st element: %d %d'
call edi ; printf
add esp, 64
push OFFSET $SG40867 ; 'removing last element...'
call edi ; printf
mov edx, DWORD PTR [ebx+4]
add esp, 4

; prev=next?
; it is the only element, "garbage one"?
; if yes, do not delete it!
cmp edx, ebx
je SHORT $LN349@main
mov ecx, DWORD PTR [edx+4]
mov eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
mov DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
mov ecx, DWORD PTR [edx]
mov eax, DWORD PTR [edx+4]
push edx
mov DWORD PTR [ecx+4], eax
call ???@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
add esp, 4
mov DWORD PTR _l$[esp+32], 2
$LN349@main:
lea eax, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+28]
push eax
call ?dump_List_val@YAXPAI@Z ; dump_List_val
mov eax, DWORD PTR [ebx]
add esp, 4
mov DWORD PTR [ebx], ebx
mov DWORD PTR [ebx+4], ebx
cmp eax, ebx
je SHORT $LN412@main
$LL414@main:

```

```

mov esi, DWORD PTR [eax]
push eax
call ???@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
add esp, 4
mov eax, esi
cmp esi, ebx
jne SHORT $LL414@main
$LN412@main:
push ebx
call ???@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
add esp, 4
xor eax, eax
pop edi
pop esi
pop ebx
add esp, 16
ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Unlike GCC, MSVC code allocates dummy element at the function start with the help of “Buynode” function, it is also used for the rest nodes allocations (GCC code allocates the very first element in the local stack).

Listing 37.32: The whole output

```

* empty list:
_Myhead=0x003CC258, _Mysize=0
ptr=0x003CC258 _Next=0x003CC258 _Prev=0x003CC258 x=6226002 y=4522072
* 3-elements list:
_Myhead=0x003CC258, _Mysize=3
ptr=0x003CC258 _Next=0x003CC288 _Prev=0x003CC2A0 x=6226002 y=4522072
ptr=0x003CC288 _Next=0x003CC270 _Prev=0x003CC258 x=3 y=4
ptr=0x003CC270 _Next=0x003CC2A0 _Prev=0x003CC288 x=1 y=2
ptr=0x003CC2A0 _Next=0x003CC258 _Prev=0x003CC270 x=5 y=6
node at .begin:
ptr=0x003CC288 _Next=0x003CC270 _Prev=0x003CC258 x=3 y=4
node at .end:
ptr=0x003CC258 _Next=0x003CC288 _Prev=0x003CC2A0 x=6226002 y=4522072
* let's count from the begin:
1st element: 3 4
2nd element: 1 2
3rd element: 5 6
element at .end(): 6226002 4522072
* let's count from the end:
element at .end(): 6226002 4522072
3rd element: 5 6
2nd element: 1 2
1st element: 3 4
removing last element...
_Myhead=0x003CC258, _Mysize=2
ptr=0x003CC258 _Next=0x003CC288 _Prev=0x003CC270 x=6226002 y=4522072
ptr=0x003CC288 _Next=0x003CC270 _Prev=0x003CC258 x=3 y=4
ptr=0x003CC270 _Next=0x003CC258 _Prev=0x003CC288 x=1 y=2

```

C++11 std::forward_list

The same thing as std::list, but singly-linked one, i.e., having only “next” field at each node. It requires smaller memory footprint, but also doesn't offer a feature to traverse list back.

37.4.3 std::vector

I would call std::vector “safe wrapper” of PODT⁸ C array. Internally, it is somewhat similar to std::string (37.4.1): it has a pointer to the allocated buffer, pointer to the end of array, and a pointer to the end of allocated buffer.

Array elements just lie in memory adjacently to each other, just like in usual array (18). In C++11 there are new method .data() appeared, returning a pointer to the buffer, akin to .c_str() in std::string.

Buffer allocated in heap may be larger than array itself.

Both MSVC and GCC implementations are similar, just structure field names are slightly different⁹, so here is one source code working for both compilers. Here is again a C-like code for dumping std::vector structure:

⁸(C++) Plain Old Data Type

⁹GCC internals: <http://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/libstdc++/libstdc++-html-USERS-4.4/a01371.html>

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <vector>
#include <algorithm>
#include <functional>

struct vector_of_ints
{
    // MSVC names:
    int *Myfirst;
    int *Mylast;
    int *Myend;

    // GCC structure is the same, names are: _M_start, _M_finish, _M_end_of_storage
};

void dump(struct vector_of_ints *in)
{
    printf ("_Myfirst=%p, _Mylast=%p, _Myend=%p\n", in->Myfirst, in->Mylast, in->Myend);
    size_t size=(in->Mylast-in->Myfirst);
    size_t capacity=(in->Myend-in->Myfirst);
    printf ("size=%d, capacity=%d\n", size, capacity);
    for (size_t i=0; i<size; i++)
        printf ("element %d: %d\n", i, in->Myfirst[i]);
};

int main()
{
    std::vector<int> c;
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    c.push_back(1);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    c.push_back(2);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    c.push_back(3);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    c.push_back(4);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    c.reserve (6);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    c.push_back(5);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    c.push_back(6);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    printf ("%d\n", c.at(5)); // bounds checking
    printf ("%d\n", c[8]); // operator[], no bounds checking
};

```

Here is a sample output if compiled in MSVC:

```

_Myfirst=00000000, _Mylast=00000000, _Myend=00000000
size=0, capacity=0
_Myfirst=0051CF48, _Mylast=0051CF4C, _Myend=0051CF4C
size=1, capacity=1
element 0: 1
_Myfirst=0051CF58, _Mylast=0051CF60, _Myend=0051CF60
size=2, capacity=2
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
_Myfirst=0051C278, _Mylast=0051C284, _Myend=0051C284
size=3, capacity=3
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
_Myfirst=0051C290, _Mylast=0051C2A0, _Myend=0051C2A0
size=4, capacity=4
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
_Myfirst=0051B180, _Mylast=0051B190, _Myend=0051B198

```

```

size=4, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
_Myfirst=0051B180, _Mylast=0051B194, _Myend=0051B198
size=5, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
element 4: 5
_Myfirst=0051B180, _Mylast=0051B198, _Myend=0051B198
size=6, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
element 4: 5
element 5: 6
6
6619158

```

As it can be seen, there is no allocated buffer at the `main()` function start yet. After first `push_back()` call, buffer is allocated. And then, after each `push_back()` call, both array size and buffer size (*capacity*) are increased. But buffer address is changed as well, because `push_back()` function reallocates the buffer in the [heap](#) each time. It is costly operation, that's why it is very important to predict future array size and reserve a space for it with `.reserve()` method. The very last number is a garbage: there are no array elements at this point, so random number is printed. This is illustration to the fact that operator `[]` of `std::vector` is not checking if the index in the array bounds. Slower `.at()` method, however, does checking and throw `std::out_of_range` exception in case of error.

Let's see the code:

Listing 37.33: MSVC 2012 /GS- /Ob1

```

$SG52650 DB '%d', 0aH, 00H
$SG52651 DB '%d', 0aH, 00H

_this$ = -4 ; size = 4
__Pos$ = 8 ; size = 4
?at@$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEAAHI@Z PROC ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int> ↵
↵ >::at, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    push ebp
    mov  ebp, esp
    push ecx
    mov  DWORD PTR _this$[ebp], ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
    sub  edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    sar  edx, 2
    cmp  edx, DWORD PTR __Pos$[ebp]
    ja   SHORT $LN1@at
    push OFFSET ??_C@_OBM@NMJKDPPO@invalid?5vector?$DMT?$DO?5subscript?$AA@
    call DWORD PTR __imp?_Xout_of_range@std@@YAXPBD@Z
$LN1@at:
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [eax]
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR __Pos$[ebp]
    lea  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+edx*4]
$LN3@at:
    mov  esp, ebp
    pop  ebp
    ret  4
?at@$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEAAHI@Z ENDP ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int> ↵
↵ >::at

_c$ = -36 ; size = 12
$T1 = -24 ; size = 4
$T2 = -20 ; size = 4

```

```

$T3 = -16 ; size = 4
$T4 = -12 ; size = 4
$T5 = -8 ; size = 4
$T6 = -4 ; size = 4
_main PROC
    push ebp
    mov  ebp, esp
    sub  esp, 36
    mov  DWORD PTR _c$[ebp], 0 ; Myfirst
    mov  DWORD PTR _c$[ebp+4], 0 ; Mylast
    mov  DWORD PTR _c$[ebp+8], 0 ; Myend
    lea  eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push eax
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add  esp, 4
    mov  DWORD PTR $T6[ebp], 1
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR $T6[ebp]
    push ecx
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call ?push_back@$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEX$$QAH@Z ; std::vector<int,std::
    ↪ allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea  edx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push edx
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add  esp, 4
    mov  DWORD PTR $T5[ebp], 2
    lea  eax, DWORD PTR $T5[ebp]
    push eax
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call ?push_back@$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEX$$QAH@Z ; std::vector<int,std::
    ↪ allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push ecx
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add  esp, 4
    mov  DWORD PTR $T4[ebp], 3
    lea  edx, DWORD PTR $T4[ebp]
    push edx
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call ?push_back@$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEX$$QAH@Z ; std::vector<int,std::
    ↪ allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea  eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push eax
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add  esp, 4
    mov  DWORD PTR $T3[ebp], 4
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR $T3[ebp]
    push ecx
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call ?push_back@$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEX$$QAH@Z ; std::vector<int,std::
    ↪ allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea  edx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push edx
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add  esp, 4
    push 6
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call ?reserve@$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEXI@Z ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<
    ↪ int> >::reserve
    lea  eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push eax
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add  esp, 4
    mov  DWORD PTR $T2[ebp], 5
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR $T2[ebp]
    push ecx
    lea  ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call ?push_back@$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEX$$QAH@Z ; std::vector<int,std::
    ↪ allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea  edx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]

```

```

push edx
call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
add esp, 4
mov DWORD PTR $T1[ebp], 6
lea eax, DWORD PTR $T1[ebp]
push eax
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
call ?push_back@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEX$$QAHA@Z ; std::vector<int,std::
↳ allocator<int> >::push_back
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
push ecx
call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
add esp, 4
push 5
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
call ?at@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEEAHI@Z ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int
↳ > >::at
mov edx, DWORD PTR [eax]
push edx
push OFFSET $SG52650 ; '%'
call DWORD PTR __imp__printf
add esp, 8
mov eax, 8
shl eax, 2
mov ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
mov edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+eax]
push edx
push OFFSET $SG52651 ; '%'
call DWORD PTR __imp__printf
add esp, 8
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
call ?_Tidy@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@IAEXXZ ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int
↳ > >::_Tidy
xor eax, eax
mov esp, ebp
pop ebp
ret 0
_main ENDP

```

We see how `.at()` method check bounds and throw exception in case of error. The number of the last `printf()` call is just to be taken from a memory, without any checks.

One may ask, why not to use variables like “size” and “capacity”, like it was done in `std::string`. I suppose, that was done for the faster bounds checking. But I’m not sure.

The code GCC generates is almost the same on the whole, but `.at()` method is inlined:

Listing 37.34: GCC 4.8.1 -fno-inline-small-functions -O1

```

main proc near
push ebp
mov ebp, esp
push edi
push esi
push ebx
and esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
sub esp, 20h
mov dword ptr [esp+14h], 0
mov dword ptr [esp+18h], 0
mov dword ptr [esp+1Ch], 0
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
mov dword ptr [esp+10h], 1
lea eax, [esp+10h]
mov [esp+4], eax
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int>>::push_back(
↳ int const&)
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)

```

```

mov dword ptr [esp+10h], 2
lea eax, [esp+10h]
mov [esp+4], eax
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int>>::push_back(↵
↵ int const&)
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
mov dword ptr [esp+10h], 3
lea eax, [esp+10h]
mov [esp+4], eax
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int>>::push_back(↵
↵ int const&)
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
mov dword ptr [esp+10h], 4
lea eax, [esp+10h]
mov [esp+4], eax
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int>>::push_back(↵
↵ int const&)
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
mov ebx, [esp+14h]
mov eax, [esp+1Ch]
sub eax, ebx
cmp eax, 17h
ja short loc_80001CF
mov edi, [esp+18h]
sub edi, ebx
sar edi, 2
mov dword ptr [esp], 18h
call _Znwj ; operator new(uint)
mov esi, eax
test edi, edi
jz short loc_80001AD
lea eax, ds:0[edi*4]
mov [esp+8], eax ; n
mov [esp+4], ebx ; src
mov [esp], esi ; dest
call memmove

```

```

loc_80001AD: ; CODE XREF: main+F8
mov eax, [esp+14h]
test eax, eax
jz short loc_80001BD
mov [esp], eax ; void *
call _ZdlPv ; operator delete(void *)

```

```

loc_80001BD: ; CODE XREF: main+117
mov [esp+14h], esi
lea eax, [esi+edi*4]
mov [esp+18h], eax
add esi, 18h
mov [esp+1Ch], esi

```

```

loc_80001CF: ; CODE XREF: main+DD
lea eax, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], eax
call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
mov dword ptr [esp+10h], 5
lea eax, [esp+10h]
mov [esp+4], eax

```

```

    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int>>::push_back(
↳ int  const&)
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
    mov  dword ptr [esp+10h], 6
    lea  eax, [esp+10h]
    mov  [esp+4], eax
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ; std::vector<int,std::allocator<int>>::push_back(
↳ int  const&)
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
    mov  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  edx, [esp+18h]
    sub  edx, eax
    cmp  edx, 17h
    ja   short loc_8000246
    mov  dword ptr [esp], offset aVector_m_range ; "vector::_M_range_check"
    call _ZSt20__throw_out_of_rangePKc ; std::__throw_out_of_range(char  const*)

loc_8000246: ; CODE XREF: main+19C
    mov  eax, [eax+14h]
    mov  [esp+8], eax
    mov  dword ptr [esp+4], offset aD ; "%d\n"
    mov  dword ptr [esp], 1
    call __printf_chk
    mov  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  eax, [eax+20h]
    mov  [esp+8], eax
    mov  dword ptr [esp+4], offset aD ; "%d\n"
    mov  dword ptr [esp], 1
    call __printf_chk
    mov  eax, [esp+14h]
    test eax, eax
    jz   short loc_80002AC
    mov  [esp], eax ; void *
    call _ZdlPv ; operator delete(void *)
    jmp  short loc_80002AC

    mov  ebx, eax
    mov  edx, [esp+14h]
    test edx, edx
    jz   short loc_80002A4
    mov  [esp], edx ; void *
    call _ZdlPv ; operator delete(void *)

loc_80002A4: ; CODE XREF: main+1FE
    mov  [esp], ebx
    call _Unwind_Resume

loc_80002AC: ; CODE XREF: main+1EA
    ; main+1F4
    mov  eax, 0
    lea  esp, [ebp-0Ch]
    pop  ebx
    pop  esi
    pop  edi
    pop  ebp

locret_80002B8: ; DATA XREF: .eh_frame:08000510
    ; .eh_frame:080005BC
    retn
main endp

```


.reserve() method is inlined as well. It calls new() if buffer is too small for new size, call memmove() to copy buffer contents, and call delete() to free old buffer.

Let's also see what the compiled program outputs if compiled by GCC:

```

_Myfirst=0x(nil), _Mylast=0x(nil), _Myend=0x(nil)
size=0, capacity=0
_Myfirst=0x8257008, _Mylast=0x825700c, _Myend=0x825700c
size=1, capacity=1
element 0: 1
_Myfirst=0x8257018, _Mylast=0x8257020, _Myend=0x8257020
size=2, capacity=2
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
_Myfirst=0x8257028, _Mylast=0x8257034, _Myend=0x8257038
size=3, capacity=4
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
_Myfirst=0x8257028, _Mylast=0x8257038, _Myend=0x8257038
size=4, capacity=4
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
_Myfirst=0x8257040, _Mylast=0x8257050, _Myend=0x8257058
size=4, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
_Myfirst=0x8257040, _Mylast=0x8257054, _Myend=0x8257058
size=5, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
element 4: 5
_Myfirst=0x8257040, _Mylast=0x8257058, _Myend=0x8257058
size=6, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
element 4: 5
element 5: 6
6
0

```

We can spot that buffer size grows in different way that in MSVC.

Simple experimentation shows that MSVC implementation buffer grows by ~50% each time it needs to be enlarged, while GCC code enlarges it by 100% each time, i.e., doubles it each time.

37.4.4 std::map and std::set

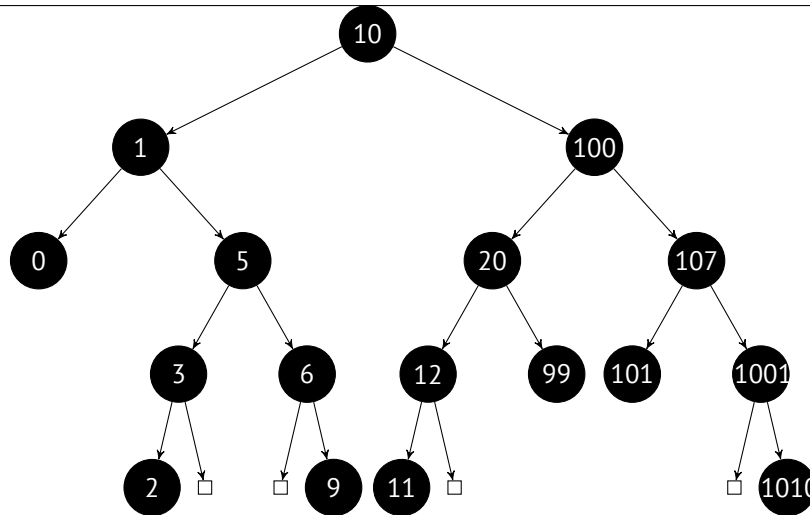
Binary tree is another fundamental data structure. As it states, this is a tree, but each node has at most 2 links to other nodes. Each node have key and/or value.

Binary trees are usually the structure used in “dictionaries” of key-values (AKA “associative arrays”) implementations.

There are at least three important properties binary trees has:

- All keys are stored in always sorted form.
- Keys of any types can be stored easily. Binary tree algorithms are unaware of key type, only key comparison function is required.
- Finding specific key is relatively fast in comparison with lists and arrays.

Here is a very simple example: let's store these numbers in binary tree: 0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 9, 10, 11, 12, 20, 99, 100, 101, 107, 1001, 1010.



All keys lesser than node key value is stored on the left side. All keys greater than node key value is stored on the right side.

Hence, lookup algorithm is straightforward: if the value you looking for is lesser than current node's key value: move left, if it is greater: move right, stop if the value required is equals to the node's key value. That is why searching algorithm may search for numbers, text strings, etc, as long as key comparison function is provided.

All keys has unique values.

Having that, one need $\approx \log_2 n$ steps in order to find a key in the balanced binary tree of n keys. It is ≈ 10 steps for ≈ 1000 keys, or ≈ 13 steps for ≈ 10000 keys. Not bad, but tree should always be balanced for this: i.e., keys should be distributed evenly on all tiers. Insertion and removal operations do some maintenance to keep tree in balanced state.

There are several popular balancing algorithms available, including AVL tree and red-black tree. The latter extends a node by a "color" value for simplifying balancing process, hence, each node may be "red" or "black".

Both GCC and MSVC `std::map` and `std::set` template implementations use red-black trees.

`std::set` contain only keys. `std::map` is "extended" version of `set`: it also has a value at each node.

MSVC

```

#include <map>
#include <set>
#include <string>
#include <iostream>

// structure is not packed!
struct tree_node
{
    struct tree_node *Left;
    struct tree_node *Parent;
    struct tree_node *Right;
    char Color; // 0 - Red, 1 - Black
    char Isnil;
    //std::pair Myval;
    unsigned int first; // called Myval in std::set
    const char *second; // not present in std::set
};

struct tree_struct
{
    struct tree_node *Myhead;
    size_t Mysize;
};

void dump_tree_node (struct tree_node *n, bool is_set, bool traverse)
{
    printf ("ptr=0x%p Left=0x%p Parent=0x%p Right=0x%p Color=%d Isnil=%d\n",
           n, n->Left, n->Parent, n->Right, n->Color, n->Isnil);
    if (n->Isnil==0)
    {
        if (is_set)
            printf ("first=%d\n", n->first);
        else
            printf ("first=%d second=[%s]\n", n->first, n->second);
    }
}

```



```

std::map<int, const char*>::iterator it1=m.begin();
printf ("m.begin():\n");
dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *)*(void*)&it1, false, false);
it1=m.end();
printf ("m.end():\n");
dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *)*(void*)&it1, false, false);

// set

std::set<int> s;
s.insert(123);
s.insert(456);
s.insert(11);
s.insert(12);
s.insert(100);
s.insert(1001);
printf ("dumping s as set:\n");
dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *)*(void*)&s, true);
std::set<int>::iterator it2=s.begin();
printf ("s.begin():\n");
dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *)*(void*)&it2, true, false);
it2=s.end();
printf ("s.end():\n");
dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *)*(void*)&it2, true, false);
};

```

Listing 37.35: MSVC 2012

```

dumping m as map:
ptr=0x0020FE04, Myhead=0x005BB3A0, Mysize=17
ptr=0x005BB3A0 Left=0x005BB4A0 Parent=0x005BB3C0 Right=0x005BB580 Color=1 Isn1l=1
ptr=0x005BB3C0 Left=0x005BB4C0 Parent=0x005BB3A0 Right=0x005BB440 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=10 second=[ten]
ptr=0x005BB4C0 Left=0x005BB4A0 Parent=0x005BB3C0 Right=0x005BB520 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=1 second=[one]
ptr=0x005BB4A0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB4C0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=0 second=[zero]
ptr=0x005BB520 Left=0x005BB400 Parent=0x005BB4C0 Right=0x005BB4E0 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=5 second=[five]
ptr=0x005BB400 Left=0x005BB5A0 Parent=0x005BB520 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=3 second=[three]
ptr=0x005BB5A0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB400 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=2 second=[two]
ptr=0x005BB4E0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB520 Right=0x005BB5C0 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=6 second=[six]
ptr=0x005BB5C0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB4E0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=9 second=[nine]
ptr=0x005BB440 Left=0x005BB3E0 Parent=0x005BB3C0 Right=0x005BB480 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=100 second=[one hundred]
ptr=0x005BB3E0 Left=0x005BB460 Parent=0x005BB440 Right=0x005BB500 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=20 second=[twenty]
ptr=0x005BB460 Left=0x005BB540 Parent=0x005BB3E0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=12 second=[twelve]
ptr=0x005BB540 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB460 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=11 second=[eleven]
ptr=0x005BB500 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB3E0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=99 second=[ninety-nine]
ptr=0x005BB480 Left=0x005BB420 Parent=0x005BB440 Right=0x005BB560 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=107 second=[one hundred seven]
ptr=0x005BB420 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB480 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=101 second=[one hundred one]
ptr=0x005BB560 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB480 Right=0x005BB580 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=1001 second=[one thousand one]
ptr=0x005BB580 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB560 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=1010 second=[one thousand ten]
As a tree:
root----10 [ten]
    L-----1 [one]
        L-----0 [zero]

```

```

    R-----5 [five]
      L-----3 [three]
        L-----2 [two]
          R-----6 [six]
            R-----9 [nine]
R-----100 [one hundred]
  L-----20 [twenty]
    L-----12 [twelve]
      L-----11 [eleven]
        R-----99 [ninety-nine]
R-----107 [one hundred seven]
  L-----101 [one hundred one]
    R-----1001 [one thousand one]
      R-----1010 [one thousand ten]

m.begin():
ptr=0x005BB4A0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB4C0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=0 second=[zero]
m.end():
ptr=0x005BB3A0 Left=0x005BB4A0 Parent=0x005BB3C0 Right=0x005BB580 Color=1 Isn1l=1

dumping s as set:
ptr=0x0020FDFC, Myhead=0x005BB5E0, Mysize=6
ptr=0x005BB5E0 Left=0x005BB640 Parent=0x005BB600 Right=0x005BB6A0 Color=1 Isn1l=1
ptr=0x005BB600 Left=0x005BB660 Parent=0x005BB5E0 Right=0x005BB620 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=123
ptr=0x005BB660 Left=0x005BB640 Parent=0x005BB600 Right=0x005BB680 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=12
ptr=0x005BB640 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB660 Right=0x005BB5E0 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=11
ptr=0x005BB680 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB660 Right=0x005BB5E0 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=100
ptr=0x005BB620 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB600 Right=0x005BB6A0 Color=1 Isn1l=0
first=456
ptr=0x005BB6A0 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB620 Right=0x005BB5E0 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=1001
As a tree:
root----123
  L-----12
    L-----11
      R-----100
R-----456
  R-----1001

s.begin():
ptr=0x005BB640 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB660 Right=0x005BB5E0 Color=0 Isn1l=0
first=11
s.end():
ptr=0x005BB5E0 Left=0x005BB640 Parent=0x005BB600 Right=0x005BB6A0 Color=1 Isn1l=1

```

Structure is not packed, so both *char* type values occupy 4 bytes each.

As for `std::map`, `first` and `second` can be viewed as a single value of `std::pair` type. `std::set` has only one value at this point in the structure instead.

Current size of tree is always present, as in case of `std::list` MSVC implementation (37.4.2).

As in case of `std::list`, iterators are just pointers to the nodes. `.begin()` iterator pointing to the minimal key. That pointer is not stored somewhere (as in lists), minimal key of tree is to be found each time. `operator--` and `operator++` moves pointer to the current node to predecessor and successor respectively, i.e., nodes which has previous and next key. The algorithms for all these operations are described in [Cor+09].

`.end()` iterator pointing to the dummy node, it has 1 in `Isn1l`, meaning, the node has no key and/or value. So it can be viewed as a “landing zone” in HDD¹⁰. “Parent” field of the dummy node is pointing to the root node, which serving as a vertex of tree and contain information.

GCC

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <map>
#include <set>
#include <string>
#include <iostream>

```

¹⁰Hard disk drive


```

    {
        printf ("%.*sR-----", tabs, ALOT_OF_TABS);
        dump_as_tree (tabs+1, n->M_right, is_set);
    };
};

void dump_map_and_set(struct tree_struct *m, bool is_set)
{
    printf ("ptr=0x%p, M_key_compare=0x%x, M_header=0x%p, M_node_count=%d\n",
           m, m->M_key_compare, &m->M_header, m->M_node_count);
    dump_tree_node (m->M_header.M_parent, is_set, true, true);
    printf ("As a tree:\n");
    printf ("root----");
    dump_as_tree (1, m->M_header.M_parent, is_set);
};

int main()
{
    // map

    std::map<int, const char*> m;

    m[10]="ten";
    m[20]="twenty";
    m[3]="three";
    m[101]="one hundred one";
    m[100]="one hundred";
    m[12]="twelve";
    m[107]="one hundred seven";
    m[0]="zero";
    m[1]="one";
    m[6]="six";
    m[99]="ninety-nine";
    m[5]="five";
    m[11]="eleven";
    m[1001]="one thousand one";
    m[1010]="one thousand ten";
    m[2]="two";
    m[9]="nine";

    printf ("dumping m as map:\n");
    dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *) (void*)&m, false);

    std::map<int, const char*>::iterator it1=m.begin();
    printf ("m.begin():\n");
    dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *) (void*)&it1, false, false, true);
    it1=m.end();
    printf ("m.end():\n");
    dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *) (void*)&it1, false, false, false);

    // set

    std::set<int> s;
    s.insert(123);
    s.insert(456);
    s.insert(11);
    s.insert(12);
    s.insert(100);
    s.insert(1001);
    printf ("dumping s as set:\n");
    dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *) (void*)&s, true);
    std::set<int>::iterator it2=s.begin();
    printf ("s.begin():\n");
    dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *) (void*)&it2, true, false, true);
    it2=s.end();
    printf ("s.end():\n");
    dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *) (void*)&it2, true, false, false);
};

```

Listing 37.36: GCC 4.8.1

```

dumping m as map:
ptr=0x0028FE3C, M_key_compare=0x402b70, M_header=0x0028FE40, M_node_count=17
ptr=0x007A4988 M_left=0x007A4C00 M_parent=0x0028FE40 M_right=0x007A4B80 M_color=1
key=10 value=[ten]
ptr=0x007A4C00 M_left=0x007A4BE0 M_parent=0x007A4988 M_right=0x007A4C60 M_color=1
key=1 value=[one]
ptr=0x007A4BE0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4C00 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=1
key=0 value=[zero]
ptr=0x007A4C60 M_left=0x007A4B40 M_parent=0x007A4C00 M_right=0x007A4C20 M_color=0
key=5 value=[five]
ptr=0x007A4B40 M_left=0x007A4CE0 M_parent=0x007A4C60 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=1
key=3 value=[three]
ptr=0x007A4CE0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4B40 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=0
key=2 value=[two]
ptr=0x007A4C20 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4C60 M_right=0x007A4D00 M_color=1
key=6 value=[six]
ptr=0x007A4D00 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4C20 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=0
key=9 value=[nine]
ptr=0x007A4B80 M_left=0x007A49A8 M_parent=0x007A4988 M_right=0x007A4BC0 M_color=1
key=100 value=[one hundred]
ptr=0x007A49A8 M_left=0x007A4BA0 M_parent=0x007A4B80 M_right=0x007A4C40 M_color=0
key=20 value=[twenty]
ptr=0x007A4BA0 M_left=0x007A4C80 M_parent=0x007A49A8 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=1
key=12 value=[twelve]
ptr=0x007A4C80 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4BA0 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=0
key=11 value=[eleven]
ptr=0x007A4C40 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A49A8 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=1
key=99 value=[ninety-nine]
ptr=0x007A4BC0 M_left=0x007A4B60 M_parent=0x007A4B80 M_right=0x007A4CA0 M_color=0
key=107 value=[one hundred seven]
ptr=0x007A4B60 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4BC0 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=1
key=101 value=[one hundred one]
ptr=0x007A4CA0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4BC0 M_right=0x007A4CC0 M_color=1
key=1001 value=[one thousand one]
ptr=0x007A4CC0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4CA0 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=0
key=1010 value=[one thousand ten]
As a tree:
root----10 [ten]
  L-----1 [one]
    L-----0 [zero]
    R-----5 [five]
      L-----3 [three]
        L-----2 [two]
        R-----6 [six]
          R-----9 [nine]
      R-----100 [one hundred]
        L-----20 [twenty]
          L-----12 [twelve]
            L-----11 [eleven]
            R-----99 [ninety-nine]
          R-----107 [one hundred seven]
            L-----101 [one hundred one]
            R-----1001 [one thousand one]
              R-----1010 [one thousand ten]

m.begin():
ptr=0x007A4BE0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4C00 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=1
key=0 value=[zero]
m.end():
ptr=0x0028FE40 M_left=0x007A4BE0 M_parent=0x007A4988 M_right=0x007A4CC0 M_color=0

dumping s as set:
ptr=0x0028FE20, M_key_compare=0x8, M_header=0x0028FE24, M_node_count=6
ptr=0x007A1E80 M_left=0x01D5D890 M_parent=0x0028FE24 M_right=0x01D5D850 M_color=1
key=123
ptr=0x01D5D890 M_left=0x01D5D870 M_parent=0x007A1E80 M_right=0x01D5D8B0 M_color=1
key=12
ptr=0x01D5D870 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x01D5D890 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=0
key=11
ptr=0x01D5D8B0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x01D5D890 M_right=0x00000000 M_color=0

```



```

    {
        printf ("%.*sR-----", tabs, ALOT_OF_TABS);
        dump_as_tree (tabs+1, n->M_right);
    };
};

void dump_map_and_set(struct tree_struct *m)
{
    printf ("root----");
    dump_as_tree (1, m->M_header.M_parent);
};

int main()
{
    std::set<int> s;
    s.insert(123);
    s.insert(456);
    printf ("123, 456 are inserted\n");
    dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *) (void*)&s);
    s.insert(11);
    s.insert(12);
    printf ("\n");
    printf ("11, 12 are inserted\n");
    dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *) (void*)&s);
    s.insert(100);
    s.insert(1001);
    printf ("\n");
    printf ("100, 1001 are inserted\n");
    dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *) (void*)&s);
    s.insert(667);
    s.insert(1);
    s.insert(4);
    s.insert(7);
    printf ("\n");
    printf ("667, 1, 4, 7 are inserted\n");
    dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *) (void*)&s);
    printf ("\n");
};

```

Listing 37.38: GCC 4.8.1

```

123, 456 are inserted
root----123
    R-----456

11, 12 are inserted
root----123
    L-----11
        R-----12
    R-----456

100, 1001 are inserted
root----123
    L-----12
        L-----11
            R-----100
    R-----456
        R-----1001

667, 1, 4, 7 are inserted
root----12
    L-----4
        L-----1
            R-----11
                L-----7
    R-----123
        L-----100
            R-----667
                L-----456
                    R-----1001

```

Chapter 38

Obfuscation

Obfuscation is an attempt to hide the code (or its meaning) from reverse engineer.

38.1 Text strings

As I revealed in (47) text strings may be utterly helpful. Programmers who aware of this, may try to hide them resulting unableness to find the string in [IDA](#) or any hex editor.

Here is the simplest method.

That is how the string may be constructed:

```
mov    byte ptr [ebx], 'h'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+1], 'e'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+2], 'l'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+3], 'l'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+4], 'o'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+5], ' '
mov    byte ptr [ebx+6], 'w'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+7], 'o'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+8], 'r'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+9], 'l'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+10], 'd'
```

The string is also can be compared with another like:

```
mov    ebx, offset username
cmp    byte ptr [ebx], 'j'
jnz    fail
cmp    byte ptr [ebx+1], 'o'
jnz    fail
cmp    byte ptr [ebx+2], 'h'
jnz    fail
cmp    byte ptr [ebx+3], 'n'
jnz    fail
jz     it_is_john
```

In both cases, it is impossible to find these strings straightforwardly in hex editor.

By the way, this is a way to work with the strings when it is impossible to allocate them in data segment, for example, in [PIC](#) or in shellcode.

Another method I once saw is to use `sprintf()` for constructing:

```
sprintf(buf, "%s%c%s%c%s", "hel", 'l', "o w", 'o', "rld");
```

The code looks weird, but as a simplest anti-reversing measure, it may be helpful.

Text strings may also be present in encrypted form, then all string usage will precede string decrypting routine. For example: [69.2](#).

38.2 Executable code

38.2.1 Inserting garbage

Executable code obfuscation mean inserting random garbage code between real one, which executes but not doing anything useful.

Simple example is:

Listing 38.1: original code

```
add    eax, ebx
mul    ecx
```

Listing 38.2: obfuscated code

```
xor    esi, 011223344h ; garbage
add    esi, eax        ; garbage
add    eax, ebx
mov    edx, eax        ; garbage
shl    edx, 4          ; garbage
mul    ecx
xor    esi, ecx        ; garbage
```

Here garbage code uses registers which are not used in the real code (ESI and EDX). However, intermediate results produced by the real code may be used by garbage instructions for extra mess—why not?

38.2.2 Replacing instructions to bloated equivalents

- MOV op1, op2 can be replaced by PUSH op2 / POP op1 pair.
- JMP label can be replaced by PUSH label / RET pair. IDA will not show references to the label.
- CALL label can be replaced by PUSH label_after_CALL_instruction / PUSH label / RET triplet.
- PUSH op may also be replaced by SUB ESP, 4 (or 8) / MOV [ESP], op pair.

38.2.3 Always executed/never executed code

If the developer is sure that ESI at the point is always 0:

```
mov    esi, 1
...    ; some code not touching ESI
dec    esi
...    ; some code not touching ESI
cmp    esi, 0
jz     real_code
; fake luggage
real_code:
```

Reverse engineer need some time to get into it.

This is also called *opaque predicate*.

Another example (and again, developer is sure that ESI—is always zero):

```
add    eax, ebx        ; real code
mul    ecx              ; real code
add    eax, esi        ; opaque predicate.
```

38.2.4 Making a lot of mess

```
instruction 1
instruction 2
instruction 3
```

Can be replaced to:

```
begin:      jmp    ins1_label

ins2_label: instruction 2
            jmp    ins3_label

ins3_label: instruction 3
            jmp    exit:

ins1_label: instruction 1
            jmp    ins2_label

exit:
```

38.2.5 Using indirect pointers

```

dummy_data1    db    100h dup (0)
message1      db    'hello world',0

dummy_data2    db    200h dup (0)
message2      db    'another message',0

func          proc
    ...
    mov     eax, offset dummy_data1 ; PE or ELF reloc here
    add     eax, 100h
    push   eax
    call   dump_string
    ...
    mov     eax, offset dummy_data2 ; PE or ELF reloc here
    add     eax, 200h
    push   eax
    call   dump_string
    ...
func          endp

```

IDA will show references only to `dummy_data1` and `dummy_data2`, but not to the text strings. Global variables and even functions may be accessed like that.

38.3 Virtual machine / pseudo-code

Programmer may construct his/her own [PL](#) or [ISA](#) and interpreter for it. (Like pre-5.0 Visual Basic, .NET, Java machine). Reverse engineer will have to spend some time to understand meaning and details of all [ISA](#) instructions. Probably, he/she will also need to write a disassembler/decompiler of some sort.

38.4 Other thing to mention

My own (yet weak) attempt to patch Tiny C compiler to produce obfuscated code: <http://blog.yurichev.com/node/58>.

Using MOV instruction for really complicated things: [\[Dol13\]](#).

38.5 Exercises

38.5.1 Exercise #1

This is very short program, compiled using patched Tiny C compiler ¹. Try to find out, what it does.

http://beginners.re/exercises/per_chapter/obfuscation.exe.

Answer: [F.1.13](#).

¹<http://blog.yurichev.com/node/58>

Chapter 39

More about ARM

39.1 Number sign (#) before number

Keil compiler, IDA and objdump precedes all numbers with “#” number sign, for example: listing.14.1.4. But when GCC 4.9 makes assembly language output, it doesn't, for example: listing.14.15.

So ARM listings in this book is somewhat mixed.

I'm not sure which is right. Supposedly, one should obey the rules accepted in environment he/she works in.

39.2 Addressing modes

This instruction is possible in ARM64:

```
ldr    x0, [x29, 24]
```

This mean, add 24 to value in X29 and load value at this address. Please note that 24 is inside brackets. Meaning is different if number is outside brackets:

```
ldr    w4, [x1], 28
```

This mean, load a value at address in X1, then add 28 to X1.

ARM allows to add some constant to the address used for loading, or to subtract. And it's possible both after loading and before.

There is no such addressing mode in x86, but it is present in some other processors, even on PDP-11. There is a legend the pre-increment, post-increment, pre-decrement and post-decrement modes in PDP-11, were “guilty” in appearance such C language (which developed on PDP-11) constructs as `*ptr++`, `++ptr`, `*ptr--`, `--ptr`. By the way, this is one of hard to memorize C feature. This is how it is:

C term	ARM term	C statement	how it works
Post-increment	post-indexed addressing	<code>*ptr++</code>	use <code>*ptr</code> value, then increment <code>ptr</code> pointer
Post-decrement	post-indexed addressing	<code>*ptr--</code>	use <code>*ptr</code> value, then decrement <code>ptr</code> pointer
Pre-increment	pre-indexed addressing	<code>++ptr</code>	increment <code>ptr</code> pointer, then use <code>*ptr</code> value
Pre-decrement	pre-indexed addressing	<code>--ptr</code>	decrement <code>ptr</code> pointer, then use <code>*ptr</code> value

Pre-indexing marked as exclamation mark in ARM assembly language. For example, see line 2 in listing.3.15.

Dennis Ritchie (one of C language creators) mentioned that it is, probably, was invented by Ken Thompson (another C creator) because this processor feature was present in PDP-7 [Rit86][Rit93]. Thus, C language compilers may use it, if it is present on target processor.

That's very convenient for array processings.

39.3 Loading constants into register

39.3.1 32-bit ARM

Aa we already know, all instructions has length of 4 bytes in ARM mode and 2 bytes in Thumb mode. How to load 32-bit value into register, if it's not possible to encode it inside one instruction?

Let's try:

```
unsigned int f()
{
    return 0x12345678;
};
```

Listing 39.1: GCC 4.6.3 -O3 ARM mode

```
f:
    ldr    r0, .L2
    bx    lr
.L2:
    .word 305419896 ; 0x12345678
```

So, the 0x12345678 value just stored aside in memory and loads if it needs. But it's possible to get rid of additional memory access.

Listing 39.2: GCC 4.6.3 -O3 -march=armv7-a (ARM mode)

```
movw    r0, #22136    ; 0x5678
movt    r0, #4660     ; 0x1234
bx      lr
```

We see that value is loaded into register by parts, lower part first (using MOVW instruction), then higher (using MOVT).

It means, 2 instructions are necessary in ARM mode for loading 32-bit value into register. It's not a real problem, because in fact there are not much constants in the real code (except of 0 and 1). Does it mean it executes slower than one instruction, as two instructions? Doubtfully. Most likely, modern ARM processors are able to detect such sequences and execute them fast.

On the other hand, [IDA](#) is able to detect such patterns in the code and disassembles this function as:

```
MOV     R0, 0x12345678
BX      LR
```

39.3.2 ARM64

```
uint64_t f()
{
    return 0x12345678ABCDEF01;
};
```

Listing 39.3: GCC 4.9.1 -O3

```
mov     x0, 61185    ; 0xef01
movk    x0, 0xabcd, lsl 16
movk    x0, 0x5678, lsl 32
movk    x0, 0x1234, lsl 48
ret
```

MOVK means "MOV Keep", i.e., it writes 16-bit value into register, not touching other bits at the same time. LSL suffix shifts value left by 16, 32 and 48 bits at each step. Shifting done before loading. This means, 4 instructions are necessary to load 64-bit value into register.

Storing floating number into register

It's possible to store a floating number into D-register using only one instruction.

For example:

```
double a()
{
    return 1.5;
};
```

Listing 39.4: GCC 4.9.1 -O3 + objdump

```
0000000000000000 <a>:
 0: 1e6f1000    fmov    d0, #1.5000000000000000e+000
 4: d65f03c0    ret
```

1.5 number was indeed encoded in 32-bit instruction. But how? In ARM64, there are 8 bits in FMOV instruction for encoding some float point numbers. The algorithm is called VFPEExpandImm() in [ARM13a]. This is also called *minifloat*¹. I tried different: compiler is able to encode 30.0 and 31.0, but it couldn't encode 32.0, an 8 bytes should be allocated to this number in IEEE 754 format:

```
double a()
{
    return 32;
};
```

Listing 39.5: GCC 4.9.1 -O3

```
a:
    ldr    d0, .LC0
    ret

.LC0:
    .word 0
    .word 1077936128
```

39.4 Relocs in ARM64

As we know, there are 4-byte instructions in ARM64, so it is impossible to write large number into register using single instruction. Nevertheless, image may be loaded at random address in memory, so that's why relocs exists. Read more about them (in relation to Win32 PE): [59.2.6](#).

Address is formed using ADRP and ADD instructions pair in ARM64. The first loads 4Kb-page address and the second adding remainder. I compiled example from "Hello, world!" (listing.6) in GCC (Linaro) 4.9 under win32:

Listing 39.6: GCC (Linaro) 4.9 and objdump of object file

```
...>aarch64-linux-gnu-gcc.exe hw.c -c
...>aarch64-linux-gnu-objdump.exe -d hw.o
...
0000000000000000 <main>:
 0: a9bf7bfd      stp    x29, x30, [sp,#-16]!
 4: 910003fd      mov    x29, sp
 8: 90000000      adrp   x0, 0 <main>
 c: 91000000      add    x0, x0, #0x0
10: 94000000      bl     0 <printf>
14: 52800000      mov    w0, #0x0 // #0
18: a8c17bfd      ldp    x29, x30, [sp],#16
1c: d65f03c0      ret

...>aarch64-linux-gnu-objdump.exe -r hw.o
...
RELOCATION RECORDS FOR [.text]:
OFFSET          TYPE          VALUE
0000000000000008 R_AARCH64_ADR_PREL_PG_HI21 .rodata
000000000000000c R_AARCH64_ADD_ABS_LO12_NC  .rodata
0000000000000010 R_AARCH64_CALL26  printf
```

So there are 3 relocs in this object file.

- The very first takes page address, cuts lowest 12 bits and writes remaining high 21 bits into ADRP instruction bit fields. This is because we don't need to encode low 12 bits, and ADRP instruction has space only for 21 bits.
- Second—12 bit of address relative to page start, into ADD instruction bit fields.
- Last, 26-bit one, is applied to the instruction at 0x10 address where the jump to the printf() function is. All ARM64 (and in ARM in ARM mode) instruction addresses has zeroes in two lowest bits (because all instructions has size of 4 bytes), so one need to encode only highest 26 bits of 28-bit address space (±128MB).

¹<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Minifloat>

There are no such relocs in the executable file: because, it's known, where the "Hello!" string is located, in which page, and `puts()` function address is also known. So there are values already set in the `ADRP`, `ADD` and `BL` instructions (linker set it while linking):

Listing 39.7: objdump of executable file

```
000000000400590 <main>:
 400590:    a9bf7bfd    stp     x29, x30, [sp,#-16]!
 400594:    910003fd    mov     x29, sp
 400598:    90000000    adrp   x0, 400000 <_init-0x3b8>
 40059c:    91192000    add     x0, x0, #0x648
 4005a0:    97ffffa0    bl     400420 <puts@plt>
 4005a4:    52800000    mov     w0, #0x0 // #0
 4005a8:    a8c17bfd    ldp    x29, x30, [sp],#16
 4005ac:    d65f03c0    ret

...

Contents of section .rodata:
400640 01000200 00000000 48656c6c 6f210000 .....Hello!..
```

As an example, let's try to disassemble `BL` instruction manually. `0x97ffffa0` is `1001011111111111111111111111111110100000b`. According to [ARM13a, p. C5.6.26], `imm26` is the last 26 bits: `imm26 = 1111111111111111111111111111111110100000`. It is `0x3FFFA0`, but `MSB` is 1, so the number is negative, and in terms of modular arithmetic of modulo 2^{32} , it is `0xFFFFFA0`. Again, in modulo 2^{32} , `0xFFFFFA0 * 4 = 0xFFFFFE80`, and `0x4005a0 + FFFFFE80 = 0x400420` (please note: we consider address of the `BL` instruction, not current value of `PC`, which may be different!). So the destination address is `0x400420`.

More about ARM64-related relocs: [ARM13b].

Chapter 40

Windows 16-bit

16-bit Windows program are rare nowadays, but in the sense of retrocomputing, or dongle hacking (69), I sometimes digging into these.

16-bit Windows versions were up to 3.11. 96/98/ME also support 16-bit code, as well as 32-bit versions of [Windows NT](#) line. 64-bit versions of [Windows NT](#) line are not support 16-bit executable code at all.

The code is resembling MS-DOS one.

Executable files has NE-type (so-called “new executable”).

All examples considered here were compiled by OpenWatcom 1.9 compiler, using these switches:

```
wcl.exe -i=C:/WATCOM/h/win/ -s -os -bt=windows -bcl=windows example.c
```

40.1 Example#1

```
#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                   HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                   LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                   int nCmdShow )
{
    MessageBeep(MB_ICONEXCLAMATION);
    return 0;
};
```

```
WinMain    proc near
            push    bp
            mov     bp, sp
            mov     ax, 30h ; '0'    ; MB_ICONEXCLAMATION constant
            push   ax
            call   MESSAGEBEEP
            xor     ax, ax           ; return 0
            pop    bp
            retn   0Ah
WinMain    endp
```

Seems to be easy, so far.

40.2 Example #2

```
#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                   HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                   LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                   int nCmdShow )
{
    MessageBox (NULL, "hello, world", "caption", MB_YESNOCANCEL);
    return 0;
};
```

```

WinMain      proc near
              push    bp
              mov     bp, sp
              xor     ax, ax          ; NULL
              push   ax
              push   ds
              mov     ax, offset aHelloWorld ; 0x18. "hello, world"
              push   ax
              push   ds
              mov     ax, offset aCaption ; 0x10. "caption"
              push   ax
              mov     ax, 3           ; MB_YESNOCANCEL
              push   ax
              call    MESSAGEBOX
              xor     ax, ax          ; return 0
              pop    bp
              retn   0Ah
WinMain      endp

dseg02:0010 aCaption      db 'caption',0
dseg02:0018 aHelloWorld  db 'hello, world',0

```

Couple important things here: PASCAL calling convention dictates passing the first argument first (MB_YESNOCANCEL), and the last argument—last (NULL). This convention also tells *callee* to restore *stack pointer*: hence RETN instruction has 0Ah argument, meaning pointer should be shifted above by 10 bytes upon function exit. It is like stdcall (55.2), только аргументы передаются в “естественном” порядке.

Pointers are passed by pairs: a segment of data is first passed, then the pointer inside of segment. Here is only one segment in this example, so DS is always pointing to data segment of executable.

40.3 Example #3

```

#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                   HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                   LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                   int nCmdShow )
{
    int result=MessageBox (NULL, "hello, world", "caption", MB_YESNOCANCEL);

    if (result==IDCANCEL)
        MessageBox (NULL, "you pressed cancel", "caption", MB_OK);
    else if (result==IDYES)
        MessageBox (NULL, "you pressed yes", "caption", MB_OK);
    else if (result==IDNO)
        MessageBox (NULL, "you pressed no", "caption", MB_OK);

    return 0;
};

```

```

WinMain      proc near
              push    bp
              mov     bp, sp
              xor     ax, ax          ; NULL
              push   ax
              push   ds
              mov     ax, offset aHelloWorld ; "hello, world"
              push   ax
              push   ds
              mov     ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
              push   ax
              mov     ax, 3           ; MB_YESNOCANCEL
              push   ax
              call    MESSAGEBOX
              cmp     ax, 2           ; IDCANCEL
              jnz     short loc_2F
              xor     ax, ax

```

```

        push    ax
        push    ds
        mov     ax, offset aYouPressedCanc ; "you pressed cancel"
        jmp     short loc_49
loc_2F:
        cmp     ax, 6             ; IDYES
        jnz     short loc_3D
        xor     ax, ax
        push   ax
        push   ds
        mov     ax, offset aYouPressedYes ; "you pressed yes"
        jmp     short loc_49
loc_3D:
        cmp     ax, 7             ; IDNO
        jnz     short loc_57
        xor     ax, ax
        push   ax
        push   ds
        mov     ax, offset aYouPressedNo ; "you pressed no"
loc_49:
        push   ax
        push   ds
        mov     ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
        push   ax
        xor     ax, ax
        push   ax
        call   MESSAGEBOX
loc_57:
        xor     ax, ax
        pop    bp
        retn   0Ah
WinMain endp

```

Somewhat extended example from the previous section.

40.4 Example #4

```

#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL func1 (int a, int b, int c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

long PASCAL func2 (long a, long b, long c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

long PASCAL func3 (long a, long b, long c, int d)
{
    return a*b+c-d;
};

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                   HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                   LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                   int nCmdShow )
{
    func1 (123, 456, 789);
    func2 (600000, 700000, 800000);
    func3 (600000, 700000, 800000, 123);
    return 0;
};

```

```

func1      proc near
c          = word ptr 4

```

```

b          = word ptr 6
a          = word ptr 8

        push    bp
        mov     bp, sp
        mov     ax, [bp+a]
        imul   [bp+b]
        add     ax, [bp+c]
        pop     bp
        retn   6
func1    endp

func2    proc near

arg_0     = word ptr 4
arg_2     = word ptr 6
arg_4     = word ptr 8
arg_6     = word ptr 0Ah
arg_8     = word ptr 0Ch
arg_A     = word ptr 0Eh

        push    bp
        mov     bp, sp
        mov     ax, [bp+arg_8]
        mov     dx, [bp+arg_A]
        mov     bx, [bp+arg_4]
        mov     cx, [bp+arg_6]
        call   sub_B2 ; long 32-bit multiplication
        add     ax, [bp+arg_0]
        adc     dx, [bp+arg_2]
        pop     bp
        retn   12
func2    endp

func3    proc near

arg_0     = word ptr 4
arg_2     = word ptr 6
arg_4     = word ptr 8
arg_6     = word ptr 0Ah
arg_8     = word ptr 0Ch
arg_A     = word ptr 0Eh
arg_C     = word ptr 10h

        push    bp
        mov     bp, sp
        mov     ax, [bp+arg_A]
        mov     dx, [bp+arg_C]
        mov     bx, [bp+arg_6]
        mov     cx, [bp+arg_8]
        call   sub_B2 ; long 32-bit multiplication
        mov     cx, [bp+arg_2]
        add     cx, ax
        mov     bx, [bp+arg_4]
        adc     bx, dx          ; BX=high part, CX=low part
        mov     ax, [bp+arg_0]
        cwd                    ; AX=low part d, DX=high part d
        sub     cx, ax
        mov     ax, cx
        sbb    bx, dx
        mov     dx, bx
        pop     bp
        retn   14
func3    endp

WinMain  proc near
        push    bp
        mov     bp, sp
        mov     ax, 123
        push    ax

```

```

        mov     ax, 456
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 789
        push   ax
        call   func1
        mov     ax, 9      ; high part of 600000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 27C0h ; low part of 600000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 0Ah   ; high part of 700000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 0AE60h ; low part of 700000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 0Ch   ; high part of 800000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 3500h ; low part of 800000
        push   ax
        call   func2
        mov     ax, 9      ; high part of 600000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 27C0h ; low part of 600000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 0Ah   ; high part of 700000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 0AE60h ; low part of 700000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 0Ch   ; high part of 800000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 3500h ; low part of 800000
        push   ax
        mov     ax, 7Bh   ; 123
        push   ax
        call   func3
        xor     ax, ax    ; return 0
        pop    bp
        retn   0Ah
WinMain endp

```

32-bit values (long data type mean 32-bit, while *int* is fixed on 16-bit data type) in 16-bit code (both MS-DOS and Win16) are passed by pairs. It is just like 64-bit values are used in 32-bit environment (24).

sub_B2 here is a library function written by compiler developers, doing “long multiplication”, i.e., multiplies two 32-bit values. Other compiler functions doing the same are listed here: [D](#), [C](#).

ADD/ADC instruction pair is used for addition of compound values: ADD may set/clear CF carry flag, ADC will use it. SUB/SBB instruction pair is used for subtraction: SUB may set/clear CF flag, SBB will use it.

32-bit values are returned from functions in DX:AX register pair.

Constant also passed by pairs in WinMain() here.

int-typed 123 constant is first converted respecting its sign into 32-bit value using CWD instruction.

40.5 Example #5

```

#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL string_compare (char *s1, char *s2)
{
    while (1)
    {
        if (*s1!=*s2)
            return 0;
        if (*s1==0 || *s2==0)
            return 1; // end of string
        s1++;
        s2++;
    };
};

int PASCAL string_compare_far (char far *s1, char far *s2)

```

```

{
    while (1)
    {
        if (*s1!=*s2)
            return 0;
        if (*s1==0 || *s2==0)
            return 1; // end of string
        s1++;
        s2++;
    };
};

void PASCAL remove_digits (char *s)
{
    while (*s)
    {
        if (*s>='0' && *s<='9')
            *s='-';
        s++;
    };
};

char str[]="hello 1234 world";

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                   HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                   LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                   int nCmdShow )
{
    string_compare ("asd", "def");
    string_compare_far ("asd", "def");
    remove_digits (str);
    MessageBox (NULL, str, "caption", MB_YESNOCANCEL);
    return 0;
};

```

```

string_compare proc near

arg_0 = word ptr 4
arg_2 = word ptr 6

    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    push    si
    mov     si, [bp+arg_0]
    mov     bx, [bp+arg_2]

loc_12: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+21j
    mov     al, [bx]
    cmp     al, [si]
    jz      short loc_1C
    xor     ax, ax
    jmp     short loc_2B

loc_1C: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+Ej
    test    al, al
    jz      short loc_22
    jnz     short loc_27

loc_22: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+16j
    mov     ax, 1
    jmp     short loc_2B

loc_27: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+18j
    inc     bx
    inc     si
    jmp     short loc_12

```

```

loc_2B: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+12j
        ; string_compare+1Dj
        pop     si
        pop     bp
        retn   4
string_compare endp

string_compare_far proc near ; CODE XREF: WinMain+18p

arg_0 = word ptr 4
arg_2 = word ptr 6
arg_4 = word ptr 8
arg_6 = word ptr 0Ah

        push   bp
        mov   bp, sp
        push  si
        mov   si, [bp+arg_0]
        mov   bx, [bp+arg_4]

loc_3A: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+35j
        mov   es, [bp+arg_6]
        mov   al, es:[bx]
        mov   es, [bp+arg_2]
        cmp   al, es:[si]
        jz    short loc_4C
        xor   ax, ax
        jmp   short loc_67

loc_4C: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+16j
        mov   es, [bp+arg_6]
        cmp   byte ptr es:[bx], 0
        jz    short loc_5E
        mov   es, [bp+arg_2]
        cmp   byte ptr es:[si], 0
        jnz   short loc_63

loc_5E: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+23j
        mov   ax, 1
        jmp   short loc_67

loc_63: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+2Cj
        inc   bx
        inc   si
        jmp   short loc_3A

loc_67: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+1Aj
        ; string_compare_far+31j
        pop   si
        pop   bp
        retn  8
string_compare_far endp

remove_digits  proc near ; CODE XREF: WinMain+1Fp

arg_0 = word ptr 4

        push   bp
        mov   bp, sp
        mov   bx, [bp+arg_0]

loc_72: ; CODE XREF: remove_digits+18j
        mov   al, [bx]
        test  al, al
        jz    short loc_86

```



```

    cmp     al, 30h ; '0'
    jb     short loc_83
    cmp     al, 39h ; '9'
    ja     short loc_83
    mov     byte ptr [bx], 2Dh ; '-'

loc_83: ; CODE XREF: remove_digits+Ej
        ; remove_digits+12j
    inc     bx
    jmp     short loc_72

loc_86: ; CODE XREF: remove_digits+Aj
    pop     bp
    retn    2
remove_digits    endp

WinMain proc near ; CODE XREF: start+EDp
    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    mov     ax, offset aAsd ; "asd"
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset aDef ; "def"
    push    ax
    call    string_compare
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aAsd ; "asd"
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aDef ; "def"
    push    ax
    call    string_compare_far
    mov     ax, offset aHello1234World ; "hello 1234 world"
    push    ax
    call    remove_digits
    xor     ax, ax
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aHello1234World ; "hello 1234 world"
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
    push    ax
    mov     ax, 3 ; MB_YESNOCANCEL
    push    ax
    call    MESSAGEBOX
    xor     ax, ax
    pop     bp
    retn    0Ah
WinMain endp

```

Here we see a difference between so-called “near” pointers and “far” pointers: another weird artefact of segmented memory in 16-bit 8086.

Read more about it: [84](#).

“near” pointers are those which points within current data segment. Hence, `string_compare()` function takes only two 16-bit pointers, and accesses data as it is located in the segment DS pointing to (`mov al, [bx]` instruction actually works like `mov al, ds:[bx]`—DS is implicitly used here).

“far” pointers are those which may point to data in another segment memory. Hence `string_compare_far()` takes 16-bit pair as a pointer, loads high part of it to ES segment register and accessing data through it (`mov al, es:[bx]`). “far” pointers are also used in my `MessageBox()` win16 example: [40.2](#). Indeed, Windows kernel is not aware which data segment to use when accessing text strings, so it need more complete information.

The reason for this distinction is that compact program may use just one 64kb data segment, so it doesn’t need to pass high part of the address, which is always the same. Bigger program may use several 64kb data segments, so it needs to specify each time, in which segment data is located.

The same story for code segments. Compact program may have all executable code within one 64kb-segment, then all functions will be called in it using `CALL NEAR` instruction, and code flow will be returned using `RETN`. But if there are several code segments, then the address of the function will be specified by pair, it will be called using `CALL FAR` instruction, and the code flow will be returned using `RETF`.

This is what to be set in compiler by specifying “memory model”.

Compilers targeting MS-DOS and Win16 has specific libraries for each memory model: they were differ by pointer types for code and data.

40.6 Example #6

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <time.h>
#include <stdio.h>

char strbuf[256];

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                   HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                   LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                   int nCmdShow )
{
    struct tm *t;
    time_t unix_time;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    t=localtime (&unix_time);

    sprintf (strbuf, "%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d", t->tm_year+1900, t->tm_mon, t->tm_mday,
    ↵ t->tm_hour, t->tm_min, t->tm_sec);

    MessageBox (NULL, strbuf, "caption", MB_OK);
    return 0;
};
```

```
WinMain      proc near
var_4        = word ptr -4
var_2        = word ptr -2

    push     bp
    mov     bp, sp
    push     ax
    push     ax
    xor     ax, ax
    call    time_
    mov     [bp+var_4], ax    ; low part of UNIX time
    mov     [bp+var_2], dx    ; high part of UNIX time
    lea     ax, [bp+var_4]    ; take a pointer of high part
    call    localtime_
    mov     bx, ax            ; t
    push    word ptr [bx]     ; second
    push    word ptr [bx+2]   ; minute
    push    word ptr [bx+4]   ; hour
    push    word ptr [bx+6]   ; day
    push    word ptr [bx+8]   ; month
    mov     ax, [bx+0Ah]      ; year
    add     ax, 1900
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset a04d02d02d02d02 ; "%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d"
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset strbuf
    push    ax
    call    sprintf_
    add     sp, 10h
    xor     ax, ax            ; NULL
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset strbuf
    push    ax
    push    ds
```

```

        mov     ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
        push   ax
        xor    ax, ax              ; MB_OK
        push   ax
        call   MESSAGEBOX
        xor    ax, ax
        mov    sp, bp
        pop    bp
        retn   0Ah
WinMain endp

```

UNIX time is 32-bit value, so it is returned in DX : AX register pair and stored into two local 16-bit variables. Then a pointer to the pair is passed to `localtime()` function. The `localtime()` function has `struct tm` allocated somewhere in guts of the C library, so only pointer to it is returned. By the way, this also means that the function cannot be called again until its results are used.

For the `time()` and `localtime()` functions, a Watcom calling convention is used here: first four arguments are passed in AX, DX, BX and CX, registers, all the rest arguments are via stack. Functions used this convention are also marked by underscore at the end of name.

`sprintf()` does not use PASCAL calling convention, nor Watcom one, so the arguments are passed in usual *cdecl* way (55.1).

40.6.1 Global variables

This is the same example, but now these variables are global:

```

#include <windows.h>
#include <time.h>
#include <stdio.h>

char strbuf[256];
struct tm *t;
time_t unix_time;

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                   HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                   LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                   int nCmdShow )
{
    unix_time=time(NULL);

    t=localtime (&unix_time);

    sprintf (strbuf, "%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d", t->tm_year+1900, t->tm_mon, t->
    ↵ tm_mday,
            t->tm_hour, t->tm_min, t->tm_sec);

    MessageBox (NULL, strbuf, "caption", MB_OK);
    return 0;
};

```

```

unix_time_low  dw 0
unix_time_high dw 0
t              dw 0

WinMain       proc near
    push   bp
    mov    bp, sp
    xor    ax, ax
    call   time_
    mov    unix_time_low, ax
    mov    unix_time_high, dx
    mov    ax, offset unix_time_low
    call   localtime_
    mov    bx, ax
    mov    t, ax                ; will not be used in future...
    push  word ptr [bx]         ; seconds
    push  word ptr [bx+2]      ; minutes
    push  word ptr [bx+4]      ; hour

```

```

    push    word ptr [bx+6]    ; day
    push    word ptr [bx+8]    ; month
    mov     ax, [bx+0Ah]       ; year
    add     ax, 1900
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset a04d02d02d02d02 ; "%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d"
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset strbuf
    push    ax
    call    sprintf_
    add     sp, 10h
    xor     ax, ax             ; NULL
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset strbuf
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
    push    ax
    xor     ax, ax             ; MB_OK
    push    ax
    call    MESSAGEBOX
    xor     ax, ax             ; return 0
    pop     bp
    retn   0Ah
WinMain    endp

```

t will not be used, but compiler emitted the code which stores the value. Because it is not sure, maybe that value will be eventually used somewhere.

Part II

Important fundamentals

Chapter 41

Signed number representations

There are several methods of representing signed numbers¹, but “two’s complement” is most popular in computers.

binary	hexadecimal	unsigned	signed (2's complement)
01111111	0x7f	127	127
01111110	0x7e	126	126
...			
00000110	0x6	6	6
00000101	0x5	5	5
00000100	0x4	4	4
00000011	0x3	3	3
00000010	0x2	2	2
00000001	0x1	1	1
00000000	0x0	0	0
11111111	0xff	255	-1
11111110	0xfe	254	-2
11111101	0xfd	253	-3
11111100	0xfc	252	-4
11111011	0xfb	251	-5
11111010	0xfa	250	-6
...			
10000010	0x82	130	-126
10000001	0x81	129	-127
10000000	0x80	128	-128

The difference between signed and unsigned numbers is that if we represent 0xFFFFFFFF and 0x00000002 as unsigned, then first number (4294967294) is bigger than second (2). If to represent them both as signed, first will be -2, and it is lesser than second (2). That is the reason why conditional jumps (12) are present both for signed (e.g. JG, JL) and unsigned (JA, JBE) operations.

For the sake of simplicity, that is what one need to know:

- Number can be signed or unsigned.
- C/C++ signed types: *int* (-2147483646..2147483647 or 0x80000000 . . 0x7FFFFFFF), *char* (-127..128 or 0x7F . . 0x80). Unsigned: *unsigned int* (0..4294967295 or 0 . . 0xFFFFFFFF), *unsigned char* (0..255 or 0 . . 0xFF), *size_t*.
- Signed types has sign in the most significant bit: 1 mean “minus”, 0 mean “plus”.
- Negation is simple: just invert all bits and add 1. We may observe that a number of different sign is located on the opposite side at the same proximity from zero. Addition is needed because zero is present in the middle.
- Addition and subtraction operations are working well for both signed and unsigned values. But for multiplication and division operations, x86 has different instructions: IDIV/IMUL for signed and DIV/MUL for unsigned.
- More instructions working with signed numbers: CBW/CWD/CWDE/CDQ/CDQE (A.6.3), MOVSX (15.1.1), SAR (A.6.3).

¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Signed_number_representations

Chapter 42

Endianness

Endianness is a way of representing values in memory.

42.1 Big-endian

A 0x12345678 value will be represented in memory as:

address in memory	byte value
+0	0x12
+1	0x34
+2	0x56
+3	0x78

Big-endian CPUs include Motorola 68k, IBM POWER.

42.2 Little-endian

A 0x12345678 value will be represented in memory as:

address in memory	byte value
+0	0x78
+1	0x56
+2	0x34
+3	0x12

Little-endian CPUs include Intel x86.

42.3 Example

I've got big-endianness MIPS Linux installed and ready for QEMU ¹.

And I compiled simple example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int v, i;

    v=123;

    printf ("%02X %02X %02X %02X\n",
            *(char*)&v,
            *(((char*)&v)+1),
            *(((char*)&v)+2),
            *(((char*)&v)+3));
};
```

And run it:

¹I've got it here: <https://people.debian.org/~aurel32/qemu/mips/>

```
root@debian-mips:~# ./a.out
00 00 00 7B
```

That is, 0x7B is 123 in decimal. In little-endianness architecture, 7B will be the first byte (you can check on x86 or x86-64), but here it is the last one, because highest goes first.

That's why there are separate Linux distributions exist for MIPS ("mips" (big-endian) and "mipsel" (little-endian)). It is impossible for binary compiled for one endianness to work on the OS with different endianness.

42.4 Bi-endian

CPUs which may switch between endianness are ARM, PowerPC, SPARC, MIPS, [IA64²](#), etc.

42.5 Converting data

TCP/IP network data packets use big-endian conventions, so that is why a program working on little-endian architecture should convert values using `htonl()` and `htons()` functions.

In TCP/IP, big-endian is also called "network byte order", while little-endian—"host byte order".

The `BSWAP` instruction can also be used for conversion.

²Intel Architecture 64 (Itanium): [83](#)

Chapter 43

Memory

There are 3 main types of memory:

- Global memory. AKA “static memory allocation”. No need to allocate explicitly, allocation is done just by declaring variables/arrays globally. This is global variables residing in data or constant segments. Available globally (hence, considered as [anti-pattern](#)). Not convenient for buffers/arrays, because must have fixed size. Buffer overflows occurring here usually overwriting variable or buffer residing next in memory. Example in this book: [7.2](#).
- Stack. AKA “allocate on stack”. Allocation is done just by declaring variables/arrays locally in the function. This is usually local to function variables. Sometimes these local variable are also available to descending functions (if one passing pointer to variable to the function to be executed). Allocation and deallocation are very fast, [SP](#) only needs to be shifted. But also not convenient for buffers/arrays, because buffer size should be fixed at some length, unless `alloca()` ([5.2.4](#)) (or variable-length array) is used. Buffer overflow usually overwrites important stack structures: [18.2](#).
- Heap. AKA “dynamic memory allocation”. Allocation occurring by calling `malloc()/free()` or `new/delete` in C++. Most convenient method: block size may be set at runtime. Resizing is possible (using `realloc()`), but may be slow. This is slowest way to allocate memory: memory allocator must support and update all control structures while allocating and deallocating. Buffer overflows are usually overwrites these structures. Heap allocations is also source of memory leak problem: each memory block should be deallocated explicitly, but one may forgot about it, or do it incorrectly. Another problem is “use after free”—using a memory block after `free()` was called on it, which is very dangerous. Example in this book: [21.2](#).

Chapter 44

CPU

44.1 Branch predictors

Some modern compilers try to get rid of conditional jump instructions. Examples in this book are: [12.1.2](#), [12.3](#), [19.4.2](#).

This is because because branch predictor is not always perfect, so compilers try to do without conditional jumps, if possible.

Conditional instructions in ARM (like ADRcc) is one way, another is CMOVcc x86 instruction.

44.2 Data dependencies

Modern CPUs are able to execute instructions simultaneously ([OOE¹](#)), but in order to do so, results of one instructions in group must not influence execution of others. Hence, compiler endeavor to use instructions with minimal influence to the CPU state.

That's why LEA instruction is so popular, because it do not modify CPU flags, while other arithmetic instructions do this.

¹Out-of-order execution

Part III

Finding important/interesting stuff in the code

Minimalism it is not a prominent feature of modern software.

But not because programmers are writing a lot, but in a reason that all libraries are commonly linked statically to executable files. If all external libraries were shifted into external DLL files, the world would be different. (Another reason for C++ –STL and other template libraries.)

Thus, it is very important to determine origin of a function, if it is from standard library or well-known library (like Boost², libpng³), and which one –is related to what we are trying to find in the code.

It is just absurd to rewrite all code to C/C++ to find what we're looking for.

One of the primary reverse engineer's task is to find quickly the code he/she needed.

IDA disassembler allow us search among text strings, byte sequences, constants. It is even possible to export the code into .lst or .asm text file and then use `grep`, `awk`, etc.

When you try to understand what a code is doing, this easily could be some open-source library like libpng. So when you see some constants or text strings which looks familiar, it is always worth to *google* it. And if you find the opensource project where it is used, then it will be enough just to compare the functions. It may solve some part of the problem.

For example, if program use a XML files, the first step may be determining, which XML-library is used for processing, since standard (or well-known) libraries are usually used instead of self-made one.

For example, once upon a time I tried to understand how SAP 6.0 network packets compression/decompression was working. It is a huge software, but a detailed .PDB with debugging information is present, and that is cozily. I finally came to idea that one of the functions doing decompressing of network packet called `CsDecomprLZC()`. Immediately I tried to google its name and I quickly found the function named as the same is used in MaxDB (it is open-source SAP project)⁴.

<http://www.google.com/search?q=CsDecomprLZC>

Astoundingly, MaxDB and SAP 6.0 software shared likewise code for network packets compression/decompression.

²<http://www.boost.org/>

³<http://www.libpng.org/pub/png/libpng.html>

⁴More about it in relevant section (71.1)

Chapter 45

Identification of executable files

45.1 Microsoft Visual C++

MSVC versions and DLLs which may be imported:

Marketing version	Internal version	CL.EXE version	DLLs may be imported	Release date
6	6.0	12.00	msvcrt.dll, msvcp60.dll	June 1998
.NET (2002)	7.0	13.00	msvcr70.dll, msvcp70.dll	February 13, 2002
.NET 2003	7.1	13.10	msvcr71.dll, msvcp71.dll	April 24, 2003
2005	8.0	14.00	msvcr80.dll, msvcp80.dll	November 7, 2005
2008	9.0	15.00	msvcr90.dll, msvcp90.dll	November 19, 2007
2010	10.0	16.00	msvcr100.dll, msvcp100.dll	April 12, 2010
2012	11.0	17.00	msvcr110.dll, msvcp110.dll	September 12, 2012
2013	12.0	18.00	msvcr120.dll, msvcp120.dll	October 17, 2013

msvcp*.dll contain C++-related functions, so, if it is imported, this is probably C++ program.

45.1.1 Name mangling

Names are usually started with ? symbol.

Read more about MSVC [name mangling](#) here: [37.1.1](#).

45.2 GCC

Aside from *NIX targets, GCC is also present in win32 environment: in the form of Cygwin and MinGW.

45.2.1 Name mangling

Names are usually started with _Z symbols.

Read more about GCC [name mangling](#) here: [37.1.1](#).

45.2.2 Cygwin

cygwin1.dll is often imported.

45.2.3 MinGW

msvcrt.dll may be imported.

45.3 Intel FORTRAN

libifcoremd.dll, libifportmd.dll and libiomp5md.dll (OpenMP support) may be imported.

libifcoremd.dll has a lot of functions prefixed with for_, meaning FORTRAN.

45.4 Watcom, OpenWatcom

45.4.1 Name mangling

Names are usually started with W symbol.

For example, that is how method named “method” of the class “class” not having arguments and returning *void* is encoded to:

```
W?method$_class$n_v
```

45.5 Borland

Here is an example of Borland Delphi and C++Builder [name mangling](#):

```
@TApplication@IdleAction$qv
@TApplication@ProcessMDIAccels$qp6tagMSG
@TModule@$bctr$qpcpvt1
@TModule@$bdtr$qv
@TModule@ValidWindow$qp14TWindowsObject
@TrueColorTo8BitN$qpviiiiit1iiiiii
@TrueColorTo16BitN$qpviiiiit1iiiiii
@DIB24BitTo8BitBitmap$qpviiiiit1iiiiii
@TrueBitmap@$bctr$qpc1
@TrueBitmap@$bctr$qpv1
@TrueBitmap@$bctr$qiill1
```

Names are always started with @ symbol, then class name came, method name, and encoded method argument types. These names can be in .exe imports, .dll exports, debug data, etc.

Borland Visual Component Libraries (VCL) are stored in .bpl files instead of .dll ones, for example, vcl50.dll, rtl60.dll.

Other DLL might be imported: BORLNDMM.DLL.

45.5.1 Delphi

Almost all Delphi executables has “Boolean” text string at the very beginning of code segment, along with other type names.

This is a very typical beginning of CODE segment of a Delphi program, this block came right after win32 PE file header:

```
00000400 04 10 40 00 03 07 42 6f 6f 6c 65 61 6e 01 00 00 |..@...Boolean...|
00000410 00 00 01 00 00 00 00 10 40 00 05 46 61 6c 73 65 |.....@..False|
00000420 04 54 72 75 65 8d 40 00 2c 10 40 00 09 08 57 69 |.True.@.,@...Wi|
00000430 64 65 43 68 61 72 03 00 00 00 00 ff ff 00 00 90 |deChar.....|
00000440 44 10 40 00 02 04 43 68 61 72 01 00 00 00 00 ff |D.@...Char.....|
00000450 00 00 00 90 58 10 40 00 01 08 53 6d 61 6c 6c 69 |....X.@...Smalli|
00000460 6e 74 02 00 8e 70 ff ff ff 7f 00 00 90 70 10 40 00 |nt.....p.@|
00000470 01 07 49 6e 74 65 67 65 72 04 00 00 00 80 ff ff |..Integer.....|
00000480 ff 7f 8b c0 88 10 40 00 01 04 42 79 74 65 01 00 |.....@...Byte..|
00000490 00 00 00 ff 00 00 00 90 9c 10 40 00 01 04 57 6f |.....@...Wo|
000004a0 72 64 03 00 00 00 00 ff ff 00 00 90 b0 10 40 00 |rd.....@|
000004b0 01 08 43 61 72 64 69 6e 61 6c 05 00 00 00 00 ff |..Cardinal.....|
000004c0 ff ff ff 90 c8 10 40 00 10 05 49 6e 74 36 34 00 |.....@...Int64|
000004d0 00 00 00 00 00 00 80 ff ff ff ff ff ff 7f 90 |.....|
000004e0 e4 10 40 00 04 08 45 78 74 65 6e 64 65 64 02 90 |..@...Extended..|
000004f0 f4 10 40 00 04 06 44 6f 75 62 6c 65 01 8d 40 00 |..@...Double..@|
00000500 04 11 40 00 04 08 43 75 72 72 65 6e 63 79 04 90 |..@...Currency..|
00000510 14 11 40 00 0a 06 73 74 72 69 6e 67 20 11 40 00 |..@...string.@|
00000520 0b 0a 57 69 64 65 53 74 72 69 6e 67 30 11 40 00 |..WideString0.@|
00000530 0c 07 56 61 72 69 61 6e 74 8d 40 00 40 11 40 00 |..Variant.@.@|
00000540 0c 0a 4f 6c 65 56 61 72 69 61 6e 74 98 11 40 00 |..OleVariant..@|
00000550 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 |.....|
00000560 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 98 11 40 00 |.....@|
00000570 04 00 00 00 00 00 00 18 4d 40 00 24 4d 40 00 |.....M@.$M@|
00000580 28 4d 40 00 2c 4d 40 00 20 4d 40 00 68 4a 40 00 |(M@.,M@. M@.hJ@|
00000590 84 4a 40 00 c0 4a 40 00 07 54 4f 62 6a 65 63 74 |.J@..J@..TObject|
000005a0 a4 11 40 00 07 07 54 4f 62 6a 65 63 74 98 11 40 |..@...TObject..@|
000005b0 00 00 00 00 00 00 06 53 79 73 74 65 6d 00 00 |.....System..|
000005c0 c4 11 40 00 0f 0a 49 49 6e 74 65 72 66 61 63 65 |..@...IInterface|
000005d0 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 c0 00 00 |.....|
000005e0 00 00 00 00 46 06 53 79 73 74 65 6d 03 00 ff ff |....F.System....|
000005f0 f4 11 40 00 0f 09 49 44 69 73 70 61 74 63 68 c0 |..@...IDispatch|
```

00000600	11 40 00 01 00 04 02 00	00 00 00 00 c0 00 00 00	|.@.....|
00000610	00 00 00 46 06 53 79 73	74 65 6d 04 00 ff ff 90	|...F.System....|
00000620	cc 83 44 24 04 f8 e9 51	6c 00 00 83 44 24 04 f8	|..D\$...Q1...D\$..|
00000630	e9 6f 6c 00 00 83 44 24	04 f8 e9 79 6c 00 00 cc	|.ol...D\$...y1...|
00000640	cc 21 12 40 00 2b 12 40	00 35 12 40 00 01 00 00	|.!.@.+.@.5.@....|
00000650	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	00 c0 00 00 00 00 00 00	|.....|
00000660	46 41 12 40 00 08 00 00	00 00 00 00 00 8d 40 00	|FA.@.....@.|
00000670	bc 12 40 00 4d 12 40 00	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	|..@.M.@.....|
00000680	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	|.....|
00000690	bc 12 40 00 0c 00 00 00	4c 11 40 00 18 4d 40 00	|..@.....L.@..M@.|
000006a0	50 7e 40 00 5c 7e 40 00	2c 4d 40 00 20 4d 40 00	|P~@.\~@.,M@. M@.|
000006b0	6c 7e 40 00 84 4a 40 00	c0 4a 40 00 11 54 49 6e	|l~@..J@..J@..TIn|
000006c0	74 65 72 66 61 63 65 64	4f 62 6a 65 63 74 8b c0	|terfacedObject..|
000006d0	d4 12 40 00 07 11 54 49	6e 74 65 72 66 61 63 65	|..@...TInterface|
000006e0	64 4f 62 6a 65 63 74 bc	12 40 00 a0 11 40 00 00	|dObject..@...@..|
000006f0	00 06 53 79 73 74 65 6d	00 00 8b c0 00 13 40 00	|..System.....@.|
00000700	11 0b 54 42 6f 75 6e 64	41 72 72 61 79 04 00 00	|..TBoundArray...|
00000710	00 00 00 00 00 03 00 00	00 6c 10 40 00 06 53 79	|.....l.@..Sy|
00000720	73 74 65 6d 28 13 40 00	04 09 54 44 61 74 65 54	|stem(.@...TDateT|
00000730	69 6d 65 01 ff 25 48 e0	c4 00 8b c0 ff 25 44 e0	|ime..%H.....%D.|

First 4 bytes of the data segment (DATA) may be 00 00 00 00, 32 13 8B C0 or FF FF FF FF. This information may be useful when dealing with packed Delphi executables.

45.6 Other known DLLs

- vcomp*.dll—Microsoft implementation of OpenMP.

Chapter 46

Communication with the outer world (win32)

Sometimes it's enough to observe some function's inputs and outputs in order to understand what it does. That may save time.

Files and registry access: for the very basic analysis, Process Monitor¹ utility from SysInternals may help.

For the basic analysis of network accesses, Wireshark² may help.

But then you will need to look inside anyway.

The first thing to look for is which functions from OS API³ and standard libraries are used.

If the program is divided into main executable file and a group of DLL-files, sometimes, these function's names can be helpful.

If we are interested in exactly what can lead to the `MessageBox()` call with specific text, we can try to find this text in data segment, find references to it and find the points from which a control may be passed to the `MessageBox()` call we're interested in.

If we are talking about a video game and we're interested in which events are more or less random in it, we may try to find `rand()` function or its replacements (like Mersenne twister algorithm) and find the places from which those functions are called, and more important: how the results are used. One example: 66.

But if it is not a game, and `rand()` is used, it is also interesting to know why. There are cases of unexpected `rand()` usage in data compression algorithm (for encryption imitation): <http://blog.yurichev.com/node/44>.

46.1 Often used functions in Windows API

These functions may be among imported. It is worth to note that not every function might be used by the code written by author. A lot of functions might be called from library functions and CRT code.

- Registry access (`advapi32.dll`): `RegEnumKeyEx`^{4 5}, `RegEnumValue`^{6 5}, `RegGetValue`^{7 5}, `RegOpenKeyEx`^{8 5}, `RegQueryValueEx`^{9 5}.
- Access to text .ini-files (`kernel32.dll`): `GetPrivateProfileString`^{10 5}.
- Dialog boxes (`user32.dll`): `MessageBox`^{11 5}, `MessageBoxEx`^{12 5}, `SetDlgItemText`^{13 5}, `GetDlgItemText`^{14 5}.
- Resources access(59.2.8): (`user32.dll`): `LoadMenu`^{15 5}.
- TCP/IP-network (`ws2_32.dll`): `WSARecv`¹⁶, `WSASend`¹⁷.

¹<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/sysinternals/bb896645.aspx>

²<http://www.wireshark.org/>

³Application programming interface

⁴[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724862\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724862(v=vs.85).aspx)

⁵May have -A suffix for ASCII-version and -W for Unicode-version

⁶[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724865\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724865(v=vs.85).aspx)

⁷[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724868\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724868(v=vs.85).aspx)

⁸[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724897\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724897(v=vs.85).aspx)

⁹[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724911\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724911(v=vs.85).aspx)

¹⁰[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724353\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724353(v=vs.85).aspx)

¹¹[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms645505\(VS.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms645505(VS.85).aspx)

¹²[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms645507\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms645507(v=vs.85).aspx)

¹³[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms645521\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms645521(v=vs.85).aspx)

¹⁴[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms645489\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms645489(v=vs.85).aspx)

¹⁵[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms647990\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms647990(v=vs.85).aspx)

¹⁶[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms741688\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms741688(v=vs.85).aspx)

¹⁷[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms742203\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms742203(v=vs.85).aspx)

- File access (kernel32.dll): CreateFile ¹⁸ 5, ReadFile ¹⁹, ReadFileEx ²⁰, WriteFile ²¹, WriteFileEx ²².
- High-level access to the Internet (wininet.dll): WinHttpOpen ²³.
- Check digital signature of a executable file (wintrust.dll): WinVerifyTrust ²⁴.
- Standard MSVC library (in case of dynamic linking) (msvcr*.dll): assert, itoa, ltoa, open, printf, read, strcmp, atol, atoi, fopen, fread, fwrite, memcmp, rand, strlen, strstr, strchr.

46.2 tracer: Intercepting all functions in specific module

There is INT3-breakpoints in `tracer`, triggered only once, however, they can be set to all functions in specific DLL.

```
--one-time-INT3-bp:somedll.dll!.*
```

Or, let's set INT3-breakpoints to all functions with `xml` prefix in name:

```
--one-time-INT3-bp:somedll.dll!xml.*
```

On the other side of coin, such breakpoints are triggered only once.

Tracer will show the call of a function, if it happens, but only once. Another drawback –it is impossible to see function's arguments.

Nevertheless, this feature is very useful when you know the program uses a DLL, but do not know which functions are actually used. And there are a lot of functions.

For example, let's see, what uptime cygwin utility uses:

```
tracer -l:uptime.exe --one-time-INT3-bp:cygwin1.dll!.*
```

Thus we may see all `cygwin1.dll` library functions which were called at least once, and where from:

```
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!__main (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x6d (0x40106d))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_geteuid32 (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0xba3 (0x401ba3))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_getuid32 (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0xbaa (0x401baa))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_getegid32 (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0xcb7 (0x401cb7))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_getgid32 (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0xcbe (0x401cbe))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!sysconf (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x735 (0x401735))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!setlocale (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x7b2 (0x4017b2))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_open64 (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x994 (0x401994))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_lseek64 (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x7ea (0x4017ea))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!read (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x809 (0x401809))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!sscanf (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x839 (0x401839))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!uname (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x139 (0x401139))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!time (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x22e (0x40122e))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!localtime (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x236 (0x401236))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!sprintf (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x25a (0x40125a))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!setutent (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x3b1 (0x4013b1))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!getutent (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x3c5 (0x4013c5))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!endutent (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x3e6 (0x4013e6))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!puts (called from uptime.exe!OEP+0x4c3 (0x4014c3))
```

¹⁸[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa363858\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa363858(v=vs.85).aspx)

¹⁹[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa365467\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa365467(v=vs.85).aspx)

²⁰[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa365468\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa365468(v=vs.85).aspx)

²¹[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa365747\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa365747(v=vs.85).aspx)

²²[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa365748\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa365748(v=vs.85).aspx)

²³[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa384098\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa384098(v=vs.85).aspx)

²⁴<http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/windows/desktop/aa388208.aspx>

Chapter 47

Strings

47.1 Text strings

47.1.1 C/C++

Usual C-strings are zero-terminated ([ASCIIZ](#)-strings).

The reason why C string format is as it is (zero-terminating) is apparently hisorical. In [\[Rit79\]](#) we can read:

A minor difference was that the unit of I/O was the word, not the byte, because the PDP-7 was a word-addressed machine. In practice this meant merely that all programs dealing with character streams ignored null characters, because null was used to pad a file to an even number of characters.

In Hiew or FAR Manager these strings looks like as it is:

```
int main()
{
    printf ("Hello, world!\n");
};
```

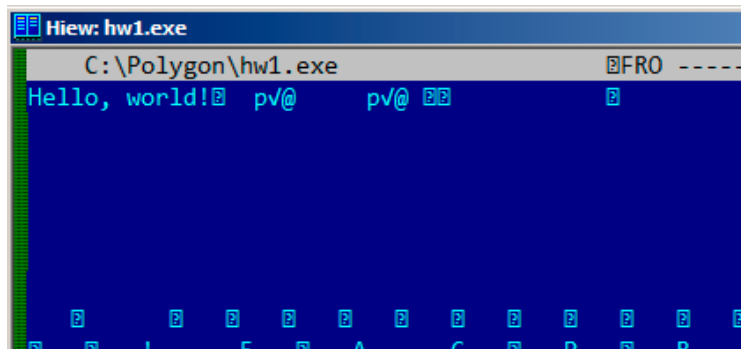


Figure 47.1: Hiew

47.1.2 Borland Delphi

The string in Pascal and Borland Delphi is preceded by 8-bit or 32-bit string length value.

For example:

Listing 47.1: Delphi

```
CODE:00518AC8          dd 19h
CODE:00518ACC aLoading__Plea db 'Loading... , please wait.',0
...
CODE:00518AFC          dd 10h
CODE:00518B00 aPreparingRun__ db 'Preparing run...',0
```

47.1.3 Unicode

Often, what is called by Unicode is a methods of strings encoding where each character occupies 2 bytes or 16 bits. This is common terminological mistake. Unicode is a standard assigning a number to each character of many writing systems of the world, but not describing encoding method.

Most popular encoding methods are: UTF-8 (often used in Internet and *NIX systems) and UTF-16LE (used in Windows).

UTF-8

UTF-8 is one of the most successful methods of character encoding. All Latin symbols are encoded just like in an ASCII-encoding, and symbols beyond ASCII-table are encoded by several bytes. 0 is encoded as it was before, so all standard C string functions works with UTF-8-strings just like any other string.

Let's see how symbols in various languages are encoded in UTF-8 and how it looks like in FAR in 437 codepage ¹:

```

How much? 100€?

(English) I can eat glass and it doesn't hurt me.
(Greek) Μπορώ να φάω σπασμένα γυαλιά χωρίς να πάθω τίποτα.
(Hungarian) Meg tudom enni az üveget, nem lesz tőle bajom.
(Icelandic) Ég get etið gler án þess að meiða mig.
(Polish) Mogę jeść szkło i mi nie szkodzi.
(Russian) Я могу есть стекло, оно мне не вредит.
(Arabic): أنا قادر على أكل الزجاج و هذا لا يؤلمني.
(Hebrew): אני יכול לאכול זכוכית וזה לא מזיק לי.
(Chinese) 我能吞下玻璃而不伤身体。
(Japanese) 私はガラスを食べられます。それは私を傷つけません。
(Hindi) मैं काँच खा सकता हूँ और मुझे उससे कोई चोट नहीं पहुंचती।

```

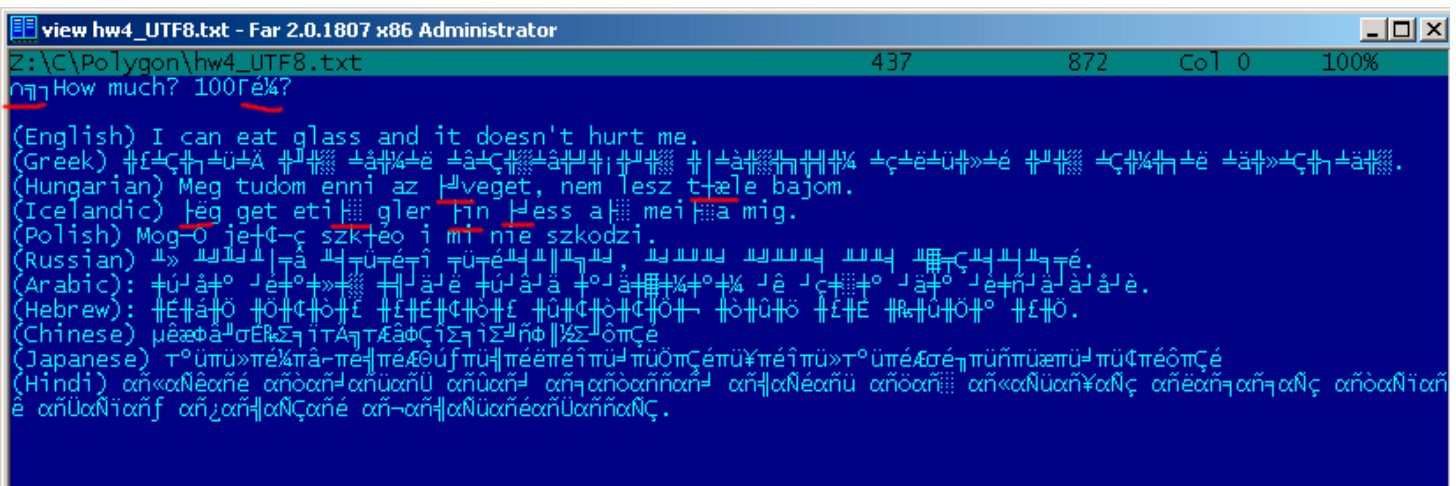


Figure 47.2: FAR: UTF-8

As it seems, English language string looks like as it is in ASCII-encoding. Hungarian language uses Latin symbols plus symbols with diacritic marks. These symbols are encoded by several bytes, I underscored them by red. The same story with Icelandic and Polish languages. I also used “Euro” currency symbol at the begin, which is encoded by 3 bytes. All the rest writing systems here have no connection with Latin. At least about Russian, Arabic, Hebrew and Hindi we could see recurring bytes, and that is not surprise: all symbols from the writing system is usually located in the same Unicode table, so their code begins with the same numbers.

At the very beginning, before “How much?” string we see 3 bytes, which is BOM² in fact. BOM defines encoding system to be used now.

UTF-16LE

Many win32 functions in Windows has a suffix -A and -W. The first functions works with usual strings, the next with UTF-16LE-strings (*wide*). As in the second case, each symbol is usually stored in 16-bit value of *short* type.

Latin symbols in UTF-16 strings looks in Hiew or FAR as interleaved with zero byte:

¹I've got example and translations from there: <http://www.columbia.edu/~fdc/utf8/>

²Byte order mark

```
int wmain()
{
    wprintf (L"Hello, world!\n");
};
```

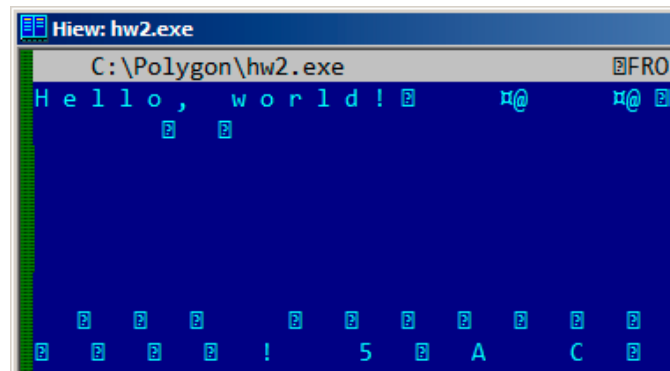


Figure 47.3: Hiew

We may often see this in [Windows NT](#) system files:

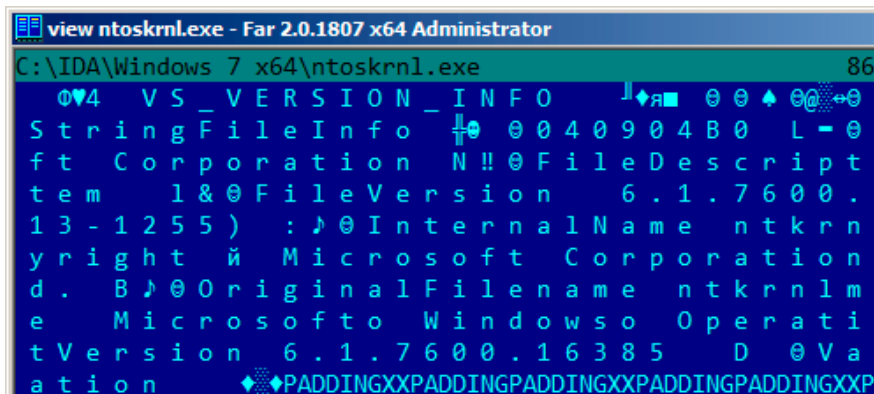


Figure 47.4: Hiew

String with characters occupying exactly 2 bytes are called by “Unicode” in [IDA](#):

```
.data:0040E000 aHelloWorld:
.data:0040E000          unicode 0, <Hello, world!>
.data:0040E000          dw 0Ah, 0
```

Here is how Russian language string encoded in UTF-16LE may looks like:

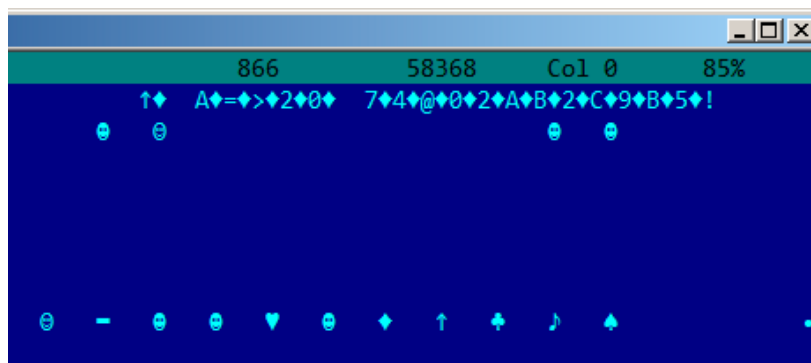


Figure 47.5: Hiew: UTF-16LE

What we can easily spot—is that symbols are interleaved by diamond character (which has code of 4). Indeed, Cyrillic symbols are located in the fourth Unicode plane³. Hence, all Cyrillic symbols in UTF-16LE are located in 0x400-0x4FF range.

³[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyrillic_\(Unicode_block\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyrillic_(Unicode_block))

Let's back to the example with the string written in multiple languages. Here we can see it in UTF-16LE encoding.

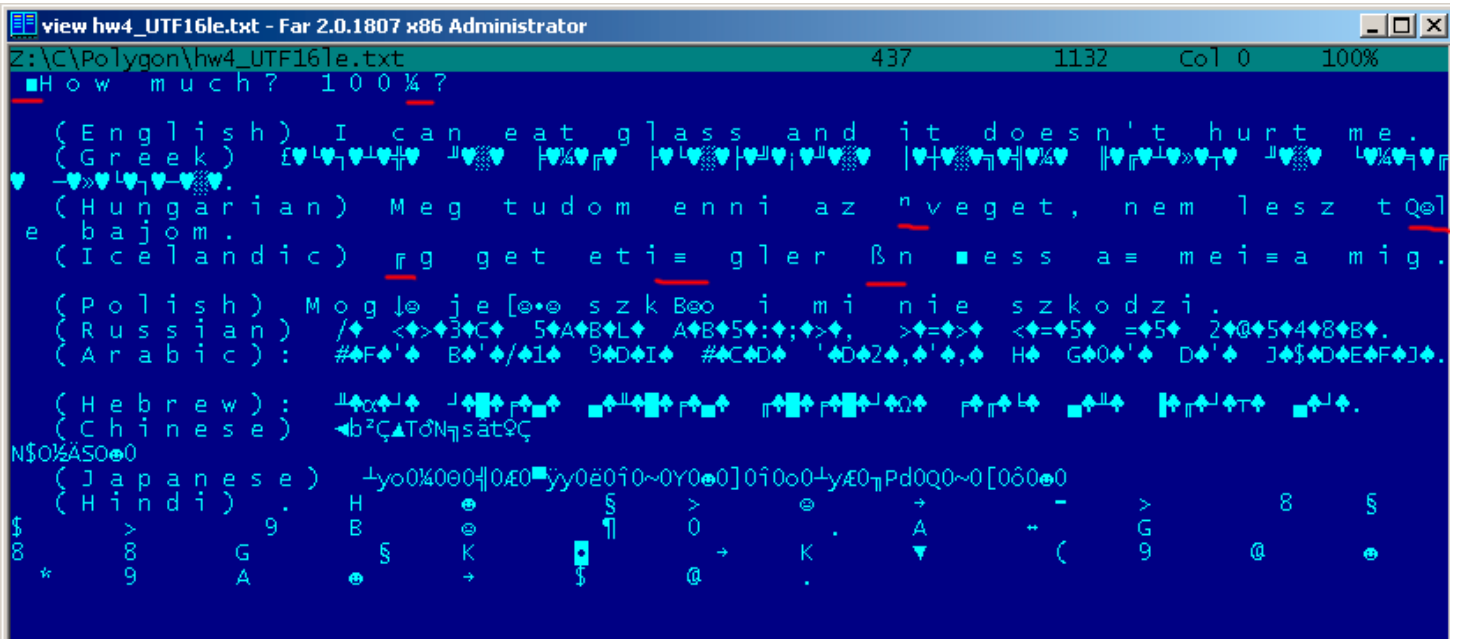


Figure 47.6: FAR: UTF-16LE

Here we can also see BOM in the very beginning. All Latin characters are interleaved with zero byte. I also underscored by red some characters with diacritic marks (Hungarian and Icelandic languages).

47.1.4 Base64

Base64 encoding is highly popular when one need to transfer binary data as a text string. In essence, this algorithm encodes 3 binary bytes using 4 ASCII characters: all 26 Latin letters (both lower and upper case), digits, plus sign (“+”) and slash sign (“/”), resulting 64 characters in total.

One distinctive feature of base64 strings is that they often (but not always) ending with 1 or 2 padding symbol(s) (“=”), for example:

```
AVjbbVSVfcUMu1xvjaMgjNtueRwBbxnyJw8dpGnLW8ZW8aKG3v4Y0icuQT+qEJAp9lAOuWs=
```

```
WVjbbVSVfcUMu1xvjaMgjNtueRwBbxnyJw8dpGnLW8ZW8aKG3v4Y0icuQT+qEJAp9lAOuQ==
```

So equality sign (“=”) never encounter in the middle of base64-encoded string.

47.2 Error/debug messages

Debugging messages are often very helpful if present. In some sense, debugging messages are reporting about what’s going on in program right now. Often these are printf()-like functions, which writes to log-files, and sometimes, not writing anything but calls are still present since this build is not a debug build but release one. If local or global variables are dumped in debugging messages, it might be helpful as well since it is possible to get variable names at least. For example, one of such functions in Oracle RDBMS is ksdwr t().

Meaningful text strings are often helpful. IDA disassembler may show from which function and from which point this specific string is used. Funny cases sometimes happen⁴.

Error messages may help us as well. In Oracle RDBMS, errors are reporting using group of functions.

More about it: <http://blog.yurichev.com/node/43>.

It is possible to find very quickly, which functions reporting about errors and in which conditions. By the way, it is often a reason why copy-protection systems has inarticulate cryptic error messages or just error numbers. No one happy when software cracker quickly understand why copy-protection is triggered just by error message.

One example of encrypted error messages is here: 69.2.

⁴<http://blog.yurichev.com/node/32>

Chapter 48

Calls to assert()

Sometimes `assert()` macro presence is useful too: commonly this macro leaves source file name, line number and condition in code.

Most useful information is contained in `assert-condition`, we can deduce variable names, or structure field names from it. Another useful piece of information is file names – we can try to deduce what type of code is here. Also it is possible to recognize a well-known open-source libraries by file names.

Listing 48.1: Example of informative `assert()` calls

```
.text:107D4B29 mov dx, [ecx+42h]
.text:107D4B2D cmp edx, 1
.text:107D4B30 jz short loc_107D4B4A
.text:107D4B32 push 1ECh
.text:107D4B37 push offset aWrite_c ; "write.c"
.text:107D4B3C push offset aTdTd_planarcon ; "td->td_planarconfig == PLANARCONFIG_CON"...
.text:107D4B41 call ds:_assert

...

.text:107D52CA mov edx, [ebp-4]
.text:107D52CD and edx, 3
.text:107D52D0 test edx, edx
.text:107D52D2 jz short loc_107D52E9
.text:107D52D4 push 58h
.text:107D52D6 push offset aDumpmode_c ; "dumpmode.c"
.text:107D52DB push offset aN30 ; "(n & 3) == 0"
.text:107D52E0 call ds:_assert

...

.text:107D6759 mov cx, [eax+6]
.text:107D675D cmp ecx, 0Ch
.text:107D6760 jle short loc_107D677A
.text:107D6762 push 2D8h
.text:107D6767 push offset aLzw_c ; "lzw.c"
.text:107D676C push offset aSpLzw_nbitsBit ; "sp->lzw_nbits <= BITS_MAX"
.text:107D6771 call ds:_assert
```

It is advisable to “google” both conditions and file names, that may lead us to open-source library. For example, if to “google” “`sp->lzw_nbits <= BITS_MAX`”, this predictably give us some open-source code, something related to LZW-compression.

Chapter 49

Constants

Humans, including programmers, often use round numbers like 10, 100, 1000, as well as in the code.

Practicing reverse engineer, usually know them well in hexadecimal representation: 10=0xA, 100=0x64, 1000=0x3E8, 10000=0x2710.

Constants 0xAAAAAAAA (10101010101010101010101010101010) and 0x55555555 (01010101010101010101010101010101) are also popular—this is alternating bits. For example 0x55AA constant is used at least in boot-sector, [MBR](#)¹, and in [ROM](#)² of IBM-compatibles extension cards.

Some algorithms, especially cryptographical, use distinct constants, which is easy to find in code using [IDA](#).

For example, MD5³ algorithm initializes its own internal variables like:

```
var int h0 := 0x67452301
var int h1 := 0xEFCDAB89
var int h2 := 0x98BADCFE
var int h3 := 0x10325476
```

If you find these four constants usage in the code in a row – it is very high probability this function is related to MD5.

Another example is CRC16/CRC32 algorithms, often, calculation algorithms use precomputed tables like:

Listing 49.1: linux/lib/crc16.c

```
/** CRC table for the CRC-16. The poly is 0x8005 (x^16 + x^15 + x^2 + 1) */
u16 const crc16_table[256] = {
    0x0000, 0xC0C1, 0xC181, 0x0140, 0xC301, 0x03C0, 0x0280, 0xC241,
    0xC601, 0x06C0, 0x0780, 0xC741, 0x0500, 0xC5C1, 0xC481, 0x0440,
    0xCC01, 0x0CC0, 0x0D80, 0xCD41, 0x0F00, 0xCFC1, 0xCE81, 0x0E40,
    ...
}
```

See also precomputed table for CRC32: [19.5](#).

49.1 Magic numbers

A lot of file formats defining a standard file header where *magic number*⁴ is used.

For example, all Win32 and MS-DOS executables are started with two characters “MZ”⁵.

At the MIDI-file beginning “MThd” signature must be present. If we have a program which uses MIDI-files for something, very likely, it must check MIDI-files for validity by checking at least first 4 bytes.

This could be done like:

(*buf* pointing to the beginning of loaded file into memory)

```
cmp [buf], 0x6468544D ; "MThd"
jnz _error_not_a_MIDI_file
```

...or by calling a function for comparing memory blocks `memcmp()` or any other equivalent code up to a `CMPSB` ([A.6.3](#)) instruction.

When you find such point you already may say where MIDI-file loading is starting, also, we could see a location of MIDI-file contents buffer and what is used from the buffer, and how.

¹Master Boot Record

²Read-only memory

³<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MD5>

⁴[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Magic_number_\(programming\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Magic_number_(programming))

⁵http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/DOS_MZ_executable

49.1.1 DHCP

This applies to network protocols as well. For example, DHCP protocol network packets contains so-called *magic cookie*: 0x63538263. Any code generating DHCP protocol packets somewhere and somehow must embed this constant into packet. If we find it in the code we may find where it happen and not only this. Any program which can receive DHCP packet, must check *magic cookie*, comparing it with the constant.

For example, let's take dhcpcore.dll file from Windows 7 x64 and search for the constant. And we found it, two times: it seems, the constant is used in two functions eloquently named as DhcpExtractOptionsForValidation() and DhcpExtractFullOptions():

Listing 49.2: dhcpcore.dll (Windows 7 x64)

```
.rdata:000007FF6483CBE8 dword_7FF6483CBE8 dd 63538263h ; DATA XREF: ↗
↳ DhcpExtractOptionsForValidation+79
.rdata:000007FF6483CBEC dword_7FF6483CBEC dd 63538263h ; DATA XREF: ↗
↳ DhcpExtractFullOptions+97
```

And the places where these constants accessed:

Listing 49.3: dhcpcore.dll (Windows 7 x64)

```
.text:000007FF6480875F mov     eax, [rsi]
.text:000007FF64808761 cmp     eax, cs:dword_7FF6483CBE8
.text:000007FF64808767 jnz    loc_7FF64817179
```

And:

Listing 49.4: dhcpcore.dll (Windows 7 x64)

```
.text:000007FF648082C7 mov     eax, [r12]
.text:000007FF648082CB cmp     eax, cs:dword_7FF6483CBEC
.text:000007FF648082D1 jnz    loc_7FF648173AF
```

49.2 Constant searching

It is easy in [IDA](#): Alt-B or Alt-I. And for searching for constant in big pile of files, or for searching it in non-executable files, I wrote small utility *binary grep*⁶.

⁶<https://github.com/yurichev/bgrep>

Chapter 50

Finding the right instructions

If the program is utilizing FPU instructions and there are very few of them in a code, one can try to check each one manually by debugger.

For example, we may be interesting, how Microsoft Excel calculating formulae entered by user. For example, division operation.

If to load excel.exe (from Office 2010) version 14.0.4756.1000 into [IDA](#), then make a full listing and to find each FDIV instructions (except ones which use constants as a second operand – obviously, it is not suits us):

```
cat EXCEL.lst | grep fdiv | grep -v dbl_ > EXCEL.fdiv
```

...then we realizing they are just 144.

We can enter string like `=(1/3)` in Excel and check each instruction.

Checking each instruction in debugger or [tracer](#) (one may check 4 instruction at a time), it seems, we are lucky here and sought-for instruction is just 14th:

```
.text:3011E919 DC 33                                fdiv    qword ptr [ebx]
```

```
PID=13944|TID=28744|(0) 0x2f64e919 (Excel.exe!BASE+0x11e919)
EAX=0x02088006 EBX=0x02088018 ECX=0x00000001 EDX=0x00000001
ESI=0x02088000 EDI=0x00544804 EBP=0x0274FA3C ESP=0x0274F9F8
EIP=0x2F64E919
FLAGS=PF IF
FPU ControlWord=IC RC=NEAR PC=64bits PM UM OM ZM DM IM
FPU StatusWord=
FPU ST(0): 1.000000
```

ST(0) holding first argument (1) and second one is in [EBX].

Instruction next after FDIV (FSTP) writes result into memory:

```
.text:3011E91B DD 1E                                fstp    qword ptr [esi]
```

If to set breakpoint on it, we may see result:

```
PID=32852|TID=36488|(0) 0x2f40e91b (Excel.exe!BASE+0x11e91b)
EAX=0x00598006 EBX=0x00598018 ECX=0x00000001 EDX=0x00000001
ESI=0x00598000 EDI=0x00294804 EBP=0x026CF93C ESP=0x026CF8F8
EIP=0x2F40E91B
FLAGS=PF IF
FPU ControlWord=IC RC=NEAR PC=64bits PM UM OM ZM DM IM
FPU StatusWord=C1 P
FPU ST(0): 0.333333
```

Also as a practical joke, we can modify it on-fly:

```
tracer -l:excel.exe bpx=excel.exe!BASE+0x11E91B,set(st0,666)
```

```

PID=36540|TID=24056|(0) 0x2f40e91b (Excel.exe!BASE+0x11e91b)
EAX=0x00680006 EBX=0x00680018 ECX=0x00000001 EDX=0x00000001
ESI=0x00680000 EDI=0x00395404 EBP=0x0290FD9C ESP=0x0290FD58
EIP=0x2F40E91B
FLAGS=PF IF
FPU ControlWord=IC RC=NEAR PC=64bits PM UM OM ZM DM IM
FPU StatusWord=C1 P
FPU ST(0): 0.333333
Set ST0 register to 666.000000

```

Excel showing 666 in the cell what finally convincing us we find the right point.

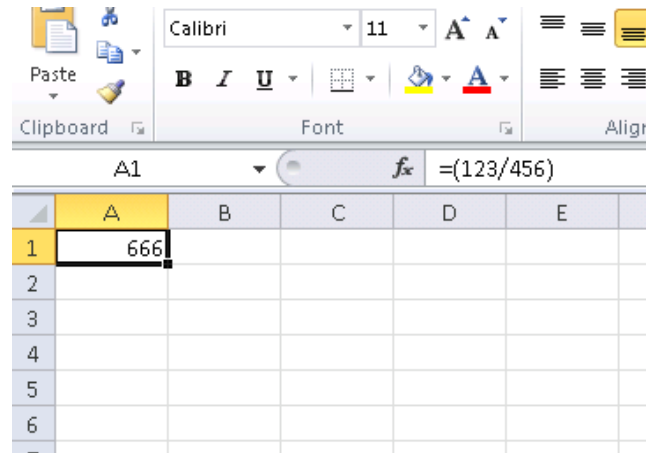


Figure 50.1: Practical joke worked

If to try the same Excel version, but x64, we will find only 12 FDIV instructions there, and the one we looking for –third.

```
tracer.exe -l:excel.exe bpx=excel.exe!BASE+0x1B7FCC,set(st0,666)
```

It seems, a lot of division operations of *float* and *double* types, compiler replaced by SSE-instructions like DIVSD (DIVSD present here 268 in total).

Chapter 51

Suspicious code patterns

51.1 XOR instructions

instructions like `XOR op, op` (for example, `XOR EAX, EAX`) are usually used for setting register value to zero, but if operands are different, “exclusive or” operation is executed. This operation is rare in common programming, but used often in cryptography, including amateur one. Especially suspicious case if the second operand is big number. This may points to encrypting/decrypting, checksum computing, etc.

One exception to this observation worth to note is “canary” (18.3). Its generation and checking is often done using XOR instruction.

This AWK script can be used for processing IDA listing (.lst) files:

```
gawk -e '$2=="xor" { tmp=substr($3, 0, length($3)-1); if (tmp!=$4) if($4!="esp") if ($4!="ebp") ↵
  ↵ { print $1, $2, tmp, ",", $4 } }' filename.lst
```

It is also worth to note that such script may also capture incorrectly disassembled code (32).

51.2 Hand-written assembly code

Modern compilers do not emit LOOP and RCL instructions. On the other hand, these instructions are well-known to coders who like to code in straight assembly language. If you spot these, it can be said, with a high probability, this fragment of code is hand-written. Such instructions are marked as (M) in the instructions list in appendix: A.6.

Also function prologue/epilogue is not commonly present in hand-written assembly copy.

Commonly there is no fixed system in passing arguments into functions in the hand-written code.

Example from Windows 2003 kernel (ntoskrnl.exe file):

```
MultiplyTest proc near ; CODE XREF: Get386Stepping
  xor     cx, cx
loc_620555: ; CODE XREF: MultiplyTest+E
  push   cx
  call   Multiply
  pop    cx
  jb     short locret_620563
  loop   loc_620555
  cld
locret_620563: ; CODE XREF: MultiplyTest+C
  retn
MultiplyTest endp

Multiply     proc near ; CODE XREF: MultiplyTest+5
  mov     ecx, 81h
  mov     eax, 417A000h
  mul     ecx
  cmp     edx, 2
  stc
  jnz    short locret_62057F
  cmp     eax, 0FE7A000h
  stc
```

```
        jnz     short locret_62057F
        clc
locret_62057F:          ; CODE XREF: Multiply+10
                       ; Multiply+18
        retn
Multiply  endp
```

Indeed, if we look into [WRK¹](#) v1.2 source code, this code can be found easily in the file *WRK-v1.2\base\ntos\ke\i386\cpu.asm*.

¹Windows Research Kernel

Chapter 52

Using magic numbers while tracing

Often, main goal is to get to know, how a value was read from file, or received via network, being used. Often, manual tracing of a value is very labouring task. One of the simplest techniques (although not 100% reliable) is to use your own *magic number*.

This resembling X-ray computed tomography is some sense: radiocontrast agent is injected into patient's blood, which is used for improving visibility of internal structures in X-rays. For example, it is well known how blood of healthy human percolates in kidneys and if agent is in blood, it will be easily seen on tomography, how blood is percolating, and are there any stones or tumors.

We can take a 32-bit number like 0x0badf00d, or someone's birth date like 0x11101979 and to write this, 4 byte holding number, to some point in file used by the program we investigate.

Then, while tracing this program, with `tracer` in the *code coverage* mode, and then, with the help of `grep` or just by searching in the text file (of tracing results), we can easily see, where the value was used and how.

Example of *grepable tracer* results in the `cc` mode:

```
0x150bf66 (_kziaia+0x14), e=      1 [MOV EBX, [EBP+8]] [EBP+8]=0xf59c934
0x150bf69 (_kziaia+0x17), e=      1 [MOV EDX, [69AEB08h]] [69AEB08h]=0
0x150bf6f (_kziaia+0x1d), e=      1 [FS: MOV EAX, [2Ch]]
0x150bf75 (_kziaia+0x23), e=      1 [MOV ECX, [EAX+EDX*4]] [EAX+EDX*4]=0xf1ac360
0x150bf78 (_kziaia+0x26), e=      1 [MOV [EBP-4], ECX] ECX=0xf1ac360
```

This can be used for network packets as well. It is important to be unique for *magic number* and not to be present in the program's code.

Aside of `tracer`, DosBox (MS-DOS emulator) in `heavydebug` mode, is able to write information about all register's states for each executed instruction of program to plain text file¹, so this technique may be useful for DOS programs as well.

¹See also my blog post about this DosBox feature: <http://blog.yurichev.com/node/55>

Chapter 53

Other things

53.1 General idea

Reverse engineer should try to be in programmer's shoes as often as possible. To take his/her viewpoint and ask himself, how one solve some task here in this case.

53.2 C++

[RTTI \(37.1.5\)](#)-data may be also useful for C++ classes identification.

Chapter 54

Old-school techniques, nevertheless, interesting to know

54.1 Memory “snapshots” comparing

The technique of straightforward two memory snapshots comparing in order to see changes, was often used to hack 8-bit computer games and hacking “high score” files.

For example, if you got a loaded game on 8-bit computer (it is not much memory on these, but game is usually consumes even less memory) and you know that you have now, let’s say, 100 bullets, you can do a “snapshot” of all memory and back it up to some place. Then shoot somewhere, bullet count now 99, do second “snapshot” and then compare both: somewhere must be a byte which was 100 in the beginning and now it is 99. Considering a fact these 8-bit games were often written in assembly language and such variables were global, it can be said for sure, which address in memory holding bullets count. If to search all references to the address in disassembled game code, it is not very hard to find a piece of code [decrementing](#) bullets count, write [NOP](#) instruction there, or couple of [NOP](#)-s, we’ll have a game with e.g 100 bullets forever. Games on these 8-bit computers was commonly loaded on the same address, also, there were no much different versions of each game (commonly just one version was popular for a long span of time), enthusiastic gamers knew, which byte must be written (using BASIC instruction [POKE](#)) to which address in order to hack it. This led to “cheat” lists containing of [POKE](#) instructions published in magazines related to 8-bit games. See also: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PEEK_and_POKE.

Likewise, it is easy to modify “high score” files, this may work not only with 8-bit games. Let’s notice your score count and back the file up somewhere. When “high score” count will be different, just compare two files, it can be even done with DOS-utility [FC](#)¹ (“high score” files are often in binary form). There will be a point where couple of bytes will be different and it will be easy to see which ones are holding score number. However, game developers are aware of such tricks and may protect against it.

Somewhat similar example here in the book is: [75](#).

54.1.1 Windows registry

It is also possible to compare Windows registry before and after a program installation. It is very popular method of finding, which registry elements a program will use. Probably, this is a reason why “windows registry cleaner” shareware is so popular.

¹MS-DOS utility for binary files comparing

Part IV

OS-specific

Chapter 55

Arguments passing methods (calling conventions)

55.1 cdecl

This is the most popular method for arguments passing to functions in C/C++ languages.

Caller pushing arguments to stack in reverse order: last argument, then penultimate element and finally –first argument. **Caller** also must return back value of the **stack pointer** (ESP) to its initial state after **callee** function exit.

Listing 55.1: cdecl

```
push arg3
push arg2
push arg1
call function
add esp, 12 ; returns ESP
```

55.2 stdcall

Almost the same thing as *cdecl*, with the exception the **callee** set ESP to initial state executing `RET x` instruction instead of `RET`, where $x = \text{arguments number} * \text{sizeof(int)}$ ¹. **Caller** will not adjust **stack pointer** by `add esp, x` instruction.

Listing 55.2: stdcall

```
push arg3
push arg2
push arg1
call function

function:
... do something ...
ret 12
```

The method is ubiquitous in win32 standard libraries, but not in win64 (see below about win64).

For example, we may take the function from 8.1 and change it slightly by adding `__stdcall` modifier:

```
int __stdcall f2 (int a, int b, int c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};
```

It will be compiled in almost the same way as 8.2, but you will see `RET 12` instead of `RET`. **SP** is not aligned in **caller**. As a consequence, number of function arguments can be easily deduced from `RETN n` instruction: just divide n by 4.

Listing 55.3: MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_b$ = 12 ; size = 4
_c$ = 16 ; size = 4
_f2@12 PROC
    push ebp
```

¹Size of *int* type variable is 4 in x86 systems and 8 in x64 systems

```

    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    imul   eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    add     eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    pop     ebp
    ret     12                ; 0000000cH
_f2@12  ENDP
; ...
    push   3
    push   2
    push   1
    call   _f2@12
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG81369
    call   _printf
    add     esp, 8

```

55.2.1 Variable arguments number functions

`printf()`-like functions are, probably, the only case of variable arguments functions in C/C++, but it is easy to illustrate an important difference between *cdecl* and *stdcall* with the help of it. Let's start with the idea the compiler knows argument count of each `printf()` function calling. However, called `printf()`, which is already compiled and located in `MSVCRT.DLL` (if to talk about Windows), has not any information about how much arguments were passed, however it can determine it from format string. Thus, if `printf()` would be *stdcall*-function and restored [stack pointer](#) to its initial state by counting number of arguments in format string, this could be dangerous situation, when one programmer's typo may provoke sudden program crash. Thus it is not suitable for such functions to use *stdcall*, *cdecl* is better.

55.3 fastcall

That's general naming for a method of passing some of arguments via registers and all others –via stack. It worked faster than *cdecl/stdcall* on older CPUs (because of smaller stack pressure). It will not help to gain performance on modern much more complex CPUs, however.

It is not a standardized way, so, various compilers may do it differently. Well known caveat: if you have two DLLs, one uses another, and they are built by different compilers with different *fastcall* calling conventions.

Both MSVC and GCC passing first and second argument via ECX and EDX and other arguments via stack.

[Stack pointer](#) must be restored to initial state by [callee](#) (like in *stdcall*).

Listing 55.4: fastcall

```

push arg3
mov edx, arg2
mov ecx, arg1
call function

function:
.. do something ..
ret 4

```

For example, we may take the function from [8.1](#) and change it slightly by adding `__fastcall` modifier:

```

int __fastcall f3 (int a, int b, int c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

```

Here is how it will be compiled:

Listing 55.5: Optimizing MSVC 2010 /Ob0

```

_c$ = 8                ; size = 4
@f3@12  PROC
; _a$ = ecx
; _b$ = edx
    mov     eax, ecx
    imul   eax, edx
    add     eax, DWORD PTR _c$[esp-4]
    ret     4

```

```

@f3@12 ENDP

; ...

    mov     edx, 2
    push   3
    lea   ecx, DWORD PTR [edx-1]
    call  @f3@12
    push  eax
    push  OFFSET $SG81390
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 8

```

We see that a [callee](#) returns *SP* by `RETN` instruction with operand. Which means, number of arguments can be deduced easily here as well.

55.3.1 GCC `regparm`

It is *fastcall* evolution² is some sense. With the `-mregparm` option it is possible to set, how many arguments will be passed via registers. 3 at maximum. Thus, `EAX`, `EDX` and `ECX` registers are to be used.

Of course, if number of arguments is less than 3, not all 3 registers are to be used.

[Caller](#) restores [stack pointer](#) to its initial state.

For the example, see (19.1.1).

55.3.2 Watcom/OpenWatcom

It is called “register calling convention” here. First 4 arguments are passed via `EAX`, `EDX`, `EBX` and `ECX` registers. All the rest—via stack. Functions have underscore added to the function name in order to distinguish them from those having other calling convention.

55.4 `thiscall`

In C++, it is a *this* pointer to object passing into function-method.

In MSVC, *this* is usually passed in the `ECX` register.

In GCC, *this* pointer is passed as a first function-method argument. Thus it will be seen: internally, all function-methods has extra argument.

For the example, see (37.1.1).

55.5 `x86-64`

55.5.1 Windows x64

The method of arguments passing in Win64 is somewhat resembling to `fastcall`. First 4 arguments are passed via `RCX`, `RDX`, `R8`, `R9`, other —via stack. [Caller](#) also must prepare a space for 32 bytes or 4 64-bit values, so then [callee](#) can save there first 4 arguments. Short functions may use argument values just from registers, but larger may save its values for further use.

[Caller](#) also must return [stack pointer](#) into initial state.

This calling convention is also used in Windows x86-64 system DLLs (instead of `stdcall` in win32).

Example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f1(int a, int b, int c, int d, int e, int f, int g)
{
    printf ("%d %d %d %d %d %d %d\n", a, b, c, d, e, f, g);
};

int main()
{
    f1(1,2,3,4,5,6,7);
};

```

²<http://www.ohse.de/uwe/articles/gcc-attributes.html#func-regparm>

Listing 55.6: MSVC 2012 /Ob

```

$SG2937 DB      '%d %d %d %d %d %d %d', 0aH, 00H

main PROC
sub          rsp, 72                      ; 00000048H

mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+48], 7
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+40], 6
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+32], 5
mov         r9d, 4
mov         r8d, 3
mov         edx, 2
mov         ecx, 1
call        f1

xor         eax, eax
add         rsp, 72                      ; 00000048H
ret         0

main ENDP

a$ = 80
b$ = 88
c$ = 96
d$ = 104
e$ = 112
f$ = 120
g$ = 128
f1 PROC
$LN3:
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+32], r9d
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+24], r8d
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+16], edx
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+8], ecx
sub         rsp, 72                      ; 00000048H

mov         eax, DWORD PTR g$[rsp]
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+56], eax
mov         eax, DWORD PTR f$[rsp]
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+48], eax
mov         eax, DWORD PTR e$[rsp]
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+40], eax
mov         eax, DWORD PTR d$[rsp]
mov         DWORD PTR [rsp+32], eax
mov         r9d, DWORD PTR c$[rsp]
mov         r8d, DWORD PTR b$[rsp]
mov         edx, DWORD PTR a$[rsp]
lea         rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2937
call        printf

add         rsp, 72                      ; 00000048H
ret         0

f1 ENDP

```

Here we clearly see how 7 arguments are passed: 4 via registers and the rest 3 via stack. The code of f1() function's prologue saves the arguments in “scratch space”—a space in the stack intended exactly for the purpose. It is done because compiler may not be sure if it will be enough to use other registers without these 4, which will otherwise be occupied by arguments until function execution end. The “scratch space” allocation in the stack is the caller's duty.

Listing 55.7: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob

```

$SG2777 DB      '%d %d %d %d %d %d %d', 0aH, 00H

a$ = 80
b$ = 88
c$ = 96
d$ = 104
e$ = 112
f$ = 120
g$ = 128
f1 PROC

```

```

$LN3:
    sub     rsp, 72                ; 00000048H

    mov     eax, DWORD PTR g$[rsp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+56], eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR f$[rsp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+48], eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR e$[rsp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+40], eax
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+32], r9d
    mov     r9d, r8d
    mov     r8d, edx
    mov     edx, ecx
    lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2777
    call    printf

    add     rsp, 72                ; 00000048H
    ret     0
f1:
    ENDP

main:
    PROC
    sub     rsp, 72                ; 00000048H

    mov     edx, 2
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+48], 7
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+40], 6
    lea     r9d, QWORD PTR [rdx+2]
    lea     r8d, QWORD PTR [rdx+1]
    lea     ecx, QWORD PTR [rdx-1]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+32], 5
    call    f1

    xor     eax, eax
    add     rsp, 72                ; 00000048H
    ret     0
main:
    ENDP

```

If to compile the example with optimization switch, it is almost the same, but “scratch space” is not used, because no need to.

Also take a look on how MSVC 2012 optimizes primitive value loads into registers by using LEA (A.6.2). I’m not sure if it worth so, but maybe.

Another example of such thing is: [65.1](#).

this passing (C/C++)

this pointer is passed in RCX, first method argument in RDX, etc. See also for an example: [37.1.1](#).

55.5.2 Linux x64

The way arguments passed in Linux for x86-64 is almost the same as in Windows, but 6 registers are used instead of 4 (RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8, R9) and there are no “scratch space”, although *callee* may save register values in the stack, if it needs/wants to.

Listing 55.8: Optimizing GCC 4.7.3

```

.LC0:
    .string "%d %d %d %d %d %d %d\n"
f1:
    sub     rsp, 40
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [rsp+48]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+8], r9d
    mov     r9d, ecx
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp], r8d
    mov     ecx, esi
    mov     r8d, edx
    mov     esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    mov     edx, edi
    mov     edi, 1
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+16], eax

```

```

    xor     eax, eax
    call   __printf_chk
    add    rsp, 40
    ret

main:
    sub    rsp, 24
    mov    r9d, 6
    mov    r8d, 5
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp], 7
    mov    ecx, 4
    mov    edx, 3
    mov    esi, 2
    mov    edi, 1
    call   f1
    add    rsp, 24
    ret

```

N.B.: here values are written into 32-bit parts of registers (e.g., EAX) but not to the whole 64-bit register (RAX). This is because each write to low 32-bit part of register automatically clears high 32 bits. Supposedly, it was done for x86-64 code porting simplification.

55.6 Returning values of *float* and *double* type

In all conventions except of Win64, values of type *float* or *double* are returning via the FPU register ST(0).

In Win64, values of *float* and *double* types are returned in the low 32 or 64 bits of XMM0 register.

55.7 Modifying arguments

Sometimes, C/C++ programmers (not limited to these [PL](#), though), may ask, what will happen if to modify arguments? The answer is simple: arguments are stored in the stack, that is where modification will occur. Calling functions are not use them after [callee](#) exit (I have not seen any opposite case in my practice).

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f(int a, int b)
{
    a=a+b;
    printf ("%d\n", a);
};

```

Listing 55.9: MSVC 2012

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_b$ = 12 ; size = 4
_f PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    add     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR _a$[ebp], eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    push    OFFSET $SG2938 ; '%d', 0aH
    call   _printf
    add     esp, 8
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_f ENDP

```

So yes, one may modify arguments easily. Of course, if it is not *references* in C++ ([37.3](#)), and if you not modify data a pointer pointing to (then the effect will be propagated outside of current function).

Theoretically, after [callee](#) return, [caller](#) function could get modified argument and use it somehow. Maybe if it will be written in assembly language. But C/C++ languages doesn't offer any way to access them.

55.8 Taking a pointer to function argument

Even more than that, it's possible to take a pointer to the function argument and pass it to another function:

```
#include <stdio.h>

// located in some other file
void modify_a (int *a);

void f (int a)
{
    modify_a (&a);
    printf ("%d\n", a);
};
```

It's hard to understand how it works until we will see the code:

Listing 55.10: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
$SG2796 DB    '%d', 0aH, 00H

_a$ = 8
_f      PROC
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4] ; just get the address of value in local stack
    push  eax                          ; and pass it to modify_a()
    call  _modify_a
    mov   ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp]    ; reload it from the local stack
    push  ecx                          ; and pass it to printf()
    push  OFFSET $SG2796 ; '%d'
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 12
    ret   0
_f      ENDP
```

The address of the place in stack where *a* was passed is just passed to another function. It will modify it and then `printf()` will print modified value.

Observant reader might ask, what about calling conventions where function arguments are passed in registers?

That's a situation when *Shadow Space* is used. So the input value is copied from register to the *Shadow Space* in the local stack, and then its address is passed into another function:

Listing 55.11: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
$SG2994 DB    '%d', 0aH, 00H

a$ = 48
f      PROC
    mov   DWORD PTR [rsp+8], ecx    ; save input value in Shadow Space
    sub   rsp, 40
    lea  rcx, QWORD PTR a$[rsp]    ; get address of value and pass it to modify_a()
    call modify_a
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR a$[rsp]    ; reload value from Shadow Space and pass it to printf()
    ↪ ( )
    lea  rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2994 ; '%d'
    call printf
    add  rsp, 40
    ret  0
f      ENDP
```

GCC is also store input value in the local stack:

Listing 55.12: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```
.LC0:
.string "%d\n"
f:
    sub   rsp, 24
    mov  DWORD PTR [rsp+12], edi    ; store input value to the local stack
    lea  rdi, [rsp+12]             ; take an address of the value and pass it to modify_a()
    ↪ ( )
    call modify_a
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [rsp+12]    ; reload value from the local stack and pass it to ↪
    ↪ printf()
    mov  esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0     ; '%d'
    mov  edi, 1
    xor  eax, eax
    call __printf_chk
```

```
add    rsp, 24
ret
```

GCC for ARM64 doing the same, but this space is called *Register Save Area* here:

Listing 55.13: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```
f:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
    add    x29, sp, 0           ; setup FP
    add    x1, x29, 32         ; calculate address of variable in Register Save Area
    str    w0, [x1,-4]!        ; store input value there
    mov    x0, x1              ; pass address of variable to the modify_a()
    bl     modify_a
    ldr    w1, [x29,28]        ; load value from the variable and pass it to printf()
    adrp   x0, .LC0 ; '%d'
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
    bl     printf              ; call printf()
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
    ret
.LC0:
    .string "%d\n"
```


Chapter 56

Thread Local Storage

It is a data area, specific to each thread. Every thread can store there what it needs. One famous example is C standard global variable *errno*. Multiple threads may simultaneously call a functions which returns error code in the *errno*, so global variable will not work correctly here, for multi-thread programs, *errno* must be stored in the [TLS](#).

In the C++11 standard, a new *thread_local* modifier was added, showing that each thread will have its own version of the variable, it can be initialized, and it is located in the [TLS](#)¹:

Listing 56.1: C++11

```
#include <iostream>
#include <thread>

thread_local int tmp=3;

int main()
{
    std::cout << tmp << std::endl;
};
```

Compiled in MinGW GCC 4.8.1, but not in MSVC 2012.

If to say about PE-files, in the resulting executable file, the *tmp* variable will be stored in the section devoted to [TLS](#).

¹ C11 also has thread support, optional though

Chapter 57

System calls (syscall-s)

As we know, all running processes inside OS are divided into two categories: those having all access to the hardware (“kernel space”) and those have not (“user space”).

There are OS kernel and usually drivers in the first category.

All applications are usually in the second category.

This separation is crucial for OS safety: it is very important not to give to any process possibility to screw up something in other processes or even in OS kernel. On the other hand, failing driver or error inside OS kernel usually lead to kernel panic or BSOD¹.

x86-processor protection allows to separate everything into 4 levels of protection (rings), but both in Linux and in Windows only two are used: ring0 (“kernel space”) and ring3 (“user space”).

System calls (syscall-s) is a point where these two areas are connected. It can be said, this is the most principal API provided to application software.

As in Windows NT, syscalls table reside in SSDT².

Usage of syscalls is very popular among shellcode and computer viruses authors, because it is hard to determine the addresses of needed functions in the system libraries, while it is easier to use syscalls, however, much more code should be written due to lower level of abstraction of the API. It is also worth noting that the syscall numbers may be different in various OS versions.

57.1 Linux

In Linux, syscall is usually called via `int 0x80`. Call number is passed in the EAX register, and any other parameters – in the other registers.

Listing 57.1: Simple example of two syscalls usage

```
section .text
global _start

_start:
    mov     edx,len ; buf len
    mov     ecx,msg ; buf
    mov     ebx,1  ; file descriptor. stdout is 1
    mov     eax,4  ; syscall number. sys_write is 4
    int     0x80

    mov     eax,1  ; syscall number. sys_exit is 4
    int     0x80

section .data
msg     db 'Hello, world!',0xa
len     equ $ - msg
```

Compilation:

```
nasm -f elf32 1.s
ld 1.o
```

The full list of syscalls in Linux: <http://syscalls.kernelgrok.com/>.

For system calls intercepting and tracing in Linux, `strace(62)` can be used.

¹Black Screen of Death

²System Service Dispatch Table

57.2 Windows

They are called by `int 0x2e` or using special x86 instruction SYSENTER.

The full list of syscalls in Windows: <http://j00ru.vexillum.org/ntapi/>.

Further reading:

“Windows Syscall Shellcode” by Piotr Bania:

<http://www.symantec.com/connect/articles/windows-syscall-shellcode>.

Chapter 58

Linux

58.1 Position-independent code

While analyzing Linux shared (.so) libraries, one may frequently spot such code pattern:

Listing 58.1: libc-2.17.so x86

```
.text:0012D5E3 __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx proc near          ; CODE XREF: sub_17350+3
.text:0012D5E3                                     ; sub_173CC+4 ...
.text:0012D5E3             mov     ebx, [esp+0]
.text:0012D5E6             retn
.text:0012D5E6 __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx endp

...

.text:000576C0 sub_576C0      proc near          ; CODE XREF: tmpfile+73

...

.text:000576C0             push   ebp
.text:000576C1             mov    ecx, large gs:0
.text:000576C8             push   edi
.text:000576C9             push   esi
.text:000576CA             push   ebx
.text:000576CB             call   __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx
.text:000576D0             add    ebx, 157930h
.text:000576D6             sub    esp, 9Ch

...

.text:000579F0             lea   eax, (a__gen_tempname - 1AF000h)[ebx] ; "__gen_tempname"
.text:000579F6             mov   [esp+0ACh+var_A0], eax
.text:000579FA             lea   eax, (a__SysdepsPosix - 1AF000h)[ebx] ; "../sysdeps/↵
↵ posix/tempname.c"
.text:00057A00             mov   [esp+0ACh+var_A8], eax
.text:00057A04             lea   eax, (aInvalidKindIn_ - 1AF000h)[ebx] ; "! \"invalid ↵
↵ KIND in __gen_tempname\""
.text:00057A0A             mov   [esp+0ACh+var_A4], 14Ah
.text:00057A12             mov   [esp+0ACh+var_AC], eax
.text:00057A15             call  __assert_fail
```

All pointers to strings are corrected by a constant and by value in the EBX, which calculated at the beginning of each function. This is so-called **PIC**, it is intended to execute placed at any random point of memory, that is why it cannot contain any absolute memory addresses.

PIC was crucial in early computer systems and crucial now in embedded systems without virtual memory support (where processes are all placed in single continuous memory block). It is also still used in *NIX systems for shared libraries since shared libraries are shared across many processes while loaded in memory only once. But all these processes may map the same shared library on different addresses, so that is why shared library should be working correctly without fixing on any absolute address.

Let's do a simple experiment:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int global_variable=123;
```

```
int f1(int var)
{
    int rt=global_variable+var;
    printf ("returning %d\n", rt);
    return rt;
};
```

Let's compile it in GCC 4.7.3 and see resulting .so file in IDA:

```
gcc -fPIC -shared -O3 -o 1.so 1.c
```

Listing 58.2: GCC 4.7.3

```
.text:00000440      public __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx
.text:00000440 __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx proc near          ; CODE XREF: _init_proc+4
.text:00000440                                         ; deregister_tm_clones+4 ...
.text:00000440      mov     ebx, [esp+0]
.text:00000443      retn
.text:00000443 __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx endp

.text:00000570      public f1
.text:00000570 f1      proc near
.text:00000570
.text:00000570 var_1C      = dword ptr -1Ch
.text:00000570 var_18      = dword ptr -18h
.text:00000570 var_14      = dword ptr -14h
.text:00000570 var_8       = dword ptr -8
.text:00000570 var_4       = dword ptr -4
.text:00000570 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:00000570
.text:00000570      sub     esp, 1Ch
.text:00000573      mov     [esp+1Ch+var_8], ebx
.text:00000577      call   __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx
.text:0000057C      add     ebx, 1A84h
.text:00000582      mov     [esp+1Ch+var_4], esi
.text:00000586      mov     eax, ds:(global_variable_ptr - 2000h)[ebx]
.text:0000058C      mov     esi, [eax]
.text:0000058E      lea    eax, (aReturningD - 2000h)[ebx] ; "returning %d\n"
.text:00000594      add     esi, [esp+1Ch+arg_0]
.text:00000598      mov     [esp+1Ch+var_18], eax
.text:0000059C      mov     [esp+1Ch+var_1C], 1
.text:000005A3      mov     [esp+1Ch+var_14], esi
.text:000005A7      call   ___printf_chk
.text:000005AC      mov     eax, esi
.text:000005AE      mov     ebx, [esp+1Ch+var_8]
.text:000005B2      mov     esi, [esp+1Ch+var_4]
.text:000005B6      add     esp, 1Ch
.text:000005B9      retn
.text:000005B9 f1      endp
```

That's it: pointers to «*returning %d\n*» string and *global_variable* are to be corrected at each function execution. The `__x86_get_pc_thunk_bx()` function return address of the point after call to itself (0x57C here) in the EBX. That's the simple way to get value of program counter (EIP) at some point. The 0x1A84 constant is related to the difference between this function begin and so-called *Global Offset Table Procedure Linkage Table* (GOT PLT), the section right after *Global Offset Table* (GOT), where pointer to *global_variable* is. IDA shows these offset processed, so to understand them easily, but in fact the code is:

```
.text:00000577      call   __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx
.text:0000057C      add     ebx, 1A84h
.text:00000582      mov     [esp+1Ch+var_4], esi
.text:00000586      mov     eax, [ebx-0Ch]
.text:0000058C      mov     esi, [eax]
.text:0000058E      lea    eax, [ebx-1A30h]
```

So, EBX pointing to the GOT PLT section and to calculate pointer to *global_variable* which stored in the GOT, 0xC must be subtracted. To calculate pointer to the «*returning %d\n*» string, 0x1A30 must be subtracted.

By the way, that is the reason why AMD64 instruction set supports RIP¹-relative addressing, just to simplify PIC-code.

Let's compile the same C code in the same GCC version, but for x64.

¹program counter in AMD64

IDA would simplify output code but suppressing RIP-relative addressing details, so I will run *objdump* instead to see the details:

```
0000000000000720 <f1>:
720:  48 8b 05 b9 08 20 00    mov     rax,QWORD PTR [rip+0x2008b9]      # 200fe0 <_DYNAMIC+0x200fe0>
    ↪ x1d0>
727:  53                    push   rbx
728:  89 fb                mov     ebx,edi
72a:  48 8d 35 20 00 00 00    lea    rsi,[rip+0x20]                    # 751 <_fini+0x9>
731:  bf 01 00 00 00        mov     edi,0x1
736:  03 18                add    ebx,DWORD PTR [rax]
738:  31 c0                xor    eax,eax
73a:  89 da                mov     edx,ebx
73c:  e8 df fe ff ff        call   620 <__printf_chk@plt>
741:  89 d8                mov     eax,ebx
743:  5b                    pop    rbx
744:  c3                    ret
```

0x2008b9 is the difference between address of instruction at 0x720 and *global_variable* and 0x20 is the difference between the address of the instruction at 0x72A and the «*returning %d\n*» string.

As you might see, the need to recalculate addresses frequently makes execution slower (it is better in x64, though). So it is probably better to link statically if you aware of performance [Fog13a].

58.1.1 Windows

The PIC mechanism is not used in Windows DLLs. If Windows loader needs to load DLL on another base address, it “patches” DLL in memory (at the *FIXUP* places) in order to correct all addresses. This means, several Windows processes cannot share once loaded DLL on different addresses in different process’ memory blocks —since each loaded into memory DLL instance *fixed* to be work only at these addresses..

58.2 LD_PRELOAD hack in Linux

This allows us to load our own dynamic libraries before others, even before system ones, like *libc.so.6*.

What, in turn, allows to “substitute” our written functions before original ones in system libraries. For example, it is easy to intercept all calls to the *time()*, *read()*, *write()*, etc.

Let’s see, if we are able to fool *uptime* utility. As we know, it tells how long the computer is working. With the help of *strace(62)*, it is possible to see that this information the utility takes from the */proc/uptime* file:

```
$ strace uptime
...
open("/proc/uptime", O_RDONLY) = 3
lseek(3, 0, SEEK_SET) = 0
read(3, "416166.86 414629.38\n", 2047) = 20
...
```

It is not a real file on disk, it is a virtual one, its contents is generated on fly in Linux kernel. There are just two numbers:

```
$ cat /proc/uptime
416690.91 415152.03
```

What we can learn from Wikipedia ²:

The first number is the total number of seconds the system has been up. The second number is how much of that time the machine has spent idle, in seconds.

Let’s try to write our own dynamic library with the *open()*, *read()*, *close()* functions working as we need.

At first, our *open()* will compare name of file to be opened with what we need and if it is so, it will write down the descriptor of the file opened. At second, *read()*, if it will be called for this file descriptor, will substitute output, and in other cases, will call original *read()* from *libc.so.6*. And also *close()*, will note, if the file we are currently follow is to be closed.

We will use the *dlopen()* and *dlsym()* functions to determine original addresses of functions in *libc.so.6*.

We need them because we must pass control to “real” functions.

²<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Uptime>

On the other hand, if we could intercept e.g. `strcmp()`, and follow each string comparisons in program, then `strcmp()` could be implemented easily on one's own, while not using original function ³.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdbool.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include <dlfcn.h>
#include <string.h>

void *libc_handle = NULL;
int (*open_ptr)(const char *, int) = NULL;
int (*close_ptr)(int) = NULL;
ssize_t (*read_ptr)(int, void*, size_t) = NULL;

bool initied = false;

_Noreturn void die (const char * fmt, ...)
{
    va_list va;
    va_start (va, fmt);

    vprintf (fmt, va);
    exit(0);
};

static void find_original_functions ()
{
    if (initied)
        return;

    libc_handle = dlopen ("libc.so.6", RTLD_LAZY);
    if (libc_handle==NULL)
        die ("can't open libc.so.6\n");

    open_ptr = dlsym (libc_handle, "open");
    if (open_ptr==NULL)
        die ("can't find open()\n");

    close_ptr = dlsym (libc_handle, "close");
    if (close_ptr==NULL)
        die ("can't find close()\n");

    read_ptr = dlsym (libc_handle, "read");
    if (read_ptr==NULL)
        die ("can't find read()\n");

    initied = true;
}

static int opened_fd=0;

int open(const char *pathname, int flags)
{
    find_original_functions();

    int fd=(*open_ptr)(pathname, flags);
    if (strcmp(pathname, "/proc/uptime")==0)
        opened_fd=fd; // that's our file! record its file descriptor
    else
        opened_fd=0;
    return fd;
};

int close(int fd)
{
    find_original_functions();
```

³For example, here is how simple `strcmp()` interception is works in article ⁴ written by Yong Huang

```

    if (fd==opened_fd)
        opened_fd=0; // the file is not opened anymore
    return (*close_ptr)(fd);
};

ssize_t read(int fd, void *buf, size_t count)
{
    find_original_functions();

    if (opened_fd!=0 && fd==opened_fd)
    {
        // that's our file!
        return sprintf (buf, count, "%d %d", 0x7fffffff, 0x7fffffff)+1;
    };
    // not our file, go to real read() function
    return (*read_ptr)(fd, buf, count);
};

```

Let's compile it as common dynamic library:

```
gcc -fPIC -shared -Wall -o fool_uptime.so fool_uptime.c -ldl
```

Let's run *uptime* while loading our library before others:

```
LD_PRELOAD=`pwd`/fool_uptime.so uptime
```

And we see:

```
01:23:02 up 24855 days,  3:14,  3 users,  load average: 0.00, 0.01, 0.05
```

If the *LD_PRELOAD* environment variable will always points to filename and path of our library, it will be loaded for all starting programs.

More examples:

- Very simple interception of the `strcmp()` (Yong Huang) http://yurichev.com/mirrors/LD_PRELOAD/Yong%20Huang%20LD_PRELOAD.txt
- Kevin Pulo – Fun with LD_PRELOAD. A lot of examples and ideas. http://yurichev.com/mirrors/LD_PRELOAD/lca2009.pdf
- File functions interception for compression/decompression files on fly (zlibc). <ftp://metalab.unc.edu/pub/Linux/libs/compression>

Chapter 59

Windows NT

59.1 CRT (win32)

Does program execution starts right at the `main()` function? No, it is not. If we would open any executable file in [IDA](#) or [HIEW](#), we will see [OEP](#)¹ pointing to another code. This is a code doing some maintenance and preparations before passing control flow to our code. It is called startup-code or CRT-code (C RunTime).

`main()` function takes an array of arguments passed in the command line, and also environment variables. But in fact, a generic string is passed to the program, CRT-code will find spaces in it and cut by parts. CRT-code is also prepares environment variables array `envp`. As of [GUI](#)² win32 applications, `WinMain` is used instead of `main()`, having their own arguments:

```
int CALLBACK WinMain(
    _In_ HINSTANCE hInstance,
    _In_ HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
    _In_ LPSTR lpCmdLine,
    _In_ int nCmdShow
);
```

CRT-code prepares them as well.

Also, the number returned by `main()` function is an exit code. It may be passed in CRT to the `ExitProcess()` function, taking exit code as argument.

Usually, each compiler has its own CRT-code.

Here is a typical CRT-code for MSVC 2008.

```
1  ___tmainCRTStartup proc near
2
3  var_24 = dword ptr -24h
4  var_20 = dword ptr -20h
5  var_1C = dword ptr -1Ch
6  ms_exc = CPPEH_RECORD ptr -18h
7
8      push    14h
9      push    offset stru_4092D0
10     call    __SEH_prolog4
11     mov     eax, 5A4Dh
12     cmp     ds:400000h, ax
13     jnz    short loc_401096
14     mov     eax, ds:40003Ch
15     cmp     dword ptr [eax+400000h], 4550h
16     jnz    short loc_401096
17     mov     ecx, 10Bh
18     cmp     [eax+400018h], cx
19     jnz    short loc_401096
20     cmp     dword ptr [eax+400074h], 0Eh
21     jbe    short loc_401096
22     xor     ecx, ecx
23     cmp     [eax+4000E8h], ecx
24     setnz  cl
```

¹Original Entry Point

²Graphical user interface

```

25     mov     [ebp+var_1C], ecx
26     jmp     short loc_40109A
27
28
29 loc_401096: ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+18
30           ; ___tmainCRTStartup+29 ...
31     and     [ebp+var_1C], 0
32
33 loc_40109A: ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+50
34     push   1
35     call   __heap_init
36     pop    ecx
37     test   eax, eax
38     jnz   short loc_4010AE
39     push   1Ch
40     call   _fast_error_exit
41     pop    ecx
42
43 loc_4010AE: ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+60
44     call   __mtinit
45     test   eax, eax
46     jnz   short loc_4010BF
47     push   10h
48     call   _fast_error_exit
49     pop    ecx
50
51 loc_4010BF: ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+71
52     call   sub_401F2B
53     and     [ebp+ms_exc.disabled], 0
54     call   __ioinit
55     test   eax, eax
56     jge   short loc_4010D9
57     push   1Bh
58     call   __amsg_exit
59     pop    ecx
60
61 loc_4010D9: ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+8B
62     call   ds:GetCommandLineA
63     mov    dword_40B7F8, eax
64     call   ___crtGetEnvironmentStringsA
65     mov    dword_40AC60, eax
66     call   __setargv
67     test   eax, eax
68     jge   short loc_4010FF
69     push   8
70     call   __amsg_exit
71     pop    ecx
72
73 loc_4010FF: ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+B1
74     call   __setenvp
75     test   eax, eax
76     jge   short loc_401110
77     push   9
78     call   __amsg_exit
79     pop    ecx
80
81 loc_401110: ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+C2
82     push   1
83     call   __cinit
84     pop    ecx
85     test   eax, eax
86     jz    short loc_401123
87     push   eax
88     call   __amsg_exit
89     pop    ecx
90
91 loc_401123: ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+D6
92     mov    eax, envp
93     mov    dword_40AC80, eax
94     push   eax           ; envp

```

```

95     push    argv          ; argv
96     push    argc         ; argc
97     call   __main
98     add    esp, 0Ch
99     mov    [ebp+var_20], eax
100    cmp    [ebp+var_1C], 0
101    jnz    short $LN28
102    push   eax            ; uExitCode
103    call   $LN32
104
105 $LN28:      ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+105
106     call   __cexit
107     jmp    short loc_401186
108
109
110 $LN27:      ; DATA XREF: .rdata:stru_4092D0
111     mov    eax, [ebp+ms_exc.exc_ptr] ; Exception filter 0 for function 401044
112     mov    ecx, [eax]
113     mov    ecx, [ecx]
114     mov    [ebp+var_24], ecx
115     push   eax
116     push   ecx
117     call  __XcptFilter
118     pop    ecx
119     pop    ecx
120
121 $LN24:
122     retn
123
124
125 $LN14:      ; DATA XREF: .rdata:stru_4092D0
126     mov    esp, [ebp+ms_exc.old_esp] ; Exception handler 0 for function 401044
127     mov    eax, [ebp+var_24]
128     mov    [ebp+var_20], eax
129     cmp    [ebp+var_1C], 0
130     jnz    short $LN29
131     push   eax            ; int
132     call   __exit
133
134
135 $LN29:      ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+135
136     call   __c_exit
137
138 loc_401186: ; CODE XREF: ___tmainCRTStartup+112
139     mov    [ebp+ms_exc.disabled], 0FFFFFFFh
140     mov    eax, [ebp+var_20]
141     call  __SEH_epilog4
142     retn

```

Here we may see calls to `GetCommandLineA()` (line 62), then to `setargv()` (line 66) and `setenvp()` (line 74), which are, apparently, fills global variables `argc`, `argv`, `envp`.

Finally, `main()` is called with these arguments (line 97).

There are also calls to the functions having self-describing names like `heap_init()` (line 35), `ioinit()` (line 54).

[Heap](#) is indeed initialized in [CRT](#). If you will try to use `malloc()` in the program without CRT, the program exiting abnormally with the error:

```

runtime error R6030
- CRT not initialized

```

Global object initializations in C++ is also occurred in the [CRT](#) before `main()` execution: [37.4.1](#).

A value `main()` returns is passed to `cexit()`, or to `$LN32`, which in turn calling `doexit()`.

Is it possible to get rid of [CRT](#)? Yes, if you know what you do.

[MSVC](#) linker has `/ENTRY` option for setting entry point.

```

#include <windows.h>

int main()
{
    MessageBox (NULL, "hello, world", "caption", MB_OK);
};

```

Let's compile it in MSVC 2008.

```
cl no_crt.c user32.lib /link /entry:main
```

We will get a runnable .exe with size 2560 bytes, there are PE-header inside, instructions calling MessageBox, two strings in the data segment, MessageBox function imported from user32.dll and nothing else.

This works, but you will not be able to write WinMain with its 4 arguments instead of main(). To be correct, you will be able to write so, but arguments will not be prepared at the moment of execution.

By the way, it is possible to make .exe even shorter by doing PE³-section aligning less than default 4096 bytes.

```
cl no_crt.c user32.lib /link /entry:main /align:16
```

Linker will say:

```
LINK : warning LNK4108: /ALIGN specified without /DRIVER; image may not run
```

We getting .exe of 720 bytes size. It running in Windows 7 x86, but not in x64 (the error message will be showed when trying to execute). By applying even more efforts, it is possible to make executable even shorter, but as you can see, compatibility problems may arise quickly.

59.2 Win32 PE

PE is a executable file format used in Windows.

The difference between .exe, .dll and .sys is that .exe and .sys usually does not have exports, only imports.

A DLL⁴, just as any other PE-file, has entry point (OEP) (the function DLLMain() is located at it) but usually this function does nothing.

.sys is usually device driver.

As of drivers, Windows require the checksum to be present in PE-file and must be correct⁵.

Starting at Windows Vista, driver files must also be signed by digital signature. It will fail to load without it.

Any PE-file begins with tiny DOS-program, printing a message like "This program cannot be run in DOS mode." – if to run this program in DOS or Windows 3.1 (OS which are not aware about PE-format), this message will be printed.

59.2.1 Terminology

- Module – is a separate file, .exe or .dll.
- Process – a program loaded into memory and running. Commonly consisting of one .exe-file and bunch of .dll-files.
- Process memory – the memory a process works with. Each process has its own. There can usually be loaded modules, memory of the stack, heap(s), etc.
- VA⁶ – is address which is used in program.
- Base address – is the address within a process memory at which a module will be loaded.
- RVA⁷ – is a VA-address minus base address. Many addresses in PE-file tables uses RVA-addresses.
- IAT⁸ – an array of addresses of imported symbols⁹. Sometimes, a IMAGE_DIRECTORY_ENTRY_IAT data directory points to the IAT. It is worth to note that IDA (as of 6.1) may allocate a pseudo-section named .idata for IAT, even if IAT is a part of another section!
- INT¹⁰ – an array of names of symbols to be imported¹¹.

³Portable Executable: 59.2

⁴Dynamic-link library

⁵For example, Hiew(64) can calculate it

⁶Virtual Address

⁷Relative Virtual Address

⁸Import Address Table

⁹[Pie02]

¹⁰Import Name Table

¹¹[Pie02]

59.2.2 Base address

The fact is that several module authors may prepare DLL-files for others and there is no possibility to reach agreement, which addresses will be assigned to whose modules.

So that is why if two necessary for process loading DLLs has the same base addresses, one of which will be loaded at this base address, and another –at the other spare space in process memory, and each virtual addresses in the second DLL will be corrected.

Often, [MSVC](#) linker generates an .exe-files with the base address 0x400000 ¹², and with the code section started at 0x401000. This mean [RVA](#) of code section start is 0x1000. DLLs are often generated by MSVC linker with a base address of 0x1000000 ¹³.

There is also another reason to load modules at various base addresses, rather at random ones.

It is [ASLR](#)^{14 15}.

The fact is that a shellcode trying to be executed on a compromised system must call a system functions.

In older OS (in [Windows NT](#) line: before Windows Vista), system DLL (like kernel32.dll, user32.dll) were always loaded at the known addresses, and also if to recall that its versions were rarely changed, an addresses of functions were fixed and shellcode can call it directly.

In order to avoid this, [ASLR](#) method loads your program and all modules it needs at random base addresses, each time different.

[ASLR](#) support is denoted in PE-file by setting the flag `IMAGE_DLL_CHARACTERISTICS_DYNAMIC_BASE` [[RA09](#)].

59.2.3 Subsystem

There is also *subsystem* field, usually it is:

- native (.sys-driver),
- console (console application) or
- [GUI](#) (non-console).

59.2.4 OS version

A PE-file also specify minimal Windows version needed in order to load it. The table of version numbers stored in PE-file and corresponding Windows codenames is here¹⁶.

For example, [MSVC](#) 2005 compiles .exe-files running on Windows NT4 (version 4.00), but [MSVC](#) 2008 is not (files generated has version 5.00, at least Windows 2000 is needed to run them).

[MSVC](#) 2012 generates .exe-files of version 6.00 by default, targeting at least Windows Vista. However, by changing compiler's options ¹⁷, it is possible to force it to compile for Windows XP.

59.2.5 Sections

Division by sections, as it seems, is present in all executable file formats.

It is done in order to separate code from data, and data –from constant data.

- There will be flag `IMAGE_SCN_CNT_CODE` or `IMAGE_SCN_MEM_EXECUTE` on code section–this is executable code.
- On data section–`IMAGE_SCN_CNT_INITIALIZED_DATA`, `IMAGE_SCN_MEM_READ` and `IMAGE_SCN_MEM_WRITE` flags.
- On an empty section with uninitialized data–`IMAGE_SCN_CNT_UNINITIALIZED_DATA`, `IMAGE_SCN_MEM_READ` and `IMAGE_SCN_MEM_WRITE`.
- On a constant data section, in other words, protected from writing, there are may be flags `IMAGE_SCN_CNT_INITIALIZED_DATA` and `IMAGE_SCN_MEM_READ` without `IMAGE_SCN_MEM_WRITE`. A process will crash if it would try to write to this section.

Each section in PE-file may have a name, however, it is not very important. Often (but not always) code section have the name `.text`, data section – `.data`, constant data section – `.rdata` (*readable data*). Other popular section names are:

- `.idata`–imports section. [IDA](#) may create pseudo-section named like this: [59.2.1](#).

¹²The origin of this address choice is described here: <http://blogs.msdn.com/b/oldnewthing/archive/2014/10/03/10562176.aspx>

¹³This can be changed by /BASE linker option

¹⁴Address Space Layout Randomization

¹⁵https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Address_space_layout_randomization

¹⁶https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Windows_NT#Releases

¹⁷<http://blogs.msdn.com/b/vcblog/archive/2012/10/08/10357555.aspx>

- `.edata`—exports section (rare)
- `.pdata`— section containing all information about exceptions in Windows NT for MIPS, IA64 and x64: [59.3.3](#)
- `.reloc`—relocs section
- `.bss`—uninitialized data (BSS)
- `.tls`—thread local storage (TLS)
- `.rsrc`—resources
- `.CRT`— may present in binary files compiled by ancient MSVC versions

PE-file packers/encryptors are often garble section names or replacing names to their own.

[MSVC](#) allows to declare data in arbitrarily named section ¹⁸.

Some compilers and linkers can add a section with debugging symbols and other debugging information (MinGW for instance). However it is not so in modern versions of [MSVC](#) (a separate [PDB](#)-files are used there for this purpose).

That is how PE-section is described in the file:

```
typedef struct _IMAGE_SECTION_HEADER {
    BYTE  Name[IMAGE_SIZEOF_SHORT_NAME];
    union {
        DWORD PhysicalAddress;
        DWORD VirtualSize;
    } Misc;
    DWORD VirtualAddress;
    DWORD SizeOfRawData;
    DWORD PointerToRawData;
    DWORD PointerToRelocations;
    DWORD PointerToLinenumbers;
    WORD  NumberOfRelocations;
    WORD  NumberOfLinenumbers;
    DWORD Characteristics;
} IMAGE_SECTION_HEADER, *PIMAGE_SECTION_HEADER;
```

¹⁹

A word about terminology: *PointerToRawData* it called “Offset” and *VirtualAddress* is called “RVA” in Hiew.

59.2.6 Relocations (relocs)

[AKA](#) FIXUP-s (at least in Hiew).

This is also present in almost all executable file formats ²⁰.

Obviously, modules can be loaded on various base addresses, but how to deal with global variables for example? They must be accessed by an address. One solution is position-independent code ([58.1](#)). But it is not always suitable.

That is why relocations table is present. There are enumerated the addresses of points which needs to be corrected, in case of loading on another base address.

For example, there is a global variable at the address 0x410000 and this is how it is accessed:

A1 00 00 41 00	mov	eax, [000410000]
----------------	-----	------------------

Base address of module is 0x400000, [RVA](#) of global variable is 0x10000.

If the module is loading on the base address 0x500000, the factual address of the global variable must be 0x510000.

As we can see, address of variable is encoded in the instruction MOV, after the byte 0xA1.

That is why address of 4 bytes, after 0xA1, is written into relocs table.

If the module is loaded on different base address, OS-loader enumerates all addresses in table, finds each 32-bit word the address points on, subtracts real, original base address of it (we getting [RVA](#) here), and adds new base address to it.

If module is loading on original base address, nothing happens.

All global variables may be treated like that.

Relocs may have various types, however, in Windows, for x86 processors, the type is usually `IMAGE_REL_BASED_HIGHLOW`.

By the way, relocs are darkened in Hiew, for example: [fig.7.12](#).

OlllyDbg underlines memory places to which relocs will be applied, for example: [fig.13.11](#).

¹⁸<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/cc307397.aspx>

¹⁹[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms680341\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms680341(v=vs.85).aspx)

²⁰Even .exe-files in MS-DOS

59.2.7 Exports and imports

As we all know, any executable program must use OS services and other DLL-libraries somehow.

It can be said, functions from one module (usually DLL) must be connected somehow to a points of their calls in other module (.exe-file or another DLL).

Each DLL has “exports” for this, this is table of functions plus its addresses in a module.

Each .exe-file or DLL has “imports”, this is a table of functions it needs for execution including list of DLL filenames.

After loading main .exe-file, OS-loader, processes imports table: it loads additional DLL-files, finds function names among DLL exports and writes their addresses down in an IAT of main .exe-module.

As we can notice, during loading, loader must compare a lot of function names, but strings comparison is not a very fast procedure, so, there is a support of “ordinals” or “hints”, that is a function numbers stored in the table instead of their names.

That is how they can be located faster in loading DLL. Ordinals are always present in “export” table.

For example, program using MFC²¹ library usually loads mfc*.dll by ordinals, and in such programs there are no MFC function names in INT.

While loading such program in IDA, it will ask for a path to mfs*.dll files, in order to determine function names. If not to tell IDA path to this DLL, they will look like *mfc80_123* instead of function names.

Imports section

Often a separate section is allocated for imports table and everything related to it (with name like *.idata*), however, it is not a strict rule.

Imports is also confusing subject because of terminological mess. Let’s try to collect all information in one place.

²¹Microsoft Foundation Classes

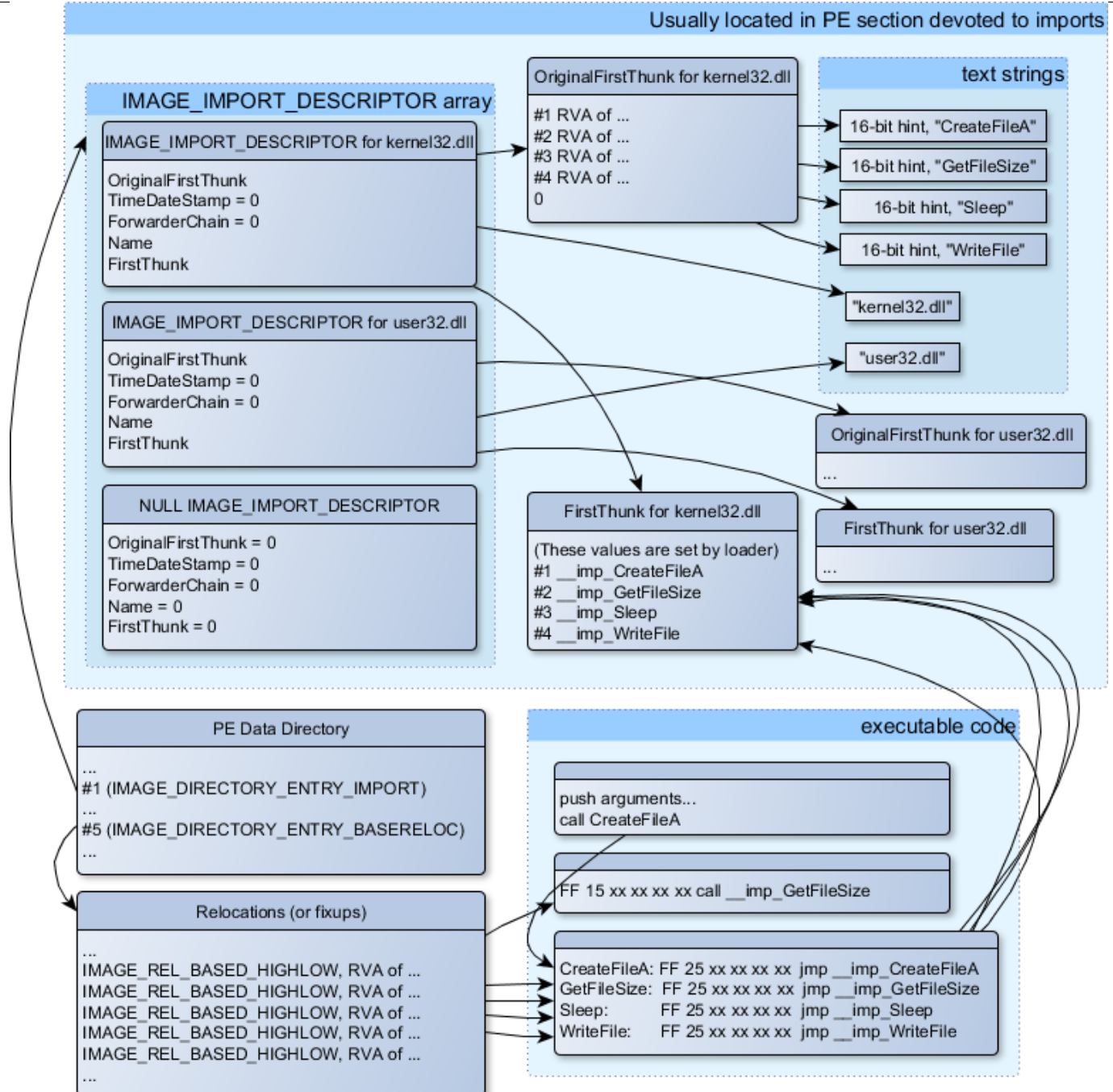


Figure 59.1: The scheme, uniting all PE-file structures related to imports

Main structure is the array of *IMAGE_IMPORT_DESCRIPTOR*. Each element for each DLL being imported.

Each element holds *RVA*-address of text string (DLL name) (*Name*).

OriginalFirstThunk is a *RVA*-address of *INT* table. This is array of *RVA*-addresses, each of which points to the text string with function name. Each string is prefixed by 16-bit integer (“hint”)—“ordinal” of function.

While loading, if it is possible to find function by ordinal, then strings comparison will not occur. Array is terminated by zero. There is also a pointer to the *IAT* table with a name *FirstThunk*, it is just *RVA*-address of the place where loader will write addresses of functions resolved.

The points where loader writes addresses, *IDA* marks like: *__imp_CreateFileA*, etc.

There are at least two ways to use addresses written by loader.

- The code will have instructions like *call __imp_CreateFileA*, and since the field with the address of function imported is a global variable in some sense, the address of *call* instruction (plus 1 or 2) will be added to relocs table, for the case if module will be loaded on different base address.

But, obviously, this may enlarge relocs table significantly. Because there are might be a lot of calls to imported functions in the module. Furthermore, large relocs table slowing down the process of module loading.

- For each imported function, there is only one jump allocated, using *JMP* instruction plus *reloc* to this instruction. Such points are also called “thunks”. All calls to the imported functions are just *CALL* instructions to the corresponding

“thunk”. In this case, additional relocs are not necessary because these CALL-s has relative addresses, they are not to be corrected.

Both of these methods can be combined. Apparently, linker creates individual “thunk” if there are too many calls to the functions, but it’s not to be created by default.

By the way, an array of function addresses to which FirstThunk is pointing is not necessary to be located in IAT section. For example, I once wrote the PE_add_import²² utility for adding import to an existing .exe-file. Some time earlier, in the previous versions of the utility, at the place of the function you want to substitute by call to another DLL, the following code my utility written:

```
MOV EAX, [yourdll.dll!function]
JMP EAX
```

FirstThunk points to the first instruction. In other words, while loading yourdll.dll, loader writes address of the *function* right in the code.

It also worth noting a code section is usually write-protected, so my utility adds *IMAGE_SCN_MEM_WRITE* flag for code section. Otherwise, the program will crash while loading with the error code 5 (access denied).

One might ask: what if I supply a program with the DLL files set which are not supposed to change, is it possible to speed up loading process?

Yes, it is possible to write addresses of the functions to be imported into FirstThunk arrays in advance. The *Timestamp* field is present in the *IMAGE_IMPORT_DESCRIPTOR* structure. If a value is present there, then loader compare this value with date-time of the DLL file. If the values are equal to each other, then the loader is not do anything, and loading process will be faster. This is what called “old-style binding”²³. There is the BIND.EXE utility in Windows SDK for this. For speeding up of loading of your program, Matt Pietrek in [Pie02], offers to do binding shortly after your program installation on the computer of the end user.

PE-files packers/encryptors may also compress/encrypt imports table. In this case, Windows loader, of course, will not load all necessary DLLs. Therefore, packer/encryptor do this on its own, with the help of *LoadLibrary()* and *GetProcAddress()* functions.

In the standard DLLs from Windows installation, IAT often is located right in the beginning of PE-file. Supposedly, it is done for optimization. While loading, .exe file is not loaded into memory as a whole (recall huge install programs which are started suspiciously fast), it is “mapped”, and loaded into memory by parts as they are accessed. Probably, Microsoft developers decided it will be faster.

59.2.8 Resources

Resources in a PE-file is just a set of icons, pictures, text strings, dialog descriptions. Perhaps, they were separated from the main code, so all these things could be multilingual, and it would be simpler to pick text or picture for the language that is currently set in OS.

As a side effect, they can be edited easily and saved back to the executable file, even, if one does not have special knowledge, e.g. using ResHack editor(59.2.11).

59.2.9 .NET

.NET programs are compiled not into machine code but into special bytecode. Strictly speaking, there is bytecode instead of usual x86-code in the .exe-file, however, entry point (OEP) is pointing to the tiny fragment of x86-code:

```
jmp mscoree.dll!_CorExeMain
```

.NET-loader is located in mscoree.dll, it will process the PE-file. It was so in pre-Windows XP OS. Starting from XP, OS-loader able to detect the .NET-file and run it without execution of that JMP instruction²⁴.

59.2.10 TLS

This section holds initialized data for TLS(56) (if needed). When new thread starting, its TLS- data is initialized by the data from this section.

Aside from that, PE-file specification also provides initialization of TLS-section, so-called, TLS callbacks. If they are

²²http://yurichev.com/PE_add_imports.html

²³<http://blogs.msdn.com/b/oldnewthing/archive/2010/03/18/9980802.aspx>. There is also “new-style binding”, I will write about it in future

²⁴[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/xh0859k0\(v=vs.110\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/xh0859k0(v=vs.110).aspx)

present, they will be called before control passing to the main entry point (OEP). This is used widely in the PE-file packers/encryptors.

59.2.11 Tools

- objdump (present in cygwin) for dumping all PE-file structures.
- Hiew(64) as editor.
- pefile – Python-library for PE-file processing ²⁵.
- ResHack AKA Resource Hacker – resources editor ²⁶.
- PE_add_import²⁷ – simple tool for adding symbol(s) to PE executable import table.
- PE_patcher²⁸ – simple tool for patching PE executables.
- PE_search_str_refs²⁹ – simple tool for searching for a function in PE executables which use some text string.

59.2.12 Further reading

- Daniel Pistelli – The .NET File Format ³⁰

59.3 Windows SEH

59.3.1 Let's forget about MSVC

In Windows, SEH is intended for exceptions handling, nevertheless, it is language-agnostic, it is not related to the C++ or OOP in any way. Here we will take a look on SEH in isolated (from C++ and MSVC extensions) form.

Each running process has a chain of SEH-handlers, TIB has address of the last handler. When exception occurred (division by zero, incorrect address access, user exception triggered by calling to `RaiseException()` function), OS will find the last handler in TIB, and will call it with passing all information about CPU state (register values, etc) at the moment of exception. Exception handler will consider exception, was it made for it? If so, it will handle exception. If no, it will signal to OS that it cannot handle it and OS will call next handler in chain, until a handler which is able to handle the exception will be found.

At the very end of the chain, there a standard handler, showing well-known dialog box, informing a process crash, some technical information about CPU state at the crash, and offering to collect all information and send it to developers in Microsoft.

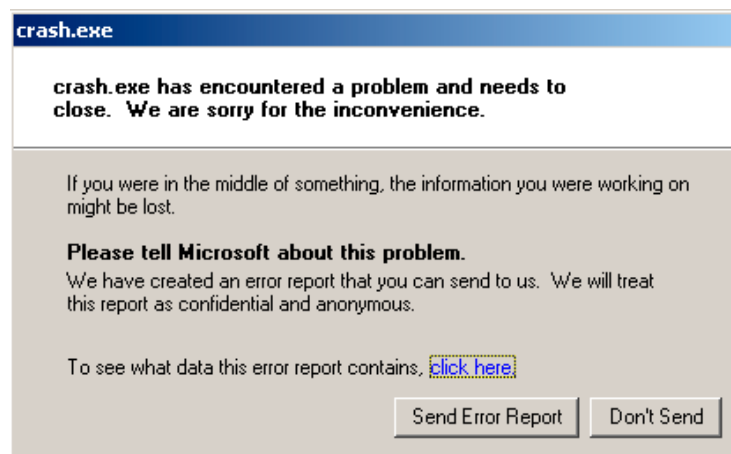


Figure 59.2: Windows XP

²⁵<https://code.google.com/p/pefile/>

²⁶<http://www.angusj.com/resourcehacker/>

²⁷http://yurichev.com/PE_add_imports.html

²⁸http://yurichev.com/PE_patcher.html

²⁹http://yurichev.com/PE_search_str_refs.html

³⁰<http://www.codeproject.com/Articles/12585/The-NET-File-Format>

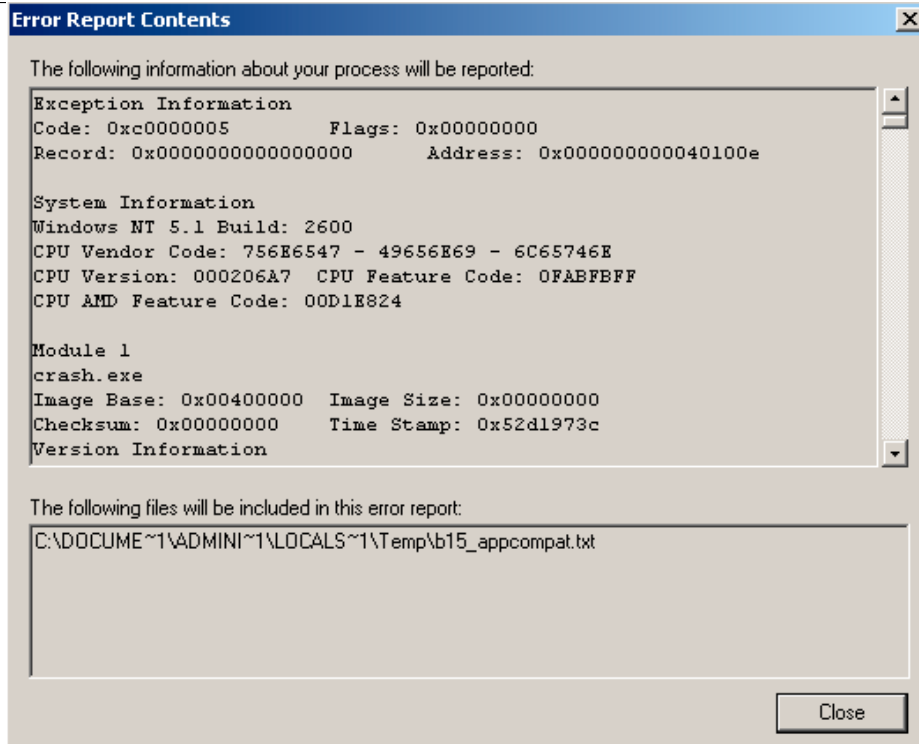


Figure 59.3: Windows XP

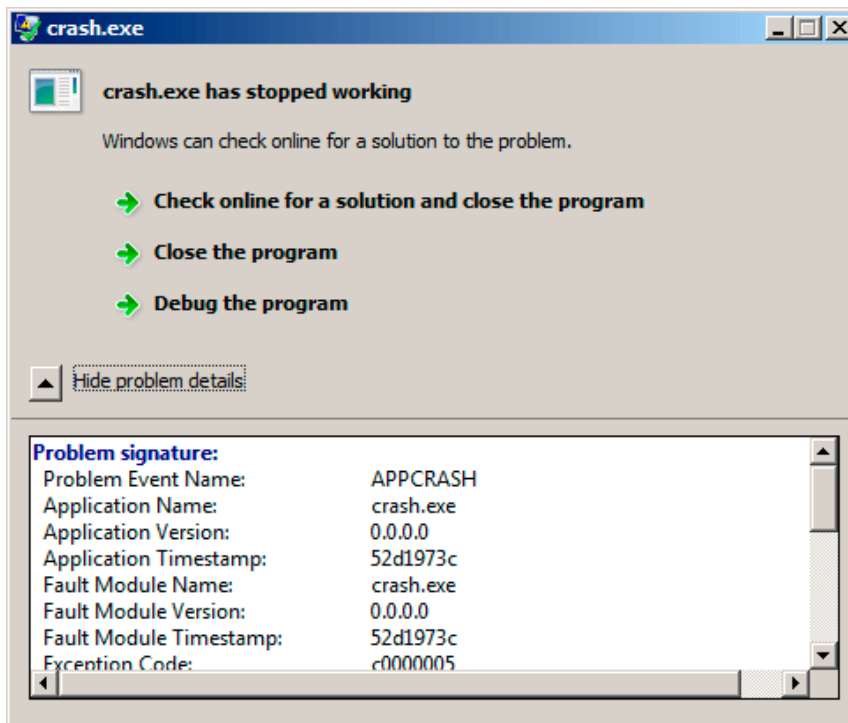


Figure 59.4: Windows 7

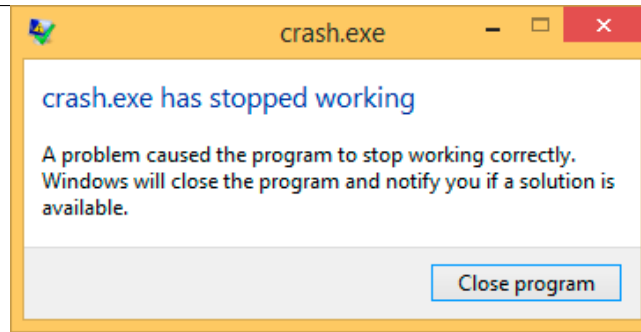


Figure 59.5: Windows 8.1

This handler was also called Dr. Watson earlier ³¹.

By the way, some developers made their own handler, sending information about program crash to themselves. It is registered with the help of `SetUnhandledExceptionFilter()` and will be called if OS do not have any other way to handle exception. Other example is Oracle RDBMS it saves huge dumps containing all possible information about CPU and memory state.

Let's write our own primitive exception handler ³²:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

DWORD new_value=1234;

EXCEPTION_DISPOSITION __cdecl except_handler(
    struct _EXCEPTION_RECORD *ExceptionRecord,
    void * EstablisherFrame,
    struct _CONTEXT *ContextRecord,
    void * DispatcherContext )
{
    unsigned i;

    printf ("%s\n", __FUNCTION__);
    printf ("ExceptionRecord->ExceptionCode=0x%p\n", ExceptionRecord->ExceptionCode);
    printf ("ExceptionRecord->ExceptionFlags=0x%p\n", ExceptionRecord->ExceptionFlags);
    printf ("ExceptionRecord->ExceptionAddress=0x%p\n", ExceptionRecord->ExceptionAddress);

    if (ExceptionRecord->ExceptionCode==0xE1223344)
    {
        printf ("That's for us\n");
        // yes, we "handled" the exception
        return ExceptionContinueExecution;
    }
    else if (ExceptionRecord->ExceptionCode==EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION)
    {
        printf ("ContextRecord->Eax=0x%08X\n", ContextRecord->Eax);
        // will it be possible to 'fix' it?
        printf ("Trying to fix wrong pointer address\n");
        ContextRecord->Eax=(DWORD)&new_value;
        // yes, we "handled" the exception
        return ExceptionContinueExecution;
    }
    else
    {
        printf ("We do not handle this\n");
        // someone else's problem
        return ExceptionContinueSearch;
    }
};

int main()
{
```

³¹[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dr._Watson_\(debugger\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dr._Watson_(debugger))

³²The example is based on the example from [Pie]

It is compiled with the SAFESEH option: `cl seh1.cpp /link /safeseh:no`
More about SAFESEH here:

<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/9a89h429.aspx>

```

DWORD handler = (DWORD)except_handler; // take a pointer to our handler

// install exception handler
__asm
{
    push    handler           // make EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION record:
    push    FS:[0]           // address of handler function
    mov     FS:[0],ESP       // address of previous handler
    // add new EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION
}

RaiseException (0xE1223344, 0, 0, NULL);

// now do something very bad
int* ptr=NULL;
int val=0;
val=*ptr;
printf ("val=%d\n", val);

// deinstall exception handler
__asm
{
    mov     eax,[ESP]        // remove our EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION record
    mov     FS:[0], EAX     // get pointer to previous record
    add     esp, 8           // install previous record
    // clean our EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION off stack
}

return 0;
}
    
```

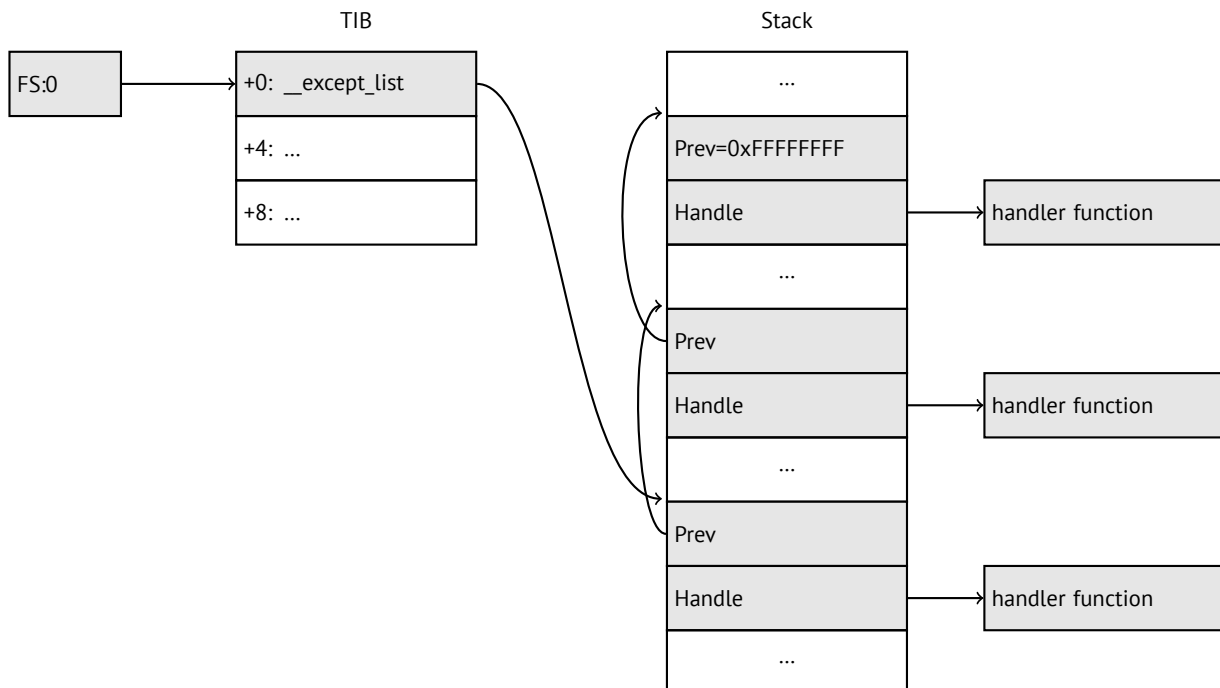
FS: segment register is pointing to the TIB in win32. The very first element in TIB is a pointer to the last handler in chain. We saving it in the stack and store an address of our handler there. The structure is named `_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION`, it is a simplest singly-linked list and its elements are stored right in the stack.

Listing 59.1: MSVC/VC/crt/src/exsup.inc

```

_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION struc
    prev dd    ?
    handler dd ?
_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION ends
    
```

So each "handler" field points to handler and an each "prev" field points to previous record in the stack. The last record has `0xFFFFFFFF (-1)` in "prev" field.



When our handler is installed, let's call `RaiseException()` ³³. This is user exception. Handler will check the code. If the code is `0xE1223344`, it will return `ExceptionContinueExecution`, which means that handler corrected CPU

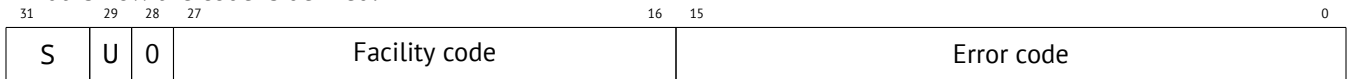
³³[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms680552\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms680552(v=vs.85).aspx)

state (it is usually correction of EIP/ESP registers) and the OS can resume thread execution. If to alter the code slightly so the handler will return `ExceptionContinueSearch`, then OS will call other handlers, and very unlikely the one who can handle it will be founded, since no one have information about it (rather about its code). You will see the standard Windows dialog about process crash.

What is the difference between system exceptions and user? Here is a system ones:

as defined in WinBase.h	as defined in ntstatus.h	numerical value
EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION	STATUS_ACCESS_VIOLATION	0xC0000005
EXCEPTION_DATATYPE_MISALIGNMENT	STATUS_DATATYPE_MISALIGNMENT	0x80000002
EXCEPTION_BREAKPOINT	STATUS_BREAKPOINT	0x80000003
EXCEPTION_SINGLE_STEP	STATUS_SINGLE_STEP	0x80000004
EXCEPTION_ARRAY_BOUNDS_EXCEEDED	STATUS_ARRAY_BOUNDS_EXCEEDED	0xC000008C
EXCEPTION_FLT_DENORMAL_OPERAND	STATUS_FLOAT_DENORMAL_OPERAND	0xC000008D
EXCEPTION_FLT_DIVIDE_BY_ZERO	STATUS_FLOAT_DIVIDE_BY_ZERO	0xC000008E
EXCEPTION_FLT_INEXACT_RESULT	STATUS_FLOAT_INEXACT_RESULT	0xC000008F
EXCEPTION_FLT_INVALID_OPERATION	STATUS_FLOAT_INVALID_OPERATION	0xC0000090
EXCEPTION_FLT_OVERFLOW	STATUS_FLOAT_OVERFLOW	0xC0000091
EXCEPTION_FLT_STACK_CHECK	STATUS_FLOAT_STACK_CHECK	0xC0000092
EXCEPTION_FLT_UNDERFLOW	STATUS_FLOAT_UNDERFLOW	0xC0000093
EXCEPTION_INT_DIVIDE_BY_ZERO	STATUS_INTEGER_DIVIDE_BY_ZERO	0xC0000094
EXCEPTION_INT_OVERFLOW	STATUS_INTEGER_OVERFLOW	0xC0000095
EXCEPTION_PRIV_INSTRUCTION	STATUS_PRIVILEGED_INSTRUCTION	0xC0000096
EXCEPTION_IN_PAGE_ERROR	STATUS_IN_PAGE_ERROR	0xC0000006
EXCEPTION_ILLEGAL_INSTRUCTION	STATUS_ILLEGAL_INSTRUCTION	0xC000001D
EXCEPTION_NONCONTINUABLE_EXCEPTION	STATUS_NONCONTINUABLE_EXCEPTION	0xC0000025
EXCEPTION_STACK_OVERFLOW	STATUS_STACK_OVERFLOW	0xC00000FD
EXCEPTION_INVALID_DISPOSITION	STATUS_INVALID_DISPOSITION	0xC0000026
EXCEPTION_GUARD_PAGE	STATUS_GUARD_PAGE_VIOLATION	0x80000001
EXCEPTION_INVALID_HANDLE	STATUS_INVALID_HANDLE	0xC0000008
EXCEPTION_POSSIBLE_DEADLOCK	STATUS_POSSIBLE_DEADLOCK	0xC0000194
CONTROL_C_EXIT	STATUS_CONTROL_C_EXIT	0xC000013A

That is how the code is defined:



S is a basic status code: 11–error; 10–warning; 01–informational; 00–success. U–whether the code is user code.

That is why I chose 0xE1223344– 0xE (1110b) mean this is 1) user exception; 2) error. But to be honest, this example works finely without these high bits.

Then we try to read a value from memory at the 0th address. Of course, there are nothing at this address in win32, so exception is raised. However, the very first handler will be called – yours, it will be notified first, checking the code on equality to the `EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION` constant.

The code reading from memory at 0th address is looks like:

Listing 59.2: MSVC 2010

```

...
xor    eax, eax
mov    eax, DWORD PTR [eax] ; exception will occur here
push  eax
push  OFFSET msg
call  _printf
add   esp, 8
...

```

Will it be possible to fix error “on fly” and to continue program execution? Yes, our exception handler can fix EAX value and now let OS will execute this instruction once again. So that is what we do. `printf()` will print 1234, because, after execution of our handler, EAX will not be 0, it will contain address of global variable `new_value`. Execution will be resumed.

That is what is going on: memory manager in CPU signaling about error, the CPU suspends the thread, it finds exception handler in the Windows kernel, latter, in turn, is starting to call all handlers in SEH chain, one by one.

I use MSVC 2010 now, but of course, there are no any guarantee that EAX will be used for pointer.

This address replacement trick is looks showingly, and I offer it here for SEH internals illustration. Nevertheless, I cannot recall where it is used for “on-fly” error fixing in practice.

Why SEH-related records are stored right in the stack instead of some other place? Supposedly because then OS will not need to care about freeing this information, these records will be disposed when function finishing its execution. But I'm not 100%-sure and can be wrong. This is somewhat like `alloca()`: (5.2.4).

59.3.2 Now let's get back to MSVC

Supposedly, Microsoft programmers need exceptions in C, but not in C++, so they added a non-standard C extension to MSVC³⁴. It is not related to C++ PL exceptions.

```
__try
{
    ...
}
__except(filter code)
{
    handler code
}
```

“Finally” block may be instead of handler code:

```
__try
{
    ...
}
__finally
{
    ...
}
```

The filter code is an expression, telling whether this handler code is corresponding to the exception raised. If your code is too big and cannot be fitted into one expression, a separate filter function can be defined.

There are a lot of such constructs in the Windows kernel. Here is couple of examples from there (WRK):

Listing 59.3: WRK-v1.2/base/ntos/ob/obwait.c

```
try {
    KeReleaseMutant( (PKMUTANT)SignalObject,
                    MUTANT_INCREMENT,
                    FALSE,
                    TRUE );
} except((GetExceptionCode () == STATUS_ABANDONED ||
        GetExceptionCode () == STATUS_MUTANT_NOT_OWNED)?
        EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER :
        EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH) {
    Status = GetExceptionCode();
    goto WaitExit;
}
```

Listing 59.4: WRK-v1.2/base/ntos/cache/cachesub.c

```
try {
    RtlCopyBytes( (PVOID)((PCHAR)CacheBuffer + PageOffset),
                UserBuffer,
                MorePages ?
                (PAGE_SIZE - PageOffset) :
                (ReceivedLength - PageOffset) );
} except( CcCopyReadExceptionFilter( GetExceptionInformation(),
                                    &Status ) ) {
```

Here is also filter code example:

Listing 59.5: WRK-v1.2/base/ntos/cache/copysup.c

```
LONG
CcCopyReadExceptionFilter(
    IN PEXCEPTION_POINTERS ExceptionPointer,
    IN PNTSTATUS ExceptionCode
)
```

³⁴<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/swezt51.aspx>

```

/**+
Routine Description:

    This routine serves as a exception filter and has the special job of
    extracting the "real" I/O error when Mm raises STATUS_IN_PAGE_ERROR
    beneath us.

Arguments:

    ExceptionPointer - A pointer to the exception record that contains
                      the real Io Status.

    ExceptionCode - A pointer to an NTSTATUS that is to receive the real
                   status.

Return Value:

    EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER
--*/
{
    *ExceptionCode = ExceptionPointer->ExceptionRecord->ExceptionCode;

    if ( (*ExceptionCode == STATUS_IN_PAGE_ERROR) &&
        (ExceptionPointer->ExceptionRecord->NumberParameters >= 3) ) {

        *ExceptionCode = (NTSTATUS) ExceptionPointer->ExceptionRecord->ExceptionInformation[2];
    }

    ASSERT( !NT_SUCCESS(*ExceptionCode) );

    return EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER;
}

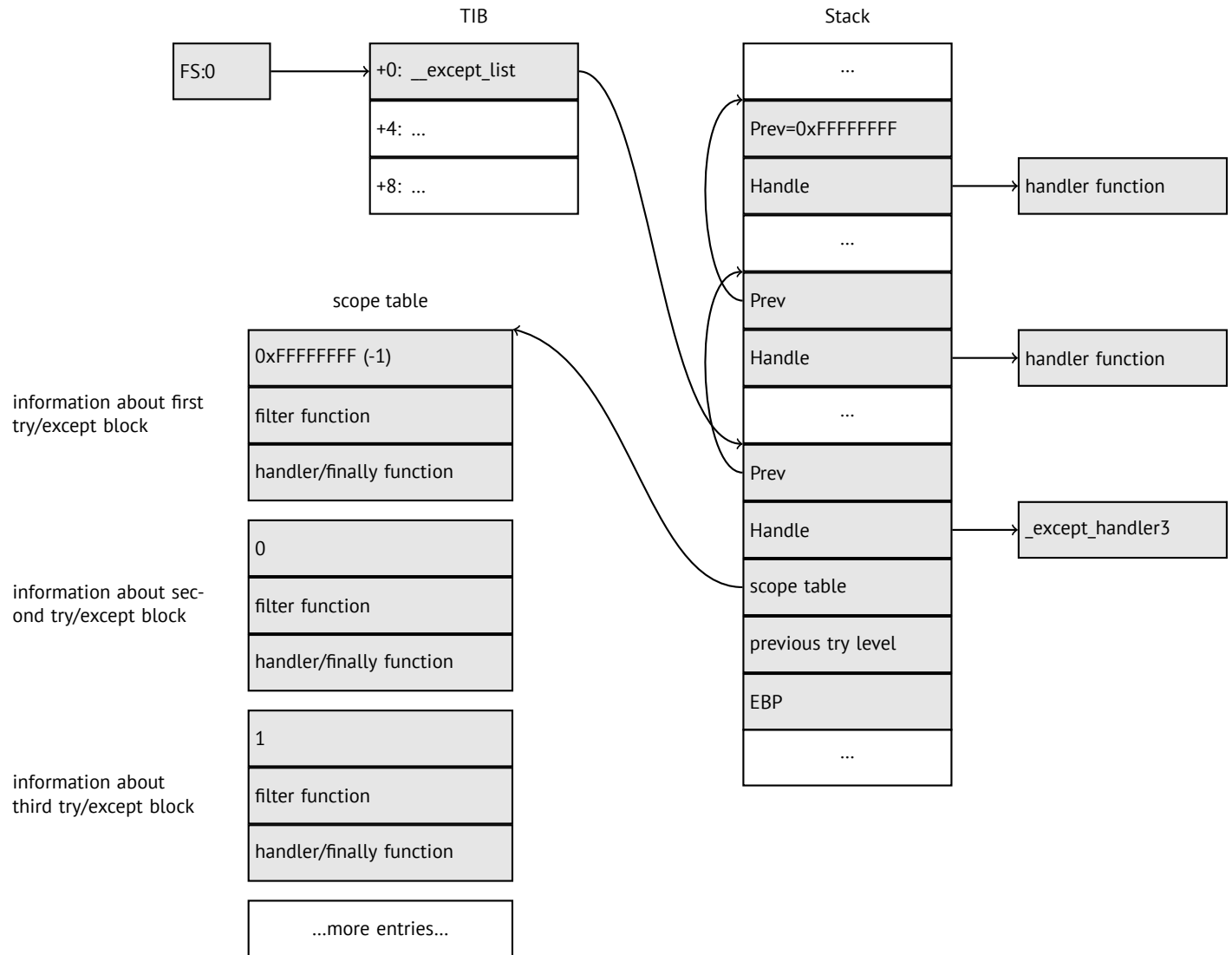
```

Internally, SEH is an extension of OS-supported exceptions. But the handler function is `_except_handler3` (for SEH3) or `_except_handler4` (for SEH4). The code of this handler is MSVC-related, it is located in its libraries, or in `msvcr*.dll`. It is very important to know that SEH is MSVC thing. Other win32-compilers may offer something completely different.

SEH3

SEH3 has `_except_handler3` as handler functions, and extends `_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION` table, adding a pointer to the *scope table* and *previous try level* variable. SEH4 extends *scope table* by 4 values for buffer overflow protection.

Scope table is a table consisting of pointers to the filter and handler codes, for each level of *try/except* nestedness.



Again, it is very important to understand that OS take care only of `prev/handle` fields, and nothing more. It is job of `_except_handler3` function to read other fields, read `scope table`, and decide, which handler to execute and when.

The source code of `_except_handler3` function is closed. However, Sanos OS, which have win32 compatibility layer, has the same functions redeveloped, which are somewhat equivalent to those in Windows³⁵. Another reimplementations are present in Wine³⁶ and ReactOS³⁷.

If the `filter` pointer is zero, `handler` pointer is the pointer to a `finally` code.

During execution, `previous try level` value in the stack is changing, so the `_except_handler3` will know about current state of nestedness, in order to know which `scope table` entry to use.

SEH3: one try/except block example

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <windows.h>
#include <excpt.h>

int main()
{
    int* p = NULL;
    __try
    {
        printf("hello #1!\n");
        *p = 13;    // causes an access violation exception;
    }
}
```

³⁵<https://code.google.com/p/sanos/source/browse/src/win32/msvcrt/except.c>

³⁶https://github.com/mirrors/wine/blob/master/dlls/msvcrt/except_i386.c

³⁷http://doxygen.reactos.org/d4/df2/lib_2sdk_2crt_2except_2except_8c_source.html

```

    printf("hello #2!\n");
}
__except(GetExceptionCode()==EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION ?
        EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER : EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH)
{
    printf("access violation, can't recover\n");
}
}

```

Listing 59.6: MSVC 2003

```

$SG74605 DB    'hello #1!', 0aH, 00H
$SG74606 DB    'hello #2!', 0aH, 00H
$SG74608 DB    'access violation, can't recover', 0aH, 00H
_DATA    ENDS

; scope table

CONST     SEGMENT
$T74622   DD    0fffffffH    ; previous try level
          DD    FLAT:$L74617 ; filter
          DD    FLAT:$L74618 ; handler

CONST     ENDS
_TEXT     SEGMENT
$T74621 = -32 ; size = 4
_p$ = -28   ; size = 4
__$SEHRec$ = -24 ; size = 24
_main     PROC NEAR
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    -1                ; previous try level
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$T74622 ; scope table
    push    OFFSET FLAT:__except_handler3 ; handler
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR fs:__except_list
    push    eax                ; prev
    mov     DWORD PTR fs:__except_list, esp
    add     esp, -16
    push    ebx                ; saved 3 registers
    push    esi                ; saved 3 registers
    push    edi                ; saved 3 registers
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp], esp
    mov     DWORD PTR _p$[ebp], 0
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; previous try level
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74605 ; 'hello #1!'
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 4
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _p$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax], 13
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74606 ; 'hello #2!'
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 4
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -1 ; previous try level
    jmp     SHORT $L74616

; filter code

$L74617:
$L74627:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    mov     DWORD PTR $T74621[ebp], eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR $T74621[ebp]
    sub     eax, -1073741819; c0000005H
    neg     eax
    sbb     eax, eax
    inc     eax
$L74619:
$L74626:

```

```

ret    0

; handler code

$L74618:
mov    esp, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp]
push  OFFSET FLAT:$SG74608 ; 'access violation, can't recover'
call  _printf
add    esp, 4
mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -1 ; setting previous try level back to -1
$L74616:
xor    eax, eax
mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+8]
mov    DWORD PTR fs:__except_list, ecx
pop    edi
pop    esi
pop    ebx
mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
ret    0
_main  ENDP
_TEXT  ENDS
END

```

Here we see how SEH frame is being constructed in the stack. *Scope table* is located in the `CONST` segment— indeed, these fields will not be changed. An interesting thing is how *previous try level* variable is changed. Initial value is `0xFFFFFFFF` (−1). The moment when body of `try` statement is opened is marked as an instruction writing 0 to the variable. The moment when body of `try` statement is closed, −1 is returned back to it. We also see addresses of filter and handler code. Thus we can easily see the structure of *try/except* constructs in the function.

Since the SEH setup code in the function prologue may be shared between many of functions, sometimes compiler inserts a call to `SEH_prolog()` function in the prologue, which do that. SEH cleanup code may be in the `SEH_epilog()` function.

Let's try to run this example in [tracer](#):

```
tracer.exe -l:2.exe --dump-seh
```

Listing 59.7: tracer.exe output

```

EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION at 2.exe!main+0x44 (0x401054) ExceptionInformation[0]=1
EAX=0x00000000 EBX=0x7efde000 ECX=0x0040cbc8 EDX=0x0008e3c8
ESI=0x00001db1 EDI=0x00000000 EBP=0x0018feac ESP=0x0018fe80
EIP=0x00401054
FLAGS=AF IF RF
* SEH frame at 0x18fe9c prev=0x18ff78 handler=0x401204 (2.exe!_except_handler3)
SEH3 frame. previous trylevel=0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-1, filter=0x401070 (2.exe!main+0x60) handler=0x401088 ↵
↳ (2.exe!main+0x78)
* SEH frame at 0x18ff78 prev=0x18ffc4 handler=0x401204 (2.exe!_except_handler3)
SEH3 frame. previous trylevel=0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-1, filter=0x401531 (2.exe!mainCRTStartup+0x18d) ↵
↳ handler=0x401545 (2.exe!mainCRTStartup+0x1a1)
* SEH frame at 0x18ffc4 prev=0x18ffe4 handler=0x771f71f5 (ntdll.dll!__except_handler4)
SEH4 frame. previous trylevel=0
SEH4 header:      GSCookieOffset=0xffffffff GSCookieXOROffset=0x0
                  EHCookieOffset=0xffffffff EHCookieXOROffset=0x0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-2, filter=0x771f74d0 (ntdll.dll!↵
↳ __safe_se_handler_table+0x20) handler=0x771f90eb (ntdll.dll!_TppTerminateProcess@4+0x43)
* SEH frame at 0x18ffe4 prev=0xffffffff handler=0x77247428 (ntdll.dll!_FinalExceptionHandler@16↵
↳ )

```

We see that SEH chain is consisting of 4 handlers.

First two are located in our example. Two? But we made only one? Yes, another one is setting up in `CRT` function `_mainCRTStartup()`, and as it seems, it handles at least `FPU` exceptions. Its source code can be found in MSVS installation: `crt/src/winxfltr.c`.

Third is SEH4 frame in `ntdll.dll`, and the fourth handler is not `MSVC`-related located in `ntdll.dll`, and it has self-describing function name.

As you can see, there are 3 types of handlers in one chain: one is not related to MSVC at all (the last one) and two MSVC-related: SEH3 and SEH4.

SEH3: two try/except blocks example

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <windows.h>
#include <except.h>

int filter_user_exceptions (unsigned int code, struct _EXCEPTION_POINTERS *ep)
{
    printf("in filter. code=0x%08X\n", code);
    if (code == 0x112233)
    {
        printf("yes, that is our exception\n");
        return EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER;
    }
    else
    {
        printf("not our exception\n");
        return EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH;
    };
}

int main()
{
    int* p = NULL;
    __try
    {
        __try
        {
            printf ("hello!\n");
            RaiseException (0x112233, 0, 0, NULL);
            printf ("0x112233 raised. now let's crash\n");
            *p = 13;    // causes an access violation exception;
        }
        __except(GetExceptionCode()==EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION ?
            EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER : EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH)
        {
            printf("access violation, can't recover\n");
        }
    }
    __except(filter_user_exceptions(GetExceptionCode(), GetExceptionInformation()))
    {
        // the filter_user_exceptions() function answering to the question
        // "is this exception belongs to this block?"
        // if yes, do the follow:
        printf("user exception caught\n");
    }
}
```

Now there are two try blocks. So the *scope table* now have two entries, each entry for each block. *Previous try level* is changing as execution flow entering or exiting try block.

Listing 59.8: MSVC 2003

```
$SG74606 DB    'in filter. code=0x%08X', 0aH, 00H
$SG74608 DB    'yes, that is our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG74610 DB    'not our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG74617 DB    'hello!', 0aH, 00H
$SG74619 DB    '0x112233 raised. now let's crash', 0aH, 00H
$SG74621 DB    'access violation, can't recover', 0aH, 00H
$SG74623 DB    'user exception caught', 0aH, 00H

_code$ = 8    ; size = 4
_ep$ = 12    ; size = 4
_filter_user_exceptions PROC NEAR
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _code$[ebp]
```

```

push    eax
push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74606 ; 'in filter. code=0x%08X'
call    _printf
add     esp, 8
cmp     DWORD PTR _code$[ebp], 1122867; 00112233H
jne     SHORT $L74607
push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74608 ; 'yes, that is our exception'
call    _printf
add     esp, 4
mov     eax, 1
jmp     SHORT $L74605
$L74607:
push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74610 ; 'not our exception'
call    _printf
add     esp, 4
xor     eax, eax
$L74605:
pop     ebp
ret     0
_filter_user_exceptions ENDP

; scope table

CONST   SEGMENT
$T74644 DD    0fffffffH    ; previous try level for outer block
        DD    FLAT:$L74634 ; outer block filter
        DD    FLAT:$L74635 ; outer block handler
        DD    00H         ; previous try level for inner block
        DD    FLAT:$L74638 ; inner block filter
        DD    FLAT:$L74639 ; inner block handler
CONST   ENDS

$T74643 = -36      ; size = 4
$T74642 = -32      ; size = 4
_p$ = -28         ; size = 4
__$SEHRec$ = -24  ; size = 24
_main   PROC NEAR
push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
push    -1 ; previous try level
push    OFFSET FLAT:$T74644
push    OFFSET FLAT:__except_handler3
mov     eax, DWORD PTR fs:__except_list
push    eax
mov     DWORD PTR fs:__except_list, esp
add     esp, -20
push    ebx
push    esi
push    edi
mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp], esp
mov     DWORD PTR _p$[ebp], 0
mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; outer try block entered. set previous try level to ↵
↵ 0
mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 1 ; inner try block entered. set previous try level to ↵
↵ 1
push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74617 ; 'hello!'
call    _printf
add     esp, 4
push    0
push    0
push    0
push    1122867      ; 00112233H
call    DWORD PTR __imp__RaiseException@16
push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74619 ; '0x112233 raised. now let''s crash'
call    _printf
add     esp, 4
mov     eax, DWORD PTR _p$[ebp]
mov     DWORD PTR [eax], 13
mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; inner try block exited. set previous try level ↵
↵ back to 0

```

```

    jmp     SHORT $L74615

    ; inner block filter

$L74638:
$L74650:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    mov     DWORD PTR $T74643[ebp], eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR $T74643[ebp]
    sub     eax, -1073741819; c0000005H
    neg     eax
    sbb     eax, eax
    inc     eax
$L74640:
$L74648:
    ret     0

    ; inner block handler

$L74639:
    mov     esp, DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp]
    push   OFFSET FLAT:$SG74621 ; 'access violation, can't recover'
    call   _printf
    add     esp, 4
    mov     DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; inner try block exited. set previous try level ↗
    ↪ back to 0

$L74615:
    mov     DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+20], -1 ; outer try block exited, set previous try level ↗
    ↪ back to -1
    jmp     SHORT $L74633

    ; outer block filter

$L74634:
$L74651:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    mov     DWORD PTR $T74642[ebp], eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    push   ecx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR $T74642[ebp]
    push   edx
    call   _filter_user_exceptions
    add     esp, 8
$L74636:
$L74649:
    ret     0

    ; outer block handler

$L74635:
    mov     esp, DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp]
    push   OFFSET FLAT:$SG74623 ; 'user exception caught'
    call   _printf
    add     esp, 4
    mov     DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+20], -1 ; both try blocks exited. set previous try level ↗
    ↪ back to -1
$L74633:
    xor     eax, eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+8]
    mov     DWORD PTR fs:__except_list, ecx
    pop     edi
    pop     esi
    pop     ebx
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp

```

```

    ret    0
_main   ENDP

```

If to set a breakpoint on `printf()` function which is called from the handler, we may also see how yet another SEH handler is added. Perhaps, yet another machinery inside of SEH handling process. Here we also see our *scope table* consisting of 2 entries.

```
tracer.exe -l:3.exe bpx=3.exe!printf --dump-seh
```

Listing 59.9: tracer.exe output

```

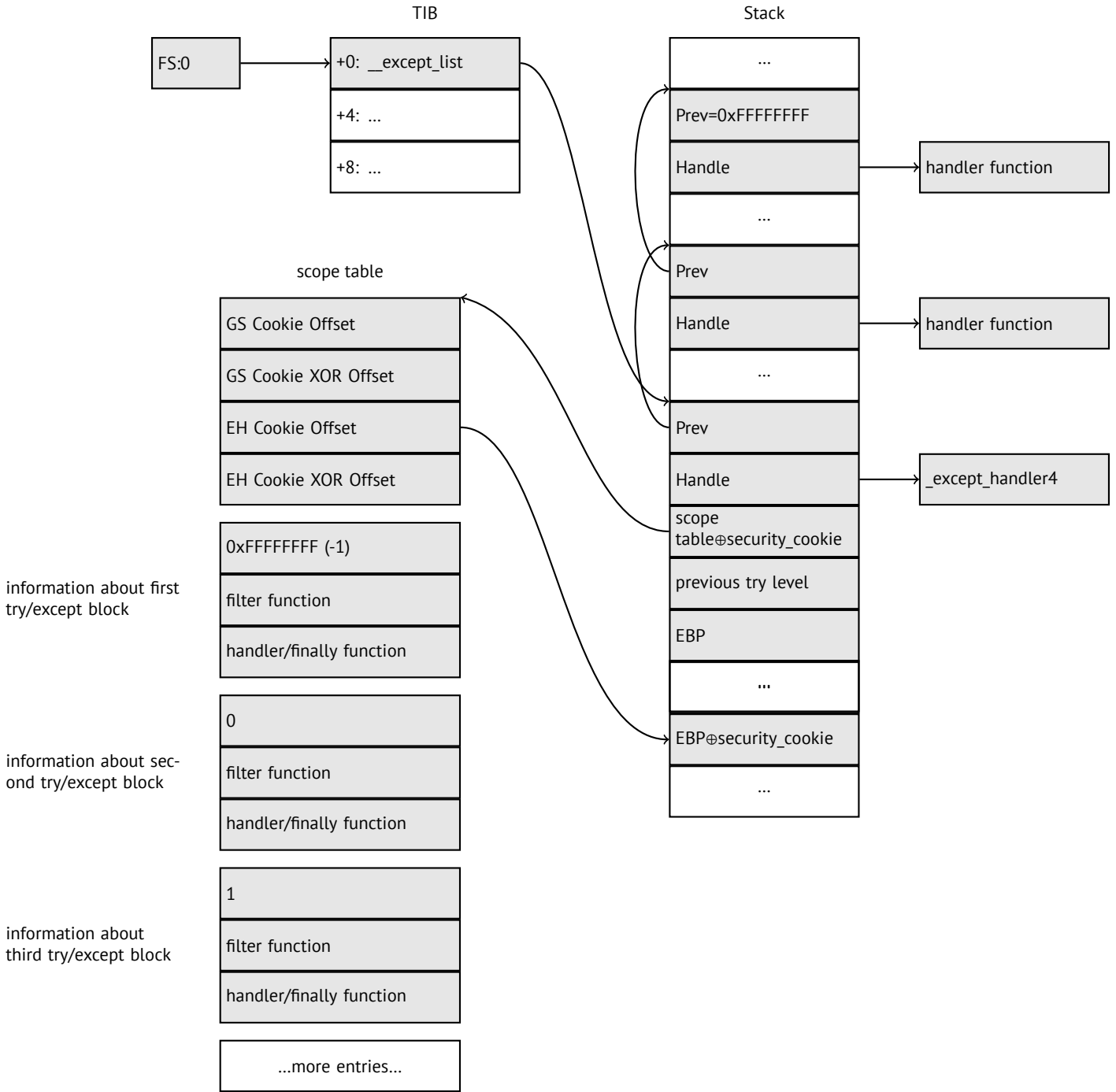
(0) 3.exe!printf
EAX=0x0000001b EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x0040cc58 EDX=0x0008e3c8
ESI=0x00000000 EDI=0x00000000 EBP=0x0018f840 ESP=0x0018f838
EIP=0x004011b6
FLAGS=PF ZF IF
* SEH frame at 0x18f88c prev=0x18fe9c handler=0x771db4ad (ntdll.dll!ExecuteHandler2@20+0x3a)
* SEH frame at 0x18fe9c prev=0x18ff78 handler=0x4012e0 (3.exe!_except_handler3)
SEH3 frame. previous trylevel=1
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-1, filter=0x401120 (3.exe!main+0xb0) handler=0x40113b ↵
↳ (3.exe!main+0xcb)
scopetable entry[1]. previous try level=0, filter=0x4010e8 (3.exe!main+0x78) handler=0x401100 ↵
↳ (3.exe!main+0x90)
* SEH frame at 0x18ff78 prev=0x18ffc4 handler=0x4012e0 (3.exe!_except_handler3)
SEH3 frame. previous trylevel=0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-1, filter=0x40160d (3.exe!mainCRTStartup+0x18d) ↵
↳ handler=0x401621 (3.exe!mainCRTStartup+0x1a1)
* SEH frame at 0x18ffc4 prev=0x18ffe4 handler=0x771f71f5 (ntdll.dll!__except_handler4)
SEH4 frame. previous trylevel=0
SEH4 header:      GSCookieOffset=0xffffffffe GSCookieXOROffset=0x0
                  EHCookieOffset=0xffffffffc EHCookieXOROffset=0x0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-2, filter=0x771f74d0 (ntdll.dll!↵
↳ __safe_se_handler_table+0x20) handler=0x771f90eb (ntdll.dll!_TppTerminateProcess@4+0x43)
* SEH frame at 0x18ffe4 prev=0xffffffff handler=0x77247428 (ntdll.dll!_FinalExceptionHandler@16↵
↳ )

```

SEH4

During buffer overflow (18.2) attack, address of the *scope table* can be rewritten, so starting at MSVC 2005, SEH3 was upgraded to SEH4 in order to have buffer overflow protection. The pointer to *scope table* is now **xored** with **security cookie**. *Scope table* extended to have a header, consisting of two pointers to *security cookies*. Each element have an offset inside of stack of another value: this is address of **stack frame** (EBP) **xored** with `security_cookie` as well, placed in the stack. This value will be read during exception handling and checked, if it is correct. *Security cookie* in the stack is random each time, so remote attacker, hopefully, will not be able to predict it.

Initial *previous try level* is -2 in SEH4 instead of -1.



Here is both examples compiled in MSVC 2012 with SEH4:

Listing 59.10: MSVC 2012: one try block example

```

$SG85485 DB 'hello #1!', 0aH, 00H
$SG85486 DB 'hello #2!', 0aH, 00H
$SG85488 DB 'access violation, can't recover', 0aH, 00H

; scope table

xdata$x SEGMENT
__sehtable$_main DD 0fffffffEH ; GS Cookie Offset
                DD 00H ; GS Cookie XOR Offset
                DD 0fffffffCCH ; EH Cookie Offset
                DD 00H ; EH Cookie XOR Offset
                DD 0fffffffEH ; previous try level
                DD FLAT:$LN12@main ; filter
                DD FLAT:$LN8@main ; handler
xdata$x ENDS

$T2 = -36 ; size = 4
_p$ = -32 ; size = 4
    
```



```

tv68 = -28      ; size = 4
__$SEHRec$ = -24 ; size = 24
_main PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    -2
    push    OFFSET __sehtable$_main
    push    OFFSET __except_handler4
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR fs:0
    push    eax
    add     esp, -20
    push    ebx
    push    esi
    push    edi
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR ___security_cookie
    xor     DWORD PTR __$_SEHRec$[ebp+16], eax ; xored pointer to scope table
    xor     eax, ebp
    push    eax ; ebp ^ security_cookie
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR __$_SEHRec$[ebp+8] ; pointer to VC_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION_RECORD
    mov     DWORD PTR fs:0, eax
    mov     DWORD PTR __$_SEHRec$[ebp], esp
    mov     DWORD PTR _p$[ebp], 0
    mov     DWORD PTR __$_SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; previous try level
    push    OFFSET $SG85485 ; 'hello #1!'
    call   _printf
    add     esp, 4
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _p$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax], 13
    push    OFFSET $SG85486 ; 'hello #2!'
    call   _printf
    add     esp, 4
    mov     DWORD PTR __$_SEHRec$[ebp+20], -2 ; previous try level
    jmp     SHORT $LN6@main

; filter

$LN7@main:
$LN12@main:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __$_SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    mov     DWORD PTR $T2[ebp], eax
    cmp     DWORD PTR $T2[ebp], -1073741819 ; c0000005H
    jne     SHORT $LN4@main
    mov     DWORD PTR tv68[ebp], 1
    jmp     SHORT $LN5@main
$LN4@main:
    mov     DWORD PTR tv68[ebp], 0
$LN5@main:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR tv68[ebp]
$LN9@main:
$LN11@main:
    ret     0

; handler

$LN8@main:
    mov     esp, DWORD PTR __$_SEHRec$[ebp]
    push    OFFSET $SG85488 ; 'access violation, can't recover'
    call   _printf
    add     esp, 4
    mov     DWORD PTR __$_SEHRec$[ebp+20], -2 ; previous try level
$LN6@main:
    xor     eax, eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __$_SEHRec$[ebp+8]
    mov     DWORD PTR fs:0, ecx
    pop     ecx
    pop     edi
    pop     esi
    pop     ebx

```

```

mov     esp, ebp
pop     ebp
ret     0
_main   ENDP

```

Listing 59.11: MSVC 2012: two try blocks example

```

$SG85486 DB 'in filter. code=0x%08X', 0aH, 00H
$SG85488 DB 'yes, that is our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG85490 DB 'not our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG85497 DB 'hello!', 0aH, 00H
$SG85499 DB '0x112233 raised. now let''s crash', 0aH, 00H
$SG85501 DB 'access violation, can''t recover', 0aH, 00H
$SG85503 DB 'user exception caught', 0aH, 00H

xdata$x SEGMENT
__sehtable$__main DD 0fffffffEH ; GS Cookie Offset
                  DD 00H ; GS Cookie XOR Offset
                  DD 0fffffffC8H ; EH Cookie Offset
                  DD 00H ; EH Cookie Offset
                  DD 0fffffffEH ; previous try level for outer block
                  DD FLAT:$LN19@main ; outer block filter
                  DD FLAT:$LN9@main ; outer block handler
                  DD 00H ; previous try level for inner block
                  DD FLAT:$LN18@main ; inner block filter
                  DD FLAT:$LN13@main ; inner block handler
xdata$x ENDS

$T2 = -40 ; size = 4
$T3 = -36 ; size = 4
_p$ = -32 ; size = 4
tv72 = -28 ; size = 4
__$SEHRec$ = -24 ; size = 24
_main PROC
push ebp
mov ebp, esp
push -2 ; initial previous try level
push OFFSET __sehtable$__main
push OFFSET __except_handler4
mov eax, DWORD PTR fs:0
push eax ; prev
add esp, -24
push ebx
push esi
push edi
mov eax, DWORD PTR ___security_cookie
xor DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+16], eax ; xored pointer to scope table
xor eax, ebp ; ebp ^ security_cookie
push eax
lea eax, DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+8] ; pointer to ↵
↵ VC_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION_RECORD
mov DWORD PTR fs:0, eax
mov DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp], esp
mov DWORD PTR _p$[ebp], 0
mov DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; entering outer try block, setting previous try ↵
↵ level=0
mov DWORD PTR __SEHRec$[ebp+20], 1 ; entering inner try block, setting previous try ↵
↵ level=1
push OFFSET $SG85497 ; 'hello!'
call _printf
add esp, 4
push 0
push 0
push 0
push 1122867 ; 00112233H
call DWORD PTR __imp__RaiseException@16
push OFFSET $SG85499 ; '0x112233 raised. now let''s crash'
call _printf
add esp, 4
mov eax, DWORD PTR _p$[ebp]

```

```

mov     DWORD PTR [eax], 13
mov     DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; exiting inner try block, set previous try level ↗
↳ back to 0
jmp     SHORT $LN2@main

; inner block filter

$LN12@main:
$LN18@main:
mov     ecx, DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
mov     DWORD PTR $T3[ebp], eax
cmp     DWORD PTR $T3[ebp], -1073741819 ; c0000005H
jne     SHORT $LN5@main
mov     DWORD PTR tv72[ebp], 1
jmp     SHORT $LN6@main
$LN5@main:
mov     DWORD PTR tv72[ebp], 0
$LN6@main:
mov     eax, DWORD PTR tv72[ebp]
$LN14@main:
$LN16@main:
ret     0

; inner block handler

$LN13@main:
mov     esp, DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp]
push   OFFSET $SG85501 ; 'access violation, can''t recover'
call   _printf
add     esp, 4
mov     DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; exiting inner try block, setting previous try ↗
↳ level back to 0
$LN2@main:
mov     DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -2 ; exiting both blocks, setting previous try level ↗
↳ back to -2
jmp     SHORT $LN7@main

; outer block filter

$LN8@main:
$LN19@main:
mov     ecx, DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
mov     DWORD PTR $T2[ebp], eax
mov     ecx, DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
push   ecx
mov     edx, DWORD PTR $T2[ebp]
push   edx
call   _filter_user_exceptions
add     esp, 8
$LN10@main:
$LN17@main:
ret     0

; outer block handler

$LN9@main:
mov     esp, DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp]
push   OFFSET $SG85503 ; 'user exception caught'
call   _printf
add     esp, 4
mov     DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -2 ; exiting both blocks, setting previous try level ↗
↳ back to -2
$LN7@main:
xor     eax, eax
mov     ecx, DWORD PTR ___$SEHRec$[ebp+8]
mov     DWORD PTR fs:0, ecx

```

```

    pop    ecx
    pop    edi
    pop    esi
    pop    ebx
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main    ENDP

_code$ = 8 ; size = 4
_ep$ = 12 ; size = 4
_filter_user_exceptions PROC
    push  ebp
    mov   ebp, esp
    mov   eax, DWORD PTR _code$[ebp]
    push  eax
    push  OFFSET $SG85486 ; 'in filter. code=0x%08X'
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 8
    cmp   DWORD PTR _code$[ebp], 1122867 ; 00112233H
    jne   SHORT $LN2@filter_use
    push  OFFSET $SG85488 ; 'yes, that is our exception'
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 4
    mov   eax, 1
    jmp   SHORT $LN3@filter_use
    jmp   SHORT $LN3@filter_use
$LN2@filter_use:
    push  OFFSET $SG85490 ; 'not our exception'
    call  _printf
    add   esp, 4
    xor   eax, eax
$LN3@filter_use:
    pop   ebp
    ret   0
_filter_user_exceptions ENDP

```

Here is a meaning of *cookies*: *Cookie Offset* is a difference between address of saved EBP value in stack and the $EBP \oplus security_cookie$ value in the stack. *Cookie XOR Offset* is additional difference between $EBP \oplus security_cookie$ value and what is stored in the stack. If this equation is not true, a process will be stopped due to stack corruption:

$$security_cookie \oplus (CookieXOROffset + address_of_saved_EBP) == stack[address_of_saved_EBP + CookieOffset]$$

If *Cookie Offset* is -2, it is not present.

Cookies checking is also implemented in my *tracer*, see <https://github.com/dennis714/tracer/blob/master/SEH.c> for details.

It is still possible to fall back to SEH3 in the compilers after (and including) MSVC 2005 by setting */GS-* option, however, *CRT* code will use SEH4 anyway.

59.3.3 Windows x64

As you might think, it is not very fast thing to set up SEH frame at each function prologue. Another performance problem is to change *previous try level* value many times while function execution. So things are changed completely in x64: now all pointers to try blocks, filter and handler functions are stored in another PE-segment *.pdata*, that is where OS exception handler takes all the information.

These are two examples from the previous section compiled for x64:

Listing 59.12: MSVC 2012

```

$SG86276 DB    'hello #1!', 0aH, 00H
$SG86277 DB    'hello #2!', 0aH, 00H
$SG86279 DB    'access violation, can't recover', 0aH, 00H

pdata    SEGMENT
$pdata$main DD  imagerel $LN9
           DD  imagerel $LN9+61
           DD  imagerel $unwind$main
pdata    ENDS
pdata    SEGMENT

```

```

$pdata$main$filt$0 DD imagerel main$filt$0
    DD    imagerel main$filt$0+32
    DD    imagerel $unwind$main$filt$0
pdata    ENDS
xdata    SEGMENT
$unwind$main DD 020609H
    DD    030023206H
    DD    imagerel __C_specific_handler
    DD    01H
    DD    imagerel $LN9+8
    DD    imagerel $LN9+40
    DD    imagerel main$filt$0
    DD    imagerel $LN9+40
$unwind$main$filt$0 DD 020601H
    DD    050023206H
xdata    ENDS

_TEXT    SEGMENT
main     PROC
$LN9:
    push    rbx
    sub     rsp, 32
    xor     ebx, ebx
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86276 ; 'hello #1!'
    call   printf
    mov    DWORD PTR [rbx], 13
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86277 ; 'hello #2!'
    call   printf
    jmp    SHORT $LN8@main
$LN6@main:
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86279 ; 'access violation, can't recover'
    call   printf
    npad   1 ; align next label
$LN8@main:
    xor     eax, eax
    add    rsp, 32
    pop    rbx
    ret    0
main     ENDP
_TEXT    ENDS

text$x   SEGMENT
main$filt$0 PROC
    push    rbp
    sub     rsp, 32
    mov    rbp, rdx
$LN5@main$filt$:
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR [rcx]
    xor    ecx, ecx
    cmp    DWORD PTR [rax], -1073741819; c0000005H
    sete   cl
    mov    eax, ecx
$LN7@main$filt$:
    add    rsp, 32
    pop    rbp
    ret    0
    int    3
main$filt$0 ENDP
text$x   ENDS

```

Listing 59.13: MSVC 2012

```

$SG86277 DB    'in filter. code=0x%08X', 0aH, 00H
$SG86279 DB    'yes, that is our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG86281 DB    'not our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG86288 DB    'hello!', 0aH, 00H
$SG86290 DB    '0x112233 raised. now let's crash', 0aH, 00H
$SG86292 DB    'access violation, can't recover', 0aH, 00H
$SG86294 DB    'user exception caught', 0aH, 00H

```

```

pdata SEGMENT
$pdata$filter_user_exceptions DD imagerel $LN6
    DD imagerel $LN6+73
    DD imagerel $unwind$filter_user_exceptions
$pdata$main DD imagerel $LN14
    DD imagerel $LN14+95
    DD imagerel $unwind$main
pdata ENDS
pdata SEGMENT
$pdata$main$filt$0 DD imagerel main$filt$0
    DD imagerel main$filt$0+32
    DD imagerel $unwind$main$filt$0
$pdata$main$filt$1 DD imagerel main$filt$1
    DD imagerel main$filt$1+30
    DD imagerel $unwind$main$filt$1
pdata ENDS

xdata SEGMENT
$unwind$filter_user_exceptions DD 020601H
    DD 030023206H
$unwind$main DD 020609H
    DD 030023206H
    DD imagerel __C_specific_handler
    DD 02H
    DD imagerel $LN14+8
    DD imagerel $LN14+59
    DD imagerel main$filt$0
    DD imagerel $LN14+59
    DD imagerel $LN14+8
    DD imagerel $LN14+74
    DD imagerel main$filt$1
    DD imagerel $LN14+74
$unwind$main$filt$0 DD 020601H
    DD 050023206H
$unwind$main$filt$1 DD 020601H
    DD 050023206H
xdata ENDS

_TEXT SEGMENT
main PROC
$LN14:
    push rbx
    sub rsp, 32
    xor ebx, ebx
    lea rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86288 ; 'hello!'
    call printf
    xor r9d, r9d
    xor r8d, r8d
    xor edx, edx
    mov ecx, 1122867 ; 00112233H
    call QWORD PTR __imp_RaiseException
    lea rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86290 ; '0x112233 raised. now let''s crash'
    call printf
    mov DWORD PTR [rbx], 13
    jmp SHORT $LN13@main
$LN11@main:
    lea rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86292 ; 'access violation, can''t recover'
    call printf
    npad 1 ; align next label
$LN13@main:
    jmp SHORT $LN9@main
$LN7@main:
    lea rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86294 ; 'user exception caught'
    call printf
    npad 1 ; align next label
$LN9@main:
    xor eax, eax
    add rsp, 32
    pop rbx
    ret 0

```

```

main      ENDP

text$x    SEGMENT
main$filt$0 PROC
    push   rbp
    sub    rsp, 32
    mov    rbp, rdx
$LN10@main$filt$:
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR [rcx]
    xor    ecx, ecx
    cmp    DWORD PTR [rax], -1073741819; c0000005H
    sete   cl
    mov    eax, ecx
$LN12@main$filt$:
    add    rsp, 32
    pop    rbp
    ret    0
    int    3
main$filt$0 ENDP

main$filt$1 PROC
    push   rbp
    sub    rsp, 32
    mov    rbp, rdx
$LN6@main$filt$:
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR [rcx]
    mov    rdx, rcx
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR [rax]
    call   filter_user_exceptions
    npad   1 ; align next label
$LN8@main$filt$:
    add    rsp, 32
    pop    rbp
    ret    0
    int    3
main$filt$1 ENDP
text$x    ENDS

_TEXT     SEGMENT
code$ = 48
ep$ = 56
filter_user_exceptions PROC
$LN6:
    push   rbx
    sub    rsp, 32
    mov    ebx, ecx
    mov    edx, ecx
    lea   rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86277 ; 'in filter. code=0x%08X'
    call   printf
    cmp    ebx, 1122867; 00112233H
    jne    SHORT $LN2@filter_use
    lea   rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86279 ; 'yes, that is our exception'
    call   printf
    mov    eax, 1
    add    rsp, 32
    pop    rbx
    ret    0
$LN2@filter_use:
    lea   rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86281 ; 'not our exception'
    call   printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 32
    pop    rbx
    ret    0
filter_user_exceptions ENDP
_TEXT     ENDS

```

Read [Sko12] for more detailed information about this.

Aside from exception information, `.pdata` is a section containing addresses of almost all function starts and ends, hence it may be useful for a tools targeting automated analysis.

59.3.4 Read more about SEH

[Pie], [Sko12].

59.4 Windows NT: Critical section

Critical sections in any OS are very important in multithreaded environment, mostly used for issuing a guarantee that only one thread will access some data, while blocking other threads and interrupts.

That is how CRITICAL_SECTION structure is declared in Windows NT line OS:

Listing 59.14: (Windows Research Kernel v1.2) public/sdk/inc/nturtl.h

```
typedef struct _RTL_CRITICAL_SECTION {
    PRTL_CRITICAL_SECTION_DEBUG DebugInfo;

    //
    // The following three fields control entering and exiting the critical
    // section for the resource
    //

    LONG LockCount;
    LONG RecursionCount;
    HANDLE OwningThread;           // from the thread's ClientId->UniqueThread
    HANDLE LockSemaphore;
    ULONG_PTR SpinCount;          // force size on 64-bit systems when packed
} RTL_CRITICAL_SECTION, *PRTL_CRITICAL_SECTION;
```

That's is how EnterCriticalSection() function works:

Listing 59.15: Windows 2008/ntdll.dll/x86 (begin)

```
_RtlEnterCriticalSection@4
var_C          = dword ptr -0Ch
var_8          = dword ptr -8
var_4          = dword ptr -4
arg_0          = dword ptr 8

        mov     edi, edi
        push   ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        sub     esp, 0Ch
        push   esi
        push   edi
        mov     edi, [ebp+arg_0]
        lea    esi, [edi+4] ; LockCount
        mov     eax, esi
        lock btr dword ptr [eax], 0
        jnb    wait ; jump if CF=0

loc_7DE922DD:
        mov     eax, large fs:18h
        mov     ecx, [eax+24h]
        mov     [edi+0Ch], ecx
        mov     dword ptr [edi+8], 1
        pop     edi
        xor     eax, eax
        pop     esi
        mov     esp, ebp
        pop     ebp
        retn   4

... skipped
```

The most important instruction in this code fragment is BTR (prefixed with LOCK): the zeroth bit is stored in CF flag and cleared in memory. This is [atomic operation](#), blocking all other CPUs to access this piece of memory (take a notice of LOCK prefix before BTR instruction). If the bit at LockCount was 1, fine, reset it and return from the function: we are in critical section. If not –critical section is already occupied by other thread, then wait. Wait is done there using WaitForSingleObject().

And here is how LeaveCriticalSection() function works:

Listing 59.16: Windows 2008/ntdll.dll/x86 (begin)

```

_RtlLeaveCriticalSection@4 proc near
arg_0          = dword ptr 8
               mov     edi, edi
               push   ebp
               mov     ebp, esp
               push   esi
               mov     esi, [ebp+arg_0]
               add     dword ptr [esi+8], 0FFFFFFFFh ; RecursionCount
               jnz    short loc_7DE922B2
               push   ebx
               push   edi
               lea    edi, [esi+4] ; LockCount
               mov     dword ptr [esi+0Ch], 0
               mov     ebx, 1
               mov     eax, edi
               lock  xadd [eax], ebx
               inc     ebx
               cmp     ebx, 0FFFFFFFFh
               jnz    loc_7DEA8EB7

loc_7DE922B0:
               pop     edi
               pop     ebx

loc_7DE922B2:
               xor     eax, eax
               pop     esi
               pop     ebp
               retn   4

... skipped

```

XADD is “exchange and add”. In this case, it summing LockCount value and 1 and stores result in EBX register, and at the same time 1 goes to LockCount. This operation is atomic since it is prefixed by LOCK as well, meaning that all other CPUs or CPU cores in system are blocked from accessing this point of memory.

LOCK prefix is very important: two threads, each of which working on separate CPUs or CPU cores may try to enter critical section and to modify the value in memory simultaneously, this will result in unpredictable behaviour.

Part V

Tools

Chapter 60

Disassembler

60.1 IDA

Older freeware version is available for downloading ¹.

Short hot-keys cheatsheet: [E.1](#)

¹<http://www.hex-rays.com/idapro/idadownfreeware.htm>

Chapter 61

Debugger

61.1 tracer

I use *tracer*¹ instead of debugger.

I stopped to use debugger eventually, since all I need from it is to spot a function's arguments while execution, or registers' state at some point. To load debugger each time is too much, so I wrote a small utility *tracer*. It has console-interface, working from command-line, enable us to intercept function execution, set breakpoints at arbitrary places, spot registers' state, modify it, etc.

However, as for learning purposes, it is highly advisable to trace code in debugger manually, watch how register's state changing (e.g. classic SoftICE, OllyDbg, WinDbg highlighting changed registers), flags, data, change them manually, watch reaction, etc.

61.2 OllyDbg

Very popular user-mode win32 debugger:

<http://www.ollydbg.de/>.

Short hot-keys cheatsheet: [E.2](#)

61.3 GDB

Not very popular debugger among reverse engineers, but very comfortable nevertheless. Some commands: [E.5](#).

¹<http://yurichev.com/tracer-en.html>

Chapter 62

System calls tracing

62.0.1 strace / dtruss

Will show which system calls (syscalls(57)) are called by process right now. For example:

```
# strace df -h
...
access("/etc/ld.so.nohwcap", F_OK) = -1 ENOENT (No such file or directory)
open("/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6", O_RDONLY|O_CLOEXEC) = 3
read(3, "\177ELF\1\1\1\0\0\0\0\0\0\0\0\0\0\3\0\3\0\1\0\0\0\220\232\1\0004\0\0\0"... , 512) = 512
fstat64(3, {st_mode=S_IFREG|0755, st_size=1770984, ...}) = 0
mmap2(NULL, 1780508, PROT_READ|PROT_EXEC, MAP_PRIVATE|MAP_DENYWRITE, 3, 0) = 0xb75b3000
```

Mac OS X has dtruss for the same aim.

The Cygwin also has strace, but if I understood correctly, it works only for .exe-files compiled for cygwin environment itself.

Chapter 63

Decompilers

There are only one known, publically available, high-quality decompiler to C code: Hex-Rays:
<https://www.hex-rays.com/products/decompiler/>

Chapter 64

Other tools

- Microsoft Visual Studio Express¹: Stripped-down free Visual Studio version, convenient for simple experiments. Some useful options: [E.3](#).
- Hiew² for small modifications of code in binary files.
- binary grep: the small utility for constants searching (or just any byte sequence) in a big pile of files, including non-executable: <https://github.com/yurichev/bgrep>.

¹<http://www.microsoft.com/express/Downloads/>

²<http://www.hiew.ru/>

Part VI

More examples

Chapter 65

Task manager practical joke (Windows Vista)

I have only 4 CPU cores on my computer, so the Windows Task Manager shows only 4 CPU load graphs.

Let's see if it's possible to hack Task Manager slightly so it would detect more CPU cores on a computer.

Let us first think, how Task Manager would know number of cores? There are `GetSystemInfo()` win32 function present in win32 userspace which can tell us this. But it's not imported in `taskmgr.exe`. There are, however, another one in `NTAPI`, `NtQuerySystemInformation()`, which is used in `taskmgr.exe` in several places. To get number of cores, one should call this function with `SystemBasicInformation` constant in first argument (which is zero¹).

Second argument should point to the buffer, which will receive all the information.

So we need to find all calls to the `NtQuerySystemInformation(0, ?, ?, ?)` function. Let's open `taskmgr.exe` in IDA. What is always good about Microsoft executables is that IDA can download corresponding `PDB` file for exactly this executable and add all function names. It seems, Task Manager written in C++ and some of function names and classes are really speaking for themselves. There are classes `CAdapter`, `CNetPage`, `CPerfPage`, `CProcInfo`, `CProcPage`, `CSvcPage`, `CTaskPage`, `CUserPage`. Apparently, each class corresponding each tab in Task Manager.

I visited each call and I add comment with a value which is passed as the first function argument. There are "not zero" I wrote at some places, because, the value there was not clearly zero, but something really different (more about this in the second part of this chapter). And we are looking for zero passed as argument after all.

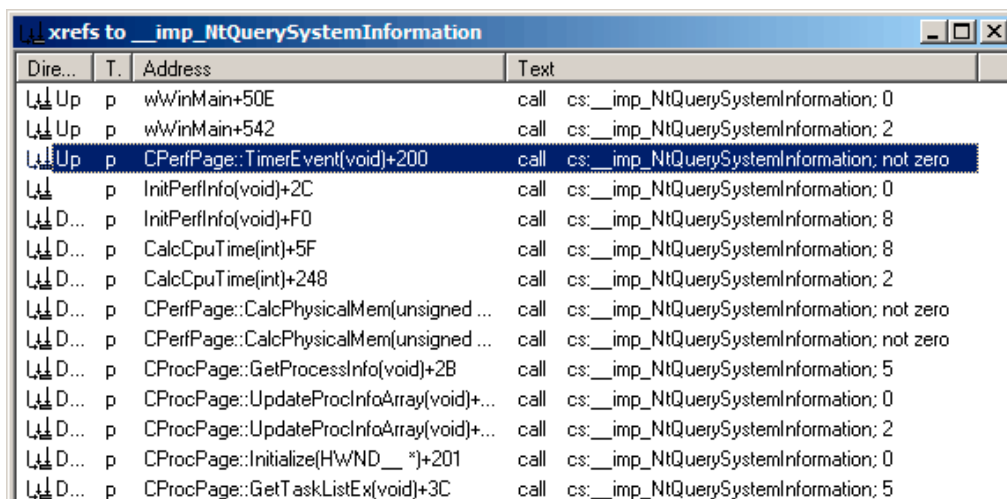


Figure 65.1: IDA: cross references to `NtQuerySystemInformation()`

Yes, the names are really speaking for themselves.

When I closely investigating each place where `NtQuerySystemInformation(0, ?, ?, ?)` is called, I quickly found what I need in the `InitPerfInfo()` function:

Listing 65.1: `taskmgr.exe` (Windows Vista)

```
.text:10000B4B3      xor     r9d, r9d
.text:10000B4B6      lea   rdx, [rsp+0C78h+var_C58] ; buffer
.text:10000B4BB      xor     ecx, ecx
.text:10000B4BD      lea   ebp, [r9+40h]
.text:10000B4C1      mov   r8d, ebp
.text:10000B4C4      call  cs:__imp_NtQuerySystemInformation ; 0
.text:10000B4CA      xor     ebx, ebx
.text:10000B4CC      cmp   eax, ebx
.text:10000B4CE      jge   short loc_10000B4D7
```

¹MSDN: [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724509\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724509(v=vs.85).aspx)

```

.text:1000B4D0
.text:1000B4D0 loc_1000B4D0: ; CODE XREF: InitPerfInfo(void)+97
.text:1000B4D0 ; InitPerfInfo(void)+AF
.text:1000B4D0 xor al, al
.text:1000B4D2 jmp loc_1000B5EA
.text:1000B4D7 ; -----
.text:1000B4D7
.text:1000B4D7 loc_1000B4D7: ; CODE XREF: InitPerfInfo(void)+36
.text:1000B4D7 mov eax, [rsp+0C78h+var_C50]
.text:1000B4DB mov esi, ebx
.text:1000B4DD mov r12d, 3E80h
.text:1000B4E3 mov cs:?g_PageSize@@3KA, eax ; ulong g_PageSize
.text:1000B4E9 shr eax, 0Ah
.text:1000B4EC lea r13, __ImageBase
.text:1000B4F3 imul eax, [rsp+0C78h+var_C4C]
.text:1000B4F8 cmp [rsp+0C78h+var_C20], bp1
.text:1000B4FD mov cs:?g_MEMMax@@3_JA, rax ; __int64 g_MEMMax
.text:1000B504 movzx eax, [rsp+0C78h+var_C20] ; number of CPUs
.text:1000B509 cmova eax, ebp
.text:1000B50C cmp al, bl
.text:1000B50E mov cs:?g_cProcessors@@3EA, al ; uchar g_cProcessors

```

`g_cProcessors` is a global variable, and this name was assigned by IDA according to [PDB](#) loaded from the Microsoft symbol server.

The byte is taken from `var_C20`. And `var_C58` is passed to `NtQuerySystemInformation()` as a pointer to the receiving buffer. The difference between `0xC20` and `0xC58` is `0x38` (56). Let's take a look at returning structure format, which we can find in MSDN:

```

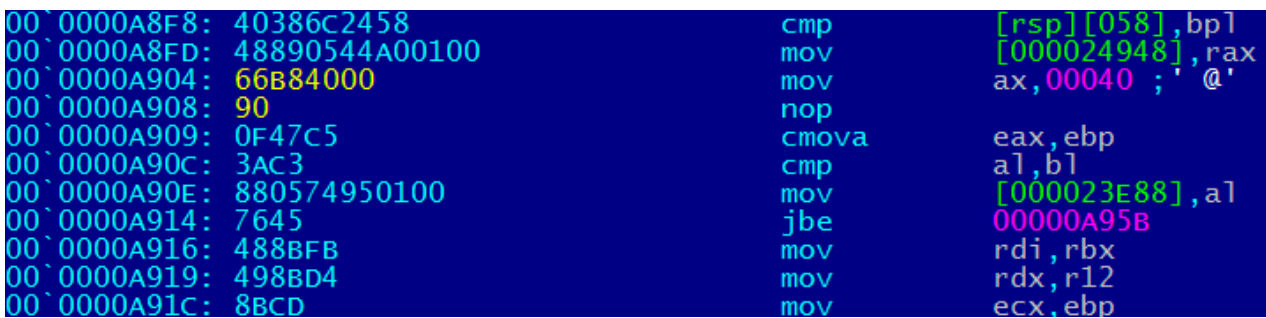
typedef struct _SYSTEM_BASIC_INFORMATION {
    BYTE Reserved1[24];
    PVOID Reserved2[4];
    CCHAR NumberOfProcessors;
} SYSTEM_BASIC_INFORMATION;

```

This is x64 system, so each `PVOID` takes 8 byte here. So all *reserved* fields in the structure takes $24 + 4 * 8 = 56$. Oh yes, this means, `var_C20` is the local stack is exactly `NumberOfProcessors` field of the `SYSTEM_BASIC_INFORMATION` structure.

Let's check if I'm right. Copy `taskmgr.exe` from `C:\Windows\System32` to some other folder (so the *Windows Resource Protection* will not try to restore patched `taskmgr.exe`).

Let's open it in Hiew and find the place:



```

00` 0000A8F8: 40386C2458 cmp [rsp][058], bp1
00` 0000A8FD: 48890544A00100 mov [000024948], rax
00` 0000A904: 66B84000 mov ax, 0004 ; '@'
00` 0000A908: 90 nop
00` 0000A909: 0F47C5 cmova eax, ebp
00` 0000A90C: 3AC3 cmp al, bl
00` 0000A90E: 880574950100 mov [000023E88], al
00` 0000A914: 7645 jbe 0000A95B
00` 0000A916: 488BFB mov rdi, rbx
00` 0000A919: 498BD4 mov rdx, r12
00` 0000A91C: 8BCD mov ecx, ebp

```

Figure 65.2: Hiew: find the place to be patched

Let's replace `MOVZX` instruction by our. Let's pretend we've got 64 CPU cores. Add one additional `NOP` (because our instruction is shorter than original one):

```

00` 0000A8F8: 40386C2458      cmp     [rsp][058],bp1
00` 0000A8FD: 48890544A00100  mov     [000024948],rax
00` 0000A904: 66B84000        mov     ax,00040 ; '@'
00` 0000A908: 90              nop
00` 0000A909: 0F47C5         cmova  eax,ebp
00` 0000A90C: 3AC3           cmp     al,b1
00` 0000A90E: 880574950100   mov     [000023E88],al
00` 0000A914: 7645           jbe    0000A95B
00` 0000A916: 488BFB        mov     rdi,rbx
00` 0000A919: 498BD4        mov     rdx,r12
00` 0000A91C: 8BCD         mov     ecx,ebp

```

Figure 65.3: Hiew: patch it

And it works! Of course, data in graphs is not correct. At times, Task Manager even shows overall CPU load more than 100%.

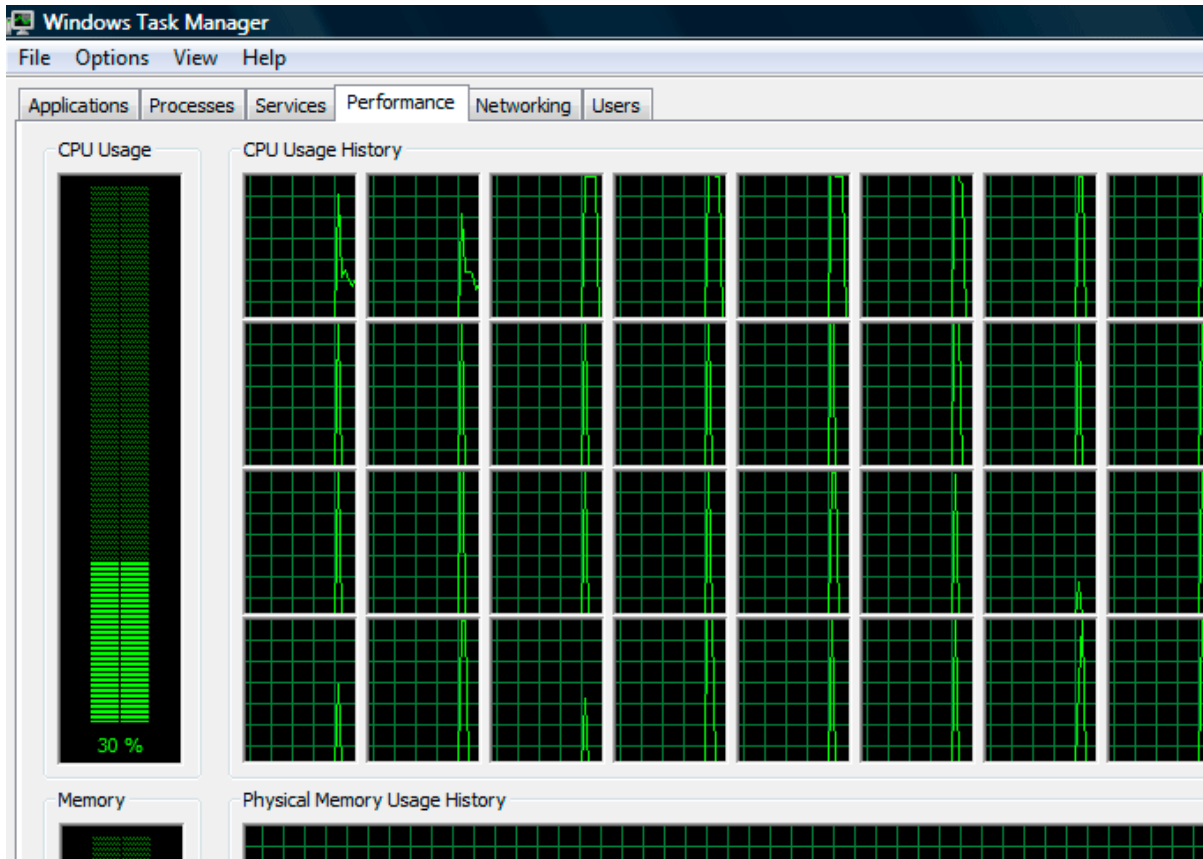


Figure 65.4: Fooled Windows Task Manager

I picked number of 64, because Task Manager is crashing if you try to set larger value. Apparently, Task Manager in Windows Vista was not tested on computer with larger count of cores. So there are probably some static data structures inside it limited to 64 cores.

65.1 Using LEA to load values

Sometimes, LEA is used in `taskmgr.exe` instead of MOV to set first argument of `NtQuerySystemInformation()`:

Listing 65.2: `taskmgr.exe` (Windows Vista)

```

xor     r9d, r9d
div     dword ptr [rsp+4C8h+WndClass.lpfWndProc]
lea     rdx, [rsp+4C8h+VersionInformation]
lea     ecx, [r9+2] ; put 2 to ECX
mov     r8d, 138h
mov     ebx, eax
; ECX=SystemPerformanceInformation
call    cs:__imp_NtQuerySystemInformation ; 2

```

```
    ...  
    mov     r8d, 30h  
    lea    r9, [rsp+298h+var_268]  
    lea    rdx, [rsp+298h+var_258]  
    lea    ecx, [r8-2Dh] ; put 3 to ECX  
; ECX=SystemTimeOfDayInformation  
    call   cs:__imp_NtQuerySystemInformation ; not zero  
  
    ...  
  
    mov     rbp, [rsi+8]  
    mov     r8d, 20h  
    lea    r9, [rsp+98h+arg_0]  
    lea    rdx, [rsp+98h+var_78]  
    lea    ecx, [r8+2Fh] ; put 0x4F to ECX  
    mov     [rsp+98h+var_60], ebx  
    mov     [rsp+98h+var_68], rbp  
; ECX=SystemSuperfetchInformation  
    call   cs:__imp_NtQuerySystemInformation ; not zero
```

I honestly, don't know why, but that is what [MSVC](#) often does. Maybe this some kind of optiization and LEA works faster or better than load value using MOV?

Another example of such thing is: [55.5.1](#).

Chapter 66

Color Lines game practical joke

This is a very popular game with several implementations exist. I took one of them, called BallTriX, from 1997, available freely at <http://www.download-central.ws/Win32/Games/B/BallTriX/>. Here is how it looks:

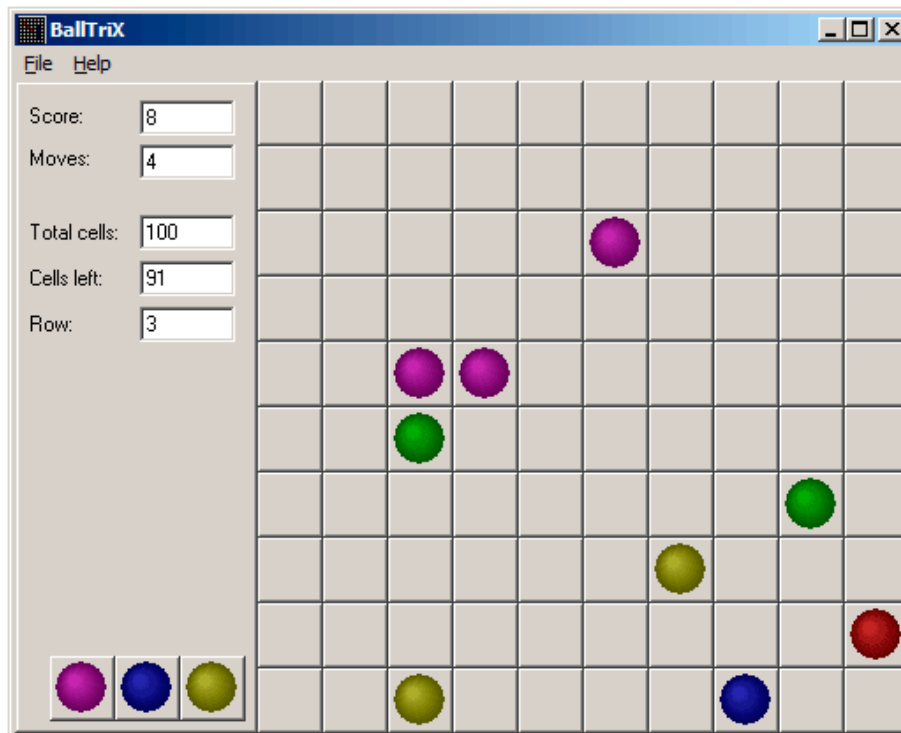


Figure 66.1: How this game looks usually

So let's see, will it be possible find random generator and do some trick with it. [IDA](#) quickly recognize standard `_rand` function in `balltrix.exe` at `0x00403DA0`. [IDA](#) also shows that it is called only from one place:

```
.text:00402C9C sub_402C9C      proc near                ; CODE XREF: sub_402ACA+52
.text:00402C9C                                     ; sub_402ACA+64 ...
.text:00402C9C arg_0          = dword ptr 8
.text:00402C9C                push    ebp
.text:00402C9D                mov     ebp, esp
.text:00402C9F                push    ebx
.text:00402CA0                push    esi
.text:00402CA1                push    edi
.text:00402CA2                mov     eax, dword_40D430
.text:00402CA7                imul   eax, dword_40D440
.text:00402CAE                add     eax, dword_40D5C8
.text:00402CB4                mov     ecx, 32000
.text:00402CB9                cdq
.text:00402CBA                idiv   ecx
.text:00402CBC                mov     dword_40D440, edx
.text:00402CC2                call   _rand
.text:00402CC7                cdq
.text:00402CC8                idiv   [ebp+arg_0]
.text:00402CCB                mov     dword_40D430, edx
.text:00402CD1                mov     eax, dword_40D430
.text:00402CD6                jmp    $+5
.text:00402CDB                pop     edi
.text:00402CDC                pop     esi
.text:00402CDD                pop     ebx
.text:00402CDE                leave
.text:00402CDF                retn
.text:00402CDF sub_402C9C      endp
```

I'll call it "random". Let's not to dive into this function's code yet.

This function is reffered from 3 places.

Here is first two:

```
.text:00402B16                mov     eax, dword_40C03C ; 10 here
.text:00402B1B                push   eax
.text:00402B1C                call   random
.text:00402B21                add     esp, 4
.text:00402B24                inc     eax
.text:00402B25                mov     [ebp+var_C], eax
.text:00402B28                mov     eax, dword_40C040 ; 10 here
.text:00402B2D                push   eax
.text:00402B2E                call   random
.text:00402B33                add     esp, 4
```

Here is the third:

```
.text:00402BBB                mov     eax, dword_40C058 ; 5 here
.text:00402BC0                push   eax
.text:00402BC1                call   random
.text:00402BC6                add     esp, 4
.text:00402BC9                inc     eax
```

So the function have only one argument. 10 is passed in first two cases and 5 in third. We may also notice that the board has size 10×10 and there are 5 possible colors. This is it! The standard `rand()` function returns a number in $0..0x7FFF$ range and this is often inconvenient, so many programmers implement their own random functions which returns a random number in specified range. In our case, range is $0..n-1$ and n is passed as the sole argument to the function. We can quickly check this in any debugger.

So let's fix third function return at zero. I first replaced three instructions (PUSH/CALL/ADD) by [NOPs](#). Then I add `XOR EAX, EAX` instruction, to clear EAX register.

```
.00402BB8: 83C410      add     esp, 010
.00402BBB: A158C04000 mov     eax, [00040C058]
.00402BC0: 31C0       xor     eax, eax
.00402BC2: 90        nop
.00402BC3: 90        nop
.00402BC4: 90        nop
.00402BC5: 90        nop
```

```
.00402BC6: 90          nop
.00402BC7: 90          nop
.00402BC8: 90          nop
.00402BC9: 40          inc         eax
.00402BCA: 8B4DF8     mov         ecx,[ebp][-8]
.00402BCD: 8D0C49     lea        ecx,[ecx][ecx]*2
.00402BD0: 8B15F4D54000 mov        edx,[00040D5F4]
```

So what I did is replaced call to `random()` function by a code which always returns zero.

Let's run it now:

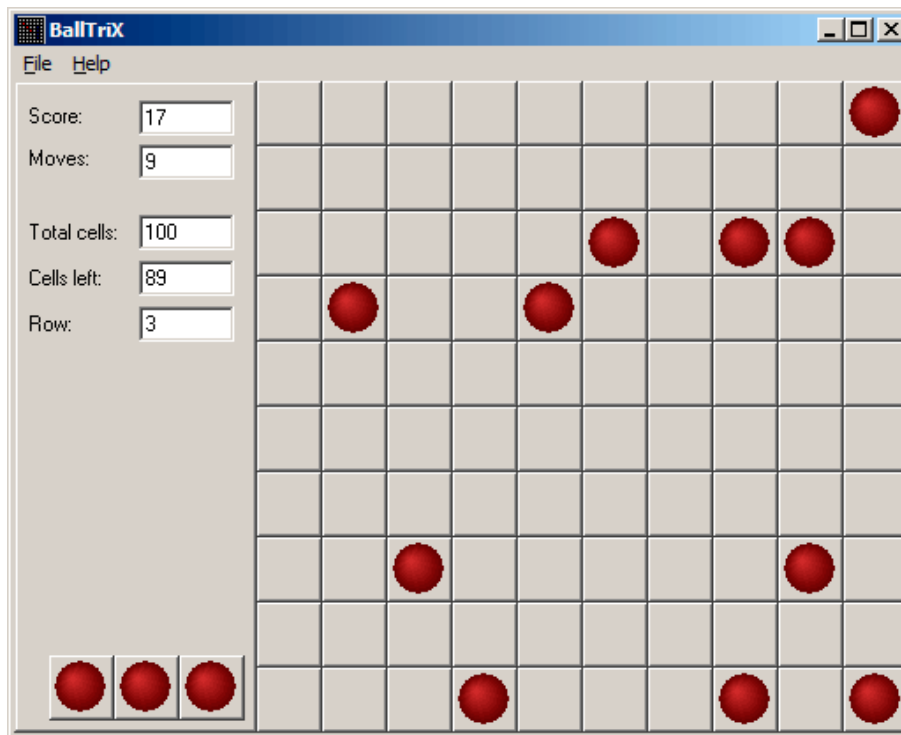


Figure 66.2: Practical joke works

Oh yes, it works¹.

But why arguments to the `random()` functions are global variables? That's just because it's possible to change board size in game settings, so these values are not hardcoded. 10 and 5 values are just defaults.

¹I once did this as a joke for my coworkers with a hope they stop playing. They didn't.

Chapter 67

Minesweeper (Windows XP)

I'm not very good at playing Minesweeper, so I will try to reveal hidden mines in debugger.

As we know, Minesweeper places mines randomly, so there should be some kind of random numbers generator or call to the standard `rand()` C-function. What is really cool about reversing Microsoft products is that there are PDB file exist with symbols (function names, etc). When I load `winmine.exe` into IDA, it downloads PDB file exactly for this executable and adds all names.

So here it is, the only call to `rand()` is this function:

```
.text:01003940 ; __stdcall Rnd(x)
.text:01003940 _Rnd@4      proc near                ; CODE XREF: StartGame()+53
.text:01003940                                     ; StartGame()+61
.text:01003940
.text:01003940 arg_0          = dword ptr 4
.text:01003940
.text:01003940          call     ds:__imp__rand
.text:01003946          cdq
.text:01003947          idiv    [esp+arg_0]
.text:0100394B          mov     eax, edx
.text:0100394D          retn   4
.text:0100394D _Rnd@4      endp
```

IDA named it so, and it was the name given to it by Minesweeper developers.

The function is very simple:

```
int Rnd(int limit)
{
    return rand() % limit;
};
```

(There are was no "limit" name in PDB-file; I named this argument so.)

So it returns a random value in range from 0 to specified limit.

`Rnd()` is called only from one place, this is function called `StartGame()`, and as it seems, this is exactly the code which place mines:

```
.text:010036C7          push   _xBoxMac
.text:010036CD          call  _Rnd@4                ; Rnd(x)
.text:010036D2          push   _yBoxMac
.text:010036D8          mov    esi, eax
.text:010036DA          inc    esi
.text:010036DB          call  _Rnd@4                ; Rnd(x)
.text:010036E0          inc    eax
.text:010036E1          mov    ecx, eax
.text:010036E3          shl   ecx, 5                ; ECX=ECX*32
.text:010036E6          test  _rgBlk[ecx+esi], 80h
.text:010036EE          jnz   short loc_10036C7
.text:010036F0          shl   eax, 5                ; ECX=ECX*32
.text:010036F3          lea   eax, _rgBlk[eax+esi]
.text:010036FA          or    byte ptr [eax], 80h
.text:010036FD          dec   _cBombStart
.text:01003703          jnz   short loc_10036C7
```

Minesweeper allows to set board size, so the X (`xBoxMac`) and Y (`yBoxMac`) of board are global variables. They are passed to `Rnd()` and random coordinates are generated. Mine is placed by OR at `0x010036FA`. And if it was placed before (it's possible if `Rnd()` pair will generate coordinates pair which already was generated), then TEST and JNZ at `0x010036E6` will jump to generation routine again.

`cBombStart` is the global variable containing total number of mines. So this is loop.

The width of array is 32 (we can conclude this by looking at SHL instruction, which multiplies one of the coordinates by 32).

The size of `rgBlk` global array can be easily determined by difference between `rgBlk` label in data segment and next known one. It is 0x360 (864):

```
.data:01005340 _rgBlk          db 360h dup(?)          ; DATA XREF: MainWndProc(x,x,x,x)+574
.data:01005340                                     ; DisplayBlk(x,x)+23
.data:010056A0 _Preferences    dd ?                      ; DATA XREF: FixMenus()+2
...
```

$$864/32 = 27.$$

So the array size is $27 * 32$? It is close to what we know: when I try to set board size to $100 * 100$ in Minesweeper settings, it fallbacks to the board of size $24 * 30$. So this is maximal board size here. And the array has fixed size for any board size.

So let's see all this in OllyDbg. I run Minesweeper, I attaching OllyDbg to it and I see memory dump at the address of `rgBlk` array(0x01005340)¹.

So I got this memory dump of array:

Address	Hex dump
01005340	10 10 10 10|10 10 10 10|10 10 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005350	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005360	10 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005370	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005380	10 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005390	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
010053A0	10 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|8F 0F 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
010053B0	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
010053C0	10 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
010053D0	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
010053E0	10 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
010053F0	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005400	10 0F 0F 8F|0F 0F 8F 0F|0F 0F 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005410	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005420	10 8F 0F 0F|8F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005430	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005440	10 8F 0F 0F|0F 0F 8F 0F|0F 8F 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005450	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005460	10 0F 0F 0F|0F 8F 0F 0F|0F 8F 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005470	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005480	10 10 10 10|10 10 10 10|10 10 10 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
01005490	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
010054A0	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
010054B0	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|
010054C0	0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|0F 0F 0F 0F|

OllyDbg, like any other hexadecimal editor, shows 16 bytes per line. So each 32-byte array row occupies here exactly 2 lines.

This is beginner level (9*9 board).

There are some square structure can be seen visually (0x10 bytes).

I click "Run" in OllyDbg to unfreeze Minesweeper process, then I clicked randomly at Minesweeper window and trapped into mine, but now I see all mines:

¹All addresses here are for Minesweeper for Windows XP SP3 english. They may differ for other service packs.



Figure 67.1: Mines

By comparing mine places and dump, we can conclude that 0x10 mean border, 0x0F—empty block, 0x8F—mine. Now I added commentaries and also enclosed all 0x8F bytes into square brackets:

```
border:
01005340  10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005350  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
line #1:
01005360  10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005370  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
line #2:
01005380  10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005390  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
line #3:
010053A0  10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
010053B0  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
line #4:
010053C0  10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
010053D0  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
line #5:
010053E0  10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
010053F0  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
line #6:
01005400  10 0F 0F[8F]0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005410  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
line #7:
01005420  10[8F]0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005430  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
line #8:
01005440  10[8F]0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F 0F[8F]10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005450  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
line #9:
01005460  10 0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F[8F]10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005470  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
border:
01005480  10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005490  0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
```

Now I removed all border bytes (0x10) and what's beyond those:

```
0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F
0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
0F 0F[8F]0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F
[8F]0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
[8F]0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F 0F[8F]
0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F[8F]
```

Yes, these are mines, now it can be clearly seen and compared with screenshot.

What is interesting is that I can modify array right in OllyDbg. I removed all mines by changing all 0x8F bytes by 0x0F, and then what I got in Minesweeper:

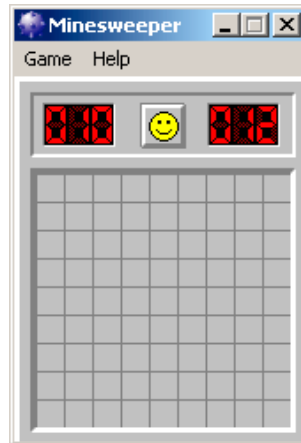


Figure 67.2: I removed all mines in debugger

I also removed all them and add them at the first line:

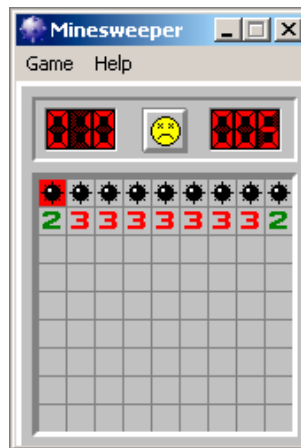


Figure 67.3: Mines I set in debugger

Well, debugger is not very convenient for eavesdropping (which was my goal anyway), so I wrote small utility to dump board contents:

```
// Windows XP MineSweeper cheater
// written by dennis(a)yurichev.com for http://beginners.re/ book
#include <windows.h>
#include <assert.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main (int argc, char * argv[])
{
    int i, j;
    HANDLE h;
    DWORD PID, address, rd;
    BYTE board[27][32];

    if (argc!=3)
    {
        printf ("Usage: %s <PID> <address>\n", argv[0]);
        return 0;
    };

    assert (argv[1]!=NULL);
    assert (argv[2]!=NULL);

    assert (sscanf (argv[1], "%d", &PID)==1);
    assert (sscanf (argv[2], "%x", &address)==1);
```

```

h=OpenProcess (PROCESS_VM_OPERATION | PROCESS_VM_READ | PROCESS_VM_WRITE, FALSE, PID);

if (h==NULL)
{
    DWORD e=GetLastError();
    printf ("OpenProcess error: %08X\n", e);
    return 0;
};

if (ReadProcessMemory (h, (LPVOID)address, board, sizeof(board), &rd)!=TRUE)
{
    printf ("ReadProcessMemory() failed\n");
    return 0;
};

for (i=1; i<26; i++)
{
    if (board[i][0]==0x10 && board[i][1]==0x10)
        break; // end of board
    for (j=1; j<31; j++)
    {
        if (board[i][j]==0x10)
            break; // board border
        if (board[i][j]==0x8F)
            printf ("*");
        else
            printf (" ");
    };
    printf ("\n");
};

CloseHandle (h);
};

```

Just set [PID](#)^{2 3} and address of array (0x01005340 for Windows XP SP3 english) and it will dump it ⁴. It attaches to win32 process by [PID](#) and just read process memory by address.

67.1 Exercises

- Why border bytes (0x10) are exist in array? What they are for if they are not visible in Minesweeper interface? How to do without them?
- As it turns out, there are more values possible (for open blocks, for flagged by user, etc). Try to find meaning of each.
- Modify my utility so it will remove all mines or set them by fixed pattern you want in the Minesweeper process currently running.
- Modify my utility so it can work without array address specified and without [PDB](#) file. Yes, it's possible to find board information in data segment of Minesweeper running process automatically. Hint: [F.5.1](#).

²Program/process ID

³PID can be shown in Task Manager (enable it in "View → Select Columns")

⁴Compiled executable is here: http://beginners.re/examples/minesweeper_winXP/minesweeper_cheater.exe

Chapter 68

Hand decompiling + Z3 SMT solver

Amateur cryptography is usually (unintentionally) very weak and can be broken easily—for cryptographers, of course.

But let's pretend we are not among these crypto-professionals.

I once found this one-way hash function, converting 64-bit value to another one and we need to try to reverse its flow back.

But what is hash-function? Simplest example is CRC32, an algorithm providing “stronger” checksum for integrity checking purposes. It is impossible to restore original text from the hash value, it just has much less information: there can be long text, but CRC32 result is always limited to 32 bits. But CRC32 is not cryptographically secure: it is known how to alter a text in that way so the resulting CRC32 hash value will be one we need. Cryptographical hash functions are protected from this. They are widely used to hash user passwords in order to store them in the database, like MD5, SHA1, etc. Indeed: an internet forum database may not contain user passwords (stolen database will compromise all user's passwords) but only hashes (a cracker will not be able to reveal passwords). Besides, an internet forum engine is not aware of your password, it should only check if its hash is the same as in the database, then it will give you access in this case. One of the simplest passwords cracking methods is just to brute-force all passwords in order to wait when resulting value will be the same as we need. Other methods are much more complex.

68.1 Hand decompiling

Here its assembly language listing in [IDA](#):

```
sub_401510    proc near
              ; ECX = input
              mov     rdx, 5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84h
              mov     rax, rcx          ; input
              imul   rax, rdx
              mov     rdx, 388D76AEE8CB1500h
              mov     ecx, eax
              and     ecx, 0Fh
              ror     rax, cl
              xor     rax, rdx
              mov     rdx, 0D2E9EE7E83C4285Bh
              mov     ecx, eax
              and     ecx, 0Fh
              rol     rax, cl
              lea    r8, [rax+rdx]
              mov     rdx, 8888888888888889h
              mov     rax, r8
              mul     rdx
              shr     rdx, 5
              mov     rax, rdx
              lea    rcx, [r8+rdx*4]
              shl     rax, 6
              sub     rcx, rax
              mov     rax, r8
              rol     rax, cl
              ; EAX = output
              retn
sub_401510    endp
```

The example was compiled by GCC, so the first argument is passed in ECX.

If Hex-Rays is not in list of our possessions, or we distrust to it, we may try to reverse this code manually. One method is to represent CPU registers as local C variables and replace each instruction by one-line equivalent expression, like:

```
uint64_t f(uint64_t input)
{
    uint64_t rax, rbx, rcx, rdx, r8;

    ecx=input;

    rdx=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84;
    rax=rcx;
    rax*=rdx;
    rdx=0x388D76AEE8CB1500;
    rax=_lrotr(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate right
    rax^=rdx;
    rdx=0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B;
    rax=_lrotl(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate left
    r8=rax+rdx;
    rdx=0x8888888888888889;
    rax=r8;
    rax*=rdx;
    rdx=rdx>>5;
    rax=rdx;
    rcx=r8+rdx*4;
    rax=rax<<6;
    rcx=rcx-rax;
    rax=r8
    rax=_lrotl (rax, rcx&0xFF); // rotate left
    return rax;
};
```

If to be careful enough, this code can be compiled and will even work in the same way as original one.

Then, we will rewrite it gradually, keeping in mind all registers usage. Attention and focusing is very important here – any tiny typo may ruin all your work!

Here is a first step:

```
uint64_t f(uint64_t input)
{
    uint64_t rax, rbx, rcx, rdx, r8;

    ecx=input;

    rdx=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84;
    rax=rcx;
    rax*=rdx;
    rdx=0x388D76AEE8CB1500;
    rax=_lrotr(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate right
    rax^=rdx;
    rdx=0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B;
    rax=_lrotl(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate left
    r8=rax+rdx;

    rdx=0x8888888888888889;
    rax=r8;
    rax*=rdx;
    // RDX here is a high part of multiplication result
    rdx=rdx>>5;
    // RDX here is division result!
    rax=rdx;

    rcx=r8+rdx*4;
    rax=rax<<6;
    rcx=rcx-rax;
    rax=r8
    rax=_lrotl (rax, rcx&0xFF); // rotate left
    return rax;
};
```

Next step:

```
uint64_t f(uint64_t input)
```

```

{
    uint64_t rax, rbx, rcx, rdx, r8;

    ecx=input;

    rdx=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84;
    rax=rcx;
    rax*=rdx;
    rdx=0x388D76AEE8CB1500;
    rax=_lrotr(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate right
    rax^=rdx;
    rdx=0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B;
    rax=_lrotl(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate left
    r8=rax+rdx;

    rdx=0x8888888888888889;
    rax=r8;
    rax*=rdx;
    // RDX here is a high part of multiplication result
    rdx=rdx>>5;
    // RDX here is division result!
    rax=rdx;

    rcx=(r8+rdx*4)-(rax<<6);
    rax=r8
    rax=_lrotl (rax, rcx&0xFF); // rotate left
    return rax;
};

```

We may spot division using multiplication (16.3). Indeed, let's calculate divider in Wolfram Mathematica:

Listing 68.1: Wolfram Mathematica

```

In[1]:=N[2^(64 + 5)/16^8888888888888889]
Out[1]:=60.

```

We get this:

```

uint64_t f(uint64_t input)
{
    uint64_t rax, rbx, rcx, rdx, r8;

    ecx=input;

    rdx=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84;
    rax=rcx;
    rax*=rdx;
    rdx=0x388D76AEE8CB1500;
    rax=_lrotr(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate right
    rax^=rdx;
    rdx=0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B;
    rax=_lrotl(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate left
    r8=rax+rdx;

    rax=rdx=r8/60;

    rcx=(r8+rax*4)-(rax*64);
    rax=r8
    rax=_lrotl (rax, rcx&0xFF); // rotate left
    return rax;
};

```

Another step:

```

uint64_t f(uint64_t input)
{
    uint64_t rax, rbx, rcx, rdx, r8;

    rax=input;
    rax*=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84;
    rax=_lrotr(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate right
    rax^=0x388D76AEE8CB1500;

```



```

    rax=_lrotl(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate left
    r8=rax+0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B;

    rcx=r8-(r8/60)*60;
    rax=r8
    rax=_lrotl (rax, rcx&0xFF); // rotate left
    return rax;
};

```

By simple reducing, we finally see that it's not **quotient** calculated, but division remainder:

```

uint64_t f(uint64_t input)
{
    uint64_t rax, rbx, rcx, rdx, r8;

    rax=input;
    rax*=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84;
    rax=_lrotr(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate right
    rax^=0x388D76AEE8CB1500;
    rax=_lrotl(rax, rax&0xF); // rotate left
    r8=rax+0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B;

    return _lrotl (r8, r8 % 60); // rotate left
};

```

We end up on something fancy formatted source-code:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <stdbool.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <intrin.h>

#define C1 0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84
#define C2 0x388D76AEE8CB1500
#define C3 0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B

uint64_t hash(uint64_t v)
{
    v*=C1;
    v=_lrotr(v, v&0xF); // rotate right
    v^=C2;
    v=_lrotl(v, v&0xF); // rotate left
    v+=C3;
    v=_lrotl(v, v % 60); // rotate left
    return v;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%llu\n", hash(...));
};

```

Since we are not cryptoanalysts we can't find an easy way to generate input value for some specific output value. Rotate instruction coefficients are look frightening—it's a warranty that the function is not bijective, it has collisions, or, speaking more simply, many inputs may be possible for one output.

Brute-force is not solution because values are 64-bit ones, that's beyond reality.

68.2 Now let's use Z3 SMT solver

Still, without any special cryptographic knowledge, we may try to break this algorithm using excellent SMT solver from Microsoft Research named Z3¹. It is in fact theorem prover, but we will use it as SMT solver. In terms of simplicity, we may think about it as a system capable of solving huge equation systems.

Here is a Python source code:

```

1 from z3 import *
2
3 C1=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84

```

¹<http://z3.codeplex.com/>

```

4 C2=0x388D76AEE8CB1500
5 C3=0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B
6
7 inp, i1, i2, i3, i4, i5, i6, outp = BitVecs('inp i1 i2 i3 i4 i5 i6 outp', 64)
8
9 s = Solver()
10 s.add(i1==inp*C1)
11 s.add(i2==RotateRight (i1, i1 & 0xF))
12 s.add(i3==i2 ^ C2)
13 s.add(i4==RotateLeft(i3, i3 & 0xF))
14 s.add(i5==i4 + C3)
15 s.add(outp==RotateLeft (i5, URem(i5, 60)))
16
17 s.add(outp==10816636949158156260)
18
19 print s.check()
20 m=s.model()
21 print m
22 print (" inp=0x%X" % m[inp].as_long())
23 print (" outp=0x%X" % m[outp].as_long())

```

This will be our first solver.

We see variable definitions on line 7. These are just 64-bit variables. `i1..i6` are intermediate variables, representing values in registers between instruction executions.

Then we add so called constraints on lines 10..15. The very last constraint at 17 is most important: we will try to find input value for which our algorithm will produce 10816636949158156260.

Essentially, SMT-solver searches for (any) values that satisfy all constraints.

`RotateRight`, `RotateLeft`, `URem` – are functions from Z3 Python [API](#), they are not related to Python [PL](#).

Then we run it:

```

...>python.exe 1.py
sat
[i1 = 3959740824832824396,
 i3 = 8957124831728646493,
 i5 = 10816636949158156260,
 inp = 1364123924608584563,
 outp = 10816636949158156260,
 i4 = 14065440378185297801,
 i2 = 4954926323707358301]
inp=0x12EE577B63E80B73
outp=0x961C69FF0AEFD7E4

```

“sat” mean “satisfiable”, i.e., solver was able to find at least one solution. The solution is printed inside square brackets. Two last lines are input/output pair in hexadecimal form. Yes, indeed, if we run our function with `0x12EE577B63E80B73` on input, the algorithm will produce the value we were looking for.

But, as we are noticed before, the function we work with is not bijective, so there are may be other correct input values. Z3 SMT solver is not capable of producing more than one result, but let's hack our example slightly, by adding line 19, meaning, look for any other results than this:

```

1 from z3 import *
2
3 C1=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84
4 C2=0x388D76AEE8CB1500
5 C3=0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B
6
7 inp, i1, i2, i3, i4, i5, i6, outp = BitVecs('inp i1 i2 i3 i4 i5 i6 outp', 64)
8
9 s = Solver()
10 s.add(i1==inp*C1)
11 s.add(i2==RotateRight (i1, i1 & 0xF))
12 s.add(i3==i2 ^ C2)
13 s.add(i4==RotateLeft(i3, i3 & 0xF))
14 s.add(i5==i4 + C3)
15 s.add(outp==RotateLeft (i5, URem(i5, 60)))
16
17 s.add(outp==10816636949158156260)
18
19 s.add(inp!=0x12EE577B63E80B73)
20
21 print s.check()

```

```

22 m=s.model()
23 print m
24 print (" inp=0x%X" % m[inp].as_long())
25 print ("outp=0x%X" % m[outp].as_long())

```

Indeed, it found other correct result:

```

...>python.exe 2.py
sat
[i1 = 3959740824832824396,
 i3 = 8957124831728646493,
 i5 = 10816636949158156260,
 inp = 10587495961463360371,
 outp = 10816636949158156260,
 i4 = 14065440378185297801,
 i2 = 4954926323707358301]
inp=0x92EE577B63E80B73
outp=0x961C69FF0AEFD7E4

```

This can be automated. Each found result may be added as constraint and the next result will be searched for. Here is slightly sophisticated example:

```

1  from z3 import *
2
3  C1=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84
4  C2=0x388D76AEE8CB1500
5  C3=0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B
6
7  inp, i1, i2, i3, i4, i5, i6, outp = BitVecs('inp i1 i2 i3 i4 i5 i6 outp', 64)
8
9  s = Solver()
10 s.add(i1==inp*C1)
11 s.add(i2==RotateRight (i1, i1 & 0xF))
12 s.add(i3==i2 ^ C2)
13 s.add(i4==RotateLeft(i3, i3 & 0xF))
14 s.add(i5==i4 + C3)
15 s.add(outp==RotateLeft (i5, URem(i5, 60)))
16
17 s.add(outp==10816636949158156260)
18
19 # copyasted from http://stackoverflow.com/questions/11867611/z3py-checking-all-solutions-for-z
    ↵ equation
20 result=[]
21 while True:
22     if s.check() == sat:
23         m = s.model()
24         print m[inp]
25         result.append(m)
26         # Create a new constraint the blocks the current model
27         block = []
28         for d in m:
29             # d is a declaration
30             if d.arity() > 0:
31                 raise Z3Exception("uninterpreted functions are not supported")
32             # create a constant from declaration
33             c=d()
34             if is_array(c) or c.sort().kind() == Z3_UNINTERPRETED_SORT:
35                 raise Z3Exception("arrays and uninterpreted sorts are not supported")
36             block.append(c != m[d])
37         s.add(Or(block))
38     else:
39         print "results total=",len(result)
40         break

```

We got:

```

1364123924608584563
1234567890
9223372038089343698
4611686019661955794
13835058056516731602

```

```

3096040143925676201
12319412180780452009
7707726162353064105
16931098199207839913
1906652839273745429
11130024876128521237
15741710894555909141
6518338857701133333
5975809943035972467
15199181979890748275
10587495961463360371
results total= 16

```

So there are 16 correct input values are possible for 0x92EE577B63E80B73 as a result.

The second is 1234567890– it is indeed a value I used originally while preparing this example.

Let's also try to research our algorithm more. By some sadistic purposes, let's find, are there any possible input/output pair in which lower 32-bit parts are equal to each other?

Let's remove *outp* constraint and add another, at line 17:

```

1 from z3 import *
2
3 C1=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84
4 C2=0x388D76AEE8CB1500
5 C3=0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B
6
7 inp, i1, i2, i3, i4, i5, i6, outp = BitVecs('inp i1 i2 i3 i4 i5 i6 outp', 64)
8
9 s = Solver()
10 s.add(i1==inp*C1)
11 s.add(i2==RotateRight (i1, i1 & 0xF))
12 s.add(i3==i2 ^ C2)
13 s.add(i4==RotateLeft(i3, i3 & 0xF))
14 s.add(i5==i4 + C3)
15 s.add(outp==RotateLeft (i5, URem(i5, 60)))
16
17 s.add(outp & 0xFFFFFFFF == inp & 0xFFFFFFFF)
18
19 print s.check()
20 m=s.model()
21 print m
22 print (" inp=0x%X" % m[inp].as_long())
23 print (" outp=0x%X" % m[outp].as_long())

```

It is indeed so:

```

sat
[i1 = 14869545517796235860,
 i3 = 8388171335828825253,
 i5 = 6918262285561543945,
 inp = 1370377541658871093,
 outp = 14543180351754208565,
 i4 = 10167065714588685486,
 i2 = 5541032613289652645]
inp=0x13048F1D12C00535
outp=0xC9D3C17A12C00535

```

Let's be more sadistic and add another constraint: last 16-bit should be 0x1234:

```

1 from z3 import *
2
3 C1=0x5D7E0D1F2E0F1F84
4 C2=0x388D76AEE8CB1500
5 C3=0xD2E9EE7E83C4285B
6
7 inp, i1, i2, i3, i4, i5, i6, outp = BitVecs('inp i1 i2 i3 i4 i5 i6 outp', 64)
8
9 s = Solver()
10 s.add(i1==inp*C1)
11 s.add(i2==RotateRight (i1, i1 & 0xF))
12 s.add(i3==i2 ^ C2)
13 s.add(i4==RotateLeft(i3, i3 & 0xF))

```

```
14 s.add(i5==i4 + C3)
15 s.add(outp==RotateLeft (i5, URem(i5, 60)))
16
17 s.add(outp & 0xFFFFFFFF == inp & 0xFFFFFFFF)
18 s.add(outp & 0xFFFF == 0x1234)
19
20 print s.check()
21 m=s.model()
22 print m
23 print (" inp=0x%X" % m[inp].as_long())
24 print ("outp=0x%X" % m[outp].as_long())
```

Oh yes, this possible as well:

```
sat
[i1 = 2834222860503985872,
 i3 = 2294680776671411152,
 i5 = 17492621421353821227,
 inp = 461881484695179828,
 outp = 419247225543463476,
 i4 = 2294680776671411152,
 i2 = 2834222860503985872]
inp=0x668EEC35F961234
outp=0x5D177215F961234
```

Z3 works very fast and it means that algorithm is weak, it is not cryptographical at all (like the most of amateur cryptography).

Will it be possible to tackle real cryptography by these methods? Real algorithms like AES, RSA, etc, can also be represented as huge system of equations, but these are that huge that are impossible to work with on computers, now or in near future. Of course, cryptographers are aware of this.

Another article I wrote about Z3 is [\[Yur12\]](#).

Chapter 69

Dongles

Occasionally I do software copy-protection [dongle](#) replacements, or “dongle emulators” and here are couple examples of my work ¹.

About one of not described cases you may also read here: [\[Yur12\]](#).

69.1 Example #1: MacOS Classic and PowerPC

I've got a program for MacOS Classic ², for PowerPC. The company who developed the software product was disappeared long time ago, so the (legal) customer was afraid of physical dongle damage.

While running without dongle connected, a message box with a text “Invalid Security Device” appeared. Luckily, this text string can be found easily in the executable binary file.

I was not very familiar both with Mac OS Classic and PowerPC, but I tried anyway.

[IDA](#) opens the executable file smoothly, reported its type as “PEF (Mac OS or Be OS executable)” (indeed, it is a standard Mac OS Classic file format).

By searching for the text string with error message, I've got into this code fragment:

```
...
seg000:000C87FC 38 60 00 01      li      %r3, 1
seg000:000C8800 48 03 93 41      bl      check1
seg000:000C8804 60 00 00 00      nop
seg000:000C8808 54 60 06 3F      clrldi. %r0, %r3, 24
seg000:000C880C 40 82 00 40      bne     OK
seg000:000C8810 80 62 9F D8      lwz     %r3, TC_aInvalidSecurityDevice
...
```

Yes, this is PowerPC code. The CPU is very typical 32-bit [RISC](#) of 1990s era. Each instruction occupies 4 bytes (just as in MIPS and ARM) and its names are somewhat resembling MIPS instruction names.

`check1()` is a function name I gave to it lately. `BL` is *Branch Link* instruction, e.g., intended for subroutines calling. The crucial point is `BNE` instruction jumping if dongle protection check is passed or not jumping if error is occurred: then the address of the text string being loaded into `r3` register for the subsequent passage into message box routine.

From the [\[SK95\]](#) I've got to know the `r3` register is used for values returning (and `r4`, in case of 64-bit values).

Another yet unknown instruction is `CLRLWI`. From [\[IBM00\]](#) I've got to know that this instruction do both clearing and loading. In our case, it clears 24 high bits from the value in `r3` and put it to `r0`, so it is analogical to `MOVZX` in x86 ([15.1.1](#)), but it also sets the flags, so the `BNE` can check them after.

Let's take a look into `check1()` function:

```
seg000:00101B40      check1: # CODE XREF: seg000:00063E7Cp
seg000:00101B40      # sub_64070+160p ...
seg000:00101B40
seg000:00101B40      .set arg_8, 8
seg000:00101B40      mflr   %r0
seg000:00101B44      stw    %r0, arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00101B48      stwu   %sp, -0x40(%sp)
seg000:00101B4C      bl     check2
seg000:00101B50      nop
seg000:00101B54      lwz    %r0, 0x40+arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00101B58      addi   %sp, %sp, 0x40
```

¹Read more about it: <http://yurichev.com/dongles.html>

²pre-UNIX MacOS

```

seg000:00101B5C 7C 08 03 A6      mtlr    %r0
seg000:00101B60 4E 80 00 20      blr
seg000:00101B60      # End of function check1

```

As I can see in [IDA](#), that function is called from many places in program, but only r3 register value is checked right after each call. All this function does is calling other function, so it is [thunk function](#): there is function prologue and epilogue, but r3 register is not touched, so `check1()` returns what `check2()` returns.

[BLR³](#) seems return from function, but since [IDA](#) does functions layout, we probably do not need to be interesting in this. It seems, since it is a typical [RISC](#), subroutines are called using [link register](#), just like in ARM.

`check2()` function is more complex:

```

seg000:00118684      check2: # CODE XREF: check1+Cp
seg000:00118684
seg000:00118684      .set var_18, -0x18
seg000:00118684      .set var_C, -0xC
seg000:00118684      .set var_8, -8
seg000:00118684      .set var_4, -4
seg000:00118684      .set arg_8, 8
seg000:00118684 93 E1 FF FC      stw    %r31, var_4(%sp)
seg000:00118688 7C 08 02 A6      mflr   %r0
seg000:0011868C 83 E2 95 A8      lwz    %r31, off_1485E8 # dword_24B704
seg000:00118690      .using dword_24B704, %r31
seg000:00118690 93 C1 FF F8      stw    %r30, var_8(%sp)
seg000:00118694 93 A1 FF F4      stw    %r29, var_C(%sp)
seg000:00118698 7C 7D 1B 78      mr     %r29, %r3
seg000:0011869C 90 01 00 08      stw    %r0, arg_8(%sp)
seg000:001186A0 54 60 06 3E      clrlwi %r0, %r3, 24
seg000:001186A4 28 00 00 01      cmplwi %r0, 1
seg000:001186A8 94 21 FF B0      stwu   %sp, -0x50(%sp)
seg000:001186AC 40 82 00 0C      bne    loc_1186B8
seg000:001186B0 38 60 00 01      li     %r3, 1
seg000:001186B4 48 00 00 6C      b      exit
seg000:001186B8
seg000:001186B8      loc_1186B8: # CODE XREF: check2+28j
seg000:001186B8 48 00 03 D5      bl     sub_118A8C
seg000:001186BC 60 00 00 00      nop
seg000:001186C0 3B C0 00 00      li     %r30, 0
seg000:001186C4
seg000:001186C4      skip:      # CODE XREF: check2+94j
seg000:001186C4 57 C0 06 3F      clrlwi %r0, %r30, 24
seg000:001186C8 41 82 00 18      beq    loc_1186E0
seg000:001186CC 38 61 00 38      addi   %r3, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001186D0 80 9F 00 00      lwz    %r4, dword_24B704
seg000:001186D4 48 00 C0 55      bl     .RBEFINDNEXT
seg000:001186D8 60 00 00 00      nop
seg000:001186DC 48 00 00 1C      b      loc_1186F8
seg000:001186E0
seg000:001186E0      loc_1186E0: # CODE XREF: check2+44j
seg000:001186E0 80 BF 00 00      lwz    %r5, dword_24B704
seg000:001186E4 38 81 00 38      addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001186E8 38 60 08 C2      li     %r3, 0x1234
seg000:001186EC 48 00 BF 99      bl     .RBEFINDFIRST
seg000:001186F0 60 00 00 00      nop
seg000:001186F4 3B C0 00 01      li     %r30, 1
seg000:001186F8
seg000:001186F8      loc_1186F8: # CODE XREF: check2+58j
seg000:001186F8 54 60 04 3F      clrlwi %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:001186FC 41 82 00 0C      beq    must_jump
seg000:00118700 38 60 00 00      li     %r3, 0      # error
seg000:00118704 48 00 00 1C      b      exit
seg000:00118708
seg000:00118708      must_jump: # CODE XREF: check2+78j
seg000:00118708 7F A3 EB 78      mr     %r3, %r29
seg000:0011870C 48 00 00 31      bl     check3
seg000:00118710 60 00 00 00      nop
seg000:00118714 54 60 06 3F      clrlwi %r0, %r3, 24
seg000:00118718 41 82 FF AC      beq    skip

```

³(PowerPC) Branch to Link Register

```

seg000:0011871C 38 60 00 01  li    %r3, 1
seg000:00118720
seg000:00118720          exit:   # CODE XREF: check2+30j
seg000:00118720          # check2+80j
seg000:00118720 80 01 00 58  lwz   %r0, 0x50+arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00118724 38 21 00 50  addi  %sp, %sp, 0x50
seg000:00118728 83 E1 FF FC  lwz   %r31, var_4(%sp)
seg000:0011872C 7C 08 03 A6  mtlr  %r0
seg000:00118730 83 C1 FF F8  lwz   %r30, var_8(%sp)
seg000:00118734 83 A1 FF F4  lwz   %r29, var_C(%sp)
seg000:00118738 4E 80 00 20  blr
seg000:00118738          # End of function check2

```

I'm lucky again: some function names are left in the executable (debug symbols section? I'm not sure, since I'm not very familiar with the file format, maybe it is some kind of PE exports? (59.2.7)), like `.RBEFINDNEXT()` and `.RBEFINDFIRST()`. Eventually these functions are calling other functions with names like `.GetNextDeviceViaUSB()`, `.USBSendPKT()`, so these are clearly dealing with USB device.

There are even a function named `.GetNextEve3Device()`—sounds familiar, there was Sentinel Eve3 dongle for ADB port (present on Macs) in 1990s.

Let's first take a look on how `r3` register is set before return simultaneously ignoring all we see. We know that "good" `r3` value should be non-zero, zero `r3` will lead execution flow to the message box with an error message.

There are two instructions `li %r3, 1` present in the function and one `li %r3, 0` (*Load Immediate*, i.e., loading value into register). The very first instruction at `0x001186B0`—frankly speaking, I don't know what it mean, I need some more time to learn PowerPC assembly language.

What we see next is, however, easier to understand: `.RBEFINDFIRST()` is called: in case of its failure, 0 is written into `r3` and we jump to `exit`, otherwise another function is called (`check3()`)—if it is failing too, the `.RBEFINDNEXT()` is called, probably, in order to look for another USB device.

N.B.: `clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16` it is analogical to what we already saw, but it clears 16 bits, i.e., `.RBEFINDFIRST()` probably returns 16-bit value.

B (meaning *branch*) is unconditional jump.

[BEQ](#) is inverse instruction of [BNE](#).

Let's see `check3()`:

```

seg000:0011873C          check3: # CODE XREF: check2+88p
seg000:0011873C
seg000:0011873C          .set  var_18, -0x18
seg000:0011873C          .set  var_C, -0xC
seg000:0011873C          .set  var_8, -8
seg000:0011873C          .set  var_4, -4
seg000:0011873C          .set  arg_8, 8
seg000:0011873C
seg000:0011873C 93 E1 FF FC  stw   %r31, var_4(%sp)
seg000:00118740 7C 08 02 A6  mflr  %r0
seg000:00118744 38 A0 00 00  li    %r5, 0
seg000:00118748 93 C1 FF F8  stw   %r30, var_8(%sp)
seg000:0011874C 83 C2 95 A8  lwz   %r30, off_1485E8 # dword_24B704
seg000:00118750          .using dword_24B704, %r30
seg000:00118750 93 A1 FF F4  stw   %r29, var_C(%sp)
seg000:00118754 3B A3 00 00  addi  %r29, %r3, 0
seg000:00118758 38 60 00 00  li    %r3, 0
seg000:0011875C 90 01 00 08  stw   %r0, arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00118760 94 21 FF B0  stwu  %sp, -0x50(%sp)
seg000:00118764 80 DE 00 00  lwz   %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:00118768 38 81 00 38  addi  %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:0011876C 48 00 C0 5D  bl    .RBEREAD
seg000:00118770 60 00 00 00  nop
seg000:00118774 54 60 04 3F  clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118778 41 82 00 0C  beq   loc_118784
seg000:0011877C 38 60 00 00  li    %r3, 0
seg000:00118780 48 00 02 F0  b     exit
seg000:00118784
seg000:00118784          loc_118784: # CODE XREF: check3+3Cj
seg000:00118784 A0 01 00 38  lhz   %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118788 28 00 04 B2  cmplwi %r0, 0x1100
seg000:0011878C 41 82 00 0C  beq   loc_118798
seg000:00118790 38 60 00 00  li    %r3, 0
seg000:00118794 48 00 02 DC  b     exit
seg000:00118798
seg000:00118798          loc_118798: # CODE XREF: check3+50j

```



```

seg000:00118798 80 DE 00 00 lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:0011879C 38 81 00 38 addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001187A0 38 60 00 01 li     %r3, 1
seg000:001187A4 38 A0 00 00 li     %r5, 0
seg000:001187A8 48 00 C0 21 bl     .RBEREAD
seg000:001187AC 60 00 00 00 nop
seg000:001187B0 54 60 04 3F clrlwi.%r0, %r3, 16
seg000:001187B4 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_1187C0
seg000:001187B8 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:001187BC 48 00 02 B4 b      exit
seg000:001187C0
seg000:001187C0          loc_1187C0: # CODE XREF: check3+78j
seg000:001187C0 A0 01 00 38 lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:001187C4 28 00 06 4B cmplwi %r0, 0x09AB
seg000:001187C8 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_1187D4
seg000:001187CC 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:001187D0 48 00 02 A0 b      exit
seg000:001187D4
seg000:001187D4          loc_1187D4: # CODE XREF: check3+8Cj
seg000:001187D4 4B F9 F3 D9 bl     sub_B7BAC
seg000:001187D8 60 00 00 00 nop
seg000:001187DC 54 60 06 3E clrlwi %r0, %r3, 24
seg000:001187E0 2C 00 00 05 cmpwi  %r0, 5
seg000:001187E4 41 82 01 00 beq    loc_1188E4
seg000:001187E8 40 80 00 10 bge   loc_1187F8
seg000:001187EC 2C 00 00 04 cmpwi  %r0, 4
seg000:001187F0 40 80 00 58 bge   loc_118848
seg000:001187F4 48 00 01 8C b      loc_118980
seg000:001187F8
seg000:001187F8          loc_1187F8: # CODE XREF: check3+ACj
seg000:001187F8 2C 00 00 0B cmpwi  %r0, 0xB
seg000:001187FC 41 82 00 08 beq    loc_118804
seg000:00118800 48 00 01 80 b      loc_118980
seg000:00118804
seg000:00118804          loc_118804: # CODE XREF: check3+C0j
seg000:00118804 80 DE 00 00 lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:00118808 38 81 00 38 addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:0011880C 38 60 00 08 li     %r3, 8
seg000:00118810 38 A0 00 00 li     %r5, 0
seg000:00118814 48 00 BF B5 bl     .RBEREAD
seg000:00118818 60 00 00 00 nop
seg000:0011881C 54 60 04 3F clrlwi.%r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118820 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_11882C
seg000:00118824 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:00118828 48 00 02 48 b      exit
seg000:0011882C
seg000:0011882C          loc_11882C: # CODE XREF: check3+E4j
seg000:0011882C A0 01 00 38 lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118830 28 00 11 30 cmplwi %r0, 0xFEAO
seg000:00118834 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_118840
seg000:00118838 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:0011883C 48 00 02 34 b      exit
seg000:00118840
seg000:00118840          loc_118840: # CODE XREF: check3+F8j
seg000:00118840 38 60 00 01 li     %r3, 1
seg000:00118844 48 00 02 2C b      exit
seg000:00118848
seg000:00118848          loc_118848: # CODE XREF: check3+B4j
seg000:00118848 80 DE 00 00 lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:0011884C 38 81 00 38 addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:00118850 38 60 00 0A li     %r3, 0xA
seg000:00118854 38 A0 00 00 li     %r5, 0
seg000:00118858 48 00 BF 71 bl     .RBEREAD
seg000:0011885C 60 00 00 00 nop
seg000:00118860 54 60 04 3F clrlwi.%r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118864 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_118870
seg000:00118868 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:0011886C 48 00 02 04 b      exit
seg000:00118870
seg000:00118870          loc_118870: # CODE XREF: check3+128j

```

```

seg000:00118870 A0 01 00 38 lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118874 28 00 03 F3 cmplwi %r0, 0xA6E1
seg000:00118878 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_118884
seg000:0011887C 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:00118880 48 00 01 F0 b      exit
seg000:00118884
seg000:00118884          loc_118884: # CODE XREF: check3+13Cj
seg000:00118884 57 BF 06 3E clrlwi %r31, %r29, 24
seg000:00118888 28 1F 00 02 cmplwi %r31, 2
seg000:0011888C 40 82 00 0C bne    loc_118898
seg000:00118890 38 60 00 01 li     %r3, 1
seg000:00118894 48 00 01 DC b      exit
seg000:00118898
seg000:00118898          loc_118898: # CODE XREF: check3+150j
seg000:00118898 80 DE 00 00 lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:0011889C 38 81 00 38 addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001188A0 38 60 00 0B li     %r3, 0xB
seg000:001188A4 38 A0 00 00 li     %r5, 0
seg000:001188A8 48 00 BF 21 bl     .RBEREAD
seg000:001188AC 60 00 00 00 nop
seg000:001188B0 54 60 04 3F clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:001188B4 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_1188C0
seg000:001188B8 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:001188BC 48 00 01 B4 b      exit
seg000:001188C0
seg000:001188C0          loc_1188C0: # CODE XREF: check3+178j
seg000:001188C0 A0 01 00 38 lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:001188C4 28 00 23 1C cmplwi %r0, 0x1C20
seg000:001188C8 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_1188D4
seg000:001188CC 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:001188D0 48 00 01 A0 b      exit
seg000:001188D4
seg000:001188D4          loc_1188D4: # CODE XREF: check3+18Cj
seg000:001188D4 28 1F 00 03 cmplwi %r31, 3
seg000:001188D8 40 82 01 94 bne    error
seg000:001188DC 38 60 00 01 li     %r3, 1
seg000:001188E0 48 00 01 90 b      exit
seg000:001188E4
seg000:001188E4          loc_1188E4: # CODE XREF: check3+A8j
seg000:001188E4 80 DE 00 00 lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:001188E8 38 81 00 38 addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001188EC 38 60 00 0C li     %r3, 0xC
seg000:001188F0 38 A0 00 00 li     %r5, 0
seg000:001188F4 48 00 BE D5 bl     .RBEREAD
seg000:001188F8 60 00 00 00 nop
seg000:001188FC 54 60 04 3F clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118900 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_11890C
seg000:00118904 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:00118908 48 00 01 68 b      exit
seg000:0011890C
seg000:0011890C          loc_11890C: # CODE XREF: check3+1C4j
seg000:0011890C A0 01 00 38 lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118910 28 00 1F 40 cmplwi %r0, 0x40FF
seg000:00118914 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_118920
seg000:00118918 38 60 00 00 li     %r3, 0
seg000:0011891C 48 00 01 54 b      exit
seg000:00118920
seg000:00118920          loc_118920: # CODE XREF: check3+1D8j
seg000:00118920 57 BF 06 3E clrlwi %r31, %r29, 24
seg000:00118924 28 1F 00 02 cmplwi %r31, 2
seg000:00118928 40 82 00 0C bne    loc_118934
seg000:0011892C 38 60 00 01 li     %r3, 1
seg000:00118930 48 00 01 40 b      exit
seg000:00118934
seg000:00118934          loc_118934: # CODE XREF: check3+1ECj
seg000:00118934 80 DE 00 00 lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:00118938 38 81 00 38 addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:0011893C 38 60 00 0D li     %r3, 0xD
seg000:00118940 38 A0 00 00 li     %r5, 0
seg000:00118944 48 00 BE 85 bl     .RBEREAD

```

```

seg000:00118948 60 00 00 00  nop
seg000:0011894C 54 60 04 3F  clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118950 41 82 00 0C  beq     loc_11895C
seg000:00118954 38 60 00 00  li     %r3, 0
seg000:00118958 48 00 01 18  b      exit
seg000:0011895C
seg000:0011895C          loc_11895C: # CODE XREF: check3+214j
seg000:0011895C A0 01 00 38  lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118960 28 00 07 CF  cmplwi %r0, 0xFC7
seg000:00118964 41 82 00 0C  beq    loc_118970
seg000:00118968 38 60 00 00  li    %r3, 0
seg000:0011896C 48 00 01 04  b      exit
seg000:00118970
seg000:00118970          loc_118970: # CODE XREF: check3+228j
seg000:00118970 28 1F 00 03  cmplwi %r31, 3
seg000:00118974 40 82 00 F8  bne    error
seg000:00118978 38 60 00 01  li    %r3, 1
seg000:0011897C 48 00 00 F4  b      exit
seg000:00118980
seg000:00118980          loc_118980: # CODE XREF: check3+B8j
seg000:00118980          # check3+C4j
seg000:00118980 80 DE 00 00  lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:00118984 38 81 00 38  addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:00118988 3B E0 00 00  li    %r31, 0
seg000:0011898C 38 60 00 04  li    %r3, 4
seg000:00118990 38 A0 00 00  li    %r5, 0
seg000:00118994 48 00 BE 35  bl     .RBREAD
seg000:00118998 60 00 00 00  nop
seg000:0011899C 54 60 04 3F  clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:001189A0 41 82 00 0C  beq    loc_1189AC
seg000:001189A4 38 60 00 00  li    %r3, 0
seg000:001189A8 48 00 00 C8  b      exit
seg000:001189AC
seg000:001189AC          loc_1189AC: # CODE XREF: check3+264j
seg000:001189AC A0 01 00 38  lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:001189B0 28 00 1D 6A  cmplwi %r0, 0xAED0
seg000:001189B4 40 82 00 0C  bne    loc_1189C0
seg000:001189B8 3B E0 00 01  li    %r31, 1
seg000:001189BC 48 00 00 14  b      loc_1189D0
seg000:001189C0
seg000:001189C0          loc_1189C0: # CODE XREF: check3+278j
seg000:001189C0 28 00 18 28  cmplwi %r0, 0x2818
seg000:001189C4 41 82 00 0C  beq    loc_1189D0
seg000:001189C8 38 60 00 00  li    %r3, 0
seg000:001189CC 48 00 00 A4  b      exit
seg000:001189D0
seg000:001189D0          loc_1189D0: # CODE XREF: check3+280j
seg000:001189D0          # check3+288j
seg000:001189D0 57 A0 06 3E  clrlwi %r0, %r29, 24
seg000:001189D4 28 00 00 02  cmplwi %r0, 2
seg000:001189D8 40 82 00 20  bne    loc_1189F8
seg000:001189DC 57 E0 06 3F  clrlwi. %r0, %r31, 24
seg000:001189E0 41 82 00 10  beq    good2
seg000:001189E4 48 00 4C 69  bl     sub_11D64C
seg000:001189E8 60 00 00 00  nop
seg000:001189EC 48 00 00 84  b      exit
seg000:001189F0
seg000:001189F0          good2:      # CODE XREF: check3+2A4j
seg000:001189F0 38 60 00 01  li    %r3, 1
seg000:001189F4 48 00 00 7C  b      exit
seg000:001189F8
seg000:001189F8          loc_1189F8: # CODE XREF: check3+29Cj
seg000:001189F8 80 DE 00 00  lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:001189FC 38 81 00 38  addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:00118A00 38 60 00 05  li    %r3, 5
seg000:00118A04 38 A0 00 00  li    %r5, 0
seg000:00118A08 48 00 BD C1  bl     .RBREAD
seg000:00118A0C 60 00 00 00  nop
seg000:00118A10 54 60 04 3F  clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118A14 41 82 00 0C  beq    loc_118A20

```

```

seg000:00118A18 38 60 00 00  li    %r3, 0
seg000:00118A1C 48 00 00 54  b     exit
seg000:00118A20
seg000:00118A20          loc_118A20: # CODE XREF: check3+2D8j
seg000:00118A20 A0 01 00 38  lhz   %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118A24 28 00 11 D3  cmplwi %r0, 0xD300
seg000:00118A28 40 82 00 0C  bne   loc_118A34
seg000:00118A2C 3B E0 00 01  li    %r31, 1
seg000:00118A30 48 00 00 14  b     good1
seg000:00118A34
seg000:00118A34          loc_118A34: # CODE XREF: check3+2ECj
seg000:00118A34 28 00 1A EB  cmplwi %r0, 0xEBA1
seg000:00118A38 41 82 00 0C  beq   good1
seg000:00118A3C 38 60 00 00  li    %r3, 0
seg000:00118A40 48 00 00 30  b     exit
seg000:00118A44
seg000:00118A44          good1:      # CODE XREF: check3+2F4j
seg000:00118A44          # check3+2FCj
seg000:00118A44 57 A0 06 3E  clrlwi %r0, %r29, 24
seg000:00118A48 28 00 00 03  cmplwi %r0, 3
seg000:00118A4C 40 82 00 20  bne   error
seg000:00118A50 57 E0 06 3F  clrlwi. %r0, %r31, 24
seg000:00118A54 41 82 00 10  beq   good
seg000:00118A58 48 00 4B F5  bl    sub_11D64C
seg000:00118A5C 60 00 00 00  nop
seg000:00118A60 48 00 00 10  b     exit
seg000:00118A64
seg000:00118A64          good:      # CODE XREF: check3+318j
seg000:00118A64 38 60 00 01  li    %r3, 1
seg000:00118A68 48 00 00 08  b     exit
seg000:00118A6C
seg000:00118A6C          error:     # CODE XREF: check3+19Cj
seg000:00118A6C          # check3+238j ...
seg000:00118A6C 38 60 00 00  li    %r3, 0
seg000:00118A70
seg000:00118A70          exit:     # CODE XREF: check3+44j
seg000:00118A70          # check3+58j ...
seg000:00118A70 80 01 00 58  lwz   %r0, 0x50+arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00118A74 38 21 00 50  addi  %sp, %sp, 0x50
seg000:00118A78 83 E1 FF FC  lwz   %r31, var_4(%sp)
seg000:00118A7C 7C 08 03 A6  mtlr  %r0
seg000:00118A80 83 C1 FF F8  lwz   %r30, var_8(%sp)
seg000:00118A84 83 A1 FF F4  lwz   %r29, var_C(%sp)
seg000:00118A88 4E 80 00 20  blr
seg000:00118A88          # End of function check3

```

There are a lot of calls to `.RBEREAD()`. The function is probably return some values from the dongle, so they are compared here with hard-coded variables using `CMPLWI`.

We also see that `r3` register is also filled before each call to `.RBEREAD()` by one of these values: 0, 1, 8, 0xA, 0xB, 0xC, 0xD, 4, 5. Probably memory address or something like that?

Yes, indeed, by googling these function names it is easy to find Sentinel Eve3 dongle manual!

I probably even do not need to learn other PowerPC instructions: all this function does is just calls `.RBEREAD()`, compare its results with constants and returns 1 if comparisons are fine or 0 otherwise.

OK, all we've got is that `check1()` should return always 1 or any other non-zero value. But since I'm not very confident in PowerPC instructions, I will be careful: I will patch jumps in `check2()` at `0x001186FC` and `0x00118718`.

At `0x001186FC` I wrote bytes `0x48` and `0` thus converting `BEQ` instruction into `B` (unconditional jump): I spot its opcode in the code without even referring to [\[IBM00\]](#).

At `0x00118718` I wrote `0x60` and 3 zero bytes thus converting it to `NOP` instruction: I spot its opcode in the code too.

And all it works now without dongle connected.

Summarizing, such small modifications can be done with [IDA](#) and minimal assembly language knowledge.

69.2 Example #2: SCO OpenServer

An ancient software for SCO OpenServer from 1997 developed by a company disappeared long time ago.

There is a special dongle driver to be installed in the system, containing text strings: "Copyright 1989, Rainbow Technologies, Inc., Irvine, CA" and "Sentinel Integrated Driver Ver. 3.0".

After driver installation in SCO OpenServer, these device files are appeared in `/dev` filesystem:

```

/dev/rbsl8
/dev/rbsl9
/dev/rbsl10

```

The program without dongle connected reports error, but the error string cannot be found in the executables. Thanks to [IDA](#), it does its job perfectly working out COFF executable used in SCO OpenServer. I've tried to find "rbsl" and indeed, found it in this code fragment:

```

.text:00022AB8      public SSQC
.text:00022AB8 SSQC   proc near ; CODE XREF: SSQ+7p
.text:00022AB8
.text:00022AB8      var_44 = byte ptr -44h
.text:00022AB8      var_29 = byte ptr -29h
.text:00022AB8      arg_0  = dword ptr  8
.text:00022AB8
.text:00022AB8      push   ebp
.text:00022AB9      mov    ebp, esp
.text:00022ABB      sub    esp, 44h
.text:00022ABE      push   edi
.text:00022ABF      mov    edi, offset unk_4035D0
.text:00022AC4      push   esi
.text:00022AC5      mov    esi, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:00022AC8      push   ebx
.text:00022AC9      push   esi
.text:00022ACA      call  strlen
.text:00022ACF      add    esp, 4
.text:00022AD2      cmp    eax, 2
.text:00022AD7      jnz   loc_22BA4
.text:00022ADD      inc    esi
.text:00022ADE      mov    al, [esi-1]
.text:00022AE1      movsx  eax, al
.text:00022AE4      cmp    eax, '3'
.text:00022AE9      jz    loc_22B84
.text:00022AEF      cmp    eax, '4'
.text:00022AF4      jz    loc_22B94
.text:00022AFA      cmp    eax, '5'
.text:00022AFF      jnz   short loc_22B6B
.text:00022B01      movsx  ebx, byte ptr [esi]
.text:00022B04      sub    ebx, '0'
.text:00022B07      mov    eax, 7
.text:00022B0C      add    eax, ebx
.text:00022B0E      push   eax
.text:00022B0F      lea   eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022B12      push  offset aDevSlD ; "/dev/sl%d"
.text:00022B17      push   eax
.text:00022B18      call  nl_sprintf
.text:00022B1D      push  0 ; int
.text:00022B1F      push  offset aDevRbsl8 ; char *
.text:00022B24      call  _access
.text:00022B29      add    esp, 14h
.text:00022B2C      cmp    eax, 0FFFFFFFFh
.text:00022B31      jz    short loc_22B48
.text:00022B33      lea   eax, [ebx+7]
.text:00022B36      push   eax
.text:00022B37      lea   eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022B3A      push  offset aDevRbslD ; "/dev/rbsl%d"
.text:00022B3F      push   eax
.text:00022B40      call  nl_sprintf
.text:00022B45      add    esp, 0Ch
.text:00022B48
.text:00022B48 loc_22B48: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+79j
.text:00022B48      mov    edx, [edi]
.text:00022B4A      test   edx, edx
.text:00022B4C      jle   short loc_22B57
.text:00022B4E      push  edx ; int
.text:00022B4F      call  _close
.text:00022B54      add    esp, 4
.text:00022B57
.text:00022B57 loc_22B57: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+94j
.text:00022B57      push  2 ; int

```

```

.text:00022B59      lea     eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022B5C      push   eax                ; char *
.text:00022B5D      call   _open
.text:00022B62      add    esp, 8
.text:00022B65      test   eax, eax
.text:00022B67      mov    [edi], eax
.text:00022B69      jge    short loc_22B78
.text:00022B6B
.text:00022B6B loc_22B6B: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+47j
.text:00022B6B      mov    eax, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:00022B70      pop    ebx
.text:00022B71      pop    esi
.text:00022B72      pop    edi
.text:00022B73      mov    esp, ebp
.text:00022B75      pop    ebp
.text:00022B76      retn
.text:00022B78
.text:00022B78 loc_22B78: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+B1j
.text:00022B78      pop    ebx
.text:00022B79      pop    esi
.text:00022B7A      pop    edi
.text:00022B7B      xor    eax, eax
.text:00022B7D      mov    esp, ebp
.text:00022B7F      pop    ebp
.text:00022B80      retn
.text:00022B84
.text:00022B84 loc_22B84: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+31j
.text:00022B84      mov    al, [esi]
.text:00022B86      pop    ebx
.text:00022B87      pop    esi
.text:00022B88      pop    edi
.text:00022B89      mov    ds:byte_407224, al
.text:00022B8E      mov    esp, ebp
.text:00022B90      xor    eax, eax
.text:00022B92      pop    ebp
.text:00022B93      retn
.text:00022B94
.text:00022B94 loc_22B94: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+3Cj
.text:00022B94      mov    al, [esi]
.text:00022B96      pop    ebx
.text:00022B97      pop    esi
.text:00022B98      pop    edi
.text:00022B99      mov    ds:byte_407225, al
.text:00022B9E      mov    esp, ebp
.text:00022BA0      xor    eax, eax
.text:00022BA2      pop    ebp
.text:00022BA3      retn
.text:00022BA4
.text:00022BA4 loc_22BA4: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+1Fj
.text:00022BA4      movsx  eax, ds:byte_407225
.text:00022BAB      push   esi
.text:00022BAC      push   eax
.text:00022BAD      movsx  eax, ds:byte_407224
.text:00022BB4      push   eax
.text:00022BB5      lea   eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022BB8      push   offset a46CC5 ; "46%c%c%s"
.text:00022BBD      push   eax
.text:00022BBE      call  nl_sprintf
.text:00022BC3      lea   eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022BC6      push   eax
.text:00022BC7      call  strlen
.text:00022BCC      add   esp, 18h
.text:00022BCF      cmp   eax, 1Bh
.text:00022BD4      jle   short loc_22BDA
.text:00022BD6      mov   [ebp+var_29], 0
.text:00022BDA
.text:00022BDA loc_22BDA: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+11Cj
.text:00022BDA      lea   eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022BDD      push   eax
.text:00022BDE      call  strlen

```

```
.text:00022BE3    push    eax                ; unsigned int
.text:00022BE4    lea    eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022BE7    push    eax                ; void *
.text:00022BE8    mov    eax, [edi]
.text:00022BEA    push    eax                ; int
.text:00022BEB    call   _write
.text:00022BF0    add    esp, 10h
.text:00022BF3    pop    ebx
.text:00022BF4    pop    esi
.text:00022BF5    pop    edi
.text:00022BF6    mov    esp, ebp
.text:00022BF8    pop    ebp
.text:00022BF9    retn
.text:00022BFA    db 0Eh dup(90h)
.text:00022BFA    SSQC    endp
```

Yes, indeed, the program should communicate with driver somehow and that is how it is.

The only place SSQC() function called is the [thunk function](#):

```
.text:0000DBE8    public SSQ
.text:0000DBE8    SSQ    proc near ; CODE XREF: sys_info+A9p
.text:0000DBE8                ; sys_info+CBp ...
.text:0000DBE8    arg_0 = dword ptr 8
.text:0000DBE8    push    ebp
.text:0000DBE9    mov    ebp, esp
.text:0000DBEB    mov    edx, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:0000DBEE    push    edx
.text:0000DBEF    call   SSQC
.text:0000DBF4    add    esp, 4
.text:0000DBF7    mov    esp, ebp
.text:0000DBF9    pop    ebp
.text:0000DBFA    retn
.text:0000DBFB    SSQ    endp
```

SSQ() is called at least from 2 functions.

One of these is:

```
.data:0040169C    _51_52_53                dd offset aPressAnyKeyT_0 ; DATA XREF: init_sys+392r
.data:0040169C                ; sys_info+A1r
.data:0040169C                ; "PRESS ANY KEY TO CONTINUE: "
.data:004016A0                dd offset a51                ; "51"
.data:004016A4                dd offset a52                ; "52"
.data:004016A8                dd offset a53                ; "53"
...
.data:004016B8    _3C_or_3E                dd offset a3c                ; DATA XREF: sys_info:loc_D67Br
.data:004016B8                ; "3C"
.data:004016BC                dd offset a3e                ; "3E"
; these names I gave to the labels:
.data:004016C0    answers1                dd 6B05h                    ; DATA XREF: sys_info+E7r
.data:004016C4                dd 3D87h
.data:004016C8    answers2                dd 3Ch                      ; DATA XREF: sys_info+F2r
.data:004016CC                dd 832h
.data:004016D0    _C_and_B                db 0Ch                      ; DATA XREF: sys_info+BAr
.data:004016D0                ; sys_info:OKr
.data:004016D1    byte_4016D1            db 0Bh                      ; DATA XREF: sys_info+FDr
.data:004016D2                db 0
...
.text:0000D652    xor    eax, eax
.text:0000D654    mov    al, ds:ctl_port
.text:0000D659    mov    ecx, _51_52_53[eax*4]
.text:0000D660    push    ecx
.text:0000D661    call   SSQ
.text:0000D666    add    esp, 4
.text:0000D669    cmp    eax, 0FFFFFFFFh
```

```

.text:0000D66E      jz      short loc_D6D1
.text:0000D670      xor     ebx, ebx
.text:0000D672      mov     al, _C_and_B
.text:0000D677      test   al, al
.text:0000D679      jz      short loc_D6C0
.text:0000D67B      loc_D67B: ; CODE XREF: sys_info+106j
.text:0000D67B      mov     eax, _3C_or_3E[ebx*4]
.text:0000D682      push   eax
.text:0000D683      call   SSQ
.text:0000D688      push   offset a4g      ; "4G"
.text:0000D68D      call   SSQ
.text:0000D692      push   offset a0123456789 ; "0123456789"
.text:0000D697      call   SSQ
.text:0000D69C      add    esp, 0Ch
.text:0000D69F      mov     edx, answers1[ebx*4]
.text:0000D6A6      cmp     eax, edx
.text:0000D6A8      jz     short OK
.text:0000D6AA      mov     ecx, answers2[ebx*4]
.text:0000D6B1      cmp     eax, ecx
.text:0000D6B3      jz     short OK
.text:0000D6B5      mov     al, byte_4016D1[ebx]
.text:0000D6BB      inc    ebx
.text:0000D6BC      test   al, al
.text:0000D6BE      jnz    short loc_D67B
.text:0000D6C0      loc_D6C0: ; CODE XREF: sys_info+C1j
.text:0000D6C0      inc    ds:ctl_port
.text:0000D6C6      xor     eax, eax
.text:0000D6C8      mov     al, ds:ctl_port
.text:0000D6CD      cmp     eax, edi
.text:0000D6CF      jle    short loc_D652
.text:0000D6D1      loc_D6D1: ; CODE XREF: sys_info+98j
.text:0000D6D1      ; sys_info+B6j
.text:0000D6D1      mov     edx, [ebp+var_8]
.text:0000D6D4      inc    edx
.text:0000D6D5      mov     [ebp+var_8], edx
.text:0000D6D8      cmp     edx, 3
.text:0000D6DB      jle    loc_D641
.text:0000D6E1      loc_D6E1: ; CODE XREF: sys_info+16j
.text:0000D6E1      ; sys_info+51j ...
.text:0000D6E1      pop    ebx
.text:0000D6E2      pop    edi
.text:0000D6E3      mov     esp, ebp
.text:0000D6E5      pop    ebp
.text:0000D6E6      retn
.text:0000D6E8      OK:      ; CODE XREF: sys_info+F0j
.text:0000D6E8      ; sys_info+FBj
.text:0000D6E8      mov     al, _C_and_B[ebx]
.text:0000D6EE      pop    ebx
.text:0000D6EF      pop    edi
.text:0000D6F0      mov     ds:ctl_model, al
.text:0000D6F5      mov     esp, ebp
.text:0000D6F7      pop    ebp
.text:0000D6F8      retn
.text:0000D6F8      sys_info      endp

```

“3C” and “3E” are sounds familiar: there was a Sentinel Pro dongle by Rainbow with no memory, providing only one crypto-hashing secret function.

A short description about what hash function is, read here: [68](#).

But let's back to the program. So the program can only check the presence or absence dongle connected. No other information can be written to such dongle with no memory. Two-character codes are commands (we can see how commands are handled in `SSQC()` function) and all other strings are hashed inside the dongle transforming into 16-bit number. The algorithm was secret, so it was not possible to write driver replacement or to remake dongle hardware emulating it perfectly. However, it was always possible to intercept all accesses to it and to find what constants the hash function results compared to. Needless to say it is possible to build a robust software copy protection scheme based on secret cryptographical hash-function: let it to encrypt/decrypt data files your software dealing with.

But let's back to the code.

Codes 51/52/53 are used for LPT printer port selection. 3x/4x is for "family" selection (that's how Sentinel Pro dongles are differentiated from each other: more than one dongle can be connected to LPT port).

The only non-2-character string passed to the hashing function is "0123456789". Then, the result is compared against the set of valid results. If it is correct, 0xC or 0xB is to be written into global variable `ctl_model`.

Another text string to be passed is "PRESS ANY KEY TO CONTINUE: ", but the result is not checked. I don't know why, probably by mistake ⁴.

Let's see where the value from the global variable `ctl_mode` is used.

One of such places is:

```
.text:0000D708 prep_sys proc near ; CODE XREF: init_sys+46Ap
.text:0000D708
.text:0000D708 var_14 = dword ptr -14h
.text:0000D708 var_10 = byte ptr -10h
.text:0000D708 var_8 = dword ptr -8
.text:0000D708 var_2 = word ptr -2
.text:0000D708
.text:0000D708 push ebp
.text:0000D709 mov eax, ds:net_env
.text:0000D70E mov ebp, esp
.text:0000D710 sub esp, 1Ch
.text:0000D713 test eax, eax
.text:0000D715 jnz short loc_D734
.text:0000D717 mov al, ds:ctl_model
.text:0000D71C test al, al
.text:0000D71E jnz short loc_D77E
.text:0000D720 mov [ebp+var_8], offset aIeCvuInvv0kgT_ ; "Ie-cvuInvV\\b0KG]T_"
.text:0000D727 mov edx, 7
.text:0000D72C jmp loc_D7E7

...

.text:0000D7E7 loc_D7E7: ; CODE XREF: prep_sys+24j
.text:0000D7E7 ; prep_sys+33j
.text:0000D7E7 push edx
.text:0000D7E8 mov edx, [ebp+var_8]
.text:0000D7EB push 20h
.text:0000D7ED push edx
.text:0000D7EE push 16h
.text:0000D7F0 call err_warn
.text:0000D7F5 push offset station_sem
.text:0000D7FA call ClosSem
.text:0000D7FF call startup_err
```

If it is 0, an encrypted error message is passed into decryption routine and printed.

Error strings decryption routine is seems simple [xoring](#):

```
.text:0000A43C err_warn proc near ; CODE XREF: prep_sys+E8p
.text:0000A43C ; prep_sys2+2Fp ...
.text:0000A43C
.text:0000A43C var_55 = byte ptr -55h
.text:0000A43C var_54 = byte ptr -54h
.text:0000A43C arg_0 = dword ptr 8
.text:0000A43C arg_4 = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:0000A43C arg_8 = dword ptr 10h
.text:0000A43C arg_C = dword ptr 14h
.text:0000A43C
.text:0000A43C push ebp
.text:0000A43D mov ebp, esp
.text:0000A43F sub esp, 54h
.text:0000A442 push edi
.text:0000A443 mov ecx, [ebp+arg_8]
.text:0000A446 xor edi, edi
.text:0000A448 test ecx, ecx
.text:0000A44A push esi
.text:0000A44B jle short loc_A466
.text:0000A44D mov esi, [ebp+arg_C] ; key
.text:0000A450 mov edx, [ebp+arg_4] ; string
```

⁴What a strange feeling: to reveal bugs in such ancient software.

```

.text:0000A453
.text:0000A453 loc_A453: ; CODE XREF: err_warn+28j
.text:0000A453 xor     eax, eax
.text:0000A455 mov     al, [edx+edi]
.text:0000A458 xor     eax, esi
.text:0000A45A add     esi, 3
.text:0000A45D inc     edi
.text:0000A45E cmp     edi, ecx
.text:0000A460 mov     [ebp+edi+var_55], al
.text:0000A464 jl     short loc_A453
.text:0000A466
.text:0000A466 loc_A466: ; CODE XREF: err_warn+Fj
.text:0000A466 mov     [ebp+edi+var_54], 0
.text:0000A46B mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:0000A46E cmp     eax, 18h
.text:0000A473 jnz    short loc_A49C
.text:0000A475 lea    eax, [ebp+var_54]
.text:0000A478 push   eax
.text:0000A479 call   status_line
.text:0000A47E add     esp, 4
.text:0000A481
.text:0000A481 loc_A481: ; CODE XREF: err_warn+72j
.text:0000A481 push   50h
.text:0000A483 push   0
.text:0000A485 lea    eax, [ebp+var_54]
.text:0000A488 push   eax
.text:0000A489 call   memset
.text:0000A48E call   pcv_refresh
.text:0000A493 add     esp, 0Ch
.text:0000A496 pop     esi
.text:0000A497 pop     edi
.text:0000A498 mov     esp, ebp
.text:0000A49A pop     ebp
.text:0000A49B retn
.text:0000A49C
.text:0000A49C loc_A49C: ; CODE XREF: err_warn+37j
.text:0000A49C push   0
.text:0000A49E lea    eax, [ebp+var_54]
.text:0000A4A1 mov     edx, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:0000A4A4 push   edx
.text:0000A4A5 push   eax
.text:0000A4A6 call   pcv_lputs
.text:0000A4AB add     esp, 0Ch
.text:0000A4AE jmp     short loc_A481
.text:0000A4AE err_warn endp

```

That's why I was unable to find error messages in the executable files, because they are encrypted, this is popular practice.

Another call to `SSQ()` hashing function passes "offln" string to it and comparing result with `0xFE81` and `0x12A9`. If it not so, it deals with some `timer()` function (maybe waiting for poorly connected dongle to be reconnected and check again?) and then decrypt another error message to dump.

```

.text:0000DA55 loc_DA55: ; CODE XREF: sync_sys+24Cj
.text:0000DA55 push   offset aOffln ; "offln"
.text:0000DA5A call   SSQ
.text:0000DA5F add     esp, 4
.text:0000DA62 mov     dl, [ebx]
.text:0000DA64 mov     esi, eax
.text:0000DA66 cmp     dl, 0Bh
.text:0000DA69 jnz    short loc_DA83
.text:0000DA6B cmp     esi, 0FE81h
.text:0000DA71 jz     OK
.text:0000DA77 cmp     esi, 0FFFFFF8EFh
.text:0000DA7D jz     OK
.text:0000DA83
.text:0000DA83 loc_DA83: ; CODE XREF: sync_sys+201j
.text:0000DA83 mov     cl, [ebx]
.text:0000DA85 cmp     cl, 0Ch
.text:0000DA88 jnz    short loc_DA9F
.text:0000DA8A cmp     esi, 12A9h
.text:0000DA90 jz     OK

```

```

.text:0000DA96      cmp     esi, 0FFFFFFF5h
.text:0000DA99      jz      OK
.text:0000DA9F      loc_DA9F:                                ; CODE XREF: sync_sys+220j
.text:0000DA9F      mov     eax, [ebp+var_18]
.text:0000DAA2      test    eax, eax
.text:0000DAA4      jz      short loc_DAB0
.text:0000DAA6      push   24h
.text:0000DAA8      call   timer
.text:0000DAAD      add     esp, 4
.text:0000DAB0      loc_DAB0:                                ; CODE XREF: sync_sys+23Cj
.text:0000DAB0      inc     edi
.text:0000DAB1      cmp     edi, 3
.text:0000DAB4      jle     short loc_DA55
.text:0000DAB6      mov     eax, ds:net_env
.text:0000DABB      test    eax, eax
.text:0000DABD      jz      short error
...
.text:0000DAF7      error:                                    ; CODE XREF: sync_sys+255j
.text:0000DAF7      ; sync_sys+274j ...
.text:0000DAF7      mov     [ebp+var_8], offset encrypted_error_message2
.text:0000DAFE      mov     [ebp+var_C], 17h ; decrypting key
.text:0000DB05      jmp     decrypt_end_print_message
...
; this name I gave to label:
.text:0000D9B6      decrypt_end_print_message:                ; CODE XREF: sync_sys+29Dj
.text:0000D9B6      ; sync_sys+2ABj
.text:0000D9B6      mov     eax, [ebp+var_18]
.text:0000D9B9      test    eax, eax
.text:0000D9BB      jnz     short loc_D9FB
.text:0000D9BD      mov     edx, [ebp+var_C] ; key
.text:0000D9C0      mov     ecx, [ebp+var_8] ; string
.text:0000D9C3      push   edx
.text:0000D9C4      push   20h
.text:0000D9C6      push   ecx
.text:0000D9C7      push   18h
.text:0000D9C9      call   err_warn
.text:0000D9CE      push   0Fh
.text:0000D9D0      push   190h
.text:0000D9D5      call   sound
.text:0000D9DA      mov     [ebp+var_18], 1
.text:0000D9E1      add     esp, 18h
.text:0000D9E4      call   pcv_kbhit
.text:0000D9E9      test    eax, eax
.text:0000D9EB      jz      short loc_D9FB
...
; this name I gave to label:
.data:00401736      encrypted_error_message2 db 74h, 72h, 78h, 43h, 48h, 6, 5Ah, 49h, 4Ch, 2 dup(47h
    ↵ )
.data:00401736      db 51h, 4Fh, 47h, 61h, 20h, 22h, 3Ch, 24h, 33h, 36h, 76h
.data:00401736      db 3Ah, 33h, 31h, 0Ch, 0, 0Bh, 1Fh, 7, 1Eh, 1Ah

```

Dongle bypassing is pretty straightforward: just patch all jumps after CMP the relevant instructions. Another option is to write our own SCO OpenServer driver.

69.2.1 Decrypting error messages

By the way, we can also try to decrypt all error messages. The algorithm, locating in `err_warn()` function is very simple, indeed:

Listing 69.1: Decrypting function

```

.text:0000A44D      mov     esi, [ebp+arg_C] ; key

```

```
.text:0000A450      mov     edx, [ebp+arg_4] ; string
.text:0000A453 loc_A453:      xor     eax, eax
.text:0000A455      mov     al, [edx+edi] ; load encrypted byte
.text:0000A458      xor     eax, esi      ; decrypt it
.text:0000A45A      add     esi, 3        ; change key for the next byte
.text:0000A45D      inc     edi
.text:0000A45E      cmp     edi, ecx
.text:0000A460      mov     [ebp+edi+var_55], al
.text:0000A464      jnl    short loc_A453
```

As we can see, not just string supplied to the decrypting function, but also the key:

```
.text:0000DAF7 error: ; CODE XREF: sync_sys+255j
.text:0000DAF7 ; sync_sys+274j ...
.text:0000DAF7      mov     [ebp+var_8], offset encrypted_error_message2
.text:0000DAFE      mov     [ebp+var_C], 17h ; decrypting key
.text:0000DB05      jmp     decrypt_end_print_message
...
; this name I gave to label:
.text:0000D9B6 decrypt_end_print_message: ; CODE XREF: sync_sys+29Dj
.text:0000D9B6 ; sync_sys+2ABj
.text:0000D9B6      mov     eax, [ebp+var_18]
.text:0000D9B9      test    eax, eax
.text:0000D9BB      jnz    short loc_D9FB
.text:0000D9BD      mov     edx, [ebp+var_C] ; key
.text:0000D9C0      mov     ecx, [ebp+var_8] ; string
.text:0000D9C3      push   edx
.text:0000D9C4      push   20h
.text:0000D9C6      push   ecx
.text:0000D9C7      push   18h
.text:0000D9C9      call   err_warn
```

The algorithm is simple [XORing](#): each byte is xored with a key, but key is increased by 3 after processing of each byte. I wrote a simple Python script to check my insights:

Listing 69.2: Python 3.x

```
#!/usr/bin/python
import sys

msg=[0x74, 0x72, 0x78, 0x43, 0x48, 0x6, 0x5A, 0x49, 0x4C, 0x47, 0x47,
0x51, 0x4F, 0x47, 0x61, 0x20, 0x22, 0x3C, 0x24, 0x33, 0x36, 0x76,
0x3A, 0x33, 0x31, 0x0C, 0x0, 0x0B, 0x1F, 0x7, 0x1E, 0x1A]

key=0x17
tmp=key
for i in msg:
    sys.stdout.write ("%c" % (i^tmp))
    tmp=tmp+3
sys.stdout.flush()
```

And it prints: “check security device connection”. So yes, this is decrypted message.

There are also other encrypted messages with corresponding keys. But needless to say that it is possible to decrypt them without keys. First, we may observe that key is byte in fact. It is because core decrypting instruction (XOR) works on byte level. Key is located in ESI register, but only byte part of ESI is used. Hence, key may be greater than 255, but its value will always be rounded.

As a consequence, we can just try brute-force, trying all possible keys in 0..255 range. We will also skip messages containing unprintable characters.

Listing 69.3: Python 3.x

```
#!/usr/bin/python
import sys, curses.ascii

msgs=[
[0x74, 0x72, 0x78, 0x43, 0x48, 0x6, 0x5A, 0x49, 0x4C, 0x47, 0x47,
0x51, 0x4F, 0x47, 0x61, 0x20, 0x22, 0x3C, 0x24, 0x33, 0x36, 0x76,
0x3A, 0x33, 0x31, 0x0C, 0x0, 0x0B, 0x1F, 0x7, 0x1E, 0x1A],
```

```
[0x49, 0x65, 0x2D, 0x63, 0x76, 0x75, 0x6C, 0x6E, 0x76, 0x56, 0x5C,
8, 0x4F, 0x4B, 0x47, 0x5D, 0x54, 0x5F, 0x1D, 0x26, 0x2C, 0x33,
0x27, 0x28, 0x6F, 0x72, 0x75, 0x78, 0x7B, 0x7E, 0x41, 0x44],

[0x45, 0x61, 0x31, 0x67, 0x72, 0x79, 0x68, 0x52, 0x4A, 0x52, 0x50,
0x0C, 0x4B, 0x57, 0x43, 0x51, 0x58, 0x5B, 0x61, 0x37, 0x33, 0x2B,
0x39, 0x39, 0x3C, 0x38, 0x79, 0x3A, 0x30, 0x17, 0x0B, 0x0C],

[0x40, 0x64, 0x79, 0x75, 0x7F, 0x6F, 0x0, 0x4C, 0x40, 0x9, 0x4D, 0x5A,
0x46, 0x5D, 0x57, 0x49, 0x57, 0x3B, 0x21, 0x23, 0x6A, 0x38, 0x23,
0x36, 0x24, 0x2A, 0x7C, 0x3A, 0x1A, 0x6, 0x0D, 0x0E, 0x0A, 0x14,
0x10],

[0x72, 0x7C, 0x72, 0x79, 0x76, 0x0,
0x50, 0x43, 0x4A, 0x59, 0x5D, 0x5B, 0x41, 0x41, 0x1B, 0x5A,
0x24, 0x32, 0x2E, 0x29, 0x28, 0x70, 0x20, 0x22, 0x38, 0x28, 0x36,
0x0D, 0x0B, 0x48, 0x4B, 0x4E]]

def is_string_printable(s):
    return all(list(map(lambda x: curses.ascii.isprint(x), s)))

cnt=1
for msg in msgs:
    print ("message #%d" % cnt)
    for key in range(0,256):
        result=[]
        tmp=key
        for i in msg:
            result.append (i^tmp)
            tmp=tmp+3
        if is_string_printable (result):
            print ("key=", key, "value=", "".join(list(map(chr, result))))
    cnt=cnt+1
```

And we got:

Listing 69.4: Results

```
message #1
key= 20 value= `eb^h%|``hudw|_af{n~f%ljmSbnwlpk
key= 21 value= ajc|i"}cawtgv{^bgto}g"millcmvkqh
key= 22 value= bkd\j#rbbvsvfuz!cduh|d#bhomdlujni
key= 23 value= check security device connection
key= 24 value= lifbl!pd|tqhsx#ejwjbbl`nQofbshlo
message #2
key= 7 value= No security device found
key= 8 value= An#rbbvsVuz!cduhld#ghtme?!#!'#!
message #3
key= 7 value= Bk<waoqNUpu$`yreao\wpmpusj,bkIjh
key= 8 value= Mj?vfnrOjqv%gxqd``_vwlstlk/clHii
key= 9 value= Lm>ugasLkvw&fgpgag^uvcwml.`mwhj
key= 10 value= 0l!td`tmhwx`efwfbf!tubuvnm!anvok
key= 11 value= No security device station found
key= 12 value= In#rjbvsnuz!{duhdd#r{`whho#gPtme
message #4
key= 14 value= Number of authorized users exceeded
key= 15 value= Ovlmdq!hg#`juknuhydk!vrbsp!Zy`dbefe
message #5
key= 17 value= check security device station
key= 18 value= `ijbh!td`tmhwx`efwfbf!tubuVnm!'!
```

There are some garbage, but we can quickly find English-language messages!

By the way, since algorithm is simple xoring encryption, the very same function can be used for encrypting messages. If we need, we can encrypt our own messages, and patch the program by inserting them.

69.3 Example #3: MS-DOS

Another very old software for MS-DOS from 1995 also developed by a company disappeared long time ago.

In the pre-DOS extenders era, all the software for MS-DOS were mostly rely on 16-bit 8086 or 80286 CPUs, so en masse code was 16-bit. 16-bit code is mostly same as you already saw in this book, but all registers are 16-bit and there are less number of instructions available.

MS-DOS environment has no any system drivers, any program may deal with bare hardware via ports, so here you may see OUT/IN instructions, which are mostly present in drivers in our times (it is impossible to access ports directly in [user mode](#) in all modern OS).

Given that, the MS-DOS program working with a dongle should access LPT printer port directly. So we can just search for such instructions. And yes, here it is:

```

seg030:0034          out_port proc far ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+22p
seg030:0034                      ; sent_pro+2Ap ...
seg030:0034
seg030:0034          arg_0      = byte ptr 6
seg030:0034
seg030:0034 55                push    bp
seg030:0035 8B EC            mov     bp, sp
seg030:0037 8B 16 7E E7      mov     dx, _out_port ; 0x378
seg030:003B 8A 46 06         mov     al, [bp+arg_0]
seg030:003E EE                out     dx, al
seg030:003F 5D                pop     bp
seg030:0040 CB                retf
seg030:0040          out_port endp

```

(All label names in this example were given by me).

out_port() is referenced only in one function:

```

seg030:0041          sent_pro proc far ; CODE XREF: check_dongle+34p
seg030:0041
seg030:0041          var_3      = byte ptr -3
seg030:0041          var_2      = word ptr -2
seg030:0041          arg_0      = dword ptr 6
seg030:0041
seg030:0041 C8 04 00 00      enter   4, 0
seg030:0045 56                push   si
seg030:0046 57                push   di
seg030:0047 8B 16 82 E7      mov     dx, _in_port_1 ; 0x37A
seg030:004B EC                in     al, dx
seg030:004C 8A D8            mov     bl, al
seg030:004E 80 E3 FE         and     bl, 0FEh
seg030:0051 80 CB 04         or     bl, 4
seg030:0054 8A C3            mov     al, bl
seg030:0056 88 46 FD         mov     [bp+var_3], al
seg030:0059 80 E3 1F         and     bl, 1Fh
seg030:005C 8A C3            mov     al, bl
seg030:005E EE                out     dx, al
seg030:005F 68 FF 00         push   0FFh
seg030:0062 0E                push   cs
seg030:0063 E8 CE FF         call   near ptr out_port
seg030:0066 59                pop    cx
seg030:0067 68 D3 00         push   0D3h
seg030:006A 0E                push   cs
seg030:006B E8 C6 FF         call   near ptr out_port
seg030:006E 59                pop    cx
seg030:006F 33 F6            xor     si, si
seg030:0071 EB 01            jmp     short loc_359D4
seg030:0073
seg030:0073          loc_359D3: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+37j
seg030:0073 46                inc     si
seg030:0074
seg030:0074          loc_359D4: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+30j
seg030:0074 81 FE 96 00      cmp     si, 96h
seg030:0078 7C F9            jl     short loc_359D3
seg030:007A 68 C3 00         push   0C3h
seg030:007D 0E                push   cs
seg030:007E E8 B3 FF         call   near ptr out_port
seg030:0081 59                pop    cx
seg030:0082 68 C7 00         push   0C7h
seg030:0085 0E                push   cs
seg030:0086 E8 AB FF         call   near ptr out_port
seg030:0089 59                pop    cx

```

```

seg030:008A 68 D3 00      push    0D3h
seg030:008D 0E                push    cs
seg030:008E E8 A3 FF      call   near ptr out_port
seg030:0091 59                pop     cx
seg030:0092 68 C3 00      push    0C3h
seg030:0095 0E                push    cs
seg030:0096 E8 9B FF      call   near ptr out_port
seg030:0099 59                pop     cx
seg030:009A 68 C7 00      push    0C7h
seg030:009D 0E                push    cs
seg030:009E E8 93 FF      call   near ptr out_port
seg030:00A1 59                pop     cx
seg030:00A2 68 D3 00      push    0D3h
seg030:00A5 0E                push    cs
seg030:00A6 E8 8B FF      call   near ptr out_port
seg030:00A9 59                pop     cx
seg030:00AA BF FF FF      mov     di, 0FFFFh
seg030:00AD EB 40                jmp     short loc_35A4F
seg030:00AF
seg030:00AF          loc_35A0F: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+BDj
seg030:00AF BE 04 00      mov     si, 4
seg030:00B2
seg030:00B2          loc_35A12: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+ACj
seg030:00B2 D1 E7                shl     di, 1
seg030:00B4 8B 16 80 E7      mov     dx, _in_port_2 ; 0x379
seg030:00B8 EC                in     al, dx
seg030:00B9 A8 80                test    al, 80h
seg030:00BB 75 03                jnz    short loc_35A20
seg030:00BD 83 CF 01      or     di, 1
seg030:00C0
seg030:00C0          loc_35A20: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+7Aj
seg030:00C0 F7 46 FE 08+     test    [bp+var_2], 8
seg030:00C5 74 05                jz     short loc_35A2C
seg030:00C7 68 D7 00      push    0D7h ; '+'
seg030:00CA EB 0B                jmp     short loc_35A37
seg030:00CC
seg030:00CC          loc_35A2C: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+84j
seg030:00CC 68 C3 00      push    0C3h
seg030:00CF 0E                push    cs
seg030:00D0 E8 61 FF      call   near ptr out_port
seg030:00D3 59                pop     cx
seg030:00D4 68 C7 00      push    0C7h
seg030:00D7
seg030:00D7          loc_35A37: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+89j
seg030:00D7 0E                push    cs
seg030:00D8 E8 59 FF      call   near ptr out_port
seg030:00DB 59                pop     cx
seg030:00DC 68 D3 00      push    0D3h
seg030:00DF 0E                push    cs
seg030:00E0 E8 51 FF      call   near ptr out_port
seg030:00E3 59                pop     cx
seg030:00E4 8B 46 FE      mov     ax, [bp+var_2]
seg030:00E7 D1 E0                shl     ax, 1
seg030:00E9 89 46 FE      mov     [bp+var_2], ax
seg030:00EC 4E                dec     si
seg030:00ED 75 C3                jnz    short loc_35A12
seg030:00EF
seg030:00EF          loc_35A4F: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+6Cj
seg030:00EF C4 5E 06      les     bx, [bp+arg_0]
seg030:00F2 FF 46 06      inc     word ptr [bp+arg_0]
seg030:00F5 26 8A 07      mov     al, es:[bx]
seg030:00F8 98                cbw
seg030:00F9 89 46 FE      mov     [bp+var_2], ax
seg030:00FC 0B C0                or     ax, ax
seg030:00FE 75 AF                jnz    short loc_35A0F
seg030:0100 68 FF 00      push    0FFh
seg030:0103 0E                push    cs
seg030:0104 E8 2D FF      call   near ptr out_port
seg030:0107 59                pop     cx
seg030:0108 8B 16 82 E7      mov     dx, _in_port_1 ; 0x37A

```

```

seg030:010C EC          in      al, dx
seg030:010D 8A C8          mov     cl, al
seg030:010F 80 E1 5F        and     cl, 5Fh
seg030:0112 8A C1          mov     al, cl
seg030:0114 EE          out     dx, al
seg030:0115 EC          in      al, dx
seg030:0116 8A C8          mov     cl, al
seg030:0118 F6 C1 20        test    cl, 20h
seg030:011B 74 08          jz      short loc_35A85
seg030:011D 8A 5E FD        mov     bl, [bp+var_3]
seg030:0120 80 E3 DF        and     bl, 0DFh
seg030:0123 EB 03          jmp     short loc_35A88
seg030:0125
seg030:0125          loc_35A85: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+DAj
seg030:0125 8A 5E FD        mov     bl, [bp+var_3]
seg030:0128
seg030:0128          loc_35A88: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+E2j
seg030:0128 F6 C1 80        test    cl, 80h
seg030:012B 74 03          jz      short loc_35A90
seg030:012D 80 E3 7F        and     bl, 7Fh
seg030:0130
seg030:0130          loc_35A90: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+EAj
seg030:0130 8B 16 82 E7        mov     dx, _in_port_1 ; 0x37A
seg030:0134 8A C3          mov     al, bl
seg030:0136 EE          out     dx, al
seg030:0137 8B C7          mov     ax, di
seg030:0139 5F          pop     di
seg030:013A 5E          pop     si
seg030:013B C9          leave
seg030:013C CB          retf
seg030:013C          sent_pro endp

```

It is also Sentinel Pro “hashing” dongle as in the previous example. I figured out its type by noticing that a text strings are also passed here and 16 bit values are also returned and compared with others.

So that is how Sentinel Pro is accessed via ports. Output port address is usually 0x378, i.e., printer port, the data to the old printers in pre-USB era were passed to it. The port is one-directional, because when it was developed, no one can imagined someone will need to transfer information from the printer⁵. The only way to get information from the printer, is a status register on port 0x379, it contain such bits as “paper out”, “ack”, “busy” –thus printer may signal to the host computer that it is ready or not and if a paper present in it. So the dongle return information from one of these bits, by one bit at each iteration.

`_in_port_2` has address of status word (0x379) and `_in_port_1` has control register address (0x37A).

It seems, the dongle return information via “busy” flag at `seg030:00B9`: each bit is stored in the DI register, later returned at the function end.

What all these bytes sent to output port mean? I don’t know. Probably commands to the dongle. But generally speaking, it is not necessary to know: it is easy to solve our task without that knowledge.

Here is a dongle checking routine:

```

00000000 struct_0      struc ; (sizeof=0x1B)
00000000 field_0      db 25 dup(?)          ; string(C)
00000019 _A          dw ?
0000001B struct_0      ends

dseg:3CBC 61 63 72 75+_Q struct_0 <'hello', 01122h>
dseg:3CBC 6E 00 00 00+ ; DATA XREF: check_dongle+2Eo

... skipped ...

dseg:3E00 63 6F 66 66+ struct_0 <'coffee', 7EB7h>
dseg:3E1B 64 6F 67 00+ struct_0 <'dog', 0FFADh>
dseg:3E36 63 61 74 00+ struct_0 <'cat', 0FF5Fh>
dseg:3E51 70 61 70 65+ struct_0 <'paper', 0FFDFh>
dseg:3E6C 63 6F 6B 65+ struct_0 <'coke', 0F568h>
dseg:3E87 63 6C 6F 63+ struct_0 <'clock', 55EAh>
dseg:3EA2 64 69 72 00+ struct_0 <'dir', 0FFAEh>
dseg:3EBD 63 6F 70 79+ struct_0 <'copy', 0F557h>

seg030:0145          check_dongle proc far ; CODE XREF: sub_3771D+3EP

```

⁵If to consider Centronics only. Following IEEE 1284 standard allows to transfer information from the printer.


```

seg030:0145
seg030:0145          var_6 = dword ptr -6
seg030:0145          var_2 = word ptr -2
seg030:0145
seg030:0145 C8 06 00 00      enter    6, 0
seg030:0149 56          push    si
seg030:014A 66 6A 00      push    large 0          ; newtime
seg030:014D 6A 00      push    0                ; cmd
seg030:014F 9A C1 18 00+   call    _biostime
seg030:0154 52          push    dx
seg030:0155 50          push    ax
seg030:0156 66 58      pop     eax
seg030:0158 83 C4 06      add     sp, 6
seg030:015B 66 89 46 FA   mov     [bp+var_6], eax
seg030:015F 66 3B 06 D8+  cmp     eax, _expiration
seg030:0164 7E 44      jle     short loc_35B0A
seg030:0166 6A 14      push    14h
seg030:0168 90          nop
seg030:0169 0E          push    cs
seg030:016A E8 52 00      call   near ptr get_rand
seg030:016D 59          pop     cx
seg030:016E 8B F0      mov     si, ax
seg030:0170 6B C0 1B      imul   ax, 1Bh
seg030:0173 05 BC 3C      add     ax, offset _Q
seg030:0176 1E          push    ds
seg030:0177 50          push    ax
seg030:0178 0E          push    cs
seg030:0179 E8 C5 FE      call   near ptr sent_pro
seg030:017C 83 C4 04      add     sp, 4
seg030:017F 89 46 FE      mov     [bp+var_2], ax
seg030:0182 8B C6      mov     ax, si
seg030:0184 6B C0 12      imul   ax, 12
seg030:0187 66 0F BF C0   movsx  eax, ax
seg030:018B 66 8B 56 FA   mov     edx, [bp+var_6]
seg030:018F 66 03 D0      add     edx, eax
seg030:0192 66 89 16 D8+  mov     _expiration, edx
seg030:0197 8B DE      mov     bx, si
seg030:0199 6B DB 1B      imul   bx, 27
seg030:019C 8B 87 D5 3C   mov     ax, _Q._A[bx]
seg030:01A0 3B 46 FE      cmp     ax, [bp+var_2]
seg030:01A3 74 05      jz     short loc_35B0A
seg030:01A5 B8 01 00      mov     ax, 1
seg030:01A8 EB 02      jmp     short loc_35B0C
seg030:01AA
seg030:01AA          loc_35B0A: ; CODE XREF: check_dongle+1Fj
seg030:01AA          ; check_dongle+5Ej
seg030:01AA 33 C0      xor     ax, ax
seg030:01AC
seg030:01AC          loc_35B0C: ; CODE XREF: check_dongle+63j
seg030:01AC 5E          pop     si
seg030:01AD C9          leave
seg030:01AE CB          retf
seg030:01AE          check_dongle endp

```

Since the routine may be called too frequently, e.g., before each important software feature executing, and the dongle accessing process is generally slow (because of slow printer port and also slow MCU in the dongle), so they probably added a way to skip dongle checking too often, using checking current time in `biostime()` function.

`get_rand()` function uses standard C function:

```

seg030:01BF          get_rand proc far ; CODE XREF: check_dongle+25p
seg030:01BF
seg030:01BF          arg_0 = word ptr 6
seg030:01BF
seg030:01BF 55          push    bp
seg030:01C0 8B EC      mov     bp, sp
seg030:01C2 9A 3D 21 00+   call    _rand
seg030:01C7 66 0F BF C0   movsx  eax, ax
seg030:01CB 66 0F BF 56+  movsx  edx, [bp+arg_0]
seg030:01D0 66 0F AF C2   imul   eax, edx
seg030:01D4 66 BB 00 80+  mov     ebx, 8000h

```

```

seg030:01DA 66 99          cdq
seg030:01DC 66 F7 FB      idiv   ebx
seg030:01DF 5D          pop    bp
seg030:01E0 CB          retf
seg030:01E0          get_rand endp

```

So the text string is selected randomly, passed into dongle, and then the result of hashing is compared with correct value. Text strings are seems to be chosen randomly as well.

And that is how the main dongle checking function is called:

```

seg033:087B 9A 45 01 96+  call   check_dongle
seg033:0880 0B C0          or     ax, ax
seg033:0882 74 62          jz     short OK
seg033:0884 83 3E 60 42+  cmp    word_620E0, 0
seg033:0889 75 5B          jnz   short OK
seg033:088B FF 06 60 42  inc    word_620E0
seg033:088F 1E          push  ds
seg033:0890 68 22 44  push  offset aTrupcRequiresA ; "This Software Requires a Software ↵
    ↳ Lock\n"
seg033:0893 1E          push  ds
seg033:0894 68 60 E9  push  offset byte_6C7E0 ; dest
seg033:0897 9A 79 65 00+ call   _strcpy
seg033:089C 83 C4 08  add   sp, 8
seg033:089F 1E          push  ds
seg033:08A0 68 42 44  push  offset aPleaseContactA ; "Please Contact ..."
seg033:08A3 1E          push  ds
seg033:08A4 68 60 E9  push  offset byte_6C7E0 ; dest
seg033:08A7 9A CD 64 00+ call   _strcat

```

Dongle bypassing is easy, just force the `check_dongle()` function to always return 0.

For example, by inserting this code at its beginning:

```

mov ax,0
retf

```

Observant reader might recall that `strcpy()` C function usually requires two pointers in arguments, but we saw how 4 values are passed:

```

seg033:088F 1E          push  ds
seg033:0890 68 22 44  push  offset aTrupcRequiresA ; "This Software ↵
    ↳ Requires a Software Lock\n"
seg033:0893 1E          push  ds
seg033:0894 68 60 E9  push  offset byte_6C7E0 ; dest
seg033:0897 9A 79 65 00+ call   _strcpy
seg033:089C 83 C4 08  add   sp, 8

```

This is related to MS-DOS memory model. Read more about it here: [84](#).

So as you may see, `strcpy()` and any other function taking pointer(s) in arguments, works with 16-bit pairs.

Let's back to our example. DS is currently set to data segment located in the executable, that is where the text string is stored.

In the `sent_pro()` function, each byte of string is loaded at `seg030:00EF`: the LES instruction loads ES:BX pair simultaneously from the passed argument. The MOV at `seg030:00F5` loads the byte from the memory to which ES:BX pair points.

At `seg030:00F2` only 16-bit word is [incremented](#), not segment value. This means, the string passed to the function cannot be located on two data segments boundaries.

Chapter 70

“QR9”: Rubik’s cube inspired amateur crypto-algorithm

Sometimes amateur cryptosystems appear to be pretty bizarre.

I was asked to reverse engineer an amateur cryptoalgorithm of some data crypting utility, source code of which was lost¹.

Here is also [IDA](#) exported listing from original crypting utility:

```
.text:00541000 set_bit      proc near                ; CODE XREF: rotate1+42
.text:00541000                                     ; rotate2+42 ...
.text:00541000
.text:00541000 arg_0        = dword ptr 4
.text:00541000 arg_4        = dword ptr 8
.text:00541000 arg_8        = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:00541000 arg_C        = byte ptr 10h
.text:00541000
.text:00541000          mov     al, [esp+arg_C]
.text:00541004          mov     ecx, [esp+arg_8]
.text:00541008          push   esi
.text:00541009          mov     esi, [esp+4+arg_0]
.text:0054100D          test   al, al
.text:0054100F          mov     eax, [esp+4+arg_4]
.text:00541013          mov     dl, 1
.text:00541015          jz     short loc_54102B
.text:00541017          shl    dl, cl
.text:00541019          mov     cl, cube64[eax+esi*8]
.text:00541020          or     cl, dl
.text:00541022          mov     cube64[eax+esi*8], cl
.text:00541029          pop    esi
.text:0054102A          retn
.text:0054102B
.text:0054102B loc_54102B:                ; CODE XREF: set_bit+15
.text:0054102B          shl    dl, cl
.text:0054102D          mov     cl, cube64[eax+esi*8]
.text:00541034          not    dl
.text:00541036          and    cl, dl
.text:00541038          mov     cube64[eax+esi*8], cl
.text:0054103F          pop    esi
.text:00541040          retn
.text:00541040 set_bit      endp
.text:00541040
.text:00541041          align 10h
.text:00541050
.text:00541050 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:00541050
.text:00541050
.text:00541050 get_bit      proc near                ; CODE XREF: rotate1+16
.text:00541050                                     ; rotate2+16 ...
.text:00541050
.text:00541050 arg_0        = dword ptr 4
.text:00541050 arg_4        = dword ptr 8
.text:00541050 arg_8        = byte ptr 0Ch
.text:00541050
.text:00541050          mov     eax, [esp+arg_4]
```

¹I also got permit from customer to publish the algorithm details

```

.text:00541054      mov     ecx, [esp+arg_0]
.text:00541058      mov     al, cube64[eax+ecx*8]
.text:0054105F      mov     cl, [esp+arg_8]
.text:00541063      shr     al, cl
.text:00541065      and     al, 1
.text:00541067      retn
.text:00541067  get_bit      endp
.text:00541067
.text:00541068      align 10h
.text:00541070
.text:00541070 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:00541070
.text:00541070
.text:00541070 rotate1      proc near          ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+8E
.text:00541070
.text:00541070 internal_array_64= byte ptr -40h
.text:00541070 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:00541070
.text:00541070      sub     esp, 40h
.text:00541073      push  ebx
.text:00541074      push  ebp
.text:00541075      mov   ebp, [esp+48h+arg_0]
.text:00541079      push  esi
.text:0054107A      push  edi
.text:0054107B      xor   edi, edi          ; EDI is loop1 counter
.text:0054107D      lea  ebx, [esp+50h+internal_array_64]
.text:00541081
.text:00541081 first_loop1_begin:          ; CODE XREF: rotate1+2E
.text:00541081      xor   esi, esi          ; ESI is loop2 counter
.text:00541083
.text:00541083 first_loop2_begin:          ; CODE XREF: rotate1+25
.text:00541083      push  ebp              ; arg_0
.text:00541084      push  esi
.text:00541085      push  edi
.text:00541086      call get_bit
.text:0054108B      add  esp, 0Ch
.text:0054108E      mov  [ebx+esi], al      ; store to internal array
.text:00541091      inc  esi
.text:00541092      cmp  esi, 8
.text:00541095      jl  short first_loop2_begin
.text:00541097      inc  edi
.text:00541098      add  ebx, 8
.text:0054109B      cmp  edi, 8
.text:0054109E      jl  short first_loop1_begin
.text:005410A0      lea  ebx, [esp+50h+internal_array_64]
.text:005410A4      mov  edi, 7            ; EDI is loop1 counter, initial state is 7
    ↘ 7
.text:005410A9
.text:005410A9 second_loop1_begin:          ; CODE XREF: rotate1+57
.text:005410A9      xor   esi, esi          ; ESI is loop2 counter
.text:005410AB
.text:005410AB second_loop2_begin:          ; CODE XREF: rotate1+4E
.text:005410AB      mov  al, [ebx+esi]      ; value from internal array
.text:005410AE      push  eax
.text:005410AF      push  ebp              ; arg_0
.text:005410B0      push  edi
.text:005410B1      push  esi
.text:005410B2      call set_bit
.text:005410B7      add  esp, 10h
.text:005410BA      inc  esi              ; increment loop2 counter
.text:005410BB      cmp  esi, 8
.text:005410BE      jl  short second_loop2_begin
.text:005410C0      dec  edi              ; decrement loop2 counter
.text:005410C1      add  ebx, 8
.text:005410C4      cmp  edi, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:005410C7      jg  short second_loop1_begin
.text:005410C9      pop  edi
.text:005410CA      pop  esi
.text:005410CB      pop  ebp
.text:005410CC      pop  ebx

```

```

.text:005410CD      add     esp, 40h
.text:005410D0      retn
.text:005410D0 rotate1      endp
.text:005410D0
.text:005410D1      align 10h
.text:005410E0
.text:005410E0 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:005410E0
.text:005410E0 rotate2      proc near          ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+7A
.text:005410E0
.text:005410E0 internal_array_64= byte ptr -40h
.text:005410E0 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:005410E0
.text:005410E0      sub     esp, 40h
.text:005410E3      push   ebx
.text:005410E4      push   ebp
.text:005410E5      mov     ebp, [esp+48h+arg_0]
.text:005410E9      push   esi
.text:005410EA      push   edi
.text:005410EB      xor     edi, edi          ; loop1 counter
.text:005410ED      lea    ebx, [esp+50h+internal_array_64]
.text:005410F1
.text:005410F1 loc_5410F1:          ; CODE XREF: rotate2+2E
.text:005410F1      xor     esi, esi          ; loop2 counter
.text:005410F3
.text:005410F3 loc_5410F3:          ; CODE XREF: rotate2+25
.text:005410F3      push   esi              ; loop2
.text:005410F4      push   edi              ; loop1
.text:005410F5      push   ebp              ; arg_0
.text:005410F6      call   get_bit
.text:005410FB      add     esp, 0Ch
.text:005410FE      mov     [ebx+esi], al    ; store to internal array
.text:00541101      inc     esi              ; increment loop1 counter
.text:00541102      cmp     esi, 8
.text:00541105      jl     short loc_5410F3
.text:00541107      inc     edi              ; increment loop2 counter
.text:00541108      add     ebx, 8
.text:0054110B      cmp     edi, 8
.text:0054110E      jl     short loc_5410F1
.text:00541110      lea    ebx, [esp+50h+internal_array_64]
.text:00541114      mov     edi, 7          ; loop1 counter is initial state 7
.text:00541119
.text:00541119 loc_541119:          ; CODE XREF: rotate2+57
.text:00541119      xor     esi, esi          ; loop2 counter
.text:0054111B
.text:0054111B loc_54111B:          ; CODE XREF: rotate2+4E
.text:0054111B      mov     al, [ebx+esi]   ; get byte from internal array
.text:0054111E      push   eax
.text:0054111F      push   edi              ; loop1 counter
.text:00541120      push   esi              ; loop2 counter
.text:00541121      push   ebp              ; arg_0
.text:00541122      call   set_bit
.text:00541127      add     esp, 10h
.text:0054112A      inc     esi              ; increment loop2 counter
.text:0054112B      cmp     esi, 8
.text:0054112E      jl     short loc_54111B
.text:00541130      dec     edi              ; decrement loop2 counter
.text:00541131      add     ebx, 8
.text:00541134      cmp     edi, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:00541137      jg     short loc_541119
.text:00541139      pop     edi
.text:0054113A      pop     esi
.text:0054113B      pop     ebp
.text:0054113C      pop     ebx
.text:0054113D      add     esp, 40h
.text:00541140      retn
.text:00541140 rotate2      endp
.text:00541140
.text:00541141      align 10h

```

```

.text:00541150
.text:00541150 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:00541150
.text:00541150 rotate3      proc near          ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+66
.text:00541150
.text:00541150 var_40      = byte ptr -40h
.text:00541150 arg_0       = dword ptr  4
.text:00541150
.text:00541150          sub     esp, 40h
.text:00541153          push   ebx
.text:00541154          push   ebp
.text:00541155          mov    ebp, [esp+48h+arg_0]
.text:00541159          push   esi
.text:0054115A          push   edi
.text:0054115B          xor    edi, edi
.text:0054115D          lea   ebx, [esp+50h+var_40]
.text:00541161
.text:00541161 loc_541161:          ; CODE XREF: rotate3+2E
.text:00541161          xor    esi, esi
.text:00541163
.text:00541163 loc_541163:          ; CODE XREF: rotate3+25
.text:00541163          push   esi
.text:00541164          push   ebp
.text:00541165          push   edi
.text:00541166          call  get_bit
.text:0054116B          add    esp, 0Ch
.text:0054116E          mov    [ebx+esi], al
.text:00541171          inc    esi
.text:00541172          cmp    esi, 8
.text:00541175          jl     short loc_541163
.text:00541177          inc    edi
.text:00541178          add    ebx, 8
.text:0054117B          cmp    edi, 8
.text:0054117E          jl     short loc_541161
.text:00541180          xor    ebx, ebx
.text:00541182          lea   edi, [esp+50h+var_40]
.text:00541186
.text:00541186 loc_541186:          ; CODE XREF: rotate3+54
.text:00541186          mov    esi, 7
.text:0054118B
.text:0054118B loc_54118B:          ; CODE XREF: rotate3+4E
.text:0054118B          mov    al, [edi]
.text:0054118D          push   eax
.text:0054118E          push   ebx
.text:0054118F          push   ebp
.text:00541190          push   esi
.text:00541191          call  set_bit
.text:00541196          add    esp, 10h
.text:00541199          inc    edi
.text:0054119A          dec    esi
.text:0054119B          cmp    esi, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:0054119E          jg     short loc_54118B
.text:005411A0          inc    ebx
.text:005411A1          cmp    ebx, 8
.text:005411A4          jl     short loc_541186
.text:005411A6          pop    edi
.text:005411A7          pop    esi
.text:005411A8          pop    ebp
.text:005411A9          pop    ebx
.text:005411AA          add    esp, 40h
.text:005411AD          retn
.text:005411AD rotate3      endp
.text:005411AD
.text:005411AE          align 10h
.text:005411B0
.text:005411B0 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:005411B0
.text:005411B0 rotate_all_with_password proc near          ; CODE XREF: crypt+1F

```

```

.text:005411B0                                     ; decrypt+36
.text:005411B0
.text:005411B0 arg_0                             = dword ptr 4
.text:005411B0 arg_4                             = dword ptr 8
.text:005411B0
.text:005411B0 mov     eax, [esp+arg_0]
.text:005411B4 push   ebp
.text:005411B5 mov     ebp, eax
.text:005411B7 cmp     byte ptr [eax], 0
.text:005411BA jz     exit
.text:005411C0 push   ebx
.text:005411C1 mov     ebx, [esp+8+arg_4]
.text:005411C5 push   esi
.text:005411C6 push   edi
.text:005411C7
.text:005411C7 loop_begin:                               ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+9F
.text:005411C7 movsx  eax, byte ptr [ebp+0]
.text:005411CB push   eax                                     ; C
.text:005411CC call  _tolower
.text:005411D1 add     esp, 4
.text:005411D4 cmp     al, 'a'
.text:005411D6 jl     short next_character_in_password
.text:005411D8 cmp     al, 'z'
.text:005411DA jg     short next_character_in_password
.text:005411DC movsx  ecx, al
.text:005411DF sub     ecx, 'a'
.text:005411E2 cmp     ecx, 24
.text:005411E5 jle   short skip_subtracting
.text:005411E7 sub     ecx, 24
.text:005411EA
.text:005411EA skip_subtracting:                   ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+35
.text:005411EA mov     eax, 55555556h
.text:005411EF imul  ecx
.text:005411F1 mov     eax, edx
.text:005411F3 shr     eax, 1Fh
.text:005411F6 add     edx, eax
.text:005411F8 mov     eax, ecx
.text:005411FA mov     esi, edx
.text:005411FC mov     ecx, 3
.text:00541201 cdq
.text:00541202 idiv  ecx
.text:00541204 sub     edx, 0
.text:00541207 jz     short call_rotate1
.text:00541209 dec     edx
.text:0054120A jz     short call_rotate2
.text:0054120C dec     edx
.text:0054120D jnz   short next_character_in_password
.text:0054120F test   ebx, ebx
.text:00541211 jle   short next_character_in_password
.text:00541213 mov     edi, ebx
.text:00541215
.text:00541215 call_rotate3:                               ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+6F
.text:00541215 push   esi
.text:00541216 call  rotate3
.text:0054121B add     esp, 4
.text:0054121E dec     edi
.text:0054121F jnz   short call_rotate3
.text:00541221 jmp    short next_character_in_password
.text:00541223
.text:00541223 call_rotate2:                               ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+5A
.text:00541223 test   ebx, ebx
.text:00541225 jle   short next_character_in_password
.text:00541227 mov     edi, ebx
.text:00541229
.text:00541229 loc_541229:                               ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+83
.text:00541229 push   esi
.text:0054122A call  rotate2
.text:0054122F add     esp, 4
.text:00541232 dec     edi
.text:00541233 jnz   short loc_541229

```

```

.text:00541235      jmp      short next_character_in_password
.text:00541237
.text:00541237  call_rotate1:      ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+57
.text:00541237      test     ebx, ebx
.text:00541239      jle     short next_character_in_password
.text:0054123B      mov     edi, ebx
.text:0054123D
.text:0054123D  loc_54123D:      ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+97
.text:0054123D      push   esi
.text:0054123E      call   rotate1
.text:00541243      add    esp, 4
.text:00541246      dec    edi
.text:00541247      jnz    short loc_54123D
.text:00541249
.text:00541249  next_character_in_password: ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+26
.text:00541249      ; rotate_all_with_password+2A ...
.text:00541249      mov    al, [ebp+1]
.text:0054124C      inc    ebp
.text:0054124D      test   al, al
.text:0054124F      jnz    loop_begin
.text:00541255      pop    edi
.text:00541256      pop    esi
.text:00541257      pop    ebx
.text:00541258
.text:00541258  exit:           ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+A
.text:00541258      pop    ebp
.text:00541259      retn
.text:00541259  rotate_all_with_password endp
.text:00541259
.text:0054125A      align 10h
.text:00541260
.text:00541260 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:00541260
.text:00541260
.text:00541260  crypt          proc near      ; CODE XREF: crypt_file+8A
.text:00541260
.text:00541260  arg_0          = dword ptr 4
.text:00541260  arg_4          = dword ptr 8
.text:00541260  arg_8          = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:00541260
.text:00541260      push   ebx
.text:00541261      mov    ebx, [esp+4+arg_0]
.text:00541265      push   ebp
.text:00541266      push   esi
.text:00541267      push   edi
.text:00541268      xor    ebp, ebp
.text:0054126A
.text:0054126A  loc_54126A:    ; CODE XREF: crypt+41
.text:0054126A      mov    eax, [esp+10h+arg_8]
.text:0054126E      mov    ecx, 10h
.text:00541273      mov    esi, ebx
.text:00541275      mov    edi, offset cube64
.text:0054127A      push   1
.text:0054127C      push   eax
.text:0054127D      rep movsd
.text:0054127F      call   rotate_all_with_password
.text:00541284      mov    eax, [esp+18h+arg_4]
.text:00541288      mov    edi, ebx
.text:0054128A      add    ebp, 40h
.text:0054128D      add    esp, 8
.text:00541290      mov    ecx, 10h
.text:00541295      mov    esi, offset cube64
.text:0054129A      add    ebx, 40h
.text:0054129D      cmp    ebp, eax
.text:0054129F      rep movsd
.text:005412A1      jl     short loc_54126A
.text:005412A3      pop    edi
.text:005412A4      pop    esi
.text:005412A5      pop    ebp
.text:005412A6      pop    ebx

```



```

.text:005412A7          retn
.text:005412A7 crypt    endp
.text:005412A7
.text:005412A8          align 10h
.text:005412B0
.text:005412B0 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:005412B0
.text:005412B0 ; int __cdecl decrypt(int, int, void *Src)
.text:005412B0 decrypt  proc near          ; CODE XREF: decrypt_file+99
.text:005412B0
.text:005412B0 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:005412B0 arg_4      = dword ptr 8
.text:005412B0 Src       = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:005412B0
.text:005412B0          mov     eax, [esp+Src]
.text:005412B4          push   ebx
.text:005412B5          push   ebp
.text:005412B6          push   esi
.text:005412B7          push   edi
.text:005412B8          push   eax          ; Src
.text:005412B9          call   __strdup
.text:005412BE          push   eax          ; Str
.text:005412BF          mov    [esp+18h+Src], eax
.text:005412C3          call   __strrev
.text:005412C8          mov    ebx, [esp+18h+arg_0]
.text:005412CC          add    esp, 8
.text:005412CF          xor    ebp, ebp
.text:005412D1
.text:005412D1 loc_5412D1:          ; CODE XREF: decrypt+58
.text:005412D1          mov    ecx, 10h
.text:005412D6          mov    esi, ebx
.text:005412D8          mov    edi, offset cube64
.text:005412DD          push  3
.text:005412DF          rep movsd
.text:005412E1          mov    ecx, [esp+14h+Src]
.text:005412E5          push   ecx
.text:005412E6          call  rotate_all_with_password
.text:005412EB          mov    eax, [esp+18h+arg_4]
.text:005412EF          mov    edi, ebx
.text:005412F1          add    ebp, 40h
.text:005412F4          add    esp, 8
.text:005412F7          mov    ecx, 10h
.text:005412FC          mov    esi, offset cube64
.text:00541301          add    ebx, 40h
.text:00541304          cmp    ebp, eax
.text:00541306          rep movsd
.text:00541308          jl     short loc_5412D1
.text:0054130A          mov    edx, [esp+10h+Src]
.text:0054130E          push   edx          ; Memory
.text:0054130F          call  _free
.text:00541314          add    esp, 4
.text:00541317          pop    edi
.text:00541318          pop    esi
.text:00541319          pop    ebp
.text:0054131A          pop    ebx
.text:0054131B          retn
.text:0054131B decrypt  endp
.text:0054131B
.text:0054131C          align 10h
.text:00541320
.text:00541320 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:00541320
.text:00541320 ; int __cdecl crypt_file(int Str, char *Filename, int password)
.text:00541320 crypt_file  proc near          ; CODE XREF: _main+42
.text:00541320
.text:00541320 Str       = dword ptr 4
.text:00541320 Filename = dword ptr 8
.text:00541320 password = dword ptr 0Ch

```

```

.text:00541320
.text:00541320      mov     eax, [esp+Str]
.text:00541324      push   ebp
.text:00541325      push   offset Mode      ; "rb"
.text:0054132A      push   eax               ; Filename
.text:0054132B      call   _fopen           ; open file
.text:00541330      mov     ebp, eax
.text:00541332      add     esp, 8
.text:00541335      test   ebp, ebp
.text:00541337      jnz    short loc_541348
.text:00541339      push   offset Format     ; "Cannot open input file!\n"
.text:0054133E      call   _printf
.text:00541343      add     esp, 4
.text:00541346      pop     ebp
.text:00541347      retn
.text:00541348
.text:00541348  loc_541348:                ; CODE XREF: crypt_file+17
.text:00541348      push   ebx
.text:00541349      push   esi
.text:0054134A      push   edi
.text:0054134B      push   2                ; Origin
.text:0054134D      push   0                ; Offset
.text:0054134F      push   ebp              ; File
.text:00541350      call   _fseek
.text:00541355      push   ebp              ; File
.text:00541356      call   _ftell           ; get file size
.text:0054135B      push   0                ; Origin
.text:0054135D      push   0                ; Offset
.text:0054135F      push   ebp              ; File
.text:00541360      mov     [esp+2Ch+Str], eax
.text:00541364      call   _fseek           ; rewind to start
.text:00541369      mov     esi, [esp+2Ch+Str]
.text:0054136D      and     esi, 0FFFFFFC0h ; reset all lowest 6 bits
.text:00541370      add     esi, 40h        ; align size to 64-byte border
.text:00541373      push   esi              ; Size
.text:00541374      call   _malloc
.text:00541379      mov     ecx, esi
.text:0054137B      mov     ebx, eax        ; allocated buffer pointer -> to EBX
.text:0054137D      mov     edx, ecx
.text:0054137F      xor     eax, eax
.text:00541381      mov     edi, ebx
.text:00541383      push   ebp              ; File
.text:00541384      shr     ecx, 2
.text:00541387      rep stosd
.text:00541389      mov     ecx, edx
.text:0054138B      push   1                ; Count
.text:0054138D      and     ecx, 3
.text:00541390      rep stosb              ; memset (buffer, 0, aligned_size)
.text:00541392      mov     eax, [esp+38h+Str]
.text:00541396      push   eax              ; ElementSize
.text:00541397      push   ebx              ; DstBuf
.text:00541398      call   _fread           ; read file
.text:0054139D      push   ebp              ; File
.text:0054139E      call   _fclose
.text:005413A3      mov     ecx, [esp+44h+password]
.text:005413A7      push   ecx              ; password
.text:005413A8      push   esi              ; aligned size
.text:005413A9      push   ebx              ; buffer
.text:005413AA      call   crypt            ; do crypt
.text:005413AF      mov     edx, [esp+50h+Filename]
.text:005413B3      add     esp, 40h
.text:005413B6      push   offset aWb       ; "wb"
.text:005413BB      push   edx              ; Filename
.text:005413BC      call   _fopen
.text:005413C1      mov     edi, eax
.text:005413C3      push   edi              ; File
.text:005413C4      push   1                ; Count
.text:005413C6      push   3                ; Size
.text:005413C8      push   offset aQr9      ; "QR9"
.text:005413CD      call   _fwrite          ; write file signature

```

```

.text:005413D2      push     edi                ; File
.text:005413D3      push     1                  ; Count
.text:005413D5      lea     eax, [esp+30h+Str]
.text:005413D9      push     4                  ; Size
.text:005413DB      push     eax                ; Str
.text:005413DC      call    _fwrite             ; write original file size
.text:005413E1      push     edi                ; File
.text:005413E2      push     1                  ; Count
.text:005413E4      push     esi                ; Size
.text:005413E5      push     ebx                ; Str
.text:005413E6      call    _fwrite             ; write crypted file
.text:005413EB      push     edi                ; File
.text:005413EC      call    _fclose            ;
.text:005413F1      push     ebx                ; Memory
.text:005413F2      call    _free              ;
.text:005413F7      add     esp, 40h
.text:005413FA      pop     edi
.text:005413FB      pop     esi
.text:005413FC      pop     ebx
.text:005413FD      pop     ebp
.text:005413FE      retn
.text:005413FE      crypt_file      endp
.text:005413FE
.text:005413FF      align 10h
.text:00541400
.text:00541400 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:00541400
.text:00541400
.text:00541400 ; int __cdecl decrypt_file(char *Filename, int, void *Src)
.text:00541400 decrypt_file      proc near          ; CODE XREF: _main+6E
.text:00541400
.text:00541400 Filename          = dword ptr 4
.text:00541400 arg_4            = dword ptr 8
.text:00541400 Src              = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:00541400
.text:00541400      mov     eax, [esp+Filename]
.text:00541404      push   ebx
.text:00541405      push   ebp
.text:00541406      push   esi
.text:00541407      push   edi
.text:00541408      push   offset aRb          ; "rb"
.text:0054140D      push   eax                  ; Filename
.text:0054140E      call  _fopen
.text:00541413      mov     esi, eax
.text:00541415      add     esp, 8
.text:00541418      test   esi, esi
.text:0054141A      jnz    short loc_54142E
.text:0054141C      push   offset aCannotOpenIn_0 ; "Cannot open input file!\n"
.text:00541421      call  _printf
.text:00541426      add     esp, 4
.text:00541429      pop     edi
.text:0054142A      pop     esi
.text:0054142B      pop     ebp
.text:0054142C      pop     ebx
.text:0054142D      retn
.text:0054142E
.text:0054142E      loc_54142E:                ; CODE XREF: decrypt_file+1A
.text:0054142E      push   2                    ; Origin
.text:00541430      push   0                    ; Offset
.text:00541432      push   esi                  ; File
.text:00541433      call  _fseek
.text:00541438      push   esi                  ; File
.text:00541439      call  _ftell
.text:0054143E      push   0                    ; Origin
.text:00541440      push   0                    ; Offset
.text:00541442      push   esi                  ; File
.text:00541443      mov     ebp, eax
.text:00541445      call  _fseek
.text:0054144A      push   ebp                  ; Size
.text:0054144B      call  _malloc

```

```

.text:00541450      push     esi                ; File
.text:00541451      mov      ebx, eax
.text:00541453      push     1                  ; Count
.text:00541455      push     ebp                ; ElementSize
.text:00541456      push     ebx                ; DstBuf
.text:00541457      call    _fread
.text:0054145C      push     esi                ; File
.text:0054145D      call    _fclose
.text:00541462      add      esp, 34h
.text:00541465      mov      ecx, 3
.text:0054146A      mov      edi, offset aQr9_0 ; "QR9"
.text:0054146F      mov      esi, ebx
.text:00541471      xor      edx, edx
.text:00541473      repe    cmpsb
.text:00541475      jz      short loc_541489
.text:00541477      push    offset aFileIsNotCrypt ; "File is not crypted!\n"
.text:0054147C      call    _printf
.text:00541481      add      esp, 4
.text:00541484      pop      edi
.text:00541485      pop      esi
.text:00541486      pop      ebp
.text:00541487      pop      ebx
.text:00541488      retn
.text:00541489      loc_541489:                ; CODE XREF: decrypt_file+75
.text:00541489      mov      eax, [esp+10h+Src]
.text:0054148D      mov      edi, [ebx+3]
.text:00541490      add      ebp, 0FFFFFFF9h
.text:00541493      lea     esi, [ebx+7]
.text:00541496      push    eax                ; Src
.text:00541497      push    ebp                ; int
.text:00541498      push    esi                ; int
.text:00541499      call    decrypt
.text:0054149E      mov      ecx, [esp+1Ch+arg_4]
.text:005414A2      push    offset aWb_0       ; "wb"
.text:005414A7      push    ecx                ; Filename
.text:005414A8      call    _fopen
.text:005414AD      mov      ebp, eax
.text:005414AF      push    ebp                ; File
.text:005414B0      push    1                  ; Count
.text:005414B2      push    edi                ; Size
.text:005414B3      push    esi                ; Str
.text:005414B4      call    _fwrite
.text:005414B9      push    ebp                ; File
.text:005414BA      call    _fclose
.text:005414BF      push    ebx                ; Memory
.text:005414C0      call    _free
.text:005414C5      add      esp, 2Ch
.text:005414C8      pop      edi
.text:005414C9      pop      esi
.text:005414CA      pop      ebp
.text:005414CB      pop      ebx
.text:005414CC      retn
.text:005414CC      decrypt_file    endp

```

All function and label names are given by me while analysis.

I started from top. Here is a function taking two file names and password.

```

.text:00541320 ; int __cdecl crypt_file(int Str, char *Filename, int password)
.text:00541320 crypt_file    proc near
.text:00541320
.text:00541320 Str          = dword ptr 4
.text:00541320 Filename    = dword ptr 8
.text:00541320 password    = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:00541320

```

Open file and report error in case of error:

```

.text:00541320      mov      eax, [esp+Str]
.text:00541324      push     ebp
.text:00541325      push     offset Mode       ; "rb"

```

```
.text:0054132A      push    eax                ; Filename
.text:0054132B      call   _fopen              ; open file
.text:00541330      mov    ebp, eax
.text:00541332      add    esp, 8
.text:00541335      test   ebp, ebp
.text:00541337      jnz   short loc_541348
.text:00541339      push  offset Format        ; "Cannot open input file!\n"
.text:0054133E      call  _printf
.text:00541343      add    esp, 4
.text:00541346      pop    ebp
.text:00541347      retn
.text:00541348      loc_541348:
```

Get file size via `fseek()/ftell()`:

```
.text:00541348      push   ebx
.text:00541349      push   esi
.text:0054134A      push   edi
.text:0054134B      push   2                   ; Origin
.text:0054134D      push   0                   ; Offset
.text:0054134F      push   ebp                 ; File

; move current file position to the end
.text:00541350      call  _fseek
.text:00541355      push   ebp                 ; File
.text:00541356      call  _ftell              ; get current file position
.text:0054135B      push   0                   ; Origin
.text:0054135D      push   0                   ; Offset
.text:0054135F      push   ebp                 ; File
.text:00541360      mov   [esp+2Ch+Str], eax

; move current file position to the start
.text:00541364      call  _fseek
```

This fragment of code calculates file size aligned on a 64-byte boundary. This is because this cryptoalgorithm works with only 64-byte blocks. Its operation is pretty straightforward: divide file size by 64, forget about remainder and add 1, then multiple by 64. The following code removes remainder as if value was already divided by 64 and adds 64. It is almost the same.

```
.text:00541369      mov    esi, [esp+2Ch+Str]
.text:0054136D      and    esi, 0FFFFFFC0h    ; reset all lowest 6 bits
.text:00541370      add    esi, 40h           ; align size to 64-byte border
```

Allocate buffer with aligned size:

```
.text:00541373      push   esi                 ; Size
.text:00541374      call  _malloc
```

Call `memset()`, e.g., clears allocated buffer².

```
.text:00541379      mov    ecx, esi
.text:0054137B      mov    ebx, eax            ; allocated buffer pointer -> to EBX
.text:0054137D      mov    edx, ecx
.text:0054137F      xor    eax, eax
.text:00541381      mov    edi, ebx
.text:00541383      push   ebp                 ; File
.text:00541384      shr    ecx, 2
.text:00541387      rep stosd
.text:00541389      mov    ecx, edx
.text:0054138B      push   1                   ; Count
.text:0054138D      and    ecx, 3
.text:00541390      rep stosb                 ; memset (buffer, 0, aligned_size)
```

Read file via standard C function `fread()`.

```
.text:00541392      mov    eax, [esp+38h+Str]
.text:00541396      push   eax                 ; ElementSize
.text:00541397      push   ebx                 ; DstBuf
.text:00541398      call  _fread              ; read file
```

²`malloc() + memset()` could be replaced by `calloc()`

```
.text:0054139D      push    ebp                ; File
.text:0054139E      call   _fclose
```

Call `crypt()`. This function takes `buffer`, `buffer size (aligned)` and `password string`.

```
.text:005413A3      mov     ecx, [esp+44h+password]
.text:005413A7      push   ecx                ; password
.text:005413A8      push   esi                ; aligned size
.text:005413A9      push   ebx                ; buffer
.text:005413AA      call   crypt              ; do crypt
```

Create output file. By the way, developer forgot to check if it was created correctly! File opening result is being checked though.

```
.text:005413AF      mov     edx, [esp+50h+Filename]
.text:005413B3      add     esp, 40h
.text:005413B6      push   offset aWb        ; "wb"
.text:005413BB      push   edx                ; Filename
.text:005413BC      call   _fopen
.text:005413C1      mov     edi, eax
```

Newly created file handle is in the EDI register now. Write signature "QR9".

```
.text:005413C3      push   edi                ; File
.text:005413C4      push   1                 ; Count
.text:005413C6      push   3                 ; Size
.text:005413C8      push   offset aQr9       ; "QR9"
.text:005413CD      call   _fwrite           ; write file signature
```

Write actual file size (not aligned):

```
.text:005413D2      push   edi                ; File
.text:005413D3      push   1                 ; Count
.text:005413D5      lea   eax, [esp+30h+Str]
.text:005413D9      push   4                 ; Size
.text:005413DB      push   eax                ; Str
.text:005413DC      call   _fwrite           ; write original file size
```

Write crypted buffer:

```
.text:005413E1      push   edi                ; File
.text:005413E2      push   1                 ; Count
.text:005413E4      push   esi                ; Size
.text:005413E5      push   ebx                ; Str
.text:005413E6      call   _fwrite           ; write encrypted file
```

Close file and free allocated buffer:

```
.text:005413EB      push   edi                ; File
.text:005413EC      call   _fclose
.text:005413F1      push   ebx                ; Memory
.text:005413F2      call   _free
.text:005413F7      add     esp, 40h
.text:005413FA      pop     edi
.text:005413FB      pop     esi
.text:005413FC      pop     ebx
.text:005413FD      pop     ebp
.text:005413FE      retn
.text:005413FE      crypt_file      endp
```

Here is reconstructed C-code:

```
void crypt_file(char *fin, char* fout, char *pw)
{
    FILE *f;
    int flen, flen_aligned;
    BYTE *buf;

    f=fopen(fin, "rb");

    if (f==NULL)
    {
        printf ("Cannot open input file!\n");
    }
}
```

```

        return;
};

fseek (f, 0, SEEK_END);
flen=ftell (f);
fseek (f, 0, SEEK_SET);

flen_aligned=(flen&0xFFFFFC0)+0x40;

buf=(BYTE*)malloc (flen_aligned);
memset (buf, 0, flen_aligned);

fread (buf, flen, 1, f);

fclose (f);

crypt (buf, flen_aligned, pw);

f=fopen(fout, "wb");

fwrite ("QR9", 3, 1, f);
fwrite (&flen, 4, 1, f);
fwrite (buf, flen_aligned, 1, f);

fclose (f);

free (buf);
};

```

Decrypting procedure is almost the same:

```

.text:00541400 ; int __cdecl decrypt_file(char *Filename, int, void *Src)
.text:00541400 decrypt_file    proc near
.text:00541400
.text:00541400 Filename      = dword ptr  4
.text:00541400 arg_4        = dword ptr  8
.text:00541400 Src          = dword ptr  0Ch
.text:00541400
.text:00541400         mov     eax, [esp+Filename]
.text:00541404         push    ebx
.text:00541405         push    ebp
.text:00541406         push    esi
.text:00541407         push    edi
.text:00541408         push    offset aRb      ; "rb"
.text:0054140D         push    eax              ; Filename
.text:0054140E         call   _fopen
.text:00541413         mov     esi, eax
.text:00541415         add     esp, 8
.text:00541418         test   esi, esi
.text:0054141A         jnz    short loc_54142E
.text:0054141C         push    offset aCannotOpenIn_0 ; "Cannot open input file!\n"
.text:00541421         call   _printf
.text:00541426         add     esp, 4
.text:00541429         pop     edi
.text:0054142A         pop     esi
.text:0054142B         pop     ebp
.text:0054142C         pop     ebx
.text:0054142D         retn
.text:0054142E
.text:0054142E loc_54142E:
.text:0054142E         push    2                ; Origin
.text:00541430         push    0                ; Offset
.text:00541432         push    esi              ; File
.text:00541433         call   _fseek
.text:00541438         push    esi              ; File
.text:00541439         call   _ftell
.text:0054143E         push    0                ; Origin
.text:00541440         push    0                ; Offset
.text:00541442         push    esi              ; File
.text:00541443         mov     ebp, eax
.text:00541445         call   _fseek

```

```
.text:0054144A    push    ebp                ; Size
.text:0054144B    call   _malloc
.text:00541450    push    esi                ; File
.text:00541451    mov     ebx, eax
.text:00541453    push    1                  ; Count
.text:00541455    push    ebp                ; ElementSize
.text:00541456    push    ebx                ; DstBuf
.text:00541457    call   _fread
.text:0054145C    push    esi                ; File
.text:0054145D    call   _fclose
```

Check signature (first 3 bytes):

```
.text:00541462    add     esp, 34h
.text:00541465    mov     ecx, 3
.text:0054146A    mov     edi, offset aQr9_0 ; "QR9"
.text:0054146F    mov     esi, ebx
.text:00541471    xor     edx, edx
.text:00541473    repe   cmpsb
.text:00541475    jz     short loc_541489
```

Report an error if signature is absent:

```
.text:00541477    push   offset aFileIsNotCrypt ; "File is not crypted!\n"
.text:0054147C    call   _printf
.text:00541481    add     esp, 4
.text:00541484    pop     edi
.text:00541485    pop     esi
.text:00541486    pop     ebp
.text:00541487    pop     ebx
.text:00541488    retn
.text:00541489    loc_541489:
```

Call decrypt().

```
.text:00541489    mov     eax, [esp+10h+Src]
.text:0054148D    mov     edi, [ebx+3]
.text:00541490    add     ebp, 0FFFFFFF9h
.text:00541493    lea    esi, [ebx+7]
.text:00541496    push   eax                ; Src
.text:00541497    push   ebp                ; int
.text:00541498    push   esi                ; int
.text:00541499    call   decrypt
.text:0054149E    mov     ecx, [esp+1Ch+arg_4]
.text:005414A2    push   offset aWb_0       ; "wb"
.text:005414A7    push   ecx                ; Filename
.text:005414A8    call   _fopen
.text:005414AD    mov     ebp, eax
.text:005414AF    push   ebp                ; File
.text:005414B0    push   1                  ; Count
.text:005414B2    push   edi                ; Size
.text:005414B3    push   esi                ; Str
.text:005414B4    call   _fwrite
.text:005414B9    push   ebp                ; File
.text:005414BA    call   _fclose
.text:005414BF    push   ebx                ; Memory
.text:005414C0    call   _free
.text:005414C5    add     esp, 2Ch
.text:005414C8    pop     edi
.text:005414C9    pop     esi
.text:005414CA    pop     ebp
.text:005414CB    pop     ebx
.text:005414CC    retn
.text:005414CC    decrypt_file    endp
```

Here is reconstructed C-code:

```
void decrypt_file(char *fin, char* fout, char *pw)
{
    FILE *f;
    int real_flen, flen;
```



```

BYTE *buf;

f=fopen(fin, "rb");

if (f==NULL)
{
    printf ("Cannot open input file!\n");
    return;
};

fseek (f, 0, SEEK_END);
flen=ftell (f);
fseek (f, 0, SEEK_SET);

buf=(BYTE*)malloc (flen);

fread (buf, flen, 1, f);

fclose (f);

if (memcmp (buf, "QR9", 3)!=0)
{
    printf ("File is not crypted!\n");
    return;
};

memcpy (&real_flen, buf+3, 4);

decrypt (buf+(3+4), flen-(3+4), pw);

f=fopen(fout, "wb");

fwrite (buf+(3+4), real_flen, 1, f);

fclose (f);

free (buf);
};

```

OK, now let's go deeper.

Function crypt():

```

.text:00541260 crypt      proc near
.text:00541260
.text:00541260 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:00541260 arg_4      = dword ptr 8
.text:00541260 arg_8      = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:00541260
.text:00541260          push    ebx
.text:00541261          mov     ebx, [esp+4+arg_0]
.text:00541265          push    ebp
.text:00541266          push    esi
.text:00541267          push    edi
.text:00541268          xor     ebp, ebp
.text:0054126A
.text:0054126A loc_54126A:

```

This fragment of code copies part of input buffer to internal array I named later "cube64". The size is in the ECX register. MOVSD means *move 32-bit dword*, so, 16 of 32-bit dwords are exactly 64 bytes.

```

.text:0054126A          mov     eax, [esp+10h+arg_8]
.text:0054126E          mov     ecx, 10h
.text:00541273          mov     esi, ebx ; EBX is pointer within input buffer
.text:00541275          mov     edi, offset cube64
.text:0054127A          push    1
.text:0054127C          push    eax
.text:0054127D          rep movsd

```

Call rotate_all_with_password():

```

.text:0054127F          call   rotate_all_with_password

```

Copy crypted contents back from "cube64" to buffer:

```
.text:00541284      mov     eax, [esp+18h+arg_4]
.text:00541288      mov     edi, ebx
.text:0054128A      add     ebp, 40h
.text:0054128D      add     esp, 8
.text:00541290      mov     ecx, 10h
.text:00541295      mov     esi, offset cube64
.text:0054129A      add     ebx, 40h ; add 64 to input buffer pointer
.text:0054129D      cmp     ebp, eax ; EBP contain amount of crypted data.
.text:0054129F      rep    movsd
```

If EBP is not bigger than input argument size, then continue to next block.

```
.text:005412A1      jl     short loc_54126A
.text:005412A3      pop     edi
.text:005412A4      pop     esi
.text:005412A5      pop     ebp
.text:005412A6      pop     ebx
.text:005412A7      retn
.text:005412A7 crypt      endp
```

Reconstructed crypt() function:

```
void crypt (BYTE *buf, int sz, char *pw)
{
    int i=0;

    do
    {
        memcpy (cube, buf+i, 8*8);
        rotate_all (pw, 1);
        memcpy (buf+i, cube, 8*8);
        i+=64;
    }
    while (i<sz);
};
```

OK, now let's go deeper into function rotate_all_with_password(). It takes two arguments: password string and number. In crypt(), number 1 is used, and in the decrypt() function (where rotate_all_with_password() function is called too), number is 3.

```
.text:005411B0 rotate_all_with_password proc near
.text:005411B0
.text:005411B0 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:005411B0 arg_4      = dword ptr 8
.text:005411B0
.text:005411B0      mov     eax, [esp+arg_0]
.text:005411B4      push   ebp
.text:005411B5      mov     ebp, eax
```

Check for character in password. If it is zero, exit:

```
.text:005411B7      cmp     byte ptr [eax], 0
.text:005411BA      jz     exit
.text:005411C0      push   ebx
.text:005411C1      mov     ebx, [esp+8+arg_4]
.text:005411C5      push   esi
.text:005411C6      push   edi
.text:005411C7
.text:005411C7 loop_begin:
```

Call tolower(), standard C function.

```
.text:005411C7      movsx  eax, byte ptr [ebp+0]
.text:005411CB      push   eax ; C
.text:005411CC      call  _tolower
.text:005411D1      add     esp, 4
```

Hmm, if password contains non-alphabetical latin character, it is skipped! Indeed, if we run crypting utility and try non-alphabetical latin characters in password, they seem to be ignored.

```
.text:005411D4      cmp     al, 'a'
.text:005411D6      jl     short next_character_in_password
.text:005411D8      cmp     al, 'z'
.text:005411DA      jg     short next_character_in_password
.text:005411DC      movsx  ecx, al
```

Subtract "a" value (97) from character.

```
.text:005411DF      sub     ecx, 'a' ; 97
```

After subtracting, we'll get 0 for "a" here, 1 for "b", etc. And 25 for "z".

```
.text:005411E2      cmp     ecx, 24
.text:005411E5      jle    short skip_subtracting
.text:005411E7      sub     ecx, 24
```

It seems, "y" and "z" are exceptional characters too. After that fragment of code, "y" becomes 0 and "z" -1. This means, 26 Latin alphabet symbols will become values in range 0..23, (24 in total).

```
.text:005411EA
.text:005411EA skip_subtracting:                                ; CODE XREF: rotate_all_with_password+35
```

This is actually division via multiplication. Read more about it in the "Division by 9" section (16.3).

The code actually divides password character value by 3.

```
.text:005411EA      mov     eax, 55555556h
.text:005411EF      imul   ecx
.text:005411F1      mov     eax, edx
.text:005411F3      shr    eax, 1Fh
.text:005411F6      add    edx, eax
.text:005411F8      mov     eax, ecx
.text:005411FA      mov     esi, edx
.text:005411FC      mov     ecx, 3
.text:00541201      cdq
.text:00541202      idiv   ecx
```

EDX is the remainder of division.

```
.text:00541204 sub     edx, 0
.text:00541207 jz     short call_rotate1 ; if remainder is zero, go to rotate1
.text:00541209 dec     edx
.text:0054120A jz     short call_rotate2 ; .. it it is 1, go to rotate2
.text:0054120C dec     edx
.text:0054120D jnz    short next_character_in_password
.text:0054120F test   ebx, ebx
.text:00541211 jle    short next_character_in_password
.text:00541213 mov     edi, ebx
```

If remainder is 2, call rotate3(). The EDI is a second argument of the rotate_all_with_password() function. As I already wrote, 1 is for crypting operations and 3 is for decrypting. So, here is a loop. When crypting, rotate1/2/3 will be called the same number of times as given in the first argument.

```
.text:00541215 call_rotate3:
.text:00541215      push   esi
.text:00541216      call  rotate3
.text:0054121B      add    esp, 4
.text:0054121E      dec    edi
.text:0054121F      jnz   short call_rotate3
.text:00541221      jmp   short next_character_in_password
.text:00541223 call_rotate2:
.text:00541223      test  ebx, ebx
.text:00541225      jle   short next_character_in_password
.text:00541227      mov   edi, ebx
.text:00541229 loc_541229:
.text:00541229      push  esi
.text:0054122A      call  rotate2
.text:0054122F      add    esp, 4
.text:00541232      dec    edi
.text:00541233      jnz   short loc_541229
.text:00541235      jmp   short next_character_in_password
```

```
.text:00541237
.text:00541237 call_rotate1:
.text:00541237         test    ebx, ebx
.text:00541239         jle    short next_character_in_password
.text:0054123B         mov    edi, ebx
.text:0054123D
.text:0054123D loc_54123D:
.text:0054123D         push   esi
.text:0054123E         call  rotate1
.text:00541243         add    esp, 4
.text:00541246         dec    edi
.text:00541247         jnz   short loc_54123D
.text:00541249
```

Fetch next character from password string.

```
.text:00541249 next_character_in_password:
.text:00541249         mov    al, [ebp+1]
```

Increment character pointer within password string:

```
.text:0054124C         inc    ebp
.text:0054124D         test   al, al
.text:0054124F         jnz   loop_begin
.text:00541255         pop    edi
.text:00541256         pop    esi
.text:00541257         pop    ebx
.text:00541258
.text:00541258 exit:
.text:00541258         pop    ebp
.text:00541259         retn
.text:00541259 rotate_all_with_password endp
```

Here is reconstructed C code:

```
void rotate_all (char *pwd, int v)
{
    char *p=pwd;

    while (*p)
    {
        char c=*p;
        int q;

        c=tolower (c);

        if (c>='a' && c<='z')
        {
            q=c-'a';
            if (q>24)
                q-=24;

            int quotient=q/3;
            int remainder=q % 3;

            switch (remainder)
            {
                case 0: for (int i=0; i<v; i++) rotate1 (quotient); break;
                case 1: for (int i=0; i<v; i++) rotate2 (quotient); break;
                case 2: for (int i=0; i<v; i++) rotate3 (quotient); break;
            };

            p++;
        };
    };
};
```

Now let's go deeper and investigate rotate1/2/3 functions. Each function calls two another functions. I eventually gave them names set_bit() and get_bit().

Let's start with get_bit():

```
.text:00541050 get_bit    proc near
```

```
.text:00541050
.text:00541050 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:00541050 arg_4      = dword ptr 8
.text:00541050 arg_8      = byte ptr 0Ch
.text:00541050
.text:00541050          mov     eax, [esp+arg_4]
.text:00541054          mov     ecx, [esp+arg_0]
.text:00541058          mov     al, cube64[eax+ecx*8]
.text:0054105F          mov     cl, [esp+arg_8]
.text:00541063          shr     al, cl
.text:00541065          and     al, 1
.text:00541067          retn
.text:00541067 get_bit    endp
```

...in other words: calculate an index in the array cube64: $arg_4 + arg_0 * 8$. Then shift a byte from an array by arg_8 bits right. Isolate lowest bit and return it.

Let's see another function, `set_bit()`:

```
.text:00541000 set_bit    proc near
.text:00541000
.text:00541000 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:00541000 arg_4      = dword ptr 8
.text:00541000 arg_8      = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:00541000 arg_C      = byte ptr 10h
.text:00541000
.text:00541000          mov     al, [esp+arg_C]
.text:00541004          mov     ecx, [esp+arg_8]
.text:00541008          push   esi
.text:00541009          mov     esi, [esp+4+arg_0]
.text:0054100D          test   al, al
.text:0054100F          mov     eax, [esp+4+arg_4]
.text:00541013          mov     dl, 1
.text:00541015          jz     short loc_54102B
```

Value in the DL is 1 here. Shift left it by arg_8 . For example, if arg_8 is 4, value in the DL register became 0x10 or 1000b in binary form.

```
.text:00541017          shl     dl, cl
.text:00541019          mov     cl, cube64[eax+esi*8]
```

Get bit from array and explicitly set one.

```
.text:00541020          or      cl, dl
```

Store it back:

```
.text:00541022          mov     cube64[eax+esi*8], cl
.text:00541029          pop     esi
.text:0054102A          retn
.text:0054102B
.text:0054102B loc_54102B:
.text:0054102B          shl     dl, cl
```

If arg_C is not zero...

```
.text:0054102D          mov     cl, cube64[eax+esi*8]
```

...invert DL. For example, if DL state after shift was 0x10 or 1000b in binary form, there will be 0xEF after NOT instruction or 11101111b in binary form.

```
.text:00541034          not     dl
```

This instruction clears bit, in other words, it saves all bits in CL which are also set in DL except those in DL which are cleared. This means that if DL is e.g. 11101111b in binary form, all bits will be saved except 5th (counting from lowest bit).

```
.text:00541036          and     cl, dl
```

Store it back:

```
.text:00541038          mov     cube64[eax+esi*8], cl
.text:0054103F          pop     esi
.text:00541040          retn
.text:00541040 set_bit    endp
```

It is almost the same as `get_bit()`, except, if `arg_C` is zero, the function clears specific bit in array, or sets it otherwise.

We also know the array size is 64. First two arguments both in the `set_bit()` and `get_bit()` functions could be seen as 2D coordinates. Then array will be 8*8 matrix.

Here is C representation of what we already know:

```
#define IS_SET(flag, bit)      ((flag) & (bit))
#define SET_BIT(var, bit)    ((var) |= (bit))
#define REMOVE_BIT(var, bit) ((var) &= ~(bit))

char cube[8][8];

void set_bit (int x, int y, int shift, int bit)
{
    if (bit)
        SET_BIT (cube[x][y], 1<<shift);
    else
        REMOVE_BIT (cube[x][y], 1<<shift);
};

int get_bit (int x, int y, int shift)
{
    if ((cube[x][y]>>shift)&1==1)
        return 1;
    return 0;
};
```

Now let's get back to `rotate1/2/3` functions.

```
.text:00541070 rotate1      proc near
.text:00541070
```

Internal array allocation in local stack, its size 64 bytes:

```
.text:00541070 internal_array_64= byte ptr -40h
.text:00541070 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:00541070
.text:00541070         sub     esp, 40h
.text:00541073         push  ebx
.text:00541074         push  ebp
.text:00541075         mov   ebp, [esp+48h+arg_0]
.text:00541079         push  esi
.text:0054107A         push  edi
.text:0054107B         xor   edi, edi      ; EDI is loop1 counter
```

EBX is a pointer to internal array:

```
.text:0054107D         lea   ebx, [esp+50h+internal_array_64]
.text:00541081
```

Two nested loops are here:

```
.text:00541081 first_loop1_begin:
.text:00541081     xor   esi, esi      ; ESI is loop 2 counter
.text:00541083
.text:00541083 first_loop2_begin:
.text:00541083     push ebp          ; arg_0
.text:00541084     push esi          ; loop 1 counter
.text:00541085     push edi          ; loop 2 counter
.text:00541086     call get_bit
.text:0054108B     add   esp, 0Ch
.text:0054108E     mov   [ebx+esi], al ; store to internal array
.text:00541091     inc  esi          ; increment loop 1 counter
.text:00541092     cmp  esi, 8
.text:00541095     jl   short first_loop2_begin
.text:00541097     inc  edi          ; increment loop 2 counter
.text:00541098     add  ebx, 8       ; increment internal array pointer by 8 at each loop ↗
    ↙ 1 iteration
.text:0054109B     cmp  edi, 8
.text:0054109E     jl   short first_loop1_begin
```

...we see that both loop counters are in range 0..7. Also they are used as the first and the second arguments of the `get_bit()` function. Third argument of the `get_bit()` is the only argument of `rotate1()`. What `get_bit()` returns, is being placed into internal array.

Prepare pointer to internal array again:

```
.text:005410A0 lea    ebx, [esp+50h+internal_array_64]
.text:005410A4 mov     edi, 7           ; EDI is loop 1 counter, initial state is 7
.text:005410A9
.text:005410A9 second_loop1_begin:
.text:005410A9 xor     esi, esi        ; ESI is loop 2 counter
.text:005410AB
.text:005410AB second_loop2_begin:
.text:005410AB mov     al, [ebx+esi]   ; value from internal array
.text:005410AE push   eax
.text:005410AF push   ebp             ; arg_0
.text:005410B0 push   edi             ; loop 1 counter
.text:005410B1 push   esi             ; loop 2 counter
.text:005410B2 call   set_bit
.text:005410B7 add     esp, 10h
.text:005410BA inc     esi             ; increment loop 2 counter
.text:005410BB cmp     esi, 8
.text:005410BE jl     short second_loop2_begin
.text:005410C0 dec     edi             ; decrement loop 2 counter
.text:005410C1 add     ebx, 8          ; increment pointer in internal array
.text:005410C4 cmp     edi, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:005410C7 jg     short second_loop1_begin
.text:005410C9 pop     edi
.text:005410CA pop     esi
.text:005410CB pop     ebp
.text:005410CC pop     ebx
.text:005410CD add     esp, 40h
.text:005410D0 retn
.text:005410D0 rotate1      endp
```

...this code is placing contents from internal array to cube global array via `set_bit()` function, *but*, in different order!
Now loop 1 counter is in range 7 to 0, **decrementing** at each iteration!

C code representation looks like:

```
void rotate1 (int v)
{
    bool tmp[8][8]; // internal array
    int i, j;

    for (i=0; i<8; i++)
        for (j=0; j<8; j++)
            tmp[i][j]=get_bit (i, j, v);

    for (i=0; i<8; i++)
        for (j=0; j<8; j++)
            set_bit (j, 7-i, v, tmp[x][y]);
};
```

Not very understandable, but if we will take a look at `rotate2()` function:

```
.text:005410E0 rotate2 proc near
.text:005410E0
.text:005410E0 internal_array_64 = byte ptr -40h
.text:005410E0 arg_0 = dword ptr 4
.text:005410E0
.text:005410E0 sub     esp, 40h
.text:005410E3 push   ebx
.text:005410E4 push   ebp
.text:005410E5 mov     ebp, [esp+48h+arg_0]
.text:005410E9 push   esi
.text:005410EA push   edi
.text:005410EB xor     edi, edi        ; loop 1 counter
.text:005410ED lea    ebx, [esp+50h+internal_array_64]
.text:005410F1
.text:005410F1 loc_5410F1:
.text:005410F1 xor     esi, esi        ; loop 2 counter
.text:005410F3
.text:005410F3 loc_5410F3:
.text:005410F3 push   esi             ; loop 2 counter
.text:005410F4 push   edi             ; loop 1 counter
```

```

.text:005410F5    push    ebp                ; arg_0
.text:005410F6    call   get_bit
.text:005410FB    add    esp, 0Ch
.text:005410FE    mov    [ebx+esi], al      ; store to internal array
.text:00541101    inc    esi                ; increment loop 1 counter
.text:00541102    cmp    esi, 8
.text:00541105    jl    short loc_5410F3
.text:00541107    inc    edi                ; increment loop 2 counter
.text:00541108    add    ebx, 8
.text:0054110B    cmp    edi, 8
.text:0054110E    jl    short loc_5410F1
.text:00541110    lea   ebx, [esp+50h+internal_array_64]
.text:00541114    mov    edi, 7            ; loop 1 counter is initial state 7
.text:00541119
.text:00541119  loc_541119:
.text:00541119    xor    esi, esi          ; loop 2 counter
.text:0054111B
.text:0054111B  loc_54111B:
.text:0054111B    mov    al, [ebx+esi]     ; get byte from internal array
.text:0054111E    push  eax
.text:0054111F    push  edi                ; loop 1 counter
.text:00541120    push  esi                ; loop 2 counter
.text:00541121    push  ebp                ; arg_0
.text:00541122    call  set_bit
.text:00541127    add    esp, 10h
.text:0054112A    inc    esi                ; increment loop 2 counter
.text:0054112B    cmp    esi, 8
.text:0054112E    jl    short loc_54111B
.text:00541130    dec    edi                ; decrement loop 2 counter
.text:00541131    add    ebx, 8
.text:00541134    cmp    edi, 0FFFFFFFFh
.text:00541137    jg    short loc_541119
.text:00541139    pop    edi
.text:0054113A    pop    esi
.text:0054113B    pop    ebp
.text:0054113C    pop    ebx
.text:0054113D    add    esp, 40h
.text:00541140    retn
.text:00541140  rotate2 endp

```

It is *almost* the same, except of different order of arguments of the `get_bit()` and `set_bit()`. Let's rewrite it in C-like code:

```

void rotate2 (int v)
{
    bool tmp[8][8]; // internal array
    int i, j;

    for (i=0; i<8; i++)
        for (j=0; j<8; j++)
            tmp[i][j]=get_bit (v, i, j);

    for (i=0; i<8; i++)
        for (j=0; j<8; j++)
            set_bit (v, j, 7-i, tmp[i][j]);
};

```

Let's also rewrite `rotate3()` function:

```

void rotate3 (int v)
{
    bool tmp[8][8];
    int i, j;

    for (i=0; i<8; i++)
        for (j=0; j<8; j++)
            tmp[i][j]=get_bit (i, v, j);

    for (i=0; i<8; i++)
        for (j=0; j<8; j++)
            set_bit (7-j, v, i, tmp[i][j]);
};

```


};

Well, now things are simpler. If we consider cube64 as 3D cube 8*8*8, where each element is bit, `get_bit()` and `set_bit()` take just coordinates of bit on input.

`rotate1/2/3` functions are in fact rotating all bits in specific plane. Three functions are each for each cube side and `v` argument is setting plane in range 0..7.

Maybe, algorithm's author was thinking of 8*8*8 Rubik's cube ³?!

Yes, indeed.

Let's get closer into `decrypt()` function, I rewrote it here:

```
void decrypt (BYTE *buf, int sz, char *pw)
{
    char *p=strdup (pw);
    strrev (p);
    int i=0;

    do
    {
        memcpy (cube, buf+i, 8*8);
        rotate_all (p, 3);
        memcpy (buf+i, cube, 8*8);
        i+=64;
    }
    while (i<sz);

    free (p);
};
```

It is almost the same except of `crypt()`, *but* password string is reversed by `strrev()`⁴ standard C function and `rotate_all()` is called with argument 3.

This means, in case of decryption, each corresponding `rotate1/2/3` call will be performed thrice.

This is almost as in Rubik's cube! If you want to get back, do the same in reverse order and direction! If you need to undo effect of rotating one place in clockwise direction, rotate it thrice in counter-clockwise direction.

`rotate1()` is apparently for rotating "front" plane. `rotate2()` is apparently for rotating "top" plane. `rotate3()` is apparently for rotating "left" plane.

Let's get back to the core of `rotate_all()` function:

```
q=c-'a';
if (q>24)
    q-=24;

int quotient=q/3; // in range 0..7
int remainder=q % 3;

switch (remainder)
{
    case 0: for (int i=0; i<v; i++) rotate1 (quotient); break; // front
    case 1: for (int i=0; i<v; i++) rotate2 (quotient); break; // top
    case 2: for (int i=0; i<v; i++) rotate3 (quotient); break; // left
};
```

Now it is much simpler to understand: each password character defines side (one of three) and plane (one of 8). $3*8 = 24$, that is why two last characters of Latin alphabet are remapped to fit an alphabet of exactly 24 elements.

The algorithm is clearly weak: in case of short passwords, one can see, that in crypted file there are an original bytes of the original file in binary files editor.

Here is reconstructed whole source code:

```
#include <windows.h>

#include <stdio.h>
#include <assert.h>

#define IS_SET(flag, bit)      ((flag) & (bit))
#define SET_BIT(var, bit)     ((var) |= (bit))
#define REMOVE_BIT(var, bit)  ((var) &= ~(bit))

static BYTE cube[8][8];
```

³http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rubik's_Cube

⁴[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/9hby7w40\(VS.80\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/9hby7w40(VS.80).aspx)

```

void set_bit (int x, int y, int z, bool bit)
{
    if (bit)
        SET_BIT (cube[x][y], 1<<z);
    else
        REMOVE_BIT (cube[x][y], 1<<z);
};

bool get_bit (int x, int y, int z)
{
    if ((cube[x][y]>>z)&1==1)
        return true;
    return false;
};

void rotate_f (int row)
{
    bool tmp[8][8];
    int x, y;

    for (x=0; x<8; x++)
        for (y=0; y<8; y++)
            tmp[x][y]=get_bit (x, y, row);

    for (x=0; x<8; x++)
        for (y=0; y<8; y++)
            set_bit (y, 7-x, row, tmp[x][y]);
};

void rotate_t (int row)
{
    bool tmp[8][8];
    int y, z;

    for (y=0; y<8; y++)
        for (z=0; z<8; z++)
            tmp[y][z]=get_bit (row, y, z);

    for (y=0; y<8; y++)
        for (z=0; z<8; z++)
            set_bit (row, z, 7-y, tmp[y][z]);
};

void rotate_l (int row)
{
    bool tmp[8][8];
    int x, z;

    for (x=0; x<8; x++)
        for (z=0; z<8; z++)
            tmp[x][z]=get_bit (x, row, z);

    for (x=0; x<8; x++)
        for (z=0; z<8; z++)
            set_bit (7-z, row, x, tmp[x][z]);
};

void rotate_all (char *pwd, int v)
{
    char *p=pwd;

    while (*p)
    {
        char c=*p;
        int q;

        c=tolower (c);

        if (c>='a' && c<='z')

```

```

        {
            q=c-'a';
            if (q>24)
                q-=24;

            int quotient=q/3;
            int remainder=q % 3;

            switch (remainder)
            {
                case 0: for (int i=0; i<v; i++) rotate1 (quotient); break;
                case 1: for (int i=0; i<v; i++) rotate2 (quotient); break;
                case 2: for (int i=0; i<v; i++) rotate3 (quotient); break;
            };

        };

        p++;
    };
};

void crypt (BYTE *buf, int sz, char *pw)
{
    int i=0;

    do
    {
        memcpy (cube, buf+i, 8*8);
        rotate_all (pw, 1);
        memcpy (buf+i, cube, 8*8);
        i+=64;
    }
    while (i<sz);
};

void decrypt (BYTE *buf, int sz, char *pw)
{
    char *p=strdup (pw);
    strrev (p);
    int i=0;

    do
    {
        memcpy (cube, buf+i, 8*8);
        rotate_all (p, 3);
        memcpy (buf+i, cube, 8*8);
        i+=64;
    }
    while (i<sz);

    free (p);
};

void crypt_file(char *fin, char* fout, char *pw)
{
    FILE *f;
    int flen, flen_aligned;
    BYTE *buf;

    f=fopen(fin, "rb");

    if (f==NULL)
    {
        printf ("Cannot open input file!\n");
        return;
    };

    fseek (f, 0, SEEK_END);
    flen=ftell (f);
    fseek (f, 0, SEEK_SET);

```

```

    flen_aligned=(flen&0xFFFFFC0)+0x40;

    buf=(BYTE*)malloc (flen_aligned);
    memset (buf, 0, flen_aligned);

    fread (buf, flen, 1, f);

    fclose (f);

    crypt (buf, flen_aligned, pw);

    f=fopen(fout, "wb");

    fwrite ("QR9", 3, 1, f);
    fwrite (&flen, 4, 1, f);
    fwrite (buf, flen_aligned, 1, f);

    fclose (f);

    free (buf);
};

void decrypt_file(char *fin, char* fout, char *pw)
{
    FILE *f;
    int real_flen, flen;
    BYTE *buf;

    f=fopen(fin, "rb");

    if (f==NULL)
    {
        printf ("Cannot open input file!\n");
        return;
    };

    fseek (f, 0, SEEK_END);
    flen=ftell (f);
    fseek (f, 0, SEEK_SET);

    buf=(BYTE*)malloc (flen);

    fread (buf, flen, 1, f);

    fclose (f);

    if (memcmp (buf, "QR9", 3)!=0)
    {
        printf ("File is not crypted!\n");
        return;
    };

    memcpy (&real_flen, buf+3, 4);

    decrypt (buf+(3+4), flen-(3+4), pw);

    f=fopen(fout, "wb");

    fwrite (buf+(3+4), real_flen, 1, f);

    fclose (f);

    free (buf);
};

// run: input output 0/1 password
// 0 for encrypt, 1 for decrypt

int main(int argc, char *argv[])

```

```
{
    if (argc!=5)
    {
        printf ("Incorrect parameters!\n");
        return 1;
    };
    if (strcmp (argv[3], "0")==0)
        crypt_file (argv[1], argv[2], argv[4]);
    else
        if (strcmp (argv[3], "1")==0)
            decrypt_file (argv[1], argv[2], argv[4]);
        else
            printf ("Wrong param %s\n", argv[3]);

    return 0;
};
```

Chapter 71

SAP

71.1 About SAP client network traffic compression

(Tracing connection between TDW_NOCOMPRESS SAPGUI¹ environment variable to the pesky nagging pop-up window and actual data compression routine.)

It is known that network traffic between SAPGUI and SAP is not crypted by default, it is rather compressed (read here² and here³).

It is also known that by setting environment variable *TDW_NOCOMPRESS* to 1, it is possible to turn network packets compression off.

But you will see a nagging pop-up window cannot be closed:

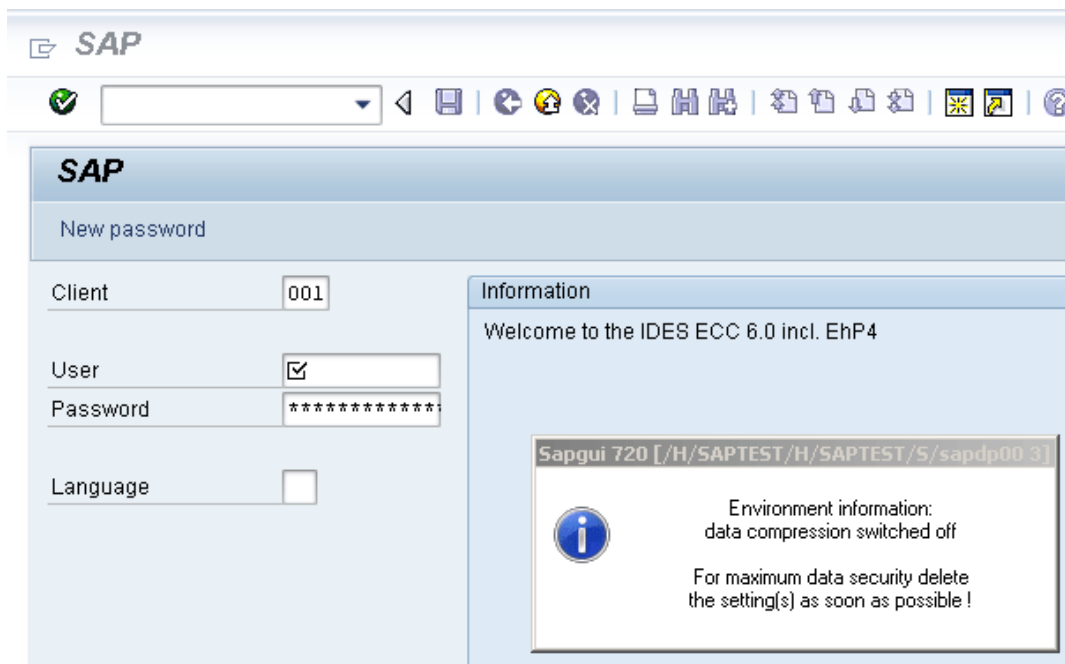


Figure 71.1: Screenshot

Let's see, if we can remove the window somehow.

But before this, let's see what we already know. First: we know the environment variable *TDW_NOCOMPRESS* is checked somewhere inside of SAPGUI client. Second: string like "data compression switched off" must be present somewhere too. With the help of FAR file manager I found that both of these strings are stored in the SAPguilib.dll file.

So let's open SAPguilib.dll in IDA and search for "*TDW_NOCOMPRESS*" string. Yes, it is present and there is only one reference to it.

We see the following fragment of code (all file offsets are valid for SAPGUI 720 win32, SAPguilib.dll file version 7200,1,0,9009):

```
.text:6440D51B    lea    eax, [ebp+2108h+var_211C]
.text:6440D51E    push  eax                ; int
.text:6440D51F    push  offset aTdw_nocompress ; "TDW_NOCOMPRESS"
.text:6440D524    mov   byte ptr [edi+15h], 0
.text:6440D528    call  chk_env
```

¹SAP GUI client

²<http://blog.yurichev.com/node/44>

³<http://blog.yurichev.com/node/47>

```
.text:6440D52D      pop     ecx
.text:6440D52E      pop     ecx
.text:6440D52F      push   offset byte_64443AF8
.text:6440D534      lea    ecx, [ebp+2108h+var_211C]

; demangled name: int ATL::CStringT::Compare(char const *)const
.text:6440D537      call   ds:mfc90_1603
.text:6440D53D      test   eax, eax
.text:6440D53F      jz     short loc_6440D55A
.text:6440D541      lea    ecx, [ebp+2108h+var_211C]

; demangled name: const char* ATL::CStringT::operator PCWSTR
.text:6440D544      call   ds:mfc90_910
.text:6440D54A      push   eax                ; Str
.text:6440D54B      call   ds:atoi
.text:6440D551      test   eax, eax
.text:6440D553      setnz al
.text:6440D556      pop    ecx
.text:6440D557      mov    [edi+15h], al
```

String returned by `chk_env()` via second argument is then handled by MFC string functions and then `atoi()`⁴ is called. After that, numerical value is stored to `edi+15h`.

Also take a look onto `chk_env()` function (I gave a name to it):

```
.text:64413F20 ; int __cdecl chk_env(char *VarName, int)
.text:64413F20 chk_env      proc near
.text:64413F20
.text:64413F20 DstSize      = dword ptr -0Ch
.text:64413F20 var_8        = dword ptr -8
.text:64413F20 DstBuf       = dword ptr -4
.text:64413F20 VarName      = dword ptr 8
.text:64413F20 arg_4        = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:64413F20
.text:64413F20      push    ebp
.text:64413F21      mov     ebp, esp
.text:64413F23      sub     esp, 0Ch
.text:64413F26      mov     [ebp+DstSize], 0
.text:64413F2D      mov     [ebp+DstBuf], 0
.text:64413F34      push   offset unk_6444C88C
.text:64413F39      mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_4]

; (demangled name) ATL::CStringT::operator=(char const *)
.text:64413F3C      call   ds:mfc90_820
.text:64413F42      mov     eax, [ebp+VarName]
.text:64413F45      push   eax                ; VarName
.text:64413F46      mov     ecx, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F49      push   ecx                ; DstSize
.text:64413F4A      mov     edx, [ebp+DstBuf]
.text:64413F4D      push   edx                ; DstBuf
.text:64413F4E      lea    eax, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F51      push   eax                ; ReturnSize
.text:64413F52      call   ds:getenv_s
.text:64413F58      add     esp, 10h
.text:64413F5B      mov     [ebp+var_8], eax
.text:64413F5E      cmp     [ebp+var_8], 0
.text:64413F62      jz     short loc_64413F68
.text:64413F64      xor     eax, eax
.text:64413F66      jmp    short loc_64413FBC
.text:64413F68
.text:64413F68 loc_64413F68:
.text:64413F68      cmp     [ebp+DstSize], 0
.text:64413F6C      jnz    short loc_64413F72
.text:64413F6E      xor     eax, eax
.text:64413F70      jmp    short loc_64413FBC
.text:64413F72
.text:64413F72 loc_64413F72:
.text:64413F72      mov     ecx, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F75      push   ecx
.text:64413F76      mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_4]
```

⁴standard C library function, converting number in string into number

```

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT<char, 1>::Preallocate(int)
.text:64413F79      call     ds:mfc90_2691
.text:64413F7F      mov     [ebp+DstBuf], eax
.text:64413F82      mov     edx, [ebp+VarName]
.text:64413F85      push   edx           ; VarName
.text:64413F86      mov     eax, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F89      push   eax           ; DstSize
.text:64413F8A      mov     ecx, [ebp+DstBuf]
.text:64413F8D      push   ecx           ; DstBuf
.text:64413F8E      lea   edx, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F91      push   edx           ; ReturnSize
.text:64413F92      call   ds:getenv_s
.text:64413F98      add     esp, 10h
.text:64413F9B      mov     [ebp+var_8], eax
.text:64413F9E      push   0FFFFFFFFh
.text:64413FA0      mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_4]

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::ReleaseBuffer(int)
.text:64413FA3      call   ds:mfc90_5835
.text:64413FA9      cmp     [ebp+var_8], 0
.text:64413FAD      jz     short loc_64413FB3
.text:64413FAF      xor     eax, eax
.text:64413FB1      jmp    short loc_64413FBC
.text:64413FB3      loc_64413FB3:
.text:64413FB3      mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_4]

; demangled name: const char* ATL::CStringT::operator PCWSTR
.text:64413FB6      call   ds:mfc90_910
.text:64413FBC      loc_64413FBC:
.text:64413FBC
.text:64413FBC      mov     esp, ebp
.text:64413FBE      pop     ebp
.text:64413FBF      retn
.text:64413FBF      chk_env      endp

```

Yes. `getenv_s()`⁵ function is Microsoft security-enhanced version of `getenv()`⁶.

There is also a MFC string manipulations.

Lots of other environment variables are checked as well. Here is a list of all variables being checked and what SAPGUI could write to trace log when logging is turned on:

DPTRACE	"GUI-OPTION: Trace set to %d"
TDW_HEXDUMP	"GUI-OPTION: Hexdump enabled"
TDW_WORKDIR	"GUI-OPTION: working directory '%s'"
TDW_SPLASHSRCEENOFF	"GUI-OPTION: Splash Screen Off" / "GUI-OPTION: Splash Screen On"
TDW_REPLYTIMEOUT	"GUI-OPTION: reply timeout %d milliseconds"
TDW_PLAYBACKTIMEOUT	"GUI-OPTION: PlaybackTimeout set to %d milliseconds"
TDW_NOCOMPRESS	"GUI-OPTION: no compression read"
TDW_EXPERT	"GUI-OPTION: expert mode"
TDW_PLAYBACKPROGRESS	"GUI-OPTION: PlaybackProgress"
TDW_PLAYBACKNETTRAFFIC	"GUI-OPTION: PlaybackNetTraffic"
TDW_PLAYLOG	"GUI-OPTION: /PlayLog is YES, file %s"
TDW_PLAYTIME	"GUI-OPTION: /PlayTime set to %d milliseconds"
TDW_LOGFILE	"GUI-OPTION: TDW_LOGFILE '%s'"
TDW_WAN	"GUI-OPTION: WAN - low speed connection enabled"
TDW_FULLMENU	"GUI-OPTION: FullMenu enabled"
SAP_CP / SAP_CODEPAGE	"GUI-OPTION: SAP_CODEPAGE '%d'"
UPDOWNLOAD_CP	"GUI-OPTION: UPDOWNLOAD_CP '%d'"
SNC_PARTNERNAME	"GUI-OPTION: SNC name '%s'"
SNC_QOP	"GUI-OPTION: SNC_QOP '%s'"
SNC_LIB	"GUI-OPTION: SNC is set to: %s"
SAPGUI_INPLACE	"GUI-OPTION: environment variable SAPGUI_INPLACE is on"

⁵[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/tb2sfwz2\(VS.80\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/tb2sfwz2(VS.80).aspx)

⁶Standard C library returning environment variable

Settings for each variable are written to the array via pointer in the EDI register. EDI is being set before the function call:

```
.text:6440EE00      lea    edi, [ebp+2884h+var_2884] ; options here like +0x15...
.text:6440EE03      lea    ecx, [esi+24h]
.text:6440EE06      call   load_command_line
.text:6440EE0B      mov    edi, eax
.text:6440EE0D      xor    ebx, ebx
.text:6440EE0F      cmp    edi, ebx
.text:6440EE11      jz     short loc_6440EE42
.text:6440EE13      push  edi
.text:6440EE14      push  offset aSapguiStoppedA ; "Sapgui stopped after ↵
    ↵ commandline interp"...
.text:6440EE19      push  dword_644F93E8
.text:6440EE1F      call  FEWTraceError
```

Now, can we find “data record mode switched on” string? Yes, and here is the only reference in function CDwsGui::PrepareInfoWindow(). How do I know class/method names? There is a lot of special debugging calls writing to log-files like:

```
.text:64405160      push  dword ptr [esi+2854h]
.text:64405166      push  offset aCdwsGuiPrepare ; "\nCDwsGui::PrepareInfoWindow: ↵
    ↵ sapgui env"...
.text:6440516B      push  dword ptr [esi+2848h]
.text:64405171      call  dbg
.text:64405176      add   esp, 0Ch
```

...or:

```
.text:6440237A      push  eax
.text:6440237B      push  offset aCClientStart_6 ; "CClient::Start: set shortcut ↵
    ↵ user to '%'"...
.text:64402380      push  dword ptr [edi+4]
.text:64402383      call  dbg
.text:64402388      add   esp, 0Ch
```

It is very useful.

So let's see contents of the pesky nagging pop-up window function:

```
.text:64404F4F CDwsGui__PrepareInfoWindow proc near
.text:64404F4F
.text:64404F4F pvParam      = byte ptr -3Ch
.text:64404F4F var_38        = dword ptr -38h
.text:64404F4F var_34        = dword ptr -34h
.text:64404F4F rc           = tagRECT ptr -2Ch
.text:64404F4F cy           = dword ptr -1Ch
.text:64404F4F h            = dword ptr -18h
.text:64404F4F var_14       = dword ptr -14h
.text:64404F4F var_10       = dword ptr -10h
.text:64404F4F var_4        = dword ptr -4
.text:64404F4F
.text:64404F4F      push  30h
.text:64404F51      mov    eax, offset loc_64438E00
.text:64404F56      call  __EH_prolog3
.text:64404F5B      mov    esi, ecx          ; ECX is pointer to object
.text:64404F5D      xor    ebx, ebx
.text:64404F5F      lea   ecx, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404F62      mov   [ebp+var_10], ebx

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT(void)
.text:64404F65      call  ds:mfc90_316
.text:64404F6B      mov   [ebp+var_4], ebx
.text:64404F6E      lea   edi, [esi+2854h]
.text:64404F74      push  offset aEnvironmentInf ; "Environment information:\n"
.text:64404F79      mov   ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator=(char const *)
.text:64404F7B      call  ds:mfc90_820
.text:64404F81      cmp   [esi+38h], ebx
.text:64404F84      mov   ebx, ds:mfc90_2539
.text:64404F8A      jbe   short loc_64404FA9
.text:64404F8C      push dword ptr [esi+34h]
```

```

.text:64404F8F      lea     eax, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404F92      push   offset aWorkingDirecto ; "working directory: '%s'\n"
.text:64404F97      push   eax

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::Format(char const *,...)
.text:64404F98      call   ebx ; mfc90_2539
.text:64404F9A      add    esp, 0Ch
.text:64404F9D      lea   eax, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404FA0      push   eax
.text:64404FA1      mov    ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(class ATL::CStringT<char, 1> const &)
.text:64404FA3      call   ds:mfc90_941
.text:64404FA9      loc_64404FA9:
.text:64404FA9      mov    eax, [esi+38h]
.text:64404FAC      test   eax, eax
.text:64404FAE      jbe   short loc_64404FD3
.text:64404FB0      push   eax
.text:64404FB1      lea   eax, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404FB4      push   offset aTraceLevelDAct ; "trace level %d activated\n"
.text:64404FB9      push   eax

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::Format(char const *,...)
.text:64404FBA      call   ebx ; mfc90_2539
.text:64404FBC      add    esp, 0Ch
.text:64404FBF      lea   eax, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404FC2      push   eax
.text:64404FC3      mov    ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(class ATL::CStringT<char, 1> const &)
.text:64404FC5      call   ds:mfc90_941
.text:64404FCB      xor    ebx, ebx
.text:64404FCD      inc    ebx
.text:64404FCE      mov    [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:64404FD1      jmp    short loc_64404FD6
.text:64404FD3      loc_64404FD3:
.text:64404FD3      xor    ebx, ebx
.text:64404FD5      inc    ebx
.text:64404FD6      loc_64404FD6:
.text:64404FD6      cmp    [esi+38h], ebx
.text:64404FD9      jbe   short loc_64404FF1
.text:64404FDB      cmp    dword ptr [esi+2978h], 0
.text:64404FE2      jz    short loc_64404FF1
.text:64404FE4      push   offset aHexdumpInTrace ; "hexdump in trace activated\n"
.text:64404FE9      mov    ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64404FEB      call   ds:mfc90_945
.text:64404FF1      loc_64404FF1:
.text:64404FF1
.text:64404FF1      cmp    byte ptr [esi+78h], 0
.text:64404FF5      jz    short loc_64405007
.text:64404FF7      push   offset aLoggingActivat ; "logging activated\n"
.text:64404FFC      mov    ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64404FFE      call   ds:mfc90_945
.text:64405004      mov    [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:64405007      loc_64405007:
.text:64405007      cmp    byte ptr [esi+3Dh], 0
.text:6440500B      jz    short bypass
.text:6440500D      push   offset aDataCompressio ; "data compression switched off\
    ↵ n"
.text:64405012      mov    ecx, edi

```

```

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64405014      call     ds:mfc90_945
.text:6440501A      mov     [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440501D
.text:6440501D      bypass:
.text:6440501D      mov     eax, [esi+20h]
.text:64405020      test   eax, eax
.text:64405022      jz     short loc_6440503A
.text:64405024      cmp    dword ptr [eax+28h], 0
.text:64405028      jz     short loc_6440503A
.text:6440502A      push   offset aDataRecordMode ; "data record mode switched on\n\r
    ↵
.text:6440502F      mov     ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64405031      call     ds:mfc90_945
.text:64405037      mov     [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440503A
.text:6440503A      loc_6440503A:
.text:6440503A      mov     ecx, edi
.text:6440503C      cmp    [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440503F      jnz    loc_64405142
.text:64405045      push   offset aForMaximumData ; "\nFor maximum data security \r
    ↵ delete\nthe s"...

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:6440504A      call     ds:mfc90_945
.text:64405050      xor     edi, edi
.text:64405052      push   edi ; fWinIni
.text:64405053      lea   eax, [ebp+pvParam]
.text:64405056      push   eax ; pvParam
.text:64405057      push   edi ; uiParam
.text:64405058      push   30h ; uiAction
.text:6440505A      call   ds:SystemParametersInfoA
.text:64405060      mov     eax, [ebp+var_34]
.text:64405063      cmp    eax, 1600
.text:64405068      jle    short loc_64405072
.text:6440506A      cdq
.text:6440506B      sub    eax, edx
.text:6440506D      sar    eax, 1
.text:6440506F      mov    [ebp+var_34], eax
.text:64405072
.text:64405072      loc_64405072:
.text:64405072      push   edi ; hWnd
.text:64405073      mov    [ebp+cy], 0A0h
.text:6440507A      call   ds:GetDC
.text:64405080      mov    [ebp+var_10], eax
.text:64405083      mov    ebx, 12Ch
.text:64405088      cmp    eax, edi
.text:6440508A      jz     loc_64405113
.text:64405090      push   11h ; i
.text:64405092      call   ds:GetStockObject
.text:64405098      mov    edi, ds>SelectObject
.text:6440509E      push   eax ; h
.text:6440509F      push   [ebp+var_10] ; hdc
.text:644050A2      call   edi ; SelectObject
.text:644050A4      and    [ebp+rc.left], 0
.text:644050A8      and    [ebp+rc.top], 0
.text:644050AC      mov    [ebp+h], eax
.text:644050AF      push   401h ; format
.text:644050B4      lea   eax, [ebp+rc]
.text:644050B7      push   eax ; lprc
.text:644050B8      lea   ecx, [esi+2854h]
.text:644050BE      mov    [ebp+rc.right], ebx
.text:644050C1      mov    [ebp+rc.bottom], 0B4h

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::GetLength(void)
.text:644050C8      call     ds:mfc90_3178
.text:644050CE      push    eax ; cchText

```

```

.text:644050CF      lea     ecx, [esi+2854h]
; demangled name: const char* ATL::CStringT::operator PCXSTR
.text:644050D5      call   ds:mfc90_910
.text:644050DB      push   eax                ; lpchText
.text:644050DC      push   [ebp+var_10]       ; hdc
.text:644050DF      call   ds:DrawTextA
.text:644050E5      push   4                  ; nIndex
.text:644050E7      call   ds:GetSystemMetrics
.text:644050ED      mov    ecx, [ebp+rc.bottom]
.text:644050F0      sub    ecx, [ebp+rc.top]
.text:644050F3      cmp    [ebp+h], 0
.text:644050F7      lea   eax, [eax+ecx+28h]
.text:644050FB      mov   [ebp+cy], eax
.text:644050FE      jz    short loc_64405108
.text:64405100      push  [ebp+h]            ; h
.text:64405103      push  [ebp+var_10]       ; hdc
.text:64405106      call  edi ; SelectObject
.text:64405108      loc_64405108:
.text:64405108      push  [ebp+var_10]       ; hDC
.text:6440510B      push  0                  ; hWnd
.text:6440510D      call  ds:ReleaseDC
.text:64405113      loc_64405113:
.text:64405113      mov   eax, [ebp+var_38]
.text:64405116      push  80h                ; uFlags
.text:6440511B      push  [ebp+cy]           ; cy
.text:6440511E      inc   eax
.text:6440511F      push  ebx                ; cx
.text:64405120      push  eax                ; Y
.text:64405121      mov   eax, [ebp+var_34]
.text:64405124      add   eax, 0FFFFFFD4h
.text:64405129      cdq
.text:6440512A      sub   eax, edx
.text:6440512C      sar   eax, 1
.text:6440512E      push  eax                ; X
.text:6440512F      push  0                  ; hWndInsertAfter
.text:64405131      push  dword ptr [esi+285Ch] ; hWnd
.text:64405137      call  ds:SetWindowPos
.text:6440513D      xor   ebx, ebx
.text:6440513F      inc   ebx
.text:64405140      jmp   short loc_6440514D
.text:64405142      loc_64405142:
.text:64405142      push  offset byte_64443AF8
; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator=(char const *)
.text:64405147      call  ds:mfc90_820
.text:6440514D      loc_6440514D:
.text:6440514D      cmp   dword_6450B970, ebx
.text:64405153      jnl  short loc_64405188
.text:64405155      call  sub_6441C910
.text:6440515A      mov   dword_644F858C, ebx
.text:64405160      push  dword ptr [esi+2854h]
.text:64405166      push  offset aCdwsGuiPrepare ; "\nCDwsGui::PrepareInfoWindow: ↵
      ↵ sapgui env"...
.text:6440516B      push  dword ptr [esi+2848h]
.text:64405171      call  dbg
.text:64405176      add   esp, 0Ch
.text:64405179      mov   dword_644F858C, 2
.text:64405183      call  sub_6441C920
.text:64405188      loc_64405188:
.text:64405188      or    [ebp+var_4], 0FFFFFFFh
.text:6440518C      lea   ecx, [ebp+var_14]
; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::~CStringT()
.text:6440518F      call  ds:mfc90_601

```

```
.text:64405195      call    __EH_epilog3
.text:6440519A      retn
.text:6440519A CDwsGui__PrepareInfoWindow endp
```

ECX at function start gets pointer to object (since it is thiscall (37.1.1)-type of function). In our case, the object obviously has class type *CDwsGui*. Depends of option turned on in the object, specific message part will be concatenated to resulting message.

If value at `this+0x3D` address is not zero, compression is off:

```
.text:64405007 loc_64405007:
.text:64405007      cmp     byte ptr [esi+3Dh], 0
.text:6440500B      jz      short bypass
.text:6440500D      push   offset aDataCompressio ; "data compression switched off\
    ↪ n"
.text:64405012      mov     ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64405014      call   ds:mfc90_945
.text:6440501A      mov     [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440501D      bypass:
```

It is interesting, that finally, `var_10` variable state defines whether the message is to be shown at all:

```
.text:6440503C      cmp     [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440503F      jnz    exit ; bypass drawing

; add strings "For maximum data security delete" / "the setting(s) as soon as possible !":
.text:64405045      push   offset aForMaximumData ; "\nFor maximum data security
    ↪ delete\nthe s"...
.text:6440504A      call   ds:mfc90_945 ; ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64405050      xor     edi, edi
.text:64405052      push   edi ; fWinIni
.text:64405053      lea   eax, [ebp+pvParam]
.text:64405056      push   eax ; pvParam
.text:64405057      push   edi ; uiParam
.text:64405058      push   30h ; uiAction
.text:6440505A      call   ds:SystemParametersInfoA
.text:64405060      mov     eax, [ebp+var_34]
.text:64405063      cmp     eax, 1600
.text:64405068      jle   short loc_64405072
.text:6440506A      cdq
.text:6440506B      sub     eax, edx
.text:6440506D      sar     eax, 1
.text:6440506F      mov     [ebp+var_34], eax
.text:64405072 loc_64405072:

start drawing:
.text:64405072      push   edi ; hWnd
.text:64405073      mov     [ebp+cy], 0A0h
.text:6440507A      call   ds:GetDC
```

Let's check our theory on practice.

JNZ at this line ...

```
.text:6440503F      jnz    exit ; bypass drawing
```

... replace it with just `JMP`, and get `SAPGUI` working without the pesky nagging pop-up window appearing!

Now let's dig deeper and find connection between `0x15` offset in the `load_command_line()` (I gave the name to the function) function and `this+0x3D` variable in the `CDwsGui::PrepareInfoWindow`. Are we sure the value is the same?

I'm starting to search for all occurrences of `0x15` value in code. For a small programs like `SAPGUI`, it sometimes works. Here is the first occurrence I got:

```
.text:64404C19 sub_64404C19 proc near
.text:64404C19
.text:64404C19 arg_0 = dword ptr 4
.text:64404C19
.text:64404C19 push ebx
```

```
.text:64404C1A      push    ebp
.text:64404C1B      push    esi
.text:64404C1C      push    edi
.text:64404C1D      mov     edi, [esp+10h+arg_0]
.text:64404C21      mov     eax, [edi]
.text:64404C23      mov     esi, ecx ; ESI/ECX are pointers to some unknown object.
.text:64404C25      mov     [esi], eax
.text:64404C27      mov     eax, [edi+4]
.text:64404C2A      mov     [esi+4], eax
.text:64404C2D      mov     eax, [edi+8]
.text:64404C30      mov     [esi+8], eax
.text:64404C33      lea    eax, [edi+0Ch]
.text:64404C36      push   eax
.text:64404C37      lea    ecx, [esi+0Ch]

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator=(class ATL::CStringT ... &)
.text:64404C3A      call   ds:mfc90_817
.text:64404C40      mov     eax, [edi+10h]
.text:64404C43      mov     [esi+10h], eax
.text:64404C46      mov     al, [edi+14h]
.text:64404C49      mov     [esi+14h], al
.text:64404C4C      mov     al, [edi+15h] ; copy byte from 0x15 offset
.text:64404C4F      mov     [esi+15h], al ; to 0x15 offset in CDwsGui object
```

The function was called from the function named *CDwsGui::CopyOptions!* And thanks again for debugging information. But the real answer in the function *CDwsGui::Init()*:

```
.text:6440B0BF  loc_6440B0BF:
.text:6440B0BF      mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:6440B0C2      push   [ebp+arg_4]
.text:6440B0C5      mov     [esi+2844h], eax
.text:6440B0CB      lea    eax, [esi+28h] ; ESI is pointer to CDwsGui object
.text:6440B0CE      push   eax
.text:6440B0CF      call   CDwsGui__CopyOptions
```

Finally, we understand: array filled in the *load_command_line()* function is actually placed in the *CDwsGui* class but on *this+0x28* address. *0x15 + 0x28* is exactly *0x3D*. OK, we found the point where the value is copied to.

Let's also find other places where *0x3D* offset is used. Here is one of them in the *CDwsGui::SapguiRun* function (again, thanks to debugging calls):

```
.text:64409D58      cmp     [esi+3Dh], bl ; ESI is pointer to CDwsGui object
.text:64409D5B      lea    ecx, [esi+2B8h]
.text:64409D61      setz   al
.text:64409D64      push   eax ; arg_10 of CConnectionContext::~
    ↪ CreateNetwork
.text:64409D65      push   dword ptr [esi+64h]

; demangled name: const char* ATL::CStringT::operator PCWSTR
.text:64409D68      call   ds:mfc90_910
.text:64409D68      ; no arguments
.text:64409D6E      push   eax
.text:64409D6F      lea    ecx, [esi+2BCh]

; demangled name: const char* ATL::CStringT::operator PCWSTR
.text:64409D75      call   ds:mfc90_910
.text:64409D75      ; no arguments
.text:64409D7B      push   eax
.text:64409D7C      push   esi
.text:64409D7D      lea    ecx, [esi+8]
.text:64409D80      call   CConnectionContext__CreateNetwork
```

Let's check our findings. Replace the *setz al* here to the *xor eax, eax / nop* instructions, clear *TDW_NOCOMPRESS* environment variable and run *SAPGUI*. Wow! There is no more pesky nagging window (just as expected, because variable is not set) but in *Wireshark* we can see the network packets are not compressed anymore! Obviously, this is the point where compression flag is to be set in the *CConnectionContext* object.

So, compression flag is passed in the 5th argument of function *CConnectionContext::CreateNetwork*. Inside the function, another one is called:

```
...
.text:64403476      push   [ebp+compression]
.text:64403479      push   [ebp+arg_C]
```

```
.text:6440347C      push    [ebp+arg_8]
.text:6440347F      push    [ebp+arg_4]
.text:64403482      push    [ebp+arg_0]
.text:64403485      call   CNetwork__CNetwork
```

Compression flag is passing here in the 5th argument to the *CNetwork::CNetwork* constructor.

And here is how *CNetwork* constructor sets a flag in the *CNetwork* object according to the 5th argument *and* an another variable which probably could affect network packets compression too.

```
.text:64411DF1      cmp     [ebp+compression], esi
.text:64411DF7      jz     short set_EAX_to_0
.text:64411DF9      mov    al, [ebx+78h] ; another value may affect compression?
.text:64411DFC      cmp    al, '3'
.text:64411DFE      jz     short set_EAX_to_1
.text:64411E00      cmp    al, '4'
.text:64411E02      jnz   short set_EAX_to_0
.text:64411E04      set_EAX_to_1:
.text:64411E04      xor    eax, eax
.text:64411E06      inc    eax ; EAX -> 1
.text:64411E07      jmp   short loc_64411E0B
.text:64411E09      set_EAX_to_0:
.text:64411E09      xor    eax, eax ; EAX -> 0
.text:64411E0B      loc_64411E0B:
.text:64411E0B      mov    [ebx+3A4h], eax ; EBX is pointer to CNetwork object
```

At this point we know the compression flag is stored in the *CNetwork* class at *this+0x3A4* address.

Now let's dig across *SAPguilib.dll* for *0x3A4* value. And here is the second occurrence in the *CDwsGui::OnClientMessageWrite* (endless thanks for debugging information):

```
.text:64406F76      loc_64406F76:
.text:64406F76      mov    ecx, [ebp+7728h+var_7794]
.text:64406F79      cmp    dword ptr [ecx+3A4h], 1
.text:64406F80      jnz   compression_flag_is_zero
.text:64406F86      mov    byte ptr [ebx+7], 1
.text:64406F8A      mov    eax, [esi+18h]
.text:64406F8D      mov    ecx, eax
.text:64406F8F      test   eax, eax
.text:64406F91      ja     short loc_64406FFF
.text:64406F93      mov    ecx, [esi+14h]
.text:64406F96      mov    eax, [esi+20h]
.text:64406F99      loc_64406F99:
.text:64406F99      push  dword ptr [edi+2868h] ; int
.text:64406F9F      lea   edx, [ebp+7728h+var_77A4]
.text:64406FA2      push  edx ; int
.text:64406FA3      push  30000 ; int
.text:64406FA8      lea   edx, [ebp+7728h+Dst]
.text:64406FAB      push  edx ; Dst
.text:64406FAC      push  ecx ; int
.text:64406FAD      push  eax ; Src
.text:64406FAE      push  dword ptr [edi+28C0h] ; int
.text:64406FB4      call  sub_644055C5 ; actual compression routine
.text:64406FB9      add   esp, 1Ch
.text:64406FBC      cmp    eax, 0FFFFFFF6h
.text:64406FBF      jz     short loc_64407004
.text:64406FC1      cmp    eax, 1
.text:64406FC4      jz     loc_6440708C
.text:64406FCA      cmp    eax, 2
.text:64406FCD      jz     short loc_64407004
.text:64406FCF      push  eax
.text:64406FD0      push  offset aCompressionErr ; "compression error [rc = %d]- ↵
    ↵ program wi"...
.text:64406FD5      push  offset aGui_err_compre ; "GUI_ERR_COMPRESS"
.text:64406FDA      push  dword ptr [edi+28D0h]
.text:64406FE0      call  SapPcTxtRead
```

Let's take a look into `sub_644055C5`. In it we can only see call to `memcpy()` and an other function named (by IDA) `sub_64417440`.

And, let's take a look inside `sub_64417440`. What we see is:

```
.text:6441747C      push    offset aErrorCsrcompre ; "\nERROR: CsRCompress: invalid ↵
    ↵ handle"
.text:64417481      call   eax ; dword_644F94C8
.text:64417483      add    esp, 4
```

Voilà! We've found the function which actually compresses data. As I revealed in past ⁷, this function is used in SAP and also open-source MaxDB project. So it is available in sources.

Doing last check here:

```
.text:64406F79      cmp    dword ptr [ecx+3A4h], 1
.text:64406F80      jnz   compression_flag_is_zero
```

Replace JNZ here for unconditional JMP. Remove environment variable TDW_NOCOMPRESS. Voilà! In Wireshark we see the client messages are not compressed. Server responses, however, are compressed.

So we found exact connection between environment variable and the point where data compression routine may be called or may be bypassed.

71.2 SAP 6.0 password checking functions

While returning again to my SAP 6.0 IDES installed in VMware box, I figured out I forgot the password for SAP* account, then it back to my memory, but now I got error message «*Password logon no longer possible - too many failed attempts*», since I've spent all these attempts in trying to recall it.

First extremely good news is the full `disp+work.pdb` PDB-file is supplied with SAP, it contain almost everything: function names, structures, types, local variable and argument names, etc. What a lavish gift!

I got TYPEINFODUMP⁸ utility for converting PDB files into something readable and greppable.

Here is an example of function information + its arguments + its local variables:

```
FUNCTION ThVmcSysEvent
  Address:      10143190  Size:      675 bytes  Index:      60483  TypeIndex:   60484
  Type: int NEAR_C ThVmcSysEvent (unsigned int, unsigned char, unsigned short*)
Flags: 0
PARAMETER events
  Address: Reg335+288  Size:      4 bytes  Index:      60488  TypeIndex:   60489
  Type: unsigned int
Flags: d0
PARAMETER opcode
  Address: Reg335+296  Size:      1 bytes  Index:      60490  TypeIndex:   60491
  Type: unsigned char
Flags: d0
PARAMETER serverName
  Address: Reg335+304  Size:      8 bytes  Index:      60492  TypeIndex:   60493
  Type: unsigned short*
Flags: d0
STATIC_LOCAL_VAR func
  Address:      12274af0  Size:      8 bytes  Index:      60495  TypeIndex:   60496
  Type: wchar_t*
Flags: 80
LOCAL_VAR admhead
  Address: Reg335+304  Size:      8 bytes  Index:      60498  TypeIndex:   60499
  Type: unsigned char*
Flags: 90
LOCAL_VAR record
  Address: Reg335+64   Size:     204 bytes  Index:      60501  TypeIndex:   60502
  Type: AD_RECORD
Flags: 90
LOCAL_VAR adlen
  Address: Reg335+296  Size:      4 bytes  Index:      60508  TypeIndex:   60509
  Type: int
Flags: 90
```

And here is an example of some structure:

⁷http://conus.info/utils/SAP_pkt_decompr.txt

⁸<http://www.debuginfo.com/tools/typeinfodump.html>


```

STRUCT DBSL_STMTID
Size: 120 Variables: 4 Functions: 0 Base classes: 0
MEMBER moduletype
  Type: DBSL_MODULETYPE
  Offset: 0 Index: 3 TypeIndex: 38653
MEMBER module
  Type: wchar_t module[40]
  Offset: 4 Index: 3 TypeIndex: 831
MEMBER stmtnum
  Type: long
  Offset: 84 Index: 3 TypeIndex: 440
MEMBER timestamp
  Type: wchar_t timestamp[15]
  Offset: 88 Index: 3 TypeIndex: 6612

```

Wow!

Another good news is: *debugging* calls (there are plenty of them) are very useful.

Here you can also notice *ct_level* global variable⁹, reflecting current trace level.

There is a lot of such debugging inclusions in the *disp+work.exe* file:

```

cmp     cs:ct_level, 1
jl      short loc_1400375DA
call    DpLock
lea     rcx, aDpxxtool4_c ; "dpxxtool4.c"
mov     edx, 4Eh          ; line
call    CTrcSaveLocation
mov     r8, cs:func_48
mov     rcx, cs:hdl      ; hdl
lea     rdx, aSDpreadmemvalu ; "%s: DpReadMemValue (%d)"
mov     r9d, ebx
call    DpTrcErr
call    DpUnlock

```

If current trace level is bigger or equal to threshold defined in the code here, debugging message will be written to log files like *dev_w0*, *dev_disp*, and other *dev** files.

Let's do grepping on file I got with the help of TYPEINFODUMP utility:

```
cat "disp+work.pdb.d" | grep FUNCTION | grep -i password
```

I got:

```

FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::DiagISelection
FUNCTION ssf_password_encrypt
FUNCTION ssf_password_decrypt
FUNCTION password_logon_disabled
FUNCTION dySignSkipUserPassword
FUNCTION migrate_password_history
FUNCTION password_is_initial
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::IsVisible
FUNCTION password_distance_ok
FUNCTION get_password_downwards_compatibility
FUNCTION dySignUnSkipUserPassword
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::GetTypeNames
FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::AgiPassword'::`1'::dtor$2
FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::AgiPassword'::`1'::dtor$0
FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::AgiPassword'::`1'::dtor$1
FUNCTION usm_set_password
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::TraceTo
FUNCTION days_since_last_password_change
FUNCTION rsecgrp_generate_random_password
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::`scalar deleting destructor'
FUNCTION password_attempt_limit_exceeded
FUNCTION handle_incorrect_password
FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::`scalar deleting destructor'::`1'::dtor$1
FUNCTION calculate_new_password_hash
FUNCTION shift_password_to_history
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::GetType
FUNCTION found_password_in_history

```

⁹More about trace level: http://help.sap.com/saphelp_nwpi71/helpdata/en/46/962416a5a613e8e1000000a155369/content.htm

```

FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::~`scalar deleting destructor''::`1'::dtor$0
FUNCTION rcui::AgiObj::IsaPassword
FUNCTION password_idle_check
FUNCTION SlicHwPasswordForDay
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::IsaPassword
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::AgiPassword
FUNCTION delete_user_password
FUNCTION usm_set_user_password
FUNCTION Password_API
FUNCTION get_password_change_for_SSO
FUNCTION password_in_USR40
FUNCTION rsec_agrp_abap_generate_random_password

```

Let's also try to search for debug messages which contain words «password» and «locked». One of them is the string «user was locked by subsequently failed password logon attempts» referenced in function `password_attempt_limit_exceeded()`.

Other string this function I found may write to log file are: «password logon attempt will be rejected immediately (preventing dictionary attacks)», «failed-logon lock: expired (but not removed due to 'read-only' operation)», «failed-logon lock: expired => removed».

After playing for a little with this function, I quickly noticed the problem is exactly in it. It is called from `chckpass()` function – one of the password checking functions.

First, I would like to be sure I'm at the correct point:

Run my `tracer`:

```
tracer64.exe -a:disp+work.exe bpf=disp+work.exe!chckpass,args:3,unicode
```

```

PID=2236|TID=2248|(0) disp+work.exe!chckpass (0x202c770, L"Brewered1
↳      ", 0x41) (called from 0x1402f1060 (disp+work.exe!usrexist+0x3c0))
PID=2236|TID=2248|(0) disp+work.exe!chckpass -> 0x35

```

Call path is: `syssigni()` -> `DylSigni()` -> `dychkusr()` -> `usrexist()` -> `chckpass()`.

Number 0x35 is an error returning in `chckpass()` at that point:

```

.text:00000001402ED567 loc_1402ED567:                                ; CODE XREF: chckpass+B4
.text:00000001402ED567      mov     rcx, rbx                ; usr02
.text:00000001402ED56A      call   password_idle_check
.text:00000001402ED56F      cmp    eax, 33h
.text:00000001402ED572      jz     loc_1402EDB4E
.text:00000001402ED578      cmp    eax, 36h
.text:00000001402ED57B      jz     loc_1402EDB3D
.text:00000001402ED581      xor    edx, edx                ; usr02_readonly
.text:00000001402ED583      mov    rcx, rbx                ; usr02
.text:00000001402ED586      call   password_attempt_limit_exceeded
.text:00000001402ED58B      test   al, al
.text:00000001402ED58D      jz     short loc_1402ED5A0
.text:00000001402ED58F      mov    eax, 35h
.text:00000001402ED594      add    rsp, 60h
.text:00000001402ED598      pop    r14
.text:00000001402ED59A      pop    r12
.text:00000001402ED59C      pop    rdi
.text:00000001402ED59D      pop    rsi
.text:00000001402ED59E      pop    rbx
.text:00000001402ED59F      retn

```

Fine, let's check:

```
tracer64.exe -a:disp+work.exe bpf=disp+work.exe!password_attempt_limit_exceeded,args:4,unicode,↵
↳ rt:0
```

```

PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!password_attempt_limit_exceeded (0x202c770, 0, 0x257758, 0) ↵
↳ (called from 0x1402ed58b (disp+work.exe!chckpass+0xeb))
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!password_attempt_limit_exceeded -> 1
PID=2744|TID=360|We modify return value (EAX/RAX) of this function to 0
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!password_attempt_limit_exceeded (0x202c770, 0, 0, 0) (called↵
↳ from 0x1402e9794 (disp+work.exe!chngpass+0xe4))
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!password_attempt_limit_exceeded -> 1
PID=2744|TID=360|We modify return value (EAX/RAX) of this function to 0

```

Excellent! I can successfully login now.

By the way, if I try to pretend I forgot the password, fixing `chckpass()` function return value at 0 is enough to bypass check:

```
tracer64.exe -a:disp+work.exe bpf=disp+work.exe!chckpass,args:3,unicode,rt:0
```

```
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!chckpass (0x202c770, L"bogus
↳   ", 0x41) (called from 0x1402f1060 (disp+work.exe!usreexist+0x3c0))
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!chckpass -> 0x35
PID=2744|TID=360|We modify return value (EAX/RAX) of this function to 0
```

What also can be said while analyzing *password_attempt_limit_exceeded()* function is that at the very beginning of it, this call might be seen:

```
lea    rcx, aLoginFailed_us ; "login/failed_user_auto_unlock"
call   sapgparam
test   rax, rax
jz     short loc_1402E19DE
movzx  eax, word ptr [rax]
cmp    ax, 'N'
jz     short loc_1402E19D4
cmp    ax, 'n'
jz     short loc_1402E19D4
cmp    ax, '0'
jnz    short loc_1402E19DE
```

Obviously, function *sapgparam()* used to query value of some configuration parameter. This function can be called from 1768 different places. It seems, with the help of this information, we can easily find places in code, control flow of which can be affected by specific configuration parameters.

It is really sweet. Function names are very clear, much clearer than in the Oracle RDBMS. It seems, *disp+work* process written in C++. It was apparently rewritten some time ago?

Chapter 72

Oracle RDBMS

72.1 V\$VERSION table in the Oracle RDBMS

Oracle RDBMS 11.2 is a huge program, main module `oracle.exe` contain approx. 124,000 functions. For comparison, Windows 7 x86 kernel (`ntoskrnl.exe`) – approx. 11,000 functions and Linux 3.9.8 kernel (with default drivers compiled) – 31,000 functions.

Let's start with an easy question. Where Oracle RDBMS get all this information, when we execute such simple statement in SQL*Plus:

```
SQL> select * from V$VERSION;
```

And we've got:

```
BANNER
```

```
-----
Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production
PL/SQL Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production
CORE      11.2.0.1.0      Production
TNS for 32-bit Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production
NLSRTL Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production
```

Let's start. Where in the Oracle RDBMS we may find a string `V$VERSION`?

As of win32-version, `oracle.exe` file contain the string, which can be investigated easily. But we can also use object (.o) files from Linux version of Oracle RDBMS since, unlike win32 version `oracle.exe`, function names (and global variables as well) are preserved there.

So, `kqf.o` file contain `V$VERSION` string. The object file is in the main Oracle-library `libserver11.a`.

A reference to this text string we may find in the `kqfviw` table stored in the same file, `kqf.o`:

Listing 72.1: `kqf.o`

```
.rodata:0800C4A0 kqfviw          dd 0Bh                ; DATA XREF: kqfchk:loc_8003A6D
.rodata:0800C4A0                ; kqfgbn+34
.rodata:0800C4A4                dd offset _2__STRING_10102_0 ; "GV$WAITSTAT"
.rodata:0800C4A8                dd 4
.rodata:0800C4AC                dd offset _2__STRING_10103_0 ; "NULL"
.rodata:0800C4B0                dd 3
.rodata:0800C4B4                dd 0
.rodata:0800C4B8                dd 195h
.rodata:0800C4BC                dd 4
.rodata:0800C4C0                dd 0
.rodata:0800C4C4                dd 0FFFFFFC1CBh
.rodata:0800C4C8                dd 3
.rodata:0800C4CC                dd 0
.rodata:0800C4D0                dd 0Ah
.rodata:0800C4D4                dd offset _2__STRING_10104_0 ; "V$WAITSTAT"
.rodata:0800C4D8                dd 4
.rodata:0800C4DC                dd offset _2__STRING_10103_0 ; "NULL"
.rodata:0800C4E0                dd 3
.rodata:0800C4E4                dd 0
.rodata:0800C4E8                dd 4Eh
.rodata:0800C4EC                dd 3
.rodata:0800C4F0                dd 0
.rodata:0800C4F4                dd 0FFFFFFC003h
.rodata:0800C4F8                dd 4
```

```
.rodata:0800C4FC      dd 0
.rodata:0800C500      dd 5
.rodata:0800C504      dd offset _2__STRING_10105_0 ; "GV$BH"
.rodata:0800C508      dd 4
.rodata:0800C50C      dd offset _2__STRING_10103_0 ; "NULL"
.rodata:0800C510      dd 3
.rodata:0800C514      dd 0
.rodata:0800C518      dd 269h
.rodata:0800C51C      dd 15h
.rodata:0800C520      dd 0
.rodata:0800C524      dd 0FFFFFFC1EDh
.rodata:0800C528      dd 8
.rodata:0800C52C      dd 0
.rodata:0800C530      dd 4
.rodata:0800C534      dd offset _2__STRING_10106_0 ; "V$BH"
.rodata:0800C538      dd 4
.rodata:0800C53C      dd offset _2__STRING_10103_0 ; "NULL"
.rodata:0800C540      dd 3
.rodata:0800C544      dd 0
.rodata:0800C548      dd 0F5h
.rodata:0800C54C      dd 14h
.rodata:0800C550      dd 0
.rodata:0800C554      dd 0FFFFFFC1EEh
.rodata:0800C558      dd 5
.rodata:0800C55C      dd 0
```

By the way, often, while analysing Oracle RDBMS internals, you may ask yourself, why functions and global variable names are so weird. Supposedly, since Oracle RDBMS is very old product and was developed in C in 1980-s. And that was a time when C standard guaranteed function names/variables support only up to 6 characters inclusive: «6 significant initial characters in an external identifier»¹

Probably, the table `kqfviv` contain most (maybe even all) views prefixed with `V$`, these are *fixed views*, present all the time. Superficially, by noticing cyclic recurrence of data, we can easily see that each `kqfviv` table element has 12 32-bit fields. It is very simple to create a 12-elements structure in `IDA` and apply it to all table elements. As of Oracle RDBMS version 11.2, there are 1023 table elements, i.e., there are described 1023 of all possible *fixed views*. We will return to this number later.

As we can see, there is not much information in these numbers in fields. The very first number is always equals to name of view (without terminating zero. This is correct for each element. But this information is not very useful.

We also know that information about all fixed views can be retrieved from *fixed view* named `V$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION` (by the way, the information for this view is also taken from `kqfviv` and `kqfvip` tables.) By the way, there are 1023 elements too.

```
SQL> select * from V$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION where view_name='V$VERSION';
```

```
VIEW_NAME
```

```
VIEW_DEFINITION
```

```
V$VERSION
```

```
select BANNER from GV$VERSION where inst_id = USERENV('Instance')
```

So, `V$VERSION` is some kind of *thunk view* for another view, named `GV$VERSION`, which is, in turn:

```
SQL> select * from V$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION where view_name='GV$VERSION';
```

```
VIEW_NAME
```

```
VIEW_DEFINITION
```

```
GV$VERSION
```

```
select inst_id, banner from x$version
```

Tables prefixed as `X$` in the Oracle RDBMS– is service tables too, undocumented, cannot be changed by user and they are refreshed dynamically.

Let's also try to search the text `select BANNER from GV$VERSION where inst_id = USERENV('Instance')` in the `kqf.o` file and we find it in the `kqfvip` table:

¹Draft ANSI C Standard (ANSI X3J11/88-090) (May 13, 1988)

Listing 72.2: kqf.o

```

rodata:080185A0 kqfvip          dd offset _2__STRING_11126_0 ; DATA XREF: kqfgvcn+18
.rodata:080185A0                ; kqfgvt+F
.rodata:080185A0                ; "select inst_id,decode(indx,1,'data ↵
↳ bloc"...
.rodata:080185A4                dd offset kqfv459_c_0
.rodata:080185A8                dd 0
.rodata:080185AC                dd 0
...
.rodata:08019570                dd offset _2__STRING_11378_0 ; "select  BANNER from GV$VERSION↵
↳ where in"...
.rodata:08019574                dd offset kqfv133_c_0
.rodata:08019578                dd 0
.rodata:0801957C                dd 0
.rodata:08019580                dd offset _2__STRING_11379_0 ; "select inst_id,decode(bitand(↵
↳ cfflg,1),0"...
.rodata:08019584                dd offset kqfv403_c_0
.rodata:08019588                dd 0
.rodata:0801958C                dd 0
.rodata:08019590                dd offset _2__STRING_11380_0 ; "select  STATUS , NAME, ↵
↳ IS_RECOVERY_DEST"...
.rodata:08019594                dd offset kqfv199_c_0

```

The table appear to have 4 fields in each element. By the way, there are 1023 elements too. The second field pointing to another table, containing table fields for this *fixed view*. As of V\$VERSION, this table contain only two elements, first is 6 and second is BANNER string (the number (6) is this string length) and after, *terminating* element contain 0 and *null* C-string:

Listing 72.3: kqf.o

```

.rodata:080BBAC4 kqfv133_c_0    dd 6                ; DATA XREF: .rodata:08019574
.rodata:080BBAC8                dd offset _2__STRING_5017_0 ; "BANNER"
.rodata:080BBACC                dd 0
.rodata:080BBAD0                dd offset _2__STRING_0_0

```

By joining data from both kqfvip and kqfvip tables, we may get SQL-statements which are executed when user wants to query information from specific *fixed view*.

So I wrote an oracle tables² program, so to gather all this information from Oracle RDBMS for Linux object files. For V\$VERSION, we may find this:

Listing 72.4: Result of oracle tables

```

kqfvip_element.viewname: [V$VERSION] ?: 0x3 0x43 0x1 0xffffc085 0x4
kqfvip_element.statement: [select  BANNER from GV$VERSION where inst_id = USERENV('Instance')]
kqfvip_element.params:
[BANNER]

```

and:

Listing 72.5: Result of oracle tables

```

kqfvip_element.viewname: [GV$VERSION] ?: 0x3 0x26 0x2 0xffffc192 0x1
kqfvip_element.statement: [select inst_id, banner from x$version]
kqfvip_element.params:
[INST_ID] [BANNER]

```

GV\$VERSION *fixed view* is distinct from V\$VERSION in only that way that it contains one more field with *instance* identifier. Anyway, we stuck at the table X\$VERSION. Just like any other X\$-tables, it is undocumented, however, we can query it:

```

SQL> select * from x$version;

ADDR          INDX     INST_ID
-----
BANNER
-----

ODBAF574          0         1
Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production

```

²http://yurichev.com/oracle_tables.html

...

This table has additional fields like ADDR and INDX.

While scrolling `kqf.o` in IDA we may spot another table containing pointer to the X\$VERSION string, this is `kqftab`:

Listing 72.6: `kqf.o`

```
.rodata:0803CAC0      dd 9                      ; element number 0x1f6
.rodata:0803CAC4      dd offset _2__STRING_13113_0 ; "X$VERSION"
.rodata:0803CAC8      dd 4
.rodata:0803CACC      dd offset _2__STRING_13114_0 ; "kqvt"
.rodata:0803CAD0      dd 4
.rodata:0803CAD4      dd 4
.rodata:0803CAD8      dd 0
.rodata:0803CADC      dd 4
.rodata:0803CAE0      dd 0Ch
.rodata:0803CAE4      dd 0FFFFFFC075h
.rodata:0803CAE8      dd 3
.rodata:0803CAEC      dd 0
.rodata:0803CAF0      dd 7
.rodata:0803CAF4      dd offset _2__STRING_13115_0 ; "X$KQFSZ"
.rodata:0803CAF8      dd 5
.rodata:0803CAFC      dd offset _2__STRING_13116_0 ; "kqfsz"
.rodata:0803CB00      dd 1
.rodata:0803CB04      dd 38h
.rodata:0803CB08      dd 0
.rodata:0803CB0C      dd 7
.rodata:0803CB10      dd 0
.rodata:0803CB14      dd 0FFFFFFC09Dh
.rodata:0803CB18      dd 2
.rodata:0803CB1C      dd 0
```

There are a lot of references to X\$-table names, apparently, to all Oracle RDBMS 11.2 X\$-tables. But again, we have not enough information. I have no idea, what `kqvt` string means. `kq` prefix may mean *kernel* and *query*. `v`, apparently, means *version* and `t` – *type*? Frankly speaking, I do not know.

The table named similarly can be found in `kqf.o`:

Listing 72.7: `kqf.o`

```
.rodata:0808C360 kqvt_c_0      kqftap_param <4, offset _2__STRING_19_0, 917h, 0, 0, 0, 4, 0, ↵
↳ 0>
.rodata:0808C360                      ; DATA XREF: .rodata:08042680
.rodata:0808C360                      ; "ADDR"
.rodata:0808C384      kqftap_param <4, offset _2__STRING_20_0, 0B02h, 0, 0, 0, 4, 0, ↵
↳ 0> ; "INDX"
.rodata:0808C3A8      kqftap_param <7, offset _2__STRING_21_0, 0B02h, 0, 0, 0, 4, 0, ↵
↳ 0> ; "INST_ID"
.rodata:0808C3CC      kqftap_param <6, offset _2__STRING_5017_0, 601h, 0, 0, 0, 50h, ↵
↳ 0, 0> ; "BANNER"
.rodata:0808C3F0      kqftap_param <0, offset _2__STRING_0_0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, ↵
```

It contains information about all fields in the X\$VERSION table. The only reference to this table present in the `kqftap` table:

Listing 72.8: `kqf.o`

```
.rodata:08042680      kqftap_element <0, offset kqvt_c_0, offset kqvrow, 0> ; ↵
↳ element 0x1f6
```

It is interesting that this element here is 0x1f6th (502nd), just as a pointer to the X\$VERSION string in the `kqftab` table. Probably, `kqftap` and `kqftab` tables are complement each other, just like `kqfvip` and `kqfviv`. We also see a pointer to the `kqvrow()` function. Finally, we got something useful!

So I added these tables to my oracle tables³ utility too. For X\$VERSION I've got:

Listing 72.9: Result of oracle tables

```
kqftab_element.name: [X$VERSION] ?: [kqvt] 0x4 0x4 0x4 0xc 0xffffc075 0x3
kqftap_param.name=[ADDR] ?: 0x917 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INDX] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INST_ID] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
```

³http://yurichev.com/oracle_tables.html

```
kqftap_param.name=[BANNER] ?: 0x601 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x50 0x0 0x0
kqftap_element.fn1=kqvrow
kqftap_element.fn2=NULL
```

With the help of [tracer](#), it is easy to check that this function called 6 times in row (from the `qerfxFetch()` function) while querying `X$VERSION` table.

Let's run [tracer](#) in the `cc` mode (it will comment each executed instruction):

```
tracer -a:oracle.exe bpf=oracle.exe!_kqvrow,trace:cc
```

```
_kqvrow_ proc near
var_7C    = byte ptr -7Ch
var_18    = dword ptr -18h
var_14    = dword ptr -14h
Dest      = dword ptr -10h
var_C     = dword ptr -0Ch
var_8     = dword ptr -8
var_4     = dword ptr -4
arg_8     = dword ptr 10h
arg_C     = dword ptr 14h
arg_14    = dword ptr 1Ch
arg_18    = dword ptr 20h

; FUNCTION CHUNK AT .text1:056C11A0 SIZE 00000049 BYTES

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        sub     esp, 7Ch
        mov     eax, [ebp+arg_14] ; [EBP+1Ch]=1
        mov     ecx, TlsIndex ; [69AEB08h]=0
        mov     edx, large fs:2Ch
        mov     edx, [edx+ecx*4] ; [EDX+ECX*4]=0xc98c938
        cmp     eax, 2 ; EAX=1
        mov     eax, [ebp+arg_8] ; [EBP+10h]=0xcdfe554
        jz      loc_2CE1288
        mov     ecx, [eax] ; [EAX]=0..5
        mov     [ebp+var_4], edi ; EDI=0xc98c938

loc_2CE10F6: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+10A
        ; _kqvrow_+1A9
        cmp     ecx, 5 ; ECX=0..5
        ja     loc_56C11C7
        mov     edi, [ebp+arg_18] ; [EBP+20h]=0
        mov     [ebp+var_14], edx ; EDX=0xc98c938
        mov     [ebp+var_8], ebx ; EBX=0
        mov     ebx, eax ; EAX=0xcdfe554
        mov     [ebp+var_C], esi ; ESI=0xcdfe248

loc_2CE110D: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+29E00E6
        mov     edx, ds:off_628B09C[ecx*4] ; [ECX*4+628B09Ch]=0x2ce1116, 0x2ce11ac, 0x2ce11db ↵
        ↵ , 0x2ce11f6, 0x2ce1236, 0x2ce127a
        jmp     edx ; EDX=0x2ce1116, 0x2ce11ac, 0x2ce11db, 0x2ce11f6, 0x2ce1236, ↵
        ↵ 0x2ce127a

loc_2CE1116: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:off_628B09C
        push    offset aXKqvvsnBuffer ; "x$kqvvsn buffer"
        mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_C] ; [EBP+14h]=0x8a172b4
        xor     edx, edx
        mov     esi, [ebp+var_14] ; [EBP-14h]=0xc98c938
        push    edx ; EDX=0
        push    edx ; EDX=0
        push    50h
        push    ecx ; ECX=0x8a172b4
        push    dword ptr [esi+10494h] ; [ESI+10494h]=0xc98cd58
        call   _kgghalf ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached, skipping this ↵
        ↵ CALL
        mov     esi, ds:__imp__vsnum ; [59771A8h]=0x61bc49e0
        mov     [ebp+Dest], eax ; EAX=0xce2ffb0
        mov     [ebx+8], eax ; EAX=0xce2ffb0
```



```

mov     [ebx+4], eax     ; EAX=0xce2ffb0
mov     edi, [esi]      ; [ESI]=0xb200100
mov     esi, ds:__imp__vsnstr ; [597D6D4h]=0x65852148, "- Production"
push    esi             ; ESI=0x65852148, "- Production"
mov     ebx, edi        ; EDI=0xb200100
shr     ebx, 18h        ; EBX=0xb200100
mov     ecx, edi        ; EDI=0xb200100
shr     ecx, 14h        ; ECX=0xb200100
and     ecx, 0Fh        ; ECX=0xb2
mov     edx, edi        ; EDI=0xb200100
shr     edx, 0Ch        ; EDX=0xb200100
movzx   edx, dl         ; DL=0
mov     eax, edi        ; EDI=0xb200100
shr     eax, 8          ; EAX=0xb200100
and     eax, 0Fh        ; EAX=0xb2001
and     edi, 0FFh      ; EDI=0xb200100
push    edi             ; EDI=0
mov     edi, [ebp+arg_18] ; [EBP+20h]=0
push    eax             ; EAX=1
mov     eax, ds:__imp__vsnbans ; [597D6D8h]=0x65852100, "Oracle Database 11g ↵
↳ Enterprise Edition Release %d.%d.%d.%d %s"
push    edx             ; EDX=0
push    ecx             ; ECX=2
push    ebx             ; EBX=0xb
mov     ebx, [ebp+arg_8] ; [EBP+10h]=0xcdfe554
push    eax             ; EAX=0x65852100, "Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition ↵
↳ Release %d.%d.%d.%d %s"
mov     eax, [ebp+Dest] ; [EBP-10h]=0xce2ffb0
push    eax             ; EAX=0xce2ffb0
call    ds:__imp__sprintf ; op1=MSVCR80.dll!sprintf tracing nested maximum level (1) ↵
↳ reached, skipping this CALL
add     esp, 38h
mov     dword ptr [ebx], 1

loc_2CE1192: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+FB
           ; _kqvrow_+128 ...
test    edi, edi        ; EDI=0
jnz     __VInfreq_kqvrow
mov     esi, [ebp+var_C] ; [EBP-0Ch]=0xcdfe248
mov     edi, [ebp+var_4] ; [EBP-4]=0xc98c938
mov     eax, ebx        ; EBX=0xcdfe554
mov     ebx, [ebp+var_8] ; [EBP-8]=0
lea     eax, [eax+4]    ; [EAX+4]=0xce2ffb0, "NLSRTL Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production ↵
↳ ", "Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production", "PL/SQL ↵
↳ Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production", "TNS for 32-bit Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 - ↵
↳ Production"

loc_2CE11A8: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+29E00F6
mov     esp, ebp
pop     ebp
retn                                ; EAX=0xcdfe558

loc_2CE11AC: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0A0
mov     edx, [ebx+8]     ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0, "Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition ↵
↳ Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
mov     dword ptr [ebx], 2
mov     [ebx+4], edx     ; EDX=0xce2ffb0, "Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition ↵
↳ Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
push    edx             ; EDX=0xce2ffb0, "Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition ↵
↳ Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
call    _kxxvsnsn      ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached, skipping this ↵
↳ CALL
pop     ecx
mov     edx, [ebx+4]    ; [EBX+4]=0xce2ffb0, "PL/SQL Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
movzx   ecx, byte ptr [edx] ; [EDX]=0x50
test    ecx, ecx        ; ECX=0x50
jnz     short loc_2CE1192
mov     edx, [ebp+var_14]
mov     esi, [ebp+var_C]
mov     eax, ebx

```

```

    mov     ebx, [ebp+var_8]
    mov     ecx, [eax]
    jmp     loc_2CE10F6

loc_2CE11DB: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0A4
    push   0
    push   50h
    mov     edx, [ebx+8] ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0, "PL/SQL Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    mov     [ebp+var_4], edx ; EDX=0xce2ffb0, "PL/SQL Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    push   edx ; EDX=0xce2ffb0, "PL/SQL Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    call   _lmxver ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached, skipping this ↵
↳ CALL
    add     esp, 0Ch
    mov     dword ptr [ebx], 3
    jmp     short loc_2CE1192

loc_2CE11F6: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0A8
    mov     edx, [ebx+8] ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0
    mov     [ebp+var_18], 50h
    mov     [ebx+4], edx ; EDX=0xce2ffb0
    push   0
    call   _npinli ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached, skipping this ↵
↳ CALL
    pop     ecx
    test    eax, eax ; EAX=0
    jnz    loc_56C11DA
    mov     ecx, [ebp+var_14] ; [EBP-14h]=0xc98c938
    lea    edx, [ebp+var_18] ; [EBP-18h]=0x50
    push   edx ; EDX=0xd76c93c
    push   dword ptr [ebx+8] ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0
    push   dword ptr [ecx+13278h] ; [ECX+13278h]=0xacce190
    call   _nrtnsvrs ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached, skipping this ↵
↳ CALL
    add     esp, 0Ch

loc_2CE122B: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+29E0118
    mov     dword ptr [ebx], 4
    jmp     loc_2CE1192

loc_2CE1236: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0AC
    lea    edx, [ebp+var_7C] ; [EBP-7Ch]=1
    push   edx ; EDX=0xd76c8d8
    push   0
    mov     esi, [ebx+8] ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0, "TNS for 32-bit Windows: Version ↵
↳ 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    mov     [ebx+4], esi ; ESI=0xce2ffb0, "TNS for 32-bit Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 ↵
↳ - Production"
    mov     ecx, 50h
    mov     [ebp+var_18], ecx ; ECX=0x50
    push   ecx ; ECX=0x50
    push   esi ; ESI=0xce2ffb0, "TNS for 32-bit Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 ↵
↳ - Production"
    call   _lxvers ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached, skipping this ↵
↳ CALL
    add     esp, 10h
    mov     edx, [ebp+var_18] ; [EBP-18h]=0x50
    mov     dword ptr [ebx], 5
    test   edx, edx ; EDX=0x50
    jnz    loc_2CE1192
    mov     edx, [ebp+var_14]
    mov     esi, [ebp+var_C]
    mov     eax, ebx
    mov     ebx, [ebp+var_8]
    mov     ecx, 5
    jmp     loc_2CE10F6

loc_2CE127A: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0B0
    mov     edx, [ebp+var_14] ; [EBP-14h]=0xc98c938
    mov     esi, [ebp+var_C] ; [EBP-0Ch]=0xcdfe248
    mov     edi, [ebp+var_4] ; [EBP-4]=0xc98c938

```

```

mov     eax, ebx      ; EBX=0xcdfe554
mov     ebx, [ebp+var_8] ; [EBP-8]=0

loc_2CE1288: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+1F
mov     eax, [eax+8]  ; [EAX+8]=0xce2ffb0, "NLSRTL Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
test    eax, eax     ; EAX=0xce2ffb0, "NLSRTL Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
jz      short loc_2CE12A7
push   offset aXKqvvsnBuffer ; "x$kqvvsn buffer"
push   eax           ; EAX=0xce2ffb0, "NLSRTL Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
mov     eax, [ebp+arg_C] ; [EBP+14h]=0x8a172b4
push   eax           ; EAX=0x8a172b4
push   dword ptr [edx+10494h] ; [EDX+10494h]=0xc98cd58
call   _kghfrf      ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached, skipping this ↗
↙ CALL
add     esp, 10h

loc_2CE12A7: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+1C1
xor     eax, eax
mov     esp, ebp
pop     ebp
retn                                ; EAX=0
_kqvrow_ endp

```

Now it is easy to see that row number is passed from outside of function. The function returns the string constructing it as follows:

String 1	Using vsnstr, vsnnum, vsnban global variables. Calling sprintf().
String 2	Calling kkvvsn().
String 3	Calling lmxver().
String 4	Calling npinli(), nrtnsvrs().
String 5	Calling lxxvers().

That's how corresponding functions are called for determining each module's version.

72.2 X\$KSMLRU table in Oracle RDBMS

There is a mention of a special table in the *Diagnosing and Resolving Error ORA-04031 on the Shared Pool or Other Memory Pools [Video] [ID 146599.1]* note:

There is a fixed table called X\$KSMLRU that tracks allocations in the shared pool that cause other objects in the shared pool to be aged out. This fixed table can be used to identify what is causing the large allocation. If many objects are being periodically flushed from the shared pool then this will cause response time problems and will likely cause library cache latch contention problems when the objects are reloaded into the shared pool.

One unusual thing about the X\$KSMLRU fixed table is that the contents of the fixed table are erased whenever someone selects from the fixed table. This is done since the fixed table stores only the largest allocations that have occurred. The values are reset after being selected so that subsequent large allocations can be noted even if they were not quite as large as others that occurred previously. Because of this resetting, the output of selecting from this table should be carefully kept since it cannot be retrieved back after the query is issued.

However, as it can be easily checked, this table's contents is cleared each time table querying. Are we able to find why? Let's back to tables we already know: kqftab and kqftap which were generated with oracle tables⁴ help, containing all information about X\$-tables, now we can see here, the ksm1rs() function is called to prepare this table's elements:

Listing 72.10: Result of oracle tables

```

kqftab_element.name: [X$KSMLRU] ?: [ksmlr] 0x4 0x64 0x11 0xc 0xffffc0bb 0x5
kqftap_param.name=[ADDR] ?: 0x917 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INDX] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INST_ID] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRIDX] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRDUR] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x4 0x0

```

⁴http://yurichev.com/oracle_tables.html

```

kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRSHRPOOL] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x8 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRCOM] ?: 0x501 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x14 0xc 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRSIZ] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x20 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNUM] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x24 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRHON] ?: 0x501 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x20 0x28 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLROHV] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x48 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRSES] ?: 0x17 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x4c 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRADU] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x50 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNID] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x54 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNSD] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x58 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNCD] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x5c 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNED] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x60 0x0
kqftap_element.fn1=ksmlrs
kqftap_element.fn2=NULL

```

Indeed, with the `tracer` help it is easy to see this function is called each time we query the X\$KSMLRU table.

Here we see a references to the `ksmsplu_sp()` and `ksmsplu_jp()` functions, each of them call the `ksmsplu()` finally. At the end of the `ksmsplu()` function we see a call to the `memset()`:

Listing 72.11: `ksm.o`

```

...
.text:00434C50 loc_434C50:                                ; DATA XREF: .rdata:off_5E50EA8
.text:00434C50      mov     edx, [ebp-4]
.text:00434C53      mov     [eax], esi
.text:00434C55      mov     esi, [edi]
.text:00434C57      mov     [eax+4], esi
.text:00434C5A      mov     [edi], eax
.text:00434C5C      add     edx, 1
.text:00434C5F      mov     [ebp-4], edx
.text:00434C62      jnz    loc_434B7D
.text:00434C68      mov     ecx, [ebp+14h]
.text:00434C6B      mov     ebx, [ebp-10h]
.text:00434C6E      mov     esi, [ebp-0Ch]
.text:00434C71      mov     edi, [ebp-8]
.text:00434C74      lea    eax, [ecx+8Ch]
.text:00434C7A      push   370h                ; Size
.text:00434C7F      push   0                   ; Val
.text:00434C81      push   eax                 ; Dst
.text:00434C82      call   __intel_fast_memset
.text:00434C87      add     esp, 0Ch
.text:00434C8A      mov     esp, ebp
.text:00434C8C      pop    ebp
.text:00434C8D      retn
.text:00434C8D _ksmsplu      endp

```

Constructions like `memset (block, 0, size)` are often used just to zero memory block. What if we would take a risk, block `memset()` call and see what will happen?

Let's run `tracer` with the following options: set breakpoint at `0x434C7A` (the point where `memset()` arguments are to be passed), thus, that `tracer` set program counter EIP at this point to the point where passed to the `memset()` arguments are to be cleared (at `0x434C8A`) It can be said, we just simulate an unconditional jump from the address `0x434C7A` to `0x434C8A`.

```
tracer -a:oracle.exe bpx=oracle.exe!0x00434C7A,set(eip,0x00434C8A)
```

(Important: all these addresses are valid only for win32-version of Oracle RDBMS 11.2)

Indeed, now we can query X\$KSMLRU table as many times as we want and it is not clearing anymore!

Do not try this at home ("MythBusters") Do not try this on your production servers.

It is probably not a very useful or desired system behaviour, but as an experiment of locating piece of code we need, that is perfectly suit our needs!

72.3 V\$TIMER table in Oracle RDBMS

V\$TIMER is another *fixed view*, reflecting a rapidly changing value:

V\$TIMER displays the elapsed time in hundredths of a second. Time is measured since the beginning of the epoch, which is operating system specific, and wraps around to 0 again whenever the value overflows four bytes (roughly 497 days).

(From Oracle RDBMS documentation ⁵)

It is interesting the periods are different for Oracle for win32 and for Linux. Will we able to find a function generating this value?

As we can see, this information is finally taken from X\$KSUTM table.

```
SQL> select * from V$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION where view_name='V$TIMER';

VIEW_NAME
-----
VIEW_DEFINITION
-----

V$TIMER
select HSECS from GV$TIMER where inst_id = USERENV('Instance')

SQL> select * from V$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION where view_name='GV$TIMER';

VIEW_NAME
-----
VIEW_DEFINITION
-----

GV$TIMER
select inst_id,ksutmtim from x$ksutm
```

Now we stuck in a small problem, there are no references to value generating function(s) in the tables kqftab/kqftap:

Listing 72.12: Result of oracle tables

```
kqftab_element.name: [X$KSUTM] ?: [ksutm] 0x1 0x4 0x4 0x0 0xffffc09b 0x3
kqftap_param.name=[ADDR] ?: 0x10917 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INDX] ?: 0x20b02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INST_ID] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSUTMTIM] ?: 0x1302 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x1e
kqftap_element.fn1=NULL
kqftap_element.fn2=NULL
```

Let's try to find a string KSUTMTIM, and we find it in this function:

```
kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c proc near          ; DATA XREF: .rodata:0805B4E8

arg_0          = dword ptr  8
arg_8          = dword ptr 10h
arg_C          = dword ptr 14h

                push    ebp
                mov     ebp, esp
                push    [ebp+arg_C]
                push    offset ksugtm
                push    offset _2__STRING_1263_0 ; "KSUTMTIM"
                push    [ebp+arg_8]
                push    [ebp+arg_0]
                call   kqfd_cfui_drain
                add    esp, 14h
                mov    esp, ebp
                pop    ebp
                retn

kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c endp
```

The function kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c() is mentioned in kqfd_tab_registry_0 table:

```
dd offset _2__STRING_62_0 ; "X$KSUTM"
dd offset kqfd_OPN_ksutm_c
```

⁵http://docs.oracle.com/cd/B28359_01/server.111/b28320/dynviews_3104.htm

```
dd offset kqfd_tabl_fetch
dd 0
dd 0
dd offset kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c
```

There are is a function ksugtm() referenced here. Let's see what's in it (Linux x86):

Listing 72.13: ksu.o

```
ksugtm      proc near
var_1C      = byte ptr -1Ch
arg_4       = dword ptr  0Ch

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        sub     esp, 1Ch
        lea    eax, [ebp+var_1C]
        push    eax
        call   slgcs
        pop     ecx
        mov     edx, [ebp+arg_4]
        mov     [edx], eax
        mov     eax, 4
        mov     esp, ebp
        pop     ebp
        retn
ksugtm      endp
```

Almost the same code in win32-version.

Is this the function we are looking for? Let's see:

```
tracer -a:oracle.exe bpf=oracle.exe!_ksugtm,args:2,dump_args:0x4
```

Let's try again:

```
SQL> select * from V$TIMER;

   HSECS
-----
 27294929

SQL> select * from V$TIMER;

   HSECS
-----
 27295006

SQL> select * from V$TIMER;

   HSECS
-----
 27295167
```

Listing 72.14: tracer output

```
TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm (0x0, 0xd76c5f0) (called from oracle.exe!__VInfreq__qerfxFetch↵
↳ +0xfad (0x56bb6d5))
Argument 2/2
0D76C5F0: 38 C9                                "8."
TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm () -> 0x4 (0x4)
Argument 2/2 difference
00000000: D1 7C A0 01                                ".|.."
TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm (0x0, 0xd76c5f0) (called from oracle.exe!__VInfreq__qerfxFetch↵
↳ +0xfad (0x56bb6d5))
Argument 2/2
0D76C5F0: 38 C9                                "8."
TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm () -> 0x4 (0x4)
Argument 2/2 difference
00000000: 1E 7D A0 01                                ".}.."
TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm (0x0, 0xd76c5f0) (called from oracle.exe!__VInfreq__qerfxFetch↵
↳ +0xfad (0x56bb6d5))
```

Argument 2/2 0D76C5F0: 38 C9	"8.	"
TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm () -> 0x4 (0x4)		
Argument 2/2 difference 00000000: BF 7D A0 01	".}..	"

Indeed – the value is the same we see in SQL*Plus and it is returning via second argument.

Let's see what is in `slgcs()` (Linux x86):

```
slgcs      proc near
var_4     = dword ptr -4
arg_0     = dword ptr 8

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        push    esi
        mov     [ebp+var_4], ebx
        mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
        call   $+5
        pop     ebx
        nop                    ; PIC mode
        mov     ebx, offset _GLOBAL_OFFSET_TABLE_
        mov     dword ptr [eax], 0
        call   sltrgtime64     ; PIC mode
        push    0
        push    0Ah
        push    edx
        push    eax
        call   __udivdi3       ; PIC mode
        mov     ebx, [ebp+var_4]
        add     esp, 10h
        mov     esp, ebp
        pop     ebp
        retn
slgcs     endp
```

(it is just a call to `sltrgtime64()` and division of its result by 10 (16.3))

And win32-version:

```
_slgcs    proc near                ; CODE XREF: _dbgefghHtElResetCount+15
                                                ; _dbgerRunActions+1528
        db     66h
        nop
        push   ebp
        mov    ebp, esp
        mov    eax, [ebp+8]
        mov    dword ptr [eax], 0
        call   ds:__imp_GetTickCount@0 ; GetTickCount()
        mov    edx, eax
        mov    eax, 0CCCCCDh
        mul   edx
        shr   edx, 3
        mov    eax, edx
        mov    esp, ebp
        pop   ebp
        retn
_slgcs    endp
```

It is just result of `GetTickCount()` ⁶ divided by 10 (16.3).

Voilà! That's why win32-version and Linux x86 version show different results, just because they are generated by different OS functions.

Drain apparently means *connecting* specific table column to specific function.

I added the table `kqfd_tab_registry_0` to oracle tables⁷, now we can see, how table column's variables are *connected* to specific functions:

[X\$KSUTM]	[kqfd_OPN_ksutm_c]	[kqfd_tab1_fetch]	[NULL]	[NULL]	[kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c]
[X\$KSUSGIF]	[kqfd_OPN_ksusg_c]	[kqfd_tab1_fetch]	[NULL]	[NULL]	[kqfd_DRN_ksusg_c]

⁶[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724408\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms724408(v=vs.85).aspx)

⁷http://yurichev.com/oracle_tables.html

OPN, apparently, *open*, and *DRN*, apparently, meaning *drain*.

Chapter 73

Handwritten assembly code

73.1 EICAR test file

This .COM-file is intended for antivirus testing, it is possible to run in MS-DOS and it will print string: “EICAR-STANDARD-ANTIVIRUS-TEST-FILE!”¹.

Its important property is that it's entirely consisting of printable ASCII-symbols, which, in turn, makes possible to create it in any text editor:

```
X50!P%@AP[4\PZX54(P^)7CC)7}$EICAR-STANDARD-ANTIVIRUS-TEST-FILE!$H+H*
```

Let's decompile it:

```
; initial conditions: SP=0FFFEh, SS:[SP]=0
0100 58          pop     ax
; AX=0, SP=0
0101 35 4F 21   xor     ax, 214Fh
; AX = 214Fh and SP = 0
0104 50          push    ax
; AX = 214Fh, SP = FFFEh and SS:[FFFE] = 214Fh
0105 25 40 41   and     ax, 4140h
; AX = 140h, SP = FFFEh and SS:[FFFE] = 214Fh
0108 50          push    ax
; AX = 140h, SP = FFFCh, SS:[FFFC] = 140h and SS:[FFFE] = 214Fh
0109 5B          pop     bx
; AX = 140h, BX = 140h, SP = FFFEh and SS:[FFFE] = 214Fh
010A 34 5C      xor     al, 5Ch
; AX = 11Ch, BX = 140h, SP = FFFEh and SS:[FFFE] = 214Fh
010C 50          push    ax
010D 5A          pop     dx
; AX = 11Ch, BX = 140h, DX = 11Ch, SP = FFFEh and SS:[FFFE] = 214Fh
010E 58          pop     ax
; AX = 214Fh, BX = 140h, DX = 11Ch and SP = 0
010F 35 34 28   xor     ax, 2834h
; AX = 97Bh, BX = 140h, DX = 11Ch and SP = 0
0112 50          push    ax
0113 5E          pop     si
; AX = 97Bh, BX = 140h, DX = 11Ch, SI = 97Bh and SP = 0
0114 29 37      sub     [bx], si
0116 43          inc     bx
0117 43          inc     bx
0118 29 37      sub     [bx], si
011A 7D 24      jge     short near ptr word_10140
011C 45 49 43 ... db 'EICAR-STANDARD-ANTIVIRUS-TEST-FILE!$'
0140 48 2B      word_10140 dw 2B48h ; CD 21 (INT 21) will be here
0142 48 2A      dw 2A48h ; CD 20 (INT 20) will be here
0144 0D          db 0Dh
0145 0A          db 0Ah
```

I added comments about registers and stack after each instruction.

Essentially, all these instructions are here only to execute this code:

```
B4 09      MOV AH, 9
BA 1C 01   MOV DX, 11Ch
CD 21      INT 21h
```

¹https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/EICAR_test_file

CD 20	INT 20h
-------	---------

INT 21h with 9th function (passed in AH) just prints a string, address of which is passed in DS : DX. By the way, the string should be terminated with '\$' sign. Apparently, it's inherited from CP/M and this function was left in DOS for compatibility. INT 20h exits to DOS.

But as we can see, these instruction's opcodes are not strictly printable. So the main part of EICAR-file is:

- preparing register (AH and DX) values we need;
- preparing INT 21 and INT 20 opcodes in memory;
- executing INT 21 and INT 20.

By the way, this technique is widely used in shellcode constructing, when one need to pass x86-code in the string form. Here is also a list of all x86 instructions which has printable opcodes: [A.6.5](#).

Chapter 74

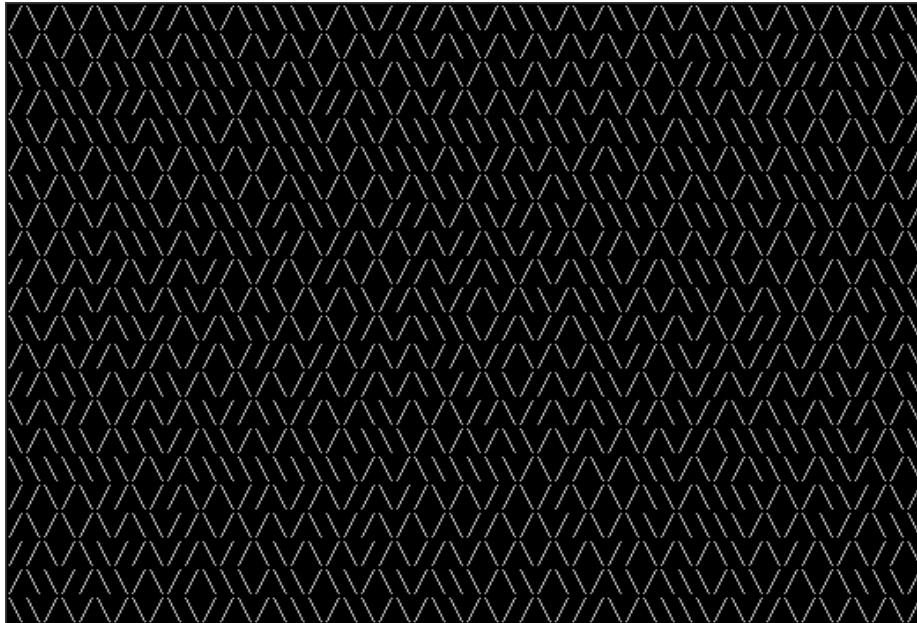
Demos

Demos (or demomaking) was an excellent exercise in mathematics, computer graphics programming and very tight x86 hand coding.

74.1 10 PRINT CHR\$(205.5+RND(1)); : GOTO 10

All examples here are MS-DOS .COM files.

In [al12] we can read about one of the most simplest possible random maze generators. It just prints slash or backslash character randomly and endlessly, resulting something like:



There are some known implementations for 16-bit x86.

74.1.1 Trixter's 42 byte version

The listing taken from his website¹, but comments are mine.

```

00000000: B001      mov     al,1      ; set 40x25 videomode
00000002: CD10      int     010
00000004: 30FF      xor     bh,bh     ; set videopage for int 10h call
00000006: B9D007    mov     cx,007D0 ; 2000 characters to output
00000009: 31C0      xor     ax,ax
0000000B: 9C        pushf           ; push flags
; get random value from timer chip
0000000C: FA        cli           ; disable interrupts
0000000D: E643      out     043,al   ; write 0 to port 43h
; read 16-bit value from port 40h
0000000F: E440      in     al,040
00000011: 88C4      mov     ah,al
00000013: E440      in     al,040

```

¹<http://trixter.oldskool.org/2012/12/17/maze-generation-in-thirteen-bytes/>

```

00000015: 9D          popf                ; enable interrupts by restoring IF flag
00000016: 86C4       xchg               ah,al
; here we have 16-bit pseudorandom value
00000018: D1E8       shr                ax,1
0000001A: D1E8       shr                ax,1
; CF currently have second bit from the value
0000001C: B05C       mov                al,05C ;'\ '
; if CF=1, skip the next instruction
0000001E: 7202       jc                 00000022
; if CF=0, reload AL register with another character
00000020: B02F       mov                al,02F ; '/'
; output character
00000022: B40E       mov                ah,00E
00000024: CD10       int                010
00000026: E2E1       loop               00000009 ; loop 2000 times
00000028: CD20       int                020 ; exit to DOS

```

Pseudo-random value here is in fact the time passed from the system boot, taken from 8253 time chip, the value increases by one 18.2 times per second.

By writing zero to port 43h, we mean the command is "select counter 0", "counter latch", "binary counter" (not BCD² value). Interrupts enabled back with POPF instruction, which restores IF flag as well.

It is not possible to use IN instruction with other registers instead of AL, hence that shuffling.

74.1.2 My attempt to reduce Trixter's version: 27 bytes

We can say that since we use timer not to get precise time value, but pseudo-random one, so we may not spent time (and code) to disable interrupts. Another thing we might say that we need only bit from a low 8-bit part, so let's read only it.

I reduced the code slightly and I've got 27 bytes:

```

00000000: B9D007    mov     cx,007D0 ; limit output to 2000 characters
00000003: 31C0     xor     ax,ax ; command to timer chip
00000005: E643     out     043,al
00000007: E440     in     al,040 ; read 8-bit of timer
00000009: D1E8     shr     ax,1 ; get second bit to CF flag
0000000B: D1E8     shr     ax,1
0000000D: B05C     mov     al,05C ; prepare '\ '
0000000F: 7202     jc     00000013
00000011: B02F     mov     al,02F ; prepare '/'
; output character to screen
00000013: B40E     mov     ah,00E
00000015: CD10     int     010
00000017: E2EA     loop   00000003
; exit to DOS
00000019: CD20     int     020

```

74.1.3 Take a random memory garbage as a source of randomness

Since it is MS-DOS, there are no memory protection at all, we can read from whatever address. Even more than that: simple LODSB instruction will read byte from DS:SI address, but it's not a problem if register values are not setted up, let it read 1) random bytes; 2) from random memory place!

So it is suggested in Trixter webpage³ to use LODSB without any setup.

It is also suggested that SCASB instruction can be used instead, because it sets flag according to the byte it read.

Another idea to minimize code is to use INT 29h DOS syscall, which just prints character stored in AL register.

That is what Peter Ferrie and Andrey "herm1t" Baranovich did (11 and 10 bytes)⁴:

Listing 74.1: Andrey "herm1t" Baranovich: 11 bytes

```

00000000: B05C     mov     al,05C ;'\ '
; read AL byte from random place of memory
00000002: AE       scasb
; PF = parity(AL - random_memory_byte) = parity(5Ch - random_memory_byte)
00000003: 7A02     jp     00000007
00000005: B02F     mov     al,02F ; '/'
00000007: CD29     int     029 ; output AL to screen
00000009: EBF5     jmp    00000000 ; loop endlessly

```

²Binary-coded decimal

³<http://trixter.oldskool.org/2012/12/17/maze-generation-in-thirteen-bytes/>

⁴<http://pferrie.host22.com/misc/10print.htm>

SCASB also use value in AL register, it subtract random memory byte value from 5Ch value in AL. JP is rare instruction, here it used for checking parity flag (PF), which is generated by the formulae in the listing. As a consequence, the output character is determined not by some bit in random memory byte, but by sum of bits, this (hoperfully) makes result more distributed.

It is possible to make this even shorter by using undocumented x86 instruction SALC (AKA SETALC) ("Set AL CF"). It was introduced in NEC V20 CPU and sets AL to 0xFF if CF is 1 or to 0 if otherwise. So this code will not run on 8086/8088.

Listing 74.2: Peter Ferrie: 10 bytes

```

; AL is random at this point
00000000: AE      scasb
; CF is set accoring subtracting random memory byte from AL.
; so it is somewhat random at this point
00000001: D6      setalc
; AL is set to 0xFF if CF=1 or to 0 if otherwise
00000002: 242D   and      al,02D ; '-'
; AL here is 0x2D or 0
00000004: 042F   add      al,02F ; '/'
; AL here is 0x5C or 0x2F
00000006: CD29   int      029      ; output AL to screen
00000008: EBF6   jmps    00000000 ; loop endlessly

```

So it is possible to get rid of conditional jumps at all. The ASCII code of backslash ("\") is 0x5C and 0x2F for slash ("/"). So we need to convert one (pseudo-random) bit in CF flag to 0x5C or 0x2F value.

This is done easily: by AND-ing all bits in AL (where all 8 bits are set or cleared) with 0x2D we have just 0 or 0x2D. By adding 0x2F to this value, we get 0x5C or 0x2F. Then just ouptut it to screen.

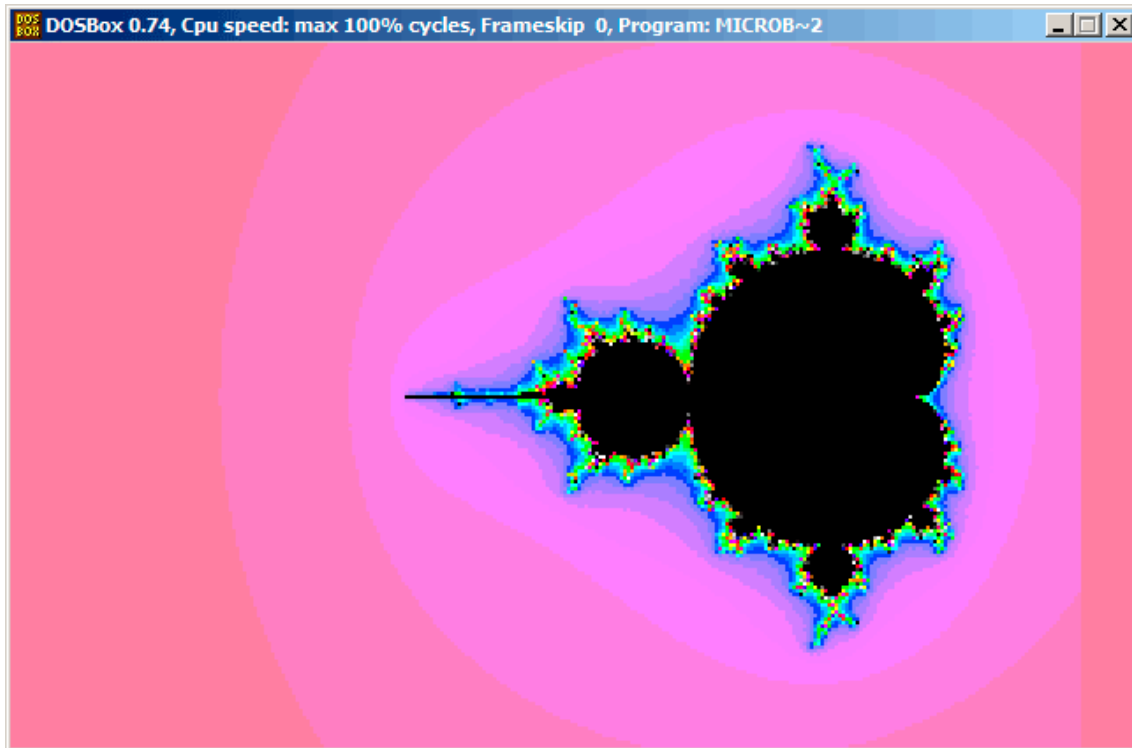
74.1.4 Conclusion

It is also worth adding that result may be different in DOSBox, Windows NT and even MS-DOS, due to different conditions: timer chip may be emulated differently, initial register contents may be different as well.

74.2 Mandelbrot set

Just found a demo⁵ written by “Sir_Lagsalot” in 2009, drawing Mandelbrot set which is just a x86 program with executable file size only 64 bytes. There are only 30 16-bit x86 instructions.

Here it is what it draws:



Let's try to understand, how it works.

⁵Download it [here](#),

74.2.1 Theory

A word about complex numbers

Complex number is a number consisting of two (real (Re) and imaginary (Im) parts).

Complex plane is a two-dimensional plane where any complex number can be placed: real part is one coordinate and imaginary part is another.

Some basic rules we need to know:

- Addition: $(a + bi) + (c + di) = (a + c) + (b + d)i$

In other words:

$$\text{Re}(\text{sum}) = \text{Re}(a) + \text{Re}(b)$$

$$\text{Im}(\text{sum}) = \text{Im}(a) + \text{Im}(b)$$

- Multiplication: $(a + bi)(c + di) = (ac - bd) + (bc + ad)i$

In other words:

$$\text{Re}(\text{product}) = \text{Re}(a) \cdot \text{Re}(c) - \text{Re}(b) \cdot \text{Re}(d)$$

$$\text{Im}(\text{product}) = \text{Im}(b) \cdot \text{Im}(c) + \text{Im}(a) \cdot \text{Im}(d)$$

- Square: $(a + bi)^2 = (a + bi)(a + bi) = (a^2 - b^2) + (2ab)i$

In other words:

$$\text{Re}(\text{square}) = \text{Re}(a)^2 - \text{Im}(a)^2$$

$$\text{Im}(\text{square}) = 2 \cdot \text{Re}(a) \cdot \text{Im}(a)$$

How to draw Mandelbrot set

Mandelbrot set is a set of points for which $z_{n+1} = z_n^2 + c$ (where z and c are complex numbers and c is starting value) recursive sequence is not approach infinity.

In plain English language:

- Enumerate all points on screen.
- Check, if specific point is in Mandelbrot set.
- Here is how to check it:
 - Represent point as complex number.
 - Get square of it.
 - Add starting value of point to it.
 - Goes off limits? Break, if yes.
 - Move point to the new place at coordinates we just calculated.
 - Repeat all this for some reasonable number of iterations.
- Moving point was still in limits? Draw point then.
- Moving point eventually gone off limits?
 - (For black-white image) do not draw anything.
 - (For colored image) transform iterations number to some color. So the color will shows the speed at which point gone off limits.

Here is Pythonesque algorithms I wrote for both complex and integer number representations:

Listing 74.3: For complex numbers

```
def check_if_is_in_set(P):
    P_start=P
    iterations=0

    while True:
        if (P>bounds):
            break
        P=P^2+P_start
        if iterations > max_iterations:
```

```

        break
        iterations++

    return iterations

# black-white
for each point on screen P:
    if check_if_is_in_set (P) < max_iterations:
        draw point

# colored
for each point on screen P:
    iterations = if check_if_is_in_set (P)
    map iterations to color
    draw color point

```

Integer version is where operations on complex numbers are replaced to integer operations according to rules I described above.

Listing 74.4: For integer numbers

```

def check_if_is_in_set(X, Y):
    X_start=X
    Y_start=Y
    iterations=0

    while True:
        if (X^2 + Y^2 > bounds):
            break
        new_X=X^2 - Y^2 + X_start
        new_Y=2*X*Y + Y_start
        if iterations > max_iterations:
            break
        iterations++

    return iterations

# black-white
for X = min_X to max_X:
    for Y = min_Y to max_Y:
        if check_if_is_in_set (X,Y) < max_iterations:
            draw point at X, Y

# colored
for X = min_X to max_X:
    for Y = min_Y to max_Y:
        iterations = if check_if_is_in_set (X,Y)
        map iterations to color
        draw color point at X,Y

```

Here is also C# source I get from Wikipedia article⁶, but I modified it so it prints iteration numbers instead of some symbol⁷:

```

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.Text;

namespace Mnoj
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            double realCoord, imagCoord;
            double realTemp, imagTemp, realTemp2, arg;
            int iterations;
            for (imagCoord = 1.2; imagCoord >= -1.2; imagCoord -= 0.05)
            {

```

⁶<http://goo.gl/KJ9g>

⁷Here is also executable file: http://beginners.re/examples/mandelbrot/dump_iterations.exe


```
for (realCoord = -0.6; realCoord <= 1.77; realCoord += 0.03)
{
    iterations = 0;
    realTemp = realCoord;
    imagTemp = imagCoord;
    arg = (realCoord * realCoord) + (imagCoord * imagCoord);
    while ((arg < 2*2) && (iterations < 40))
    {
        realTemp2 = (realTemp * realTemp) - (imagTemp * imagTemp) - realCoord;
        imagTemp = (2 * realTemp * imagTemp) - imagCoord;
        realTemp = realTemp2;
        arg = (realTemp * realTemp) + (imagTemp * imagTemp);
        iterations += 1;
    }
    Console.WriteLine("{0,2:D} ", iterations);
}
Console.WriteLine("\n");
}
Console.ReadKey();
}
}
```

Here is resulting file, which is too wide to include it here:

<http://beginners.re/examples/mandelbrot/result.txt>.

Maximal iteration number is 40, so when you see 40 in this dump, this mean this point was wandering 40 iterations but never gone off limits. Number n less then 40 mean that point remaining inside bounds only for n iterations, then it gone outside it.

There is a cool demo available at <http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/MandelbrotSetDoodle/>, it shows visually how the point is moving on plane on each iteration at some specific point. I made two screenshots.

First, I clicked inside yellow area and we see that trajectory (green lines) is eventually swirled at some point inside:

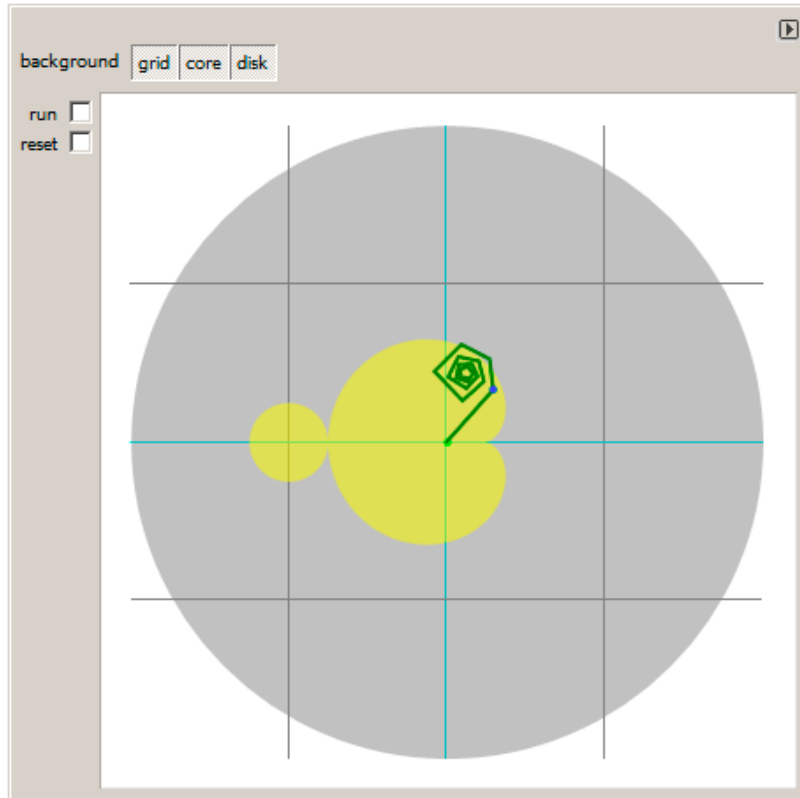


Figure 74.1: I clicked inside yellow area

This mean, the point I clicked belongs to Mandelbrot set.

Then I clicked outside yellow area and we see much more chaotic point movement, which is quickly goes off bounds:

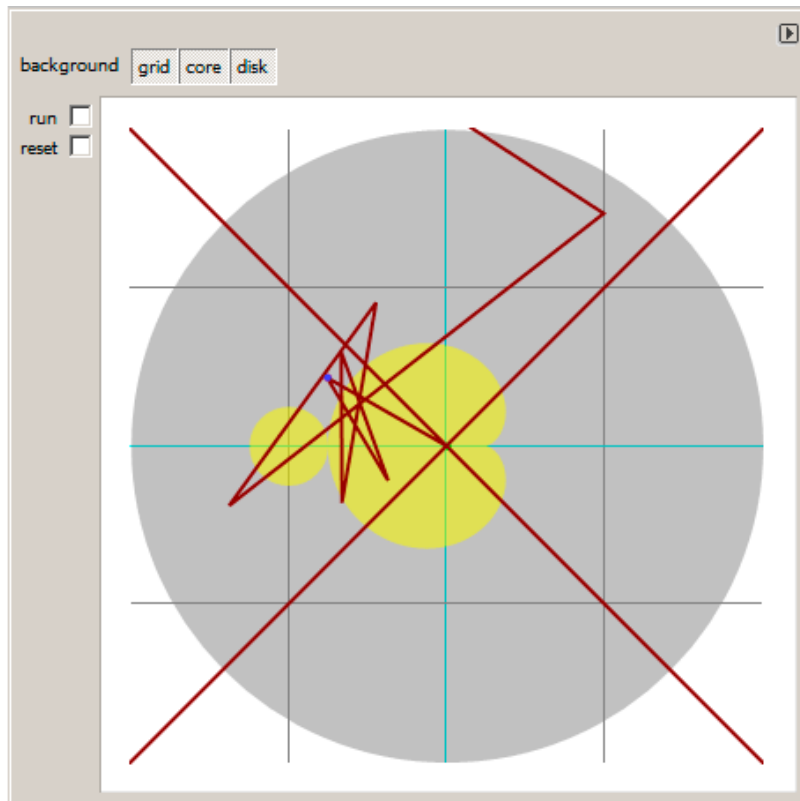


Figure 74.2: I clicked outside yellow area

This mean the point not belongs to Mandelbrot set.

Another good demo there is: <http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/IteratesForTheMandelbrotSet/>.

74.2.2 Let's back to the demo

The demo, although very tiny (just 64 bytes or 30 instructions), implements the common algorithm I described here, but using some coding tricks.

Source code is easily downloadable, so I got it, but I also added my comments:

Listing 74.5: Commented source code

```

1 ; X is column on screen
2 ; Y is row on screen
3
4
5 ; X=0, Y=0          X=319, Y=0
6 ; +----->
7 ; |
8 ; |
9 ; |
10 ; |
11 ; |
12 ; |
13 ; v
14 ; X=0, Y=199      X=319, Y=199
15
16
17 ; switch to VGA 320*200*256 graphics mode
18 mov al,13h
19 int 10h
20 ; initial BX is 0
21 ; initial DI is 0xFFFFE
22 ; DS:BX (or DS:0) is pointing to Program Segment Prefix at this moment
23 ; first 4 bytes of which are CD 20 FF 9F
24 les ax,[bx]
25 ; ES:AX=9FFF:20CD
26
27 FillLoop:
28 ; set DX to 0. CWD works as: DX:AX = sign_extend(AX).
29 ; AX here 0x20CD (at startup) or less then 320 (when getting back after loop),
30 ; so DX will always be 0.
31 cwd
32 mov ax,di
33 ; AX is current pointer within VGA buffer
34 ; divide current pointer by 320
35 mov cx,320
36 div cx
37 ; DX (start_X) - remainder (column: 0..319); AX - result (row: 0..199)
38 sub ax,100
39 ; AX=AX-100, so AX (start_Y) now is in rage -100..99
40 ; DX is in range 0..319 or 0x0000..0x013F
41 dec dh
42 ; DX now is in range 0xFF00..0x003F (-256..63)
43
44 xor bx,bx
45 xor si,si
46 ; BX (temp_X)=0; SI (temp_Y)=0
47
48 ; get number of iterations
49 ; CX is still 320 here, so this is also maximal number of iteration
50 MandelLoop:
51 mov bp,si ; BP = temp_Y
52 imul si,bx ; SI = temp_X*temp_Y
53 add si,si ; SI = SI*2 = (temp_X*temp_Y)*2
54 imul bx,bx ; BX = BX^2 = temp_X^2
55 jo MandelBreak ; overflow?
56 imul bp,bp ; BP = BP^2 = temp_Y^2
57 jo MandelBreak ; overflow?
58 add bx,bp ; BX = BX+BP = temp_X^2 + temp_Y^2
59 jo MandelBreak ; overflow?
60 sub bx,bp ; BX = BX-BP = temp_X^2 + temp_Y^2 - temp_Y^2 = temp_X^2
61 sub bx,bp ; BX = BX-BP = temp_X^2 - temp_Y^2
62
63 ; correct scale:

```

```

64 sar bx,6      ; BX=BX/64
65 add bx,dx    ; BX=BX+start_X
66 ; now temp_X = temp_X^2 - temp_Y^2 + start_X
67 sar si,6     ; SI=SI/64
68 add si,ax    ; SI=SI+start_Y
69 ; now temp_Y = (temp_X*temp_Y)*2 + start_Y
70
71 loop MandelLoop
72
73 MandelBreak:
74 ; CX=iterations
75 xchg ax,cx
76 ; AX=iterations. store AL to VGA buffer at ES:[DI]
77 stosb
78 ; stosb also increments DI, so DI now points to the next point in VGA buffer
79 ; jump always, so this is eternal loop here
80 jmp FillLoop

```

Algorithm:

- Switch to 320*200 VGA video mode, 256 colors. $320 * 200 = 64000$ (0xFA00). Each pixel encoded by one byte, so the buffer size is 0xFA00 bytes. It is addressed as ES:DI registers pairs.

ES should be 0xA000 here, because this is segment address of VGA video buffer, but storing 0xA000 to ES requires at least 4 bytes (PUSH 0A000h / POP ES). Read more about 16-bit MS-DOS memory model: [84](#).

Assuming, BX is zero here, and Program Segment Prefix is at zeroth address, 2-byte LES AX, [BX] instruction will store 0x20CD to AX and 0x9FFF to ES. So, the program will start to draw 16 pixels or bytes before actual video buffer. But this is MS-DOS, there are no memory protection, so nothing will crash. That's why you see red strip of 16 pixels width at right. Whole picture is shifted left by 16 pixels. This is the price of 2 bytes saving.

- Eternal loop processing each pixel. Probably, most common way to enumerate all pixels on screen is two loops: one for X-coordinate, another for Y-coordinate. But then you'll need to multiply coordinates to find a byte in VGA video buffer. Author of this demo decide to do it otherwise: enumerate all bytes in video buffer by one single loop instead of two, and get coordinates of current point using division. Resulting coordinates are: X in range of $-100..99$ and Y in range of $-256..63$. You may see on screenshot that picture is somewhat shifted to the right part of screen. That's because the biggest heart-shaped black hole is usually drawn on coordinates 0,0 and these are shifted here to right. Could author just subtract 160 from value to get X in range of $-160..159$? Yes, but instruction SUB DX, 160 takes 4 bytes, while DEC DH-2 bytes (which subtracts 0x100 (256) from DX). So the whole picture shifted is the cost of another 2 bytes of saved space.
 - Check, if the current point is inside Mandelbrot set. The algorithm is the same I described.
 - The loop is organized used LOOP instructions which use CX register as counter. Author could set iteration number to some specific number, but he didn't: 320 is already in CX (was set at line 35), and this is good maximal iteration number anyway. We save here some space by not reloading CX register with other value.
 - IMUL is used here instead of MUL, because we work with signed values: remember that 0,0 coordinates should be somewhere near screen center. The same thing about SAR (arithmetic shift for signed values): it's used instead of SHR.
 - Another idea is to simplify bounds check. We would need to check coordinate pair, i.e., two variables. What author does is just checks thrice for overflow: two square operations and one addition. Indeed, we use 16-bit registers, which holds signed values in range of $-32768..32767$, so if any of coordinate is greater than 32767 during signed multiplication, this point is definitely out of bounds: we jump to MandelBreak label.
 - There are also division by 64 (SAR instruction). 64 sets scale. Try to increase value and you will get closer look, or to decrease to more distant look.
- We are at MandelBreak label, there are two ways of getting here: loop ended with CX=0 (point is inside Mandelbrot set); or because overflow was happened (CX still holds some value). Now we write low 8-bit part of CX (CL) to the video buffer. Default palette is rough, nevertheless, 0 is black: hence we see black holes in places where points are in Mandelbrot set. Palette can be initialized at program start, but remember, that's only 64 bytes program!
- Program is running in eternal loop, because additional check where to stop, or user interface is additional instructions.

Some other optimization tricks:

- 1-byte CWD is used here for clearing DX instead of 2-byte XOR DX, DX or even 3-byte MOV DX, 0.
- 1-byte XCHG AX, CX is used instead of 2-byte MOV AX, CX. Current AX value is not needed here anyway.

- DI (position in video buffer) is not initialized, and it is 0xFFFFE at start⁸. That's OK, because the program works for all DI in range of 0..0xFFFF eternally, and user will not notice it was started off the screen (last pixel of 320*200 video buffer is at the address 0xF9FF). So some work is actually done off the limits of screen. Otherwise, you'll need additional instructions to set DI to 0; check for video buffer end.

74.2.3 My “fixed” version

Listing 74.6: My “fixed” version

```

1  org 100h
2  mov al,13h
3  int 10h
4
5  ; set palette
6  mov dx, 3c8h
7  mov al, 0
8  out dx, al
9  mov cx, 100h
10 inc dx
11 l00:
12 mov al, cl
13 shl ax, 2
14 out dx, al ; red
15 out dx, al ; green
16 out dx, al ; blue
17 loop l00
18
19 push 0a000h
20 pop es
21
22 xor di, di
23
24 FillLoop:
25 cwd
26 mov ax,di
27 mov cx,320
28 div cx
29 sub ax,100
30 sub dx,160
31
32 xor bx,bx
33 xor si,si
34
35 MandelLoop:
36 mov bp,si
37 imul si,bx
38 add si,si
39 imul bx,bx
40 jo MandelBreak
41 imul bp,bp
42 jo MandelBreak
43 add bx,bp
44 jo MandelBreak
45 sub bx,bp
46 sub bx,bp
47
48 sar bx,6
49 add bx,dx
50 sar si,6
51 add si,ax
52
53 loop MandelLoop
54
55 MandelBreak:
56 xchg ax,cx
57 stosb
58 cmp di, 0FA00h

```

⁸More information about initial register values: <https://code.google.com/p/corkami/wiki/InitialValues#DOS>

```

59  jb FillLoop
60
61  ; wait for keypress
62  xor ax,ax
63  int 16h
64  ; set text video mode
65  mov ax, 3
66  int 10h
67  ; exit
68  int 20h

```

I made attempt to fix all these oddities: now palette is smooth grayscale, video buffer is at correct place (lines 19..20), picture is drawing on center of screen (line 30), program eventually ends and waiting for user keypress (lines 58..68). But now it's much bigger: 105 bytes (or 54 instructions)⁹.

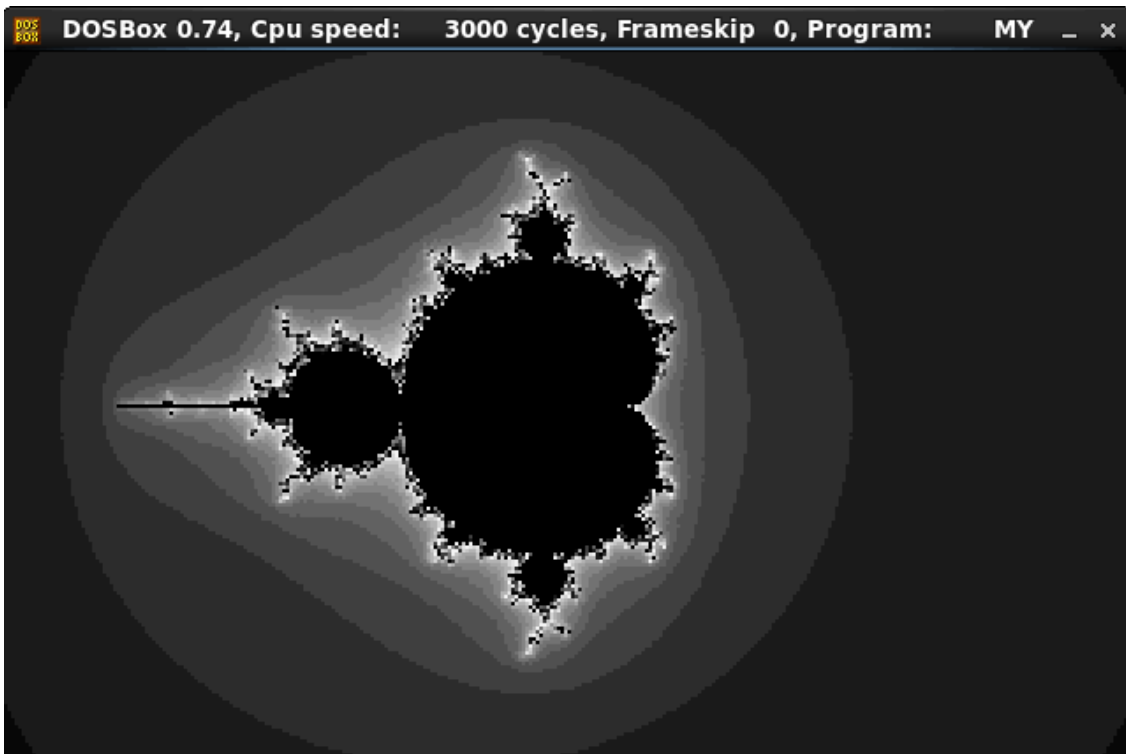


Figure 74.3: My “fixed” version

⁹You can experiment by yourself: get DosBox and NASM and compile it as: `nasm fiole.asm -fbin -o file.com`

Part VII

Examples of reversing proprietary file formats

Chapter 75

Millenium game save file

The “Millenium Return to Earth” is an ancient DOS game (1991), allowing to mine resources, build ships, equip them to other planets, and so on¹.

Like many other games, it allows to save all game state into file.
Let's see, if we can find something in it.

¹It can be downloaded for free [here](#)

So there is a mine in the game. Mines at some planets work faster, or slower on another. Resource set is also different. Here I see what resources are mined at the time:



Figure 75.1: Mine: state 1

I save a game state. This is a file of size 9538 bytes.

I wait some “days” here in game, and now we’ve got more resources at the mine:

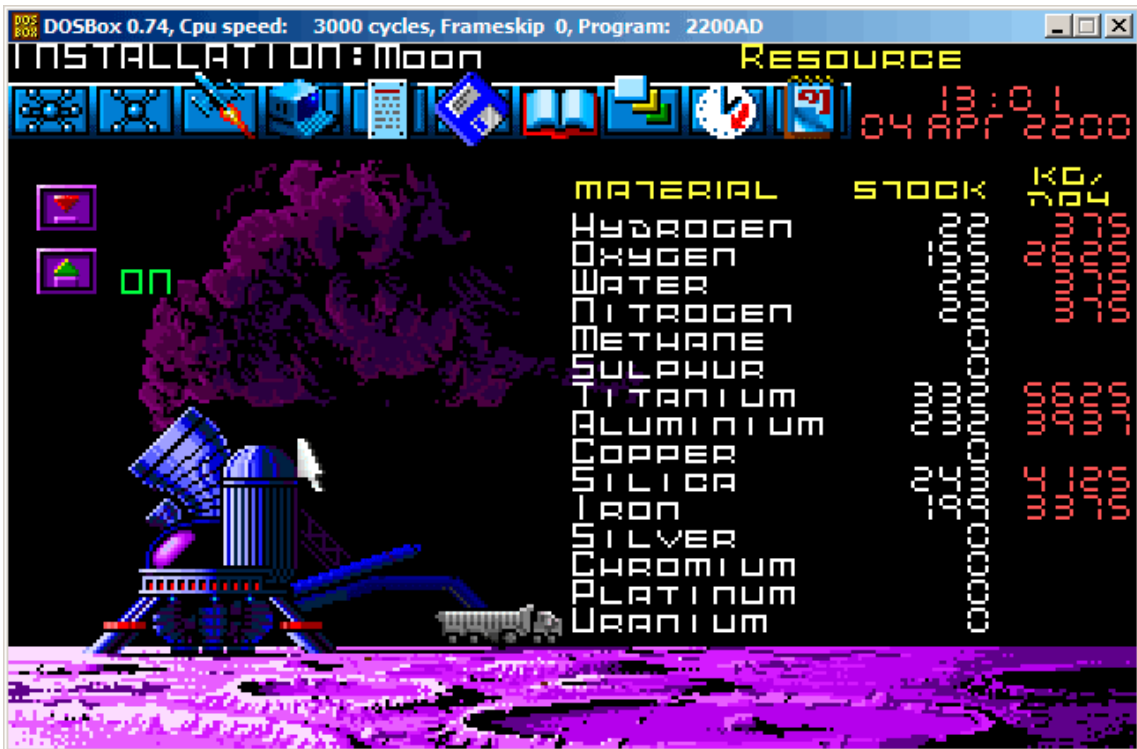


Figure 75.2: Mine: state 2

I saved game state again.

Now let’s try just to do binary comparison of the save files using simple DOS/Windows FC utility:

```
...> FC /b 2200save.i.v1 2200SAVE.I.V2
Comparing files 2200save.i.v1 and 2200SAVE.I.V2
```

```
00000016: 0D 04
00000017: 03 04
0000001C: 1F 1E
00000146: 27 3B
00000BDA: 0E 16
00000BDC: 66 9B
00000BDE: 0E 16
00000BE0: 0E 16
00000BE6: DB 4C
00000BE7: 00 01
00000BE8: 99 E8
00000BEC: A1 F3
00000BEE: 83 C7
00000BFB: A8 28
00000BFD: 98 18
00000BFF: A8 28
00000C01: A8 28
00000C07: D8 58
00000C09: E4 A4
00000C0D: 38 B8
00000C0F: E8 68
...
```

The output is unfull here, there are more differences, but I cut result to the most interesting.

At first state, I have 14 “units” of hydrogen and 102 “units” of oxygen. I have 22 and 155 “units” respectively at the second state. If these values are saved into save-file, we should see this in difference. And indeed so. There are 0x0E (14) at 0xBDE position and this value is 0x16 (22) in new version of file. This could be for hydrogen. There is 0x66 (102) at position 0xBDC in old version and 0x9B (155) in new version of file. This could be for oxygen.

There both of files I put on my website for those who wants to inspect them (or experiment) more: http://beginners.re/examples/millennium_DOS_game/.

Here is a new version of file opened in Hiew, I marked values related to resources mined in the game:

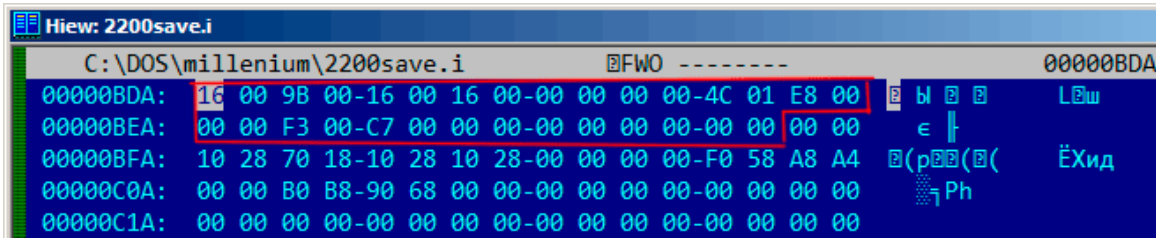


Figure 75.3: Hiew: state 1

I checked each, and these are. These are clearly 16-bit values: not a strange thing for DOS 16-bit software where *int* has 16-bit width.

Let's check our assumptions. I'm writing 1234 (0x4D2) value at first position (this should be hydrogen):

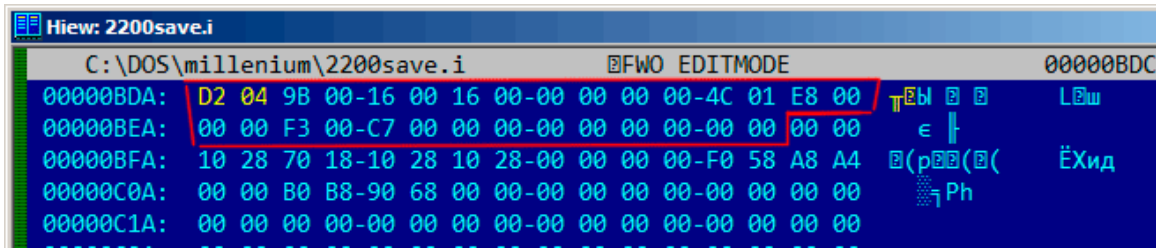


Figure 75.4: Hiew: let's write 1234 (0x4D2) there

Then I loaded changed file into game and taking a look on mine statistics:



Figure 75.5: Let's check for hydrogen value

So yes, this is it.

Now let's try to finish the game as soon as possible, set maximal values everywhere:

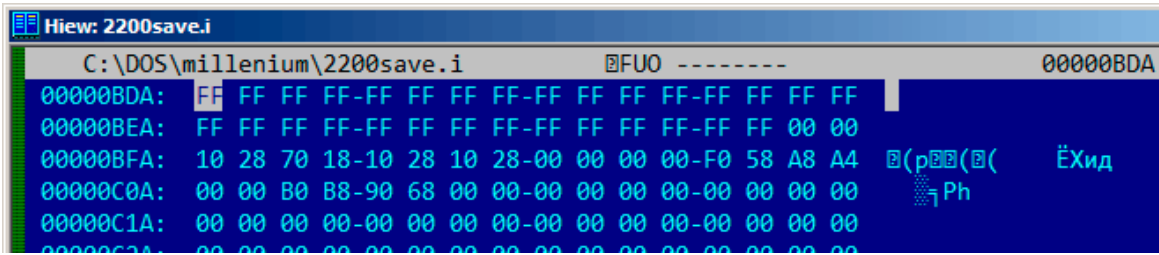


Figure 75.6: Hiew: let's set maximal values

0xFFFF is 65535, so yes, we now have a lot of resources:



Figure 75.7: All resources are 65535 (0xFFFF) indeed

I skipped some “days” in game and oops! I have lower amount of some resources:



Figure 75.8: Resource variables overflow

That’s just overflow. Game developer probably didn’t thought about such high amounts of resources, so there are probably no overflow check, but mine is “working” in the games, resources are added, hence overflow. I shouldn’t be that greedy, I suppose.

There are probably a lot of more values saved in this file.

So this is very simple method of cheating in games. High score files are often can be easily patched like that.

Chapter 76

Oracle RDBMS: .SYM-files

When Oracle RDBMS process experiencing some kind of crash, it writes a lot of information into log files, including stack trace, like:

----- Call Stack Trace -----			
calling location	call type	entry point	argument values in hex (? means dubious value)
-----	-----	-----	-----
_kqvrow()		00000000	
_opifch2()+2729	CALLptr	00000000	23D4B914 E47F264 1F19AE2 EB1C8A8 1
_kpoal8()+2832	CALLrel	_opifch2()	89 5 EB1CC74
_opiodr()+1248	CALLreg	00000000	5E 1C EB1F0A0
_ttcpip()+1051	CALLreg	00000000	5E 1C EB1F0A0 0
_opitsk()+1404	CALL???	00000000	C96C040 5E EB1F0A0 0 EB1ED30 EB1F1CC 53E52E 0 EB1F1F8
_opiino()+980	CALLrel	_opitsk()	0 0
_opiodr()+1248	CALLreg	00000000	3C 4 EB1FBF4
_opidrv()+1201	CALLrel	_opiodr()	3C 4 EB1FBF4 0
_sou2o()+55	CALLrel	_opidrv()	3C 4 EB1FBF4
_opimai_real()+124	CALLrel	_sou2o()	EB1FC04 3C 4 EB1FBF4
_opimai()+125	CALLrel	_opimai_real()	2 EB1FC2C
_OracleThreadStart@ 4()+830	CALLrel	_opimai()	2 EB1FF6C 7C88A7F4 EB1FC34 0 EB1FD04
77E6481C	CALLreg	00000000	E41FF9C 0 0 E41FF9C 0 EB1FFC4
00000000	CALL???	00000000	

But of course, Oracle RDBMS executables must have some kind of debug information or map files with symbol information included or something like that.

Windows NT Oracle RDBMS have symbol information in files with .SYM extension, but the format is proprietary. (Plain text files are good, but needs additional parsing, hence offer slower access.)

Let's see if we can understand its format. I chose shortest orawtc8.sym file, coming with orawtc8.dll file in Oracle 8.1.7¹.

¹I chose ancient Oracle RDBMS version intentionally due to smaller size of its modules

I marked OSYM signatures and strings here:

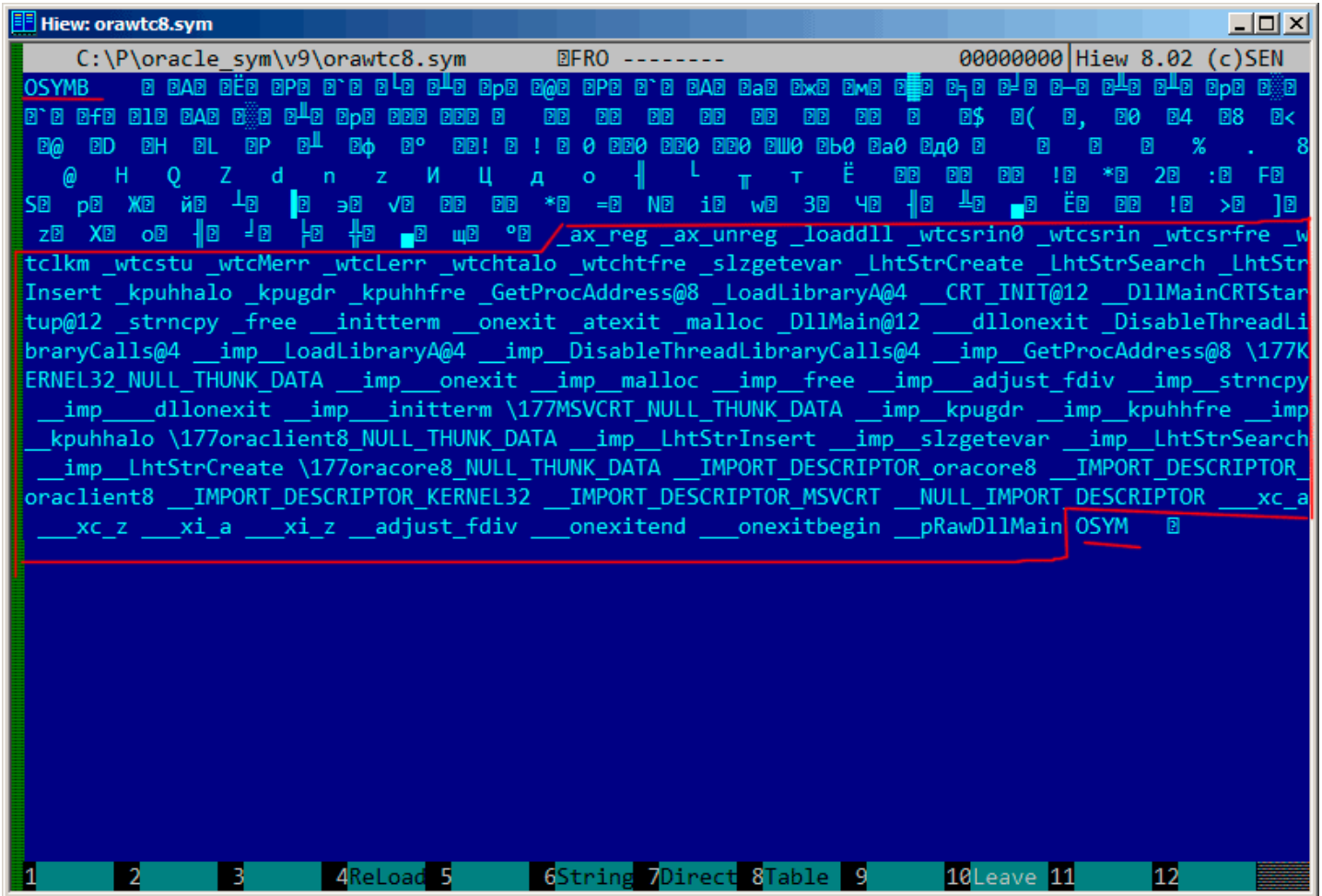


Figure 76.2: OSYM signature and text strings

Well, let's see. In Hiew, I marked the whole strings block (except trailing OSYM signatures) and put it into separate file. Then I run UNIX *strings* and *wc* utilities to count strings in there:

```
strings strings_block | wc -l
66
```

So there are 66 text strings. Please note that number.

We can say, in general, as a rule, number of *anything* is often stored separately in binary files. It's indeed so, we can find 66 value (0x42) at the file begin, right after OSYM signature:

```
$ hexdump -C orawtc8.sym
00000000 4f 53 59 4d 42 00 00 00 00 10 00 10 80 10 00 10 |OSYMB.....|
00000010 f0 10 00 10 50 11 00 10 60 11 00 10 c0 11 00 10 |....P...`.....|
00000020 d0 11 00 10 70 13 00 10 40 15 00 10 50 15 00 10 |....p...@...P...|
00000030 60 15 00 10 80 15 00 10 a0 15 00 10 a6 15 00 10 |`.....|
....
```

Of course, 0x42 here is not a byte, but most likely a 32-bit value, packed as little-endian, hence we see 0x42 and then at least 3 zero bytes.

Why I think it's 32-bit? Because, Oracle RDBMS symbol files may be pretty big. The oracle.sym for the main oracle.exe (version 10.2.0.4) executable contain 0x3A38E (238478) symbols. 16-bit value isn't enough here.

I checked other .SYM files like this and it proves my guess: the value after 32-bit OSYM signature is always reflects number of text strings in the file.

It's a general feature of almost all binary files: header with signature plus some other information about file.

Now let's investigate closer what this binary block is. Using Hiew again, I put the block starting at address 8 (i.e., after 32-bit *count* value) till strings block into separate binary file.

Let's see the binary block in Hiew:

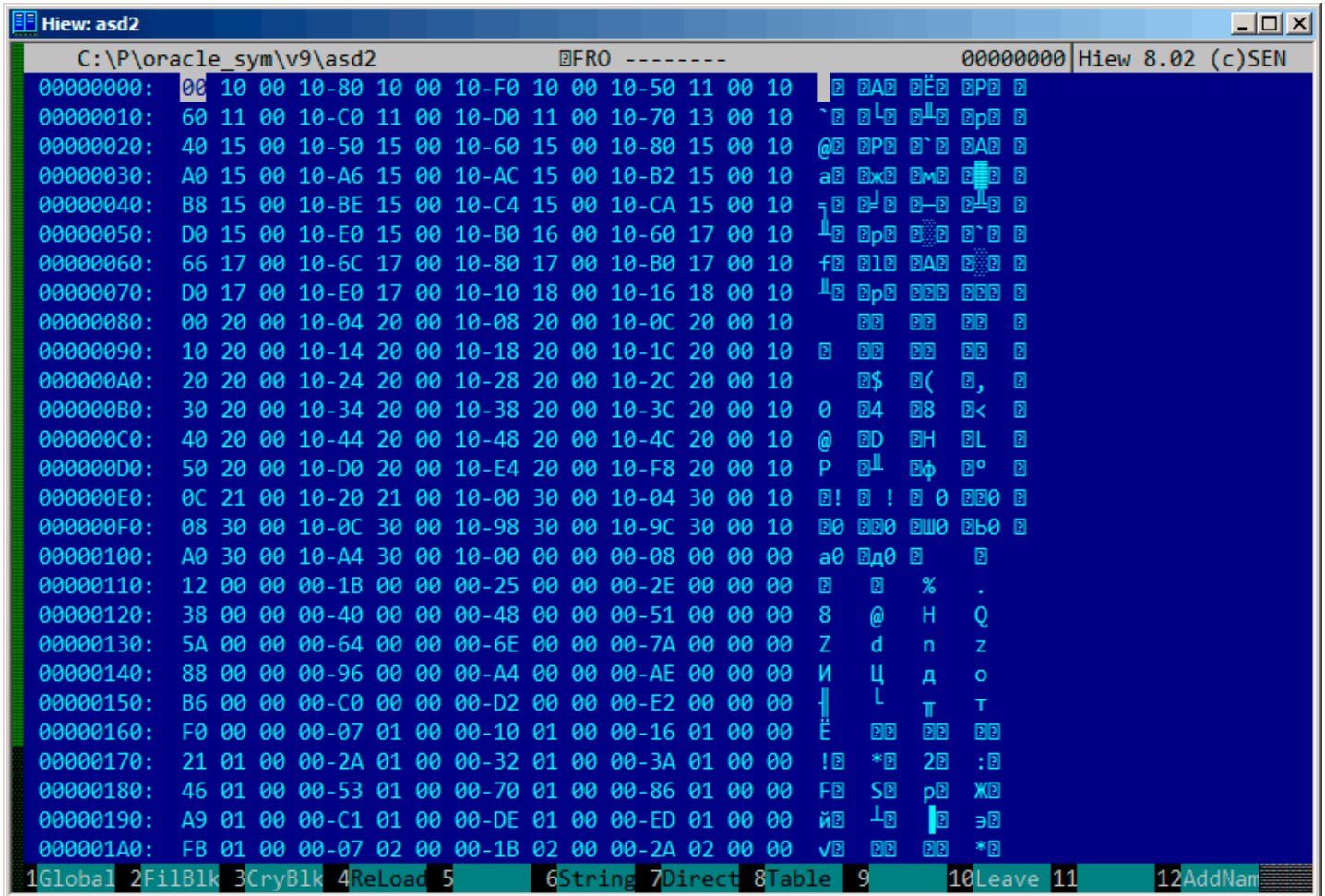


Figure 76.3: Binary block

There is some clear pattern in it.

I added red lines to divide the block:

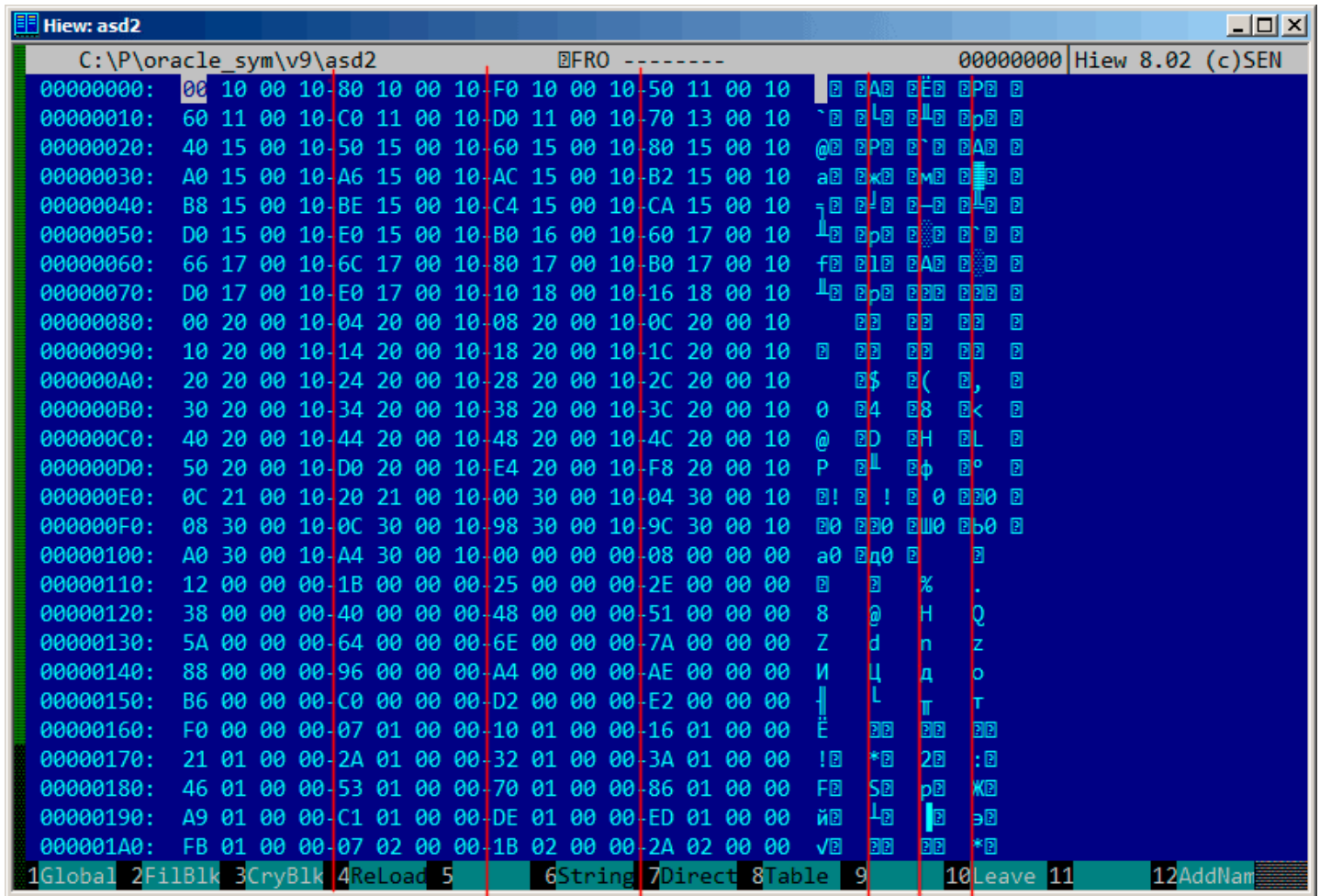


Figure 76.4: Binary block patterns

Hiew, like almost any other hexadecimal editor, shows 16 bytes per line. So the pattern is clearly visible: there are 4 32-bit values per line.

The pattern is visually visible because some values here (till address 0x104) are always in 0x1000xxxx form, so started by 0x10 and 0 bytes. Other values (starting at 0x108) are in 0x0000xxxx form, so always started by two zero bytes.

Let's dump the block as 32-bit values array:

Listing 76.1: first column is address

```
$ od -v -t x4 binary_block
0000000 10001000 10001080 100010f0 10001150
0000020 10001160 100011c0 100011d0 10001370
0000040 10001540 10001550 10001560 10001580
0000060 100015a0 100015a6 100015ac 100015b2
0000100 100015b8 100015be 100015c4 100015ca
0000120 100015d0 100015e0 100016b0 10001760
0000140 10001766 1000176c 10001780 100017b0
0000160 100017d0 100017e0 10001810 10001816
0000200 10002000 10002004 10002008 1000200c
0000220 10002010 10002014 10002018 1000201c
0000240 10002020 10002024 10002028 1000202c
0000260 10002030 10002034 10002038 1000203c
0000300 10002040 10002044 10002048 1000204c
0000320 10002050 100020d0 100020e4 100020f8
0000340 1000210c 10002120 10003000 10003004
0000360 10003008 1000300c 10003098 1000309c
0000400 100030a0 100030a4 00000000 00000008
0000420 00000012 0000001b 00000025 0000002e
0000440 00000038 00000040 00000048 00000051
0000460 0000005a 00000064 0000006e 0000007a
0000500 00000088 00000096 000000a4 000000ae
0000520 000000b6 000000c0 000000d2 000000e2
```

```

0000540 000000f0 00000107 00000110 00000116
0000560 00000121 0000012a 00000132 0000013a
0000600 00000146 00000153 00000170 00000186
0000620 000001a9 000001c1 000001de 000001ed
0000640 000001fb 00000207 0000021b 0000022a
0000660 0000023d 0000024e 00000269 00000277
0000700 00000287 00000297 000002b6 000002ca
0000720 000002dc 000002f0 00000304 00000321
0000740 0000033e 0000035d 0000037a 00000395
0000760 000003ae 000003b6 000003be 000003c6
0001000 000003ce 000003dc 000003e9 000003f8
0001020

```

There are 132 values, that's 66*2. Probably, there are two 32-bit values for each symbol, but maybe there are two arrays? Let's see.

Values started with 0x1000 may be addresses. This is .SYM file for DLL after all, and, default base address of win32 DLLs is 0x10000000, and the code is usually started at 0x10001000.

When I open orawtc8.dll file in IDA, base address is different, but nevertheless, the first function is:

```

.text:60351000 sub_60351000    proc near
.text:60351000
.text:60351000 arg_0      = dword ptr 8
.text:60351000 arg_4      = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:60351000 arg_8      = dword ptr 10h
.text:60351000
.text:60351000         push    ebp
.text:60351001         mov     ebp, esp
.text:60351003         mov     eax, dword_60353014
.text:60351008         cmp     eax, 0FFFFFFFFh
.text:6035100B         jnz     short loc_6035104F
.text:6035100D         mov     ecx, hModule
.text:60351013         xor     eax, eax
.text:60351015         cmp     ecx, 0FFFFFFFFh
.text:60351018         mov     dword_60353014, eax
.text:6035101D         jnz     short loc_60351031
.text:6035101F         call   sub_603510F0
.text:60351024         mov     ecx, eax
.text:60351026         mov     eax, dword_60353014
.text:6035102B         mov     hModule, ecx
.text:60351031
.text:60351031 loc_60351031:                ; CODE XREF: sub_60351000+1D
.text:60351031         test    ecx, ecx
.text:60351033         jbe     short loc_6035104F
.text:60351035         push   offset ProcName ; "ax_reg"
.text:6035103A         push   ecx                ; hModule
.text:6035103B         call   ds:GetProcAddress
...

```

Wow, "ax_reg" string sounds familiar. It's indeed the first string in the strings block! So the name of this function it seems "ax_reg".

The second function is:

```

.text:60351080 sub_60351080    proc near
.text:60351080
.text:60351080 arg_0      = dword ptr 8
.text:60351080 arg_4      = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:60351080
.text:60351080         push    ebp
.text:60351081         mov     ebp, esp
.text:60351083         mov     eax, dword_60353018
.text:60351088         cmp     eax, 0FFFFFFFFh
.text:6035108B         jnz     short loc_603510CF
.text:6035108D         mov     ecx, hModule
.text:60351093         xor     eax, eax
.text:60351095         cmp     ecx, 0FFFFFFFFh
.text:60351098         mov     dword_60353018, eax
.text:6035109D         jnz     short loc_603510B1
.text:6035109F         call   sub_603510F0
.text:603510A4         mov     ecx, eax
.text:603510A6         mov     eax, dword_60353018
.text:603510AB         mov     hModule, ecx

```

```
.text:603510B1
.text:603510B1 loc_603510B1:                ; CODE XREF: sub_60351080+1D
.text:603510B1          test     ecx, ecx
.text:603510B3          jbe     short loc_603510CF
.text:603510B5          push   offset aAx_unreg ; "ax_unreg"
.text:603510BA          push   ecx                ; hModule
.text:603510BB          call   ds:GetProcAddress
...
```

“ax_unreg” string is also the second string in strings block! Starting address of the second function is 0x60351080, and the second value in the binary block is 10001080. So this is address, but for the DLL with default base address.

I can quickly check and be sure that first 66 values in array (i.e., first half of array) are just function addresses in DLL, including some labels, etc. Well, what's then other part of array? Other 66 values starting at 0x0000? These are seems to be in range [0 . . . 0x3F8]. And they are not looks like bitfields: sequence of numbers is growing. The last hexadecimal digit is seems to be random, so, it's unlikely an address of something (it would be divisible by 4 or maybe 8 or 0x10 otherwise).

Let's ask ourselves: what else Oracle RDBMS developers would save here, in this file? Quick wild guess: it could be an address of the text string (function name). It can be quickly checked, and yes, each number is just position of the first character in the strings block.

This is it! All done.

I wrote an utility to convert these .SYM files into IDA script, so I can load .idc script and it will set function names:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <io.h>
#include <assert.h>
#include <malloc.h>
#include <fcntl.h>
#include <string.h>

int main (int argc, char *argv[])
{
    uint32_t sig, cnt, offset;
    uint32_t *d1, *d2;
    int      h, i, remain, file_len;
    char     *d3;
    uint32_t array_size_in_bytes;

    assert (argv[1]); // file name
    assert (argv[2]); // additional offset (if needed)

    // additional offset
    assert (sscanf (argv[2], "%X", &offset)==1);

    // get file length
    assert ((h=open (argv[1], _O_RDONLY | _O_BINARY, 0))!=-1);
    assert ((file_len=lseek (h, 0, SEEK_END))!=-1);
    assert (lseek (h, 0, SEEK_SET)!=-1);

    // read signature
    assert (read (h, &sig, 4)==4);
    // read count
    assert (read (h, &cnt, 4)==4);

    assert (sig==0x4D59534F); // OSYM

    // skip timestamp (for 11g)
    //_lseek (h, 4, 1);

    array_size_in_bytes=cnt*sizeof(uint32_t);

    // load symbol addresses array
    d1=(uint32_t*)malloc (array_size_in_bytes);
    assert (d1);
    assert (read (h, d1, array_size_in_bytes)==array_size_in_bytes);

    // load string offsets array
    d2=(uint32_t*)malloc (array_size_in_bytes);
    assert (d2);
    assert (read (h, d2, array_size_in_bytes)==array_size_in_bytes);
```

```

// calculate strings block size
remain=file_len-(8+4)-(cnt*8);

// load strings block
assert (d3=(char*)malloc (remain));
assert (read (h, d3, remain)==remain);

printf ("#include <idc.idc>\n\n");
printf ("static main() {\n");

for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
    printf ("\tMakeName(0x%08X, \"%s\");\n", offset + d1[i], &d3[d2[i]]);

printf ("}\n");

close (h);
free (d1); free (d2); free (d3);
};

```

Here is an example of its work:

```

#include <idc.idc>

static main() {
    MakeName(0x60351000, "_ax_reg");
    MakeName(0x60351080, "_ax_unreg");
    MakeName(0x603510F0, "_loaddll");
    MakeName(0x60351150, "_wtcsrin0");
    MakeName(0x60351160, "_wtcsrin");
    MakeName(0x603511C0, "_wtcsrfr");
    MakeName(0x603511D0, "_wtclkm");
    MakeName(0x60351370, "_wtcstu");
    ...
}

```

The files I used for example are here: <http://beginners.re/examples/oracle/SYM/>.

Oh, let's also try Oracle RDBMS for win64. There should be 64-bit addresses instead, right? The 8-byte pattern is visible even easier here:

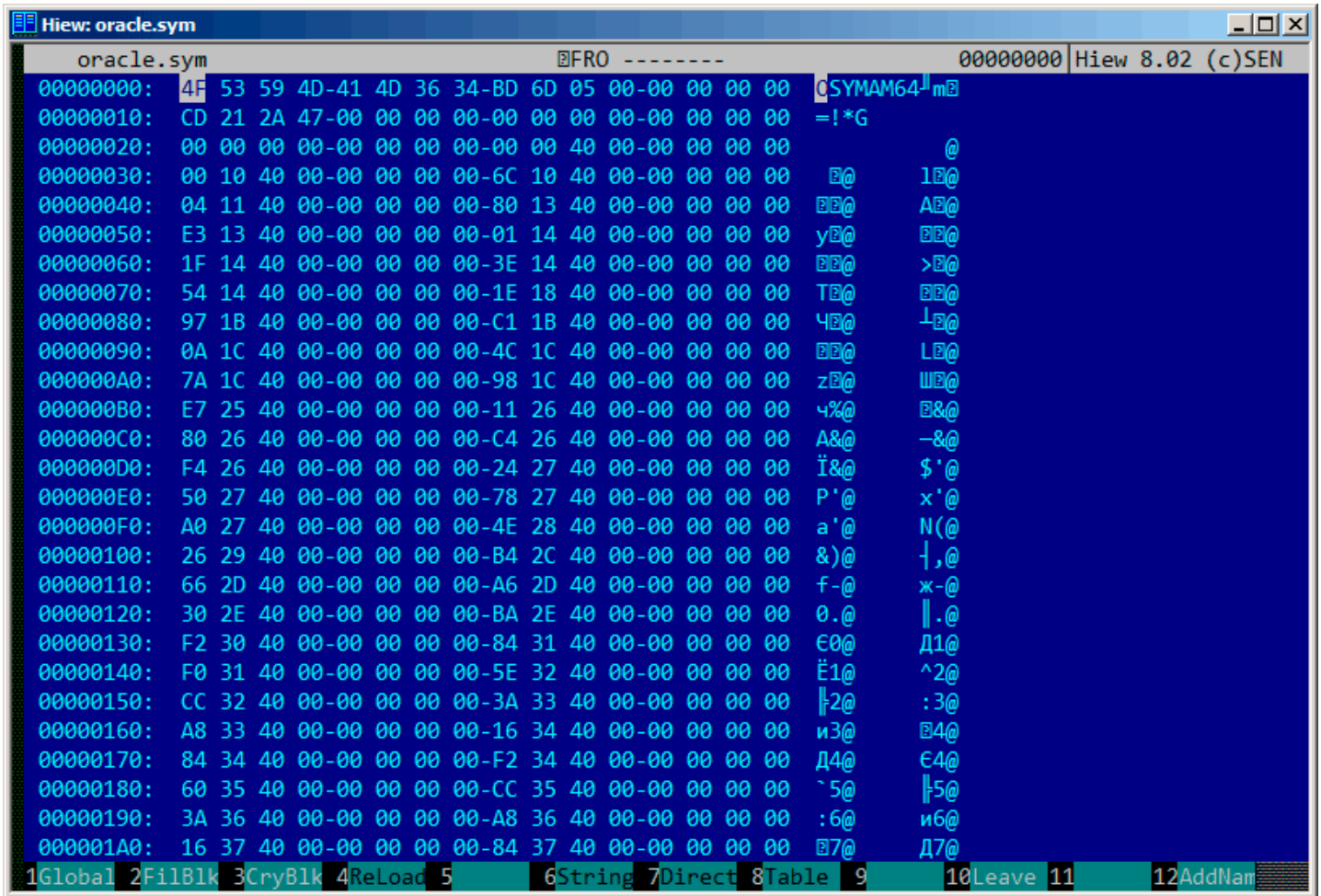


Figure 76.5: .SYM-file example from Oracle RDBMS for win64

So yes, all tables now has 64-bit elements, even string offsets! The signature is now OSYAM64, to distinguish target platform, I suppose.

This is it! Here is also my library in which I have function to access Oracle RDBMS.SYM-files: https://github.com/dennis714/porg/blob/master/oracle_sym.c.

Chapter 77

Oracle RDBMS: .MSB-files

When working toward the solution of a problem, it always helps if you know the answer.

Murphy's Laws, Rule of Accuracy

This is a binary file containing error messages with corresponding numbers. Let's try to understand its format and find a way to unpack it.

There are Oracle RDBMS error message files in text form, so we can compare text and packed binary files ¹.

This is the beginning of ORAUS.MSG text files with irrelevant comments stripped:

Listing 77.1: Beginning of ORAUS.MSG file without comments

```
00000, 00000, "normal, successful completion"
00001, 00000, "unique constraint (%s.%s) violated"
00017, 00000, "session requested to set trace event"
00018, 00000, "maximum number of sessions exceeded"
00019, 00000, "maximum number of session licenses exceeded"
00020, 00000, "maximum number of processes (%s) exceeded"
00021, 00000, "session attached to some other process; cannot switch session"
00022, 00000, "invalid session ID; access denied"
00023, 00000, "session references process private memory; cannot detach session"
00024, 00000, "logins from more than one process not allowed in single-process mode"
00025, 00000, "failed to allocate %s"
00026, 00000, "missing or invalid session ID"
00027, 00000, "cannot kill current session"
00028, 00000, "your session has been killed"
00029, 00000, "session is not a user session"
00030, 00000, "User session ID does not exist."
00031, 00000, "session marked for kill"
...
```

The first number is error code. The second is maybe some additional flags, but I'm not sure.

¹Text files are exist in Oracle RDBMS not for every .MSB file, so that's why I worked on its file format

Now let's open ORAUS.MSB binary file and find these text strings. And there are:

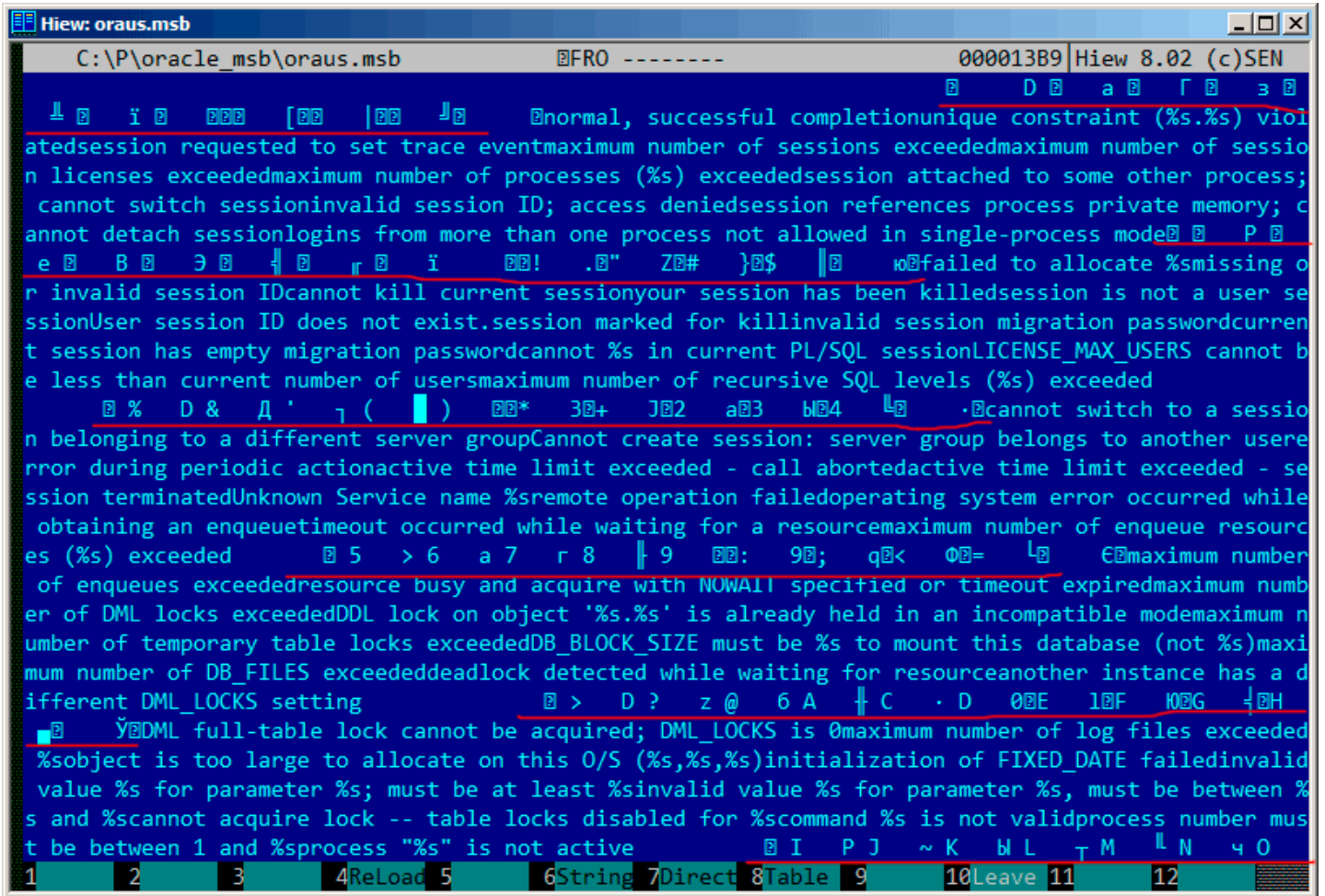


Figure 77.1: Hiew: first block

We see the text strings (including those with which ORAUS.MSG file started) interleaved with some binary values. By quick investigation, we can see that main part of binary file is divided by blocks of size 0x200 (512) bytes.

Let's back to the header of .MSB-file:

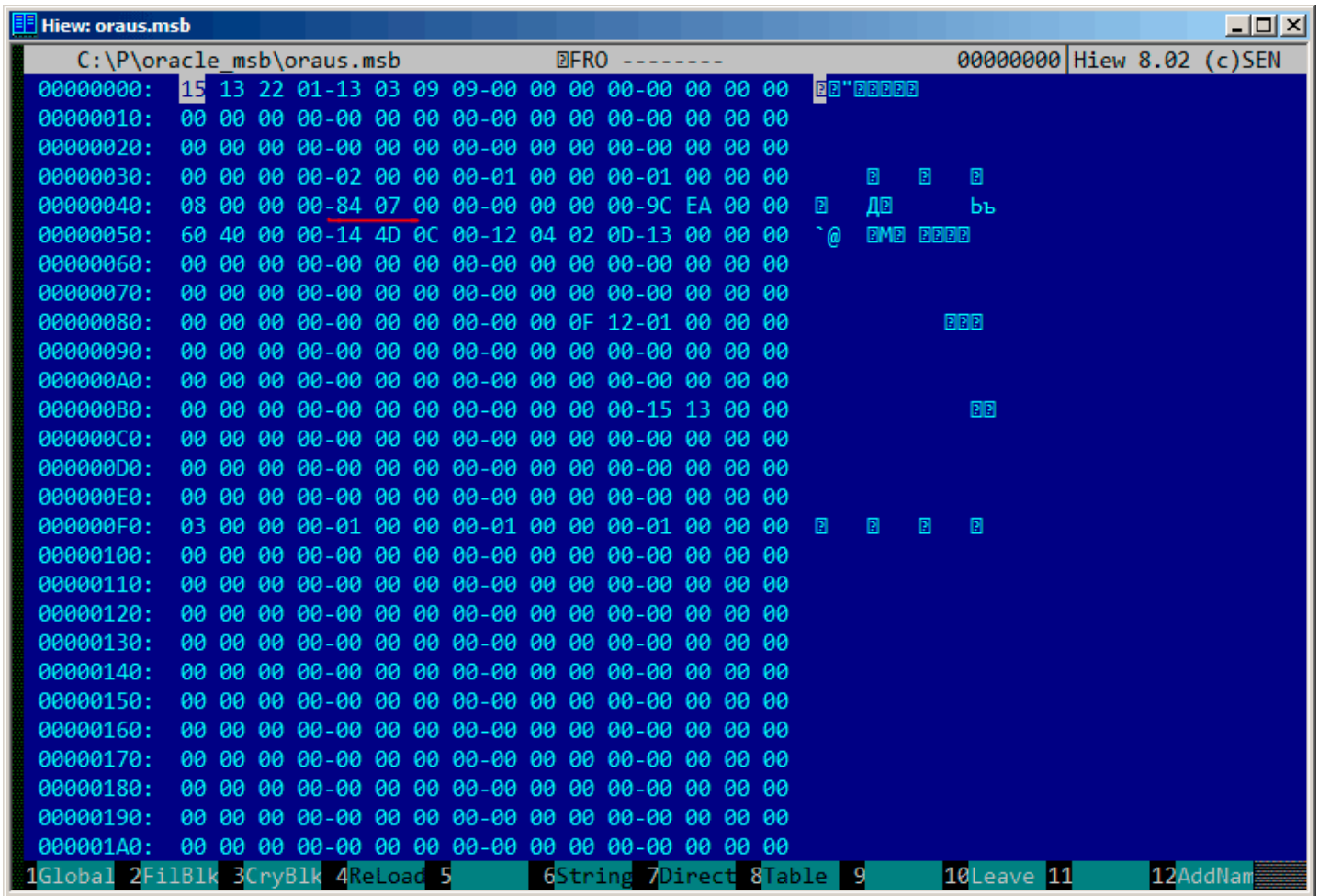


Figure 77.3: Hiew: file header

I quickly found number of blocks in file (marked by red). I checked other .MSB-files and that's true for any. There are a lot of other values, but I didn't investigate them, since by job (unpacking utility) was done. If I would write .MSB-file packer, I would probably need to understand other value meanings.

There is also a table came after header which probably contain 16-bit values:

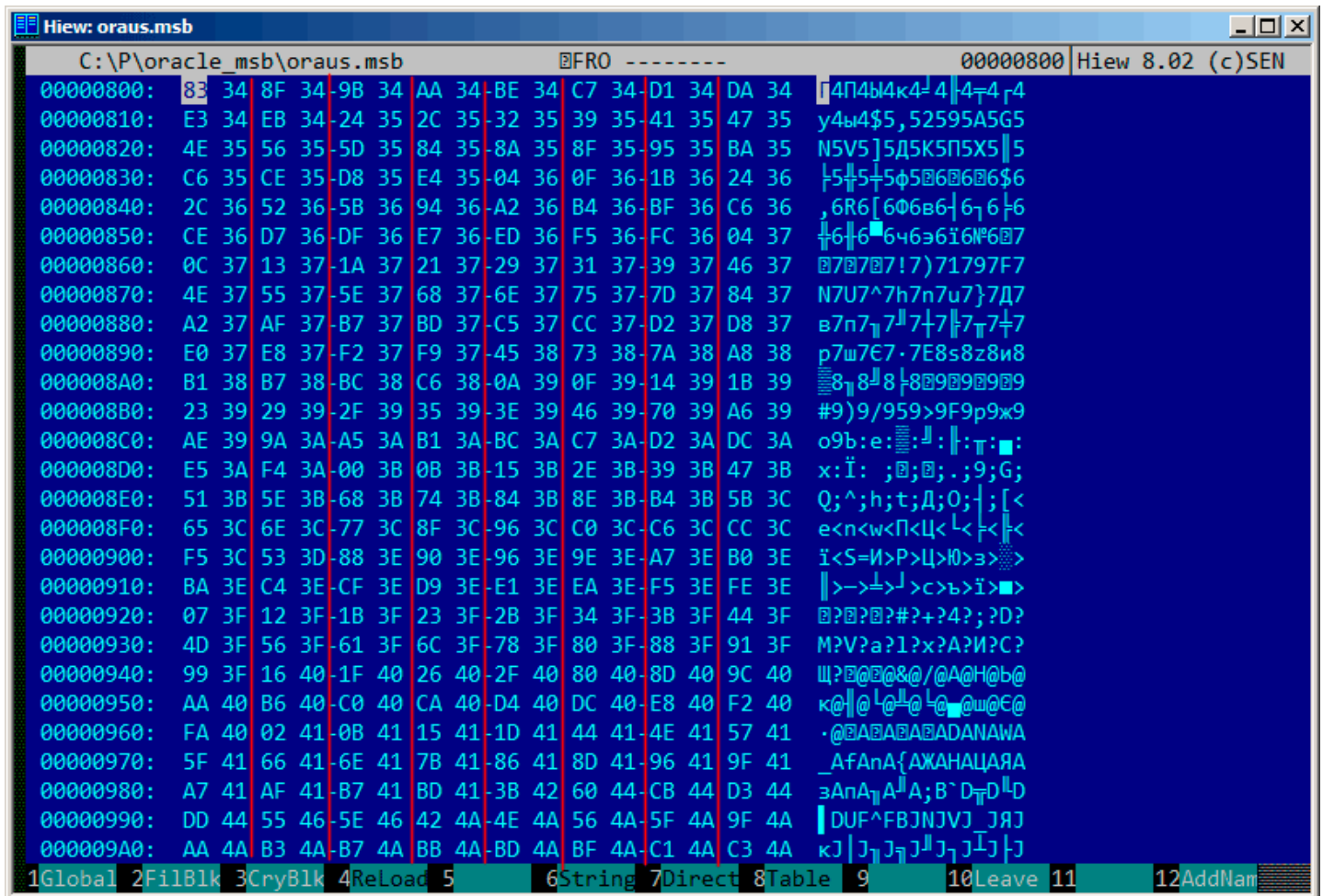


Figure 77.4: Hiew: last_errnos table

Their size can be determined visually (I draw red lines). When I'm dumping these values, I found that each 16-bit number is a last error code for each block.

So that's how Oracle RDBMS quickly finds error message:

- load a table I called last_errnos (containing last error number for each block);
- find a block containing error code we need, assuming all error codes increasing across each block and the file as well;
- load specific block;
- enumerate 6-byte structures until specific error number is found;
- get a position of the first character from current 6-byte block;
- get a position of the last character from the next 6-byte block;
- load all characters from message in this range.

This is C-program I wrote which unpacks .MSB-files: http://beginners.re/examples/oracle/MSB/oracle_msb.c.

There are also two files I used in the example (Oracle RDBMS 11.1.0.6): <http://beginners.re/examples/oracle/MSB/oraus.msb>, <http://beginners.re/examples/oracle/MSB/oraus.msg>.

77.1 Summary

The method is probably too old-school for modern computers. Supposedly, this file format was developed in the mid-80's by someone who also coded for *big iron* with memory/disk space economy in mind. Nevertheless, it was an interesting and yet easy task to understand proprietary file format without looking into Oracle RDBMS code.

Part VIII

Other things

Chapter 78

npad

It is an assembly language macro for label aligning by a specific border.

That's often need for the busy labels to where control flow is often passed, e.g., loop body begin. So the CPU will effectively load data or code from the memory, through memory bus, cache lines, etc.

Taken from `listing.inc` (MSVC):

By the way, it is curious example of different NOP variations. All these instructions has no effects whatsoever, but has different size.

The goal to have single idle instruction instead of couple of NOP-s, it is accepted that is better for CPU performance.

```
;; LISTING.INC
;;
;; This file contains assembler macros and is included by the files created
;; with the -FA compiler switch to be assembled by MASM (Microsoft Macro
;; Assembler).
;;
;; Copyright (c) 1993-2003, Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

;; non destructive nops
npad macro size
if size eq 1
    nop
else
if size eq 2
    mov edi, edi
else
if size eq 3
    ; lea ecx, [ecx+00]
    DB 8DH, 49H, 00H
else
if size eq 4
    ; lea esp, [esp+00]
    DB 8DH, 64H, 24H, 00H
else
if size eq 5
    add eax, DWORD PTR 0
else
if size eq 6
    ; lea ebx, [ebx+00000000]
    DB 8DH, 9BH, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 7
    ; lea esp, [esp+00000000]
    DB 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 8
    ; jmp .+8; .npad 6
    DB 0EBH, 06H, 8DH, 9BH, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 9
    ; jmp .+9; .npad 7
    DB 0EBH, 07H, 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 10
    ; jmp .+A; .npad 7; .npad 1
    DB 0EBH, 08H, 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 90H
```


Chapter 79

Executable files patching

79.1 Text strings

C strings are most easily patched (unless they are encrypted) in any hex editor. This technique available even for those who are not aware of machine code and executable file formats. New string should not be bigger than old, because it's a risk to overwrite some other value or code there. Using this method, a lot of software was *localized* in MS-DOS era, at least in ex-USSR countries in 80's and 90's. It was a reason why so weird abbreviations was present in *localized* software: it was no room for longer strings.

As of Delphi strings, a string size should also be corrected, if needed.

79.2 x86 code

Frequent patching tasks are:

- One of the most frequently job is to disable some instruction. It is often done by filling it by byte 0x90 (**NOP**).
- Conditional jumps, which have opcode like `74 xx (JZ)`, may also be filled by two **NOPs**. It is also possible to disable conditional jump by writing 0 at the second byte (*jump offset*).
- Another frequent job is to make conditional jump to trigger always: this can be done by writing 0xEB instead of opcode, it mean **JMP**.
- A function execution can be disabled by writing **RETN** (0xC3) at its beginning. This is true for all functions excluding `stdcall` (5.2). While patching `stdcall` functions, one should determine number of arguments (for example, by finding **RETN** in this function), and use **RETN** with 16-bit argument (0xC2).
- Sometimes, a disabled functions should return 0 or 1. This can be done by `MOV EAX, 0` or `MOV EAX, 1`, but it's slightly verbose. Better way is `XOR EAX, EAX` (2 bytes 0x31 0xC0) or `XOR EAX, EAX / INC EAX` (3 bytes 0x31 0xC0 0x40).

A software may be protected against modifications. This protection is often done by reading executable code and doing some checksumming. Therefore, the code should be read before protection will be triggered. This can be determined by setting breakpoint on reading memory.

[tracer](#) has **BPM** option for this.

PE executable file relocs (59.2.6) should not be touched while patching, because Windows loader will overwrite a new code. (They are grayed in Hiew, for example: fig.7.12). As a last resort, it is possible to write jumps circumventing relocs, or one will need to edit relocs table.

Chapter 80

Compiler intrinsic

A function specific to a compiler which is not usual library function. Compiler generate a specific machine code instead of call to it. It is often a pseudofunction for specific CPU instruction.

For example, there are no cyclic shift operations in C/C++ languages, but present in most CPUs. For programmer's convenience, at least MSVC has pseudofunctions `_rotl()` and `_rotr()`¹ which are translated by compiler directly to the ROL/ROR x86 instructions.

Another example are functions enabling to generate SSE-instructions right in the code.

Full list of MSVC intrinsics: <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/26td21ds.aspx>.

¹<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/5cc576c4.aspx>

Chapter 81

Compiler's anomalies

Intel C++ 10.1, which was used for Oracle RDBMS 11.2 Linux86 compilation, may emit two JZ in row, and there are no references to the second JZ. Second JZ is thus senseless.

Listing 81.1: kdli.o from libserver11.a

```
.text:08114CF1          loc_8114CF1: ; CODE XREF: __PGOSF539_kdlimemSer+89A
.text:08114CF1          ; __PGOSF539_kdlimemSer+3994
.text:08114CF1  8B 45 08          mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:08114CF4  0F B6 50 14      movzx  edx, byte ptr [eax+14h]
.text:08114CF8  F6 C2 01          test   dl, 1
.text:08114CFB  0F 85 17 08 00 00 jnz    loc_8115518
.text:08114D01  85 C9            test   ecx, ecx
.text:08114D03  0F 84 8A 00 00 00 jz     loc_8114D93
.text:08114D09  0F 84 09 08 00 00 jz     loc_8115518
.text:08114D0F  8B 53 08          mov    edx, [ebx+8]
.text:08114D12  89 55 FC          mov    [ebp+var_4], edx
.text:08114D15  31 C0            xor    eax, eax
.text:08114D17  89 45 F4          mov    [ebp+var_C], eax
.text:08114D1A  50              push  eax
.text:08114D1B  52              push  edx
.text:08114D1C  E8 03 54 00 00   call  len2bytes
.text:08114D21  83 C4 08          add    esp, 8
```

Listing 81.2: from the same code

```
.text:0811A2A5          loc_811A2A5: ; CODE XREF: kdliSerLengths+11C
.text:0811A2A5          ; kdliSerLengths+1C1
.text:0811A2A5  8B 7D 08          mov    edi, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:0811A2A8  8B 7F 10          mov    edi, [edi+10h]
.text:0811A2AB  0F B6 57 14      movzx  edx, byte ptr [edi+14h]
.text:0811A2AF  F6 C2 01          test   dl, 1
.text:0811A2B2  75 3E            jnz    short loc_811A2F2
.text:0811A2B4  83 E0 01          and    eax, 1
.text:0811A2B7  74 1F            jz     short loc_811A2D8
.text:0811A2B9  74 37            jz     short loc_811A2F2
.text:0811A2BB  6A 00            push  0
.text:0811A2BD  FF 71 08          push  dword ptr [ecx+8]
.text:0811A2C0  E8 5F FE FF FF   call  len2bytes
```

It is probably code generator bug was not found by tests, because, resulting code is working correctly anyway.

Another compiler anomalies here in this book: [19.2.4](#), [14.3.3](#), [15.2.7](#), [18.7](#), [12.4.1](#), [19.4.2](#).

I demonstrate such cases here, so to understand that such compilers errors are possible and sometimes one should not to rack one's brain and think why compiler generated such strange code.

Chapter 82

OpenMP

OpenMP is one of the simplest ways to parallelize simple algorithm.

As an example, let's try to build a program to compute cryptographic *nonce*. In my simplistic example, *nonce* is a number added to the plain unencrypted text in order to produce hash with some specific feature. For example, at some step, Bitcoin protocol require to find a such *nonce* so resulting hash will contain specific number of running zeroes. This is also called "proof of work"¹ (i.e., system prove it did some intensive calculations and spent some time for it).

My example is not related to Bitcoin in any way, it will try to add a numbers to the "hello, world!" string in order to find such number when "hello, world!_<number>" will contain at least 3 zero bytes after hashing this string by SHA512 algorithm.

Let's limit our brute-force to the interval in 0..INT32_MAX-1 (i.e., 0x7FFFFFFE or 2147483646).

The algorithm is pretty straightforward:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <time.h>
#include "sha512.h"

int found=0;
int32_t checked=0;

int32_t* __min;
int32_t* __max;

time_t start;

#ifdef __GNUC__
#define min(X,Y) ((X) < (Y) ? (X) : (Y))
#define max(X,Y) ((X) > (Y) ? (X) : (Y))
#endif

void check_nonce (int32_t nonce)
{
    uint8_t buf[32];
    struct sha512_ctx ctx;
    uint8_t res[64];

    // update statistics
    int t=omp_get_thread_num();

    if (__min[t]==-1)
        __min[t]=nonce;
    if (__max[t]==-1)
        __max[t]=nonce;

    __min[t]=min(__min[t], nonce);
    __max[t]=max(__max[t], nonce);

    // idle if valid nonce found
    if (found)
        return;

    memset (buf, 0, sizeof(buf));
    sprintf (buf, "hello, world!_%d", nonce);
```

¹https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proof-of-work_system

```

    sha512_init_ctx (&ctx);
    sha512_process_bytes (buf, strlen(buf), &ctx);
    sha512_finish_ctx (&ctx, &res);
    if (res[0]==0 && res[1]==0 && res[2]==0)
    {
        printf ("found (thread %d): [%s]. seconds spent=%d\n", t, buf, time(NULL)-start);
    }
    found=1;
};
#pragma omp atomic
checked++;

#pragma omp critical
if ((checked % 100000)==0)
    printf ("checked=%d\n", checked);
};

int main()
{
    int32_t i;
    int threads=omp_get_max_threads();
    printf ("threads=%d\n", threads);

    __min=(int32_t*)malloc(threads*sizeof(int32_t));
    __max=(int32_t*)malloc(threads*sizeof(int32_t));
    for (i=0; i<threads; i++)
        __min[i]=__max[i]=-1;

    start=time(NULL);

    #pragma omp parallel for
    for (i=0; i<INT32_MAX; i++)
        check_nonce (i);

    for (i=0; i<threads; i++)
        printf ("__min[%d]=0x%08x __max[%d]=0x%08x\n", i, __min[i], i, __max[i]);

    free(__min); free(__max);
};

```

check_nonce() function is just add a number to the string, hashes it by SHA512 algorithm and checks for 3 zero bytes in the result.

Very important part of the code is:

```

#pragma omp parallel for
for (i=0; i<INT32_MAX; i++)
    check_nonce (i);

```

Yes, that simple, without #pragma we just call check_nonce() for each number from 0 to INT32_MAX (0x7fffffff or 2147483647). With #pragma, a compiler adds a special code which will slice the loop interval to smaller intervals, to run them by all CPU cores available ².

The example may be compiled ³ in MSVC 2012:

```

cl openmp_example.c sha512.obj /openmp /O1 /Zi /Faopenmp_example.asm

```

Or in GCC:

```

gcc -fopenmp 2.c sha512.c -S -masm=intel

```

82.1 MSVC

Now that's how MSVC 2012 generates main loop:

Listing 82.1: MSVC 2012

```

push    OFFSET _main$omp$1

```

²N.B.: I intentionally demonstrate here simplest possible example, but in practice, usage of OpenMP may be harder and more complex

³sha512.clh) and u64.h files can be taken from the OpenSSL library: <http://www.openssl.org/source/>

```

push    0
push    1
call    __vcomp_fork
add     esp, 16                ; 00000010H

```

All functions prefixed by `vcomp` are OpenMP-related and stored in the `vcomp*.dll` file. So here is a group of threads are started.

Let's take a look on `_mainomp1`:

Listing 82.2: MSVC 2012

```

$T1 = -8                ; size = 4
$T2 = -4                ; size = 4
_main$omp$1 PROC      ; COMDAT
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    push    ecx
    push    esi
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR $T2[ebp]
    push    eax
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR $T1[ebp]
    push    eax
    push    1
    push    1
    push    2147483646    ; 7fffffffEH
    push    0
    call    __vcomp_for_static_simple_init
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR $T1[ebp]
    add     esp, 24        ; 00000018H
    jmp     SHORT $LN6@_main$omp$1
$LL2@_main$omp$1:
    push    esi
    call    _check_nonce
    pop     ecx
    inc     esi
$LN6@_main$omp$1:
    cmp     esi, DWORD PTR $T2[ebp]
    jle     SHORT $LL2@_main$omp$1
    call    __vcomp_for_static_end
    pop     esi
    leave
    ret     0
_main$omp$1 ENDP

```

This function will be started n times in parallel, where n is number of CPU cores. `vcomp_for_static_simple_init()` is calculating interval for the `for()` construct for the current thread, depending on the current thread number. Loop begin and end values are stored in `$T1` and `$T2` local variables. You may also notice `7fffffffEH` (or `2147483646`) as an argument to the `vcomp_for_static_simple_init()` function—this is a number of iterations of the whole loop to be divided evenly.

Then we see a new loop with a call to `check_nonce()` function which do all work.

I also added some code in the beginning of `check_nonce()` function to gather statistics, with which arguments the function was called.

This is what we see while run it:

```

threads=4
...
checked=2800000
checked=3000000
checked=3200000
checked=3300000
found (thread 3): [hello, world!_1611446522]. seconds spent=3
__min[0]=0x00000000 __max[0]=0x1fffffff
__min[1]=0x20000000 __max[1]=0x3fffffff
__min[2]=0x40000000 __max[2]=0x5fffffff
__min[3]=0x60000000 __max[3]=0x7fffffff

```

Yes, result is correct, first 3 bytes are zeroes:

```

C:\...\sha512sum test
000000f4a8fac5a4ed38794da4c1e39f54279ad5d9bb3c5465cdf57adaf60403

```

```
df6e3fe6019f5764fc9975e505a7395fed780fee50eb38dd4c0279cb114672e2 *test
```

Running time is $\approx 2..3$ seconds on my 4-core Intel Xeon E3-1220 3.10 GHz. In the task manager I see 5 threads: 1 main thread + 4 more started. I did not any further optimizations to keep my example as small and clear as possible. But probably it can be done much faster. My CPU has 4 cores, that is why OpenMP started exactly 4 threads.

By looking at the statistics table we can clearly see how loop was finely sliced by 4 even parts. Oh well, almost even, if not to consider the last bit.

There are also pragmas for [atomic operations](#).

Let's see how this code is compiled:

```
#pragma omp atomic
checked++;

#pragma omp critical
if ((checked % 100000)==0)
    printf ("checked=%d\n", checked);
```

Listing 82.3: MSVC 2012

```
push    edi
push    OFFSET _checked
call   __vcomp_atomic_add_i4
; Line 55
push    OFFSET _$vcomp$critsect$
call   __vcomp_enter_critsect
add    esp, 12                ; 0000000cH
; Line 56
mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _checked
mov     eax, ecx
cdq
mov     esi, 100000           ; 000186a0H
idiv   esi
test   edx, edx
jne    SHORT $LN1@check_nonc
; Line 57
push    ecx
push    OFFSET ??_C@_0M@NPNHLI00@checked?$DN?$CFd?6?$AA@
call   _printf
pop     ecx
pop     ecx
$LN1@check_nonc:
push    DWORD PTR _$vcomp$critsect$
call   __vcomp_leave_critsect
pop     ecx
```

As it turns out, `vcomp_atomic_add_i4()` function in the `vcomp*.dll` is just a tiny function having `LOCK XADD` instruction⁴.

`vcomp_enter_critsect()` eventually calling win32 API function `EnterCriticalSection()`⁵.

82.2 GCC

GCC 4.8.1 produces the program which shows exactly the same statistics table, so, GCC implementation divides the loop by parts in the same fashion.

Listing 82.4: GCC 4.8.1

```
mov     edi, OFFSET FLAT:main._omp_fn.0
call   GOMP_parallel_start
mov     edi, 0
call   main._omp_fn.0
call   GOMP_parallel_end
```

Unlike MSVC implementation, what GCC code is doing is starting 3 threads, but also runs fourth in the current thread. So there will be 4 threads instead of 5 as in MSVC.

Here is a `main._omp_fn.0` function:

⁴Read more about `LOCK` prefix: [A.6.1](#)

⁵Read more about critical sections here: [59.4](#)

Listing 82.5: GCC 4.8.1

```

main._omp_fn.0:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp
    push   rbx
    sub    rsp, 40
    mov    QWORD PTR [rbp-40], rdi
    call   omp_get_num_threads
    mov    ebx, eax
    call   omp_get_thread_num
    mov    esi, eax
    mov    eax, 2147483647 ; 0x7FFFFFFF
    cdq
    idiv   ebx
    mov    ecx, eax
    mov    eax, 2147483647 ; 0x7FFFFFFF
    cdq
    idiv   ebx
    mov    eax, edx
    cmp    esi, eax
    jl     .L15
.L18:
    imul   esi, ecx
    mov    edx, esi
    add    eax, edx
    lea   ebx, [rax+rcx]
    cmp    eax, ebx
    jge   .L14
    mov    DWORD PTR [rbp-20], eax
.L17:
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-20]
    mov    edi, eax
    call   check_nonce
    add    DWORD PTR [rbp-20], 1
    cmp    DWORD PTR [rbp-20], ebx
    jl     .L17
    jmp    .L14
.L15:
    mov    eax, 0
    add    ecx, 1
    jmp    .L18
.L14:
    add    rsp, 40
    pop    rbx
    pop    rbp
    ret

```

Here we see that division clearly: by calling to `omp_get_num_threads()` and `omp_get_thread_num()` we got number of threads running, and also current thread number, and then determine loop interval. Then run `check_nonce()`.

GCC also inserted `LOCK ADD` instruction right in the code, where MSVC generated call to separate DLL function:

Listing 82.6: GCC 4.8.1

```

lock add    DWORD PTR checked[rip], 1
call       GOMP_critical_start
mov        ecx, DWORD PTR checked[rip]
mov        edx, 351843721
mov        eax, ecx
imul       edx
sar        edx, 13
mov        eax, ecx
sar        eax, 31
sub        edx, eax
mov        eax, edx
imul       eax, eax, 100000
sub        ecx, eax
mov        eax, ecx
test       eax, eax
jne        .L7
mov        eax, DWORD PTR checked[rip]
mov        esi, eax

```



```
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:LC2 ; "checked=%d\n"  
    mov    eax, 0  
    call  printf  
.L7:  
    call  GOMP_critical_end
```

Functions prefixed with GOMP are from GNU OpenMP library. Unlike `vcomp*.dll`, its sources are freely available: <https://github.com/mirrors/gcc/tree/master/libgomp>.

Chapter 83

Itanium

Although almost failed, another very interesting architecture is Intel Itanium (IA64). While OOE CPUs decides how to rearrange instructions and execute them in parallel, EPIC¹ was an attempt to shift these decisions to the compiler: to let it group instructions at the compile stage.

This result in notoriously complex compilers.

Here is one sample of IA64 code: simple cryptoalgorithm from Linux kernel:

Listing 83.1: Linux kernel 3.2.0.4

```
#define TEA_ROUNDS          32
#define TEA_DELTA          0x9e3779b9

static void tea_encrypt(struct crypto_tfm *tfm, u8 *dst, const u8 *src)
{
    u32 y, z, n, sum = 0;
    u32 k0, k1, k2, k3;
    struct tea_ctx *ctx = crypto_tfm_ctx(tfm);
    const __le32 *in = (const __le32 *)src;
    __le32 *out = (__le32 *)dst;

    y = le32_to_cpu(in[0]);
    z = le32_to_cpu(in[1]);

    k0 = ctx->KEY[0];
    k1 = ctx->KEY[1];
    k2 = ctx->KEY[2];
    k3 = ctx->KEY[3];

    n = TEA_ROUNDS;

    while (n-- > 0) {
        sum += TEA_DELTA;
        y += ((z << 4) + k0) ^ (z + sum) ^ ((z >> 5) + k1);
        z += ((y << 4) + k2) ^ (y + sum) ^ ((y >> 5) + k3);
    }

    out[0] = cpu_to_le32(y);
    out[1] = cpu_to_le32(z);
}
```

Here is how it was compiled:

Listing 83.2: Linux Kernel 3.2.0.4 for Itanium 2 (McKinley)

```
0090|                                tea_encrypt:
0090|08 80 80 41 00 21                adds r16 = 96, r32                // ptr to ctx->KEY↵
    |↵ [2]
0096|80 C0 82 00 42 00                adds r8 = 88, r32                // ptr to ctx->KEY↵
    |↵ [0]
009C|00 00 04 00                      nop.i 0
00A0|09 18 70 41 00 21                adds r3 = 92, r32                // ptr to ctx->KEY↵
    |↵ [1]
00A6|F0 20 88 20 28 00                ld4 r15 = [r34], 4                // load z
00AC|44 06 01 84                      adds r32 = 100, r32;;            // ptr to ctx->KEY↵
    |↵ [3]
```

¹Explicitly parallel instruction computing

```

00B0|08 98 00 20 10 10      ld4 r19 = [r16]           // r19=k2
00B6|00 01 00 00 42 40      mov r16 = r0             // r0 always contain
    ↪ zero
00BC|00 08 CA 00            mov.i r2 = ar.lc         // save lc register
00C0|05 70 00 44 10 10 9E FF FF FF 7F 20 ld4 r14 = [r34]         // load y
00CC|92 F3 CE 6B            movl r17 = 0xFFFFFFFF9E3779B9;; // TEA_DELTA
00D0|08 00 00 00 01 00      nop.m 0
00D6|50 01 20 20 20 00      ld4 r21 = [r8]           // r21=k0
00DC|F0 09 2A 00            mov.i ar.lc = 31         // TEA_ROUNDS is 32
00E0|0A A0 00 06 10 10      ld4 r20 = [r3];;        // r20=k1
00E6|20 01 80 20 20 00      ld4 r18 = [r32]         // r18=k3
00EC|00 00 04 00            nop.i 0
00F0|
00F0|
00F0|09 80 40 22 00 20      loc_F0:
    ↪ TEA_DELTA
    add r16 = r16, r17     // r16=sum, r17=
00F6|D0 71 54 26 40 80      shladd r29 = r14, 4, r21 // r14=y, r21=k0
00FC|A3 70 68 52            extr.u r28 = r14, 5, 27;;
0100|03 F0 40 1C 00 20      add r30 = r16, r14
0106|B0 E1 50 00 40 40      add r27 = r28, r20;;    // r20=k1
010C|D3 F1 3C 80            xor r26 = r29, r30;;
0110|0B C8 6C 34 0F 20      xor r25 = r27, r26;;
0116|F0 78 64 00 40 00      add r15 = r15, r25     // r15=z
011C|00 00 04 00            nop.i 0;;
0120|00 00 00 00 01 00      nop.m 0
0126|80 51 3C 34 29 60      extr.u r24 = r15, 5, 27
012C|F1 98 4C 80            shladd r11 = r15, 4, r19 // r19=k2
0130|0B B8 3C 20 00 20      add r23 = r15, r16;;
0136|A0 C0 48 00 40 00      add r10 = r24, r18     // r18=k3
013C|00 00 04 00            nop.i 0;;
0140|0B 48 28 16 0F 20      xor r9 = r10, r11;;
0146|60 B9 24 1E 40 00      xor r22 = r23, r9
014C|00 00 04 00            nop.i 0;;
0150|11 00 00 00 01 00      nop.m 0
0156|E0 70 58 00 40 A0      add r14 = r14, r22
015C|A0 FF FF 48            br.cloop.sptk.few loc_F0;;
0160|09 20 3C 42 90 15      st4 [r33] = r15, 4     // store z
0166|00 00 00 02 00 00      nop.m 0
016C|20 08 AA 00            mov.i ar.lc = r2;;     // restore lc ↵
    ↪ register
0170|11 00 38 42 90 11      st4 [r33] = r14       // store y
0176|00 00 00 02 00 80      nop.i 0
017C|08 00 84 00            br.ret.sptk.many b0;;

```

First of all, all IA64 instructions are grouped into 3-instruction bundles. Each bundle has size of 16 bytes and consists of template code + 3 instructions. IDA shows bundles into 6+6+4 bytes –you may easily spot the pattern.

All 3 instructions from each bundle usually executes simultaneously, unless one of instructions have “stop bit”.

Supposedly, Intel and HP engineers gathered statistics of most occurred instruction patterns and decided to bring bundle types (AKA “templates”): a bundle code defines instruction types in the bundle. There are 12 of them. For example, zeroth bundle type is MII, meaning: first instruction is Memory (load or store), second and third are I (integer instructions). Another example is bundle type 0x1d: MFB: first instruction is Memory (load or store), second is Float (FPU instruction), third is Branch (branch instruction).

If compiler cannot pick suitable instruction to relevant bundle slot, it may insert NOP: you may see here `nop.i` instructions (NOP at the place where integer instruction might be) or `nop.m` (a memory instruction might be at this slot). NOPs are inserted automatically when one use assembly language manually.

And that is not all. Bundles are also grouped. Each bundle may have “stop bit”, so all the consecutive bundles with terminating bundle which have “stop bit” may be executed simultaneously. In practice, Itanium 2 may execute 2 bundles at once, resulting execution of 6 instructions at once.

So all instructions inside bundle and bundle group cannot interfere with each other (i.e., should not have data hazards). If they do, results will be undefined.

Each stop bit is marked in assembly language as two semicolons (; ;) after instruction. So, instructions at [180-19c] may be executed simultaneously: they do not interfere. Next group is [1a0-1bc].

We also see a stop bit at 22c. The next instruction at 230 have stop bit too. This mean, this instruction is to be executed as isolated from all others (as in CISC). Indeed: the next instruction at 236 use result from it (value in register r10), so they cannot be executed at the same time. Apparently, compiler was not able to find a better way to parallelize instructions, which is, in other words, to load CPU as much as possible, hence too much stop bits and NOPs. Manual assembly programming is tedious job as well: programmer should group instructions manually.

Programmer is still able to add stop-bits to each instructions, but this will degrade all the performance Itanium was made

for.

Interesting examples of manual IA64 assembly code can be found in Linux kernel sources:

<http://lxr.free-electrons.com/source/arch/ia64/lib/>.

Another introductory Itanium assembly paper: [Bur].

Another very interesting Itanium feature is *speculative execution* and NaT (“not a thing”) bit, somewhat resembling NaN numbers:

<http://blogs.msdn.com/b/oldnewthing/archive/2004/01/19/60162.aspx>.

Chapter 84

8086 memory model

Dealing with 16-bit programs for MS-DOS or Win16 (69.3 or 40.5), we can see that pointer consisting of two 16-bit values. What it means? Oh yes, that is another MS-DOS and 8086 weird artefact.

8086/8088 was a 16-bit CPU, but was able to address 20-bit address RAM (thus resulting 1MB external memory). External memory address space was divided between RAM (640KB max), ROM, windows for video memory, EMS cards, etc.

Let's also recall that 8086/8088 was in fact inheritor of 8-bit 8080 CPU. The 8080 has 16-bit memory spaces, i.e., it was able to address only 64KB. And probably of old software porting reason¹, 8086 can support 64KB windows, many of them placed simultaneously within 1MB address space. This is some kind of toy-level virtualization. All 8086 registers are 16-bit, so to address more, a special segment registers (CS, DS, ES, SS) were introduced. Each 20-bit pointer is calculated using values from a segment register and an address register pair (e.g. DS:BX) as follows:

$$real_address = (segment_register \ll 4) + address_register$$

For example, graphics (EGA², VGA³) video RAM window on old IBM PC-compatibles has size of 64KB. For accessing it, a 0xA000 value should be stored in one of segment registers, e.g. into DS. Then DS:0 will address the very first byte of video RAM and DS:0xFFFF is the very last byte of RAM. The real address on 20-bit address bus, however, will range from 0xA0000 to 0xAFFFF.

The program may contain hardcoded addresses like 0x1234, but OS may need to load program on arbitrary addresses, so it recalculates segment register values in such a way, so the program will not care about where in the RAM it is placed.

So, any pointer in old MS-DOS environment was in fact consisted of segment address and the address inside segment, i.e., two 16-bit values. 20-bit was enough for that, though, but one will need to recalculate the addresses very often: passing more information on stack seems better space/convenience balance.

By the way, because of all this, it was not possible to allocate the memory block larger than 64KB.

Segment registers were reused at 80286 as selectors, serving different function.

When 80386 CPU and computers with bigger RAM were introduced, MS-DOS was still popular, so the DOS extenders emerged: these were in fact a step toward "serious" OS, switching CPU into protected mode and providing much better memory APIs for the programs which still needs to be runned from MS-DOS. Widely popular examples include DOS/4GW (DOOM video game was compiled for it), Phar Lap, PMODE.

By the way, the same was of addressing memory was in 16-bit line of Windows 3.x, before Win32.

¹I'm not 100% sure here

²Enhanced Graphics Adapter

³Video Graphics Array

Chapter 85

Basic blocks reordering

85.1 Profile-guided optimization

This optimization method may move some [basic blocks](#) to another section of the executable binary file.

Obviously, there are parts in function which are executed most often (e.g., loop bodies) and less often (e.g., error reporting code, exception handlers).

The compiler adding instrumentation code into the executable, then developer run it with a lot of tests for statistics collecting. Then the compiler, with the help of statistics gathered, prepares final executable file with all infrequently executed code moved into another section.

As a result, all frequently executed function code is compacted, and that is very important for execution speed and cache memory.

Example from Oracle RDBMS code, which was compiled by Intel C++:

Listing 85.1: orageneric11.dll (win32)

```

public _skgfsync
_skgfsync    proc near
; address 0x6030D86A

        db      66h
        nop
        push   ebp
        mov    ebp, esp
        mov    edx, [ebp+0Ch]
        test   edx, edx
        jz     short loc_6030D884
        mov    eax, [edx+30h]
        test   eax, 400h
        jnz    __VInfreq__skgfsync ; write to log
continue:
        mov    eax, [ebp+8]
        mov    edx, [ebp+10h]
        mov    dword ptr [eax], 0
        lea   eax, [edx+0Fh]
        and   eax, 0FFFFFFCh
        mov    ecx, [eax]
        cmp   ecx, 45726963h
        jnz   error ; exit with error
        mov   esp, ebp
        pop   ebp
        retn
_skgfsync    endp

...

; address 0x60B953F0
__VInfreq__skgfsync:
        mov    eax, [edx]
        test   eax, eax
        jz     continue
        mov    ecx, [ebp+10h]
        push  ecx

```

```

        mov     ecx, [ebp+8]
        push   edx
        push   ecx
        push   offset ... ; "skgfsync(se=0x%x, ctx=0x%x, iov=0x%x)\n"
        push   dword ptr [edx+4]
        call   dword ptr [eax] ; write to log
        add    esp, 14h
        jmp    continue

error:
        mov     edx, [ebp+8]
        mov     dword ptr [edx], 69AAh ; 27050 "function called with invalid FIB/IOV ↗
↳ structure"
        mov     eax, [eax]
        mov     [edx+4], eax
        mov     dword ptr [edx+8], 0FA4h ; 4004
        mov     esp, ebp
        pop    ebp
        retn
; END OF FUNCTION CHUNK FOR _skgfsync

```

The distance of addresses of these two code fragments is almost 9 MB.

All infrequently executed code was placed at the end of the code section of DLL file, among all function parts. This part of function was marked by Intel C++ compiler with `VInfreq` prefix. Here we see that a part of function which writes to log-file (presumably in case of error or warning or something like that) which was probably not executed very often when Oracle developers gathered statistics (if was executed at all). The writing to log basic block is eventually return control flow into the “hot” part of the function.

Another “infrequent” part is a [basic block](#) returning error code 27050.

In Linux ELF files, all infrequently executed code is moved by Intel C++ into separate `text.unlikely` section, leaving all “hot” code in the `text.hot` section.

From a reverse engineer’s perspective, this information may help to split the function to its core and error handling parts.

Part IX

Books/blogs worth reading

Chapter 86

Books

86.1 Windows

[RA09].

86.2 C/C++

[ISO13].

86.3 x86 / x86-64

[Int13], [AMD13a]

86.4 ARM

ARM manuals: <http://infocenter.arm.com/help/index.jsp?topic=/com.arm.doc.subset.architecture.reference/index.html>

Chapter 87

Blogs

87.1 Windows

- [Microsoft: Raymond Chen](#)
- <http://www.nynaeve.net/>

Chapter 88

Other

There are two excellent [RE¹](#)-related subreddits on reddit.com: [ReverseEngineering](#) and [REMath](#) (for the topics on the intersection of [RE](#) and mathematics).

There are also [RE](#) part of Stack Exchange website:

<http://reverseengineering.stackexchange.com/>.

On IRC there are [##re](#) channel on FreeNode².

¹Reverse Engineering

²<https://freenode.net/>

Part X
Exercises

There are two questions almost for every exercise, if otherwise is not specified:

1) What this function does? Answer in one-sentence form.

2) Rewrite this function into C/C++.

It is allowed to use Google to search for any leads. However, if you like to make your task harder, you may try to solve it without Google.

Hints and solutions are in the appendix of this book.

Chapter 89

Level 1

Level 1 exercises are ones you may try to solve in mind.

89.1 Exercise 1.4

This program requires password. Find it.

As an additional exercise, try to change the password by patching executable file. It may also has a different length. What shortest password is possible here?

Try also to crash the program using only string input.

- win32: <http://beginners.re/exercises/1/4/password1.exe>
- Linux x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/1/4/password1_Linux_x86.tar
- Mac OS X: http://beginners.re/exercises/1/4/password1_MacOSX64.tar

Chapter 90

Level 2

For solving exercises of level 2, you probably will need text editor or paper and pencil.

90.1 Exercise 2.4

This is standard C library function. Source code taken from MSVC 2010.

90.1.1 Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

PUBLIC  _f
_TEXT  SEGMENT
_arg1$ = 8          ; size = 4
_arg2$ = 12         ; size = 4
_f     PROC
    push  esi
    mov   esi, DWORD PTR _arg1$[esp]
    push  edi
    mov   edi, DWORD PTR _arg2$[esp+4]
    cmp   BYTE PTR [edi], 0
    mov   eax, esi
    je    SHORT $LN7@f
    mov   dl, BYTE PTR [esi]
    push  ebx
    test  dl, dl
    je    SHORT $LN4@f
    sub   esi, edi
    npad  6 ; align next label
$LL5@f:
    mov   ecx, edi
    test  dl, dl
    je    SHORT $LN2@f
$LL3@f:
    mov   dl, BYTE PTR [ecx]
    test  dl, dl
    je    SHORT $LN14@f
    movsx ebx, BYTE PTR [esi+ecx]
    movsx edx, dl
    sub   ebx, edx
    jne   SHORT $LN2@f
    inc   ecx
    cmp   BYTE PTR [esi+ecx], bl
    jne   SHORT $LL3@f
$LN2@f:
    cmp   BYTE PTR [ecx], 0
    je    SHORT $LN14@f
    mov   dl, BYTE PTR [eax+1]
    inc   eax
    inc   esi
    test  dl, dl
    jne   SHORT $LL5@f
    xor   eax, eax
    pop   ebx

```

```

    pop    edi
    pop    esi
    ret    0
_f      ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS
END

```

90.1.2 GCC 4.4.1

```

f      public f
      proc near

var_C  = dword ptr -0Ch
var_8  = dword ptr -8
var_4  = dword ptr -4
arg_0  = dword ptr 8
arg_4  = dword ptr 0Ch

      push    ebp
      mov     ebp, esp
      sub     esp, 10h
      mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
      mov     [ebp+var_4], eax
      mov     eax, [ebp+arg_4]
      movzx   eax, byte ptr [eax]
      test    al, al
      jnz    short loc_8048443
      mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
      jmp     short locret_8048453

loc_80483F4:
      mov     eax, [ebp+var_4]
      mov     [ebp+var_8], eax
      mov     eax, [ebp+arg_4]
      mov     [ebp+var_C], eax
      jmp     short loc_804840A

loc_8048402:
      add     [ebp+var_8], 1
      add     [ebp+var_C], 1

loc_804840A:
      mov     eax, [ebp+var_8]
      movzx   eax, byte ptr [eax]
      test    al, al
      jz     short loc_804842E
      mov     eax, [ebp+var_C]
      movzx   eax, byte ptr [eax]
      test    al, al
      jz     short loc_804842E
      mov     eax, [ebp+var_8]
      movzx   edx, byte ptr [eax]
      mov     eax, [ebp+var_C]
      movzx   eax, byte ptr [eax]
      cmp     dl, al
      jz     short loc_8048402

loc_804842E:
      mov     eax, [ebp+var_C]
      movzx   eax, byte ptr [eax]
      test    al, al
      jnz    short loc_804843D
      mov     eax, [ebp+var_4]
      jmp     short locret_8048453

loc_804843D:
      add     [ebp+var_4], 1
      jmp     short loc_8048444

```



```

loc_8048443:
    nop

loc_8048444:
    mov     eax, [ebp+var_4]
    movzx  eax, byte ptr [eax]
    test   al, al
    jnz    short loc_80483F4
    mov     eax, 0

locret_8048453:
    leave
    retn

f        endp

```

90.1.3 Optimizing Keil (ARM mode)

```

    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    LDRB    r2,[r1,#0]
    CMP     r2,#0
    POPEQ   {r4,pc}
    B       |L0.80|

|L0.20|
    LDRB    r12,[r3,#0]
    CMP     r12,#0
    BEQ     |L0.64|
    LDRB    r4,[r2,#0]
    CMP     r4,#0
    POPEQ   {r4,pc}
    CMP     r12,r4
    ADDEQ   r3,r3,#1
    ADDEQ   r2,r2,#1
    BEQ     |L0.20|
    B       |L0.76|

|L0.64|
    LDRB    r2,[r2,#0]
    CMP     r2,#0
    POPEQ   {r4,pc}

|L0.76|
    ADD     r0,r0,#1

|L0.80|
    LDRB    r2,[r0,#0]
    CMP     r2,#0
    MOVNE   r3,r0
    MOVNE   r2,r1
    MOVEQ   r0,#0
    BNE     |L0.20|
    POP     {r4,pc}

```

90.1.4 Optimizing Keil (thumb mode)

```

    PUSH    {r4,r5,lr}
    LDRB    r2,[r1,#0]
    CMP     r2,#0
    BEQ     |L0.54|
    B       |L0.46|

|L0.10|
    MOVS    r3,r0
    MOVS    r2,r1
    B       |L0.20|

|L0.16|
    ADDS    r3,r3,#1
    ADDS    r2,r2,#1

|L0.20|

```

```

LDRB    r4,[r3,#0]
CMP     r4,#0
BEQ     |L0.38|
LDRB    r5,[r2,#0]
CMP     r5,#0
BEQ     |L0.54|
CMP     r4,r5
BEQ     |L0.16|
B       |L0.44|
|L0.38|
LDRB    r2,[r2,#0]
CMP     r2,#0
BEQ     |L0.54|
|L0.44|
ADDS    r0,r0,#1
|L0.46|
LDRB    r2,[r0,#0]
CMP     r2,#0
BNE     |L0.10|
MOVS    r0,#0
|L0.54|
POP     {r4,r5,pc}

```

90.1.5 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

Listing 90.1: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

```

func:
    ldrb    w6, [x1]
    mov     x2, x0
    cbz    w6, .L2
    ldrb    w2, [x0]
    cbz    w2, .L24
.L17:
    ldrb    w2, [x0]
    cbz    w2, .L5
    cmp     w6, w2
    mov     x5, x0
    mov     x2, x1
    beq    .L18
    b      .L5
.L4:
    ldrb    w4, [x2]
    cmp     w3, w4
    cbz    w4, .L8
    bne    .L8
.L18:
    ldrb    w3, [x5,1]!
    add     x2, x2, 1
    cbnz   w3, .L4
.L8:
    ldrb    w2, [x2]
    cbz    w2, .L27
.L5:
    ldrb    w2, [x0,1]!
    cbnz   w2, .L17
.L24:
    mov     x2, 0
.L2:
    mov     x0, x2
    ret
.L27:
    mov     x2, x0
    mov     x0, x2
    ret

```

90.2 Exercise 2.6

90.2.1 Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

PUBLIC    _f
; Function compile flags: /Ogtpy
_TEXT    SEGMENT
_k0$ = -12        ; size = 4
_k3$ = -8         ; size = 4
_k2$ = -4         ; size = 4
_v$ = 8           ; size = 4
_k1$ = 12        ; size = 4
_k$ = 12         ; size = 4
_f      PROC
    sub     esp, 12        ; 0000000cH
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _v$[esp+8]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    push    ebx
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _k$[esp+16]
    push    edi
    mov     edi, DWORD PTR [esi]
    mov     DWORD PTR _k0$[esp+24], edi
    mov     edi, DWORD PTR [esi+4]
    mov     DWORD PTR _k1$[esp+20], edi
    mov     edi, DWORD PTR [esi+8]
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR [esi+12]
    xor     edx, edx
    mov     DWORD PTR _k2$[esp+24], edi
    mov     DWORD PTR _k3$[esp+24], esi
    lea     edi, DWORD PTR [edx+32]
$LL8@f:
    mov     esi, ecx
    shr     esi, 5
    add     esi, DWORD PTR _k1$[esp+20]
    mov     ebx, ecx
    shl     ebx, 4
    add     ebx, DWORD PTR _k0$[esp+24]
    sub     edx, 1640531527 ; 61c88647H
    xor     esi, ebx
    lea     ebx, DWORD PTR [edx+ecx]
    xor     esi, ebx
    add     eax, esi
    mov     esi, eax
    shr     esi, 5
    add     esi, DWORD PTR _k3$[esp+24]
    mov     ebx, eax
    shl     ebx, 4
    add     ebx, DWORD PTR _k2$[esp+24]
    xor     esi, ebx
    lea     ebx, DWORD PTR [edx+eax]
    xor     esi, ebx
    add     ecx, esi
    dec     edi
    jne     SHORT $LL8@f
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _v$[esp+20]
    pop     edi
    pop     esi
    mov     DWORD PTR [edx], eax
    mov     DWORD PTR [edx+4], ecx
    pop     ebx
    add     esp, 12        ; 0000000cH
    ret     0
_f      ENDP

```

90.2.2 Optimizing Keil (ARM mode)

```

PUSH    {r4-r10,lr}
ADD     r5,r1,#8
LDM     r5,{r5,r7}
LDR     r2,[r0,#4]
LDR     r3,[r0,#0]
LDR     r4,|L0.116|
LDR     r6,[r1,#4]
LDR     r8,[r1,#0]
MOV     r12,#0
MOV     r1,r12
|L0.40|
ADD     r12,r12,r4
ADD     r9,r8,r2,LSL #4
ADD     r10,r2,r12
EOR     r9,r9,r10
ADD     r10,r6,r2,LSR #5
EOR     r9,r9,r10
ADD     r3,r3,r9
ADD     r9,r5,r3,LSL #4
ADD     r10,r3,r12
EOR     r9,r9,r10
ADD     r10,r7,r3,LSR #5
EOR     r9,r9,r10
ADD     r1,r1,#1
CMP     r1,#0x20
ADD     r2,r2,r9
STRCS   r2,[r0,#4]
STRCS   r3,[r0,#0]
BCC     |L0.40|
POP     {r4-r10,pc}
|L0.116|
DCD     0x9e3779b9

```

90.2.3 Optimizing Keil (thumb mode)

```

PUSH    {r1-r7,lr}
LDR     r5,|L0.84|
LDR     r3,[r0,#0]
LDR     r2,[r0,#4]
STR     r5,[sp,#8]
MOVS   r6,r1
LDM     r6,{r6,r7}
LDR     r5,[r1,#8]
STR     r6,[sp,#4]
LDR     r6,[r1,#0xc]
MOVS   r4,#0
MOVS   r1,r4
MOV     lr,r5
MOV     r12,r6
STR     r7,[sp,#0]
|L0.30|
LDR     r5,[sp,#8]
LSLS   r6,r2,#4
ADDS   r4,r4,r5
LDR     r5,[sp,#4]
LSRS   r7,r2,#5
ADDS   r5,r6,r5
ADDS   r6,r2,r4
EORS   r5,r5,r6
LDR     r6,[sp,#0]
ADDS   r1,r1,#1
ADDS   r6,r7,r6
EORS   r5,r5,r6
ADDS   r3,r5,r3
LSLS   r5,r3,#4
ADDS   r6,r3,r4
ADD     r5,r5,lr

```

```

EORS    r5,r5,r6
LSRS    r6,r3,#5
ADD     r6,r6,r12
EORS    r5,r5,r6
ADDS    r2,r5,r2
CMP     r1,#0x20
BCC     |L0.30|
STR     r3,[r0,#0]
STR     r2,[r0,#4]
POP     {r1-r7,pc}

```

```

|L0.84|
DCD     0x9e3779b9

```

90.2.4 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

Listing 90.2: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

```

f:
    ldr    w3, [x0]
    mov    w4, 0
    ldr    w2, [x0,4]
    ldr    w10, [x1]
    ldr    w9, [x1,4]
    ldr    w8, [x1,8]
    ldr    w7, [x1,12]
.L2:
    mov    w5, 31161
    add    w6, w10, w2, lsl 4
    movk   w5, 0x9e37, lsl 16
    add    w1, w9, w2, lsr 5
    add    w4, w4, w5
    eor    w1, w6, w1
    add    w5, w2, w4
    mov    w6, 14112
    eor    w1, w1, w5
    movk   w6, 0xc6ef, lsl 16
    add    w3, w3, w1
    cmp    w4, w6
    add    w5, w3, w4
    add    w6, w8, w3, lsl 4
    add    w1, w7, w3, lsr 5
    eor    w1, w6, w1
    eor    w1, w1, w5
    add    w2, w2, w1
    bne    .L2
    str    w3, [x0]
    str    w2, [x0,4]
    ret

```

90.3 Exercise 2.13

This is a well-known cryptoalgorithm of the past. How it's called?

90.3.1 Optimizing MSVC 2012

```

_in$ = 8 ; size = 2
_f
    movzx ecx, WORD PTR _in$[esp-4]
    lea   eax, DWORD PTR [ecx*4]
    xor   eax, ecx
    add   eax, eax
    xor   eax, ecx
    shl  eax, 2
    xor   eax, ecx

```

```

    and    eax, 32                ; 00000020H
    shl    eax, 10                ; 0000000aH
    shr    ecx, 1
    or     eax, ecx
    ret    0
_f      ENDP

```

90.3.2 Keil (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
    EOR    r1,r0,r0,LSR #2
    EOR    r1,r1,r0,LSR #3
    EOR    r1,r1,r0,LSR #5
    AND    r1,r1,#1
    LSR    r0,r0,#1
    ORR    r0,r0,r1,LSL #15
    BX     lr
ENDP

```

90.3.3 Keil (thumb mode)

```

f PROC
    LSRS   r1,r0,#2
    EORS   r1,r1,r0
    LSRS   r2,r0,#3
    EORS   r1,r1,r2
    LSRS   r2,r0,#5
    EORS   r1,r1,r2
    LSLS   r1,r1,#31
    LSRS   r0,r0,#1
    LSRS   r1,r1,#16
    ORRS   r0,r0,r1
    BX     lr
ENDP

```

90.3.4 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

```

f:
    uxth   w1, w0
    lsr    w2, w1, 3
    lsr    w0, w1, 1
    eor    w2, w2, w1, lsr 2
    eor    w2, w1, w2
    eor    w1, w2, w1, lsr 5
    and    w1, w1, 1
    orr    w0, w0, w1, lsl 15
    ret

```

90.4 Exercise 2.14

Another well-known algorithm. The function takes two variables and returning one.

90.4.1 MSVC 2012

```

_rt$1 = -4                ; size = 4
_rt$2 = 8                 ; size = 4
_x$ = 8                  ; size = 4
_y$ = 12                 ; size = 4
?f@YAIIZ PROC           ; f
    push   ecx
    push   esi

```

```

mov     esi, DWORD PTR _x$[esp+4]
test   esi, esi
jne    SHORT $LN7@f
mov     eax, DWORD PTR _y$[esp+4]
pop     esi
pop     ecx
ret     0
$LN7@f:
mov     edx, DWORD PTR _y$[esp+4]
mov     eax, esi
test   edx, edx
je     SHORT $LN8@f
or     eax, edx
push   edi
bsf    edi, eax
bsf    eax, esi
mov     ecx, eax
mov     DWORD PTR _rt$1[esp+12], eax
bsf    eax, edx
shr    esi, cl
mov     ecx, eax
shr    edx, cl
mov     DWORD PTR _rt$2[esp+8], eax
cmp    esi, edx
je     SHORT $LN22@f
$LN23@f:
jbe    SHORT $LN2@f
xor    esi, edx
xor    edx, esi
xor    esi, edx
$LN2@f:
cmp    esi, 1
je     SHORT $LN22@f
sub    edx, esi
bsf    eax, edx
mov     ecx, eax
shr    edx, cl
mov     DWORD PTR _rt$2[esp+8], eax
cmp    esi, edx
jne    SHORT $LN23@f
$LN22@f:
mov     ecx, edi
shl    esi, cl
pop     edi
mov     eax, esi
$LN8@f:
pop     esi
pop     ecx
ret     0
?f@@YAIIZ ENDP

```

90.4.2 Keil (ARM mode)

```

||f1|| PROC
CMP     r0,#0
RSB     r1,r0,#0
AND     r0,r0,r1
CLZ     r0,r0
RSBNE   r0,r0,#0x1f
BX      lr
ENDP

f PROC
MOVS   r2,r0
MOV    r3,r1
MOVEQ  r0,r1
CMPNE  r3,#0
PUSH   {lr}

```

```

    POPEQ    {pc}
    ORR     r0,r2,r3
    BL     ||f1||
    MOV     r12,r0
    MOV     r0,r2
    BL     ||f1||
    LSR     r2,r2,r0
|L0.196|
    MOV     r0,r3
    BL     ||f1||
    LSR     r0,r3,r0
    CMP     r2,r0
    EORHI   r1,r2,r0
    EORHI   r0,r0,r1
    EORHI   r2,r1,r0
    BEQ     |L0.240|
    CMP     r2,#1
    SUBNE   r3,r0,r2
    BNE     |L0.196|
|L0.240|
    LSL     r0,r2,r12
    POP     {pc}
    ENDP

```

90.4.3 GCC 4.6.3 for Raspberry Pi (ARM mode)

```

f:
    subs    r3, r0, #0
    beq     .L162
    cmp     r1, #0
    moveq   r1, r3
    beq     .L162
    orr     r2, r1, r3
    rsb    ip, r2, #0
    and     ip, ip, r2
    cmp     r2, #0
    rsb    r2, r3, #0
    and     r2, r2, r3
    clz    r2, r2
    rsb    r2, r2, #31
    clz    ip, ip
    rsbne  ip, ip, #31
    mov    r3, r3, lsr r2
    b      .L169
.L171:
    eorhi  r1, r1, r2
    eorhi  r3, r1, r2
    cmp    r3, #1
    rsb    r1, r3, r1
    beq    .L167
.L169:
    rsb    r0, r1, #0
    and    r0, r0, r1
    cmp    r1, #0
    clz    r0, r0
    mov    r2, r0
    rsbne  r2, r0, #31
    mov    r1, r1, lsr r2
    cmp    r3, r1
    eor    r2, r1, r3
    bne    .L171
.L167:
    mov    r1, r3, asl ip
.L162:
    mov    r0, r1
    bx    lr

```


90.4.4 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

Listing 90.3: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

```

f:
    mov     w3, w0
    mov     w0, w1
    cbz     w3, .L8
    mov     w0, w3
    cbz     w1, .L8
    mov     w6, 31
    orr     w5, w3, w1
    neg     w2, w3
    neg     w7, w5
    and     w2, w2, w3
    clz     w2, w2
    sub     w2, w6, w2
    and     w5, w7, w5
    mov     w4, w6
    clz     w5, w5
    lsr     w0, w3, w2
    sub     w5, w6, w5
    b       .L13
.L22:
    bls     .L12
    eor     w1, w1, w2
    eor     w0, w1, w2
.L12:
    cmp     w0, 1
    sub     w1, w1, w0
    beq     .L11
.L13:
    neg     w2, w1
    cmp     w1, wzr
    and     w2, w2, w1
    clz     w2, w2
    sub     w3, w4, w2
    csel    w2, w3, w2, ne
    lsr     w1, w1, w2
    cmp     w0, w1
    eor     w2, w1, w0
    bne     .L22
.L11:
    lsl     w0, w0, w5
.L8:
    ret

```

90.5 Exercise 2.15

Well-known algorithm again. What it does?

Take also notice that the code for x86 uses FPU, but SIMD-instructions are used instead in x64 code. That's OK: [27](#).

90.5.1 Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

__real@412e848000000000 DQ 0412e84800000000r ; 1e+006
__real@4010000000000000 DQ 0401000000000000r ; 4
__real@4008000000000000 DQ 0400800000000000r ; 3
__real@3f800000 DD 03f800000r ; 1

tmp$1 = 8
tmp$2 = 8
f PROC
    movsdx xmm3, QWORD PTR __real@4008000000000000
    movss xmm4, DWORD PTR __real@3f800000
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR ?RNG_state@?1??get_rand@@@9@9
    xor     ecx, ecx
    mov     r8d, 200000 ; 00030d40H

```

```

npad    2 ; align next label
$LL4@f:
imul   edx, 1664525           ; 0019660dH
add    edx, 1013904223       ; 3c6ef35fH
mov    eax, edx
and    eax, 8388607          ; 007ffffffH
imul   edx, 1664525           ; 0019660dH
bts    eax, 30
add    edx, 1013904223       ; 3c6ef35fH
mov    DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi], eax
mov    eax, edx
and    eax, 8388607          ; 007ffffffH
bts    eax, 30
movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi]
mov    DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi], eax
cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0
subsd  xmm0, xmm3
cvtpd2ps xmm2, xmm0
movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi]
cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0
mulss  xmm2, xmm2
subsd  xmm0, xmm3
cvtpd2ps xmm1, xmm0
mulss  xmm1, xmm1
addss  xmm1, xmm2
comiss xmm4, xmm1
jbe    SHORT $LN3@f
inc    ecx

$LN3@f:
imul   edx, 1664525           ; 0019660dH
add    edx, 1013904223       ; 3c6ef35fH
mov    eax, edx
and    eax, 8388607          ; 007ffffffH
imul   edx, 1664525           ; 0019660dH
bts    eax, 30
add    edx, 1013904223       ; 3c6ef35fH
mov    DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi], eax
mov    eax, edx
and    eax, 8388607          ; 007ffffffH
bts    eax, 30
movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi]
mov    DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi], eax
cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0
subsd  xmm0, xmm3
cvtpd2ps xmm2, xmm0
movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi]
cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0
mulss  xmm2, xmm2
subsd  xmm0, xmm3
cvtpd2ps xmm1, xmm0
mulss  xmm1, xmm1
addss  xmm1, xmm2
comiss xmm4, xmm1
jbe    SHORT $LN15@f
inc    ecx

$LN15@f:
imul   edx, 1664525           ; 0019660dH
add    edx, 1013904223       ; 3c6ef35fH
mov    eax, edx
and    eax, 8388607          ; 007ffffffH
imul   edx, 1664525           ; 0019660dH
bts    eax, 30
add    edx, 1013904223       ; 3c6ef35fH
mov    DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi], eax
mov    eax, edx
and    eax, 8388607          ; 007ffffffH
bts    eax, 30
movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi]
mov    DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi], eax
cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0

```

```

    subss    xmm0, xmm3
    cvtpd2ps xmm2, xmm0
    movss    xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi]
    cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0
    mulss    xmm2, xmm2
    subss    xmm0, xmm3
    cvtpd2ps xmm1, xmm0
    mulss    xmm1, xmm1
    addss    xmm1, xmm2
    comiss   xmm4, xmm1
    jbe     SHORT $LN16@f
    inc     ecx
$LN16@f:
    imul    edx, 1664525                ; 0019660dH
    add     edx, 1013904223            ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov     eax, edx
    and     eax, 8388607                ; 007ffffffH
    imul    edx, 1664525                ; 0019660dH
    bts     eax, 30
    add     edx, 1013904223            ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov     DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi], eax
    mov     eax, edx
    and     eax, 8388607                ; 007ffffffH
    bts     eax, 30
    movss   xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi]
    mov     DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi], eax
    cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0
    subss   xmm0, xmm3
    cvtpd2ps xmm2, xmm0
    movss   xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi]
    cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0
    mulss   xmm2, xmm2
    subss   xmm0, xmm3
    cvtpd2ps xmm1, xmm0
    mulss   xmm1, xmm1
    addss   xmm1, xmm2
    comiss   xmm4, xmm1
    jbe     SHORT $LN17@f
    inc     ecx
$LN17@f:
    imul    edx, 1664525                ; 0019660dH
    add     edx, 1013904223            ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov     eax, edx
    and     eax, 8388607                ; 007ffffffH
    imul    edx, 1664525                ; 0019660dH
    bts     eax, 30
    add     edx, 1013904223            ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov     DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi], eax
    mov     eax, edx
    and     eax, 8388607                ; 007ffffffH
    bts     eax, 30
    movss   xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$2[rsi]
    mov     DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi], eax
    cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0
    subss   xmm0, xmm3
    cvtpd2ps xmm2, xmm0
    movss   xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$1[rsi]
    cvtps2pd xmm0, xmm0
    mulss   xmm2, xmm2
    subss   xmm0, xmm3
    cvtpd2ps xmm1, xmm0
    mulss   xmm1, xmm1
    addss   xmm1, xmm2
    comiss   xmm4, xmm1
    jbe     SHORT $LN18@f
    inc     ecx
$LN18@f:
    dec     r8
    jne     $LL4@f
    movd   xmm0, ecx

```

```

mov     DWORD PTR ?RNG_state@?1??get_rand@@@9@9, edx
cvt dq2ps xmm0, xmm0
cvtps2pd xmm1, xmm0
mulsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4010000000000000
divsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@412e848000000000
cvtpd2ps xmm0, xmm1
ret     0
f:     ENDP

```

90.5.2 Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```

f1:
mov     eax, DWORD PTR v1.2084[rip]
imul   eax, eax, 1664525
add    eax, 1013904223
mov    DWORD PTR v1.2084[rip], eax
and    eax, 8388607
or     eax, 1073741824
mov    DWORD PTR [rsp-4], eax
movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR [rsp-4]
subss  xmm0, DWORD PTR .LC0[rip]
ret

f:
push   rbp
xor    ebp, ebp
push   rbx
xor    ebx, ebx
sub    rsp, 16

.L6:
xor    eax, eax
call   f1
xor    eax, eax
movss  DWORD PTR [rsp], xmm0
call   f1
movss  xmm1, DWORD PTR [rsp]
mulss  xmm0, xmm0
mulss  xmm1, xmm1
lea    eax, [rbx+1]
addss  xmm1, xmm0
movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR .LC1[rip]
ucomiss xmm0, xmm1
cmova  ebx, eax
add    ebp, 1
cmp    ebp, 1000000
jne    .L6
cvtsi2ss    xmm0, ebx
unpcklps   xmm0, xmm0
cvtps2pd   xmm0, xmm0
mulsd     xmm0, QWORD PTR .LC2[rip]
divsd     xmm0, QWORD PTR .LC3[rip]
add      rsp, 16
pop      rbx
pop      rbp
unpcklpd   xmm0, xmm0
cvtpd2ps   xmm0, xmm0
ret

v1.2084:
.long    305419896

.LC0:
.long    1077936128

.LC1:
.long    1065353216

.LC2:
.long    0
.long    1074790400

.LC3:
.long    0
.long    1093567616

```

90.5.3 Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 x86

```

f1:
    sub    esp, 4
    imul  eax, DWORD PTR v1.2023, 1664525
    add   eax, 1013904223
    mov   DWORD PTR v1.2023, eax
    and   eax, 8388607
    or    eax, 1073741824
    mov   DWORD PTR [esp], eax
    fld   DWORD PTR [esp]
    fsub  DWORD PTR .LC0
    add   esp, 4
    ret

f:
    push  esi
    mov   esi, 1000000
    push  ebx
    xor   ebx, ebx
    sub   esp, 16

.L7:
    call  f1
    fstp  DWORD PTR [esp]
    call  f1
    lea  eax, [ebx+1]
    fld  DWORD PTR [esp]
    fmul st, st(0)
    fxch st(1)
    fmul st, st(0)
    faddp st(1), st
    fld1
    fucomip st, st(1)
    fstp  st(0)
    cmova ebx, eax
    sub   esi, 1
    jne   .L7
    mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], ebx
    fild DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    fmul DWORD PTR .LC3
    fdiv DWORD PTR .LC4
    fstp DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    fld  DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    add  esp, 16
    pop  ebx
    pop  esi
    ret

v1.2023:
    .long 305419896

.LC0:
    .long 1077936128

.LC3:
    .long 1082130432

.LC4:
    .long 1232348160

```

90.5.4 Keil (ARM mode): Cortex-R4F CPU as target

```

f1 PROC
    LDR    r1, |L0.184|
    LDR    r0, [r1, #0] ; v1
    LDR    r2, |L0.188|
    VMOV.F32 s1, #3.00000000
    MUL    r0, r0, r2
    LDR    r2, |L0.192|
    ADD    r0, r0, r2
    STR    r0, [r1, #0] ; v1
    BFC   r0, #23, #9

```

```

    ORR    r0,r0,#0x40000000
    VMOV   s0,r0
    VSUB.F32 s0,s0,s1
    BX    lr
    ENDP

f
    PROC
    PUSH   {r4,r5,lr}
    MOV    r4,#0
    LDR    r5,|L0.196|
    MOV    r3,r4
|L0.68|
    BL     f1
    VMOV.F32 s2,s0
    BL     f1
    VMOV.F32 s1,s2
    ADD    r3,r3,#1
    VMUL.F32 s1,s1,s1
    VMLA.F32 s1,s0,s0
    VMOV   r0,s1
    CMP    r0,#0x3f800000
    ADDLT  r4,r4,#1
    CMP    r3,r5
    BLT    |L0.68|
    VMOV   s0,r4
    VMOV.F64 d1,#4.00000000
    VCVT.F32.S32 s0,s0
    VCVT.F64.F32 d0,s0
    VMUL.F64 d0,d0,d1
    VLDR   d1,|L0.200|
    VDIV.F64 d2,d0,d1
    VCVT.F32.F64 s0,d2
    POP    {r4,r5,pc}
    ENDP

|L0.184|
    DCD    ||.data||
|L0.188|
    DCD    0x0019660d
|L0.192|
    DCD    0x3c6ef35f
|L0.196|
    DCD    0x000f4240
|L0.200|
    DCFD   0x412e848000000000 ; 1000000

    DCD    0x00000000
    AREA  ||.data||, DATA, ALIGN=2
v1
    DCD    0x12345678

```

90.5.5 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

Listing 90.4: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

```

f1:
    adrp   x2, .LANCHOR0
    mov    w3, 26125
    mov    w0, 62303
    movk   w3, 0x19, lsl 16
    movk   w0, 0x3c6e, lsl 16
    ldr    w1, [x2,#:lo12:LANCHOR0]
    fmov   s0, 3.0e+0
    madd   w0, w1, w3, w0
    str    w0, [x2,#:lo12:LANCHOR0]
    and    w0, w0, 8388607
    orr    w0, w0, 1073741824
    fmov   s1, w0
    fsub   s0, s1, s0

```

```

    ret
main_function:
    adrp    x7, .LANCHOR0
    mov     w3, 16960
    movk   w3, 0xf, lsl 16
    mov     w2, 0
    fmov   s2, 3.0e+0
    ldr    w1, [x7,#:lo12:LANCHOR0]
    fmov   s3, 1.0e+0
.L5:
    mov     w6, 26125
    mov     w0, 62303
    movk   w6, 0x19, lsl 16
    movk   w0, 0x3c6e, lsl 16
    mov     w5, 26125
    mov     w4, 62303
    madd   w1, w1, w6, w0
    movk   w5, 0x19, lsl 16
    movk   w4, 0x3c6e, lsl 16
    and    w0, w1, 8388607
    add    w6, w2, 1
    orr    w0, w0, 1073741824
    madd   w1, w1, w5, w4
    fmov   s0, w0
    and    w0, w1, 8388607
    orr    w0, w0, 1073741824
    fmov   s1, w0
    fsub   s0, s0, s2
    fsub   s1, s1, s2
    fmul   s1, s1, s1
    fmadd  s0, s0, s0, s1
    fcmp   s0, s3
    csel   w2, w2, w6, pl
    subs   w3, w3, #1
    bne   .L5
    scvtf  s0, w2
    str    w1, [x7,#:lo12:LANCHOR0]
    fmov   d1, 4.0e+0
    fcvt   d0, s0
    fmul   d0, d0, d1
    ldr    d1, .LC0
    fdiv   d0, d0, d1
    fcvt   s0, d0
    ret
.LC0:
    .word  0
    .word  1093567616
v1:
    .word  1013904223
v2:
    .word  1664525
.LANCHOR0 = . + 0
v3.3095:
    .word  305419896

```

90.6 Exercise 2.16

Well-known function. What it computes? Why stack overflows if 4 and 2 are supplied at input? Are there any error?

90.6.1 Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

m$ = 48
n$ = 56
f   PROC
$LN14:
    push   rbx
    sub    rsp, 32

```

```

    mov     eax, edx
    mov     ebx, ecx
    test    ecx, ecx
    je      SHORT $LN11@f
$LL5@f:
    test    eax, eax
    jne     SHORT $LN1@f
    mov     eax, 1
    jmp     SHORT $LN12@f
$LN1@f:
    lea     edx, DWORD PTR [rax-1]
    mov     ecx, ebx
    call    f
$LN12@f:
    dec     ebx
    test    ebx, ebx
    jne     SHORT $LL5@f
$LN11@f:
    inc     eax
    add     rsp, 32
    pop     rbx
    ret     0
f        ENDP

```

90.6.2 Optimizing Keil (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    MOVS    r4,r0
    ADDEQ   r0,r1,#1
    POPEQ   {r4,pc}
    CMP     r1,#0
    MOVEQ   r1,#1
    SUBEQ   r0,r0,#1
    BEQ     |L0.48|
    SUB     r1,r1,#1
    BL      f
    MOV     r1,r0
    SUB     r0,r4,#1
|L0.48|
    POP     {r4,lr}
    B      f
    ENDP

```

90.6.3 Optimizing Keil (thumb mode)

```

f PROC
    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    MOVS    r4,r0
    BEQ     |L0.26|
    CMP     r1,#0
    BEQ     |L0.30|
    SUBS    r1,r1,#1
    BL      f
    MOVS    r1,r0
|L0.18|
    SUBS    r0,r4,#1
    BL      f
    POP     {r4,pc}
|L0.26|
    ADDS    r0,r1,#1
    POP     {r4,pc}
|L0.30|
    MOVS    r1,#1
    B      |L0.18|
    ENDP

```


90.6.4 Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

Listing 90.5: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

```

f:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -48]!
    add    x29, sp, 0
    str    x19, [sp,16]
    str    w0, [x29,44]
    str    w1, [x29,40]
    ldr    w0, [x29,44]
    cmp    w0, wzr
    bne    .L2
    ldr    w0, [x29,40]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    b     .L3
.L2:
    ldr    w0, [x29,40]
    cmp    w0, wzr
    bne    .L4
    ldr    w0, [x29,44]
    sub    w0, w0, #1
    mov    w1, 1
    bl    ack
    b     .L3
.L4:
    ldr    w0, [x29,44]
    sub    w19, w0, #1
    ldr    w0, [x29,40]
    sub    w1, w0, #1
    ldr    w0, [x29,44]
    bl    ack
    mov    w1, w0
    mov    w0, w19
    bl    ack
.L3:
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 48
    ret

```

90.6.5 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

Optimizing GCC generates much more code. Why?

Listing 90.6: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

```

ack:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -160]!
    add    x29, sp, 0
    stp    d8, d9, [sp,96]
    stp    x19, x20, [sp,16]
    stp    d10, d11, [sp,112]
    stp    x21, x22, [sp,32]
    stp    d12, d13, [sp,128]
    stp    x23, x24, [sp,48]
    stp    d14, d15, [sp,144]
    stp    x25, x26, [sp,64]
    stp    x27, x28, [sp,80]
    cbz    w0, .L2
    sub    w0, w0, #1
    fmov   s10, w0
    b     .L4
.L46:
    fmov   w0, s10
    mov    w1, 1
    sub    w0, w0, #1
    fmov   s10, w0
    fmov   w0, s13
    cbz    w0, .L2
.L4:

```

```

    fmov    s13, s10
    cbz    w1, .L46
    sub    w1, w1, #1
    fmov    s11, s10
    b      .L7
.L48:
    fmov    w0, s11
    mov    w1, 1
    sub    w0, w0, #1
    fmov    s11, w0
    fmov    w0, s14
    cbz    w0, .L47
.L7:
    fmov    s14, s11
    cbz    w1, .L48
    sub    w1, w1, #1
    fmov    s12, s11
    b      .L10
.L50:
    fmov    w0, s12
    mov    w1, 1
    sub    w0, w0, #1
    fmov    s12, w0
    fmov    w0, s15
    cbz    w0, .L49
.L10:
    fmov    s15, s12
    cbz    w1, .L50
    sub    w1, w1, #1
    fmov    s8, s12
    b      .L13
.L52:
    fmov    w0, s8
    mov    w1, 1
    sub    w0, w0, #1
    fmov    s8, w0
    fmov    w0, s9
    cbz    w0, .L51
.L13:
    fmov    s9, s8
    cbz    w1, .L52
    sub    w1, w1, #1
    fmov    w22, s8
    b      .L16
.L54:
    mov    w1, 1
    sub    w22, w22, #1
    cbz    w28, .L53
.L16:
    mov    w28, w22
    cbz    w1, .L54
    sub    w1, w1, #1
    mov    w21, w22
    b      .L19
.L56:
    mov    w1, 1
    sub    w21, w21, #1
    cbz    w24, .L55
.L19:
    mov    w24, w21
    cbz    w1, .L56
    sub    w1, w1, #1
    mov    w20, w21
    b      .L22
.L58:
    mov    w1, 1
    sub    w20, w20, #1
    cbz    w25, .L57
.L22:
    mov    w25, w20

```

```

        cbz    w1, .L58
        sub    w1, w1, #1
        mov    w26, w20
        b     .L25
.L60:
        mov    w1, 1
        sub    w26, w26, #1
        cbz    w27, .L59
.L25:
        mov    w27, w26
        cbz    w1, .L60
        sub    w1, w1, #1
        mov    w19, w26
        b     .L28
.L62:
        mov    w23, w19
        mov    w1, 1
        sub    w19, w19, #1
        cbz    w23, .L61
.L28:
        add    w0, w19, 1
        cbz    w1, .L62
        sub    w1, w1, #1
        mov    w23, w19
        sub    w19, w19, #1
        bl    ack
        mov    w1, w0
        cbnz   w23, .L28
.L61:
        add    w1, w1, 1
        sub    w26, w26, #1
        cbnz   w27, .L25
.L59:
        add    w1, w1, 1
        sub    w20, w20, #1
        cbnz   w25, .L22
.L57:
        add    w1, w1, 1
        sub    w21, w21, #1
        cbnz   w24, .L19
.L55:
        add    w1, w1, 1
        sub    w22, w22, #1
        cbnz   w28, .L16
.L53:
        fmov   w0, s8
        add    w1, w1, 1
        sub    w0, w0, #1
        fmov   s8, w0
        fmov   w0, s9
        cbnz   w0, .L13
.L51:
        fmov   w0, s12
        add    w1, w1, 1
        sub    w0, w0, #1
        fmov   s12, w0
        fmov   w0, s15
        cbnz   w0, .L10
.L49:
        fmov   w0, s11
        add    w1, w1, 1
        sub    w0, w0, #1
        fmov   s11, w0
        fmov   w0, s14
        cbnz   w0, .L7
.L47:
        fmov   w0, s10
        add    w1, w1, 1
        sub    w0, w0, #1
        fmov   s10, w0

```

```

    fmov    w0, s13
    cbnz   w0, .L4
.L2:
    add    w0, w1, 1
    ldp    d8, d9, [sp,96]
    ldp    x19, x20, [sp,16]
    ldp    d10, d11, [sp,112]
    ldp    x21, x22, [sp,32]
    ldp    d12, d13, [sp,128]
    ldp    x23, x24, [sp,48]
    ldp    d14, d15, [sp,144]
    ldp    x25, x26, [sp,64]
    ldp    x27, x28, [sp,80]
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 160
    ret

```

90.7 Exercise 2.17

This program prints some information to `stdout`, each time different. What is it?

Compiled binaries:

- Linux x64: http://beginners.re/exercises/2/17/17_Linux_x64.tar
- Mac OS X: http://beginners.re/exercises/2/17/17_MacOSX_x64.tar
- Win32: http://beginners.re/exercises/2/17/17_win32.exe
- Win64: http://beginners.re/exercises/2/17/17_win64.exe

As of Windows versions, you may need to install [MSVC 2012 redistrib.](#)

90.8 Exercise 2.18

This program requires password. Find it.

By the way, multiple passwords may work. Try to find more.

As an additional exercise, try to change the password by patching executable file.

- Win32: <http://beginners.re/exercises/2/18/password2.exe>
- Linux x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/2/18/password2_Linux_x86.tar
- Mac OS X: http://beginners.re/exercises/2/18/password2_MacOSX64.tar

90.9 Exercise 2.19

The same as in exercise 2.18.

- Win32: <http://beginners.re/exercises/2/19/password3.exe>
- Linux x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/2/19/password3_Linux_x86.tar
- Mac OS X: http://beginners.re/exercises/2/19/password3_MacOSX64.tar

Chapter 91

Level 3

For solving level 3 tasks, you'll probably need considerable amount of time, maybe up to one day.

91.1 Exercise 3.2

There is a small executable file with a well-known cryptosystem inside. Try to identify it.

- Windows x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/2/unknown_cryptosystem.exe
- Linux x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/2/unknown_encryption_linux86.tar
- Mac OS X (x64): http://beginners.re/exercises/3/2/unknown_encryption_MacOSX.tar

91.2 Exercise 3.3

There is a small executable file, some utility. It opens another file, reads it, calculate something and prints a float number. Try to understand what it do.

- Windows x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/3/unknown_utility_2_3.exe
- Linux x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/3/unknown_utility_2_3_Linux86.tar
- Mac OS X (x64): http://beginners.re/exercises/3/3/unknown_utility_2_3_MacOSX.tar

91.3 Exercise 3.4

There is an utility which encrypts/decrypts files, by password. There is an encrypted text file, password is unknown. Encrypted file is a text in English language. The utility uses relatively strong cryptosystem, nevertheless, it was implemented with a serious blunder. Since the mistake present, it is possible to decrypt the file with a little effort.

Try to find the mistake and decrypt the file.

- Windows x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/4/amateur_cryptor.exe
- Text file: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/4/text_encrypted

91.4 Exercise 3.5

This is software copy protection imitation, which uses key file. The key file contain user (or customer) name and serial number.

There are two tasks:

- (Easy) with the help of [tracer](#) or any other debugger, force the program to accept changed key file.
- (Medium) your goal is to modify user name to another, however, it is not allowed to patch the program.
- Windows x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/5/super_mega_protection.exe
- Linux x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/5/super_mega_protection.tar
- Mac OS X (x64) http://beginners.re/exercises/3/5/super_mega_protection_MacOSX.tar
- Key file: <http://beginners.re/exercises/3/5/sample.key>

91.5 Exercise 3.6

Here is a very primitive toy web-server, supporting only static files, without CGI¹, etc. At least 4 vulnerabilities are left here intentionally. Try to find them all and exploit them in order for breaking into a remote host.

- Windows x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/6/webserv_win32.rar
- Linux x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/6/webserv_Linux_x86.tar
- Mac OS X (x64): http://beginners.re/exercises/3/6/webserv_MacOSX_x64.tar

91.6 Exercise 3.8

It's a well known data compression algorithm. However, due to mistake (or typo), it decompress incorrectly. Here we can see this bug in these examples.

This is a text used as a source: <http://beginners.re/exercises/3/8/test.txt>

This is a text compressed correctly: <http://beginners.re/exercises/3/8/test.compressed>

This is incorrectly uncompressed text: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/8/test.uncompressed_incorrectly.

Try to find and fix bug. With some effort, it can be done even by patching.

- Windows x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/8/compressor_win32.exe
- Linux x86: http://beginners.re/exercises/3/8/compressor_linux86.tar
- Mac OS X (x64): http://beginners.re/exercises/3/8/compressor_MacOSX64.tar

¹Common Gateway Interface

Chapter 92

crackme / keygenme

Couple of my keygenmes:

<http://crackmes.de/users/yonkie/>

Afterword

Chapter 93

Questions?

Do not hesitate to mail any questions to the author: <dennis(a)yurichev.com>
There is also supporting forum, you may ask any questions there :

<http://forum.yurichev.com/>

Please, also do not hesitate to send me any corrections (including grammar ones (you see how horrible my English is?)), etc.

Appendix

Appendix A

x86

A.1 Terminology

Common for 16-bit (8086/80286), 32-bit (80386, etc), 64-bit.

byte 8-bit. DB assembly directive is used for defining variables and array of bytes. Bytes are passed in 8-bit part of registers: AL/BL/CL/DL/AH/BH/CH/DH/SIL/DIL/R*L.

word 16-bit. DW assembly directive ——. Words are passed in 16-bit part of registers: AX/BX/CX/DX/SI/DI/R*W.

double word (“dword”) 32-bit. DD assembly directive ——. Double words are passed in registers (x86) or in 32-bit part of registers (x64). In 16-bit code, double words are passed in 16-bit register pairs.

quad word (“qword”) 64-bit. DQ assembly directive ——. In 32-bit environment, quad words are passed in 32-bit register pairs.

tbyte (10 bytes) 80-bit or 10 bytes (used for IEEE 754 FPU registers).

paragraph (16 bytes)— term was popular in MS-DOS environment.

Data types of the same width (BYTE, WORD, DWORD) are also the same in Windows [API](#).

A.2 General purpose registers

It is possible to access many registers by byte or 16-bit word parts. It is all inheritance from older Intel CPUs (up to 8-bit 8080) still supported for backward compatibility. Older 8-bit CPUs (8080) had 16-bit registers divided by two. Programs written for 8080 could access low byte part of 16-bit register, high byte part or a 16-bit register as a whole. Probably, this feature was left in 8086 as a helper for easier porting. This feature is usually not present in [RISC](#) CPUs.

Registers prefixed with R- appeared in x86-84, and those prefixed with E- — in 80386. Thus, R-registers are 64-bit, and E-registers — 32-bit.

8 more [GPR](#)’s were added in x86-86: R8-R15.

N.B.: In the Intel manuals byte parts of these registers are prefixed by *L*, e.g.: *R8L*, but [IDA](#) names these registers by adding *B* suffix, e.g.: *R8B*.

A.2.1 RAX/EAX/AX/AL

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RAX ^{x64}							
						EAX	
						AX	
						AH	AL

[AKA](#) accumulator. The result of function if usually returned via this register.

A.2.2 RBX/EBX/BX/BL

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RBX ^{x64}							
						EBX	
						BX	
						BH	BL

A.2.3 RCX/ECX/CX/CL

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RCX ^{x64}							
				ECX			
						CX	
						CH	CL

AKA counter: in this role it is used in REP prefixed instructions and also in shift instructions (SHL/SHR/RxL/RxR).

A.2.4 RDX/EDX/DX/DL

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RDX ^{x64}							
				EDX			
						DX	
						DH	DL

A.2.5 RSI/ESI/SI/SIL

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RSI ^{x64}							
				ESI			
						SI	
						SIL ^{x64}	

AKA “source”. Used as source in the instructions REP MOV^Sx, REP CMPS^x.

A.2.6 RDI/EDI/DI/DIL

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RDI ^{x64}							
				EDI			
						DI	
						DIL ^{x64}	

AKA “destination”. Used as a pointer to destination place in the instructions REP MOV^Sx, REP STOS^x.

A.2.7 R8/R8D/R8W/R8L

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R8							
				R8D			
						R8W	
						R8L	

A.2.8 R9/R9D/R9W/R9L

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R9							
				R9D			
						R9W	
						R9L	

A.2.9 R10/R10D/R10W/R10L

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R10							
				R10D			
						R10W	
						R10L	

A.2.10 R11/R11D/R11W/R11L

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R11							
				R11D			
						R11W	
							R11L

A.2.11 R12/R12D/R12W/R12L

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R12							
				R12D			
						R12W	
							R12L

A.2.12 R13/R13D/R13W/R13L

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R13							
				R13D			
						R13W	
							R13L

A.2.13 R14/R14D/R14W/R14L

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R14							
				R14D			
						R14W	
							R14L

A.2.14 R15/R15D/R15W/R15L

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R15							
				R15D			
						R15W	
							R15L

A.2.15 RSP/ESP/SP/SPL

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RSP							
				ESP			
						SP	
							SPL

[AKA stack pointer](#). Usually points to the current stack except those cases when it is not yet initialized.

A.2.16 RBP/EBP/BP/BPL

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RBP							
				EBP			
						BP	
							BPL

[AKA frame pointer](#). Usually used for local variables and arguments of function accessing. More about it: [\(7.1.2\)](#).

A.2.17 RIP/EIP/IP

7th (byte number)	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RIP ^{x64}							
				EIP			
						IP	

AKA “instruction pointer”¹. Usually always points to the current instruction. Cannot be modified, however, it is possible to do (which is equivalent to):

```
MOV EAX, ...
JMP EAX
```

Or:

```
PUSH value
RET
```

A.2.18 CS/DS/ES/SS/FS/GS

16-bit registers containing code selector (CS), data selector (DS), stack selector (SS).

FS in win32 points to TLS, GS took this role in Linux. It is done for faster access to the TLS and other structures like TIB.

In the past, these registers were used as segment registers (84).

A.2.19 Flags register

AKA EFLAGS.

Bit (mask)	Abbreviation (meaning)	Description
0 (1)	CF (Carry)	The CLC/STC/CMC instructions are used for setting/resetting/toggling this flag
2 (4)	PF (Parity)	(17.3.1).
4 (0x10)	AF (Adjust)	
6 (0x40)	ZF (Zero)	Setting to 0 if the last operation's result was 0.
7 (0x80)	SF (Sign)	
8 (0x100)	TF (Trap)	Used for debugging. If turned on, an exception will be generated after each instruction execution.
9 (0x200)	IF (Interrupt enable)	Are interrupts enabled. The CLI/STI instructions are used for the flag setting/resetting
10 (0x400)	DF (Direction)	A directions is set for the REP MOV _S x, REP CMPS _x , REP LODS _x , REP SCAS _x instructions. The CLD/STD instructions are used for the flag setting/resetting
11 (0x800)	OF (Overflow)	
12, 13 (0x3000)	IOPL (I/O privilege level) ⁸⁰²⁸⁶	
14 (0x4000)	NT (Nested task) ⁸⁰²⁸⁶	
16 (0x10000)	RF (Resume) ⁸⁰³⁸⁶	Used for debugging. CPU will ignore hardware breakpoint in DR _x if the flag is set.
17 (0x20000)	VM (Virtual 8086 mode) ⁸⁰³⁸⁶	
18 (0x40000)	AC (Alignment check) ⁸⁰⁴⁸⁶	
19 (0x80000)	VIF (Virtual interrupt) ^{Pentium}	
20 (0x100000)	VIP (Virtual interrupt pending) ^{Pentium}	
21 (0x200000)	ID (Identification) ^{Pentium}	

All the rest flags are reserved.

¹Sometimes also called “program counter”

A.3 FPU-registers

8 80-bit registers working as a stack: ST(0)-ST(7). N.B.: IDA calls ST(0) as just ST. Numbers are stored in the IEEE 754 format. *long double* value format:



(S—sign, I—integer part)

A.3.1 Control Word

Register controlling behaviour of the FPU.

Bit	Abbreviation (meaning)	Description
0	IM (Invalid operation Mask)	
1	DM (Denormalized operand Mask)	
2	ZM (Zero divide Mask)	
3	OM (Overflow Mask)	
4	UM (Underflow Mask)	
5	PM (Precision Mask)	
7	IEM (Interrupt Enable Mask)	Exceptions enabling, 1 by default (disabled)
8, 9	PC (Precision Control)	00 – 24 bits (REAL4) 10 – 53 bits (REAL8) 11 – 64 bits (REAL10)
10, 11	RC (Rounding Control)	00 – (by default) round to nearest 01 – round toward $-\infty$ 10 – round toward $+\infty$ 11 – round toward 0
12	IC (Infinity Control)	0 – (by default) treat $+\infty$ and $-\infty$ as unsigned 1 – respect both $+\infty$ and $-\infty$

The PM, UM, OM, ZM, DM, IM flags are defining if to generate exception in case of corresponding errors.

A.3.2 Status Word

Read-only register.

Bit	Abbreviation (meaning)	Description
15	B (Busy)	Is FPU do something (1) or results are ready (0)
14	C3	
13, 12, 11	TOP	points to the currently zeroth register
10	C2	
9	C1	
8	C0	
7	IR (Interrupt Request)	
6	SF (Stack Fault)	
5	P (Precision)	
4	U (Underflow)	
3	O (Overflow)	
2	Z (Zero)	
1	D (Denormalized)	
0	I (Invalid operation)	

The SF, P, U, O, Z, D, I bits are signaling about exceptions.

About the C3, C2, C1, C0 read more: (17.3.1).

N.B.: When ST(x) is used, FPU adds x to TOP (by modulo 8) and that is how it gets internal register's number.

A.3.3 Tag Word

The register has current information about number's registers usage.

Bit	Abbreviation (meaning)
15, 14	Tag(7)
13, 12	Tag(6)
11, 10	Tag(5)
9, 8	Tag(4)
7, 6	Tag(3)
5, 4	Tag(2)
3, 2	Tag(1)
1, 0	Tag(0)

For each tag:

- 00 – The register contains a non-zero value
- 01 – The register contains 0
- 10 – The register contains a special value (NaN², ∞, or denormal)
- 11 – The register is empty

A.4 SIMD-registers

A.4.1 MMX-registers

8 64-bit registers: MM0..MM7.

A.4.2 SSE and AVX-registers

SSE: 8 128-bit registers: XMM0..XMM7. In the x86-64 8 more registers were added: XMM8..XMM15.

AVX is the extension of all these registers to 256 bits.

A.5 Debugging registers

Used for hardware breakpoints control.

- DR0 – address of breakpoint #1
- DR1 – address of breakpoint #2
- DR2 – address of breakpoint #3
- DR3 – address of breakpoint #4
- DR6 – a cause of break is reflected here
- DR7 – breakpoint types are set here

A.5.1 DR6

Bit (mask)	Description
0 (1)	B0 – breakpoint #1 was triggered
1 (2)	B1 – breakpoint #2 was triggered
2 (4)	B2 – breakpoint #3 was triggered
3 (8)	B3 – breakpoint #4 was triggered
13 (0x2000)	BD – modification attempt of one of DRx registers. may be raised if GD is enabled
14 (0x4000)	BS – single step breakpoint (TF flag was set in EFLAGS). Highest priority. Other bits may also be set.
15 (0x8000)	BT (task switch flag)

N.B. Single step breakpoint is a breakpoint occurring after each instruction. It can be enabled by setting TF in EFLAGS (A.2.19).

²Not a Number

A.5.2 DR7

Breakpoint types are set here.

Bit (mask)	Description
0 (1)	L0 – enable breakpoint #1 for the current task
1 (2)	G0 – enable breakpoint #1 for all tasks
2 (4)	L1 – enable breakpoint #2 for the current task
3 (8)	G1 – enable breakpoint #2 for all tasks
4 (0x10)	L2 – enable breakpoint #3 for the current task
5 (0x20)	G2 – enable breakpoint #3 for all tasks
6 (0x40)	L3 – enable breakpoint #4 for the current task
7 (0x80)	G3 – enable breakpoint #4 for all tasks
8 (0x100)	LE – not supported since P6
9 (0x200)	GE – not supported since P6
13 (0x2000)	GD – exception will be raised if any MOV instruction tries to modify one of DRx registers
16,17 (0x30000)	breakpoint #1: R/W – type
18,19 (0xC0000)	breakpoint #1: LEN – length
20,21 (0x3000000)	breakpoint #2: R/W – type
22,23 (0xC000000)	breakpoint #2: LEN – length
24,25 (0x30000000)	breakpoint #3: R/W – type
26,27 (0xC0000000)	breakpoint #3: LEN – length
28,29 (0x300000000)	breakpoint #4: R/W – type
30,31 (0xC00000000)	breakpoint #4: LEN – length

Breakpoint type is to be set as follows (R/W):

- 00 – instruction execution
- 01 – data writes
- 10 – I/O reads or writes (not available in user-mode)
- 11 – on data reads or writes

N.B.: breakpoint type for data reads is absent, indeed.

Breakpoint length is to be set as follows (LEN):

- 00 – one-byte
- 01 – two-byte
- 10 – undefined for 32-bit mode, eight-byte in 64-bit mode
- 11 – four-byte

A.6 Instructions

Instructions marked as (M) are not usually generated by compiler: if you see it, it is probably hand-written piece of assembly code, or this is compiler intrinsic (80).

Only most frequently used instructions are listed here. Read [Int13] or [AMD13a] for a full documentation.

Should one memorize instruction opcodes? No, only those which are used for code patching (79.2). All the rest opcodes are not needed to be memorized.

A.6.1 Prefixes

LOCK force CPU to make exclusive access to the RAM in multiprocessor environment. For the sake of simplification, it can be said that when instruction with this prefix is executed, all other CPUs in multiprocessor system is stopped. Most often it is used for critical sections, semaphores, mutexes. Commonly used with ADD, AND, BTR, BTS, CMPXCHG, OR, XADD, XOR. Read more about critical sections (59.4).

REP used with MOV_Sx and STOS_x: execute the instruction in loop, counter is located in the CX/ECX/RX register. For detailed description, read more about MOV_Sx (A.6.2) and STOS_x (A.6.2) instructions.

Instructions prefixed by REP are sensitive to DF flag, which is used to set direction.

REPE/REPNE (AKA REPZ/REPNZ) used with CMPSx and SCASx: execute the last instruction in loop, count is set in the CX/ECX/RCX register. It will terminate prematurely if ZF is 0 (REPE) or if ZF is 1 (REPNE).

For detailed description, read more about CMPSx (A.6.3) and SCASx (A.6.2) instructions.

Instructions prefixed by REPE/REPNE are sensitive to DF flag, which is used to set direction.

A.6.2 Most frequently used instructions

These can be memorized in the first place.

ADC (*add with carry*) add values, [increment](#) result if CF flag is set. often used for addition of large values, for example, to add two 64-bit values in 32-bit environment using two ADD and ADC instructions, for example:

```
; work with 64-bit values: add val1 to val2.
; .lo mean lowest 32 bits, .hi means highest.
ADD val1.lo, val2.lo
ADC val1.hi, val2.hi ; use CF set or cleared at the previous instruction
```

One more example: [24](#).

ADD add two values

AND logical “and”

CALL call another function: PUSH *address_after_CALL_instruction*; JMP *label*

CMP compare values and set flags, the same as SUB but no results writing

DEC [decrement](#). CF flag is not touched.

IMUL signed multiply

INC [increment](#). CF flag is not touched.

JCXZ, JECXZ, JRCXZ (M) jump if CX/ECX/RCX=0

JMP jump to another address. Opcode has [jump offset](#).

Jcc (where cc—condition code)

A lot of instructions has synonyms (denoted with AKA), this was done for convenience. Synonymous instructions are translating into the same opcode. Opcode has [jump offset](#).

JAE [AKA](#) JNC: jump if above or equal (unsigned): CF=0

JA [AKA](#) JNBE: jump if greater (unsigned): CF=0 and ZF=0

JBE jump if lesser or equal (unsigned): CF=1 or ZF=1

JB [AKA](#) JC: jump if below (unsigned): CF=1

JC [AKA](#) JB: jump if CF=1

JE [AKA](#) JZ: jump if equal or zero: ZF=1

JGE jump if greater or equal (signed): SF=OF

JG jump if greater (signed): ZF=0 and SF=OF

JLE jump if lesser or equal (signed): ZF=1 or SF≠OF

JL jump if lesser (signed): SF≠OF

JNAE [AKA](#) JC: jump if not above or equal (unsigned) CF=1

JNA jump if not above (unsigned) CF=1 and ZF=1

JNBE jump if not below or equal (unsigned): CF=0 and ZF=0

JNB [AKA](#) JNC: jump if not below (unsigned): CF=0

JNC [AKA](#) JAE: jump CF=0 synonymous to JNB.

JNE [AKA](#) JNZ: jump if not equal or not zero: ZF=0

JNGE jump if not greater or equal (signed): SF≠OF

JNG jump if not greater (signed): ZF=1 or SF≠OF

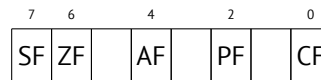
JNLE jump if not lesser (signed): ZF=0 and SF=OF

JNL jump if not lesser (signed): SF=OF

JNO jump if not overflow: OF=0

JNS jump if SF flag is cleared
JNZ *AKA* JNE: jump if not equal or not zero: ZF=0
JO jump if overflow: OF=1
JPO jump if PF flag is cleared (Jump Parity Odd)
JP *AKA* JPE: jump if PF flag is set
JS jump if SF flag is set
JZ *AKA* JE: jump if equal or zero: ZF=1

LAHF copy some flag bits to AH:



LEAVE equivalent of the MOV ESP, EBP and POP EBP instruction pair—in other words, this instruction sets the [stack pointer](#) (ESP) back and restores the EBP register to its initial state.

LEA (*Load Effective Address*) form address

This instruction was intended not for values summing and multiplication but for address forming, e.g., for forming address of array element by adding array address, element index, with multiplication of element size³.

So, the difference between MOV and LEA is that MOV forms memory address and loads value from memory or stores it there, but LEA just forms an address.

But nevertheless, it is can be used for any other calculations.

LEA is convenient because the computations performing by it is not alter CPU flags. This may be very important for [OOE](#) processors (to make less count of data dependencies).

```
int f(int a, int b)
{
    return a*8+b;
};
```

Listing A.1: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_b$ = 12 ; size = 4
_f PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [eax+ecx*8]
    ret     0
_f ENDP
```

Intel C++ uses LEA even more:

```
int f1(int a)
{
    return a*13;
};
```

Listing A.2: Intel C++ 2011

```
_f1 PROC NEAR
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [4+esp] ; ecx = a
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+ecx*8] ; edx = a*9
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [edx+ecx*4] ; eax = a*9 + a*4 = a*13
    ret
```

These two instructions instead of one IMUL will perform faster.

³See also: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Addressing_mode

MOVSB/MOVSW/MOVSD/MOVSQ copy byte/ 16-bit word/ 32-bit word/ 64-bit word address of which is in the SI/ESI/RSI into the place address of which is in the DI/EDI/RDI.

Together with REP prefix, it will repeated in loop, count is stored in the CX/ECX/RCX register: it works like memcpy() in C. If block size is known to compiler on compile stage, memcpy() is often inlined into short code fragment using REP MOVSB, sometimes even as several instructions.

memcpy(EDI, ESI, 15) equivalent is:

```

; copy 15 bytes from ESI to EDI
CLD      ; set direction to "forward"
MOV ECX, 3
REP MOVSD ; copy 12 bytes
MOVSW   ; copy 2 more bytes
MOVSB   ; copy remaining byte

```

(Supposedly, it will work faster then copying 15 bytes using just one REP MOVSB).

MOVSX load with sign extension see also: [\(15.1.1\)](#)

MOVZX load and clear all the rest bits see also: [\(15.1.1\)](#)

MOV load value. this instruction was named awry resulting confusion (data are not moved but rather copied), in other architectures the same instructions is usually named "LOAD" or something like that.

One important thing: if to set low 16-bit part of 32-bit register in 32-bit mode, high 16 bits will remain as they were. But if to modify low 32-bit of register in 64-bit mode, high 32 bits of registers will be cleared.

Supposedly, it was done for x86-64 code porting simplification.

MUL unsigned multiply

NEG negation: $op = -op$

NOP **NOP**. Opcode is 0x90, so it is in fact mean XCHG EAX, EAX idle instruction. This means, x86 do not have dedicated **NOP** instruction (as in many [RISC](#)). More examples of such operations: [\(78\)](#).

NOP may be generated by compiler for aligning labels on 16-byte boundary. Another very popular usage of **NOP** is to replace manually (patch) some instruction like conditional jump to **NOP** in order to disable its execution.

NOT $op1: op1 = \neg op1$. logical inversion

OR logical "or"

POP get value from the stack: $value = SS:[ESP]; ESP = ESP + 4$ (or 8)

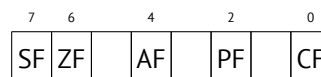
PUSH push value to stack: $ESP = ESP - 4$ (or 8); $SS:[ESP] = value$

RET return from subroutine: **POP tmp; JMP tmp**.

In fact, RET is a assembly language macro, in Windows and *NIX environment is translating into RETN ("return near") or, in MS-DOS times, where memory was addressed differently [\(84\)](#), into RETF ("return far").

RET may have operand. Its algorithm then will be: **POP tmp; ADD ESP op1; JMP tmp**. RET with operand usually end functions with *stdcall* calling convention, see also: [55.2](#).

SAHF copy bits from AH to CPU flags:



SBB (*subtraction with borrow*) subtract values, [decrement](#) result if CF flag is set. often used for subtraction of large values, for example, to subtract two 64-bit values in 32-bit environment using two SUB and SBB instructions, for example:

```

; work with 64-bit values: subtract val2 from val1.
; .lo mean lowest 32 bits, .hi means highest.
SUB val1.lo, val2.lo
SBB val1.hi, val2.hi ; use CF set or cleared at the previous instruction

```

One more example: [24](#).

SCASB/SCASW/SCASD/SCASQ (M) compare byte/ 16-bit word/ 32-bit word/ 64-bit word stored in the AX/EAX/RAX with a variable address of which is in the DI/EDI/RDI. Set flags as CMP does.

This instruction is often used with REPNE prefix: continue to scan a buffer until a special value stored in AX/EAX/RAX is found. Hence "NE" in REPNE: continue to scan if compared values are not equal and stop when equal.

It is often used as strlen() C standard function, to determine ASCII string length:

Example:

```
lea    edi, string
mov    ecx, 0FFFFFFFh ; scan 2^32-1 bytes, i.e., almost "infinitely"
xor    eax, eax      ; 0 is the terminator
repne scasb
add    edi, 0FFFFFFFh ; correct it

; now EDI points to the last character of the ASCII string.

; let's determine string length
; current ECX = -1-strlen

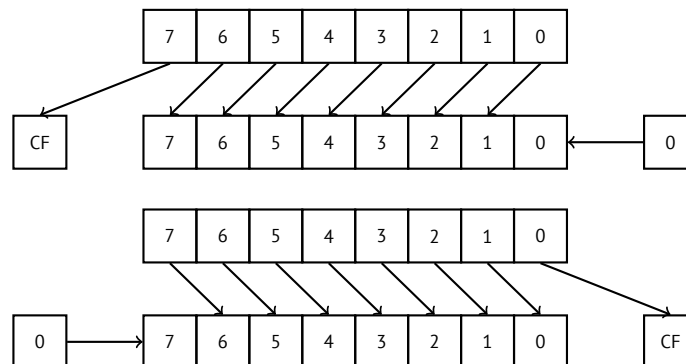
not    ecx
dec    ecx

; now ECX contain string length
```

If to use different AX/EAX/RAX value, the function will act as memchr() standard C function, i.e., it will find specific byte.

SHL shift value left

SHR shift value right:



This instruction is frequently used for multiplication and division by 2^n . Another very frequent application is bit fields processing: 19.

SHRD op1, op2, op3: shift value in op2 right by op3 bits, taking bits from op1.

Example: 24.

STOSB/STOSW/STOSD/STOSQ store byte/ 16-bit word/ 32-bit word/ 64-bit word from AX/EAX/RAX into the place address of which is in the DI/EDI/RDI.

Together with REP prefix, it will repeated in loop, count is stored in the CX/ECX/RX register: it works like memset() in C. If block size is known to compiler on compile stage, memset() is often inlined into short code fragment using REP MOVSB, sometimes even as several instructions.

memset(EDI, 0xAA, 15) equivalent is:

```
; store 15 0xAA bytes to EDI
CLD      ; set direction to "forward"
MOV EAX, 0AAAAAAAAh
MOV ECX, 3
REP STOSD ; write 12 bytes
STOSW   ; write 2 more bytes
STOSB   ; write remaining byte
```

(Supposedly, it will work faster then storing 15 bytes using just one REP STOSB).

SUB subtract values. frequently occurred pattern SUB reg, reg meaning write 0 to reg.

TEST same as AND but without results saving, see also: [19](#)

XCHG exchange values in operands

XOR $op1, op2$: [XOR⁴](#) values. $op1 = op1 \oplus op2$. Frequently occurred pattern XOR reg, reg meaning write 0 to register.

A.6.3 Less frequently used instructions

BSF *bit scan forward*, see also: [25.2](#)

BSR *bit scan reverse*

BSWAP (*byte swap*), change value [endianness](#).

BTC bit test and complement

BTR bit test and reset

BTS bit test and set

BT bit test

CBW/CWD/CWDE/CDQ/CDQE Sign-extend value:

CBW convert byte in AL to word in AX

CWD convert word in AX to doubleword in DX:AX

CWDE convert word in AX to doubleword in EAX

CDQ convert doubleword in EAX to quadword in EDX:EAX

CDQE (x64) convert doubleword in EAX to quadword in RAX

These instructions consider value's sign, extending it to high part of newly constructed value. See also: [24.4](#).

CLD clear DF flag.

CLI (M) clear IF flag

CMC (M) toggle CF flag

CMOVcc conditional MOV: load if condition is true The condition codes are the same as in Jcc instructions ([A.6.2](#)).

CMPSB/CMPSW/CMPSD/CMPSQ (M) compare byte/ 16-bit word/ 32-bit word/ 64-bit word from the place address of which is in the SI/ESI/RSI with a variable address of which is in the DI/EDI/RDI. Set flags as CMP does.

Together with REP prefix, it will repeated in loop, count is stored in the CX/ECX/RCX register, the process will be running until ZF flag is zero (e.g., until compared values are equal to each other, hence "E" in REPE).

It works like memcmp() in C.

Example from Windows NT kernel ([WRK v1.2](#)):

Listing A.3: base\ntos\rtl\i386\movemem.asm

```
; ULONG
; RtlCompareMemory (
;   IN PVOID Source1,
;   IN PVOID Source2,
;   IN ULONG Length
; )
;
; Routine Description:
;
;   This function compares two blocks of memory and returns the number
;   of bytes that compared equal.
;
; Arguments:
;
;   Source1 (esp+4) - Supplies a pointer to the first block of memory to
;   compare.
;
;   Source2 (esp+8) - Supplies a pointer to the second block of memory to
;   compare.
```

⁴eXclusive OR

```

;
; Length (esp+12) - Supplies the Length, in bytes, of the memory to be
; compared.
;
; Return Value:
;
; The number of bytes that compared equal is returned as the function
; value. If all bytes compared equal, then the length of the original
; block of memory is returned.
;
;--
RcmSource1      equ      [esp+12]
RcmSource2      equ      [esp+16]
RcmLength       equ      [esp+20]

CODE_ALIGNMENT
cPublicProc _RtlCompareMemory,3
cPublicFpo 3,0

        push    esi                ; save registers
        push    edi                ;
        cld                          ; clear direction
        mov     esi,RcmSource1      ; (esi) -> first block to compare
        mov     edi,RcmSource2      ; (edi) -> second block to compare
;
; Compare dwords, if any.
;
rcm10:  mov     ecx,RcmLength        ; (ecx) = length in bytes
        shr     ecx,2                ; (ecx) = length in dwords
        jz      rcm20                ; no dwords, try bytes
        repe   cmpsd                ; compare dwords
        jnz    rcm40                ; mismatch, go find byte
;
; Compare residual bytes, if any.
;
rcm20:  mov     ecx,RcmLength        ; (ecx) = length in bytes
        and     ecx,3                ; (ecx) = length mod 4
        jz      rcm30                ; 0 odd bytes, go do dwords
        repe   cmpsb                ; compare odd bytes
        jnz    rcm50                ; mismatch, go report how far we got
;
; All bytes in the block match.
;
rcm30:  mov     eax,RcmLength        ; set number of matching bytes
        pop     edi                ; restore registers
        pop     esi                ;
        stdRET _RtlCompareMemory
;
; When we come to rcm40, esi (and edi) points to the dword after the
; one which caused the mismatch. Back up 1 dword and find the byte.
; Since we know the dword didn't match, we can assume one byte won't.
;
rcm40:  sub     esi,4                ; back up
        sub     edi,4                ; back up
        mov     ecx,5                ; ensure that ecx doesn't count out
        repe   cmpsb                ; find mismatch byte
;
; When we come to rcm50, esi points to the byte after the one that
; did not match, which is TWO after the last byte that did match.
;

```

```

rcm50:  dec     esi                ; back up
        sub     esi,RcmSource1 ; compute bytes that matched
        mov     eax,esi        ;
        pop     edi            ; restore registers
        pop     esi            ;
        stdRET  _RtlCompareMemory
stdENDP _RtlCompareMemory

```

N.B.: this function uses 32-bit words comparison (CMPSD) if block size is multiple of 4, or per-byte comparison (CMPSB) otherwise.

CPUID get information about [CPU](#) features. see also: (21.6.1).

DIV unsigned division

IDIV signed division

INT (M): INT x is analogous to PUSHF; CALL dword ptr [x*4] in 16-bit environment. It was widely used in MS-DOS, functioning as syscalls. Registers AX/BX/CX/DX/SI/DI were filled by arguments and jump to the address in the Interrupt Vector Table (located at the address space beginning) will be occurred. It was popular because INT has short opcode (2 bytes) and the program which needs some MS-DOS services is not bothering by determining service's entry point address. Interrupt handler return control flow to called using IRET instruction.

Most busy MS-DOS interrupt number was 0x21, serving a huge amount of its [API](#). See also: [\[Bro\]](#) for the most comprehensive interrupt lists and other MS-DOS information.

In post-MS-DOS era, this instruction was still used as syscall both in Linux and Windows (57), but later replaced by SYSENTER or SYSCALL instruction.

INT 3 (M): this instruction is somewhat standing aside of INT, it has its own 1-byte opcode (0xCC), and actively used while debugging. Often, debuggers just write 0xCC byte at the address of breakpoint to be set, and when exception is raised, original byte will be restored and original instruction at this address will be re-executed.

As of [Windows NT](#), an EXCEPTION_BREAKPOINT exception will be raised when [CPU](#) executes this instruction. This debugging event may be intercepted and handled by a host debugger, if loaded. If it is not loaded, Windows will offer to run one of the registered in the system debuggers. If [MSVS⁵](#) is installed, its debugger may be loaded and connected to the process. In order to protect from [reverse engineering](#), a lot of anti-debugging methods are checking integrity of the code loaded.

[MSVC](#) has [compiler intrinsic](#) for the instruction: `__debugbreak()`⁶.

There are also a win32 function in kernel32.dll named `DebugBreak()`⁷, which also executes INT 3.

IN (M) input data from port. The instruction is usually can be seen in OS drivers or in old MS-DOS code, for example (69.3).

IRET : was used in MS-DOS environment for returning from interrupt handler after it was called by INT instruction. Equivalent to POP tmp; POPF; JMP tmp.

LOOP (M) [decrement](#) CX/ECX/RX, jump if it is still not zero.

OUT (M) output data to port. The instruction is usually can be seen in OS drivers or in old MS-DOS code, for example (69.3).

POPA (M) restores values of (R)EDI, (R)ESI, (R)EBP, (R)EBX, (R)EDX, (R)ECX, (R)EAX registers from stack.

POPCNT population count. counts number of 1 bits in value. [AKA](#) "hamming weight". [AKA](#) "NSA instruction" due of rumors:

This branch of cryptography is fast-paced and very politically charged. Most designs are secret; a majority of military encryptions systems in use today are based on LFSRs. In fact, most Cray computers (Cray 1, Cray X-MP, Cray Y-MP) have a rather curious instruction generally known as "population count." It counts the 1 bits in a register and can be used both to efficiently calculate the Hamming distance between two binary words and to implement a vectorized version of a LFSR. I've heard this called the canonical NSA instruction, demanded by almost all computer contracts.

[Sch94]

⁵Microsoft Visual Studio

⁶<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/f408b4et.aspx>

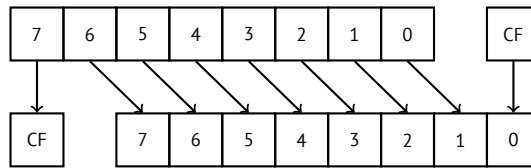
⁷[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms679297\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms679297(v=vs.85).aspx)

POPF restore flags from stack (AKA EFLAGS register)

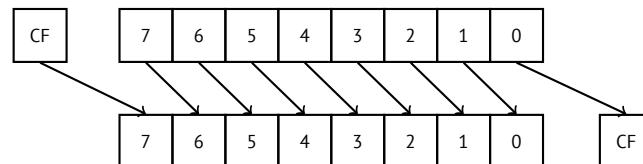
PUSHA (M) pushes values of (R)EAX, (R)ECX, (R)EDX, (R)EBX, (R)EBP, (R)ESI, (R)EDI registers to the stack.

PUSHF push flags (AKA EFLAGS register)

RCL (M) rotate left via CF flag:

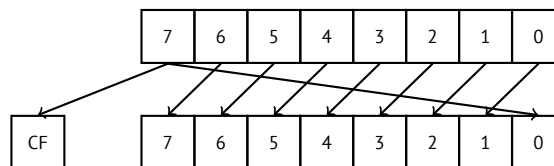


RCR (M) rotate right via CF flag:

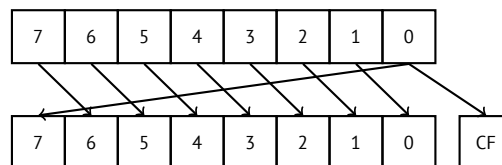


ROL/ROR (M) cyclic shift

ROL: rotate left:



ROR: rotate right:

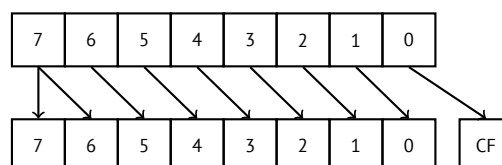


Despite the fact that almost all CPUs has these instructions, there are no corresponding operations in the C/C++, so the compilers of these PLs are usually not generating these instructions.

For programmer's convenience, at least MSVC has pseudofunctions (compiler intrinsics) `_rotl()` and `_rotr()`⁸, which are translated by compiler directly to these instructions.

SAL Arithmetic shift left, synonymous to SHL

SAR Arithmetic shift right



Hence, sign bit is always stayed at the place of MSB.

SETcc op: load 1 to op (byte only) if condition is true or zero otherwise. The condition codes are the same as in Jcc instructions (A.6.2).

STC (M) set CF flag

STD (M) set DF flag This instruction is not generated by compilers and generally rare. For example, it can be found in `ntoskrnl.exe` Windows kernel file only in hand-written memory copy routines.

⁸<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/5cc576c4.aspx>

STI (M) set IF flag

SYSCALL (AMD) call syscall (57)

SYSENTER (Intel) call syscall (57)

UD2 (M) undefined instruction, raises exception. used for testing.

A.6.4 FPU instructions

-R in mnemonic usually means that operands are reversed, -P means that one element is popped from the stack after instruction execution, -PP means that two elements are popped.

-P instructions are often useful when we do not need a value in the FPU stack to be present anymore after the operation.

FABS replace value in ST(0) by absolute value in ST(0)

FADD op: ST(0)=op+ST(0)

FADD ST(0), ST(i): ST(0)=ST(0)+ST(i)

FADDP ST(1)=ST(0)+ST(1); pop one element from the stack, i.e., summed values in the stack are replaced by sum

FNCHS ST(0)=-ST(0)

FCOM compare ST(0) with ST(1)

FCOM op: compare ST(0) with op

FCOMP compare ST(0) with ST(1); pop one element from the stack

FCOMPP compare ST(0) with ST(1); pop two elements from the stack

FDIVR op: ST(0)=op/ST(0)

FDIVR ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(j)/ST(i)

FDIVRP op: ST(0)=op/ST(0); pop one element from the stack

FDIVRP ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(j)/ST(i); pop one element from the stack

FDIV op: ST(0)=ST(0)/op

FDIV ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(i)/ST(j)

FDIVP ST(1)=ST(0)/ST(1); pop one element from the stack, i.e., dividend and divisor values in the stack are replaced by quotient

FILD op: convert integer and push it to the stack.

FIST op: convert ST(0) to integer op

FISTP op: convert ST(0) to integer op; pop one element from the stack

FLD1 push 1 to stack

FLDCW op: load FPU control word (A.3) from 16-bit op.

FLDZ push zero to stack

FLD op: push op to the stack.

FMUL op: ST(0)=ST(0)*op

FMUL ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(i)*ST(j)

FMULP op: ST(0)=ST(0)*op; pop one element from the stack

FMULP ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(i)*ST(j); pop one element from the stack

FSINCOS : tmp=ST(0); ST(1)=sin(tmp); ST(0)=cos(tmp)

FSQRT : $ST(0) = \sqrt{ST(0)}$

FSTCW op: store FPU control word (A.3) into 16-bit op after checking for pending exceptions.

FNSTCW op: store FPU control word (A.3) into 16-bit op.

FSTSW op: store FPU status word (A.3.2) into 16-bit op after checking for pending exceptions.

FNSTSW op: store FPU status word (A.3.2) into 16-bit op.

FST op: copy ST(0) to op

FSTP op: copy ST(0) to op; pop one element from the stack

FSUBR op: $ST(0)=op-ST(0)$

FSUBR ST(0), ST(i): $ST(0)=ST(i)-ST(0)$

FSUBRP ST(1)=ST(0)-ST(1); pop one element from the stack, i.e., summed values in the stack are replaced by difference

FSUB op: $ST(0)=ST(0)-op$

FSUB ST(0), ST(i): $ST(0)=ST(0)-ST(i)$

FSUBP ST(1)=ST(1)-ST(0); pop one element from the stack, i.e., summed values in the stack are replaced by difference

FUCOM ST(i): compare ST(0) and ST(i)

FUCOM compare ST(0) and ST(1)

FUCOMP compare ST(0) and ST(1); pop one element from stack.

FUCOMPP compare ST(0) and ST(1); pop two elements from stack.

The instructions performs just like FCOM, but exception is raised only if one of operands is SNaN, while QNaN numbers are processed smoothly.

FXCH ST(i) exchange values in ST(0) and ST(i)

FXCH exchange values in ST(0) and ST(1)

A.6.5 Instructions having printable ASCII opcode

(In 32-bit mode).

It can be suitable for shellcode constructing. See also: 73.1.

ASCII character	hexadecimal code	x86 instruction
0	30	XOR
1	31	XOR
2	32	XOR
3	33	XOR
4	34	XOR
5	35	XOR
7	37	AAA
8	38	CMP
9	39	CMP
:	3a	CMP
;	3b	CMP
<	3c	CMP
=	3d	CMP
?	3f	AAS
@	40	INC
A	41	INC
B	42	INC
C	43	INC
D	44	INC
E	45	INC
F	46	INC
G	47	INC
H	48	DEC
I	49	DEC
J	4a	DEC
K	4b	DEC
L	4c	DEC
M	4d	DEC

N	4e	DEC
O	4f	DEC
P	50	PUSH
Q	51	PUSH
R	52	PUSH
S	53	PUSH
T	54	PUSH
U	55	PUSH
V	56	PUSH
W	57	PUSH
X	58	POP
Y	59	POP
Z	5a	POP
[	5b	POP
\	5c	POP
]	5d	POP
^	5e	POP
˘	5f	POP
˘	60	PUSHA
a	61	POPA
f	66	(in 32-bit mode) switch to 16-bit operand size
g	67	(in 32-bit mode) switch to 16-bit address size
h	68	PUSH
i	69	IMUL
j	6a	PUSH
k	6b	IMUL
p	70	JO
q	71	JNO
r	72	JB
s	73	JAE
t	74	JE
u	75	JNE
v	76	JBE
w	77	JA
x	78	JS
y	79	JNS
z	7a	JP

Summarizing: AAA, AAS, CMP, DEC, IMUL, INC, JA, JAE, JB, JBE, JE, JNE, JNO, JNS, JO, JP, JS, POP, POPA, PUSH, PUSHA, XOR.

Appendix B

ARM

B.1 Terminology

ARM was initially developed as 32-bit CPU, so that's why *word* here, unlike x86, is 32-bit.

byte 8-bit. DB assembly directive is used for defining variables and array of bytes.

halfword 16-bit. DCW assembly directive —".

word 32-bit. DCD assembly directive —".

doubleword 64-bit.

quadword 128-bit.

B.2 Versions

- ARMv4: thumb mode appeared.
- ARMv6: used in iPhone 1st gen., iPhone 3G (Samsung 32-bit RISC ARM 1176JZ(F)-S supporting thumb-2)
- ARMv7: thumb-2 was added (2003). was used in iPhone 3GS, iPhone 4, iPad 1st gen. (ARM Cortex-A8), iPad 2 (Cortex-A9), iPad 3rd gen.
- ARMv7s: New instructions added. Was used in iPhone 5, iPhone 5c, iPad 4th gen. (Apple A6).
- ARMv8: 64-bit CPU, AKA ARM64 AKA AArch64. Was used in iPhone 5S, iPad Air (Apple A7). There are no thumb mode in 64-bit mode, only ARM (4-byte instructions).

B.3 32-bit ARM (AArch32)

B.3.1 General purpose registers

- R0 — function result is usually returned using R0
- R1...R12—GPRs
- R13 — AKA SP (*stack pointer*)
- R14 — AKA LR (*link register*)
- R15 — AKA PC (program counter)

R0-R3 are also called “scratch registers”: function arguments are usually passed in them, and values in them are not necessary to restore upon function exit.

B.3.2 Current Program Status Register (CPSR)

Bit	Description
0..4	M – processor mode
5	T – Thumb state
6	F – FIQ disable
7	I – IRQ disable
8	A – imprecise data abort disable
9	E – data endianness
10..15, 25, 26	IT – if-then state
16..19	GE – greater-than-or-equal-to
20..23	DNM – do not modify
24	J – Java state
27	Q – sticky overflow
28	V – overflow
29	C – carry/borrow/extend
30	Z – zero bit
31	N – negative/less than

B.3.3 VFP (floating point) and NEON registers

0..31 ^{bits}	32..64	65..96	97..127
Q0 ^{128 bits}			
D0 ^{64 bits}		D1	
S0 ^{32 bits}	S1	S2	S3

S-registers are 32-bit ones, used for single precision numbers storage.

D-registers are 64-bit ones, used for double precision numbers storage.

D- and S-registers share the same physical space in CPU—it is possible to access D-register via S-registers (it is senseless though).

Likewise, NEON Q-registers are 128-bit ones and share the same physical space in CPU with other floating point registers.

In VFP 32 S-registers are present: S0..S31.

In VFPv2 there are 16 D-registers added, which are, in fact, occupy the same space as S0..S31.

In VFPv3 (NEON or “Advanced SIMD”) there are 16 more D-registers added, resulting D0..D31, but D16..D31 registers are not sharing a space with other S-registers.

In NEON or “Advanced SIMD” there are also 16 128-bit Q-registers added, which share the same space as D0..D31.

B.4 64-bit ARM (AArch64)

B.4.1 General purpose registers

Register count was doubled since AArch32.

- X0— function result is usually returned using X0
- X0...X7—Function arguments are passed here.
- X8
- X9...X15—are temporary registers, callee function may use it and not restore.
- X16
- X17
- X18
- X19...X29—callee function may use, but should restore them upon exit.
- X29—used as FP (at least GCC)
- X30—“Procedure Link Register” AKA LR (link register).
- X31—register always containing zero AKA XZR or “Zero Register”. It’s 32-bit part called WZR.
- SP, not general register anymore.

See also: [\[ARM13c\]](#).

32-bit part of each X-register is also accessible via W-registers (W0, W1, etc).

High 32-bit part	low 32-bit part
X0	
	W0

B.5 Instructions

There is -S suffix for some instructions in ARM, indicating the instruction will set the flags according to the result, and without it –the flags will not be touched. For example ADD unlike ADDS will add two numbers, but flags will not be touched. Such instructions are convenient to use between CMP where flags are set and, e.g. conditional jumps, where flags are used.

Appendix C

Some GCC library functions

name	meaning
__divdi3	signed division
__moddi3	getting remainder (modulo) of signed division
__udivdi3	unsigned division
__umoddi3	getting remainder (modulo) of unsigned division

Appendix D

Some MSVC library functions

ll in function name mean “long long”, e.g., 64-bit data type.

name	meaning
__alldiv	signed division
__allmul	multiplication
__allrem	remainder of signed division
__allshl	shift left
__allshr	signed shift right
__aulldiv	unsigned division
__aullrem	remainder of unsigned division
__aullshr	unsigned shift right

Multiplication and shift left procedures are the same for both signed and unsigned numbers, hence only one function for each operation here.

The source code of these function can be founded in the installed [MSVS](#), in VC/crt/src/intel/*.asm.

Appendix E

Cheatsheets

E.1 IDA

Short hot-keys cheatsheet:

key	meaning
Space	switch listing and graph view
C	convert to code
D	convert to data
A	convert to string
*	convert to array
U	undefine
O	make offset of operand
H	make decimal number
R	make char
B	make binary number
Q	make hexadecimal number
N	rename identifier
?	calculator
G	jump to address
:	add comment
Ctrl-X	show references to the current function, label, variable (incl. in local stack)
X	show references to the function, label, variable, etc
Alt-I	search for constant
Ctrl-I	search for the next occurrence of constant
Alt-B	search for byte sequence
Ctrl-B	search for the next occurrence of byte sequence
Alt-T	search for text (including instructions, etc)
Ctrl-T	search for the next occurrence of text
Alt-P	edit current function
Enter	jump to function, variable, etc
Esc	get back
Num -	fold function or selected area
Num +	unhide function or area

Function/area folding may be useful for hiding function parts when you realize what they do. this is used in my [script](https://github.com/yurichev/IDA_scripts)¹ for hiding some often used patterns of inline code.

E.2 OllyDbg

Short hot-keys cheatsheet:

hot-key	meaning
F7	trace into
F8	step over
F9	run
Ctrl-F2	restart

¹https://github.com/yurichev/IDA_scripts

E.3 MSVC

Some useful options I used through this book.

option	meaning
/O1	minimize space
/Ob0	no inline expansion
/Ox	maximum optimizations
/GS-	disable security checks (buffer overflows)
/Fa(file)	generate assembly listing
/Zi	enable debugging information
/Zp(n)	pack structs on n -byte boundary
/MD	produced executable will use MSVCR*.DLL

Some information about MSVC versions: [45.1](#).

E.4 GCC

Some useful options I used through this book.

option	meaning
-Os	code size optimization
-O3	maximum optimization
-regparm= n	how many arguments will be passed in registers
-o file	set name of output file
-g	produce debugging information in resulting executable
-S	generate assembly listing file
-masm=intel	produce listing in Intel syntax

E.5 GDB

Some of commands I used in this book:

option	meaning
break filename.c:number	set a breakpoint on line number in source code
break function	set a breakpoint on function
break *address	set a breakpoint on address
b	—
p variable	print value of variable
run	run
r	—
cont	continue execution
c	—
bt	print stack
set disassembly-flavor intel	set Intel syntax
disas	disassemble current function
disas function	disassemble function
disas function,+50	disassemble portion
disas \$eip,+0x10	—
disas/r	disassemble with opcodes
info registers	print all registers
info float	print FPU-registers
info locals	dump local variables (if known)
x/w ...	dump memory as 32-bit word
x/w \$rdi	dump memory as 32-bit word at address stored in RDI
x/10w ...	dump 10 memory words
x/s ...	dump memory as string
x/i ...	dump memory as code
x/10c ...	dump 10 characters
x/b ...	dump bytes
x/h ...	dump 16-bit halfwords
x/g ...	dump giant (64-bit) words
finish	execute till the end of function
next	next instruction (don't dive into functions)
step	next instruction (dive into functions)
frame n	switch stack frame
info break	list of breakpoints
del n	delete breakpoint

Appendix F

Exercise solutions

F.1 Per chapter

F.1.1 “Stack” chapter

Exercise #1

Exercise: [5.5.1](#).

Non-optimizing MSVC, these numbers are: saved EBP value, [RA](#) and `argc`. It's easy to be assured in that by running the example with different number of arguments in command-line.

Optimizing MSVC, these numbers are: [RA](#), `argc` and a pointer to `argv[]` array.

GCC 4.8.x allocates 16-byte space in `main()` function prologue, hence different output numbers.

Exercise #2

Exercise: [5.5.2](#).

This code prints UNIX time.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", time(NULL));
};
```

F.1.2 “switch()/case/default” chapter

F.1.3 Exercise #1

Exercise: [13.5.1](#).

Hint: `printf()` may be called only from the one single place.

F.1.4 “Loops” chapter

F.1.5 Exercise #3

Exercise: [14.5.3](#).

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int i;
    for (i=100; i>0; i--)
        printf ("%d\n", i);
};
```

F.1.6 Exercise #4

Exercise: [14.5.4](#).

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int i;
    for (i=1; i<100; i=i+3)
        printf ("%d\n", i);
};
```

F.1.7 “Simple C-strings processings” chapter

Exercise #1

Exercise: [15.3.1](#).

This is a function counting spaces in the input C-string.

```
int f(char *s)
{
    int rt=0;
    for (;*s;s++)
    {
        if (*s==' ')
            rt++;
    };
    return rt;
};
```

F.1.8 “Replacing arithmetic instructions to other ones” chapter

Exercise #1

Exercise: [16.4.1](#).

```
int f(int a)
{
    return a/661;
};
```

Exercise #2

Exercise: [16.4.2](#).

```
int f(int a)
{
    return a*7;
};
```

F.1.9 “Floating-point unit” chapter

Exercise #1

Exercise: [17.5.2](#).

Calculating arithmetic mean for 5 *double* values.

```
double f(double a1, double a2, double a3, double a4, double a5)
{
    return (a1+a2+a3+a4+a5) / 5;
};
```

F.1.10 “Arrays” chapter**Exercise #1**Exercise: [18.10.1](#).Solution: two 100*200 matrices of *double* type addition.

C/C++ source code:

```
#define M    100
#define N    200

void s(double *a, double *b, double *c)
{
    for(int i=0;i<N;i++)
        for(int j=0;j<M;j++)
            *(c+i*M+j)=*(a+i*M+j) + *(b+i*M+j);
};
```

Exercise #2Exercise: [18.10.2](#).Solution: two matrices (one is 100*200, second is 100*300) of *double* type multiplication, result: 100*300 matrix.

C/C++ source code:

```
#define M    100
#define N    200
#define P    300

void m(double *a, double *b, double *c)
{
    for(int i=0;i<M;i++)
        for(int j=0;j<P;j++)
        {
            *(c+i*M+j)=0;
            for (int k=0;k<N;k++) *(c+i*M+j)+=*(a+i*M+k) * *(b+k*M+j);
        }
};
```

Exercise #3Exercise: [18.10.3](#).

```
double f(double array[50][120], int x, int y)
{
    return array[x][y];
};
```

Exercise #4Exercise: [18.10.4](#).

```
int f(int array[50][60][80], int x, int y, int z)
{
    return array[x][y][z];
};
```

Exercise #5Exercise: [18.10.5](#).

This code just calculates multiplication table.

```
int tbl[10][10];

int main()
{
    int x, y;
    for (x=0; x<10; x++)
```

```

        for (y=0; y<10; y++)
            tbl[x][y]=x*y;
};

```

F.1.11 “Working with specific bits” chapter

Exercise #1

Exercise: 19.8.1. This is a function which changes [endianness](#) in 32-bit value.

```

unsigned int f(unsigned int a)
{
    return ((a>>24)&0xff) | ((a<<8)&0xff0000) | ((a>>8)&0xff00) | ((a<<24)&0xff000000);
};

```

Additional question: x86 instruction can do this. Which one?

Exercise #2

Exercise: 19.8.2.

This function converts [BCD](#)-packed 32-bit value into usual one.

```

#include <stdio.h>

unsigned int f(unsigned int a)
{
    int i=0;
    int j=1;
    unsigned int rt=0;
    for (;i<=28; i+=4, j*=10)
        rt+=((a>>i)&0xF) * j;
    return rt;
};

int main()
{
    // test
    printf ("%d\n", f(0x12345678));
    printf ("%d\n", f(0x1234567));
    printf ("%d\n", f(0x123456));
    printf ("%d\n", f(0x12345));
    printf ("%d\n", f(0x1234));
    printf ("%d\n", f(0x123));
    printf ("%d\n", f(0x12));
    printf ("%d\n", f(0x1));
};

```

Exercise #3

Exercise: 19.8.3.

```

#include <windows.h>

int main()
{
    MessageBox(NULL, "hello, world!", "caption",
        MB_TOPMOST | MB_ICONINFORMATION | MB_HELP | MB_YESNOCANCEL);
};

```

Exercise #4

Exercise: 19.8.4.

This function just multiplies two 32-bit numbers, returning 64-bit [product](#). Well, this is a case when simple observing input/outputs may solve problem faster.


```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

// source code taken from
// http://www4.wittenberg.edu/academics/mathcomp/shelburne/comp255/notes/binarymultiplication.↵
↵ pdf

uint64_t mult (uint32_t m, uint32_t n)
{
    uint64_t p = 0; // initialize product p to 0
    while (n != 0) // while multiplier n is not 0
    {
        if (n & 1) // test LSB of multiplier
            p = p + m; // if 1 then add multiplicand m
        m = m << 1; // left shift multiplicand
        n = n >> 1; // right shift multiplier
    }
    return p;
}

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", mult (2, 7));
    printf ("%d\n", mult (3, 11));
    printf ("%d\n", mult (4, 111));
};

```

F.1.12 “Structures” chapter

Exercise #1

Exercise: [21.7.1](#).

This program shows user ID of file owner.

```

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/stat.h>
#include <time.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    struct stat sb;

    if (argc != 2)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "Usage: %s <pathname>\n", argv[0]);
        return 0;
    }

    if (stat(argv[1], &sb) == -1)
    {
        // error
        return 0;
    }

    printf("%ld\n", (long) sb.st_uid);
}

```

Exercise #1

Exercise: [21.7.2](#).

Hint: you may get some information on how values are treated with Jcc, MOVSX and MOVZX instructions.

```

#include <stdio.h>

struct some_struct
{

```

```

    int a;
    unsigned int b;
    float f;
    double d;
    char c;
    unsigned char uc;
};

void f(struct some_struct *s)
{
    if (s->a > 1000)
    {
        if (s->b > 10)
        {
            printf ("%f\n", s->f * 444 + s->d * 123);
            printf ("%c, %d\n", s->c, s->uc);
        }
        else
        {
            printf ("error #2\n");
        }
    }
    else
    {
        printf ("error #1\n");
    }
};
};

```

F.1.13 “Obfuscation” chapter

Exercise #1

Exercise: [38.5.1](#).

Source code: http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/per_chapter/obfuscation.c.

F.2 Level 1

F.2.1 Exercise 1.1

That was a function returning maximal value from two.

F.2.2 Exercise 1.4

Source code: <http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/1/4/password1.c>

F.3 Level 2

F.3.1 Exercise 2.4

Solution: `strstr()`.

C source code:

```

char * strstr (
    const char * str1,
    const char * str2
)
{
    char *cp = (char *) str1;
    char *s1, *s2;

    if ( !*str2 )
        return((char *)str1);

    while (*cp)
    {
        s1 = cp;

```

```

        s2 = (char *) str2;

        while ( *s1 && *s2 && !(*s1-*s2) )
            s1++, s2++;

        if (!*s2)
            return(cp);

        cp++;
    }

    return(NULL);
}

```

F.3.2 Exercise 2.6

Hint: it might be helpful to google a constant used here.

Solution: [TEA¹](#) encryption algorithm.

C source code (taken from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tiny_Encryption_Algorithm):

```

void f (unsigned int* v, unsigned int* k) {
    unsigned int v0=v[0], v1=v[1], sum=0, i;           /* set up */
    unsigned int delta=0x9e3779b9;                    /* a key schedule constant */
    unsigned int k0=k[0], k1=k[1], k2=k[2], k3=k[3]; /* cache key */
    for (i=0; i < 32; i++) {                          /* basic cycle start */
        sum += delta;
        v0 += ((v1<<4) + k0) ^ (v1 + sum) ^ ((v1>>5) + k1);
        v1 += ((v0<<4) + k2) ^ (v0 + sum) ^ ((v0>>5) + k3);
    }                                                  /* end cycle */
    v[0]=v0; v[1]=v1;
}

```

F.3.3 Exercise 2.13

The cryptoalgorithm is linear feedback shift register ².

Source code: <http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/2/13/LFSR.c>

F.3.4 Exercise 2.14

This is algorithm of finding greater common divisor (GCD).

Source code: <http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/2/14/GCD.c>

F.3.5 Exercise 2.15

Pi value calculation using Monte-Carlo method.

Source code: <http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/2/15/monte.c>

F.3.6 Exercise 2.16

It is Ackermann function ³.

```

int ack (int m, int n)
{
    if (m==0)
        return n+1;
    if (n==0)
        return ack (m-1, 1);
    return ack(m-1, ack (m, n-1));
};

```

¹Tiny Encryption Algorithm

²https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Linear_feedback_shift_register

³https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ackermann_function

F.3.7 Exercise 2.17

This is 1D cellular automation working by *Rule 110*:

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rule_110.

Source code: <http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/2/17/CA.c>

F.3.8 Exercise 2.18

Source code: <http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/2/18/>

F.3.9 Exercise 2.19

Source code: <http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/2/19/>

F.4 Level 3

F.4.1 Exercise 3.2

Hint: easiest way is to find by values in the tables.

Commented C source code:

<http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/3/2/gost.c>

F.4.2 Exercise 3.3

Commented C source code:

<http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/3/3/entropy.c>

F.4.3 Exercise 3.4

Commented C source code, and also decrypted file: <http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/3/4/>

F.4.4 Exercise 3.5

Hint: as we can see, the string with user name occupies not the whole file.

Bytes after terminated zero till offset 0x7F are ignored by program.

Commented C source code:

http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/3/5/crc16_keyfile_check.c

F.4.5 Exercise 3.6

Commented C source code:

<http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/3/6/>

As another exercise, now you may try to fix all vulnerabilities you found in this web-server.

F.4.6 Exercise 3.8

Commented C source code:

<http://beginners.re/exercise-solutions/3/8/>

F.5 Other

F.5.1 “Minesweeper (Windows XP)” example

Example: [67](#).

Hint: think about border bytes (0x10) pattern.

Acronyms used

OS Operating System.....	6
OOP Object-Oriented Programming	455
PL Programming language	3
PRNG Pseudorandom number generator.....	355
ROM Read-only memory.....	538
RA Return Address	4
PE Portable Executable: 59.2	567
SP stack pointer . SP/ESP/RSP in x86/x64. SP in ARM.	11
DLL Dynamic-link library.....	567
PC Program Counter. IP/EIP/RIP in x86/64. PC in ARM.	11
LR Link Register	4
IDA Interactive Disassembler	6
IAT Import Address Table	567
INT Import Name Table	567
RVA Relative Virtual Address.....	567
VA Virtual Address.....	567
OEP Original Entry Point.....	564
MSVC Microsoft Visual C++	
MSVS Microsoft Visual Studio	803
ASLR Address Space Layout Randomization.....	568
MFC Microsoft Foundation Classes	570
TLS Thread Local Storage	iv
AKA Also Known As	
CRT C runtime library: <code>sec:CRT</code>	6

CPU Central processing unit.....	iv
FPU Floating-point unit.....	193
CISC Complex instruction set computing.....	11
RISC Reduced instruction set computing.....	3
GUI Graphical user interface.....	564
RTTI Run-time type information.....	469
BSS Block Started by Symbol.....	82
SIMD Single instruction, multiple data.....	152
BSOD Black Screen of Death.....	557
DBMS Database management systems.....	iv
ISA Instruction Set Architecture.....	3
CGI Common Gateway Interface.....	785
HPC High-Performance Computing.....	423
SEH Structured Exception Handling: 59.3	21
ELF Executable file format widely used in *NIX system including Linux.....	iv
TIB Thread Information Block.....	252
TEA Tiny Encryption Algorithm.....	822
PIC Position Independent Code: 58.1	iv
NAN Not a Number.....	795
NOP No Operation.....	65
BEQ (PowerPC, ARM) Branch if Equal.....	66
BNE (PowerPC, ARM) Branch if Not Equal.....	171
BLR (PowerPC) Branch to Link Register.....	626
XOR eXclusive OR.....	801

MCU Microcontroller unit	439
RAM Random-access memory	54
EGA Enhanced Graphics Adapter	752
VGA Video Graphics Array	752
API Application programming interface	531
ASCII American Standard Code for Information Interchange	446
ASCIIZ ASCII Zero (null-terminated ASCII string)	64
IA64 Intel Architecture 64 (Itanium): 83	523
EPIC Explicitly parallel instruction computing	749
OOE Out-of-order execution	525
MSDN Microsoft Developer Network	318
MSB Most significant bit/byte	308
LSB Least significant bit/byte	
STL (C++) Standard Template Library: 37.4	475
PODT (C++) Plain Old Data Type	485
HDD Hard disk drive	496
VM Virtual Memory	
WRK Windows Research Kernel	543
GPR General Purpose Registers	3
SSDT System Service Dispatch Table	557
RE Reverse Engineering	758
BCD Binary-coded decimal	703
BOM Byte order mark	534
GDB GNU debugger	32

FP Frame Pointer	14
MBR Master Boot Record	538
JPE Jump Parity Even (x86 instruction)	210
CIDR Classless Inter-Domain Routing	308
STMFD Store Multiple Full Descending (ARM instruction)	
LDMFD Load Multiple Full Descending (ARM instruction)	
STMED Store Multiple Empty Descending (ARM instruction)	17
LDMED Load Multiple Empty Descending (ARM instruction)	17
STMFA Store Multiple Full Ascending (ARM instruction)	17
LDMFA Load Multiple Full Ascending (ARM instruction)	17
STMEA Store Multiple Empty Ascending (ARM instruction)	17
LDMEA Load Multiple Empty Ascending (ARM instruction)	17
APSR (ARM) Application Program Status Register	233
FPSCR (ARM) Floating-Point Status and Control Register	233
PID Program/process ID	616
LF Line feed (10 or '\n' in C/C++)	172
CR Carriage return (13 or '\r' in C/C++)	172

Glossary

decrement Decrease by 1. [11](#), [144](#), [165](#), [505](#), [546](#), [666](#), [797](#), [799](#), [803](#)

increment Increase by 1. [11](#), [144](#), [147](#), [165](#), [170](#), [297](#), [300](#), [505](#), [645](#), [663](#), [797](#)

integral data type usual numbers, but not floating point ones. [204](#)

product Multiplication result. [69](#), [189](#), [198](#), [200](#), [377](#), [402](#), [819](#)

stack pointer A register pointing to the place in the stack. [6](#), [7](#), [11](#), [17](#), [19](#), [27](#), [38](#), [39](#), [49](#), [70](#), [457](#), [510](#), [548–550](#), [792](#), [798](#), [808](#), [825](#)

tail call It is when compiler (or interpreter) transforms recursion (with which it is possible: *tail recursion*) into iteration for efficiency: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tail_call. [16](#)

quotient Division result. [186](#), [187](#), [194](#), [196](#), [197](#), [200](#), [401](#), [442](#), [620](#)

anti-pattern Generally considered as bad practice. [18](#), [49](#), [524](#)

atomic operation “ατομος” mean “indivisible” in Greek, so atomic operation is what guaranteed not to be broke up during operation by other threads. [595](#), [746](#)

basic block a group of instructions not having jump/branch instructions, and also not having jumps inside block from the outside. In IDA it looks just like as a list of instructions without breaking empty lines . [753](#), [754](#)

callee A function being called by another. [16](#), [19](#), [30](#), [43](#), [56](#), [68](#), [70](#), [72](#), [118](#), [390](#), [457](#), [510](#), [548–550](#), [552](#), [553](#)

caller A function calling another. [4](#), [6](#), [30](#), [56](#), [68](#), [69](#), [71](#), [77](#), [118](#), [390](#), [409](#), [457](#), [548](#), [550](#), [553](#)

compiler intrinsic A function specific to a compiler which is not usual library function. Compiler generate a specific machine code instead of call to it. It is often a pseudofunction for specific CPU instruction. Read more: [\(80\)](#). [803](#)

CP/M Control Program for Microcomputers: a very basic disk OS used before MS-DOS. [701](#)

dongle Dongle is a small piece of hardware connected to LPT printer port (in past) or to USB. Its function was akin to security token, it has some memory and, sometimes, secret (crypto-)hashing algorithm. [625](#)

endianness Byte order: [42](#). [13](#), [52](#), [325](#), [801](#), [819](#)

GiB Gibibyte: 2^{30} or 1024 mebibytes or 1073741824 bytes. [9](#)

heap usually, a big chunk of memory provided by OS so that applications can divide it by themselves as they wish. malloc()/free() works with heap. [17](#), [19](#), [326](#), [471](#), [474](#), [485](#), [487](#), [566](#), [567](#)

jump offset a part of JMP or Jcc instruction opcode, it just to be added to the address of the next instruction, and thus is how new PC is calculated. May be negative as well. [65](#), [101](#), [797](#)

kernel mode A restrictions-free CPU mode in which it executes OS kernel and drivers. cf. [user mode](#). [830](#)

keygenme A program which imitates fictional software protection, for which one needs to make a keys/licenses generator. [786](#)

leaf function A function which is not calling any other function. [18](#)

link register (RISC) A register where return address is usually stored. This makes calling leaf functions without stack usage, i.e., faster. [18](#), [626](#), [808](#), [809](#)

- loop unwinding** It is when a compiler instead of generation loop code of n iteration, generates just n copies of the loop body, in order to get rid of loop maintenance instructions. [146](#)
- name mangling** used at least in C++, where compiler need to encode name of class, method and argument types in the one string, which will become internal name of the function. read more here: [37.1.1](#). [455](#), [528](#), [529](#)
- NaN** not a number: special cases of floating point numbers, usually signaling about errors . [206](#), [228](#), [751](#)
- NEON** AKA “Advanced SIMD”—SIMD from ARM. [809](#)
- NOP** “no operation”, idle instruction. [546](#)
- NTAPI** API available only in Windows NT line. Largely, not documented by Microsoft. [604](#)
- PDB** (Win32) Debugging information file, usually just function names, but sometimes also function arguments and local variables names. [527](#), [569](#), [604](#), [605](#), [612](#), [616](#), [683](#)
- POKE** BASIC language instruction writing byte on specific address. [546](#)
- register allocator** Compiler’s function assigning local variables to CPU registers. [164](#), [283](#), [390](#)
- reverse engineering** act of understanding, how the thing works, sometimes, in order to clone it. [iv](#), [803](#)
- security cookie** A random value, different at each execution. Read more about it: [18.3](#). [586](#)
- stack frame** Part of stack containing information specific to the current functions: local variables, function arguments, [RA](#), etc. [44](#), [69](#), [417](#), [586](#)
- stdout** standard output. [13](#), [20](#), [118](#), [783](#)
- thunk function** Tiny function with a single role: call another function. [13](#), [367](#), [626](#), [634](#)
- tracer** My own simple debugging tool. Read more about it: [61.1](#). [147–149](#), [532](#), [540](#), [544](#), [582](#), [591](#), [685](#), [691](#), [695](#), [697](#), [740](#), [784](#)
- user mode** A restricted CPU mode in which it executes all applied software code. cf. [kernel mode](#). [641](#), [829](#)
- Windows NT** Windows NT, 2000, XP, Vista, 7, 8. [259](#), [388](#), [509](#), [535](#), [557](#), [568](#), [595](#), [704](#), [803](#)
- word** data type fitting in [GPR](#). In the computers older than personal, memory size was often measured in words rather than bytes. [477](#)
- xoring** often used in English language, meaning applying [XOR](#) operation. [586](#), [636](#), [639](#)

Index

- .NET, 572
- AT&T syntax, 8, 21
- Buffer Overflow, 243, 586
- C language elements
 - Pointers, 43, 49, 79, 359, 390
 - Post-decrement, 505
 - Post-increment, 505
 - Pre-decrement, 505
 - Pre-increment, 505
- C99, 78
 - bool, 281
 - restrict, 421
 - variable length arrays, 254
- const, 5, 54
- for, 144, 306
- if, 92, 117
- return, 6, 56, 77
- switch, 116, 117, 126
- while, 163
- C standard library
 - alloca(), 19, 254, 524, 577
 - assert(), 258, 537
 - atexit(), 476
 - atoi(), 446, 674
 - calloc(), 656
 - close(), 561
 - exit(), 409
 - free(), 524
 - fseek(), 656
 - ftell(), 656
 - getenv(), 675
 - localtime(), 518
 - localtime_r(), 331
 - longjmp(), 118
 - malloc(), 327, 524
 - memchr(), 799
 - memcmp(), 431, 538, 801
 - memcpy(), 8, 43, 428, 798
 - memset(), 427, 695, 800
 - open(), 561
 - pow(), 202
 - puts(), 12
 - qsort(), 359
 - rand(), 320, 531, 609, 612, 644
 - read(), 561
 - realloc(), 524
 - scanf(), 43
 - strcmp(), 425, 561
 - strcpy(), 8, 427, 645
 - strlen(), 163, 174, 386, 427, 799
 - strstr(), 821
 - time(), 518
 - tolower(), 661
 - va_arg, 441
 - va_list, 444
 - vprintf, 444
- Compiler's anomalies, 111, 156, 179, 267, 291, 303, 742
- C++, 686
 - exceptions, 578
 - C++11, 485, 556
 - ostream, 469
 - References, 470
 - RTTI, 469
 - STL, 527
 - std::forward_list, 485
 - std::list, 477
 - std::map, 492
 - std::set, 492
 - std::string, 471
 - std::vector, 485
- grep usage, 149, 234, 527, 540, 544, 684
- Intel syntax, 8, 10
- Mac OS X, 600
- position-independent code, 11, 559
- RAM, 54
- ROM, 54
 - Base address, 567
 - Global variables, 49
- Binary tree, 492
- Dynamically loaded libraries, 13
- Linker, 54, 455
- RISC pipeline, 104
- Non-a-numbers (NaNs), 228
- OOP
 - Polymorphism, 455
- Buffer overflow, 249
- Hash functions, 617
- Recursion, 16, 18, 420
 - Tail recursion, 16
- Stack, 17, 68, 118
 - Stack overflow, 18
 - Stack frame, 44
- Syntactic Sugar, 117, 332
- thumb-2 mode, 13
- iPod/iPhone/iPad, 10
- OllyDbg, 28, 45, 52, 69, 80, 95, 130, 147, 166, 195, 207, 218, 240, 245, 248, 260, 261, 295, 325, 340, 341, 344, 347, 362, 569, 599, 813
- Oracle RDBMS, 6, 377, 536, 575, 687, 694, 695, 723, 732, 742, 753
- Alpha AXP, 3
- Angry Birds, 233, 234
- ARM, 170, 436, 625, 808
 - ARM mode, 3
 - Instructions
 - ADD, 12, 75, 104, 150, 188, 303, 810

- ADDAL, 104
- ADDCC, 135
- ADDS, 74, 810
- ADR, 11, 104
- ADRcc, 104, 126, 525
- ADRP/ADD pair, 14, 38, 55, 257, 268, 507
- ASR, 313
- ASRS, 188, 291
- B, 37, 104, 105
- Bcc, 67, 111
- BCS, 105, 235
- BEQ, 66, 126
- BGE, 105
- BIC, 290, 291, 315
- BL, 11–14, 104, 508
- BLcc, 104
- BLE, 105
- BLS, 105
- BLT, 150
- BLX, 13
- BNE, 105
- BX, 73, 136
- CLZ, 770, 771
- CMP, 66, 67, 104, 126, 135, 150, 303, 810
- CSEL, 109, 114, 304
- FCMPE, 235
- FCSEL, 235
- FMOV, 507
- IT, 115, 233, 254
- LDMccFD, 104
- LDMEA, 17
- LDMED, 17
- LDMFA, 17
- LDMFD, 11, 17, 104
- LDP, 14
- LDR, 39, 49, 54, 242, 256, 505
- LDR.W, 265
- LDRB, 341
- LDRB.W, 171
- LDRSB, 170
- LSL, 304, 313
- LSL.W, 304
- LSLS, 242
- LSR, 313
- MADD, 74
- MLA, 73
- MOV, 4, 11, 12, 188, 303
- MOVcc, 111, 114
- MOVK, 506
- MOVT, 12, 188
- MOVT.W, 13
- MOVW, 13
- MUL, 75
- MULS, 74
- MVNS, 171
- NEG, 451
- ORR, 290
- POP, 11, 12, 17, 18
- PUSH, 12, 17, 18
- RET, 14
- RSB, 106, 265, 303, 451
- SMMUL, 188
- STMEA, 17
- STMED, 17
- STMFA, 17, 40
- STMFD, 11, 17
- STMIA, 39
- STMIB, 40
- STP, 14, 38
- STR, 39, 242
- SUB, 39, 265, 303
- SUBEQ, 171
- SXTB, 342
- SXTW, 268
- TEST, 164
- TST, 284, 303, 304
- VADD, 200
- VDIV, 200
- VLDR, 200
- VMOV, 200, 233
- VMOVGT, 233
- VMRS, 233
- VMUL, 200
- XOR, 107
- Pipeline, 135
- Mode switching, 73, 136
- Addressing modes, 505
- mode switching, 13
- Registers
 - APSR, 233
 - FPSCR, 233
 - Link Register, 11, 18, 37, 136, 808
 - R0, 76, 808
 - scratch registers, 170, 808
 - X0, 809
 - Z, 66, 809
- thumb mode, 3, 105, 136
- thumb-2 mode, 3, 136, 233, 234
- armel, 201
- armhf, 201
- Condition codes, 104
- D-registers, 200, 809
- Data processing instructions, 188
- DCB, 11
- hard float, 201
- if-then block, 233
- Leaf function, 18
- Optional operators
 - ASR, 188, 303
 - LSL, 242, 265, 303, 304, 506
 - LSR, 188, 303
 - ROR, 303
 - RRX, 303
- S-registers, 200, 809
- soft float, 201
- ASLR, 568
- AWK, 542
- Base64, 536
- bash, 77
- BASIC
 - POKE, 546
- binary grep, 539, 602
- BIND.EXE, 572
- Bitcoin, 743
- Borland C++Builder, 529
- Borland Delphi, 529, 533, 740
- BSoD, 557

- BSS, 568
- C11, 556
- Callbacks, 359
- Canary, 250
- cdecl, 27, 548
- COFF, 632
- column-major order, 260
- Compiler intrinsic, 20, 741
- CRC32, 305, 617
- CRT, 564, 582
- Cygwin, 528, 532, 573, 600
- DES, 377, 390
- dlopen(), 561
- dlsym(), 561
- DOSBox, 704
- DosBox, 544
- double, 193, 553
- dtruss, 600
- Duff's device, 438
- EICAR, 700
- ELF, 53
- Error messages, 536
- fastcall, 8, 42, 282, 549
- float, 193, 553
- FORTRAN, 260, 268, 421, 528
- Function epilogue, 16, 37, 39, 104, 341, 542
- Function prologue, 7, 16, 18, 39, 250, 542
- Fused multiply-add, 73, 74
- GCC, 528, 811, 814
- GDB, 32, 35, 250, 367, 368, 599, 814
- Glibc, 367
- Hex-Rays, 617
- Hiew, 64, 101, 533, 569, 573, 740
- IDA, 56, 432, 535, 729, 813
 - var_?, 39, 49
- IEEE 754, 193, 355, 398, 790
- Inline code, 151, 290, 424, 460, 489
- Intel
 - 8080, 170
 - 8086, 170, 290, 640
 - Memory model, 516, 752
 - 8253, 703
 - 80286, 640, 752
 - 80386, 290, 752
 - 80486, 193
 - FPU, 193
- Intel C++, 6, 378, 742, 753, 798
- Itanium, 749
- jumptable, 129, 136
- Keil, 10
- kernel panic, 557
- kernel space, 557
- LD_PRELOAD, 561
- Linux, 283, 559, 687
 - libc.so.6, 282, 367
- LLVM, 10
- long double, 193
- Loop unwinding, 146
- Mac OS Classic, 625
- MD5, 538, 617
- MFC, 570, 675
- MIDI, 538
- MinGW, 528
- minifloat, 507
- MIPS, 3, 437, 568, 625
- MS-DOS, 252, 513, 538, 544, 546, 567, 640, 700, 702, 716, 740, 752, 790, 799, 803
 - DOS extenders, 752
- MSVC, 812, 814
- Name mangling, 455
- NEC V20, 704
- objdump, 560, 573
- OEP, 567, 572
- opaque predicate, 503
- OpenMP, 530, 743
- OpenWatcom, 529, 550
- Page (memory), 388
- Pascal, 533
- PDP-11, 505
- PowerPC, 3, 625
- puts() instead of printf(), 12, 47, 76, 102
- Raspberry Pi, 10
- ReactOS, 580
- Register allocation, 390
- Relocation, 13
- row-major order, 260
- RVA, 567
- SAP, 527, 683
- SCO OpenServer, 631
- Scratch space, 551
- Security cookie, 250, 586
- SHA1, 617
- SHA512, 743
- Shadow space, 71, 72, 399
- Shellcode, 502, 557, 568, 701, 806
- Signed numbers, 93, 521
- SIMD, 398, 431
- SSE, 398
- SSE2, 398
- stdcall, 548, 740
- strace, 561, 600
- syscall, 282, 557, 600
- TCP/IP, 523
- thiscall, 455, 457, 550
- thunk-functions, 13, 571, 626, 634
- TLS, 252, 556, 568, 572, 793
 - Callbacks, 572
- tracer, 147, 364, 366, 532, 540, 544, 582, 591, 599, 685, 691, 695, 697, 740, 784
- Unicode, 534
- Unrolled loop, 151, 254, 428
- uptime, 561
- USB, 627
- user space, 557

- UTF-16LE, 534
- UTF-8, 534
- VA, 567
- Watcom, 529
- Windows, 595
 - API, 790
 - IAT, 567
 - INT, 567
 - KERNEL32.DLL, 281
 - MSVCR80.DLL, 360
 - NTAPI, 604
 - ntoskrnl.exe, 687
 - PDB, 527, 569, 604, 612, 683
 - Structured Exception Handling, 21, 573
 - TIB, 252, 573, 793
 - Win32, 281, 534, 561, 567, 752
 - GetProcAddress, 572
 - LoadLibrary, 572
 - Ordinal, 570
 - RaiseException(), 573
 - SetUnhandledExceptionFilter(), 575
 - Windows 2000, 568
 - Windows 3.x, 509, 752
 - Windows NT4, 568
 - Windows Vista, 567, 604
 - Windows XP, 568, 572, 612
- Wine, 580
- Wolfram Mathematica, 190, 191, 619
- x86
 - Flags
 - CF, 797, 799, 801, 804
 - DF, 801, 804
 - IF, 801, 804
 - Instructions
 - AAA, 807
 - AAS, 807
 - ADC, 372, 513, 797
 - ADD, 6, 27, 69, 447, 513, 797
 - ADDSD, 398
 - ADDSS, 408
 - ADRCc, 108
 - AND, 7, 281, 282, 285, 293, 313, 346, 797, 800
 - BSF, 389, 769, 801
 - BSR, 801
 - BSWAP, 523, 801
 - BT, 801
 - BTC, 801
 - BTR, 595, 801
 - BTS, 801
 - CALL, 6, 18, 434, 571, 797
 - CBW, 521, 801
 - CDQ, 375, 521, 801
 - CDQE, 521, 801
 - CLD, 801
 - CLI, 801
 - CMC, 801
 - CMOVcc, 104, 108, 109, 112, 114, 525, 801
 - CMP, 56, 797, 807
 - CMPSB, 538, 801
 - CMPSD, 801
 - CMPSQ, 801
 - CMPSW, 801
 - COMISD, 406
 - COMISS, 408
 - CPUID, 344, 803
 - CWD, 513, 521, 712, 801
 - CWDE, 521, 801
 - DEC, 165, 797, 807
 - DIV, 521, 803
 - DIVSD, 398, 541
 - FABS, 805
 - FADD, 805
 - FADDP, 194, 200, 805
 - FATRET, 302, 303
 - FCHS, 805
 - FCMOVcc, 229
 - FCOM, 216, 228, 805
 - FCOMP, 205, 805
 - FCOMPP, 805
 - FDIV, 194, 540, 805
 - FDIVP, 194, 805
 - FDIVR, 200, 805
 - FDIVRP, 805
 - FILD, 805
 - FIST, 805
 - FISTP, 805
 - FLD, 203, 205, 805
 - FLD1, 805
 - FLDCW, 805
 - FLDZ, 805
 - FMUL, 194, 805
 - FMULP, 805
 - FNSTCW, 805
 - FNSTSW, 205, 228, 805
 - FSINCOS, 805
 - FSQRT, 805
 - FST, 805
 - FSTCW, 805
 - FSTP, 203, 805
 - FSTSW, 805
 - FSUB, 806
 - FSUBP, 806
 - FSUBR, 805
 - FSUBRP, 805
 - FUCOM, 228, 806
 - FUCOMI, 229
 - FUCOMP, 806
 - FUCOMPP, 228, 806
 - FWAIT, 193
 - FXCH, 806
 - IDIV, 187, 521, 803
 - IMUL, 69, 267, 521, 797, 807
 - IN, 434, 641, 703, 803
 - INC, 165, 740, 797, 807
 - INT, 701, 803
 - INT3, 532
 - IRET, 803
 - JA, 93, 229, 521, 797, 807
 - JAE, 93, 797, 807
 - JB, 93, 521, 797, 807
 - JBE, 93, 797, 807
 - JC, 797
 - Jcc, 67, 111
 - JCXZ, 797
 - JE, 117, 797, 807
 - JECXZ, 797

- JG, 93, 521, 797
 JGE, 93, 797
 JL, 93, 521, 797
 JLE, 93, 797
 JMP, 18, 37, 571, 740, 797
 JNA, 797
 JNAE, 797
 JNB, 797
 JNBE, 228, 797
 JNC, 797
 JNE, 56, 93, 797, 807
 JNG, 797
 JNGE, 797
 JNL, 797
 JNLE, 797
 JNO, 797, 807
 JNS, 797, 807
 JNZ, 797
 JO, 797, 807
 JP, 206, 704, 797, 807
 JPO, 797
 JRCXZ, 797
 JS, 797, 807
 JZ, 66, 117, 742, 797
 LAHF, 798
 LEA, 44, 70, 308, 329, 410, 447, 552, 607, 798
 LEAVE, 7, 798
 LES, 645, 712
 LOCK, 595
 LODSB, 703
 LOOP, 144, 159, 542, 712, 803
 MAXSD, 406
 MOV, 4, 6, 8, 428, 434, 569, 740, 799
 MOVDQA, 380
 MOVDQU, 380
 MOVSB, 798
 MOVSD, 405, 429, 660, 798
 MOVSDX, 405
 MOVSQ, 798
 MOVSS, 408
 MOVSW, 798
 MOVSX, 164, 170, 340–342, 521, 799
 MOVXSD, 255
 MOVZX, 164, 327, 625, 799
 MUL, 521, 799
 MULSD, 398
 NEG, 450, 799
 NOP, 308, 738, 740, 799
 NOT, 169, 171, 664, 799
 OR, 174, 285, 799
 OUT, 434, 641, 803
 PADDD, 380
 PCMPEQB, 388
 PLMULHW, 377
 PLMULLD, 377
 PMOVMSKB, 389
 POP, 6, 17, 18, 799, 807
 POPA, 803, 807
 POPCNT, 803
 POPF, 703, 803
 PUSH, 6, 7, 17, 18, 44, 434, 799, 807
 PUSHA, 803, 807
 PUSHF, 804
 PXOR, 388
 RCL, 542, 804
 RCR, 804
 RET, 4, 6, 18, 250, 457, 510, 740, 799
 ROL, 302, 741, 804
 ROR, 741, 804
 SAHF, 228, 799
 SAL, 804
 SALC, 704
 SAR, 313, 452, 521, 712, 804
 SBB, 372, 799
 SCASB, 703, 704, 799
 SCASD, 799
 SCASQ, 799
 SCASW, 799
 SETALC, 704
 SETcc, 164, 228, 804
 SHL, 183, 239, 313, 800
 SHR, 186, 313, 346, 800
 SHRD, 374, 800
 STC, 804
 STD, 804
 STI, 804
 STOSB, 440, 800
 STOSD, 800
 STOSQ, 428, 800
 STOSW, 800
 SUB, 6, 7, 56, 117, 447, 797, 800
 SYSCALL, 803, 804
 SYSENTER, 558, 803, 804
 TEST, 164, 281, 284, 313, 800
 UD2, 804
 XADD, 596
 XCHG, 799, 801
 XOR, 6, 56, 169, 452, 542, 636, 740, 801, 807
 Prefixes
 LOCK, 595, 796
 REP, 796, 799, 800
 REPE/REPNE, 796
 REPNE, 800
 Registers
 Flags, 56, 95, 793
 AH, 798, 799
 CS, 752
 DR6, 795
 DR7, 796
 DS, 752
 EAX, 56, 76
 EBP, 44, 69
 ECX, 455
 ES, 712, 752
 ESP, 27, 44
 JMP, 134
 RIP, 560
 SS, 752
 ZF, 56, 282
 AVX, 377
 FPU, 794
 MMX, 377
 SSE, 377
 SSE2, 377
 x86-64, 8, 9, 34, 43, 47, 65, 70, 390, 398, 435, 550, 560, 790, 795
 Xcode, 10

Z3, [617](#), [620](#)

Bibliography

- [al12] Nick Montfort et al. *10 PRINT CHR\$(205.5+RND(1)); : GOTO 10*. Also available as http://trope-tank.mit.edu/10_PRINT_121114.pdf. The MIT Press, 2012.
- [AMD13a] AMD. *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual*. Also available as <http://developer.amd.com/resources/documentation-articles/developer-guides-manuals/>. 2013.
- [AMD13b] AMD. *Software Optimization Guide for AMD Family 16h Processors*. Also available as http://yurichev.com/mirrors/AMD/SOG_16h_52128_PUB_Rev1_1.pdf. 2013.
- [App10] Apple. *iOS ABI Function Call Guide*. Also available as <http://developer.apple.com/library/ios/documentation/Xcode/Conceptual/iPhoneOSABIReference/iPhoneOSABIReference.pdf>. 2010.
- [ARM12] ARM. *ARM® Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition*. 2012.
- [ARM13a] ARM. *ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv8, for ARMv8-A architecture profile*. 2013.
- [ARM13b] ARM. *ELF for the ARM 64-bit Architecture (AArch64)*. Also available as http://infocenter.arm.com/help/topic/com.arm.doc.ihl0056b/IHL0056B_aaelf64.pdf. 2013.
- [ARM13c] ARM. *Procedure Call Standard for the ARM 64-bit Architecture (AArch64)*. Also available as http://infocenter.arm.com/help/topic/com.arm.doc.ihl0055b/IHL0055B_aapcs64.pdf. 2013.
- [Bro] Ralf Brown. *The x86 Interrupt List*. Also available as <http://www.cs.cmu.edu/~ralf/files.html>.
- [Bur] Mike Burrell. "Writing Efficient Itanium 2 Assembly Code". In: (). Also available as <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/RE/itanium.pdf>.
- [Cli] Marshall Cline. *C++ FAQ*. Also available as <http://www.parashift.com/c++-faq-lite/index.html>.
- [Cor+09] Thomas H. Cormen et al. *Introduction to Algorithms, Third Edition*. 3rd. The MIT Press, 2009. ISBN: 0262033844, 9780262033848.
- [Dij68] Edsger W. Dijkstra. "Letters to the editor: go to statement considered harmful". In: *Commun. ACM* 11.3 (Mar. 1968), pp. 147–148. ISSN: 0001-0782. DOI: 10.1145/362929.362947. URL: <http://doi.acm.org/10.1145/362929.362947>.
- [Dol13] Stephen Dolan. "mov is Turing-complete". In: (2013). Also available as <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~sd601/papers/mov.pdf>.
- [Fog13a] Agner Fog. *Optimizing software in C++: An optimization guide for Windows, Linux and Mac platforms*. http://agner.org/optimize/optimizing_cpp.pdf. 2013.
- [Fog13b] Agner Fog. *The microarchitecture of Intel, AMD and VIA CPUs / An optimization guide for assembly programmers and compiler makers*. <http://agner.org/optimize/microarchitecture.pdf>. 2013.
- [Fog14] Agner Fog. *Calling conventions*. http://www.agner.org/optimize/calling_conventions.pdf. 2014.
- [IBM00] IBM. *PowerPC(tm) Microprocessor Family: The Programming Environments for 32-Bit Microprocessors*. Also available as http://yurichev.com/mirrors/PowerPC/6xx_pem.pdf. 2000.
- [Int13] Intel. *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual Combined Volumes:1, 2A, 2B, 2C, 3A, 3B, and 3C*. Also available as <http://www.intel.com/content/dam/www/public/us/en/documents/manuals/64-ia-32-architectures-software-developer-manual-325462.pdf>. 2013.
- [ISO07] ISO. *ISO/IEC 9899:TC3 (C C99 standard)*. Also available as <http://www.open-std.org/jtc1/sc22/WG14/www/docs/n1256.pdf>. 2007.
- [ISO13] ISO. *ISO/IEC 14882:2011 (C++ 11 standard)*. Also available as <http://www.open-std.org/jtc1/sc22/wg21/docs/papers/2013/n3690.pdf>. 2013.
- [Ker88] Brian W. Kernighan. *The C Programming Language*. Ed. by Dennis M. Ritchie. 2nd. Prentice Hall Professional Technical Reference, 1988. ISBN: 0131103709.
- [Knu74] Donald E. Knuth. "Structured Programming with go to Statements". In: *ACM Comput. Surv.* 6.4 (Dec. 1974). Also available as <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/KnuthStructuredProgrammingGoTo.pdf>, pp. 261–301. ISSN: 0360-0300. DOI: 10.1145/356635.356640. URL: <http://doi.acm.org/10.1145/356635.356640>.

- [Knu98] Donald E. Knuth. *The Art of Computer Programming Volumes 1-3 Boxed Set*. 2nd. Boston, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman Publishing Co., Inc., 1998. ISBN: 0201485419.
- [Loh10] Eugene Loh. "The Ideal HPC Programming Language". In: *Queue* 8.6 (June 2010), 30:30–30:38. ISSN: 1542-7730. DOI: [10.1145/1810226.1820518](https://doi.org/10.1145/1810226.1820518). URL: <http://doi.acm.org/10.1145/1810226.1820518>.
- [Ltd94] Advanced RISC Machines Ltd. *The ARM Cookbook*. Also available as [http://yurichev.com/ref/ARM%20Cookbook%20\(1994\)](http://yurichev.com/ref/ARM%20Cookbook%20(1994)). 1994.
- [Mit13] Michael Matz / Jan Hubicka / Andreas Jaeger / Mark Mitchell. *System V Application Binary Interface. AMD64 Architecture Processor Supplement*. Also available as <http://x86-64.org/documentation/abi.pdf>. 2013.
- [One96] Aleph One. "Smashing The Stack For Fun And Profit". In: *Phrack* (1996). Also available as <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/phrack/p49-0x0e.txt>.
- [Pie] Matt Pietrek. "A Crash Course on the Depths of Win32™ Structured Exception Handling". In: *MSDN magazine* (). URL: <http://www.microsoft.com/msj/0197/Exception/Exception.aspx>.
- [Pie02] Matt Pietrek. "An In-Depth Look into the Win32 Portable Executable File Format". In: *MSDN magazine* (2002). URL: <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/magazine/bb985992.aspx>.
- [RA09] Mark E. Russinovich and David A. Solomon with Alex Ionescu. *Windows® Internals: Including Windows Server 2008 and Windows Vista, Fifth Edition*. 2009.
- [Ray03] Eric S. Raymond. *The Art of UNIX Programming*. Also available as <http://catb.org/esr/writings/taoup/html/>. Pearson Education, 2003. ISBN: 0131429019.
- [Rit79] Dennis M. Ritchie. "The Evolution of the Unix Time-sharing System". In: (1979).
- [Rit86] Dennis M. Ritchie. *Where did ++ come from? (net.lang.c)*. http://yurichev.com/mirrors/C/c_dmr_postincrement.txt. [Online; accessed 2013]. 1986.
- [Rit93] Dennis M. Ritchie. "The development of the C language". In: *SIGPLAN Not.* 28.3 (Mar. 1993). Also available as <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/C/dmr-The%20Development%20of%20the%20C%20Language-1993.pdf>, pp. 201–208. ISSN: 0362-1340. DOI: [10.1145/155360.155580](https://doi.org/10.1145/155360.155580). URL: <http://doi.acm.org/10.1145/155360.155580>.
- [RT74] D. M. Ritchie and K. Thompson. "The UNIX Time Sharing System". In: (1974). Also available as <http://dl.acm.org/citation.cfm?id=361061>.
- [Sch94] Bruce Schneier. *Applied Cryptography: Protocols, Algorithms, and Source Code in C*. 1994.
- [SK95] SunSoft Steve Zucker and IBM Kari Karhi. *SYSTEM V APPLICATION BINARY INTERFACE: PowerPC Processor Supplement*. Also available as http://yurichev.com/mirrors/PowerPC/elfspec_ppc.pdf. 1995.
- [Sko12] Igor Skochinsky. *Compiler Internals: Exceptions and RTTI*. Also available as <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/RE/Recon-2012-Skochinsky-Compiler-Internals.pdf>. 2012.
- [Str13] Bjarne Stroustrup. *The C++ Programming Language, 4th Edition*. 2013.
- [War02] Henry S. Warren. *Hacker's Delight*. Boston, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman Publishing Co., Inc., 2002. ISBN: 0201914654.
- [Yur12] Dennis Yurichev. "Finding unknown algorithm using only input/output pairs and Z3 SMT solver". In: (2012). Also available as http://yurichev.com/writings/z3_rocket.pdf.
- [Yur13] Dennis Yurichev. *C/C++ programming language notes*. Also available as <http://yurichev.com/writings/C-notes-en.pdf>. 2013.